

PA 2087

FLS

.A57

2014

1885

096870

Copy 1











# A GRAMMAR OF THE LATIN LANGUAGE

FOR THE

USE OF SCHOOLS AND COLLEGES

BY

E. A. ANDREWS AND S. STODDARD

*THREE HUNDRED AND SEVENTIETH THOUSAND*

REVISED, WITH CORRECTIONS AND ADDITIONS, BY

E. A. ANDREWS, LL. D.

BOSTON  
HOUGHTON, MIFFLIN AND COMPANY  
New York : 11 East Seventeenth Street  
The Riverside Press, Cambridge

PA 2087  
7.57  
1885

Copyright, 1857,  
By CROCKER & BREWSTER.

Copyright, 1885,  
By JULIA H. WILSON, ELLEN A. ANDREWS, ELIZABETH C. ORTIZ,  
AND MARY ANDREWS.

*All rights reserved.*

*The Riverside Press, Cambridge*  
Printed by H. O. Houghton and Company

## P R E F A C E .

---

As more than twenty years have elapsed, since the first publication of this Grammar, it can scarcely be necessary, in offering to the public a revised edition of the work, to make more than a passing allusion to its original plan or to the circumstances to which it owed its origin.

For some years previous to the date of its publication, the progress of classical learning in Europe, and particularly in Germany, had been such, as plainly to indicate the necessity of a corresponding advance in the manuals of Latin grammar employed in the schools of this country. Their deficiencies had indeed become so apparent, that various attempts had already been made to furnish a remedy by means of translations of German grammars; but none of these, however excellent in many respects, had seemed to be fully adapted to the purpose for which they were intended.

To unite the acknowledged excellencies of the older English manuals and of the more recent German grammars was the special aim of the authors of this work; and to this end their attention was directed, first to the preparation of more extended rules for the pronunciation of the language, secondly to a clearer exposition of its inflectional changes, thirdly to the proper basis of its syntax, and fourthly to greater precision in its rules and definitions.

The system of rules for the division and accentuation of Latin words, prepared in pursuance of the plan which has just been specified, was accordingly more copious than any previously found in the Latin grammars in common use in this country. For the purpose also of preventing the formation of erroneous habits of pronunciation in the early part of the student's course, the penultimate quantities of all Latin words occurring in the Grammar were carefully marked, unless determinable by some general rule, and the paradigms were divided and accented in such a manner as to indicate their true pronunciation.

In their treatment of Latin etymology, the authors aimed to render its study less a mere exercise of memory, and in a greater degree an efficient aid in the general cultivation of the mental powers. The principal means adopted for this purpose consisted in the practical distinction, every where made in treating inflected words, between the root, or ground-form, and the termination.



The third prominent peculiarity of the original work was its direct derivation of the rules of Syntax from the logical analysis of sentences, and its distinct specification of the particular use of each of the several words of which a sentence is composed. This method of treating syntax—a method previously unknown in the schools of this country—has, since that period, been extensively adopted, and in some instances greatly extended, particularly in a portion of the English grammars recently published in this country, and has probably contributed more to the advancement of grammatical science, than any other innovation of modern times.

The errors noticed in the original work have been corrected, as successive editions have issued from the press, but no opportunity has occurred, until the present, of thoroughly revising it in every part. Two years of continuous labor have now been devoted to its revision, and to the purpose of rendering it conformable in all respects to the advanced position which it originally aspired to occupy.

In all the modifications which have now been made, I have aimed to accomplish these two purposes—to preserve, as far as possible, the identity of the work, and at the same time to bring it as near, as should be practicable, to the present state of philological science. Hence, while I have made no changes either in language or arrangement, but such as appeared to me quite necessary, I have omitted none which logical accuracy or requisite fulness of explanation seemed to demand. In doing even this it soon became evident, that the changes and additions must be more numerous, than would well consist with the convenient use of the old and the new editions in the same classes. Though not insensible of the trouble occasioned to the teacher by alterations in a familiar text-book, I could not but suppose, that such modifications as the progress of the last twenty years had rendered necessary, would still be welcomed by him, notwithstanding the personal inconvenience arising from the disturbance of his previous associations. To his pupils, who will have known no other form of the Grammar, than that in which it now appears, the work, it is believed, will not only be as easy of comprehension in its new, as in its old form, but in its practical application far more satisfactory.

Of the minor changes and additions occurring on almost every page, and even of the occasional rearrangement of small portions of the materials, it is unnecessary to speak particularly. The student familiar with former editions will at once detect these slight modifications, and note them in his memory for future use; and though he may fail to find a rule, exception, or remark on the page where he has been wont to see it, he will still meet with it in the same relative position,—in the same section and subdivision of the section in which it formerly appeared.

In the department of Orthoëpy will now be found some account of the Continental mode of pronouncing Latin; and, by means of the joint exhibition of

this and of the English methods, the student will be able to use the Grammar with equal facility, whether choosing to adhere to the usual pronunciation of English and American scholars, or preferring that of the continental schools.

In the Etymology of nouns, no other alteration need be specified, except the introduction, in the third declension, of "Rules for forming the nominative singular from the root." These are copied, in a modified form, from the editor's First Latin Book. In themselves they are of considerable utility in showing the mutual relations between the sounds of certain letters, and they are also closely connected with corresponding changes in some of the verbal roots. In the Etymology of adjectives, besides the minor modifications already alluded to, a few changes in arrangement have been made in those sections which relate to Comparison. To pronouns have been added some remarks on Pronominal Adjectives, which seemed to require a more particular notice, than they had heretofore received, both in their relation to each other and to the Adverbial Correlatives. The Etymology of particles has been treated somewhat more fully than in former editions—a fulness especially observable in relation to adverbs and conjunctions, and which was rendered necessary by the more extended treatment of those particles in the revised Syntax.

In almost every section of the Syntax the student will meet with modifications and especially with additions, which, as in other parts of the work, are introduced in such a manner as seldom to interfere with the references made to former editions in the series based upon this Grammar. The principal exception to the latter remark is to be found in sections 247—251, which relate to certain uses of the ablative.

A comparison of the Prosody in the present and former editions will show, that it has been revised with minute care in every part. Similar attention has also been given to the Appendix, in which will be found some additions relating to Roman Money, Weights and Measures. For the greater convenience of the student the Index in this edition has been much enlarged.

In conclusion, I would briefly indicate the principal sources from which have been derived the various additions and corrections, to which allusion has been made. In preparing the original work, the earlier editions of Zumpt's Grammar were consulted at almost every step, and while frequent use was made of the grammars of Scheller, Grant, Adam, Ruddiman, Hiekie and others, the treatises of Zumpt were even then regarded as the most valuable embodiment of the principles of Latin philology. It was therefore natural and almost unavoidable, in revising a work which had in so many points received both its form and its substance from the earlier labors of that distinguished grammarian, to look to his maturer works for many of the materials by means of which our original sketch should be made more complete. Accordingly I have constantly consulted the last edition of his Grammar translated by Dr. Schmitz, and have freely incorporated in this edition such

of its materials, as were suited to my purpose. In most cases his ideas have been either expressed in my own language, or in language so modulated as to suit the general plan of my work. In the Etymology, and not unfrequently in the Syntax also, the copious Grammar of Ramshorn has furnished valuable materials; and the Grammars of Key and of Kühner, the latter translated by Prof. Champlin, have been consulted with profit and satisfaction. In the sections comprising conjunctions, and especially in those relating to grammatical analysis, I am happy to acknowledge my indebtedness to Prof. S. S. Greene of Brown University. To the sources already specified I must add the Latin Lexicon of Dr. Freund, in editing a translation of which I had frequent occasion to note such matters as promised to be of utility in the revision of this Grammar. The additions in the Appendix relating to Roman money, etc., are taken principally from Dr. Riddle's translation of Dr. Freund's School Dictionary. To these references I will only add, that such other notes relating to Latin philology, as I have made during the past twenty years, so far as they were adapted to my purpose, have either been used in my former occasional corrections, or are incorporated in the present edition.

In taking a final leave of the earliest of the elementary Latin works with which my name has been associated, and with which, in my own mind, must ever be connected the pleasant memory of my early friend and associate, Prof. Stoddard, I trust I shall be pardoned in commending it once more to the kind indulgence of the teachers of this country, and in expressing the hope that, in its present form, it will be deemed not altogether unworthy of a continuance of the favor which it has so long received. I cannot indeed venture to indulge the hope, that all the imperfections of the work have even now been removed, or that, in my attempts to render it more perfect, I may not sometimes have fallen into new errors; but this I can truly say, that since its first publication I have devoted much time to its revision, and have sought to manifest my sense of the kindness with which it has been received, by doing all in my power to render it less unworthy of public favor.

E. A. ANDREWS.

*New Britain, Conn., Oct., 1857.*



# CONTENTS.

	Page.		Page.
<b>ORTHOGRAPHY.</b>		<b>Irregular adjectives</b> ..... 69	
Letters.....	9	Defective adjectives.....	69
Division of letters.....	10	Redundant adjectives.....	69
Diphthongs.....	10	Numeral adjectives.....	70
Punctuation.....	10	Comparison of adjectives.....	74
<b>ORTHOËPY.</b>		Irregular comparison.....	75
Continental pronunciation.....	11	Defective comparison.....	76
English pronunciation.....	11	Derivation of adjectives.....	78
Sounds of the letters.....	11	Composition of adjectives.....	81
—— of the vowels.....	11	<b>PRONOUNS</b> .....	82
—— of the diphthongs.....	12	Substantive pronouns.....	82
—— of the consonants.....	13	Adjective pronouns.....	83
Quantity of syllables.....	14	Demonstrative pronouns.....	83
Accentuation.....	15	Intensive pronouns.....	85
Latin accents.....	15	Relative pronouns.....	86
English accents.....	16	Interrogative pronouns.....	87
Division of words into syllables....	16	Indefinite pronouns.....	88
<b>ETYMOLOGY.</b>		Possessive pronouns.....	89
<b>NOUNS</b> .....	19	Patrial pronouns.....	90
Gender.....	20	Pronominal adjectives.....	90
Number.....	22	<b>VERBS</b> .....	91
Cases.....	23	Voices.....	91
Declensions.....	23	Moods.....	92
First declension.....	25	Tenses.....	93
Greek nouns.....	26	Numbers.....	95
Second declension.....	26	Persons.....	95
Greek nouns.....	29	Participles, gerunds, and supines	95
Third declension.....	29	Conjugation.....	96
Formation of nom. sing.....	30	Table of terminations.....	98
Rules for the gender.....	33	<i>Sum</i> .....	100
—— oblique cases....	36	<i>Prosum, Possum, etc.</i> .....	102
Greek nouns.....	45	First conjugation....	103
Fourth declension.....	45	Second conjugation.....	108
Fifth declension.....	47	Third conjugation... ..	111
Declension of compound nouns..	47	Fourth conjugation.. ..	116
Irregular nouns.....	48	Deponent verbs.....	120
Variable nouns.....	48	Remarks on the conjugations... ..	121
Defective nouns.....	49	Periphrastic conjugations.....	123
Redundant nouns.....	54	General rules of conjugation... ..	124
Derivation of nouns.....	56	Formation of second and third	
Composition of nouns.....	60	roots.....	125
<b>ADJECTIVES</b> .....	61	First conjugation.....	125
Adjectives of the first and second		Second conjugation.....	129
declensions.....	62	Third conjugation.....	131
Adjectives of the third declension	64	Fourth conjugation.....	139
Rules for the oblique cases....	67	Irregular verbs.....	140
		Defective verbs.....	145
		Impersonal verbs.....	147

	Page.
Redundant verbs.....	150
Derivation of verbs.....	152
Composition of verbs.....	154
Particles.....	155
<b>ADVERBS</b> .....	155
Derivation of adverbs.....	160
Composition of adverbs.....	162
Comparison of adverbs.....	163
<b>PREPOSITIONS</b> .....	163
Prepositions in composition....	167
<b>CONJUNCTIONS</b> .....	170
<b>INTERJECTIONS</b> .....	176

### SYNTAX.

Sentences and Propositions .....	177
Subject.....	178
Predicate.....	181
Apposition .....	183
Adjectives.....	184
Relatives.....	189
Demonstratives, etc. ....	193
Reflexives.....	198
Nominative.....	200
Subject-nominative and verb...	200
Predicate-nominative.....	205
Genitive....	206
Genitive after nouns.....	206
—— after partitives.....	211
—— after adjectives.....	214
—— after verbs.....	216
—— of place.....	221
—— after particles.....	222
Dative.....	222
Dative after adjectives .....	222
—— after verbs.....	225
—— after particles.....	230
Accusative .....	231
Accusative after verbs.....	231
—— after prepositions..	237
—— of time and space ..	239
—— of place.....	240
—— after adjectives, ad-	
verbs and interjections .....	241
Subject-accusative. ....	242
Vocative.....	243
Ablative.....	243
Ablative after prepositions....	243
—— after certain nouns,	
adjectives and verbs.....	244
—— of cause, etc.....	246
—— of price.....	252
—— of time.....	252
—— of place.....	254
—— after comparatives....	255
—— absolute.....	258
Connection of tenses.....	261
Indicative mood.....	263
Subjunctive mood.....	265

	Page.
Protasis and apodosis....	268
Subjunctive after particles....	268
—— after <i>qui</i> .....	275
—— in indirect questions	278
—— in inserted clauses..	279
Imperative mood.....	281
Infinitive mood.....	282
Participles.....	292
Gerunds and gerundives. ....	296
Supines.....	299
Adverbs .....	300
Prepositions.....	303
Conjunctions.....	304
Interjections.....	306
Arrangement.....	306
—— of clauses.....	310
Analysis.....	312
Parsing .....	313

### PROSODY.

Quantity.....	319
General rules .....	319
Special rules.....	322
First and middle syllables...	322
Derivative words.....	322
Compound words.....	324
Increment of nouns.....	325
Increment of verbs.....	329
Penults and antepenults...	331
Final syllables.....	336
Versification .....	341
Feet.....	341
Metre.....	342
Verses.....	342
Figures of prosody.....	343
Arsis and thesis.....	346
Cæsura .....	347
Different kinds of metre.....	347
Dactylic metre.....	347
Anapæstic metre.....	350
Iambic metre.....	351
Trochaic metre.....	353
Choriambic metre.....	354
Ionic metre.....	355
Compound metres.....	250
Combination of verses.....	356
Horatian metres.....	357
Key to the odes of Horace....	359

### APPENDIX.

Grammatical figures.....	361
Tropes and figures of rhetoric....	362
Roman mode of reckoning time..	367
—— money, weight, etc.	370
Abbreviations .....	374
Different ages of Roman literature	374
Writers of the different ages ...	375

<b>INDEX</b> .....	<b>378</b>
--------------------	------------

# LATIN GRAMMAR.

---

§ 1. The Latin language is the language spoken by the ancient Romans. Latin Grammar teaches the principles of the Latin language. These relate,

1. To its written characters;
2. To its pronunciation;
3. To the classification and derivation of its words;
4. To the construction of its sentences;
5. To the quantity of its syllables, and its versification.

The first part is called Orthography; the second, Orthoëpy. the third, Etymology; the fourth, Syntax; and the fifth, Prosody.

---

## ORTHOGRAPHY.

§ 2. Orthography treats of the letters, and other characters of written language, and the proper mode of spelling words.

1. The Latin alphabet consists of twenty-five letters. They have the same names as the corresponding characters in English. They are A, a; B, b; C, c; D, d; E, e; F, f; G, g; H, h; I, i; J, j; V, v; L, l; M, m; N, n; O, o; P, p; Q, q; R, r; S, s; T, t; U, u; K, k; X, x; Y, y; Z, z.

2. The Romans used only the capital letters.
3. *I* and *j* were anciently but one character, as were likewise *u* and *v*.
4. *W* is not found in Latin words, and *k* occurs only at the beginning of a few words before *a*, and even in these *c* is commonly used, except in their abbreviated form; as, *K* or *Kal.* for *Kalendæ* or *Calendæ*, the Calends.
5. *Y* and *z* are found only in words derived from the Greek.
6. *H*, though called a letter, only denotes a breathing, or aspiration.



## DIVISION OF LETTERS.

§ 3. Letters are divided into *vowels* and *consonants*.

1. The vowels are . . . . . *a, e, i, o, u, y.*

The consonants are  
divided into

{	Liquids, . . . . .	<i>l, m, n, r.</i>
	Mutes, {	Labials, . . . . . <i>p, b, f, v.</i>
		Palatals, . . . . . <i>c, g, k, q, j.</i>
		Linguals, . . . . . <i>t, d.</i>
	Sibilant, . . . . .	<i>s.</i>
	Double consonants, . . . . .	<i>x, z.</i>
	Aspirate, . . . . .	<i>h.</i>

2. *X* is equivalent to *cs* or *gs*; *z* to *ts* or *ds*; and, except in compound words, the double consonant is always written, instead of the letters which it represents. In some Greek words *x* is equivalent to *chs*.

## DIPHTHONGS.

§ 4. Two vowels, in immediate succession, in the same syllable, are called a *diphthong*.

The diphthongs are *ae, ai, au, ei, eu, oe, oi, ua, ue, ui, uo, uu*, and *yi*. *Ae* and *oe* are frequently written together, *æ, œ*.

## PUNCTUATION.

§ 5. The only mark of punctuation used by the ancients was a point, which denoted pauses of different length, according as it was placed at the top, the middle, or the bottom of the line. The moderns use the same marks of punctuation, in writing and printing Latin, as in their own languages, and assign to them the same power.

Marks of *quantity* and of *accent* are sometimes found in Latin authors, especially in elementary works:—

1. There are three marks of quantity, viz.  $\breve$ ,  $-$ ,  $\simeq$ ; the first denotes that the vowel over which it stands is short; the second, that it is long; the third, that it is doubtful, that is, sometimes long and sometimes short.

2. There are also three written accents—the acute ( $'$ ), the grave ( $`$ ), and the circumflex ( $\wedge$ ). These were used by the old grammarians to denote the rising and sinking of the voice in the Roman mode of pronouncing words. (See §§ 14 and 15.) In modern elementary Latin works, the acute marks the emphatic syllable of a word, (§ 16), the grave distinguishes certain particles from other words spelled in the same manner; as, *quòd*, because; *quod*, which; and the circumflex is placed over certain penultimate and final syllables that are formed by contraction.

The diæresis ( $\ddot{\phantom{a}}$ ) denotes that the vowel over which it stands does not form a diphthong with the preceding vowel; as, *aër*, the air. It is used principally with *ae, ai*, and *oe*.

## ORTHOËPY.

### § 6. Orthoëpy treats of the right pronunciation of words.

The ancient pronunciation of the Latin language being in a great measure lost, the learned, in modern times, have applied to it those principles which regulate the pronunciation of their own languages; and hence has arisen, in different countries, a great diversity of practice.

The various systems now prevalent in Europe, may, however, be reduced to two—the *Continental* and the *English*—the former prevailing, with only slight diversities, in most of the countries of continental Europe, and the latter in England. Their principal difference is found in the pronunciation of the vowels and diphthongs, since, in both methods, the consonants are pronounced in nearly the same manner.

#### THE CONTINENTAL METHOD.

[According to this system, each of the vowels, when standing at the end of a syllable, is considered as having but one sound, which, however, may be either short or long. Thus,

Short <i>ă</i> , as in hat.	Long <i>ō</i> , as in no.
Long <i>ā</i> , as in father.	Short <i>ŭ</i> , as in tub.
Short <i>ĕ</i> , as in met.	Long <i>ū</i> , as in full.
Long <i>ē</i> , as in there.	<i>æ</i> or <i>œ</i> , as <i>e</i> in there.
Short <i>ĭ</i> , as in sit.	<i>au</i> , as <i>ou</i> in our.
Long <i>ī</i> , as in machine.	<i>eu</i> , as in feudal.
Short <i>ō</i> , as in not.	<i>ei</i> , as <i>i</i> in ice.

REMARK. These sounds are sometimes slightly modified when followed by a consonant in the same syllable.]

#### THE ENGLISH METHOD.

In the following rules for dividing and pronouncing Latin words, regard has been had both to English analogy and to the laws of Latin accentuation. See § 14 and 15. The basis of this system is that which is exhibited by Walker in his "Pronunciation of Greek and Latin Proper Names." To pronounce correctly, according to this method, a knowledge of the following particulars is requisite:—

1. Of the *sounds* of the letters in all their combinations.
2. Of the *quantities* of the penultimate and final syllables.
3. Of the place of the *accent*, both primary and secondary.
4. Of the mode of dividing words into *syllables*.

### OF THE SOUNDS OF THE LETTERS.

#### I. OF THE VOWELS.

§ 7. A vowel, when ending an accented syllable, has always its long English sound; as,

*pă-ter*, *dē-dit*, *vī-vus*, *tō'-tus*, *tū'-ba*, *Ty'-rus*; in which the accented vowels are pronounced as in *fatal*, *metre*, *vital*, *total*, *tutor* *tyrant*.

1. *A*, at the end of an unaccented syllable, has nearly the sound of *a* in *father* or in *ah*, but less distinct or prolonged; as, *mu'-sa*, *e-pis'-tō-la*, *a-cer'-bus*, *Pal-a-mē-des*; pronounced *mu'-zah*, etc.

2. *E*, *o*, and *u*, at the end of an unaccented syllable, have nearly the same sound as when accented, but shorter and less distinct; as, *re'-te*, *vo'-lo*, *u'-su-i*.

3. (*a*.) *I* final has always its long sound; as, *qui*, *au'-di*, *le-gā-ti*.

REM. 1. The final *i* of *tibi* and *sibi* has its short sound.

(*b*.) *I*, at the end of an unaccented syllable not final, has an indistinct sound like short *e*; as, *Fa'-bi-us* (*Fa'-be-us*), *phi-los'-ō-phus* (*phe-los'-o-phus*).

Exc. *I* has its long sound in the first syllable of a word the second of which is accented, when it either stands alone before a consonant, as in *i-dō'-nū-us*, or ends a syllable before a vowel, as in *fi-ē'-bam*.

REM. 2. *Y* is always pronounced like *i* in the same situation.

§ 8. A vowel has always its *short* English sound, when followed by a consonant in the same syllable; as,

*mag'-nus*, *reg'-num*, *fin'-go*, *hoc*, *fus'-tis*, *cyg'-nus*, in which the vowels are pronounced as in *magnet*, *seldom*, *finish*, *copy*, *lustre*, *symbol*.

EXCEPTION 1. *A*, when it follows *qu* before *dr* and *rt*, has the sounds of *a* in *quadrant* and in *quart*; as, *qua'-dro*, *quad-ra-gin'-ta*, *quar'-tus*. In other connections *a* before *r* has the sound of *a* in *part*; as, *par-ti-ceps*, *ar'-ma*; except when followed by another *r*, as in *par-ri-cī-da*.

Exc. 2. *Es*, at the end of a word, is pronounced like the English word *ease*; as, *ig'-nes*, *au'-des*.

Exc. 3. *Os*, at the end of plural cases, is pronounced like *ose* in *dose*; as, *nos*, *il'-los*, *dom'-i-nos*.

Exc. 4. *Post* is pronounced like the same word in English; so also are its compounds; as, *post'-quam*, *post'-e-a*; but not its derivatives; as, *pos-trē'-mus*.

Exc. 5. *E*, *i* and *y* before final *r*, or before *r* in a syllable not final, when followed in the next syllable by any other consonant, except *r*, have the sound of *e* and *i* in the English words *her* and *fir*; as, *fer*, *fert*, *fer'-ti-lis*; *hir*, *hir'-cus*, *myr'-tus*.

## II. OF THE DIPHTHONGS.

§ 9. *Ae* and *oe* are always diphthongs unless separated by diæresis. They are pronounced as *e* would be in the same situation; as, *æ'-tas* *æ's'-tas*, *pæ'-na*, *æ's'-trum*.

1. *Ai*, *ei*, *oi*, and *yi*, usually have the vowels pronounced separately. When they are accented, and followed by another vowel, the *i* is pronounced like initial *y*, and the vowel before it has its long sound; as, *Maia*, *Pompeius*, *Troia*, *Harpyia*; pronounced *Ma'-ya*, *Pom-pe-yus*, *Tro'-ya*, *Har-py'-ya*.



REMARK 1. *Ei*, when a diphthong and not followed by another vowel, is pronounced like *i*; as in *hei*, *m'-neis*.

2. *Au*, when a diphthong, is pronounced like *aw*; as, *laus*, *au'-rum* pronounced *laws*, etc.

REM. 2. In the termination of Greek proper names, the letters *au* are pronounced separately; as, *Men-e-lā-us*.

3. *Eu*, when a diphthong, is pronounced like long *u*; as, *heu*, *Orpheus* (or'-phuse), *Eu-phrā-tes*.

REM. 3. The letters *eu* are pronounced separately in the terminations *eus* and *eum* of Latin nouns, and of all adjectives, whether Greek or Latin, except neuter; as, *ur'-ce-us*, *me'-us*, *me'-um*, *e'-um*. In other situations they form a diphthong; as, *Eu-rō'-pa*, *Thē'-seus*, *e'-heu*.

4. *Ua*, *ue*, *ui*, *uo*, *uu*, when diphthongs, are pronounced like *wa*, *we*, etc.; as, *lin'-gua*, *quē'-ror*, *sua'-de-o*, *quō'-tus*, *ē'-quus*. They are always diphthongs after *q*, usually also after *g*, and often after *s*.

5. *Ui* in *cui* and *huic*, when monosyllables, is pronounced like *wi*, and by some like long *i*.

### III. OF THE CONSONANTS.

§ 10. The consonants have, in general, the same power in Latin as in English words.

The following cases, however, require particular attention.

#### C.

*C* has the sound of *s* before *e*, *i*, and *y*, and the diphthongs *æ*, *œ* and *eu*; as, *ce'-do*, *ci'-bus*, *Cæ'-sar*, *cæ'-lum*, *ceu*, *Cy'-rus*. In other situations, it has the sound of *k*; as, *Ca'-to*, *cru'-dus*, *lac*.

1. *Ch* has always the sound of *k*; as, *charta* (kar'-tah), *machīna* (mak'-ē-nah).

Exc. *C*, following or ending an accented syllable, before *i* followed by a vowel, and also before *eu* and *yo*, has the sound of *sh*; as, *socia* (so'-she-ah) *caduceus* (ca-du'she-us), *Sicyon* (sish'-e-on).

REMARK. In the pronunciation of the ancient Romans, the hard sound of *c* and *g* seems to have been retained in all their combinations.

#### G.

*G* has its soft sound, like *j*, before *e*, *i*, and *y*, and the diphthongs *æ* and *œ*; as *ge'-nus*, *ag'-i-lis*, *Gy'-ges*, *Gæ-tū'-li*. In other situations, it has its hard sound, as in *bag*, *go*.

Exc. When *g* comes before *g* soft, it coalesces with it in sound; as, *agger* (aj'-er), *exaggeratic* (ex-aj-e-ra'-she-o).

#### S.

§ 11. *S* has generally its hissing sound, as in *so*, *thus*.

Exc. 1. (*cs*) When *si* followed by a vowel is immediately preceded by a consonant in an accented syllable, the *s* has the sound of *sh*; as, *Per'-si-a* (per'-she-a).

(b.) But when *si* or *zi* followed by a vowel is immediately preceded by an accented vowel, the *s* or *z* has the sound of *zh*; as, *As-pa'-si-a* (as-pa'-zhe-ah) *Sa-ha'-zi-a* (sa-ba'-zhe-zh).

NOTE. In a few proper names, *s* preceded by a vowel in an accented syllable and followed by *i* before another vowel, has the sound, not of *zh*, but of *sh*; as, *A'-si-a* (a'-she-a): sc *Sosia*, *Theodosia*, *Lysias*.

Exc. 2. *S*, at the end of a word, after *e*, *æ*, *au*, *b*, *m*, *n*, and *r*, has the sound of *z*; as, *res*, *æs*, *laus*, *trabs*, *hŭ'-ems*, *lens*, *Mars*.

English analogy has also occasioned the *s* in *Cæ'-sar*, *cæ-sū'-ra*, *mi'-ser*, *mi'-sa* *re-sid'-u-um*, *cau'-sa*, *ro'-sa*, and their derivatives, and in some other words, to take the sound of *z*. *Cæs-a-re'-a*, and the oblique cases of *Cæsar*, retain the hissing sound; so likewise the compounds of *trans*; as, *trans'-e-o*.

## T.

§ 12. 1. *T*, following or ending an accented syllable before *i* followed by a vowel, has the sound of *sh*; as, *ratio* (ra'-she-o), *Sulpi-tius* (Sul-pish'-e-us).

Exc. *T*, in such case, retains its hard sound (*a*) after *s*, *t*, or *x*; as, *Sal-lus'-ti-us*, *Brut'-ti-i*, *Sex'-ti-us*: (*b*) in proper names in *tion* and *tyon*; as, *Eu-ryt'-i-on*, *Am-phic'-ty-on*; and (*c*) in old infinitives in *er*; as, *flec'-ti-er*, for *flec'-ti*.

## X.

2. *X*, at the beginning of a syllable, has the sound of *z*; at the end, that of *ks*; as, *Xenōphon* (Zen'-o-phon); *axis* (ak'-sis).

Exc. 1. When *ex* or *ux* is followed by a vowel in an accented syllable, *x* has the sound of *gz*; as, *exemplum* (eg-zem'-plum), *ux-o'-ri-us* (ug-zo'-re-us), *inexhaustus* (in-eg-zaus'-tus).

Exc. 2. *X*, ending an accented syllable before *i* followed by a vowel, and before *u* ending a syllable, has the power of *ksh*; as, *noxius* (nok'-she-us), *peaui* (pek'-shu-i).

REMARK. *Ch* and *ph*, before *th*, in the beginning of a word, are silent; as, *Chthonia* (tho'-ni-a). *Phthia* (thi'-a). Also in the following combinations of consonants, in the beginning of words of Greek origin, the first letter is not sounded:—*mne-mon'-i-ca*, *gna'-rus*, *ime'-sis*, *Cte'-si-as*, *Ptol-e-mæ'-us*, *psal'-lo*.

## OF THE QUANTITIES OF THE PENULTIMATE AND FINAL SYLLABLES.

§ 13. 1. The *quantity* of a syllable is the relative time occupied in pronouncing it.

2. A *short* syllable requires, in pronunciation, half the time of a *long* one.

REM. The *penultimate* syllable, or *penult*, is the last syllable but one. The *antepenult* is the last syllable but two.

The quantity of a syllable is generally to be learned from the rules of prosody, §§ 282—301; but for the convenience of the student, the following general rules are here inserted:—

3. A vowel before another vowel or *h* is short.

4. Diphthongs, not beginning with *u*, are long.

5. A vowel before *x, z, j*, or any two consonants, except a mute followed by a liquid, is long by *position*, as it is called.

6. A vowel naturally short before a mute followed by a liquid is common, *i. e.* either long or short.

In this Grammar, when the quantity of a penult is determined by one of the preceding rules, it is not marked; in other cases, except in dissyllables, the proper mark is written over its vowel.

To pronounce Latin words correctly, it is necessary to ascertain the quantities of their last two syllables only; and the rules for the quantities of final syllables would, for this purpose, be unnecessary, but for the occasional addition of enclitics. As these are generally monosyllables, and, for the purpose of accentuation, are considered as parts of the words to which they are annexed, they cause the final syllable of the original word to become the penult of the compound. But as the enclitics begin with a consonant, the final vowels of all words ending with a consonant, if previously short, are, by the addition of an enclitic, made long by position. It is necessary, therefore, to learn the quantities of those final syllables *only* which end with a *vowel*.

## OF ACCENTUATION.

### I. OF LATIN ACCENTS.

§ 14. 1. Accent, in Latin, signifies the rising and falling of the voice in pronouncing the syllables of a Latin word. It is a general rule of the Latin language, that every word has its accent. The enclitics, however, have no accent of their own, but they modify the accent of the words to which they are annexed, and prepositions lose their accent, when they precede the cases which they govern.

2. The Latin language has three accents, the acute (´), or rising tone, the grave (`), or falling tone, and the circumflex (^), composed of the acute and the grave, *i. e.* of the rising and the falling tone.

3. A monosyllable, when short by nature, takes the acute, when long by nature, the circumflex accent; as, *pīx, ét, párs; dōs, jūs, spēs*.

4. In words of two syllables, the penult is always accented; as, *pǎ'ter, mǎ'-ter, pen'-na*.

REM. 1. Words of two syllables have the circumflex accent, when the vowel of the penult is naturally long and that of the last syllable short; as, *Rō-mā, mīu-sā, lū-cē, jū-ris* if otherwise, they have the acute; as, *hō'-mō, dē'ās, Rō'-mā* (abl.), and *ar'-tē*, in which *a* is long only by position.

5. In words of more than two syllables, if the penult is long, it is accented; but if it is short, the accent is on the antepenult; as, *a-mī'-cus, dom'-i-nus*.

REM. 2. When the accent of a word of more than two syllables falls upon the penult, it may be either the circumflex or the acute according as the last syllable is short or long. The antepenult can take no accent except the acute, and in no case can the accent be drawn farther back than to the antepenult.

EXC. Vocatives of the second declension in *i*, instead of *ie*, from nominatives in *ius*, and genitives in *i*, instead of *ii*, are accented as they would be, if the rejected letters were annexed, *i. e.* with the acute upon the penult, even when it is short; as *Vir-gil-i; Va-lē'-ri, in-gē'-ni*. So, also, the compounds of *jācu* with words which are not prepositions; as, *cal-e-fā'-cūt, tep-e-fā'-cūt*.

§ 15. If the penult is common, the accent, in prose, is upon the antepenult; as, *vol'-ū-cris, phar'-ē-tra, ib'-i-que*: but genitives in *ius*, in which *i* is common, accent their penult in prose; as, *u-nī'-us, is-tī'-us*.



REM. 3. All the syllables of a Latin word, except that on which the acute or circumflex accent falls, are supposed to have the grave accent, and were pronounced with the lower tone.

1. The rules for the *accentuation* of compound and simple words are the same; as, *se'-cum*, *sub'-e-o*.

2. In accentuation, the enclitics *que*, *ne*, *ve*, and also those which are annexed to pronouns,\* are accounted constituent parts of the words to which they are subjoined; as, *i'-ta*, *it'-ā-que*; *vī'-rum*, *vi-rum-que*.

## II. OF ENGLISH ACCENTS.

§ 16. Accent, in English, is a particular stress of voice upon certain syllables of words. Cf. § 5, 2.

According to the English method of pronouncing Latin, a word may have two, three, or even four accents. That accent which is nearest to the termination of the word, and which always corresponds in position with the Latin accent, is called the *primary* or *principal* accent, and the *secondary* accent is that which next precedes the primary. The *third* and *fourth* accents, in like manner, precede the secondary, and are subject in all respects to the same rules; as, *pā'-ter*, *mā'-ter*, *ser-mō'-nes*, *dom'-i-nis*; *pe-ric'-ū-lum*, *con''-jū-ra'-ti-o*, *op'''-por-tu''-ni-tū'-tes*, *ex-er'''-ci-ta'''-ti-on''-i-bus'-que*.

1. If only two syllables precede the primary accent, the secondary accent is on the first; as, *mod''-e-rā'-tus*, *tol''-e-rab'-ī-lis*.

2. If three or four syllables stand before the primary accent, the secondary accent is placed, sometimes on the first, and sometimes on the second syllable; as, *de-mon''-stra-ban'-tur*, *ad''-o-les-cen'-ti-a*.

3. Some words which have only four syllables before the primary accent, and all which have more than four, have *three* accents; as, *mod'''-e-ra''-ti-ō'-nis*, *tol'''-e-ra-bil''-i-ō'-rem*, *ex-er'''-ci-ta''-ti-ō'-nis*.

## DIVISION OF WORDS INTO SYLLABLES.

### V O W E L S .

§ 17. Every Latin word is to be divided into as many syllables, as it has separate vowels and diphthongs.

REMARK. In the following rules, the term *vowel* includes not only single vowels, but diphthongs; and when a particular vowel is mentioned, a diphthong, also, ending with that vowel is intended.

### C O N S O N A N T S .

#### SPECIAL RULES.

§ 18. REMARK. The following special rules, relating to particular letters or to particular combinations of letters, are in all cases to be regarded rather than the general rules, §§ 19—23, when the latter are inconsistent with the former.

1. *H*, when standing alone between two vowels, is always joined to the vowel that follows it.

Thus, *mī'-ht*, *tra'-hē-re*, *co'-hērs*, *co''-hor-ta'-ti-o*.

\* These are *te met*, *pte*, *ce cne*, and *dem*; as, *tute*, *egōmet*, *meapte*, *hicce*, *hiccne*, *idem*



2. *Ch*, *ph*, and *th*, in the division of words into syllables, are considered, not as separate letters, but as single aspirated mutes, and hence are never separated.

Thus, *A-chil'-les*, *Ach''-ra-di'-na*, *Neph'-ě-le*, *Te'-thys*.

3. *Gl*, *tl*, and *thl*, when standing alone between any two vowels, unless the first be *u*, and *hl* after *u* are always separated.

Thus, *Ēg'-le*, *Ag-lau'-rus*, *At'-las*, *ath-let'-i-cus*;—*Pub'-li-us*, *Pub-lic'-ō-la*, *res pub-li-cu*.

4. In writing syllables, *x*, when standing alone between two vowels is united to the vowel before it, but, in pronouncing such syllables, its elementary sounds are separated.

Thus, *sax'-um* (*sak'-sum*); *ax-il'-la* (*ak-sil'-lah*); *ex-em'-plum* (*eg-zɛm'plum*) *ux-o'-ri-us* (*ug-zo'-re-us*).

## GENERAL RULES.

### I. SIMPLE WORDS.

#### § 19. A.—A single Consonant between two Vowels.

1. A single consonant, or a mute with *l* or *r*, between the *last two vowels* of a word, or between the vowels of any two *unaccented* syllables, must be joined to the latter vowel.

Thus, *t* in *pā'-ter* and *au'-tem*; *th* in *œ'-ther*; *cl* in *Hi-er'-ō-cles*; *q* in *ǎ'-qua*, *cr* in *ā'-cris* and *vol'-ū-cris*; *chr* in *a'-chras*; *r* in *tol'-e-ra-bil'-i-us*; *m* in *et''-ym-o-lō'-gi-a*; *l* in *am''-bū-lā-tō'-ri-us*; and *gr* in *per''-e-gri-na'-ti-o*. Respecting *ch* and *th* cf. § 18, 2.

Exc. *Tiō'-i* and *siō'-i* are commonly excepted.

§ 20. 2. A single consonant, or a mute with *l* or *r*, *before* the vowel of an accented syllable, must be joined to the accented vowel.

Thus, *t* in *i-tin'-ě-ra*, *d* in *vī-dē'-to*; *th* in *æ-the'-ri-us*; *cl* in *Eu-clī'-des* and *Her''-a-clē'-a*; *gr* in *a-gres'-tis* and *a-gric'-ō-la*; *pr* in *ca-pre'-ō-lus*; *q* in *α-qua'-ri-us*; and *phr* in *Eu-phrā'-tes*.

§ 21. 3. A single consonant *after* the vowel of any accented syllable, except a penult, must be joined to the accented vowel.

Thus, *m* in *dom'-i-nus* and *dom''-i-na'-ti-o*; *t* in *pat'-ě-ra*; *th* in *Scyth-i-a*, and *q* in *aq'-ui-la* (*ak'-we-lah*), and *Aq''-ui-ta'-ni-a* (*ak''-we-ta'-ne-ah*).

4. When a mute with *l* or *r* follows the vowel of any accented syllable, except the penult, the mute is to be joined to the accented vowel.

Thus, *cr* in *ac'-ri-ter*, *ac''-ri-mo'-ni-a*; *tr* in *det''-ri-men'-tum*; *pr* in *cap'-ri-pes*, *cap''-ri-mā'-gus*, *phl* in *Paph''-la-go'-ni-a*; and *phr* in *Aph''-ro-dis'-i-a*. Respecting *phl* and *phr* cf. § 18, 2.

## EXCEPTIONS TO THE 3D AND 4TH RULES

Exc. 1. A single consonant, or a mute with *l* or *r*, after an accented *a*, *e*, or *o*, and before two vowels the first of which is *e*, *i*, or *y* must be joined to the syllable following the accent.

Thus, *d* in *ra'-di-us*, *tæ'-di-um*, *me''-di-ā'-tor* *r* in *hæ'-re-o*, *Ca''-ry-ā'-tes*, *ch* in *brā'-chi-um*; *q* in *re'-qui-es*, *re''-qui-es'-co* *tr* in *pa'-tri-us* *Æ-nū'-tri-a*, and *r* and *l* in *ce''-re-a'-li-a*.

Exc. 2. A single consonant or a mute with *l* or *r*, after an accented *u*, must be joined to the vowel following it.

Thus, *r* in *lu'-ri-dus*, *au'-re-us*; *cr* in *Eu'-cri-tus*; *gl* in *ju'-glans*; and *pl* in *Nau'-pli-us*, *du'-pli-co*, and *du''-pli-ca'-ti-o*. Cf. § 18, 3.

## § 22. B.—Two Consonants between two Vowels.

Any two consonants, except a mute followed by *l* or *r* in the cases before mentioned, when standing between two vowels, must be separated.

Thus, *rp* in *cor'-pus*, *rm* in *for'-ma* and *ger-mā'nus*; *rv* in *ca-ter'-va*; *sc* in *ad-o-les'-cens*; *nn* in *an'-nus*; *phth* in *aph'-tha*; *cch* in *Bac'-chus* and *Bac''-cha-na'-li-a*; and *thl* in *ath-lē'-ta*.

## C.—Three or four Consonants between two Vowels.

1. When three consonants stand between any two vowels, the last, or, if that be *l* or *r* after a mute, the two last, are joined to the latter vowel.

Thus, *mpt* in *emp'-tor*, *ad-emp'-ti-o*; *str* in *fe-nes'-tra*; *mpl* in *ex-em'-plum*; *rthr* in *ar-thrī'-tis*.

2. When four consonants stand between two vowels, two are joined to each vowel; as, *nstr* in *trans-trum*.

## II. COMPOUND WORDS.

§ 23. 1. In dividing a compound word into syllables the component parts are to be separated, if the former part ends with a consonant; as, *ab-es'-se*, *in'-ers*, *cir'-cum-er'-ro*, *su'-pēr-est*, *sub'-ī-tus*, *præ-ter'-e-a*, *trans'-ī-tur*, *sub'-stru-o*. So, also, if a consonant is inserted to prevent hiatus, it is joined to the preceding vowel; as, *prod'-e-o*, *red'-e-o*, *sed-il' i-o*.

2. But if the former part either ends with a vowel, or has dropped its termination, it is to be divided like a simple word; as, *def'-ē-ro*, *dil'-ī-gens*, *be-nev'-o-lus*, *præs'-to*, *eg'-ō-met*; —*po'-tes*, *po-tes'-tis*, *an''-i-mad-ver'-to*, *ve'-ne-o* (from *venum*, *eo*), *mag-nan'-ī-mus*, *am-bā'-ges*, *lon-ga'-vus*.

## ETYMOLOGY.

§ 24. 1. Etymology treats of the different classes of words their derivation, and their various inflections.

2. The classes, into which words are divided in reference to their signification, are called *Parts of Speech*.

3. The parts of speech in Latin are eight—*Substantive* or *Noun*, *Adjective*, *Pronoun*, *Verb*, *Adverb*, *Preposition*, *Conjunction*, and *Interjection*.

4. The first four are *inflected*; the last four, which are sometimes called *Particles*, are *not inflected*, except that some adverbs change their termination to express comparison.

REM. Substantives, pronouns, and adjectives are often included by grammarians under the general term *nouns*; but, in this Grammar, the word *noun* is used as synonymous with *substantive* only.

§ 25. 1. To verbs belong *Participles*, *Gerunds*, and *Supines*, which partake of the meaning of the verb, and the inflection of the noun.

2. *Inflection*, in Latin grammar, signifies a change in the termination of a word. It is of three kinds—*declension*, *conjugation*, and *comparison*.

3. Nouns, adjectives, pronouns, participles, gerunds, and supines, are *declined*; verbs are *conjugated*, and adjectives and adverbs are *compared*.

## NOUNS.

§ 26. 1. A substantive or noun is the *name* of an object.

2. A *proper* noun is the name of an individual object; as, *Cæsar*; *Rōma*, Rome; *Tibēris*, the Tiber.

3. A *common* or *appellative* noun is the name of a class of objects, to each of which it is alike applicable; as, *hōmo*, man or a man; *avis*, a bird; *quercus*, an oak; *leo*, a lion; *mendacium*, a falsehood.

4. A *collective* noun is one which, in the singular number, denotes a collection of individuals; as, *exercitus*, an army.

REM. 1. The following are examples of nouns used as collectives, viz. *exercitus*, *gens*, *juventus*, *multitudo*, *nobilitas*, *plebs*, *populus*, *turba*, *vis*, and *vulgus*.

5. An *abstract* noun is the name of a quality, action, or other attribute; as, *bonitas*, goodness; *gaudium*, joy; *festinatio*, haste.

REM. 2. A *concrete*, in distinction from an abstract noun, is one which denotes an object that has an actual and independent existence; as, *Rōma*, *hōmo*, *populus*, *ferrum*.

6. A *material* noun is the name of a substance considered in the gross; as, *lignum*, wood; *ferrum*, iron; *cibus*, food.

REM. 3. Proper, abstract, and material nouns become common, when employed to denote one or more of a class of objects. A verb in the infinitive mood is often used as an abstract noun.

7. To nouns belong *gender*, *number*, and *case*.

REM. 4. Adjectives and participles have likewise different genders, numbers, and cases, corresponding to those of nouns.



## GENDER.

§ 27. 1. The gender of a noun is its distinction in regard to sex.

2. Nouns have three genders—the *masculine*, the *feminine*, and the *neuter*.

3. The gender of Latin nouns is either *natural* or *grammatical*.

4. Those nouns are naturally masculine or feminine, which are used to designate the sexes; as, *vir*, a man; *mulier*, a woman.

5. Those are grammatically masculine or feminine, which, though denoting objects that are neither male nor female, take adjectives of the form appropriated to nouns denoting the sexes.

Thus, *dominus*, a lord, is naturally masculine, because it denotes a male; but *sermo* speech, is grammatically masculine, because, though not indicative of sex, it takes an adjective of that form which is appropriated to nouns denoting males.

6. The grammatical gender of Latin nouns depends either on their signification, or on their declension and termination. The following are the general rules of gender, in reference to *signification*. Many exceptions to them, on account of *termination*, occur: these will be specified under the several declensions.

§ 28. MASCULINES. 1. Names, proper and appellative, of all male beings are masculine; as, *Homērus*, Homer; *pāter*, a father; *consul*, a consul; *ēquus*, a horse.

As proper names usually follow the gender of the general name under which they are comprehended; hence,

2. Names of rivers, winds, and months, are masculine, because *fluvius*, *ventus*, and *mensis*, are masculine; as, *Tibēris*, the Tiber; *Aquīlo*, the north wind; *Aprīlis*, April.

Exc. *Styx* and some names of rivers in *a* and *e* are feminine. §§ 62, and 41, 1

3. Names of mountains are sometimes masculine, because *mons* is masculine; as, *Othrys*, a mountain of Thessaly; but they usually follow the gender of their termination; as, *hic*\* *Atlas*, *hæc* *Ida*, *hoc* *Soracte*.

§ 29. FEMININES. 1. Names, proper and appellative, of all female beings are feminine; as, *Helēna*, Helen; *māter*, a mother; *juvenca*, a heifer.

2. Names of countries, towns, trees, plants, ships, islands, poems, and gems, are feminine; because *terra*, *urbs*, *arbor*, *planta*, *nāvis*, *insūla*, *fabūla*, and *gemma*, are feminine; as,

*Ægyptus*, Egypt; *Corinthus*, Corinth; *pīrus*, a pear-tree; *nardus*, spikenard; *Centaurus*, the ship Centaur; *Sāmos*, the name of an island; *Eunūchus*, the Eunuch, a comedy of Terence; *amethystus*, an amethyst.

Exc. Names of countries and islands in *um*, *i*, and (plur.) *a*, *ōrum*, are neuter.—Names of towns in *i*, *ōrum*; four in *o*, *ōnis*, viz. *Trusīno*, *Hippo*, *Narbo*, and *Sulmo*, with *Tunes*, *Tiras*, and *Canōpus*, are masculine. Names of towns in *um* or *on*, *i*, and (plur.) *a*, *ōrum*; those in *e* and *ur* of the third declension, indeclinable nouns in *i* and *y*, and some barbarous names, as *Suthul*, *Hispul* and *Gadir* are neuter.—Names of trees and plants in *er* of the third declension, (§ 60), with *baccar* and *rōbur* are neuter. A few names in *us*, *i*, (§ 50), with *oleaster*, *pinaster*, *Styrax* and *unēdo* are masculine.—A few names of gems in *us*, *i*, are also masculine.

---

\* To distinguish the gender of Latin nouns, grammarians write *hic* before the masculine, *hæc* before the feminine, and *hoc* before the neuter.



§ 30. COMMON AND DOUBTFUL GENDER. Some words are either masculine or feminine. These, if they denote things animate, are said to be of the *common* gender; if things inanimate, of the *doubtful* gender.

Of the former are *pārens*, a parent; *bos*, an ox or cow: of the latter, *finis*, an end

The following nouns are of the common gender:—

<i>Adolescens</i> , a youth.	<i>Exsul</i> , an exile.	<i>Palumbes</i> , a wood-pigeon.
<i>Affinis</i> , a relative by marriage.	<i>Grus</i> , a crane.	<i>Pārens</i> , a parent.
<i>Ales</i> , a bird.	<i>Hospes</i> , a guest, a host.	<i>Par</i> , a mate.
<i>Antistes</i> , a chief priest.	<i>Hostis</i> , an enemy.	<i>Præses</i> , a president.
<i>Auctor</i> , an author.	<i>Index</i> , an informer.	<i>Præsul</i> , a chief priest.
<i>Augur</i> , an augur.	<i>Infans</i> , an infant.	<i>Princeps</i> , a prince or princess.
<i>Bos</i> , an ox or cow.	<i>Interpres</i> , an interpreter.	<i>Serpens</i> , a serpent.
<i>Cānis</i> , a dog.	<i>Jūdex</i> , a judge.	<i>Sacerdos</i> , a priest or priestess.
<i>Civis</i> , a citizen.	<i>Juvēnis</i> , a youth.	<i>Satelles</i> , a life-guard.
<i>Cōmes</i> , a companion.	<i>Martyr</i> , a martyr.	<i>Sus</i> , a swine.
<i>Conjux</i> , a spouse.	<i>Miles</i> , a soldier.	<i>Testis</i> , a witness.
<i>Consors</i> , a consort.	<i>Municipes</i> , a burgess.	<i>Vātes</i> , a prophet.
<i>Conviva</i> , a guest.	<i>Mus</i> , a mouse.	<i>Verna</i> , a slave.
<i>Custos</i> , a keeper.	<i>Nemo</i> , nobody.	<i>Vindex</i> , an avenger.
<i>Dux</i> , a leader.	<i>Obses</i> , a hostage.	
	<i>Patruēlis</i> , a cousin.	

The following hexameters contain nearly all the above nouns:—

*Conjux, atque pārens, princeps, patruēlis, et infans,*  
*Affinis, vindex, jūdex, dux, milēs, et hostis,*  
*Augūr, et antistes, juvēnis, conviva, sacerdos,*  
*Mūnī-que-ceps, vātes, adolescens, civis, et auctor,*  
*Custōs, nēmo, cōmes, testis, sus, bōs-que, cānis-que,*  
*Pro consorte tōri par, præsul, verna, sâtelles,*  
*Mus-que obses, consors, interprēs, et exsul, et hospes.*

§ 31. 1. When nouns of the common gender denote males, they take a masculine adjective; when they denote females, a feminine.

2. The following are either masculine or feminine in sense, but masculine only in grammatical construction:—

<i>Artifex</i> , an artist.	<i>Fur</i> , a thief.	<i>Lātro</i> , a robber.
<i>Auspex</i> , a soothsayer.	<i>Hēres</i> , an heir.	<i>Libēri</i> , children.
<i>Eques</i> , a horseman.	<i>Hōmo</i> , a man or woman.	<i>Pēdes</i> , a footman.

To these may be added personal appellatives of the first declension; as, *advēna*, a stranger; and some gentile nouns; as, *Persa*, a Persian.

§ 32. 1. The following, though masculine or feminine in sense, are feminine only in construction:—

<i>Copix</i> , troops.	<i>Opēræ</i> , laborers.	<i>Vigiliæ</i> , Watchmen.
<i>Custodiæ</i> , guards.	<i>Prōles</i> , {	
<i>Excubiæ</i> , sentinels.	<i>Subōles</i> , {	<i>offspring.</i>

2. Some nouns, signifying persons, are neuter, both in their termination and construction; as,

Acroāma, a buffoon.	Mancipium, }	Scortum, }
Auxilia, auxiliaries.	Servitium, } a slave.	Prostibulum, } a prostitute.

3. (a.) In some personal appellatives masculines and feminines are distinguished by different terminations affixed to the same root. The masculines end in *us, er, o, tor, etc.*; the feminines in *a* or *trix* as, *cōquus, cōqua*; *magister, magistra*; *lēno, lēna*; *inventor, inventrix*, *tibicen, tibicina*; *āvus, avia*; *rex, regina*; *poēta, poëtria*.

(b.) So also in some names of animals; as, *ēquus, ēqua*; *gallus, gallina*; *leo, lea* and *leæna*. Sometimes the words are wholly different; as, *taurus, vacca*.

4. Some names of animals are sometimes masculine and sometimes feminine without regard to difference of sex; as, *anguis, serpens, dāma, talpa, tigris, colūber* and *colūbra, etc.*

§ 33. EPICENES. Names of animals which include both sexes, but admit of an adjective of one gender only, are called *epicene*. These commonly follow the gender of their terminations.

Thus, *passer*, a sparrow, *corvus*, a raven, are masculine; *aquila*, an eagle, *vulpes*, a fox, are feminine; though each of them is used to denote both sexes.

NOTE. This class includes the names of animals, in which the distinction of sex is seldom attended to. When it is necessary to mark the sex, *mas* or *femina* is usually added.

§ 34. NEUTERS. Nouns which are neither masculine nor feminine, are said to be of the neuter gender; such are,

1. All indeclinable nouns; as, *fas, nēfas, nihil, gummi, pondo*.

2. Names of letters; as, *o longum, long o*. But these are sometimes feminine, *litēra* being understood.

3. Words used merely as such, without reference to their meaning, as, *pater est dissyllābum, pater* is dissyllabic.

4. All infinitives, imperatives, clauses of sentences, adverbs, and other particles, used substantively; as *scire tuum*, your knowledge; *ultimum vale*, the last farewell; *hoc diu*, this (word) *diu*.

REMARK. 1. Words derived from the Greek retain the gender which they have in that language.

REM. 2. Some nouns have different genders in the singular and plural, and are called *heterogeneous* nouns. See § 92.

## NUMBER.

§ 35. 1. (a.) Number, in nouns, is the form by which they denote whether they represent one object or more than one.

(b.) Latin nouns have two numbers,—the *singular* and the *plural*—which are distinguished by their terminations. The singular number denotes one object; the plural, more than one.

## PERSON.

2. The person of a noun or pronoun is the character sustained by the object which it represents, as being the speaker, the person addressed, or the person or thing spoken of.

Hence there are three persons. The speaker is of the *first* person, the person addressed is of the *second* person, and the person or thing spoken of is of the *third* person.

## CASES.

§ 36. Many of the relations of objects, which, in English, are denoted by prepositions, are, in Latin, expressed by a change of termination.

Cases are those terminations of nouns, which denote their relations to other words. Latin nouns have six cases; viz. *Nominative, Genitive, Dative, Accusative, Vocative, and Ablative.*

REMARK. Though there are six cases in each number, no noun has in each number so many different terminations.

§ 37. 1. The nominative denotes the relation of a *subject* to a finite verb; as, *ego scribo, I write. Caius dicit, Caius says.*

2. The genitive denotes *origin, possession, and many other relations*, which, in English, are expressed by the preposition *of* or by the *possessive* case; as, *vita Cæsaris, the life of Cæsar, or Cæsar's life.*

3. The dative denotes that *to* or *for* which any thing is, or is done; as, *ille mihi librum dedit, he gave the book to me.*

4. The accusative is either the *object* of an active verb, or of certain prepositions, or the *subject* of an infinitive.

5. The vocative is the form appropriated to the name of any object which is addressed.

6. The ablative denotes *privation, and many other relations, especially those expressed in English by the prepositions with, from, in, or by.*

REMARK. The nominative and vocative are sometimes called *casus recti*; i. e. the uninflected cases; and the others, *casus obliqui*; i. e. the oblique or inflected cases.

## DECLENSIONS.

§ 38. The regular forming of the several cases in both numbers, by annexing the appropriate terminations to the root, is called *declension.*

The Latin language has five declensions or modes of declining nouns, distinguished by the termination of the genitive singular, which, in the first declension, ends in *æ*, in the second in *i*, in the third in *is*, in the fourth in *us*, and in the fifth in *ei*.

§ 39. The following table exhibits a comparative view of the terminations or case-endings of the five declensions.



## TERMINATIONS.

<i>Singular.</i>								
	I.	II.		III.		IV.		V
		<i>M.</i>	<i>N.</i>	<i>M.</i>	<i>N.</i>	<i>M.</i>	<i>N.</i>	
<i>Nom.</i>	ă,	ūs,	ēr, ūm,	ör, etc. ě,	etc.	ūs,	ū,	ēs,
<i>Gen.</i>	æ,	ī,		īs,		ūs,		eī,
<i>Dat.</i>	æ,	ō,		ī,		uī,	ū,	eī,
<i>Acc.</i>	ām	ūm,		ēm, (īm), ě,	etc.	ūm,	ū,	ēm,
<i>Voc.</i>	ă,	ě,	ēr, ūm,	ör, etc. ě,	etc.	ūs,	ū,	ēs,
<i>Abl.</i>	ā.	ō.		ě, (ī.)		ū.		ē.

<i>Plural.</i>								
<i>Nom.</i>	æ,	ī,	ă,	ēs,	ă, (iă),	ūs,	uă,	ēs.
<i>Gen.</i>	ārūm,	ōrūm,		ūm,	(iūm),	uūm,		ērūm,
<i>Dat.</i>	īs,	īs,		ībūs,		ībūs,	(ūbūs),	ēbūs,
<i>Acc.</i>	ās,	ōs,	ă,	ēs,	ă, (iă),	ūs,	uă,	ēs,
<i>Voc.</i>	æ,	ī,	ă,	ēs,	ă, (iă),	ūs,	uă,	ēs,
<i>Abl.</i>	īs.	īs.		ībūs.		ībūs,	(ūbūs).	ēbūs.

*Remarks.*

§ 40. 1. The terminations of the nominative, in the third declension, are very numerous. See §§ 55, 58, 62, 66.

2. The accusative singular of masculines and feminines, always ends in *m*.

3. The vocative singular is like the nominative in all Latin nouns, except those in *us* of the second declension.

4. The nominative and vocative plural always end alike.

5. The genitive plural always ends in *um*.

6. The dative and ablative plural always end alike;—in the 1st and 2d declensions, in *is*; in the 3d, 4th, and 5th, in *bus*.

7. The accusative plural of masculines and feminines, always ends in *s*.

8. Nouns of the neuter gender have the accusative and vocative like the nominative, in both numbers; and these cases, in the plural, always end in *a*.

9. The 1st and 5th declensions contain no nouns of the neuter gender, and the 4th and 5th contain no proper names.

10. Every inflected word consists of two parts—a *root*, and a *termination*. The root or *crude form*, is the part which is not changed by inflection. The termination is the part annexed to the root. The root of a *declined* word may be found by removing the termination of any of its oblique cases. The case commonly selected for this purpose is the genitive singular.

11. The preceding table exhibits terminations only. In the fifth declension, the *e* of the final syllable, though unchanged, is considered as belonging to the termination.



## FIRST DECLENSION.

§ 41. Nouns of the first declension end in *ā*, *ē*, *ās*, *ēs*. Those in *a* and *e* are feminine; those in *as* and *es* are masculine.

*Latin* nouns of the first declension end only in *a*. They are thus declined:—

Singular.		Plural.	
Nom.	<i>mū'-sā</i> , a muse;	Nom.	<i>mu'-sæ</i> , muses;
Gen.	<i>mu'-sæ</i> , of a muse;	Gen.	<i>mu-sā'-rūm</i> , of muses;
Dat.	<i>mu'-sæ</i> , to a muse;	Dat.	<i>mu'-sīs</i> , to muses;
Acc.	<i>mu'-sām</i> , a muse;	Acc.	<i>mu'-sās</i> , muses
Voc.	<i>mu'-sā</i> , O muse;	Voc.	<i>mu'-sæ</i> , O muses;
Abl.	<i>mu'-sā</i> , with a muse.	Abl.	<i>mu'-sīs</i> , with muses.

In like manner decline

<i>Au'-la</i> , a hall.	<i>Lit'-ĕ-ra</i> , a letter.	<i>Sa-git'-ta</i> , an arrow.
<i>Cu'-ra</i> , care.	<i>Lus-cin'-i-a</i> , a nightingale.	<i>Stel'-la</i> , a star.
<i>Ga'-le-a</i> , a helmet.	<i>Mach'-i-na</i> , a machine.	<i>Tō'-ga</i> , a gown.
<i>In'-sū-la</i> , an island.	<i>Pen'-na</i> , a feather, a quill.	<i>Vī'-a</i> , a way.

NOTE. As the Latin language has no article, appellative nouns may be rendered either with or without the English articles *a*, *an*, or *the*, according to their connection.

## EXCEPTIONS IN GENDER.

§ 42. 1. Names proper and appellative of men, as, *Sulla*, *Cinna*; *poēta*, a poet; *nauta*, a sailor; and names of rivers, though ending in *a*, are masculine: § 28, 1 and 2. But the following names of rivers have been used as feminine: viz. *Albula*, *Allia*, *Druentia*, *Garumna*, *Himēra*, *Matrōna*, *Mosella*, *Trebia*. *Lēthe* is always feminine.

*Ossa* and *Cēta*, names of mountains, are masculine or feminine.

2. *Hadria*, the Adriatic sea, *dāma* in Virgil and Statius, and *talpa* in Virgil, are masculine.

## EXCEPTIONS IN DECLENSION.

§ 43. *Genitive singular*. 1. The poets sometimes formed the genitive singular in *āi*; as, *aula*, gen. *aulāi*.

2. *Familia*, after *pāter*, *māter*, *filius*, or *filia*, usually forms its genitive in *as*; as, *mater-familias*, the mistress of a family; gen. *matris-familias*; nom. plur. *matres-familias* or *familiārum*. Some other words anciently formed their genitive in the same manner.

*Genitive plural*. The genitive plural of patronymics in *es*, of several compounds in *cōla* and *gēna*, and of some names of nations, is sometimes, especially in poetry, formed in *um* instead of *ārum*; as, *Æneādum*, *Carlicōlum*, *terrigēnum*, *Lapīthum*. So *amphōrum*, *drachmum*, for *amphorārum*, *drachmārum*.

*Dative and Ablative plural*. The following nouns have sometimes *ābus* instead of *is*, in the dative and ablative plural, especially when it is necessary to distinguish them from the same cases of masculines in *us* of the second declension having the same root; as, *filiis et filiābus*, to sons and daughters.

Dea, a goddess.  
Filia, a daughter.

Equa, a mare.  
Mūla, a she mule.

The use of a similar termination in *anima*, *asina*, *liberta*, *nāta*, *conserva*, and some other words, rests on inferior authority.

### GREEK NOUNS.

§ 44. Nouns of the first declension in *ē*, *ās*, and *ēs*, and some also in *ā*, are Greek. Greek nouns in *ā* are declined like *musa*, except that they sometimes have *ān* in the accusative singular; as, *Ossa*; acc. *Ossam*, or *Ossan*.

Greek nouns in *e*, *as*, and *es*, are thus declined in the singular number:—

N. Pe-nel'-ō-pē,	N. Æ-nē'-ās,	N. An-chī'-sēs,
G. Pe-nel'-ō-pēs,	G. Æ-nē'-æ,	G. An-chī'-sæ,
D. Pe-nel'-ō-pæ,	D. Æ-nē'-æ,	D. An-chī'-sæ,
Ac. Pe-nel'-ō-pēn,	Ac. Æ-nē'-ām or ān,	Ac. An-chī'-sēn,
V. Pe-nel'-ō-pē,	V. Æ-nē'-ā,	V. An-chī'-sē or ā,
Ab. Pe-nel'-ō-pē.	Ab. Æ-nē'-ā.	Ab. An-chī'-sā or ē.

§ 45. In like manner decline

Al'-o-e, aloes.	Ti-ā'-ras, a turban.
Ē-pit'-ō-me, an abridgment.	Co-mē'-tes, a comet.
This'-be.	Dy-nas'-tes, a ruler.
Bo'-rē-as, the north wind.	Pri-am'-i-des, a son of Priam.
Mi'-das.	Py-rī'-tes, a kind of stone.

1. Most proper names in *es*, except patronymics, follow the third declension; but in the accusative they often have both *em* and *en*, and in the vocative both *es* and *e*. See §§ 80, IV, and 81.

2. Greek nouns of the first declension, which admit of a plural, are declined in that number like the plural of *musa*.

3. The Latins frequently change the terminations of Greek nouns in *ēs* and *ē* into *ā*; as, *Atrides*, *Atrīda*, a son of Atreus; *Perses*, *Persa*, a Persian; *geomētres*, *geomētra*, a geometrician; *Circe*, *Circa*; *epitōme*, *epitōma*; *grammaticē*, *grammatica*, grammar; *rhetoricē*, *rhetorica*, oratory.—So also *tiāras*, *tiāra*.

### SECOND DECLENSION.

§ 46. Nouns of the second declension end in *ēr*, *īr*, *ūs*, *ūm*, *os*, *on*. Those ending in *um* and *on* are neuter; the rest are masculine.

Nouns in *er*, *us*, and *um*, are thus declined:—

#### SINGULAR.

A lord.	A son-in-law.	A field.	A kingdom
N. dōm'-ī-nūs,	gē'-nēr,	ā'-gēr,	reg'-nūm,
G. dom'-ī-nī,	gen'-ē-rī,	a'-grī,	reg'-nī,
D. dom'-ī-nō,	gen'-ē-rō,	a'-grō,	reg'-nō,
Ac. dom'-ī-nūm,	gen'-ē-rūm,	a'-grūm,	reg'-nūm,
V. dom'-ī-nē,	ge'-nēr,	a'-gēr,	reg'-nūm
Ab. dom'-ī-nō.	gen'-ērō.	a'-grō.	reg'-nō.

## PLURAL.

N. dom'-i-nī,	ger'-ĕ-rī,	a'-grī,	reg'-nā,
G. dom-i-nō'-rŭm,	gen-e-rō'-rŭm,	a-grō'-rŭm,	reg'-nō'-rŭm,
D. dom'-i-nīs,	gen'-ĕ-rīs,	a'-grīs,	reg'-nīs,
Ac. dom'-i-nōs,	gen'-ĕ-rōs,	a'-grōs,	reg'-nā,
V. dom'-i-nī,	gen'-ĕ-rī,	a'-grī,	reg'-nā,
Ab. dom'-i-nīs.	gen'-ĕ-rīs.	a'-grīs.	reg'-nīs.

Like *dominus* decline

An'-i-mus, *the mind*. Fō'-cus, *a hearth*. Nu'-mĕ-rus, *a number*.  
 Clip'-e-us, *a shield*. Gla'-di-us, *a sword*. O-ce'-ā-nus, *the ocean*.  
 Cor'-vus, *a raven*. Lū'-cus, *a grove*. Trō'-chus, *a trundling-hoop*.

NOTE. Nouns in *us* of the second declension are the only Latin nouns, whose nominative and vocative singular differ in form. See § 40, R. 3.

§ 47. A few nouns in *er*, like *gener*, add the terminations to the nominative singular, as a root. They are the compounds of *gĕro* and *fĕro*; as, *armĭger*, -ĕri, an armor-bearer; *Lucifer*, -ĕri, the morning star; and the following:—

A-dul'-ter, *an adulterer*. Lī'-ber, *Bacchus*. Pu'-er, *a boy*.  
 Cel'-tī-bĕr, *a Celtiberian*. Lib'-ĕ-ri, (*plur.*), *children*. Sō'-cer, *a father-in-law*.  
 I'-ber, *a Spaniard*. Pres'-bŷ-ter, *an elder*. Ves'-per, *the evening*.

*Mul'-ci-ber*, *Vulcan*, sometimes has this form.

§ 48. 1. All other nouns in *er* reject the *e* in adding the terminations, (§ 322, 4), and are declined like *ager*; thus,

A'-per, *a wild boar*. Lī'-ber, *a book*. Al-ex-an'-der.  
 Aus'-ter, *the south wind*. Ma-gis'-ter, *a master*. Is'-ter.  
 Fā'-ber, *a workman*. On'-ā-ger, *a wild ass*. Teu'-cer.

2. *Vir*, a man, with its compounds, and the patril *Trĕvir*, (the only nouns in *ir*,) are declined like *gener*.

Like *regnum* decline

An'-trum, *a cave*. Ex-em'-plum, *an example*. Præ-sid'-i-um, *a defence*.  
 A'-tri-um, *a hall*. Ne-go'-ti-um,\* *a business*. Sax'-um, *a rock*.  
 Bel'-lum, *war*. Ni'-trum, *natron*. Scep'-trum, *a sceptre*.

## EXCEPTIONS IN GENDER.

§ 49. 1. The following nouns in *us* and *os* are feminine:—

Abyssus, *a bottomless pit*. Dialectos, *a dialect*. Miltos, *vermilion*.  
 Alvus, *the belly*. Diphthongus, *a diphthong*. Phārus(os), *a light-house*.  
 Antidōtus, *an antidote*. Dōmus, *a house, home*. Plinthus, *the base of a column*.  
 Arctos(us), *the Northern Bear*. Erĕmus, *a desert*.  
 Hūmus, *the ground*. Vannus, *a corn-fan*.  
 Carbāsus, *a eail*.

2. Greek nouns in *odus* (ἡ ὄδος), and *mĕtros*, are likewise feminine; as *synodus*, an assembly; *diamĕtros*, a diameter.

\* Pronounced *ne-go'she-um*. See § 12.

§ 50. Names of countries, towns, trees, plants, etc. are feminine. See § 29, 2

Yet the following names of plants are masculine:—

Acanthus, <i>bear's-foot</i> .	Ebŭlus, <i>an elder</i> .	Răbus, <i>a blackberry-bush</i> .
Amarantus, <i>amaranth</i> .	Hellebŏrus, <i>hellebore</i> .	Tribŭlus, <i>a caltrop</i> .
Asparăgus, <i>asparagus</i> .	Intŭbus, <i>endive</i> .	
Calămus, <i>a reed</i> .	Juncus, <i>a bulrush</i> .	And sometimes
Carduus, <i>a thistle</i> .	Raphănus, <i>a radish</i> .	Amarăcus, <i>marjoram</i> .
Dămus, <i>a bramble</i> .	Rhamnos, <i>buck-thorn</i> .	Cytisus, <i>snail-clover</i> .

*Oleaster* and *pinaster*, names of trees, are also masculine.

The following names of gems are also masculine:—

Beryllus, <i>a beryl</i> .	Chrysoprăsus, <i>chrysoptase</i> .	So also,
Carbuncŭlus, <i>a carbuncle</i> .	Opălus, <i>opal</i> .	Pyrŏpus, <i>gold-bronze</i> .

Chrysolithus, *chrysolite*, and smaragdus, *an emerald*, are doubtful.

Names of females in *um* are feminine: § 29, 1; as, *mea Glycerium*, Ter.

Names of trees and plants in *um* are generally neuter; as, *apium*, parsley; *aconitum*, wolf's bane.

*Canŏpus*, *Pontus*, *Hellespontus*, *Isthmus*, and all plural names in *i* of countries and towns are masculine. *Abŷdus(os)* is doubtful.

Names of countries and towns ending in *um*, or, if plural, in *a*, are neuter as, *Ilium* or *Ilion*; *Ecbătăna*, *ŏrum*.

§ 51. The following are doubtful, but more frequently masculine:—

Balănus, <i>a date</i> .	Grossus, <i>an unripe fig</i> .	Phasēlus, <i>a light vessel</i> .
Barbitos, <i>a lute</i> .	Pampīnus, <i>a vine-leaf</i> .	

*Atŏmus*, an atom, and *cŏlus*, a distaff, are doubtful, but more frequently feminine.

*Pelăgus*, the sea, and *vīrus*, poison, are neuter.

*Vulgus*, the common people, is neuter, and rarely masculine.

### EXCEPTIONS IN DECLENSION.

§ 52. *Genitive singular*. When the genitive singular ends in *ii*, the poets frequently contract it into *i*; as, *ingēnī*, for *ingenīi*.

*Vocative singular*. The vocative of nouns in *us* is sometimes like the nominative, especially in poetry; as, *stuvius*, *Latīnus*, in Virgil. So, *audi tu*, *popŭlus Albănus*. Liv.

Proper names in *ius* omit *e* in the vocative; as, *Horatius*, *Horăti*, *Virgilius*, *Virgili*.

*Filius*, a son, and *genius*, a guardian angel, make also *fili* and *geni*. Other nouns in *ius*, including patrials and possessives derived from proper names, form their vocative regularly in *e*; as, *Delius*, *Delie*; *Tirynthius*, *Tirynthie*; *Laertius*, *Laertie*.

§ 53. *Genitive plural*. The genitive plural of some nouns of the second declension, especially of those which denote money, weight and measure, is commonly formed in *um*, instead of *ŏrum*: § 322, 4.

Such are particularly *nummum*, *sestertium*, *denarium*, *medimnum*, *jugerum*, *modium*, *talentum*. The same form occurs in other words, especially in poetry as, *deum*, *liberum*, *Danaum*; etc., and sometimes *om* is found instead of *um* as, *Achivom*. Virg. Cf. § 322, 8.



*Deus*, a god, is thus declined:—

<i>Singular.</i>	<i>Plural.</i>
<i>N.</i> de'-us,	<i>N.</i> dī'-i, dī, or de'-i,
<i>G.</i> de'-i,	<i>G.</i> de-ō'-rum,
<i>D.</i> de'-o,	<i>D.</i> dī'-is, dīs, or de'-is,
<i>Ac.</i> de'-um,	<i>Ac.</i> de'-os,
<i>V.</i> de'-us,	<i>V.</i> dī'-i, dī, or de'-i,
<i>Ab.</i> de'-o.	<i>Ab.</i> dī'-is, dīs, or de'-is.

*Jēsus*, or *Iēsus*, the name of the Savior, has *um* in the accusative and *u* in all the other oblique cases.

### GREEK NOUNS.

§ 54. 1. *Os* and *on*, in the second declension, are Greek terminations, and are commonly changed, in Latin, into *us* and *um*; but sometimes both forms are in use; as, *Alphēos*, and *Alphēus*; *Ilion* and *Ilium*. Greek names in *ros* after a consonant commonly change *ros* into *er*; as, *Alexandros*, *Alexander*; *Teucros*, *Teucer*. In a few words *ros* is changed to *rus*; as, *Codrus*, *hydrus*, and once in Virgil, *Teucus*

Greek nouns are thus declined in the singular number:—

<i>Singular.</i>		<i>Barbiton, a lyre.</i>
<i>N.</i> Dē'-lōs,	<i>An-drō'-ge-ōs,</i>	<i>N.</i> bar'-bī-tōn,
<i>G.</i> Dē'-lī,	<i>An-dro'-ge-ō, or ī,</i>	<i>G.</i> bar'-bī-tī,
<i>D.</i> Dē'-lō,	<i>An-dro'-ge-ō,</i>	<i>D.</i> bar'-bī-tō,
<i>Ac.</i> Dē'-lōn or ūm,	<i>An-dro'-ge-ō, or ōn,</i>	<i>Ac.</i> bar'-bī-tōn,
<i>V.</i> Dē'-lē,	<i>An-dro'-ge-ōs,</i>	<i>V.</i> bar'-bī-tōn,
<i>Ab.</i> Dē'-lō.	<i>An-dro'-ge-ō.</i>	<i>Ab.</i> bar'-bī-tō.

2. The plurals of Greek nouns in *os* and *on* are declined like those of *dominus* and *regnum*; but the nominative plural of nouns in *os* sometimes ends in *e*; as, *canephōræ*.

3. In early writers some nouns in *os* have a genitive in *ū* (*ou*); as, *Menandrū*. Ter.

4. A genitive plural in *ōn*, instead of *ōrum*, occurs in the titles of books and in some names of places; as, *Georgicōn*; *Phūēnōn aræ*. Sall.

5. Greek proper names in *eus* (see § 9, R. 3), are declined like *dominus*, except that the vocative ends in *eu*; but sometimes in the genitive, dative, and accusative also, they retain the Greek form, viz. gen. *ēōs*, dat. *ēi* (contracted *ēī*), acc. *ēā* or *ēā*, and are of the third declension. See §§ 86, and 306, (1.) So in Lucretius the neuter *pelāgus* (Greek *πέλαγος*, *es*) has an accusative plural *pelāgē* for *pelagea* after the third declension. § 83, 1.—See also respecting a genitive in *i* of some proper nouns in *es*, § 73, Rem.—*Panthū* occurs in Virgil, A. 2, 322, as the vocative of *Panthūs*. Cf. § 81.

### THIRD DECLENSION.

§ 55. The number of final letters, in this declension, is twelve. Five are vowels—*a, e, i, o, y*; and seven are consonants—*c, l, n, r, s, t, x*. The number of its final syllables exceeds fifty.

REM. The following terminations belong exclusively to Greek nouns; viz *na, i, y, ān, īn, ōn, ŷn, ēr, ŷr, ys, eus, yx, inx, ynax*, and plurals in *e*.

*Mode of declining Nouns of the Third Declension.*

To decline a word properly, in this declension, it is necessary to know its gender, its nominative singular, and one of its oblique cases; since the root of the cases is not always found entire and unchanged in the nominative. The case usually selected for this purpose is the genitive singular. The formation of the accusative singular, and of the nominative, accusative, and vocative plural, depends upon the gender: if it is masculine or feminine, these cases have one form; if neuter, another.

§ 56. The student should first fix well in his memory the terminations of one of these forms. He should next learn the nominative and genitive singular of the word which is to be declined. If *is* be removed from the genitive, the remainder will always be the root of the oblique cases, and by annexing their terminations to this root, the word is declined; thus, *rupes* genitive (found in the dictionary) *rupis*, root *rup*, dative *rupi*, etc.: *ars* gen. *artis*, root *art*, dat. *arti*, etc.; *opus* gen. *operis*, root *oper*, dat. *operi*, etc.

RULES FOR FORMING THE NOMINATIVE SINGULAR OF THE  
THIRD DECLENSION FROM THE ROOT.

I. Roots ending in *c, g; b, m, p; u, t, d*, and some in *r*, add *s* to form the nominative; as, *trābis*, *trabs*; *hiēmis*, *hiems*; *grūis*, *grus*.

REMARK 1. *T, d* and *r* before *s* are dropped; as, *nepōtis*, *nepos*; *laudis*, *laus*; *floris*, *flos*. So *Jovis*, *bos*, drops *v*.

REM. 2. *C* and *g* before *s* form *x*; as, *vocis*, *vox*; *regis*, *rex*. So *vs* forms *x* in *nivis*, *nix*. Cf. §§ 3, 2, and 171, 1.

REM. 3. Short *i* in the root before *c, b, p, t*, is commonly changed to *ē*; as, *pollicis*, *pollex*; *cēlibis*, *cēlebs*; *prīncipis*, *prīnceps*; *comitis*, *comēs*. So *ū* is changed to *ē* in *aucūpis*, *auceps*.

REM. 4. Short *ē* or *ō* before *r* in neuters is changed to *ū*; as, *genēris*, *genūs*; *tempōris*, *tempūs*.

REM. 5. Short *ē* before *r* is changed to *i* in the masculines *cīnēris*, *cīnis*; *cucūnēris*, *cucūmis*; *pulvērīs*, *pulvis*; *vomērīs*, *vōmis*.

REM. 6. A few and those mostly monosyllabic roots of masculines and feminines, not increasing in the genitive, add *es* or *is*, instead of *s* alone; as, gen. *rūpis*, nom. *rūpes*; gen. *auris*, nom. *auris*.

REM. 7. A few neuters add *ē* to the root to form the nominative; as, *rētis*, *rētē*; *māris*, *mārē*.

II. To roots ending in *l* and *n*, to some in *r* and *s*, and to those of most neuters in *t*, no addition is made in forming the nominative; as, *animālis*, *animal*; *canōnis*, *cānon*; *honōris*, *hōnor*; *assis*, *as*.

REMARK 1. Final *ōn* and *īn* in the roots of masculines and feminines, become *o* in the nominative; as, *sermōnis*, *sermo*; *arundinis*, *arundo*.

REM. 2. Final *īn* in the roots of neuters becomes *ēn* in the nominative; as, *flūminis*, *flūmēn*. So also in the masculines, *oscen*, *pecten*, *tibicen* and *tubicen*.

REM. 3. *Tr* and *br* at the end of a root, take *ē* between them in the nominative; as, *patris*, *pāter*; *imbris*, *imber*. Cf. §§ 108, 48, and 106.

REM. 4. Short *ō* is changed to *ū* in *ebōris*, *ēbūr*; *femōris*, *fēmūr*; *jecōris*, *jēcūr*; and *robōris*, *rōbūr*.

REM. 5. In the roots of neuters *at* drops *t*, and *it* becomes *ut* in the nominative; as, *poēmātis*, *poēma*; *capitis*, *caput*.

REM. 6. Roots of this class ending in repeated consonants drop one of these in the nominative; as, *fellis*, *fel*; *farris*, *far*; *assis*, *as*; *bessis*, *bes*.

The following are the two forms of termination in this declension:—

<i>Singular.</i>		<i>Plural</i>	
<i>Masc. and Fem.</i>	<i>Neut.</i>	<i>Masc. and Fem.</i>	<i>Neut.</i>
<i>N.</i> *	*	<i>N.</i> ēs,	ā, (iā),
<i>G.</i> īs,	īs,	<i>G.</i> ūm, (iūm),	ūm, (iūm),
<i>D.</i> ī,	ī,	<i>D.</i> ībūs,	ībūs,
<i>Ac.</i> ēm, (īm),	*	<i>Ac.</i> ēs,	ā, (iā),
<i>V.</i> *	*	<i>V.</i> ēs,	ā, (iā),
<i>Ab.</i> ē, (ī).	ē, (ī).	<i>Ab.</i> ībūs.	ībūs.

The asterisk stands for the nominative, and for those cases which are like it.

§ 57. The following are examples of the most common forms of nouns of this declension, declined through all their cases.

Hōnor, *honor*; masc.

<i>Singular.</i>	<i>Plural.</i>
<i>N.</i> ho'-nor,	ho-nō'-rēs,
<i>G.</i> ho-nō'-riš,	ho-nō'-rum,
<i>D.</i> ho-nō'-ri,	ho-nor'-ī-bus,
<i>Ac.</i> ho-nō'-rem,	ho-nō'-res,
<i>V.</i> ho'-nor,	ho-nō'-res,
<i>Ab.</i> ho-nō'-re.	ho-nor'-ī-bus.

Rūpes, *a rock*; fem.

<i>Singular.</i>	<i>Plural.</i>
<i>N.</i> ru'-pes,	ru'-pes,
<i>G.</i> ru'-pis,	ru'-pi-um,
<i>D.</i> ru'-pi,	ru'-pī-bus,
<i>Ac.</i> ru'-pem,	ru'-pes,
<i>V.</i> ru'-pes,	ru'-pes,
<i>Ab.</i> ru'-pe.	ru'-pī-bus.

Ars, *art*; fem.

<i>Singular.</i>	<i>Plural.</i>
<i>N.</i> ars,	ar'-tes,
<i>G.</i> ar'-tis,	ar'-ti-um,*
<i>D.</i> ar'-ti,	ar'-tī-bus,
<i>Ac.</i> ar'-tem,	ar'-tes,
<i>V.</i> ars,	ar'-tes,
<i>Ab.</i> ar'-te.	ar'-tī-bus.

Sermo, *speech*; masc.

<i>Singular.</i>	<i>Plural.</i>
<i>N.</i> ser'-mo,	ser-mō'-nes,
<i>G.</i> ser-mō'-nis,	ser-mō'-num,
<i>D.</i> ser-mō'-ni,	ser-mon'-ī-bus,
<i>Ac.</i> ser-mō'-nem,	ser-mō'-nes,
<i>V.</i> ser'-mo,	ser-mō'-nes,
<i>Ab.</i> ser-mō'-ne.	ser-mon'-ī-bus.

Turris, *a tower*; fem.

<i>Singular.</i>	<i>Plural.</i>
<i>N.</i> tur'-ris,	tur'-res,
<i>G.</i> tur'-ris,	tur'-ri-um,
<i>D.</i> tur'-ri,	tur'-rī-bus,
<i>Ac.</i> tur'-rim, rem,	tur'-res,
<i>V.</i> tur'-ris,	tur'-res,
<i>Ab.</i> tur'-ri, or re.	tur'-rī-bus.

Nox, *night*; fem.

<i>Singular.</i>	<i>Plural.</i>
<i>N.</i> nox,	noc'-tes,
<i>G.</i> noc'-tis,	noc'-ti-um,*
<i>D.</i> noc'-ti,	noc'-tī-bus,
<i>Ac.</i> noc'-tem,	noc'-tes,
<i>V.</i> nox,	noc'-tes,
<i>Ab.</i> noc'-te.	noc'-tī-bus.

Miles, *a soldier*; com.gen.

<i>Singular.</i>	<i>Plural.</i>
<i>N.</i> mi'-les,	mil'-ī-tes,
<i>G.</i> mil'-ī-tis,	mil'-ī-tum,
<i>D.</i> mil'-ī-ti,	mi-lit'-ī-bus,
<i>Ac.</i> mil'-ī-tem,	mil'-ī-tes,
<i>V.</i> mi'-les,	mil'-ī-tes,
<i>Ab.</i> mil'-ī-te.	mi-lit'-ī-bus.

Pāter, *a father*; masc.

<i>Singular.</i>	<i>Plural.</i>
<i>N.</i> pa'-ter,	pa'-tres,
<i>G.</i> pa'-tris,	pa'-trum,
<i>D.</i> pa'-tri,	pat'rī-bus,
<i>Ac.</i> pa'-trem,	pa'-tres,
<i>V.</i> pa'-ter,	pa'-tres,
<i>Ab.</i> pa'-tre.	pat'rī-bus.

\* Pronounced ar'-she-um, noc'-she-um. See § 12.



*Sēdile, a seat; neut.*

<i>Singular.</i>	<i>Plural.</i>
<i>N.</i> se-dī'-le,	se-dil'-i-a,
<i>G.</i> se-dī'-lis,	se-dil'-i-um,
<i>D.</i> se-dī'-li,	se-dil'-i-bus,
<i>Ac.</i> se-dī'-le,	se-dil'-i-a,
<i>V.</i> se-dī'-le,	se-dil'-i-a.
<i>Ab.</i> se-dī'-li.	se-dil'-i-bus.

*Carmen, a verse; neut.*

<i>Singular.</i>	<i>Plural.</i>
<i>N.</i> car'-men,	car'-mī-na,
<i>G.</i> car'-mī-nis,	car'-mī-num,
<i>D.</i> car'-mī-ni,	car-min'-i-bus,
<i>Ac.</i> car'-men,	car'-mī-na,
<i>V.</i> car'-men,	car'-mī-na,
<i>Ab.</i> car'-mī-ne.	car-min'-i-bus.

*Iter, a journey; neut.*

<i>Singular.</i>	<i>Plural.</i>
<i>N.</i> i'-ter,	i-tin'-ē-ra,
<i>G.</i> i-tin'-ē-ris,	i-tin'-ē-rum,
<i>D.</i> i-tin'-ē-ri,	it-i-ner'-i-bus,
<i>Ac.</i> i'-ter,	i-tin'-ē-ra,
<i>V.</i> i'-ter,	i-tin'-ē-ra,
<i>Ab.</i> i-tin'-ē-re.	it-i-ner'-i-bus.

*Lāpis, a stone; masc.*

<i>Singular.</i>	<i>Plural.</i>
<i>N.</i> la'-pis,	lap'-i-des,
<i>G.</i> lap'-i-dis,	lap'-i-dum,
<i>D.</i> lap'-i-di,	la-pid'-i-bus,
<i>Ac.</i> lap'-i-dem,	lap'-i-des,
<i>V.</i> la'-pis,	lap'-i-des,
<i>Ab.</i> lap'-i-de.	la-pid'-i-bus.

*Virgo, a virgin; fem.*

<i>Singular.</i>	<i>Plural.</i>
<i>N.</i> vir'-go,	vir'-gī-nes,
<i>G.</i> vir'-gī-nis,	vir'-gī-num,
<i>D.</i> vir'-gī-ni,	vir-gin'-i-bus,
<i>Ac.</i> vir'-gī-nem,	vir'-gī-nes,
<i>V.</i> vir'-go,	vir'-gī-nes,
<i>Ab.</i> vir'-gī-ne.	vir-gin'-i-bus.

*Animāl, an animal; neut.*

<i>Singular.</i>	<i>Plural.</i>
<i>N.</i> ān'-ī-mal,	an-i-mā'-li-a,
<i>G.</i> an-i-mā'-lis,	an-i-mā'-li-um,
<i>D.</i> an-i-mā'-li,	an-i-mal'-i-bus,
<i>Ac.</i> an'-ī-mal,	an-i-mā'-li-a,
<i>V.</i> an'-ī-mal,	an-i-mā'-li-a,
<i>Ab.</i> an-i-mā'-li.	an-i-mal'-i-bus.

*Opus, work; neut.*

<i>Singular.</i>	<i>Plural.</i>
<i>N.</i> ō'-pus,	op'-ē-ra,
<i>G.</i> op'-ē-ris,	op'-ē-rum.
<i>D.</i> op'-ē-ri,	o-per'-i-bus,
<i>Ac.</i> o'-pus,	op'-ē-ra,
<i>V.</i> o'-pus,	op'-ē-ra,
<i>Ab.</i> op'-ē-re.	o-per'-i-bus.

*Cāput, a head; neut.*

<i>Singular.</i>	<i>Plural.</i>
<i>N.</i> ca'-put,	cap'-i-ta,
<i>G.</i> cap'-i-tis,	cap'-i-tum,
<i>D.</i> cap'-i-ti,	ca-pit'-i-bus,
<i>Ac.</i> ca'-put,	cap'-i-ta,
<i>V.</i> ca'-put,	cap'-i-ta,
<i>Ab.</i> cap'-i-te.	ca-pit'-i-bus.

*Poēma, a poem; neut.*

<i>Singular.</i>	<i>Plural.</i>
<i>N.</i> po-ē'-ma,	po-em'-ā-ta,
<i>G.</i> po-em'-ā-tis,	po-em'-ā-tum,
<i>D.</i> po-em'-ā-ti,	po-e-mat'-i-bus, or po-em'-ā-tis,
<i>Ac.</i> po-ē'-ma,	po-em'-ā-ta,
<i>V.</i> po-ē'-ma,	po-em'-ā-ta,
<i>Ab.</i> po-em'-ā-te.	po-e-mat'-i-bus, or po-em'-ā-tis,

## RULES FOR THE GENDER OF NOUNS OF THE THIRD DECLENSION

§ 58. Nouns whose gender is determined by their signification, according to the general rules, § 28-34, are not included in the following rules and exceptions.

## MASCULINES.

Nouns ending in *o*, *er*, *or*, *es* increasing in the genitive, *os*, and *n*, are masculine; as,

*sermo*, speech; *dolor*, pain; *flos*, a flower; *carcer*, a prison; *pes*, a foot; *canon*, a rule.

## Exceptions in O.

§ 59. 1. Abstract and collective nouns in *io* are feminine; as, *ratio*, reason; *legio*, a legion.

REM. 1. But numerals in *io*; as, *binio*, *trinio*, etc., except *unio*, unity, are masculine.

2. Nouns in *do* and *go*, of more than two syllables, are feminine, as, *arundo*, a reed; *imāgo*, an image. So also *grando*, hail. But *comēdo*, a glutton; *unēdo*, the arbuté tree; and *harpāgo*, a grappling hook, are masculine.

REM. 2. *Margo*, the brink of a river, is doubtful. *Cupīdo*, desire, is often masculine in poetry, but in prose is always feminine.

3. *Uiro*, flesh, and Greek nouns in *o*, are feminine; as, *ēcho*, an echo. *Būbo*, the owl, is once feminine, Virg. A. 4, 462.

## Exceptions in ER.

§ 60. 1. *Laver*, a water plant, and *tūber*, the tuber tree, are feminine, but when the latter denotes the fruit, it is masculine. *Linter*, a boat, is feminine, and once, in Tibullus, masculine. *Siser*, skirret, is neuter in the singular, but masculine in the plural.

2. The following, in *er*, are neuter:—

<i>Acer</i> , a maple-tree.	<i>Papāver</i> , a poppy.	<i>Tūber</i> , a swelling.
<i>Cadāver</i> , a dead body.	<i>Piper</i> , pepper.	<i>Uber</i> , a teat.
<i>Cicer</i> , a vetch.	<i>Siler</i> , an osier.	<i>Ver</i> , the spring.
<i>Iter</i> , a journey.	<i>Spinther</i> , a clasp.	<i>Verber</i> , a scourge.
<i>Lāser</i> , <i>assafœtida</i> .	<i>Sūber</i> , a cork-tree.	<i>Zingiber</i> , ginger.

## Exceptions in OR.

§ 61. *Arbor*, a tree, is feminine: *ādor*, spelt; *æquor*, the sea; *marmor*, marble; and *cor*, the heart, are neuter.

## Exceptions in ES increasing in the genitive.

1. The following are feminine:—

<i>Compes</i> , a fetter.	<i>Quies</i> , and <i>Requies</i> , rest.	<i>Tēges</i> , a mat.
<i>Mercēs</i> , a reward.	<i>Inquies</i> , restlessness.	
<i>Mergēs</i> , a sheaf of corn.	<i>Sēges</i> , growing corn.	

2. *Ales*, a bird; *cōmes*, a companion; *hospes*, a guest; *interpretēs*, an interpreter; *miles*, a soldier; *obsēs*, a hostage; *præses*, a president; and *satelles*, a life-guard, are common, § 30. *Æs*, brass, is neuter.

*Exceptions in OS.*

3. *Arbores*, a tree; *cos*, a whetstone; *dos*, a dowry; *ecce*, the morning; and rarely *nēpos*, a grandchild, are feminine: *sacerdos*, *custos*, and *bos* are common § 30: *os*, the mouth, and *os*, a bone, are neuter; as are also the Greek words *ēpos*, epic poetry; and *mēlos*, melody.

*Exceptions in N.*

4. Nouns in *men* with four in *n* are neuter—*glūten*, glue; *inguen*, the groin; *pollen*, fine flour; and *unguen*, ointment.

5. Four nouns in *on* are feminine—*aēdon*, a nightingale; *halcyon*, a kingfisher; *icon*, an image; and *sinclon*, muslin.

## F E M I N I N E S .

§ 62. Nouns ending in *as*, *es* not increasing in the genitive, *is*, *ys*, *aus*, *s* preceded by a consonant, and *x*, are feminine; *as*,

*ætas*, age; *nūbes*, a cloud; *āvis*, a bird; *chlām̄ys*, a cloak; *laus*, praise; *trabs* a beam; *pax*, peace.

*Exceptions in AS.*

1. *Mas*, a male, *vas*, a surety, and *as*, a piece of money, or any unit divisible into twelve parts, are masculine. Greek nouns in *as*, *antis*, are also masculine; as, *adāmas*, adamant. So also *Mēlas*, the name of a river, § 28, 2. *Arcae* and *Nōmas* are common.—2. *Vas*, a vessel, the indeclinable nouns, *fas* and *nēfas*, and Greek nouns in *as*, *ālis*, are neuter; as, *artocreas*, a meat-pie; *bucēras*, a species of herb.

*Exceptions in ES not increasing in the genitive.*

3. *Acēnāces*, a scimitar, and *cōles* or *cōlis*, a stalk, are masculine. *Antistes*, *palumbes*, *vātes*, and *vepres*, are masculine or feminine. *Cucoēthes*, *hippomānes*, *nepēnthes*, and *panāces*, Greek words, are neuter.

*Exceptions in IS.*

§ 63. 1. Latin nouns in *nis* are masculine or doubtful.

(1.) Masc. *Crīnis*, hair; *ignis*, fire; *pānis*, bread; *mānes*, (plur.), departed spirits.—(2.) Masc. or fem. *Amnis*, a river; *cīnis*, ashes; *fīnis*, an end; *clūnis* the haunch; *cānis*, a dog; *fūnis*, a rope. The plurals, *cinēres*, the ashes of the dead, and *fīnes*, boundaries, are always masculine.

2. The following are common or doubtful:—

*Anguis*, a snake.

*Callis*, a path.

*Canālis*, a conduit pipe.

*Contubernālis*, a comrade.

*Corbis*, a basket.

*Pollis*, fine flour.

*Pulvis*, dust.

*Scrōbis*, a ditch.

*Tigris*, a tiger.

*Torquis*, a chain.

3. The following are masculine:—

*Axis*, an axle.

*Aquālis*, a water-pot.

*Cassis*, a net.

*Caulis*, or } a stalk.

*Cōlis*,

*Cenchris*, a serpent.

*Collis*, a hill.

*Cucūmis*, a cucumber.

*Ensis*, a sword.

*Fascis*, a bundle.

*Follis*, a pair of bellows.

*Fustis*, a club.

*Glis*, a dormouse.

*Lāpis*, a stone.

*Lemūres*, pl., spectres.



Mensis, *a month*.  
 Mugilis, *a mullet*.  
 Orbis, *a circle*.  
 Piscis, *a fish*.  
 Postis, *a post*.  
 Quiris, *a Roman*.  
 Samnis, *a Samnite*.

Sanguis, *blood*.  
 Sēnis, or  
 Semissis,  
 Bessis, } compounds  
 Centussis, } of as.  
 Decussis,  
 Tressis, }

Sentis, *a brier*.  
 Sodālis, *a companion*.  
 Torris, *a firebrand*.  
 Unguis, *a nail*.  
 Vectis, *a lever*.  
 Vermis, *a worm*.  
 Vōmis, *a ploughshare*.

4. Names of male beings, rivers, and months in *is* are masculine as, *Dis*, *Pluto*; *Anūbis*, an Egyptian deity; *Tigris*, the river *Tigris*; *Aprīlis*, *April*. See § 28.

### Exceptions in *YS*.

Names of rivers and mountains in *ys* are masculine; as, *Hālys*, *Othrys*. See § 28, 2 and 3

### Exceptions in *S* preceded by a consonant.

§ 64. 1. *Dens*, a tooth; *fons*, a fountain; *mons*, a mountain; and *pens*, a bridge, are masculine. So also are *auceps*, a bird-catcher; *chālybs*, steel; *cliens*, a client; *ellops*, a kind of fish; *ēpops*, a hoopoe; *gryps*, a griffin; *hydrops*, the dropsy; *mērops*, a kind of bird. *Rūdens*, a rope, is masculine and very rarely feminine.

2. The following nouns also are masculine, viz. (a.) these which are properly adjectives—*confluens* and *torrens*, scil. *amnis*; *occidens* and *oriens*, scil. *sol*; (b.) compounds of *dens*—*tridens*, a trident, and *bidens*, a two-pronged mattock;—but *bidens*, a sheep, is feminine; (c.) the parts of *as* ending in *ns*; as, *sextans*, *quadrans*, *triens*, *dodrans*, and *dextans*.

3. The following are common or doubtful:—

Adeps, <i>grease</i> .	Seps, <i>a kind of serpent</i> .	Serpens, <i>a serpent</i> .
Forceps, <i>pincers</i> .	Scrobs, <i>a ditch</i> .	Stirps, <i>the trunk of a tree</i> .

*Animans* an animal, which is properly an adjective, is masculine, feminine, or neuter.

### Exceptions in *X*.

§ 65. 1. *AX*. *Anthrax*, cinnabar; *cōrax*, a raven; *cordax*, a kind of dance; *drōpax*, an ointment; *stīrax*, a kind of tree; *thōrax*, a breast-plate; and *Atax*, the river *Aude*, are masculine; *līmax*, a snail, is common.

2. *EX*. Nouns in *ex* are masculine, except *fax*, *forfex*, *lex*, *nex*, *prex*, (obsolete in nom. and gen. sing.), and *supellex*, which are feminine; to which add (§ 29) *cārex*, *īlex*, *mūrex*, *pellex*, and *vītex*. *Atriplex* is neuter and very rarely masculine or feminine. *Alex*, a fish-pickle; *cortex*, bark; *imbrex*, a gutter-tile; *ōbex*, a bolt; and *silex*, a flint, are doubtful: *sēnex*, an old person; *grēx*, a herd; *rūmex*, sorrel; and *pūmex*, pumice-stone, are masculine and very rarely feminine.

3. *IX*. *Cūlix*, a cup; *formix*, an arc; *phāenix*, a kind of bird; and *spādix*, a palm-branch, are masculine: *lārīx*, the larch-tree; *perdix*, a partridge; and *tōrix*, a swollen vein, are masculine or feminine.

4. *OX*. *Box* and *ēsox*, names of fishes, are masculine.

5. *UX*. *Trādux*, a vine-branch, is masculine.

6. *YX*. *Bombyx*, a silk-worm; *cūlyx*, the bud of a flower; *coccyx*, a cuckoo; *eryx*, a wild goat, and names of mountains in *yx*, as *Eryx*, are masculine. *Onyx*, a box made of the onyx-stone, and *sardōnyx*, a precious stone; also, *calx*, the heel, and *calx*, lime; *lynx*, a lynx, and *sandyx*, a kind of color, are masculine or feminine.

NOTE. *Bombyx*, when it signifies silk, is doubtful.

7. *Quincunx*, *septunx*, *dēcunx*, *deunx*, parts of *as*, are masculine.

## NEUTERS.

§ 66. Nouns ending in *a, e, i, y, c, l, t, ar, ur, us*, and *men* are neuter; as,

*diadēma*, a crown; *rēte*, a net; *hydromēli*, mead; *lac*, milk; *vectigal*, revenue; *cāput*, the head; *calcar*, a spur; *guttur*, the throat; *pectus*, the breast; and *flūmen*, a river.

*Exceptions in L, C, and E.*

*Mūgil*, a mullet, and *sol*, the sun, are masculine. *Sal*, salt, is masculine or neuter in the singular; but, in the plural, it is always masculine. *Lac* is neuter and rarely masculine. *Præneste* is neuter, and once in Virgil feminine.

*Exceptions in AR and UR.*

§ 67. *Furfur*, bran; *sālar*, a trout; *turtur*, a turtle dove; and *vultur*, a vulture, are masculine.

*Exceptions in US.*

1. *Lēpus*, a hare; and Greek nouns in *pus* (πῶς), are masculine; as, *tripus*, a tripod; but *lagōpus*, a kind of bird, is feminine.

2. Nouns in *us*, having *ūtis*, or *ūdis*, in the genitive, are feminine as, *juventus*, youth; *incus*, an anvil.

3. *Pecus*, -*ūdis*, a brute animal, and *tellus*, the earth, are feminine. *Pessinus*, and *Selinus*, names of towns, are also feminine. See § 29.

4. *Grus*, a crane; *mus*, a mouse; and *sus*, a swine, are masculine or feminine.

5. *Rhus*, sumach, is masculine, and rarely feminine.

## RULES FOR THE OBLIQUE CASES OF NOUNS OF THE THIRD DECLENSION.

## GENITIVE SINGULAR.

§ 68. 1. The genitive singular of the third declension of *Latin* nouns always ends in *is*; in *Greek* nouns it sometimes ends in *os* and *us*.

## A.

2. Nouns in *a* form their genitive in *ātis*; as, *di-a-dē-ma*, *di-a-dem'-ā-tis*, a crown; *dog'-ma*, *dog'-mā-tis*, an opinion.

## E.

3. Nouns in *e* change *e* into *is*; as, *rē-te*, *rē-tis*, a net; *se-dē-le*, *se-dē'-lis*, a seat.

## I.

4. Nouns in *i* are of Greek origin, and are generally indeclinable; but *hydromēli*, mead, has *hyd-ro-mel'-i-tis* in the genitive.

## O.

§ 69. Nouns in *o* form their genitive in *ōnis*; as, *ser'-mo*, *ser-mō-nis*, speech; *pā'-vo*, *pa-vō'-nis*, a peacock.

REMARK. Patrials in *o* have *ōnis*; as, *Macēdo*, *-ōnis*; but some have *ōnis*, as, *Eburōnes*, etc. See 3d exception to increments in *O*, § 287.

Exc. 1. Nouns in *do* and *go* form their genitive in *īnis*; as, *a-run'* *do*, *a-run'-dī-nis*, a reed; *i-mā'-go*, *i-mag'-ī-nis*, an image.

But four dissyllables—*cūdo*, *ūdo*, *ligo* and *mango*; and three trisyllables—*comēdo*, *unēdo*, and *harpāgo*, have *ōnis*.

Exc. 2. The following nouns, also, have *īnis*:—*Apollo*; *hōmo*, a man; *nēmo*, nobody; and *turbo*, a whirlwind.

*Cūro*, flesh, has, by syncope, *carnis*. *Anio*, the name of a river, has *Aniēnis*; *Neris*, the wife of Mars, *Neriēnis*; from the old nominatives, *Anien*, and *Neriēnes*.

Exc. 3. Some Greek nouns in *o* form their genitive in *ūs*, and their other cases singular, in *o*; as, *Dido*, gen. *Dulus*, dat. *Dido*, etc.; *Argo*, *-us*; but they are sometimes declined regularly; as, *Dido*, *Didōnis*.

## Y.

Greek nouns in *y* have their genitive in *yois*; as, *misy*, *misȳois*, or, by contraction, *misys*.

## C.

§ 70. The only nouns in *c* are *ā'-lec*, *a-lē'-cis*, fish-brine, and *lac*, *lac'-tis*, milk.

## L. N. R.

Nouns in *l*, *n*, and *r*, form their genitive by adding *is*; as, *con'-sul*, *con'-sū-lis*, a consul; *cā'-non*, *can'-ō-nis*, a rule; *hō'-nor*, *ho-nō'-ris*, honor.

So, *An'-i-mal*, *an-i-mā'-lis*, an animal.  
*Vi'-gil*, *vig'-i-lis*, a watchman.  
*Ti'-tan*, *Ti-tā'-nis*, *Titan*.  
*Si'-ren*, *Si-rē'-nis*, a Siren.  
*Del'-phin*, *del-phī'-nis*, a dolphin.

*Cal'-car*, *cal-cā'-ris*, a spur.  
*Car'-cer*, *car'-cē-ris*, a prison.  
*A'-mor*, *a-mō'-ris*, love.  
*Gut'-tur*, *gut'-tū-ris*, the throat.  
*Mar'-tyr*, *mar'-tȳ-ris*, a martyr.

### Exceptions in L.

*Fel*, gall, and *mel*, honey, double *l* before *is*, making *fellis* and *mellis*.

### Exceptions in N.

§ 71. 1. Neuters in *en* form their genitive in *īnis*; as, *flū'-men*, *flū'-mī-nis*, a river; *glū'-ten*, *glū'-tī-nis*, glue.

The following masculines, also, form their genitive in *īnis*:—*oscen*, a bird which foretold by its notes; *pecten*, a comb; *tibicen*, a piper; and *tubicen*, a trumpeter.

2. Some Greek nouns in *ōn* form their genitive in *ontis*; as, *Laomēdon*, *Lac-medontis*. Some in *in* and *yn* add *is* or *os*; as, *Trāchin*, or *Trāchyn*, *Trachinīs* or *Trachȳnos*.

### Exceptions in R.

1. Nouns in *ter* drop *e* in the genitive; as, *pā'-ter*, *pa'-tris*, a father. So also *inber*, a shower, and names of months in *ber*; as, *Octōber* *Octōbris*.



But *crāter*, a cup; *sōter*, a savior; and *lāter*, a brick, retain *e* in the genitive.

2. *Far*, a kind of corn, has *farris*; *hēpar*, the liver, *hepātis*: *Lar* or *Lars*, *Lartis*; *iter*, a journey, has *itinēris* from the old nominative *itiner*; *Jupiter Jōvis*; and *cor*, the heart, *cordis*.

3. These four in *ur* have *ōris* in the genitive:—*ēbur*, ivory; *fēmur*, the thigh; *jēcū*, the liver; *rōbur*, strength.

*Fēmur* has also *feminis*, and *jēcū*, *jecinōris*, and *jocinōris*.

## AS.

§ 72. Nouns in *as* form their genitive in *ātis*; as, *æ'-tas*, *æ-tā-lis*, age; *pī-ē-tas*, *pi-e-tā'-tis*, piety.

Exc. 1. *As* has *assis*; *mās*, a male, *māris*; *ras*, a surety, *vādis*; and *vās*, a vessel, *vāsis*. *Anas*, a duck, has *anātis*.

Exc. 2. Greek nouns in *as* form their genitive according to their gender; the masculines in *antis*, the feminines in *ādīs* or *ādos*, and the neuters in *ātis*; as, *adīmas*, *-antis*, adamant; *lampas*, *-ādīs*, a lamp; *Pallas*, *-ādīs* or *-ādos*; *bucē-ras*, *-ātis*, a species of herb. *Arcas*, an Arcadian, and *Nōmas*, a Numidian, which are of the common gender, form their genitive in *ādīs*. *Mēlas*, the name of a river, has *Melānis*.

## ES.

§ 73. 1. Nouns in *es* form their genitive by changing *es* into *īs*, *ītis*, *ētis*, or *ētis*; as, *rū'-pes*, *ru'-pis*, a rock; *mī'-les*, *mil'-ī-tis*, a soldier; *sē'-ges*, *seg'-ē-tis*, growing corn; *quī'-es*, *quī'-ē-tis*, rest.

REMARK. A few Greek proper names in *es* (gen. *īs*) sometimes form their genitive in *ei*, or, by contraction, *i*, after the second declension; as, *Achilles*, *īs*, *ei* or *-i*: and a few in *æ* after the first declension; as, *Orestes*, *īs* or *æ*.

2. Those which make *ītis* are,

<i>Ales</i> , a bird.	<i>Gurges</i> , a whirlpool.	<i>Poples</i> , the ham.
<i>Ames</i> , a fowler's staff.	<i>Hospes</i> , a guest.	<i>Satelles</i> , a lifeguard.
<i>Antistes</i> , a priest.	<i>Limes</i> , a limit.	<i>Stīpes</i> , the stock of a tree.
<i>Cæspes</i> , a turf.	<i>Merges</i> , a sheaf of corn.	<i>Termes</i> , an olive bough.
<i>Cōmes</i> , a companion.	<i>Mīles</i> , a soldier.	<i>Trāmes</i> , a by-path.
<i>Eques</i> , a horseman.	<i>Palmes</i> , a vine-branch.	<i>Vēles</i> , a skirmisher.
<i>Fōmes</i> , touchwood.	<i>Pēdes</i> , a foot-soldier.	

3. The following have *ētis*:—*abies*, a fir-tree; *aries*, a ram; *indīges*, a man deified; *interpres*, an interpreter; *paries*, a wall; *sēges*, a corn-field; and *tēges*, a mat.

4. The following have *ētis*:—*Cēbes*; *Cres*, a Cretan; *lēbes*, a caldron; *mag-nes*, a loadstone; *quies* and *requies*, rest; *inquiēs*, restlessness; and *tāpes* (used only in acc. and abl.), tapestry.—Some Greek proper names have either *ētis* or *īs* in the genitive; as, *Chrēmes*, *-ētis*, or *-īs*. *Dāres*, *-ētis*, or *-īs*.

Exc. 1. *Obses*, a hostage, and *præses*, a president, have *īdis*. *Fēres*, an heir and *merces*, a reward, have *ēdis*; *pes*, a foot, and its compounds, have *ēdis*.

Exc. 2. *Cēres* has *Cerēris*; *bes*, *bessis*; *præs*, *prædis*; and *æs*, *æris*.

## IS.

§ 74. Nouns in *is* have their genitive the same as the nominative; as, *au'-ris*, *ai'-ris*, the ear; *ā'-vis*, *ā'-vis*, a bird.

Exc. 1. The following have the genitive in *ĕris*:—*cĭnis*, ashes; *pulvĭs*, dust; *vōmis* or *vōmer*, a ploughshare. *Cucūmis*, a cucumber, has *ĕris* and rarely *is*.

Exc. 2. The following have *idis*:—*cāpis*, a cup; *cassis*, a helmet; *cuspis*, a point; *lĭpis*, a stone; and *prōmulsis*, an antepast.

Exc. 3. Two have *inis*:—*pollis*, fine flour, and *sanguis* or *sanguen*, blood.

Exc. 4. Four have *itis*:—*Dis*, Pluto; *lis*, strife; *Quiris*, a Roman; and *Samnis*, a Samnite.

Exc. 5. *Glis*, a dormouse, has *gliris*.

#### GREEK NOUNS.

1. Greek nouns in *is*, whose genitive ends in *ios* or *eos*, (*ιος* or *εως*), form their genitive in Latin in *is*; as (a.) verbals in *sis*; as, *basis*, *mathĕsis*, etc. (b.) compounds of *polis* (*πόλις*); as, *metropōlis*, *Neapōlis*, etc.; and (c.) a few other proper names, as *Charybdis*, *Lachĕsis*, *Syris*, etc. In some nouns of this class the Greek genitive is sometimes found; as, *Nemĕsis*, *Nemesios*.

2. Greek nouns in *is*, whose Greek genitive is in *idos* (*ιδος*), form their Latin genitive in *idis*; as, *agis*, *aspis*, *ephemĕris*, *pyrāmis*, *tyrannis*, *Ænĕis*, *Iris*, *Nerĕis*, etc. *Tigris* has both *is* and *idis*; and in some other words of this class later writers use *is* instead of *idis*.

3. *Chāris* has *Charĭtis*; *Salāmis*, *Salamĭnis*, and *Simōis*, *Simoentis*.

#### OS.

§ 75. Nouns in *ōs* form their genitive in *ōris* or *ōtis*; as, *flos*, *flō'-ris*, a flower; *nĕ'-pos*, *ne-pō'-tis*, a grandchild.

The following have *ōris*:—

<i>Flos</i> , a flower.	<i>Lābos</i> or <i>lābor</i> , labor.	<i>Os</i> , the mouth.
<i>Glos</i> , a husband's sister.	<i>Lēpos</i> or <i>lēpor</i> , wit.	<i>Ros</i> , dew.
<i>Hōnos</i> or <i>hōnor</i> , honor.	<i>Mos</i> , a custom.	

*Arbos* or *arbor*, a tree, has *ōris*.

The following have *ōtis*:—

<i>Cos</i> , a whetstone.	<i>Monocĕros</i> , a unicorn.	<i>Nĕpos</i> , a grandchild.
<i>Dos</i> , a dowry.	<i>Rhinocĕros</i> , a rhinoceros.	<i>Sacerdos</i> , a priest.

Exc. 1. *Custos*, a keeper, has *custōdis*; *bos*, an ox, *bōvis*; and *ōs*, a bone, *ossis*.

Exc. 2. Some Greek nouns in *os* have *ōis* in the genitive; as, *hēros*, a hero; *Minos*; *Tros*, a Trojan; and some Greek neuters in *os* are used in the third declension in the nominative and accusative only; as, *Argos*, *cĕtos*, *ēpos*, *mĕlos*.

#### US.

§ 76. 1. Nouns in *ūs* form their genitive in *ĕris* or *ōris*; as, *gĕ' nus*, *gĕn'-ĕ-ris*, a kind; *tem'-pus*, *tem'-pō-ris*, time.

2. Those which make *ĕris* are, *ācus*, (chaff), *fœdus*, *fūnus*, *gĕnnus*, *glōmus*, *lūtus*, *mūnus*, *ōlus*, *ōnus*, *opus*, *pondus*, *rādus*, *scĕlus*, *sidus*, *ulcus*, *velius*, *viscus* and *vulnus*. In early writers *pignus* has sometimes *pignĕris*.

3. Those which make *ōris* are, *corpus*, *dĕcus*, *dedĕcus*, *facinus*, *fīnus*, *frīgus*, *lĕpus*, *litus*, *nĕmus*, *pectus*, *pĕcus*, *pĕnus*, *pignus*, *stercus*, *tempus*, and *tergus*.

Exc. 1. These three in *ūs* have *ūdis*:—*incūs*, an anvil; *pālūs*, a morass; and *subcūs*, a dove-tail. *Pĕcūs*, a brute animal, has *pecūdis*.

Exc. 2. These five have *ūtis*:—*juventūs*, youth; *salūs*, safety; *senectūs*, old age; *servitūs*, slavery; *virtūs*, virtue.

Exc. 3. Monosyllables in *ūs* have *ūris*; as, *crus*, the leg; *jus*, right; *jus*, broth *mus*, a mouse; *pūs*, matter; *rūs*, the country; *tūs*, frankincense; except *grūs* and *sūs*, which have *gruis*, and *suis*; and *rhus*, which has *rhuīs* or *roris*. *Tellus* the earth, has *tellūris*; and *Ligus* or *Ligur*, a Ligurian, has *Ligūris*.

Exc. 4. *Fraus*, fraud, and *laus*, praise, have *fraudis*, *laudis*.

Exc. 5. Greek nouns in *pūs* (πῦς) have *ōdis*; as, *tripus*, *tripōdis*, a tripod, *Ædipus*, *-ōdis*; but this is sometimes of the second declension.

Exc. 6. Some Greek names of cities in *us* have *untis*; as, *Amāthus*, *Amathuntis*. So *Trapēzus*, *Opius*, *Pessinus*, and *Selinus*.

Exc. 7. Greek nouns ending in *eus* are all proper names, and have their genitive in *eos*; as, *Orpheus*, *-eos*. But these nouns are found also in the second declension; as, *Orpheus*, *-ēi* or *-ī*. Cf. § 64, 5.

## YS.

§ 77. 1. Nouns in *ys* are Greek, and make their genitive in *ŷis* (contracted *ŷs*), or, as in Greek, *ŷos* (ὄς); as,

*Cōtys*, gen. *Cotŷis* or *Cotŷs*; *Tēthys*, *-ŷis* or *ŷos*. So *Atys*, *Cāpys*, *Erinnys* *Hālys*, *Othrys*. A few have *ŷdis*; as, *chlāmŷs*, *chlāmŷdis*.

## S preceded by a consonant.

2. Nouns in *s*, with a consonant before it, form their genitive by changing *s* into *is* or *tis*; as, *trabs*, *trā'-bis*, a beam; *hŷ-ens*, *hŷ-ē-mis*, winter; *pars*, *par'-tis*, a part; *frons*, *fron'-tis*, the forehead.

(1.) Those in *bs*, *ms*, and *ps*; as, *scrobs*, *hiem̄s*, *surps*, change *s* into *is*; except *gryps*, a griffin, which has *grŷphis*.

REMARK. Compounds in *ceps* from *cāpio* have *īpis*; as, *princeps*, *principis*, a prince. But *auceps* has *aucūpis*.

(2.) Those in *ls*, *ns*, and *rs*, as, *puls*, *gens*, *ars*, change *s* into *tis*.

Exc. 1. The following in *ns* change *s* into *dis*:—*frons*, foliage: *glans*, an acorn; *juglans*, a walnut; *lens*, a nit; and *libripens*, a weigher.

Exc. 2. *Tīryns*, a town of Argolis, has *Tīrynthis* in the genitive.

## T.

§ 78. 1. Nouns in *t* form their genitive in *ītis*. They are, *cāput*, the head, gen. *cap'-ītis*; and its compounds, *occīput* and *sincīput*.

## X.

2. Nouns in *x* form their genitive by resolving *x* into *xs* or *gs*, and inserting *i* before *s*; as, *vox* (*vocs*) *vō'-cis*, the voice; *lex* (*legs*) *lē'-gis*, a law.

(1.) Latin nouns in *ax* have *ācis*; as, *fornax*, *fornācis*, except *fax*, *fācis*. Most Greek nouns in *ax* have *ācis*; as, *thōrax*, *thorācis*; a few have *ācis*; as, *cōrax*, *corācis*; and Greek names of men in *nax* have *nactis*; as, *Astyānax*, *Astyānactis*.

(2.) Nouns in *ex* have *īcis*; as, *jūdex*, *judicis*; *obex* has *obīcis* or *objicis*; and *vītex*, *vibicis*. *Nex*, *prex*, (nom. obs.), *rēsex* and *fenīsex* have *ēcis*; *ālax*, *nāthex*, and *rerrex* have *ēcis*, and *fāx*, *fācis*. *Lex* and *rex* have *ēgis*; *aquīlex* and *grēx* have *ēgis*; *rēmex* has *remīgis*; *sēnex*, *sēnis*; and *supellex*, *supellectilis*.



(8.) Nouns in *ix* have *icis*; as, *cervix*, *cervicis*; and less frequently *icis*; as, *calix*, *calicis*. But *nix* has *nivis*; *strix*, foreign names of men, and gentile nouns in *rix* have *igis*; as, *Bitūrix*, *Dumnōrix*, etc.

(4.) Nouns in *ox* have *ōcis*; as, *vox*, *vōcis*; but *Cappadox* has *Cappadōcis* *Allōbrox*, *Allobrogis*; and *nox*, *noctis*.

(5.) Of nouns in *ux*, *crux*, *dux*, *trādux*, and *nux* have *ūcis*; *lux* and *Pollux*, *ūcis*.—*Conjux* has *conjūgis*, *frux* (nom. obs.) *frūgis*, and *fauz*, *faucis*.

(3.) *Yx*, a Greek termination, has *ycis*, *ycis*, or *ygis*, *ygis*. *Onyx* and *sar dōnyx*, in which *x* is equivalent to *chs* (§ 3, 2) have *ychis*; as, *ōnyx*, *onychis*.

## DATIVE SINGULAR.

§ 79. The dative singular ends in *i*; as, *sermo*, dat. *sermōni*.

Anciently it also ended in *e*; as, *morte dātus*. Varro in Gellius. So *ore fleri*, Cic. and Liv.; and *jūre* for *jūri*. Liv.

## ACCUSATIVE SINGULAR.

(a.) The accusative singular of all neuter nouns is like the nominative.

(b.) The accusative singular of masculines and feminines, ends in *em*. Yet some Latin nouns in *is*, which do not increase in the genitive, have *im*, and some Greek nouns have *im*, *in*, or *a*.

1. Many proper names in *is*, denoting places, rivers, or gods, have the accusative singular in *im*; as, *Hispanis*, *Tibēris*, *Anūbis*; so also *Albis*, *Athēsis*, *Bætis*, *Arar* or *Arāris*, *Bilbilis*, *Apis*, *Osiris*, *Syrtis*, etc. These sometimes, also, make the accusative in *in*; as, *Albin*. *Scaldis* has *in* and *em*, and *Liris*, *im*, *in*, and *em*. *Liger* has *Ligērim*.

2. The following also have the accusative in *im* :—

<i>Amussis</i> , a mason's rule.	<i>Mephitis</i> , foul air.	<i>Sināpis</i> , mustard.
<i>Būris</i> , a plough-tail.	<i>Pelvis</i> , a basin.	<i>Sitis</i> , thirst.
<i>Cannābis</i> , hemp.	<i>Rāvis</i> , hoarseness.	<i>Tussis</i> , a cough.
<i>Cucūmis</i> , (gen. -is), a cucumber.	<i>Secūris</i> , an axe.	<i>Vis</i> , strength.

3. These have *im*, and sometimes *em* :—

*Febris*, a fever. *Puppis*, the stern. *Restis*, a rope. *Turris*, a tower.

But these have *em*, and rarely *im* :—

<i>Bipennis</i> , a battle-axe.	<i>Nāvis</i> , a ship.	<i>Sementis</i> , a sowing.
<i>Clāvis</i> , a key.	<i>Præsēpis</i> , a stall.	<i>Strigilis</i> , a flesh-brush.
<i>Messis</i> , a harvest.		

4. *Lens* and *pars* have rarely *lentim* and *partim*; and *crātim* from *crates*, as found in Plautus.

5. Early writers formed the accusative of some other nouns in *im*.

## Accusative of Greek Nouns.

§ 80. The accusative singular of masculine and feminine Greek nouns sometimes retains the Greek terminations *in* and *a*, but often ends, as in Latin, in *em* or *im*.

I. Masculine and feminine Greek nouns, whose genitive increases in *is* or *os*, *impure*, that is, with a consonant going before, have their accusative in *em* or *a*; as, *lampas*, *lampadis* (Greek -δος), *lampāda*; *chlāmys*, *chlamydis*, *chlāmýdem*, or *ýda*; *Helicon*, *Helicōnis*, *He'icōna*.

REMARK. In like manner these three, which have *is* pure in the genitive—*Trōs*, *Trōis*, *Trōem*, and *Trōa*, a Trojan; *hēros*, a hero; and *Minos*, a king of Crete.—*Aēr*, the air; *æther*, the sky; *delphin*, a dolphin; and *pean*, a hymn have usually *a*; as, *aëra*, *æthëra*, *delphina*, *peana*. *Pan*, a god, has only *a*.

Exc. 1. Masculines in *is*, whose genitive increases in *is* or *os* impure, have their accusative in *im* or *in*; sometimes in *idem*; *Pāris*, *Paridis*; *Parim*, or *Paridem*.

Exc. 2. Feminines in *is*, increasing impurely in the genitive, though they usually follow the rule, have sometimes *im* or *in*; as, *Elis*, *Elidis*; *Elin* or *Elidem*. So *tigris*, gen. *is* or *idis*; acc. *tigrim* or *tigrin*.

II. Masculine and feminine Greek nouns in *is* not increasing, and in *ys*, gen. *os*, form their accusative by changing the *s* of the nominative into *m* or *n*; as, *Charybdis*, (gen. Lat. *-is*, Gr. *ως*), acc. *Charybdim* or *-in*; *Hályis*, *-yis* or *-yos*, *Hálym* or *-yn*. So *rhus*, gen. *rhois*, has *rhum* or *rhum*.

III. Proper names ending in the diphthong *eus*, gen. *ēi* and *ēos*, have the accusative in *ea*; as, *Thēseus*, *Thesea*; *Týdens*, *Týdea*. See § 54, 5.

IV. Some Greek proper names in *es*, whose genitive is in *is*, have in Latin, along with the accusative in *em*, the termination *en*, as if of the first declension; as, *Achilles*, *Achillen*; *Xerxes*, *Xerxen*; *Sophōcles*, *Sophōclen*. Cf. § 45, 1. Some also, which have either *ētis* or *is* in the genitive, have, besides *etem*, *ēta*, or *em*, the termination *en*; as, *Chrēmes*, *Thāles*.

## VOCATIVE SINGULAR.

§ 81. The vocative is like the nominative.

REMARK. Many Greek nouns, however, particularly proper names, drop *s* of the nominative to form the vocative; as, *Daphnis*, *Daphni*; *Tēthys*, *Tethy*; *Melampus*, *Melampu*; *Orpheus*, *Orpheu*. Proper names in *es* (gen. *is*) sometimes have a vocative in *ē*, after the first declension; as, *Socrātes*, *Socrāte*. § 45, 1.

## ABLATIVE SINGULAR.

§ 82. The ablative singular commonly ends in *e*.

Exc. 1. (1.) Neuters in *e*, *al*, and *ar*, have the ablative in *i*; as, *sedile*, *sedili*; *animal*, *animāli*; *calcar*, *calcāri*.

(b.) But names of towns in *e*, and the following neuters in *ar*, have *e* in the ablative; viz. *baccar*, an herb; *far*, corn; *hōpar*, the liver; *jūbar*, a sunbeam; *nectar*, nectar; *par*, a pair. So, *sal*, salt, *Rēte*, a net has either *e* or *i*; *māre*, the sea, has sometimes in poetry *mare* in the ablative.

Exc. 2. (a.) Nouns which have *im* alone, or both *im* and *in* in the accusative, and names of months in *er* or *is*, have *i* in the ablative; as, *vis*, *vim*, *vi*; *Tibēris*, *-im*, *i*; *December*, *Decembri*; *Aprilis*, *Aprili*.

(b.) But *Bætis*, *cannābis*, and *sināpis*, have *e* or *i*. *Tigris*, the tiger, has *tigrīde*; as a river it has both *Tigrīde* and *Tigrī*.

Exc. 3. (a.) Nouns which have *em* or *im* in the accusative, have their ablative in *e* or *i*; as, *turrīs*, *turre* or *turri*.

(b.) So *Elis*, acc. *Elidem* and *Elin*, has *Elīde* or *Elī*. But *restis*, and most Greek nouns with *idis* in the genitive, have *e* only; as, *Pāris*, *-idis*, *-ide*.

Exc. 4. (a.) Adjectives in *is*, used as nouns, have commonly *i* in the ablative, but sometimes *e*; as, *fāmiliāris*, a friend; *natālis*, a birthday; *sodālis*, a companion; *trirēmīs*, a trireme.—Participles in *ns*, used as nouns, have commonly *e* in the ablative, but *contīnens* has *i*.

(b.) When adjectives in *is* become proper names, they always have *e*; as *Juvenālis*, *Juvenāle*. *Affinis* and *adilis* have generally *e*; as have always *juvenis*, a youth; *rūdis*, a rod; and *volūcris*, a bird.

Exc. 5. (a.) The following, though they have only *em* in the accusative have *e* or *i* in the ablative, but most of them have oftener *e* than *i*:—

Amnis,	Collis,	Ignis,	Pars,	Supellex,
Anguis,	Convallis,	Imber,	Postis,	Tridens,
Avis,	Corbis,	Mugilis,	Pūgil,	Unguis,
Bilis,	Finis,	Orbis,	Sordes,	Vectis,
Civis,	Fustis,	Ovis,	Sors,	Vesper.
Classis,				

(b.) *Occiput* has only *i*, and *rus* has either *e* or *i*; but *rure* commonly signifies from the country, and *ruri*, in the country. *Mel* has rarely *i*.

(c.) So also names of towns, when denoting the place where any thing is said to be, or to be done, have the ablative in *i*; as, *Carthagīni*, at Carthage; so, *Anxūri* and *Lacedæmōni*, and, in the most ancient writers, many other nouns occur with this termination in the ablative. *Cunālis* has *i*, and very rarely *e*.

Exc. 6. Nouns in *ys*, which have *ym* or *yn* in the accusative, have their ablative in *ye* or *y*; as, *Atys*, *Atye*, or *Aty*.

## NOMINATIVE PLURAL.

§ 83. I. The nominative plural of masculines and feminines ends in *es*; as, *sermōnes*, *rūpes*:—but neuters have *a*, and those whose ablative singular ends in *i* only, or in *e* and *i*, have *ia*; as, *cāput*, *capita*; *sedile*, *sedilia*; *rēte*, *retia*. *Aplustre* has both *a* and *ia*.

1. Some Greek neuters in *os* have *ē* in the nominative plural; as, *mēlos*; nom. plural, *mele*; (in Greek μέλη, by contraction μέλη). So *Tempe*.

## GENITIVE PLURAL.

II. The genitive plural commonly ends in *um*; sometimes in *ium*.

1. Nouns which, in the ablative singular, have *i* only, or both *e* and *i*, make the genitive plural in *ium*; as, *sedile*, *sedili*, *sedilium turris*, *turre* or *turri*, *turrium*.

2. Nouns in *es* and *is*, which do not increase in the genitive singular, have *ium*; as, *nūbes*, *nubium*; *hostis*, *hostium*.

Exc. *Cānis*, *juvēnis*, *fōris*, *mugilis*, *prōles*, *strues*, and *vātes*, have *um*; so oftener have *āpis*, *strigilis*, and *volūcris*; less frequently *mensis*, *sēdes*, and, in the poets *omy*, *ambāges*, *cādes*, *clādes*, *repres*, and *cālestis*.

3. Monosyllables ending in two consonants have *ium* in the genitive plural; as, *urbs*, *urbium*; *gens*, *gentium*; *arx*, *arcium*.

Exc. *Lynx*, *sphinx*, and *ops* (nom. obsolete) have *um*.

Most monosyllables in *s* and *x* pure have *um*, but the following have *ium*; *dos*, *mas*, *glis*, *lis*, *os* (*ossis*), *fauz*, (nom. obs.) *nix*, *nox*, *strix*, *vis*, generally *fraus* and *mus*; so also *fur* and *ren*, and sometimes *lar*.

4. Nouns of two or more syllables, in *ns* or *rs*, and names of nations in *as*, have commonly *ium*, but sometimes *um*; as, *cliens*, *clientium* or *clientum*, *Arpīnas*, *Arpinatium*.



1.) Other nouns in *as* generally have *um*, but sometimes *ium*; as, *ætas*, *ætātum* or *ætatium*. *Penātes* and *optimātes* have usually *ium*.

5. The following have *ium*:—*cāro*, *compes*, *linter*, *imber*, *ūter*, *venter*, *Sannīs*, *Quiris*, and usually *Insūber*. *Fornax* and *pūlus* have sometimes *ium*.

6. Greek nouns have generally *um*; as, *gīgas*, *gigantum*; *Arabs*, *Arabum*; *Thrax*, *Thracum*;—but a few, used as titles of books, have sometimes *ōn*; as, *Epigramma*, *epigrammātōn*; *Metamorphōsis*, *-eōn*. The patricial *Maleōn* also is found in Curtius, 4, 13.

REMARK 1. *Bos* has *boum* in the genitive plural.

REM. 2. Nouns which want the singular, form the genitive plural as if they were complete; as, *mānes*, *manium*; *cælites*, *cælitum*; *ilia*, *ilium*; as if from *mānis*, *cæles*, and *ile*. So also names of feasts in *alia*; as, *Saturnalia* *Saturnaliūm*; but these have sometimes *ōrum* after the second declension. *Ales* has sometimes, by epenthesis, *alituum*. See § 322, 3.

## DATIVE AND ABLATIVE PLURAL.

§ 84. The dative and ablative plural end in *ibus*.

Exc. 1. *Bos* has *bōbus* and *būbus*, by contraction, for *bovibus*; *sus* has *sūbus* by syncope, for *suibus*. § 322, 5, and 4.

Exc. 2. Greek nouns in *ma* have the dative and ablative plural more frequently in *is* than in *ibus*; as, *poēma*, *poēmātis*, or *poëmatibus*.

Exc. 3. The poets sometimes form the dative plural of Greek nouns, that increase in the genitive, in *si*, and, before a vowel, in *sin*; as, *herōis*, *heroidis*; *heroīsi*, or *heroīsin*. Ovid. So in Quintilian, *Metamorphosēsi*.

## ACCUSATIVE PLURAL.

§ 85. The accusative plural ends, like the nominative, in *ēs*, *ā*, *iū*.

Exc. 1. The accusative plural of masculines and feminines, whose genitive plural ends in *ium*, anciently ended in *is* or *ēis*, instead of *ēs*; as, *partes*, gen. *partium*, acc. *partēis* or *partēs*.

Exc. 2. Greek masculines and feminines, whose genitive increases in *is* or *as* impure, have their accusative in *as*; as, *lampas*, *lampadis*, *lampadas*. So also *hēros*, *herōis*, *herōas*, and some barbarian names of nations have a similar form, as, *Brigēas*, *Allobrōgas*.

*Jupīter*, and *vis*, strength, are thus declined:—

Singular.	Singular.	Plural.
N. Ju'-pī-ter,	N. vis,	vī'-res,
G. Jō'-vis,	G. vis,	vir'-i-um,
D. Jō'-vi,	D. —	vir'-i-bus,
Ac. Jō'-vem,	Ac. vim,	vī'-res,
V. Ju'-pī-ter,	V. vis,	vī'-res,
Ab. Jō'-ve.	Ab. v.	vir'-i-bus.



§ 86. The following table exhibits the principal forms of Greek nouns of the third declension:—

	Nom.	Gen.	Dat.	Acc.	Voc.	Abl.
S.	Lampas,	{ -ādis, -ādos, }	-ādi,	{ -ādem, -āda, }	-as,	-āde.
Pl.	-ādes,	-ādum,	-adībus,	{ -ādes, -ādas, }	-ādes,	-adībus.
S.	Hēros,	-ōis,	-ōi,	{ -ōem, -ōa, }	-os,	-ōe.
Pl.	-ōes,	-ōum,	-oībus,	{ -ōes, -ōas, }	-ōes,	-oībus.
	Chēlys,	{ -ŷis, ŷos, }	-ŷi,	{ -ym, -yn, }	-y,	-ŷe or y
	Poēsis,	{ -is, -ios, -ēos, }	-i,	{ -im, -in, }	-i,	-i.
	Achilles,	{ -is, -ei, -i, -ēos, }	-i,	{ -em, -ēa, ēn, }	-es, -ē,	-e or -i.
	Orpheus,	-ēos,	-ēi,	-ēa,	-eu,	See § 54.
	Aēr,	-ēris,	-ēri,	-ēra,	-er,	-ēre.
	Didō,	-ūs,	-ō,	-ō,	-ō,	-ō.

## FOURTH DECLENSION.

§ 87. Nouns of the fourth declension end in *us* and *u*. Those in *us* are masculine; those in *u* are neuter, and, except in the genitive, are indeclinable in the singular.

Nouns of this declension are thus declined:—

Fructus, <i>fruit</i> .		Cornu, <i>a horn</i> .	
Singular.	Plural.	Singular.	Plural.
N. fruc'-tūs,	fruc'-tūs,	N. cor'-nū,	cor'-nu-ā,
G. fruc'-tūs,	fruc'-tu-ūm,	G. cor'-nūs,	cor'-nu-ūm,
D. fruc'-tu-i,	fruc'-ti-būs,	D. cor'-nū,	cor'-ni-būs,
Ac. fruc'-tūm,	fruc'-tūs,	Ac. cor'-nū,	cor'-nu-ā,
V. fruc'-tūs,	fruc'-tūs,	V. cor'-nū,	cor'-nu-ā,
Ab. fruc'-tū.	fruc'-ti-būs.	Ab. cor'-nū.	cor'-ni-būs.

In like manner decline

Can'-tus, <i>a song</i> .	Fluc'-tus, <i>a wave</i> .	Se-rā'-tus, <i>the senate</i> .
Cur'-rus, <i>a chariot</i> .	Luc'-tus, <i>grief</i> .	Gē'-lu, <i>ice</i> . (in sing.)
Ex-er'-ci-tus, <i>an army</i> .	Mō'-tus, <i>motion</i> .	Vē'-ru, <i>a spit</i> .

## EXCEPTIONS IN GENDER.

§ 88. 1. The following are feminine:—

Acus, <i>a needle</i> .	Ficus, <i>a fig</i> .	Porticus, <i>a gallery</i> .
Dōmus, <i>a house</i> .	Mānus, <i>a hand</i> .	Tribus, <i>a tribe</i> .

*Œlus*, a distaff, and the plurals *Quinquātrus*, a feast of Minerva, and *Idus*, the Ides, are also feminine. So *noctu*, by night, found only in the ablative singular.

*Pēnus*, a store of provisions, when of the fourth declension, is masculine or feminine. *Sēcus*, sex, is neuter; see § 94. *Spēcus*, a den, is masculine and rarely feminine or neuter.

2. Some personal appellatives, and names of trees, are feminine by signification; as,

*Anus*, *nūrus*, *socrus*;—*cornus*, *laurus*, and *quercus*. *Myrtus* also is feminine and rarely masculine. See § 29, 1 and 2.

### EXCEPTIONS IN DECLENSION.

§ 89. *Dōmus*, a house, is partly of the fourth declension, and partly of the second. It is thus declined:—

Singular.	Plural.
N. <i>do'-mūs</i> ,	<i>do'-mūs</i> ,
G. <i>do'-mūs</i> , or <i>do'-mī</i> ,	<i>dom'-u-ūm</i> , or <i>do-mō'-rūm</i> ,
D. <i>dom'-u-ī</i> , or <i>do'-mō</i> .	<i>dom'-ī-būs</i> ,
Ac. <i>do'-mūm</i> ,	<i>do'-mūs</i> , or <i>do'-mōs</i> ,
V. <i>do'-mūs</i> ,	<i>do'-mūs</i> ,
Ab. <i>do'-mō</i> .	<i>dom'-ī-būs</i> .

(a.) *Domūs*, in the genitive, signifies, of a house; *domī* commonly signifies at home. The ablative *domu* is found in Plautus, and in ancient inscriptions. In the genitive and accusative plural the forms of the second declension are more used than those of the fourth.

(b.) *Cornus*, a cornel-tree; *ficus*, a fig, or a fig-tree; *laurus*, a laurel; and *myrtus*, a myrtle, are sometimes of the second declension. *Pēnus* is of the second, third or fourth declension.

(c.) Some nouns in *u* have also forms in *us* and *um*; as, *cornu*, *cornus*, or *cornum*. Adjectives, compounds of *manus*, are of the first and second declensions.

REMARK 1. Nouns of this declension anciently belonged to the third, and were formed by contraction, thus:—

Singular.	Plural.
N. <i>fructūs</i> ,	<i>fructuēs</i> , -ūs,
G. <i>fructuīs</i> , -ūs,	<i>fructuūm</i> , -ūm,
D. <i>fructui</i> , -ū,	<i>fructuībūs</i> , -ūbūs, or -ībūs,
Ac. <i>fructuēm</i> , -ūm,	<i>fructuēs</i> , -ūs,
V. <i>fructūs</i> ,	<i>fractuēs</i> , -ūs,
Ab. <i>fractuē</i> , -ū.	<i>fructuībūs</i> , -ūbūs, or -ībūs

2. The genitive singular in *is* is sometimes found in ancient authors; as, *anuis*, Ter. A genitive in *i*, after the second declension, also occurs; as, *senātus*, *senāti*; *tumultus*, *tumulti*. Sall.

3. The contracted form of the dative in *u* is not often used; yet it sometimes occurs, especially in Caesar, and in the poets.

4. The contracted form of the genitive plural in *um* rarely occurs.

5. The following nouns have *ūbus* in the dative and ablative plural:—

<i>Acus</i> , a needle.	<i>Artus</i> , a joint.	<i>Partus</i> , a birth.	<i>Spēcus</i> , a den.
<i>Arcus</i> , a bow.	<i>Lācus</i> , a lake.	<i>Pēcū</i> , a flock.	<i>Tribus</i> , a tribe.

*Gēnu*, a knee; *portus*, a harbor; *tonitrus*, thunder; and *vērū*, a spit, have *ību* or *ūbus*.

## FIFTH DECLENSION.

§ 90. Nouns of the fifth declension end in *ēs*, and are of the feminine gender.

They are thus declined :—

Res, a thing.		Dies, a day.	
Singular.	Plural.	Singular.	Plural.
N. <i>rēs</i> ,	<i>rēs</i> ,	N. <i>dī'-ēs</i> ,	<i>dī'-ēs</i> .
G. <i>rē'-ī</i> ,	<i>rē'-rūm</i> ,	G. <i>dī-e'-ī</i> ,	<i>dī-e'-rūm</i> ,
D. <i>rē'-ī</i> ,	<i>rē'-būs</i> ,	D. <i>dī-e'-ī</i> ,	<i>dī-e'-būs</i> ,
Ac. <i>rēm</i> ,	<i>rēs</i> ,	Ac. <i>dī'-ēm</i> ,	<i>dī'-ēs</i> ,
V. <i>rēs</i> ,	<i>rēs</i> ,	V. <i>dī'-ēs</i> ,	<i>dī'-ēs</i> ,
Ab. <i>rē</i> .	<i>rē'-būs</i> .	Ab. <i>dī'-ē</i> .	<i>dī-e'-būs</i> .

REMARK. Nouns of this declension, like those of the fourth, seem to have belonged originally to the third declension.

## EXCEPTIONS IN GENDER.

1. *Dies*, a day, is masculine or feminine in the singular, and always masculine in the plural; *meridies*, mid-day, is masculine only.

NOTE. *Dies* is seldom feminine, in good prose writers, except when it denotes duration of time, or a day fixed and determined.

## EXCEPTIONS IN DECLENSION.

2. The genitive and dative singular sometimes end in *ē* or in *ī*, instead of *ei*; as, gen. *diē* for *diēi*, Virg.; *fide* for *fidei*, Hor.; *acie* for *aciēi*, Cæs.—gen. *plēbi* for *plēbēi*, Liv.—dat. *fide* for *fidei*, Hor., *perniciē*, Liv., and *pernicii*, Nep., for *perniciēi*. The genitive *rabiēs* contracted for *rabiēis*, after the third declension is found in Lucretius.

REMARK 1. There are only about eighty nouns of this declension, and of these only two, *res* and *dies*, are complete in the plural. *Acies*, *effigies*, *eluvies*, *facies*, *glacies*, *progenies*, *series*, *species*, *spes*, want the genitive, dative, and ablative plural, and the rest want the plural altogether.

REM. 2. All nouns of this declension end in *ies*, except four—*fides*, faith; *res*, a thing; *spes*, hope; and *plēbes*, the common people;—and all nouns in *ies* are of this declension, except *abies*, *aries*, *paries*, *quies*, and *requies*, which are of the third declension.

## DECLENSION OF COMPOUND NOUNS.

§ 91. When a compound noun consists of two nominatives, both parts are declined; but when one part is a nominative, and the other an oblique case, the nominative only is declined. Of the former kind are *respublica*, a commonwealth, and *jusjurandum*, an oath; of the latter, *mer-familias*, a mistress of a family Cf. § 43, 2.

Singular.	Plural.
N. V. <i>res-pūb'-li-ca</i> ,	N. V. <i>res-pub'-lī-cæ</i> ,
G. D. <i>re-i-pub'-lī-cæ</i> ,	G. <i>re-rum-pub-lī-cā'-rum</i> ,
Ac. <i>rem-pub'-lī-cam</i> ,	D. Ab. <i>re-bus-pub'-lī-cis</i> ,
Ab. <i>re-pub'-lī-cā</i> .	Ac. <i>res-pub'-lī-cas</i> ,

<i>Singular</i>	<i>Plural.</i>	<i>Singular.</i>
<i>N.</i> jus-ju-ran'-dum,	ju-ra-ju-ran'-da,	<i>N.</i> ma-ter-fa-mil'-i-as,
<i>G.</i> ju-ris-ju-ran'-di,	_____	<i>G.</i> ma-tris-fa-mil'-i-as,
<i>D.</i> ju-ri-ju-ran'-do,	_____	<i>D.</i> ma-tri-fa-mil'-i-as,
<i>Ac.</i> jus-ju-ran'-dum,	ju-ra-ju-ran'-da,	<i>Ac.</i> ma-trem-fa-mil'-i-as,
<i>V.</i> jus-ju-ran'-dum,	ju-ra-ju-ran'-da.	<i>V.</i> ma-ter-fa-mil'-i-as,
<i>Ab.</i> ju-re-ju-ran'-do.	_____	<i>Ab.</i> ma-tre-fa-mil'-i-as, etc.

**NOTE.** The preceding compounds are divided and pronounced like the simple words *α*, which they are compounded.

## IRREGULAR NOUNS.

§ 92. Irregular nouns are divided into three classes—*Variable*, *Defective*, and *Redundant*.

### I. VARIABLE NOUNS.

A noun is variable, which, in some of its parts, changes either its gender or declension or both.

Nouns which vary in gender are called *heterogeneous*; those which vary in declension are called *heteroclites*.

#### *Heterogeneous Nouns.*

1. Masculine in the singular, and neuter in the plural; as,  
*Avernus*, *Dindymus*, *Ismārus*, *Massicus*, *Mænālus*, *Pangæus*, *Tartārus*, *Taygētus*; plur. *Averna*, etc.
2. Masculine in the singular, and masculine or neuter in the plural; as,  
*jocus*, a jest; plur. *jōci*, or *jōca*;—*lōcus*, a place; plur. *lōci*, passages in books, topics, places; *lōca*, places;—*sibilus*, a hissing; plur. *sibila*, rarely *sibili*;—*intūbus*, endive; plur. *intūbi* or *intūba*.
3. Feminine in the singular, and neuter in the plural; as,  
*carbāsus*, a species of flax; plur. *carbāsa*, very rarely *carbāsi*, sails, etc., made of it;—*Hierosolŷma*, -æ, Jerusalem; plur. *Hierosolŷma*, -ōrum.
4. Neuter in the singular, and masculine in the plural; as,  
*cælum*, heaven; plur. *cæli*;—*Elysium*; plur. *Elysii*;—*Argos*; plur. *Argi*. So *siser*, neut., plur. *sisēres*, masc.
5. Neuter in the singular, and masculine or neuter in the plural as,  
*frērum*, a bridle; plur. *frēni* or *frēna*;—*rastrum*, a rake; plur. *rastri*, or more rarely, *rastra*;—*pugillar*, a writing tablet; plur. *pugillāres* or *pugillaria*.
6. Neuter in the singular, and feminine in the plural; as,  
*epŷlum*, a feast; plur. *epŷlæ*;—*balneum*, a bath; plur. *balneæ* or *balnea*;—*nundinum*, a market-day; plur. *nundinæ*, a fair.
7. Feminine or neuter in the singular, and feminine in the plural as,  
*delicia* or *delicium*, delight; plur. *deliciæ*.



*Heteroclites.*

§ 93. 1. Second or third declension in the singular, and third in the plural; as,

nom. and acc. *jugĕrum*, an acre; gen. *jugĕri* or *jugĕris*; abl. *jugĕro* and *jugĕre*; plur., nom., and acc. *jugĕra*; gen. *jugĕrum*; abl. *jugĕris* and *jugeribus*.

2. Third declension in the singular, and second in the plural; as, *vās*, a vessel; plur. *vāsa*, *ōrum*. *Ancile*, a shield, has sometimes *anciliōrum*, in the genitive plural.

NOTE. Variable nouns seem anciently to have been redundant, and to have retained a part of each of their original forms. Thus, *vāsa*, *-ōrum*, properly comes from *vāsum*, *-i*, but the latter, together with the plural of *vas*, *vāsīs*, became obsolete.

## II. DEFECTIVE NOUNS.

§ 94. Nouns are defective either in case or in number.

1. Nouns defective in case may want either one or more cases. Some are altogether indeclinable, and are called *aptotes*.

Such are *pondo*, a pound; most nouns in *i*; as, *gummi*, gum: foreign words as, *Aaron*, *Jacob*: *semis*, a half; *git*, a kind of plant; the singular of *mille*, a thousand; words put for nouns; as, *velle suum*, for *sua voluntas*, his own inclination; and names of the letters of the alphabet.

A noun which is found in one case only, is called a *Monoptote*, if found in two cases, a *Diptote*; if in three, a *Triptote*; if in four, a *Tetraptote*; and if in five, a *Pentaptote*.

The following list contains most nouns defective in case. Those which occur but once in Latin authors are distinguished by an asterisk:—

\**Abactus*, acc. pl.; a driving away.

*Accĭtu*, abl.; a calling for.

*Admissu*, abl.; admission.

*Admonĭtu*, abl.; admonition.

*Æs*, not used in gen. pl.

*Affātu*, abl.; an addressing;—pl. *affātus*, *-ibus*.

*Algus*, nom.; *algum*, acc.; *algu*, abl.; cold.

*Ambāge*, abl.; a going around;—pl. entire.

\**Annisum*, acc.; a loss.

*Aphistro*, nom. and acc.; the flag of a ship;—pl. *aplustria*, or *aplustra*.

*Arbitrētus*, nom.; -um, acc.; -u, abl.; judgment.

*Arcessitu*, abl.; a sending for.

*Astu*, nom., acc.; a city.

*Astus*, nom.; *astu*, abl.; craft;—*astus*, acc. pl.

*Cacoēthes*, nom., acc.; an evil custom;—*cacoētae*, nom. pl.; -e, and -es, acc. pl.

*Cantities*, nom. -em, acc.; -e, abl.

*Cētos*, acc.; a whale;—*cēte*, nom. and acc. pl.; *cetis*, dat.

*Chāos*, nom. acc.; *chao*, abl.; *chaos*.

*Cassem*, acc.; *casse*, abl.; a net;—pl. entire.

*Circumspectus*, nom.; -um; -u; a looking around.

*Coactu*, abl.; constraint.

*Cœlite*, abl.; pl. entire; inhabitants of heaven.

\**Commutātum*, acc.; an alteration.

*Compēdis*, gen.; *compēde*, abl.; a fetter;—pl. *compēdes*, -ium, -ibus.

*Concessu*, abl.; permission.

*Condiscipulātu*, abl., companionship at school.

*Crātin*, or -em, acc.; -e, abl.; a hurdle;—pl. *crātes*, -ium, -ibus.

*Cupressu*, abl.; a cypress.

*Daps*, nom., scarcely used; *dāpis*, gen. etc. pl. *dapes*, -ibus; a feast.

\**Dātu*, abl.; a giving.

*Derisus*, -ui, dat.; -um, acc.; -u, abl.; ridicule.

Despicatui, *dat.*; *contempt.*

Dica, *nom.*; dicam, *acc.*; a *legal process*;—dicas, *acc. pl.*

Dicis, *gen.*; as, dicis gratiā, *for form's sake.*

Ditionis, *gen.*; -i, *dat.*; -em, *acc.*; -e, *abl.*; *power.*

Diu, *abl.*; *in the day time.*

Divisui, *dat.*; a *dividing.*

Elur, *ivory*;—not used in the plural.

\*Eflagitātū, *abl.*; *importunity.*

\*Ejectus, *nom.*; a *throwing out.*

Epos, *nom. and acc.*; an *epic poem.*

Ergo, *abl. (or adv.)*; *for the sake.*

Essēdas, *acc. pl.*; *war chariots.*

Evectus, *nom.*; a *carrying out.*

Fæx, *dregs*, wants *gen. pl.*

Fāmē, *abl.*; *hunger.*

Far, *corn*, not used in the *gen., dat., and abl. pl.*

Fas, *nom.*; *acc.*; *right.*

Fauce, *abl.*; *the throat*;—*pl. entire.*

Fax, a *torch*, wants *gen. pl.*

Fel, *gall*, wants *gen. pl.*

Femīnis, *gen.*; -i, *dat.*; -e, *abl.*; *the thigh*;—*pl. femīna, -ibus.*

Flictu, *abl.*; a *striking.*

Fōris, *nom. and gen.*; -em, *acc.*; -e, *abl.*; a *door*;—*pl. entire.*

Fors, *nom.*; -tis, *gen.*; -tem, *acc.*; -te, *abl.*; *chance.*

\*Frustratui, *abl.*; a *deceiving.*

Frux, *fruit, nom.* scarcely used;—frūgis, *gen.*, etc.

Fulgetras, *acc. pl.*; *lightning.*

Gausāpe, *nom., acc., abl.*; a *rough garment*;—gausāpa, *acc. pl.*

Glos, *nom.*; a *husband's sister.*

Grātes, *acc. pl.*;—gratibus, *abl.*; *thanks.*

Hebdomādā, *acc.*; a *week.*

Hiems, *winter*, not used in *gen., dat., and abl. pl.*

Hippomānes, *nom. and acc.*

\*Hir, *nom.*; *the palm of the hand.*

Hortātu, *abl.*; an *exhorting*;—*pl. hortatibus.*

Impētis, *gen.*; -e, *abl.*; a *shock*;—*pl. impetibus.*

Incītas, or -a, *acc. pl.*; as, ad incītas redactus, *reduced to a strait.*

\*Inconsultu, *abl.*; *without advice.*

\*Indultu, *abl.*; *indulgence.*

Inferiæ, *nom. pl.*; -as, *acc.*; -is, *abl.*; *sacrifices to the dead.*

Infitias, *acc. pl.*; a *denial*; as, ire infitias, *to deny.*

Ingratiis, *abl. pl.*, (used *adverbially*); *against one's will.*

Injussu, *abl.*; *without command.*

Inquies, *nom.*; *restlessness.*

Instar, *nom., acc.*; a *likeness.*

Interdiu, *abl. (or adv.)*; -as, *acc.*; *sup.*

\*Invitātu, *abl.*; an *invitation.*

Irrisui, *dat.*; -um, *acc.*; -u, *abl.*; *derision.*

Jōvis, *nom.*, rarely used;—*pl. Joves.*

Jugēris, *gen.*; -e, *abl.*; an *acre*;—*pl. jugēra, -um, -ibus.*

Jussu, *abl.*; *command.*

Lābes, a *spot*, wants *gen. pl.*

Lūcu, *abl.*; *day-light.*

\*Ludificatui, *dat.*; a *mockery.*

Lux, *light*, wants the *gen. pl.*

Mandātu, *abl.*; a *command.*

Māne, *nom., acc.*; *mane, or rarely -i abl.*; *the morning.*

Mel, *honey*, not used in *gen., dat., and abl. pl.*

Mēlos, *nom., acc.*; melo, *dat.*; *melody*—inēle, *nom., acc. pl.*

Mētus, *fear*, not used in *gen., dat., and abl. pl.*

Missu, *abl.*; a *sending*;—*pl. missus, -ibus.*

Monītu, *abl.*; *admonition*;—*pl. monitus.*

Nātu, *abl.*; *by birth.*

Nauci, *gen.*, with *non*; as, homo non nauci, *a man of no account.*

Nēfas, *nom., acc.*; *wickedness.*

Nēmo, *nobody*, wants the *voc. and the pl.*

Nepenthes, *nom., acc.*; an *herb.*

Nex, *death*, wants the *voc.*;—nēces, *nom., acc. pl.*

Nihil, or nihilum, *nom. and acc.*; -i, *gen.*; -o, *abl.*; *nothing.*

Noctu, *abl.*; *by night.*

Nuptui, *dat.*; -um, *acc.*; -u, *abl.*; *marriage.*

Obex, *nom.*; -icem, *acc.*; -ice, or -jice, *abl.*; a *bolt*;—*pl. obīces, -jicibus.*

Objectum, *acc.*; -u, *abl.*; an *interposition*;—*pl. objectus.*

Obtentui, *dat.*; -um, *acc.*; -u, *abl.*; a *pretext.*

Opis, *gen.*; ōpem, *acc.*; ōpe, *abl.* *help*;—*pl. entire.*

Oppōitu, *abl.*; an *opposing*;—*pl. oppositus, acc.*

Opus, *nom., acc.*; *need.*

Os, *the mouth*, wants the *gen. pl.*

Panāces, *nom.*; -is, *gen.*; -e, *abl.*; an *herb.*

Pax, *peace*, wants *gen. pl.*

Peccātu, *abl.*; a *fault.*

Pecūdis, *gen.*; -i, *dat.*; -em, *acc.*; -e, *abl.*;—*pl. entire.*

Pelāge, *acc. pl.* of pelāgus; *the sea.*

Permissu, *abl.*; -um, *acc.*; *permission.*

Piscātus, *nom.*; -i, *gen.*; -um, *acc.* -u, *abl.*; a *fishing.*

*Pix, pitch*; *pices, acc. pl.*  
*Pondo, abl.*; *in weight.* Cf. § 94, 1.  
*Præci, dat.*; *-em, acc.*; *-o, abl.*; *prayer*—*pl. entire*  
*Procer*; *nom.*, *-em, acc.*; *a peer*;—*pl. entire.*  
*Promptu, abl.*, *readiness.*  
*Pus wants gen. dat. and abl. pl.*  
*Relatum, acc.*;—*u, abl.*; *a recital.*  
*Repetundarum, gen. pl.* • *-is, abl.*; *money taken by extortion.*  
*Rogatu, abl.*; *a request.*  
*Ros, dew, wants gen. pl.*  
*Rus, the country, wants gen., dat., and abl. pl.*  
*Satias, nom.*; *-ātem, acc.*; *āte, abl.*; *satiety.*  
*Sæcus, nom., acc.*; *sex.*  
*Situs, nom.*; *-um, acc.*; *-u, abl.*; *situation*;—*situs, nom. and acc. pl.*  
*Situs, nom.*; *-ūs, gen.*; *-um, acc.*; *-u, abl.*; *rust*;—*situs, acc. pl.*  
*Sol, the sun, wants gen. pl.*  
*Sordis, gen.*; *-em, acc.*; *-e and -i, abl.*; *filth*;—*pl. sordes, -ium, etc.*  
*Spontis, gen.*; *-e, abl.*; *of one's own accord.*  
*Suböles, offspring, wants gen. pl.*

*Suppetiæ, nom. pl.*; *-as, acc.*; *supplies.*  
*Tābum, nom.*; *-i, gen.*; *-o, abl.*; *corrupt matter.*  
*Tempe, nom. acc. voc. pl.*; *a vale in Thessaly.*  
*Tus wants gen., dat., and abl. pl.*  
*Vēnui and -o, dat.*; *um, acc.*; *-o, abl. sale.*  
*Veprem, acc.*; *-e, abl.*; *a brier*;—*pl. entire.*  
*Verbëris, gen.*; *-e, abl.*; *a stripe*;—*pl. verbëra, um, ibus.*  
*Vesper, nom.*; *-um, acc.*; *-e, -i, or -o, abl.*; *the evening.*  
*Vespëra, nom.*; *-am, acc.*; *-ā, abl.*; *the evening.*  
*Vicis, gen.*; *-i, dat.*; *-em, acc.*; *-e, abl.*; *change*;—*pl. entire, except gen.*  
*Virus, nom.*; *-i, gen.*; *-us, acc.*; *-o, abl.*; *poison.*  
*Vis, gen. and dat. rare*; *strength*; *pl. vires, -ium, etc.* See § 85.  
*Viscus, nom.*; *-ëris, gen.*; *-ëre, abl.*; *an internal organ. pl. viscëra, etc.*  
*Vocātu, abl.*; *a calling*;—*vocātus, acc. pl.*

REMARK 1. To these may be added nouns of the fifth declension, which either want the plural, as most of them are abstract nouns, or have in that number only the nominative, accusative, and vocative. *Res* and *dies*, however, have the plural entire. Cf. § 90, R. 1.

REM. 2. For the use of the vocative, also, of many nouns, no classical authority can be found.

§ 95. 2. Nouns defective in number, want either the plural or the singular.

(a) Many nouns want the plural from the nature of the things which they express. Such are generally names of persons, most names of places (except those which have only the plural), the names of herbs, of the arts, most material and abstract nouns; but these may have a plural when used as common nouns, (§ 26, R. 3.), and many others.

REM. In Latin the plural of abstract nouns is often used to denote the existence of the quality, attribute, etc. in different objects, or the repetition of an action; and in poetry such plurals are used for the sake of emphasis or metre. See § 98.

The following list contains many of the nouns which want the plural, and also some, marked *p*, which are included in the above classes, but are sometimes used in the plural.

*Aconitum, wolfsbane, p.*  
*Adorea, a military reward*  
*Aër, the air, p.*  
*Æs, brass, money, p.*  
*Æther, the sky.*

*Ævum, age, lifetime, p.*  
*Album, an album.*  
*Allium, garlic, p.*  
*Amicitia, friendship, p.*  
*Argilla, white clay.*  
*Avëna, oats, p.*

*Balaustium, the flower of the pomegranate.*  
*Balsamum, balsam, p.*  
*Barathrum, a gulf.*  
*Callum, hardened skin, p.*  
*Cālor, heat, p.*



Carduus, *a thistle*, p.  
 Cāro, *flesh*, p.  
 Cēra, *wax*, p.  
 Cestus, *a girdle*.  
 Cicuta, *hemlock*, p.  
 Cœnum, *mud*.  
 Contagium, *contagion*, p.  
 Crōcum, *saffron*.  
 Crōcus, *saffron*, p.  
 Cruor, *blood*, p.  
 Cūtis, *the skin*, p.  
 Dilucālum, *the dawn*.  
 Ebur, *ivory*.  
 Electrum, *amber*, p.  
 Far, *corn*, p.  
 Fel, *gall*, p.  
 Fervor, *heat*, p.  
 Fides, *faith*.  
 Fīnus, *dung*.  
 Fūga, *flight*, p.  
 Fūmus, *smoke*, p.  
 Fūror, *madness*, p.  
 Galla, *an oak-apple*, p.  
 Gēlu, *frost*.  
 Glarea, *gravel*.  
 Gloria, *glory*, p.  
 Glastum, *wood*.  
 Glūten, *or*  
 Glutinum, *glue*.  
 Gypsum, *white plaster*.  
 Hēpar, *the liver*.  
 Hespērus, *the evening star*.  
 Hīlum, *a little thing*.  
 Hordeum, *barley*, p.  
 Hūmus, *the ground*.  
 Indōles, *native quality*, p.  
 Ira, *anger*, p.  
 Jūbar, *radiance*.  
 Jus, *justice, law*, p.  
 Iustitium, *a law vacation*.

Lac, *milk*.  
 Lætitia, *joy*, p.  
 Languor, *faintness*, p.  
 Lardum, *bacon*, p.  
 Lātex, *liquor*, p.  
 Letum, *death*.  
 Lignum, *wood*, p.  
 Limus, *mud*.  
 Liquor, *liquor*, p.  
 Lues, *a plague*.  
 Lūtum, *clay*, p.  
 Lux, *light*, p.  
 Macellum, *the shambles*.  
 Māne, *the morning*.  
 Marmor, *marble*, p.  
 Mel, *honey*, p.  
 Meridies, *mid-day*.  
 Mors, *death*, p.  
 Munditia, *neatness*, p.  
 Mundus, *female ornaments*.  
 Muscus, *moss*.  
 Nectar, *nectar*.  
 Nēmo, *no man*.  
 Nequitia, *wickedness*, p.  
 Nihilum, *nihil, or nil, nothing*.  
 Nitrum, *natron*.  
 Oblivio, *forgetfulness*, p.  
 Omāsūm, *bullock's tripe*.  
 Opium, *opium*.  
 Palea, *chaff*, p.  
 Pax, *peace*, p.  
 Pēnum, *and*  
 Pēnus, *provisions*, p.  
 Piper, *pepper*.  
 Pix, *pitch*, p.  
 Pontus, *the sea*.  
 Prolubium, *desire*.  
 Pūbes, *the youth*.  
 Pulvis, *dust*, p.

Purpūra, *purple*, p.  
 Quies, *rest*, p.  
 Ros, *dew*, p.  
 Rūbor, *redness*, p.  
 Sabūlo *and*  
 Sabulum, *gravel*.  
 Sal, *salt*.  
 Sālum, *the sea*.  
 Sālus, *safety*.  
 Sanguis, *blood*.  
 Scrupulum, *a scruple*, p.  
 Senium, *old age*.  
 Siler, *an osier*.  
 Sināpi, *mustard*.  
 Siser, *skirret*, p.  
 Sitis, *thirst*.  
 Sol, *the sun*, p.  
 Sōpor, *sleep*, p.  
 Specimen, *an example*.  
 Spūma, *foam*, p.  
 Sulfur, *sulphur*, p.  
 Supellex, *furniture*.  
 Tābes, *a consumption*.  
 Tābum, *corrupt matter*.  
 Tellus, *the earth*.  
 Terror, *terror*, p.  
 Thymum, *thyme*, p.  
 Tribulus, *a thistle*, p.  
 Tristitia, *sadness*.  
 Ver, *spring*.  
 Vespēra, *the evening*.  
 Veterinus, *lethargy*.  
 Vigor, *strength*, p.  
 Vinum, *wine*, p.  
 Virus, *poison*.  
 Viscum, *and*  
 Viscus, *bird-lime*.  
 Vitrum, *wood*.  
 Vulgus, *the common people*.  
 Zingiber, *ginger*.

§ 96. (b). The names of festivals and games, and several names of places and books, want the singular; as, *Bacchanalia*, a festival of Bacchus; *Olympia*, the Olympic games; *Bucolica*, a book of pastorals and the following names of places:—

Acroceraunia,	Baiæ,	Fundi,	Loeri,	Sūsa,
Am̄yclæ,	Ceraunia,	Gabii,	Parisi,	Syracūsæ,
Artaxāta,	Ecbatāna,	Gādes,	Philippi	Thermopylæ,
Athēnæ,	Esquilæ,	Gemoniæ,	Puteoli,	Veii.

NOTE. Some of those in *i* properly signify the people.

The following list contains most other nouns which want the singular and also some, marked *s*, which are rarely used in that number:—

Acta, <i>records</i> .	Alpes, <i>the Alps</i> , <i>s</i> .	Apinæ, <i>trifles</i> .
Adversaria, <i>a memorandum-book</i> .	Annāles, <i>annals</i> , <i>s</i> .	Argutiæ, <i>witticisms</i> , <i>s</i> .
Estiva, <i>sc. castra summer quarters</i>	Antæ, <i>door-posts</i> .	Arma, <i>arms</i> .
	Antes, <i>rows</i> .	Artus, <i>the joints</i> , <i>s</i> .
	Antia, <i>a forelock</i> .	Bellaria, <i>sweetmeats</i>



Bigæ, a two-horse char- iot, s.	Induviæ, clothes.	Palearia, the dewlap, s.
Braccæ, breeches.	Ineptiæ, fooleries, s.	Pandectæ, the pandects.
Branchiæ, the gills of fishes.	Inferi, the dead.	Parietinæ, old walls.
Brevia, shallow places.	Inferiæ, sacrifices in honor of the dead.	Partes, a party, s.
Calendæ, the Calends.	Insecta, insects.	Pascua, pastures, s.
Cancelli, balustrades.	Insidiæ, an ambushade, s.	Penâtes, household gods, s.
Cani, gray hairs.	Iusta, funeral rites.	Phalæx, trapping.
Cassēs, a hunter's net, s.	Lactes, small entrails, s.	Philtra, love potions.
Caulæ, sheep-folds.	Lamenta, lamentations.	Pleiadēs, the Pleiads or seven stars, s.
Celōres, the body-guard of the Roman kings.	Lapidinæ, a stone quar- ry.	Posteri, posterity.
Gibaria, victuals, s.	Latebræ, a hiding place, s.	Præbia, an amulet.
Glitellæ, a pack-saddle.	Laurices, young rabbits.	Præcordia, the dia- phragm, the entrails.
Codicilli, a writing.	Lautia, presents to for- eign ambassadors.	Primitiæ, first fruits.
Cœlites, the gods, s.	Lemures, hobgoblins.	Proceres, nobles, s.
Crepundia, a rattle.	Lendes, nuts	Pugillaria, or -âres, writing-tablets, s.
Cunabula, and	Liberi, children, s.	Quadrigæ, a team of four horses, s.
Cunæ, a cradle.	Luceres, a division of the Roman cavalry.	Quirites, Roman citizens, s.
Cyclades, the Cyclades, s.	Magalia, cottages.	Quisquilæ, refuse.
Decimæ, tithes, s.	Majores, ancestors.	Reliquiæ, the remains, s.
Diræ, the Furies, s.	Mânes, the shades, s.	Salebræ, rugged roads, s.
Divitiæ, riches.	Manubiæ, spoils of war.	Salinæ, salt pits.
Druïdes, the Druids.	Mapalia, huts, s.	Scalæ, a ladder, s.
Dryades, the Dryads, s.	Minaciæ, and	Scatebræ, a spring, s.
Epulæ, a banquet, s.	Minæ, threats.	Scopæ, a broom.
Eumenides, the Furies, s.	Minores, posterity.	Scruta, old stuff.
Excubiæ, watches.	Mœnia, the walls of a city, s.	Sentes, thorns, s.
Exsequiæ, funeral rites.	Multitia, garments finely wrought.	Sponsalia, espousals.
Extæ, entrails.	Munia, official duties.	Stativa, sc. castra, a stationary camp.
Exuviæ, spoils.	Naiades, water-nymphs, s.	Superi, the gods above.
Facetiæ, pleasantry, s.	Nâres, the nostrils, s.	Talaria, winged shoes.
Feriæ, holidays, s.	Natâles, parentage.	Tenebræ, darkness, s.
Fides, a stringed instru- ment, s.	Nâtes, the haunches, s.	Tesca, rough places.
Flabra, blusts.	Nomæ, corroding sores or ulcers, s.	Thermæ, warm baths.
Frâces, the lees of oil.	Nomæ, the nones of a month. § 326, 1.	Tormina, colic-pains.
Frâga, strawberries, s.	Nugæ, jests, nonsense.	Transtra, seats for row- ers, s.
Gemini, twins, s.	Nundinæ, the weekly mar- ket.	Tricæ, trifles, toys.
Gênæ, cheeks, s.	Nuptiæ, a marriage.	Utensilia, utensils.
Gerræ, trifles.	Oblivîa, forgetfulness, s.	Valvæ, folding doors, s.
Grâtes, thanks.	Officiæ, cheats, s.	Vepres, brambles, s.
Habênæ, reins, s.	Optimâtes, the aristoc- ratic party, s.	Vergiliæ, the seven stars.
Hiberna, sc. castra, win- ter quarters.		Vindicîæ, a legal claim, s.
Hyades, the Hyades, s.		Virgulta, bushes.
Idis, the ides of a month.		
Ilia, the flank.		
Incunabula, a cradle.		
Indutiæ, a truce.		

§ 97. The following usually differ in meaning in the different numbers.

Ædes, -is, a temple.	Bönum, a good thing.	Castra, a camp.
Ædes, -ium, a house.	Böna, property.	Comitium, a part of the Roman forum.
Aqua, water.	Carcer, a prison.	Comitia, an assembly for election.
Aquæ, medicinal springs.	Carcères, the barriers of a race-course	Copia, plenty.
Auxilium, aid.	Castrum, a castle.	
Auxilia, auxiliary troops.		

Copīæ, *troops, forces*.  
 Cupedia, -æ, *daintiness*.  
 Cupediæ, -ārum, *and*  
 Cupedia, -ōrum, *dainties*.  
 Facultas, *ability*.  
 Facultātes, *property*.  
 Fastus, -ūs, *pride*.  
 Fastus, -uum, *and*  
 Fasti, -ōrum, *a calendar*.  
 Fortūna, *Fortune*.  
 Fortūnæ, *wealth*.  
 Fursur, *brun*.  
 Furfures, *dun-druff*.  
 Gratia, *favor*.  
 Gratīæ, *thanks*.

Impedimentum, *a hinder-  
 ance*.  
 Impedimenta, *baggage*.  
 Litēra, *a letter of the al-  
 phabet*.  
 Litēræ, *an epistle*.  
 Lūdus, *pastime*.  
 Lūdi, *public games*.  
 Lustrum, *a morass*.  
 Lustra, *a haunt or den of  
 wild beasts*.  
 Mos, *custom*.  
 Mōres, *manners*.  
 Nāris, *a nostril*.  
 Nāres, *the nose*.

Natālis, *a birthday*.  
 Natāles, *birth, lineage*.  
 Opēra, *work, labor*.  
 Opēræ, *workmen*.  
 Opīs, *gen. power*.  
 Opes, -um, *means, wealth*.  
 Plāga, *a region, tract*.  
 Plāgæ, *nets, toils*.  
 Principium, *a beginning*.  
 Principia, *the general  
 quarters*.  
 Rostrum, *a beak, prow*.  
 Rostra, *the Rostra*.  
 Sal, *salt*.  
 Sāles, *witticisms*.

§ 98. The following plurals, with a few others, are sometimes used in poetry, especially in the nominative and accusative, instead of the singular, for the sake of emphasis or metre.

Æquōra, *the sea*.  
 Alta, *the sea*.  
 Anīmi, *courage*.  
 Auræ, *the air*.  
 Carīnæ, *a keel*.  
 Cervīces, *the neck*.  
 Colla, *the neck*.  
 Cōmæ, *the hair*.  
 Connubia, *marriage*.  
 Corda, *the heart*.  
 Corpōra, *a body*.  
 Crepuscūla, *twilight*.  
 Currūs, *a chariot*.  
 Exsilia, *banishment*.  
 Frīgida, *cold*.  
 Gaudia, *joy*.  
 Gramīna, *grass*.  
 Guttūra, *the throat*.

Hymenæi, *marriage*.  
 Ignes, *love*.  
 Inguīna, *the groin*.  
 Iræ, *anger*.  
 Jejunia, *fasting*.  
 Jūbæ, *a mane*.  
 Limīna, *a threshold*.  
 Litōra, *a shore*.  
 Mensæ, *a service or course  
 of dishes*.  
 Neniæ, *a funeral dirge*.  
 Numīna, *the divinity*.  
 Odia, *hatred*.  
 Ora, *the mouth, the coun-  
 tenance*.  
 Oræ, *confines*.  
 Ortus, *a rising, the east*.  
 Otia, *ease, leisure*.

Pectōra, *the breast*.  
 Reditūs, *a return*.  
 Regna, *a kingdom*.  
 Rictūs, *the jaws*.  
 Robōra, *strength*.  
 Silentia, *silence*.  
 Sīnūs, *the bosom of a Ro-  
 man garment*.  
 Tædæ, *a torch*.  
 Tempōra, *time*.  
 Terga, *the back*.  
 Thalāmī, *marriage or  
 marriage-bed*.  
 Tōri, *a bed, a couch*.  
 Tūra, *frankincense*.  
 Viæ, *a journey*.  
 Vultus, *the countenance*.

### III. REDUNDANT NOUNS.

§ 99. Nouns are redundant either in termination, in declension or in gender, or in two or more of these respects.

1. In termination: (a.) of the nominative; as, *arbor*, and *arbores*, a tree: (b.) of the oblique cases; as, *tigris*,; gen. *tigris*, or *-idis*; a tiger.
2. In declension; as, *laurus*; gen. *-i*, or *-ūs*; a laurel.
3. In gender; as, *vulgus*, masc. or neut.; the common people.
4. In termination and declension; as, *senecta*, -æ, and *senectus*, -ūtis; old age.
5. In termination and gender; as *pileus*, masc., and *pileum*, neut.; a hat.
6. In declension and gender; as *pēnus*, -i or *ūs*, masc. or fem., and *pēnus* *bris*, neut.; a store of provisions. *Spēcus*, -ūs or -i, masc. fem. or neut.; a cave.
7. In termination, declension, and gender; as, *menda* -æ, fem. and *mendum* -i, neut.; a fault.

The following list contains most *Redundant Nouns* of the above classes:—

- Acinus, -um, and -a, a berry.  
 Adagium, and -io, a proverb.  
 Admonitio, -um, and -us, ūs, a reminding.  
 Æthra, and æther, the clear sky.  
 Affectio, and -us, ūs, affection.  
 Agamemno, and -on, Agamemnon.  
 Alabaster, tri, and pl. -tra, ōrum an alabaster box.  
 Alimonia, and -um, aliment.  
 Aliuvio, and -es, a flood.  
 Alvearium, and -āre, a bee-hive  
 Amaracus, and -um, marjoram  
 Amygdala, and -um, an almond.  
 Anfractum, and -us, ūs, a winding.  
 Angiportum, and -us, ūs, a narrow lane or alley.  
 Antidotus, and -um, an antidote.  
 Aranea, and -us, i, a spider.  
 Arar, and Araris, the river Arar.  
 Arbor, and -os, a tree.  
 Architectus, and -on, an architect.  
 Arcus, -ūs, and i, a bow.  
 Attagēna, and -gen, a moor-hen.  
 Avaritia, and -ies, avarice.  
 Augmentum, and -men, an increase.  
 Baccar, and -āris, a kind of herb.  
 Baculus, and -um, a staff.  
 Baltens, and -um, a belt.  
 Barbaria, and -ies, barbarism.  
 Barbatus, and -on, a harp.  
 Batillus, and -um, a fire-shovel.  
 Blanditia, and -ies, flattery.  
 Buccina, and -um, a trumpet.  
 Bura, and -is, a plough-tail.  
 Buxus, and -um, the box-tree.  
 Cæpa, and cæpe, an onion.  
 Calamister, tri, and -trum, a crimping-pin.  
 Callus, and -um, hardened skin.  
 Cancer, cri, or eris, a crab.  
 Canitia, and -ies, hoariness.  
 Capus, and capō, a capon.  
 Carrus, and -um, a kind of waggon.  
 Cassida, and -cassis, a helmet.  
 Catinus, and -um, a bowl, dish.  
 Cirographus, and -um, a hand-writing.  
 Cingula, -us, and -um, a girdle.  
 Clipeus, and -um, a shield.  
 Cochlearium, -ar, and -āre, a spoon.  
 Colluvio, and -ies, filth.  
 Commentarius, and -um, a journal.  
 Compages, and -go, a joining.  
 Conātum, and -us, ūs, an attempt.  
 Concinnitas, and -tudo, neatness.  
 Consortium, and -io, partnership.  
 Contagium, -io, and -es, contact.  
 Cornum, -us, i, or ūs, a cornel tree.  
 Costos, i, and -um, a kind of shrub.  
 Cratēra, and crāter, a bowl.  
 Crōcus, and -um, saffron.  
 Crystallus, and -um, crystal.  
 Cubitus, and -um, the elbow.  
 Cupiditas, and -pido, desire.  
 Cupressus, i, or ūs, a cypress-tree.  
 Delicia, and -um, delight.  
 Delphinus, and delphin, a dolphin.  
 Dictamnus, and -um, dittany.  
 Diluvium, -o, and -ies, a deluge.  
 Dōmus, i, or ūs, a house.  
 Dorsus, and -um, the back.  
 Duritia, and -ies, hardness.  
 Effigia, and -ies, an image.  
 Elegia, and -on, i, an elegy.  
 Elēphantus, and -phas, an elephant.  
 Epitōma, and -e, an abridgment.  
 Essēda, and -um, a chariot.  
 Evander, dri, and -drus, Evander.  
 Eventum, and -us, ūs, an event.  
 Exemplar, and -āre, a pattern.  
 Ficus, i, or ūs, a fig-tree.  
 Fimius, and -um, dung.  
 Frētum, and -us, ūs, a strait.  
 Fulgetra, and -um, lightning.  
 Galērus, and -um, a hat, cap.  
 Ganea, and -um, an eating-house.  
 Gausāpa, -es, -e, and -um, frieze.  
 Gibba, -us, and -er, ĕri, a hump.  
 Glutinum, and -ten, glue.  
 Gobius, and -io, a gudgeon.  
 Grammatica, and -e, grammar.  
 Grus, gruis, and gruis, is, a crane.  
 Hebdomāda, and -mas, a week.  
 Hellebōrus, and -um, hellebore.  
 Hōnor, and hōnos, honor.  
 Hyssōpus, and -um, hyssop.  
 Ilios, -um, and -on, Troy.  
 Incestum, and -us, ūs, incest.  
 Intūbus, and -um, endive.  
 Jugulus, and -um, the throat.  
 Juventa, -us, ūtis, and -as, youth.  
 Lābor, and lābos, labor.  
 Lacerta, and -us, a lizard.  
 Laurus, i, or ūs, a laurel.  
 Lēpor, and lēpos, wit.  
 Līgur, and -us, ūris, a Ligurian.  
 Lupinus, and -um, a lupine.  
 Luxuria, and -ies, luxury.  
 Mæander, -dros, and -drus, Mæander.  
 Margarita, and -um, a pearl.  
 Materia, and -ies, materials.  
 Medimnus, and -um, a measure.  
 Menda, and -um, a fault.  
 Modius, and -um, a measure.  
 Mollitia, and -ies, softness.  
 Momentum, and -men, influence.  
 Mūgil, and -ilis, a mullet.  
 Mulciber, ĕri, or ĕris, Vulcan.



Mulctra, and -um, a milk-pail.  
 Munditia, and -ies, neatness.  
 Muria, and -ies, brine or pickle.  
 Myrtus, *i* or *ūs*, a myrtle.  
 Nardus, and -um, nard.  
 Nāsus, and -um, the nose.  
 Necessitas, and -ūdo, necessity.  
 Nequitia, and -ies, worthlessness.  
 Notitia, and -ies, knowledge.  
 Oblivium, and -io, forgetfulness.  
 Obsidium, and -io, a siege.  
 Œdīpus, *i*, or *Edis*, *Edipus*.  
 Ostrea, and -am, an oyster.  
 Palātus, and -um, the palate.  
 Palumba, -us, and -es, a pigeon.  
 Papyrus, and -um, papyrus.  
 Paupertas, and -ies, poverty.  
 Pāvus, and pāvo, a peacock.  
 Pēnus, *i*, -ōris, or *ūs*, and pēnum, provisions.  
 Pēplus, and -um, a veil.  
 Perseus, *ei*, or *eos*, *Perseus*.  
 Pileus, and -um, a hat.  
 Pīnus, *i*, or *ūs*, a pine-tree.  
 Pistrīna, and -um, a bake-house.  
 Planitia, and -ies, a plain.  
 Plāto, and Plāton, *Plato*.  
 Plebs, and plēbes, *ei*, the common people.  
 Porrus, and -um, a leak.  
 Postulātum, and -io, a request.  
 Præsēpia, -ium, -es, or -is, and -e, a stable.  
 Prætextum, and -us, *ūs*, a pretext.  
 Prosapia, and -ies, lineage.  
 Rāpa, and -um, a turnip.  
 Requies, *ētis* or *ēr*, rest.  
 Rēte, and rētis, a net.  
 Reticulus, and -um, a small net.

Rictum, and -us, *ūs*, the open mouth.  
 Sævitia, -ūdo and -ies, ferocity.  
 Sāgus, and -um, a military cloak.  
 Sanguis, and sanguen, blood.  
 Satrāpes, and satraps, a satrap.  
 Scabritia, and -ies, roughness.  
 Scorpius, -os, and -io, a scorpion.  
 Segmentum, and -men, a piece.  
 Segnitia, and -ies, sloth.  
 Senecta, and -us, old age.  
 Sequester, *tri*, or *tris*, a trustee.  
 Sesāma, and -um, sesame.  
 Sibilus, and -a, *ōrum*, a hissing.  
 Sināpi, and -is, mustard.  
 Sinus, and -um, a goblet.  
 Spārus, and -a, *ōrum*, a spear.  
 Spurcitia, and -ies, filthiness.  
 Stramentum, and -men, straw.  
 Suffimentum, and -men, fumigation.  
 Suggestus, and -um, a pulpit, stage.  
 Suppārus, and -um, a linen garment.  
 Supplicium, -icamentum, and -icatio, a public supplication.  
 Tapētum, -ēte, and -es, tapestry.  
 Tenēritas, and -tūdo, softness.  
 Tergum, and -us, *ōris*, the back.  
 Tiāra, and -as, a turban.  
 Tignus, and -um, a beam, timber.  
 Tigris, *is*, or *idis*, a tiger.  
 Titānus, and Titan, *Titan*.  
 Tonitruum, and -trus, *ūs*, thunder.  
 Torāle, and -al, a bed-covering.  
 Trābes, and trabs, a beam.  
 Tribūla, and -um, a threshing sledge.  
 Vespēra, -per, *ēr* and *ōris*, the evening.  
 Vinacēus, and -a, *ōrum*, a grape-stone.  
 Viscus, and -um, the mistletoe.  
 Vulgus, masc. and neut., the common people.

REMARK 1. To these may be added some other verbals in *us* and *io*, and Greek nouns in *o* and *on*; as, *Dio* and *Dion*; also some Greek nouns in *es* and *e*, which have Latin forms in *a*; as, *Atrides* and *Atrida*. See § 45.

REM. 2. Some proper names of places also are redundant in number; as, *Argos* and *Argi*; *Fidēna* and *Fidēnæ*; *Thēbe* and *Thēbæ*.

NOTE. The different forms of most words in the above list are not equally common, and some are rarely used, or only in particular cases.

## DERIVATION OF NOUNS.

§ 100. Nouns are derived from other nouns, from adjectives, and from verbs.

### I. FROM NOUNS.

From nouns are derived the following classes:—

1. A *patronymic* is the name of a person, derived from that of his father or other ancestor, or of the founder of his nation.



NOTE 1. Patronymics are properly Greek nouns, and have been borrowed from that language by the Latin poets.

(a.) Masculine patronymics end in *ides*, *īdes*, *ādes*, and *īādes*.

(1.) Nouns in *us* of the second declension, and those nouns of the third declension, whose root ends in a short syllable, form their patronymics in *ides*; as, *Priāmus*, *Priāmidēs*; *Agamemnōn*, gen. *ōnis*, *Agamemnōnīdes*.

(2.) Nouns in *ēs* and *cles* form their patronymics in *ides*; as, *A-trēus*, *Atrīdes*, *Hēracles* (i. e. Hercules,) *Heraclīdes*.

REM. 1. *Ænīdes*, in Virg. A. 9, 653, is formed in like manner, as if from *Ænēus*, instead of *Ænīas*.

(3.) Nouns in *ās* and *ēs* of the first declension form their patronymics in *ādes*, as *Ænīās*, *Ænēādes*; *Hippōtēs*, *Hippōtādes*.

(4.) Nouns in *ius* of the second declension, and those nouns of the third declension, whose root ends in a long vowel, form their patronymics in *īādes*; as, *Thestius*, *Thestīādes*; *Amphitryō* (gen. *ōnis*), *Amphitryoniādes*.

REM. 2. A few nouns also of the first declension have patronymics in *īādes*; as, *Anchises*, *Anchisiādes*.

(b.) Feminine patronymics end in *is*, *ēis*, and *ias*, and correspond in termination to the masculines, viz. *is* to *īdes*, *ēis* to *īdes*, and *ias* to *īādes*; as, *Tyndārus*, masc. *Tyndārīdes*, fem. *Tyndāris*; *Nereus*, masc. *Nereūdes*, fem. *Nerēis*; *Thestius*, masc. *Thestīādes*, fem. *Thestīas*.

REM. 3. A few feminines are found in *īne*, or *iōne*; as, *Nerīne*, *Acrisiōne*, from *Nereus* and *Acrisius*.

NOTE 2. Patronymics in *des* and *ne* are of the first declension; those in *is* and *as*, of the third.

2. A *patrial* or *gentile* noun is derived from the name of a country; and denotes an inhabitant of that country; as,

*Trōs*, a Trojan man; *Trōas*, a Trojan woman: *Macēdo*, a Macedonian; *Samnis*, a Samnite; from *Trōja*, *Macedonia*, and *Samnium*.

NOTE 3. Most patrials are properly adjectives, relating to a noun understood; as, *hōmo*, *civis*, etc. See § 128, 6.

3. A *diminutive* signifies a small thing of the kind denoted by the primitive; as, *liber*, a book; *libellus*, a little book.

Diminutives generally end in *ulus*, *ula*, *ulum*, or *cūlus*, *cūla*, *cūlum*, according as the primitive is masculine, feminine, or neuter.

A. 1. If the primitive is of the first or second declension, or its root ends in *c*, *g*, *d*, or *t* after a vowel, the diminutive is formed by annexing *ulus*, *a*, *um* to the root; as, *arūla*, *servūlus*, *puerūlus*, *scutūlum*, *cornicūla*, *regūlus*, *capitūlum*, *mercedūla*; from *āra*, *servus*, *puer*, *scūtum*, *cornix*, (*-icis*), *rex*, (*rēgis*), *caput*, (*-itis*), *merces*, (*-ēdis*).

2. Primitives of the first or second declension whose root ends in *e* or *i*, instead of *ulus*, *a*, *um*, add *olus*, *a*, *um*; as, *filīolus*, *gloriōla*, *horreōlum*; from *filius*, *gloria*, *horreum*.

3. Primitives of the first or second declension whose root ends in *l*, *n* or *r*, form diminutives by contraction in *ellus*, *a*, *um*, and some in *illus*, *a*, *um*; as, *ocellus*, *asellus*, *libellus*, *lucellum*; from *ocūlus*, *usina*, *liber*, *lucrum*; and *sigillum*, *tigillum*, from *signum*, *tignum*.

B. 1. If the primitive is of the third, fourth, or fifth declension, the diminutive is formed in *cūlus*, (or *icūlus*), *a*, *um*.

2. Primitives of the third declension whose nominative ends in *r*, or in *os* or *us* from ending in roots *r*, annex *cūlus* to the nominative; as, *fratercūlus*, *soror-*

*cūla oscūlum, corpuscūlum*; from *frāter, sōror, ōs, (ōris), corpus, (-ōris)*.—So also primitives in *es* and *is*, but these drop the *s* of the nominative; as, *ignicūlus, nūbecūla, diecūla*; from *ignis, nūbes, dies*.

3. Primitives of other terminations of the third declension, and those of the fourth, add *icūlus* to the root; as, *ponticūlus, coticūla, ossicūlum, versicūlus, cornicūlum*; from *pōns, cos, ōs, (ossis), versus, cornu*.

4. Primitives in *o*, (*inis* or *ōnis*), in adding *cūlus, a, um*, change the final vowel of the root (*i* or *o*) into *u*; as, *homuncūlus, sermuncūlus*; from *hōmo* and *sermo*; and a few primitives of other terminations form similar diminutives; as, *avuncūlus, domuncūla*; from *āvus* and *dōmus*.

C. 1. A few diminutives end in *uleus*, as, *equuleus, aculeus*; from *ēquus* and *ācus*; and a few also in *io*; as, *homuncio, senecio*, from *hōmo* and *sēnex*.

2 Diminutives are sometimes formed from other diminutives; as, *asellūlus*, from *asellus*; sometimes two or more diminutives with different terminations are formed from the same primitive, as, *homuncūlus, homullus*, and *homuncio*; from *hōmo*; and sometimes the primitive undergoes euphonic changes; as *rumuscūlus*, from *rūmor*.

REM. Some diminutives differ in gender from their primitives; as *ranuncūlus, scamillus*, from *rāna* and *scamnum*.

4. (a.) An amplificative is a personal appellation denoting an excess of that which is expressed by its primitive; as,

*Capito*, one who has a large head: so *nāso, labeo, bucco, fronto, mento*, one who has a large nose, lips, or cheeks, a broad forehead or long chin; from *cāput, nāsus, labia, bucca, frons*, and *mentum*.

(b.) A few personal appellatives in *io* denote the trade or profession to which a person belongs; as, *ludio*, an actor; *pellio*, a furrier; from *lūdus*, and *pellis*.

5. The termination *ium* added to the root of a noun, indicates the office or condition, and often, derivatively, an assemblage of the individuals denoted by the primitive; as, *collegium*, colleagueship, and thence an assembly of colleagues; *servitium*, servitude, and collectively the servants; so *sacerdotium*, and *ministerium*; from *collēga, servus, sacerdos*, and *minister*.

6. The termination *imonium* is added to the root of a few nouns, denoting something derived from the primitives, or imparting to it its peculiar character; as, *testimonium*, testimony; so *radimonium, patrimonium, matrimonium*; from *testis, rās (rādis), pāter*, and *māter*.

7. The termination *etum*, added to the root of names of plants, denotes a place where they grow in abundance; as, *quercetum, laurētum, olivētum*, from *quercus, laurus*, and *oliva*.

So, also, *æsculētum, dumētum, myrtētum*, and by analogy *saxētum*. But some drop *e*; as, *carectum, salictum, virgultum*, and *arbustum*.

8. The termination *arium*, added to the root of a noun, denotes a receptacle of the things signified by the primitive; as, *ariarium*, an aviary; *plantarium*, a nursery; from *āvis*, a bird, and *planta*, a plant.

9. The termination *ile*, added to the root of names of animals, marks the place where they are kept; as, *bovile*, a stall for oxen; so *caprile, ovile*; from *bōs*, an ox, *cāper*, a goat, and *ōvis*, a sheep.

NOTE 1. This class and the preceding are properly neuter adjectives.

NOTE 2. Abstract nouns are derived either from adjectives or from verbs. See § 26, 5.

## II. FROM ADJECTIVES.

§ 101. 1. Abstract nouns are formed by adding the termination *itas, itūdo, ia, itia* or *ities, ēdo*, and *imōnia* to the root of the primitive

2. Abstracts in *itas*, (equivalent to the English *ty* or *ity*), are formed from adjectives of each declension ; as, *cupiditas*, *teneritas*, *celeritas*, *crudelitas*, *felicitas* ; from *cupidus*, *tēner*, *cēler*, *crudēlis*, and *fēlix*.

(1.) When the root ends in *i*, the abstract is formed in *ētas* ; as, *piētas*, from *pīus* ; and when it ends in *t*, *as* only is added ; as, *honestas* from *honestus*.

(2.) In a few abstracts *i* before *tas* is dropped ; as, *libertas*, *juventas*, from *liber*, *juvēnis*. In *facultas* and *difficultas*, from *facilis*, *difficilis*, there is a change also in the root-vowel from *i* to *u*.

(3.) A few abstracts are formed in *itus* or *tus*, instead of *itas* ; as, *servitus*, *juvatus*, from *servus* and *juvēnis*. See § 76, Exc. 2.

3. Abstracts in *itūdo* are formed from adjectives in *us*, and some from adjectives of the third declension of two or three terminations ; as, *magnitūdo*, *altitūdo*, *fortitūdo*, *acritūdo*, from *magnus*, *altus*, *fortis*, *acer*. Polysyllabic adjectives in *tus*, generally form their abstracts by adding *ūdo* instead of *itūdo* to their root ; as, *consuetūdo*, from *consuētus*.

4. Abstracts in *ia* (equivalent to the English *ce* or *cy*), are for the most part formed from adjectives of one termination ; as, *clementia*, *constantia*, *impudentia*, from *clemens*, *constans*, *impudens*. But some adjectives in *us* and *er*, including verbals in *cundus*, likewise form their verbals in *ia* ; as, *miseria*, *angustia*, *facundia*, from *miser*, *angustus*, *facundus*.

5. Abstracts in *itia* and *ities* are formed from adjectives in *us* and *is* ; as, *justitia*, *tristitia*, *duritia*, and *durities*, *segnitia* and *segnities*, from *justus*, *tristis*, *dūrus*, and *segnis*.

6. A few abstracts are formed in *ēdo*, and a few in *imōnia* ; and sometimes two or more abstracts of different terminations are formed from the same adjective ; as, *acritas*, *acritūdo*, *acrēdo*, and *acrimonia*, from *acer*. In such case those in *itūdo* and *imonia* seem to be more intensive in signification than those in *itas*.

REMARK. Adjectives, as distinguished from the abstracts which are formed from them, are called *concretes*.

### III. FROM VERBS.

§ 102. Nouns derived from verbs are called *verbal nouns*.

The following are the principal classes :—

1. Abstract nouns expressing the action or condition denoted by a verb, especially by a neuter verb, are formed by annexing *or* to their first root ; as *amor*, love ; *fāvor*, favor ; *māror*, grief ; *splendor*, brightness ; from *āmo*, *fāveo*, *māreo*, and *splendeo*.

2. (a.) Abstracts are also formed from many verbs by annexing *ium* to the first or to the third root ; as, *colloquium*, a conference ; *gaudium*, joy ; *exordium*, a beginning ; *exitium*, destruction ; *solatium*, consolation ; from *collōquor*, *gaudeo*, *exordior*, *exeo* and *solor*.

3. Some verbal abstracts are formed by annexing *ēla*, *imōnia*, or *imōnium*, to the first root of the verb ; as, *querēla* and *querimonia*, a complaint ; *suadēla*, persuasion ; from *quēror* and *suadeo*.

4. (a.) The terminations *men* and *mentum*, added to the first root of the verb, generally with a connecting vowel, denote the thing to which the action belongs, both actively and passively, or a means for the performance of the action ; as, *fulmen* from *fulgeo*, *flūmen* from *fluo*, *agmen* from *āgo*, *solūmen* from *solor*, *documentum* from *dōceo*, *blandimentum* from *blandior*.

(b.) The final consonant of the root is often dropped, and the preceding and connecting vowels contracted into one syllable ; as, *āgo*, (*āgimen*,) *agmen* ; *fāveo*, (*fāvimentum*,) *fōmentum*.



(c.) Some words of this class have no primitive verb in use ; as, *atramentum*, ink ; but, in this case, the connecting vowel seems to imply its reference to such a verb as *atrāre*, to blacken.

5. (a.) The terminations *ūlum*, *būlum*, *cūlum* ; *brum*, *crum*, *trum*, annexed to the first root of a verb, denote an instrument for performing the act expressed by the verb, or a place for its performance ; as, *cingūlum*, *opercūlum*, *ventibūlum*, *ventilābrum*, *fulerum*, *spectrum*, from *cingo*, *opĕrio*, *vĕnor*, *ventilo*, *fulcī*, *spĕcio*.

(b.) Sometimes *cūlum* is contracted into *clum* ; as, *vinculum* for *vincūlum*. Sometimes, also, *s* is inserted before *trum* ; as, *rostrum*, from *rōdo*, and a connecting vowel is placed before this and some of the other terminations ; as, *arātrāra*, *stabūlum*, *cubicūlum*, from *āro*, *sto*, and *cūbo*.

(c.) Some words of this kind are formed from nouns ; as, *acetabūlum*, a vinegar cruet ; *turibūlum*, a censer ; from *acētum* and *tus*.

6. (a.) Nouns formed by adding *or* and *rix* to the third root of the verb, denote respectively the male and female agent of the action expressed by the verb as, *adjutor*, *adjutrix*, an assistant ; *fautor*, *fautrix*, a favorer ; *victor*, *victrix*, a conqueror ; from *adjūvo* (*adjūt-*), *fūveo* (*faut-*), *vinco* (*vict-*). They are often likewise used as adjectives. The feminine form is less common than the masculine, and when the third root of the verb ends in *s*, the feminine is sometimes formed in *trix* ; as, *tondeo* (*tons-*) *tonstrix*.

(b.) Some nouns in *tor* are formed immediately from other nouns ; as, *viātor*, a traveller ; *janitor*, a door-keeper ; from *via* and *janua*. In *meretrix* from *mereo*, *i* of the third root becomes *e*.

(c.) The agent of a few verbs is denoted by the terminations *a* and *o* annexed to the first root ; as, *convīva*, a guest ; *advēna*, a stranger ; *scriba*, a scribe ; *erro*, a vagrant ; *bibo*, a drunkard ; *comedo*, a glutton, from *convīvo*, *advēnio*, etc.

7. Many abstract nouns are formed by annexing *io* and *us* (gen. *ūs*) to the third root of a verb ; as, *actio*, an action ; *lectio*, reading ; from *āgo* (*act-*), *lēgo* (*lect-*) ;—*cantus*, singing ; *vīsus*, sight ; *ūsus*, use ; from *cāno* (*cant-*), *video* (*vīs-*), *ūtor* (*ūs-*).

REMARK 1. Nouns of both forms, and of like signification, are frequently derived from the same verb ; as, *concurſio* and *concurſus*, a running together ; *mōtio* and *mōtus*, etc.

REM. 2. Nouns formed by adding the termination *ūra* to the third root of a verb, sometimes have the same signification as those in *io* and *us*, and sometimes denote the result of an action ; as, *positūra*, position ; *vincūra*, a binding together ; from *pōno*, and *vincio* ; and the termination *ŭla* has sometimes the same meaning ; as, *querŭla*, complaint ; *loquŭla*, speech, from *quĕror* and *lōquor*.

NOTE. One of these forms is generally used to the exclusion of the others, and when two or more are found, they are usually employed in somewhat different senses.

8. The termination *ōrium*, added to the third root of a verb, denotes the place where the action of the verb is performed ; as, *auditōrium*, a lecture-room ; *conditōrium*, a repository, from *audio* and *condo*.

## COMPOSITION OF NOUNS.

### § 103. Compound nouns are formed variously :—

1. Of two nouns ; as, *rupicapra*, a wild goat, of *rūpes* and *capra*. In some words, compounded of two nouns, the former is a genitive ; as, *senatūsconsultus*, a decree of the senate ; *jurisconsultus*, a lawyer ; in others, both parts are declined ; as, *respublica*, *jusjurandum*. See § 91.

2. Of a noun and a verb ; as, *artifex*, an artist, of *ars* and *fācio* ; *fidiſer*, a harper of *fides* and *cāno* ; *agricōla*, a husbandman, of *āger* and *cōlō*.



3. Of an adjective and a noun; as, *æquinoctium*, the equinox, of *æquus* and *nox*; *millepēda*, a millepede, of *mille* and *pes*.

In *duumvir*, *triumvir*, *decemvir*, *centumvir*, the numeral adjective is in the genitive plural.

REMARK 1. When the former part of a compound word is a noun or an adjective, it usually ends in *i*; as, *artifex*, *rupicapra*, *agricola*, etc. If the second word begins with a vowel, an elision takes place; as, *quinquennium*, of *quinque* and *annus*; *magnanimus*, of *magnus* and *animus*.

4. Of an adverb and a noun; as, *nēfas*, wickedness; *nēmo*, nobody; of *ne*, *fas*, and *hōmo*. So *biduum*, of *bis* and *dies*.

5. Of a preposition and a noun: as, *incuria*, want of care, of *in* and *cūra*. So *intercillum*, an interval; *præcordia*, the diaphragm; *proverbium*, a proverb; *subsellium*, a low seat; *superficies*, a surface.

REM. 2. When the former part is a preposition, its final consonant is sometimes changed, to adapt it to that which follows it: as, *ignobilis*, *illegidus*, *imprudentia*, *irrumpe*, of *in* and *nobilis*, *legidus*, etc. See § 196.

## ADJECTIVES.

§ 104. An adjective is a word which qualifies or limits the meaning of a substantive.

Adjectives may be divided, according to their *signification*, into various classes; as denoting,

1. Character or quality; as, *bōnus*, good; *albus*, white; *amīcus*, friendly.
2. State or condition; as, *fēlix*, happy; *dīves*, rich.
3. Possession; as, *herilis*, a master's; *patrius*, a father's.
4. Quantity; as, *magnus*, great; *tōtus*, entire; *parrus*, small.
5. Number; as, *ūnus*, one; *secundus*, second; *tot*, so many; *quot*, as many. These are called *numerals*.
6. Time; as, *annuus*, yearly; *hesternus*, of yesterday; *biuus*, of two years; *trimestris*, of three months.
7. Place; as, *altus*, high; *vicinus*, near; *aërius*, aerial; *terrestris*, terrestrial.
8. Material; as, *aureus*, golden; *fagineus*, beechen; *terrēnus*, earthen.
9. Part; as, *nullus*, no one; *aliquis*, some one. These are called *partitives*.
10. Country; as, *Romānus*, Roman; *Arpīnas* of *Arpinum*. These are called *patrials*.
11. Diminution; as, *parvulus*, from *parvus*, small; *misellus*, from *miser*, miserable. These are called *diminutives*.
12. Amplification; as, *vinōsus* and *vinolentus*, much given to wine; *auritus*, having long ears. These are called *amplificatives*.
13. Relation; as, *avidus*, desirous of; *mēmor*, mindful of; *insuētus*. These are called *relatives*.
14. Interrogation; as, *quantus?* how great; *qualis?* of what kind; *quot?* how many? *quotus?* of what number? These are called *interrogatives*; and, when not used interrogatively, they are called *correlatives*.
15. Specification; as, *tālis*, such; *tantus* so great; *tot*, so many. These are called *demonstratives*.

## DECLENSION OF ADJECTIVES.

§ 105. 1. Adjectives are declined like substantives, and are either of the first and second declensions, or of the third only.

## ADJECTIVES OF THE FIRST AND SECOND DECLENSIONS.

2. The masculine of adjectives belonging to the first and second declensions, ends either in *us* or in *er*. The feminine and neuter are formed respectively by annexing *a* and *um* to the root of the masculine. The masculine in *us* is declined like *dominus*; that in *er* like *gēner* or *āger*; the feminine always like *mūsa*; and the neuter like *regnum*.

REMARK 1. The masculine of one adjective, *sātur*, *-ūra*, *-ūrum*, full ends in *ur*, and is declined like *gēner*.

*Bōnūs, good.*

*Singular.*

	<i>Masc.</i>	<i>Fem.</i>	<i>Neut.</i>
<i>N.</i>	bo'-nūs,	bo'-nă,	bo'-nŭm,
<i>G.</i>	bo'-nī,	bo'-næ,	bo'-nī,
<i>D.</i>	bo'-nō,	bo'-næ,	bo'-nō,
<i>Ac.</i>	bo'-nŭm,	bo'-năm,	bo'-nŭm,
<i>V.</i>	bo'-nē,	bo'-nă,	bo'-nŭm,
<i>Ab.</i>	bo'-nō.	bo'-nā.	bo'-nō.

*Plural.*

<i>N.</i>	bo'-nī,	bo'-næ,	bo'-nă,
<i>G.</i>	bo-nō'-rŭm,	bo-nā'-rŭm,	bo-nō'-rŭm,
<i>D.</i>	bo'-nīs,	bo'-nīs,	bo'-nīs,
<i>Ac.</i>	bo'-nōs,	bo'-nās,	bo'-nă,
<i>V.</i>	bo'-nī,	bo'-næ,	bo'-nă,
<i>Ab.</i>	bo'-nīs.	bo'-nīs.	bo'-nīs.

In like manner decline

<i>Al'-tus, high.</i>	<i>Fī'-dus, faithful.</i>	<i>Lon'-gus, long.</i>
<i>A-vā'-rus, covetous.</i>	<i>Im'-prō-bus, wicked.</i>	<i>Plē'-nus, full.</i>
<i>Be-nig'-nus, kind.</i>	<i>In-ī'-quus, unjust.</i>	<i>Tac'-ī-tus, silent.</i>

REM. 2. Like *bōnus* are also declined all participles in *us*; as,

*A-mā'-tus. Am-a-tū'-rus. A-man'-dus.*

Rem. 3. The masculine of the vocative singular of adjectives in *us* is sometimes like the nominative; as, *O vir fortis atque amicus*. Hor. *Meus* has both *mī* and *meus*.

REM. 4. The genitive plural of distributive numerals ends commonly in *ām* instead of *ōrum*; as, *crassitūde binām digitōrum*. Plin.

3. Těner, *tender*.*Singular.*

	<i>Masc.</i>	<i>Fem.</i>	<i>Neut.</i>
<i>N.</i>	te'-něr,	ten'-ě-rǎ,	ten'-ě-rŭm,
<i>G.</i>	ten'-ě-rī,	ten'-ě-ræ,	ten'-ě-rī,
<i>D.</i>	ten'-ě-rō,	ten'-ě-ræ,	ten'-ě-rō,
<i>Ac.</i>	ten'-ě-rŭm,	ten'-ě-rām,	ten'-ě-rŭm,
<i>V.</i>	te'-něr,	ten'-ě-rǎ,	ten'-ě-rŭm,
<i>Ab.</i>	ten'-ě-rō.	ten'-ě-rā.	ten'-ě-rō.

*Plural.*

<i>N.</i>	ten'-ě-rī,	ten'-ě-ræ,	ten'-ě-rǎ,
<i>G.</i>	ten-e-rō'-rŭm,	ten-e-rā'-rŭm,	ten-e-rō'-rŭm,
<i>D.</i>	ten'-ě-rīs,	ten'-ě-rīs,	ten'-ě-rīs,
<i>Ac.</i>	ten'-ě-rōs,	ten'-ě-rās,	ten'-ě-rǎ,
<i>V.</i>	ten'-ě-rī,	ten'-ě-ræ,	ten'-ě-rǎ,
<i>Ab.</i>	ten'-ě-rīs.	ten'-ě-rīs.	ten'-ě-rīs.

In like manner are declined

As'-per, <i>rough</i> .	Lǎ'-cer, <i>torn</i> .	Pros'-per, <i>prosperous</i>
Ex'-ter, <i>foreign</i> .	Lī'-ber, <i>free</i> .	Sǎ'-tur, <i>full</i> .
Gib'-ber, <i>crook-backed</i> .	Mī'-ser, <i>wretched</i> .	

So also *alter*, except in the genitive and dative singular (see § 107), *semifer* and the compounds of *gěro* and *fěro*; as, *laniger*, *opifer*.

NOTE. *Prosper* is less frequent than *prospěrus*, and *exter* is scarcely used in the nominative singular masculine.

§ 106. The other adjectives in *er* drop *e* in declension; as,Pĭger, *slothful*.*Singular.*

	<i>Masc.</i>	<i>Fem.</i>	<i>Neut.</i>
<i>N.</i>	pī'-gěr,	pī'-grǎ,	pī'-grŭm,
<i>G.</i>	pī'-grī,	pī'-græ,	pī'-grī,
<i>D.</i>	pī'-grō,	pī'-græ,	pī'-grō,
<i>Ac.</i>	pī'-grŭm,	pī'-grām,	pī'-grŭm,
<i>V.</i>	pī'-gěr,	pī'-grǎ,	pī'-grŭm,
<i>Ab.</i>	pī'-grō.	pī'-grā.	pī'-grō.

*Plural.*

<i>N.</i>	pī'-grī,	pī'-græ,	pī'-grǎ,
<i>G.</i>	pī'-grō'-rŭm,	pī'-grā'-rŭm,	pī'-grō'-rŭm,
<i>D.</i>	pī'-grīs,	pī'-grīs,	pī'-grīs,
<i>Ac.</i>	pī'-grōs,	pī'-grās,	pī'-grǎ,
<i>V.</i>	pī'-grī,	pī'-græ,	pī'-grǎ,
<i>Ab.</i>	pī'-grīs.	pī'-grīs.	pī'-grīs.

## In like manner decline

Æ'-ger, <i>sick</i> .	Mā'-cer, <i>lean</i> .	Scā'-ber, <i>rough</i> .
A'-ter, <i>black</i> .	Ni'-ger, <i>black</i> .	Si-nis'-ter, <i>left</i> .
Crē'-ber, <i>frequent</i> .	Pul'-cher, <i>fair</i> .	Tē'-ter, <i>foul</i> .
Glā'-ber, <i>smooth</i> .	Rū'-ber, <i>red</i> .	Vā'-fer, <i>crafty</i> .
In'-tē-ger, <i>entire</i> .	Sā'-cer, <i>sacred</i> .	

*Dexter*, right, has -*tra*, -*trum*, and less frequently -*tēra*, -*tērum*.

§ 107. Six adjectives in *us*, and three in *er*, have their genitive singular in *ius*, and their dative in *i*, in all the genders:—

<i>Alius</i> , <i>another</i> .	<i>Tōtus</i> , <i>whole</i> .	<i>Alter</i> , - <i>tēra</i> , - <i>tērum</i> , <i>the other</i> .
<i>Nullus</i> , <i>no one</i> .	<i>Ullus</i> , <i>any</i> .	<i>Uter</i> , - <i>tra</i> , - <i>trum</i> , <i>which of the two</i>
<i>Sōlus</i> , <i>alone</i> .	<i>Unus</i> , <i>one</i> .	<i>Neuter</i> , - <i>tra</i> , - <i>trum</i> , <i>neither</i> .

To these may be added the other compounds of *ūter*,—namely, *uterque*, each of two; *utercumque*, *uterlibet*, and *utervis*, which of the two you please; gen. *utriusque*, etc.—also, *alterūter*, one of two; gen. *alterutrius*, and sometimes *alterius utrius*; dat. *alterutri*. So *alteruterque*, and *unusquisque*. See § 138, 4.

*Nullus*, *sōlus*, *tōtus*, *ullus*, and *ūnus* are thus declined:—

	Singular.		
	<i>Masc.</i>	<i>Fem.</i>	<i>Neut.</i>
<i>N.</i>	ū'-nūs,	ū'-nā,	ū'-nūm,
<i>G.</i>	u-nī'-ūs,*	u-nī'-ūs,	u-nī'-ūs,
<i>D.</i>	u'-nī,	u'-nī,	u'-nī,
<i>Ac.</i>	u'-nūm,	u'-nām,	u'-nūm,
<i>V.</i>	u'-nē,	u'-nā,	u'-nūm,
<i>Ab.</i>	u'-nō.	u'-nā.	u'-nō.

The plural is regular, like that of *bōnus*.

REMARK 1. *Alius* has *aliud* in the nominative and accusative singular neuter, and in the genitive *alius*, contracted for *aliūs*.

REM. 2. Except in the genitive and dative singular, *alter* is declined like *tēner* and *ūter* and *neuter* like *piger*.

REM. 3. Some of these adjectives, in early writers, and occasionally even in Cicero, Cæsar, and Nepos, form their genitive and dative regularly, like *bōnus*, *tēner*, or *piger*.

## ADJECTIVES OF THE THIRD DECLENSION.

§ 108. Some adjectives of the third declension have three terminations in the nominative singular; some two; and others only one.

I. Those of three terminations end in *er*, masc.; *is*, fem.; and *e*, neut.; and are thus declined:—

*Acer*, *sharp*.

Singular.

	<i>Masc.</i>	<i>Fem.</i>	<i>Neut.</i>
<i>N.</i>	ā'-cēr,	ā'-crīs,	ā'-crē,
<i>G.</i>	a'-crīs,	a'-crīs,	a'-crīs,
<i>D.</i>	a'-crī,	a'-crī,	a'-crī,
<i>Ac.</i>	a'-crēm,	a'-crēm,	a'-crē,
<i>V.</i>	a'-cēr,	a'-crīs,	a'-crē,
<i>Ab.</i>	a'-crī.	a'-crī.	a'-crī.



*Plural.*

N.	a'-crēs,	a'-crēs,	a'-cri-ă,
G.	a'-cri-ŭm,	a'-cri-um,	a'-cri-um,
D.	ac'-ri-bŭs,	ac'-ri-bŭs,	ac'-ri-bŭs,
Ac.	a'-crēs,	a'-crēs,	a'-cri-ă,
V.	a'-crēs,	a'-crēs,	a'-cri-ă,
Ab.	ac'-ri-bŭs.	ac'-ri-bŭs.	ac'-ri-bŭs.

In like manner are declined the following;—

Al'-ăcer, <i>cheerful.</i>	Pa-lus'-ter, <i>marshy.</i>	Sil-ves'-ter, <i>woody.</i>
Cam-pes'-ter, <i>champaign.</i>	Pe-des'-ter, <i>on foot.</i>	Ter-res'-ter, <i>terrestrial.</i>
Cel'-ē-ber, <i>famous.</i>	Pŭ'-ter, <i>rotten.</i>	Vol'-ŭ-ter, <i>winged.</i>
E-ques'-ter, <i>equestrian.</i>	Sa-lŭ'-ber, <i>wholesome.</i>	

To these add names of months in *-ber*, used as adjectives; as, *October*, etc. (cf. § 71), and *cēler*, swift, which has *celēris*, *celēre*; gen. *celēris*, etc.

REMARK 1. The termination *er* was anciently sometimes feminine; as, *volūcer famā*. Petr.: and, on the other hand, the masculine often ends in *is*; as, *collis silvestris*, Cæs.

REM. 2. *Volūcer* has *um* in the genitive plural.

§ 109. II. Adjectives of two terminations end in *is* for the masculine and feminine, and *e* for the neuter, except comparatives, which end in *or* and *us*.

Those in *is*, *e*, are thus declined:—

*Mitis mild.*

		<i>Singular.</i>			<i>Plural.</i>
		N.			N.
M. & F.			M. & F.		
N.	mi'-tīs,	mi'-tē,	N.	mi'-tēs,	mit'-i-ă,*
G.	mi'-tīs,	mi'-tīs,	G.	mit'-i-ŭm,*	mit'-i-ŭm,
D.	mi'-tī,	mi'-tī,	D.	mit'-i-bŭs,	mit'-i-bŭs,
Ac.	mi'-tēm,	mi'-tē,	Ac.	mi'-tēs,	mit'-i-ă,
V.	mi'-tīs,	mi'-tē,	V.	mi'-tēs,	mit'-i-ă,
Ab.	mi'-tī.	mi'-tī.	Ab.	mit'-i-bŭs.	mit'-i-bŭs.

In like manner decline

Ag'-i-lis, <i>active.</i>	Dul'-cis, <i>sweet.</i>	In-col'-ŭ-mis, <i>safe.</i>
Br'-vis, <i>short.</i>	For'-tis, <i>brave.</i>	Mi-rab'-i-lis, <i>wonderful.</i>
Cru-dē'-lis, <i>cruel.</i>	Grā'-vis, <i>heavy.</i>	Om'-nis, <i>all.</i>

*Tres*, three, is declined like the plural of *mitis*.

NOTE. Several adjectives of this class have forms also in *us*, *a*, *um*. See § 113.

§ 110. (a.) All comparatives, except *plus*, more, are thus declined:—

\* Pronounced *mish'-e-a*, etc. See § 112.

Mitior,\* *milder*.*Singular.*

	<i>M. &amp; F.</i>	<i>N.</i>
<i>N.</i>	mit'-i-ōr,	mit'-i-ūs,
<i>G.</i>	mit-i-ō'-rīs,	mit-i-ō'-rīs,
<i>D.</i>	mit-i-ō'-rī,	mit-i-ō'-rī,
<i>Ac.</i>	mit-i-ō'-rēm,	mit'-i-ūs,
<i>V.</i>	mit'-i-ōr,	mit'-i-ūs,
<i>Ab.</i>	mit-i-ō'-rě, or -rī.	mit-i-ō'-rě, or -rī.

*Plural.*

	<i>M. &amp; F.</i>	<i>N.</i>
<i>N.</i>	mit-i-ō'-rēs,	mit-i-ō'-ră,
<i>G.</i>	mit-i-ō'-rūm,	mit-i-ō'-rūm,
<i>D.</i>	mit-i-or'-i-būs,	mit-i-or'-i-būs,
<i>Ac.</i>	mit-i-ō'-rēs,	mit-i-ō'-ră,
<i>V.</i>	mit-i-ō'-rēs,	mit-i-ō'-ră,
<i>Ab.</i>	mit-i-or'-i-būs.	mit-i-or'-i-būs.

In like manner decline

Al-ti-or, *higher*.Au-da'-ci-or, *bolder*.Bre'-vi-or, *shorter*.Cru-de'-li-or, *more cruel*.Dul'-ci-or, *sweeter*.Fe-lic'-i-or, *happier*.Fe-ro'-ci-or, *fiercer*.For'-ti-or, *braver*.Gra'-vi-or, *heavier*.Pru-den'-ti-or, *more prudent*.U-be'-ri-or, *more fertile*.Plūs, *more*, is thus declined :—*Singular.*

<i>N.</i>
<i>N.</i> plus,
<i>G.</i> plū'-rīs,
<i>D.</i> _____,
<i>Ac.</i> plus,
<i>V.</i> _____,
<i>Ab.</i> (plū'-rě, <i>obs.</i> )

*Plural.*

<i>M. &amp; F.</i>	<i>N.</i>
<i>N.</i> plū'-rēs,	plū'-ră, <i>rarely plu -ri-ă,</i>
<i>G.</i> plu'-ri-ūm,	plu'-ri-ūm,
<i>D.</i> plu'-rī-būs,	plu'-rī-būs,
<i>Ac.</i> plū'-rēs,	plū'-ră,
<i>V.</i> _____,	_____,
<i>Ab.</i> plu'-rī-būs.	plu'-rī-būs.

So, but in the plural number only, *complūres*, a great many.

§ 111. III. Other adjectives of the third declension have but one termination in the nominative singular for all genders. They all end in *l*, *r*, *s*, or *x*, and increase in the genitive.

They are thus declined :—

Fēlix, *happy*.*Singular.*

<i>M. &amp; F.</i>	<i>N.</i>
<i>N.</i> fe'-lix,	fe'-lix,
<i>G.</i> fe-li'-cīs,	fe-li'-cīs,
<i>D.</i> fe-li'-cī,	fe-li'-cī,
<i>Ac.</i> fe-li'-cēm,	fe'-lix,
<i>V.</i> fe'-lix,	fe'-lix,
<i>Ab.</i> fe-li'-cě, or -cī.	fe-li'-cě, or -cī.

\* Pronounced *mish'-e-or*, etc. See § 12.

*Plural.*

<i>M. &amp; F.</i>		<i>N.</i>
<i>N.</i>	fe-li'-cēs,	fe-lic'-i-ă,*
<i>G.</i>	fe-lic'-i-ūm,*	fe-lic'-i-ūm,
<i>D.</i>	fe-lic'-i-būs,	fe-lic'-i-būs,
<i>Ac.</i>	fe-li'-cēs,	fe-lic'-i-ă,
<i>V.</i>	fe-li'-cēs,	fe-lic'-i-ă,
<i>Ab.</i>	fe-lic'-i-būs.	fe-lic'-i-būs.

*Præsens, present.**Singular.*

<i>M. &amp; F.</i>		<i>N.</i>
<i>N.</i>	præ'-sens,	præ'-sens,
<i>G.</i>	præ-sen'-tīs,	præ-sen'-tīs,
<i>D.</i>	præ-sen'-tī,	præ-sen'-tī,
<i>Ac.</i>	præ-sen'-tēm,	præ'-sens,
<i>V.</i>	præ'-sens,	præ'-sens,
<i>Ab.</i>	præ-sen'-tē, or -tī.	præ-sen'-tē, or -tī.

*Plural.*

<i>N.</i>	præ-sen'-tēs,	præ-sen'-ti-ă,†
<i>G.</i>	præ-sen'-ti-ūm,	præ-sen'-ti-ūm,
<i>D.</i>	præ-sen'-tī-būs,	præ-sen'-tī-būs,
<i>Ac.</i>	præ-sen'-tēs,	præ-sen'-ti-ă,
<i>V.</i>	præ-sen'-tēs,	præ-sen'-ti-ă,
<i>Ab.</i>	præ-sen'-tī-būs.	præ-sen'-tī-būs.

*In like manner decline*

<i>Au'-dax, -ācis, bold.</i>	<i>Par'-tī-ceps, -īpis, par-</i>	<i>Sol'-lers, -tis, shrewd.</i>
<i>Com'-pos, -ctis, master of.</i>	<i>ticipant.</i>	<i>Sos'-pes, -ītis, safe.</i>
<i>Fē'-rox, -ōcis, fierce.</i>	<i>Præ'-pes, -ētis, swift.</i>	<i>Sup'-plex, -īcis, sup-</i>
<i>In'-gens, -tis, huge.</i>	<i>Prū'-dens, -tis, prudent.</i>	<i>pliant.</i>

REMARK. All present participles are declined like *præsens*; as, *A'-mans. Mō'-nens. Rē'-gens. Ca'-pi-ens. Au'-di-ens.*

NOTE. A few adjectives of one termination have redundant forms in *us, a, um*; see § 116.

## RULES FOR THE OBLIQUE CASES OF ADJECTIVES OF THE THIRD DECLENSION.

*GENITIVE SINGULAR.*

§ 112. Most adjectives of the third declension form their genitive singular like nouns of the same termination.

The following may here be specified:—

1. Of those in *es* (cf. § 73) some have *-ētis*; as, *hēbes, perpes, præpes, and tēres*, *-īngries* and *locūples* have *-ītis*;—some have *-ītis*; as, *dīves, sospes, and superstes*;—some have *-īdis*; as, *dīses, and rēses*;—*bīpes, and trīpes* have *-pēdis*;—*pūbes* and *pulēris*, and *impūbes, impubēris* and *impūbis*.

\* Pronounced *fe-lisht'-e-um* etc See § 10, Exc., and § 7., 3, (b.)

† Pronounced *pre-zen'-she-a*, etc.



2. *Compos* and *impos* have *-ōtis*, and *exos*, *exossis*.—*Exlex* has *exlēgis*, *pernox* has *pernoctis* (§ 78), *præcox*, *præcōcis*, and *reduc*, *reducis*.—*Cæubs* has *cælibis* (§ 77); *intercus*, *intercūtis*, and *vētus*, *vetēris*. Those in *ceps* which are compounds of *cāput*, have *-cipitis*; as, *auceps*, *præceps* (§ 78, 1); but the compounds of *ceps* from *cāpio* have *-ipis*; as, *particeps*, *participis*.—Those in *cors*, compounds of *cor*, have *-cordis*; as, *concors*, *concordis* (§ 71, Exc. 2).—*Mēmor* and *immēmor* have *-ōris*.

### ABLATIVE SINGULAR.

§ 113. 1. Adjectives which have *e* in the nominative singular neuter have only *i* in the ablative.

Exc. 1. The ablatives *bimestre*, *cæleste*, and *perenne* are found in Ovid, and *cognomine* in Virgil.

2. Comparatives and participles in *ns*, when used as participles, especially in the ablative absolute, have rather *e* than *i*; but participial adjectives in *ns* have rather *i* than *e*.

3. Adjectives of one termination have either *e* or *i* in the ablative.

Exc. 2. The following adjectives of one termination have only *e* in the ablative:—

*Bicorpor*, *bīpes*, *cælebs*, *compos*, *dēses*, *discolor*, *hospes*, *impos*, *impūbes*, *juvénis*, *locuples*, *pauper*, *princeps*, *pūber* or *pūbes*, *sénex*, *sospes*, *superstes*, *tricorpor*, *tricuspis*, and *tripes*.

Exc. 3. The following adjectives of one termination have only *i* in the ablative:—

*Auceps*, *concors*, *discors*, *hēbes*, *immēmor*, *īners*, *īngens*, *īnops*, *mēmor*, *par*, *præceps*, *rēcens*, *rēpens*, *vīgil*, and most adjectives in *x*, especially those in *plex*.

Rem. 1. *Inerte* occurs in Ovid, *recente* in Ovid and Catullus, and *præcipe* in Ennius.

Rem. 2. *Præsens*, when used of things, makes the ablative in *i*; when used of persons, it has *e*.

### NOMINATIVE, ACCUSATIVE, AND GENITIVE PLURAL

§ 114. 1. The neuter of the nominative and accusative plural ends in *ia*, and the genitive plural of all genders in *ium*; but comparatives in *or*, with *vētus*, old, and *ūber*, fertile, have *a*, and *um*.

2. The accusative plural of masculine and feminine adjectives, whose genitive plural ends in *ium*, anciently ended in *īs* or *ēs*, instead of *ēs*. Cf. § 85, Exc. 1.

Exc. 1. Those adjectives that have only *e* in the ablative singular, have *um* in the genitive plural.

Exc. 2. Compounds of *fācio*, *cāpio*, and of such nouns as make *um* in their genitive plural, with *cēler*, *compar*, *cicur*, *dīves*, *mēmor*, *immēmor*, *præpes*, *supplex*, and *vīgil*, make their genitive plural in *um*.

Exc. 3. *Dis*, *locuples*, *sons*, and *īnsons* have either *um* or *ium*. The poets and the later prose writers sometimes form the genitive plural of other adjectives and of participles in *ns*, by syncope, in *um*, instead of *ium*; as, *cælestum*, Virg Ovid, etc.

## IRREGULAR ADJECTIVES.

§ 115. Some adjectives are defective, others redundant

## DEFECTIVE ADJECTIVES.

1. (a.) Many adjectives denoting personal qualities or attributes want the neuter gender, unless when occasionally joined to a neuter substantive used figuratively. Such are the following:—

Bicorpor, bipes, calebs, compos, consors, degēner, dives, impos, impūbes, industrius, inops, insons, invitus, juvenis, locuples, mēmor, pauper, particeps princeps, pūber, or pūbes, rēdux, sēnex, sons, sospes, superstes, simplex, tricorpor, vigil.

(b.) *Victrix* and *ultrix* are feminine in the singular, seldom neuter; in the plural, they are feminine and neuter. Such verbals partake of the nature both of substantives and adjectives, and correspond to masculines in *tor*. See § 102, 6, (a.)

2. The following want the genitive plural, and are rarely used in the neuter gender:—

Concōlor, dēsēs, hēbes, perpes, rēsēs, tēres, versicōlor.

3. The names of months, which are properly adjectives, have only the masculine and feminine genders.

4. Some adjectives are wholly indeclinable.

Such are *frūgi*, temperate; *nēquam*, worthless; *sāt* or *sātis*, sufficient; the plurals *aliquot*, *tōt*, *quōt*, *totidem*, *quotquot*; and the cardinal numbers from *quatuor* to *centum* inclusive, and also *mille*. Cf. § 118, 1, and 6, (b.)

5. The following adjectives are used only in certain cases: —

*Bilicem*, acc.; doubly-tissued. *Cetēra*, *cetērū*, the rest, wants the nom. sing. masc. *Decemplīcem*, acc.; tenfold. *Exspes*, nom.; hopeless. *Inquies*, nom.; -ētem, acc.; -ēte, abl.; restless. *Mactus*, and *macte*, nom.; *macte*, acc.; honored, —*macti*, nom. plur. *Necesse*, and *necessum*, nom., acc.; necessary. *Plus*, nom., acc.; pluris, gen.; more; —pl. plurēs, -a, nom. acc.; -ium gen.; ibus, dat., abl. Cf. § 110. *Postēra*, *postērū*, coming after, wants the nom. sing. masc. *Pōtis*, nom. sing. and pl., all genders; able. *Pōte*, nom. sing., for potest; possible. *Septēmplicis*, gen.; -ce, abl.; seven-fold. *Siremps*, and *sirempse*, nom. and acc., alike. *Tantundem*, nom. acc.; tantīdem, gen.; tantandem, acc.; so much. *Trilicem*, acc.; trebly-tissued; trilices, nom. and acc. pl.

## REDUNDANT ADJECTIVES.

§ 116. The following adjectives are redundant in termination and declension. Those marked *r* are more rarely used.

*Ascēlvis*, and -us, *r*, ascending.  
*Auxiliāris*, and -ius, auxiliary.  
*Bijūgis*, and -us, yoked two together.  
*Declvis*, and -us, *r*, descending.  
*Exanimis*, and -us, *r*, lifeless.  
*Hilāris*, and -us, cheerful.  
*Imbecillis*, *r*, and -us, weak.  
*Impūbes*, and -is, *r*, -is or -ēris not grown up.  
*Inermis*, and -us, *r*, unarmed.  
*Infrenis*, and -us, unbridled.

*Inquies*, and -ētus, restless.  
*Joculāris*, and -ius, *r*, laughable.  
*Multijūgis*, *r*, and -us, yoked many together.  
*Opulens*, and -lentus, rich.  
*Præcox*, -cōquis, and -cōquus, early ripe.  
*Proclvis*, and -us, *r*, sloping.  
*Quadrijūgis*, and -us, yoked four together.  
*Semianimis*, and -us, half alive.

Semierinis, and -us, *half armed*.  
 Semisomnis, and -us, r, *half asleep*.  
 Singulāris, and -ius, *single*.

Sublimis, and -us, r, *high*.  
 Unānimis, r, and -us, *unanimous*.  
 Violens, r, and -lentus, *violent*.

To these may be added some adjectives in *er* and *is*; as, *salūber* and *-bris* *celeber* and *-bris*. Cf. § 108, R. 1.

## NUMERAL ADJECTIVES.

§ 117. Numeral adjectives are divided into three principal classes—*Cardinal*, *Ordinal*, and *Distributive*.

I. Cardinal numbers are those which simply denote the number of things, in answer to the question *Quot?* ‘How many?’ They are,

1. Unus,	one.	I.
2. Duo,	two.	II.
3. Tres,	three.	III.
4. Quātuor,	four.	III. or IV.
5. Quinque,	five.	V.
6. Sex,	six.	VI.
7. Septem,	seven.	VII.
8. Octo,	eight.	VIII.
9. Nōvem,	nine.	VIII. or IX.
10. Dēcem,	ten.	X.
11. Undēcim,	eleven.	XI.
12. Duodēcim,	twelve.	XII.
13. Tredēcim,	thirteen.	XIII.
14. Quatuordēcim,	fourteen.	XIII. or XIV.
15. Quindēcim,	fifteen.	XV.
16. Sedēcim, or sexdēcim,	sixteen.	XVI.
17. Septendēcim,	seventeen.	XVII.
18. Octodēcim,	eighteen.	XVIII.
19. Novendēcim,	nineteen.	XVIII. or XIX.
20. Viginti,	twenty.	XX.
21. Viginti unus, or unus et viginti, }	twenty-one.	XXI.
22. Viginti duo, or duo et viginti, etc., }	twenty-two.	XXII.
30. Trīginta,	thirty.	XXX.
40. Quadrāginta,	forty.	XXXX. or XL.
50. Quinquaginta,	fifty.	L.
60. Sexaginta,	sixty.	LX.
70. Septuaginta,	seventy.	LXX.
80. Octoginta, or octuaginta,	eighty.	LXXX.
90. Nōnāginta,	ninety.	LXXX. or XC.
100. Centum,	a hundred.	C.
101. Centum unus, or centum et unus, etc., }	a hundred and one	CI.
200. Dūcenti, -æ, a,	two hundred.	CC.
300. Trēcenti, etc.,	three hundred.	CCC.
400. Quadringenti,	four hundred.	CCCC, or CD.
500. Quingenti,	five hundred.	D, or D.
600. Sexcenti,	six hundred.	DC, or DC.
700. Septingenti,	seven hundred.	DCC, or DCC.
800. Octingenti,	eight hundred.	DCCC, or DCCC.
900. Nongenti,	nine hundred.	DCCCC, or DCCCC.
1000. Mille,	a thousand.	C, or M.
2000. Duo millia, or bis mille, }	two thousand.	CICIC, or MM:



5000	Quinque millia, or quingies mille, }	five thousand.	IDD.
10000	Decem millia, or decies mille, }	ten thousand.	CCIDD.
50000.	Quinquaginta millia, or quinquagies mille, }	fifty thousand.	IDDD.
100000.	Centum millia, or centies mille, }	a hundred thousand.	CCCKIDD.

§ 118. 1. The first three cardinal numbers are declined; from four to a hundred inclusive they are indeclinable; those denoting hundreds are declined like the plural of *bōnus*.

For the declension of *ūnus* and *tres*, see §§ 107 and 109.

*Duo* is thus declined:—

Plural.

M.	F.	N.
N. dū'-o,	du'-æ,	du'-o,
G. du-ō'-rum,	du-ā'-rum,	du-ō'-rum,
D. du-ō'-bus,	du-ā'-bus,	du-ō'-bus,
Ac. du'-os, or du'-o,	du'-as,	du'-o,
V. du'-o,	du'-æ,	du'-o,
Ab. du-ō'-bus.	du-ā'-bus.	du-ō'-bus.

REMARK 1. *Duorum*, *duarum*, are often contracted into *duūm*, especially in compounds; as, *duūmvir*, and when joined with *millium*.—*Ambo*, both, which partakes of the nature of a numeral and of a pronoun, is declined like *duo*.

2. The cardinal numbers, except *ūnus* and *mille*, are used in the plural only.

REM. 2. The plural of *unus* is used with nouns which have no singular, or whose singular has a different sense from the plural; as, *unæ nuptiæ*, one marriage; *una castra*, one camp. It is used also with nouns denoting several things considered as one whole; as, *una vestimenta*, one suit of clothes. So also, when it takes the signification of "alone" or "the same"; as, *uni Ubii*, the Ubians alone; *unis moribus vivere*,—with the same manners.

3. (a.) Thirteen, sixteen, seventeen, eighteen, and nineteen, are often expressed by two numbers, the greater of which usually precedes, united by *et*; thus, *dēcem et tres*, *dēcem et novem*, or, omitting *et*, *dēcem novem*. *Octodēcim* has no good authority. See *infra*, 4.

(b.) From twenty to a hundred, the smaller number with *et* is put first, or the greater without *et*; as, *unus et viginti*, or *viginti unus*. Above one hundred, the greater precedes, with or without *et*; as, *centum et unus*, or *centum unus*; *trecenti sexaginta sex*, or *trecenti et sexaginta sex*. *Et* is never twice used, but the poets sometimes take *ac*, *atque*, or *que*, instead of *et*.

4. For eighteen, twenty-eight, etc., and for nineteen, twenty-nine, etc. (excepting sixty-eight, sixty-nine, and ninety-eight), a subtractive expression is more frequent than the additive form; as, *duodeviginti* two from twenty; *undeviginti*, one from twenty; *duodetriginta*, *undetriginta*, etc. Neither *un* (*unus*) nor *duo* can be declined in these combinations. The additive forms for thirty-eight, etc. to ninety-eight, and for forty-nine, etc. to ninety-nine, except those for sixty-nine, seem not to occur.

5. (a.) Thousands are generally expressed by prefixing the smaller cardinal numbers to *millia*: as, *dēcem millia*, ten thousand; *ducenta millia*, two hundred thousand. As there is in Latin no unit above *mille*, a thousand, the higher units of modern numeration are expressed by prefixing the numeral adverbs to the

combination *centēna millia*; as, *decies centēna millia*, a million; *centies centēna millia*, ten millions. In such combinations *centēna millia* is sometimes omitted; as, *decies*, scil. *centēna millia*.

(b.) The poets sometimes make use of numeral adverbs in expressing smaller numbers; as, *bis sex* for *duodēcim*; *bis centum* for *ducenti*, etc.

#### 6. *Mille* is used either as a substantive or as an adjective.

(a.) When taken substantively, it is indeclinable in the singular number and, in the plural, has *millia*, *millium*, *millibus*, etc.; as, *mille hominum*, a thousand men; *duo millia hominum*, two thousand men, etc. When *mille* is a substantive, the things numbered are put in the genitive, as in the preceding examples, unless a declined numeral comes between; as, *habuit tria millia trecentos milites*.

(b.) As an adjective, *mille* is plural only, and indeclinable: as, *mille homines*, a thousand men; *cum bis mille hominibus*, with two thousand men.

7. Capitals were used by the Romans to mark numbers. The letters employed for this purpose were C. I. L. V. X., which are, therefore, called *Numeral Letters*. I. denotes *one*; V. *five*; X. *ten*; L. *fifty*; and C. *a hundred*. By the various combinations of these five letters, all the different numbers are expressed.

(a.) The repetition of a numeral letter repeats its value. Thus, II. signifies *two*; III. *three*; XX. *twenty*; XXX. *thirty*; CC. *two hundred*, etc. But V. and L. are never repeated.

(b.) When a letter of a less value is placed before a letter of a greater value, the less takes away its value from the greater; but being placed after, it adds its value to the greater; thus,

IV. Four.	V. Five.	VI. Six.
IX. Nine.	X. Ten.	XI. Eleven.
XL. Forty.	L. Fifty.	LX. Sixty.
XC. Ninety.	C. A hundred.	CX. A hundred and ten.

(c.) A *thousand* was marked thus, CIO, which, in later times, was contracted into M. *Five hundred* is marked thus, IO, or, by contraction, D.

(d.) The annexing of the *apostrophus* or inverted C (O) to IO makes its value ten times greater; thus, IOO marks *five thousand*; and IOOO, *fifty thousand*.

(e.) The prefixing of C, together with the annexing of O, to the number CIO, makes its value ten times greater; thus, CCIOO denotes *ten thousand*; and CCCIOOO, *a hundred thousand*. The Romans, according to Pliny, proceeded no further in this method of notation. If they had occasion to express a larger number, they did it by repetition; thus, CCCIOOO, CCCIOOO, signified *two hundred thousand*, etc.

(f.) We sometimes find *thousands* expressed by a straight line drawn over the top of the numeral letters. Thus,  $\overline{\text{III}}$ . denotes *three thousand*;  $\overline{\text{X}}$ ., the *thousand*.

§ 119. II. *Ordinal* numbers are such as denote order or rank, and answer to the question, *Quotus?* Which of the numbers? They all end in *us*, and are declined like *bōnus*; as, *primus*, first; *secundus*, second.

III. *Distributive* numbers are those which indicate an equal division among several persons or things, and answer to the question, *Quoteni?* How many apiece? as, *singūli*, one by one, or, one to each; *binī*, two by two, or two to each, etc. They are always used in the plural, and are declined like the plural of *bōnus*, except that they usually have *ūm* instead of *ōrum* in the genitive plural. Cf. § 105, R. 4.

The following table contains the ordinal and distributive numbers, and the corresponding numeral adverbs, which answer to the question, *Quoties? How many times?* —

Ordinal.	Distributive.	Numeral Adverbs.
1. <i>Primus, first.</i>	<i>Singŭli, one by one.</i>	<i>Sēmel, once.</i>
2. <i>Sēcundus, second.</i>	<i>Bīni, two by two.</i>	<i>Bis, twice.</i>
3. <i>Tertius, third.</i>	<i>Terni, or trīni.</i>	<i>Ter, thrice.</i>
4. <i>Quartus, fourth.</i>	<i>Quaterni.</i>	<i>Quāter, four times.</i>
5. <i>Quintus, fifth.</i>	<i>Quīni.</i>	<i>Quīnquies.</i>
6. <i>Sextus, sixth.</i>	<i>Sēni.</i>	<i>Sexies.</i>
7. <i>Septimus, seventh.</i>	<i>Septēni.</i>	<i>Septies.</i>
8. <i>Octāvus, eighth.</i>	<i>Octōni.</i>	<i>Octies.</i>
9. <i>Nōnus, ninth.</i>	<i>Novēni.</i>	<i>Novies.</i>
10. <i>Dēcimus, tenth, etc.</i>	<i>Dēni.</i>	<i>Dēcies.</i>
11. <i>Undecimus.</i>	<i>Undēni.</i>	<i>Undecies.</i>
12. <i>Duodecimus.</i>	<i>Duodēni.</i>	<i>Duodecies.</i>
13. <i>Tertius decimus.</i>	<i>Terni dēni.</i>	<i>Terdecies.</i>
14. <i>Quartus decimus.</i>	<i>Quaterni dēni.</i>	<i>Quatuordecies.</i>
15. <i>Quintus decimus.</i>	<i>Quīni dēni.</i>	<i>Quindecies.</i>
16. <i>Sextus decimus.</i>	<i>Sēni dēni.</i>	<i>Sedecies.</i>
17. <i>Septimus decimus.</i>	<i>Septēni dēni.</i>	<i>Decies et septics</i>
18. <i>Octāvus decimus.</i>	<i>Octōni dēni.</i>	<i>Duodevicies.</i>
19. <i>Nōnus decimus.</i>	<i>Novēni dēni.</i>	<i>Undevicies.</i>
20. { <i>Vicēsīmus, or</i> <i>vigesīmus.</i> }	<i>Vicēni.</i>	<i>Vicies.</i>
21. <i>Vicesīmus primus.</i>	<i>Vicēni singŭli.</i>	<i>Semel et vicies.</i>
22. <i>Vicesīmus secundus.</i>	<i>Vicēni bīni, etc.</i>	<i>Bis et vicies, etc.</i>
30. { <i>Trīcesīmus, or</i> <i>trigesīmus.</i> }	<i>Tricēni.</i>	<i>Tricies.</i>
40. <i>Quadrāgesīmus.</i>	<i>Quadragēni.</i>	<i>Quadrages.</i>
50. <i>Quinquagesīmus.</i>	<i>Quinquagēni.</i>	<i>Quinquagies.</i>
60. <i>Sexagesīmus.</i>	<i>Sexagēni.</i>	<i>Sexagies.</i>
70. <i>Septuagesīmus.</i>	<i>Septuagēni.</i>	<i>Septuagies.</i>
80. <i>Octogesīmus.</i>	<i>Octogēni.</i>	<i>Octogies.</i>
90. <i>Nonagesīmus.</i>	<i>Nonagēni.</i>	<i>Nonagies.</i>
100. <i>Centesīmus.</i>	<i>Centēni.</i>	<i>Centies.</i>
200. <i>Dūcentesīmus.</i>	<i>Ducēni.</i>	<i>Ducenties.</i>
300. <i>Trēcentesīmus.</i>	<i>Trecēni, or trecentēni.</i>	{ <i>Trecenties, or</i> <i>tricenties.</i> }
400. <i>Quadrīngentesīmus</i>	{ <i>Quadrīngēni, or</i> <i>quadrīngentēni.</i> }	<i>Quadrīngenties.</i>
500. <i>Quīngentesīmus.</i>	<i>Quīngēni.</i>	<i>Quīngenties.</i>
600. <i>Sexcentēsīmus.</i>	<i>Sexcēni, or sexcentēni.</i>	<i>Sexcenties.</i>
700. <i>Septīngentesīmus.</i>	<i>Septīngēni.</i>	<i>Septīngenties.</i>
800. <i>Octīngentesīmus.</i>	<i>Octīngēni.</i>	<i>Octīngenties.</i>
900. <i>Nongentesīmus.</i>	<i>Nongēni.</i>	<i>Nongīngenties.</i>
1000. <i>Millesīmus.</i>	{ <i>Millēni, or</i> <i>singŭla millia.</i> }	<i>Millies.</i>
2000. <i>Bis millesīmus.</i>	{ <i>Bis millēni, or</i> <i>bīna millia.</i> }	<i>Bis millies.</i>

§ 120. 1. In the ordinals, instead of *primus*, *prior* is used, if only two are spoken of. *Alter* is often used for *secundus*.

2. (a.) From thirteenth to nineteenth, the smaller number is usually put first, without *et*; as, *tertius decimus*, but sometimes the greater with or without *et*; as, *decimus et tertius*, or *decimus tertius*.

(b.) Twenty-first, thirty-first, etc. are often expressed by *unus et vicesimus*, *unus et tricesimus*, etc., one and twentieth, etc.; and twenty-second, etc., by *duo*, or *alter et vicesimus*, etc., in which *duo* is not changed. In the other compound numbers, the larger precedes without *et*, or the smaller with *et*; as, *vicesimus quartus*, or *quartus et vicesimus*.



(c.) For eighteenth, etc., to fifty-eighth, and for nineteenth, etc., to fifty-ninth, the subtractive forms, *duodevicesimus*, etc., and *undevicesimus*, etc., are often used.

3. In the distributives, eighteen, thirty-eight, forty-eight, and nineteen and twenty-nine, are often expressed by the subtractives *duodevicensi*, etc., *undevicensi*, etc.

4. (a.) Distributives are sometimes used by the poets for cardinal numbers; as, *bina spicula*, two darts. Virg. So likewise in prose, with nouns that want the singular; as, *bina nuptiæ*, two weddings.

(b.) The singular of some distributives is used in the sense of multiplicatives; as, *binus*, twofold. So *ternus*, *quīnus*, *septēnus*.

5. In the numeral adverbs, for the intermediate numbers 21, 22, etc., the larger number also may be put first, either with or without *et*; and for twenty-eight times and thirty-nine times, *duodetrices* and *undequadrages* are found.

## § 121. To the preceding classes may be added the following:—

1. *Multiplicatives*, which denote how many fold, in answer to the question, *quotuplex*? They all end in *plex*, and are declined like *fēlix*; as,

Simplex, *single*.

Quincūplex, *fivefold*.

Dūplex, *twofold*, or *double*.

Septemplex, *sevenfold*.

Triplex, *threefold*.

Decemplex, *tenfold*.

Quadrūplex, *fourfold*.

Centūplex, *a hundred fold*.

2. *Proportionals*, which denote how many times one thing is greater than another; as, *dūplus*, *a, um*, twice as great; so *trīplus*, *quadrūplus*, *octūplus*, *decūplus*. They are generally found only in the neuter.

3. *Temporals*, which denote time; as, *bīmus*, *a, um*, two years old; so *trīmus*, *quadrīmus*, etc. Also, *biennis*, lasting two years, biennial; so *quadriennis*, *quīquennis*, etc. So also, *bimestris*, of two months' continuance; *trimestris*, etc., *biduus*, etc. To these may be added certain nouns, compounds of *annus* and *dies* with the cardinal numbers; as, *biennium*, *triennium*, etc., a period of two, etc. years; *biduum*, *triduum*, etc., a period of two, etc. days.

4. Adjectives in *arius*, derived from the distributives, and denoting of how many equal parts or units a thing consists; as, *binarius*, of two parts; *ternarius*, etc.

5. *Interrogatives*; as, *quot*, how many? *quōtus*, of what number? *quotēni*, how many each? *quoties*, how many times? Their correlatives are *tot*, *totidem*, so many; *aliquot*, some; which, with *quot*, are indeclinable; and the adverbs, *toties*, so often; *aliquoties*, several times.

6. *Fractional expressions*, which denote the parts of a thing. These are expressed in Latin by *pars* with *dimidia*, *tertia*, *quarta*, etc. Thus,  $\frac{1}{2}$ , *dimidia pars*;  $\frac{1}{3}$ , *tertia pars*, etc. When the number of parts into which a thing is divided exceeds by one only the parts mentioned, as in  $\frac{2}{3}$ ,  $\frac{3}{4}$ , etc. the fraction is expressed simply by *duæ*, *tres*, etc. *partes*, denoting two out of three, three out of four, etc.

## COMPARISON OF ADJECTIVES.

§ 122. 1. Adjectives may be divided into two classes—those which denote a *variable*, and those which denote an *invariable*, quality or limitation.

Thus, *bōnus*, good, *altus*, high, and *opācus*, dark, denote variable attributes; but *cæneus*, brazen, *triplex*, threefold, and *diurnus*, daily, do not admit of different degrees in their signification.

2. The *comparison* of an adjective is the expression of its quality in different degrees.



3. There are three degrees of comparison—the *positive*, the *comparative*, and the *superlative*.

4. The positive simply denotes a quality, without reference to other degrees of the same quality; as, *altus*, high; *mitis*, mild.

5. The comparative denotes that a quality belongs to one of two objects, or sets of objects, in a greater degree than to the other; as, *altior*, higher; *mitior*, milder.

6. The superlative denotes that a quality belongs to one of several objects, or sets of objects, in a greater degree than to any of the rest; as, *altissimus*, highest; *mitissimus*, mildest.

REM. 1. Sometimes also the comparative denotes that a quality, at different times or in other circumstances, belongs in different degrees to the same object; as, *est sapientior quam fuit*, he is wiser than he was.

REM. 2. The comparative sometimes expresses the proportion between two qualities of the same object; as, *est doctior quam sapientior*, he is more learned than wise; that is, his learning is greater than his wisdom.

REM. 3. The comparative is also used elliptically instead of our 'too' or 'rather'; as, *vivit liberius*, he lives too freely, or, rather freely. Cf. § 256, R. 9

REM. 4. The superlative, like the positive with *per*, (cf. § 127, 2), often indicates a high degree of a quality without direct comparison with the same quality in other objects; as, *amicus carissimus*, a very dear friend.

§ 123. 1. Degrees of a quality *inferior* to the positive may be denoted by the adverbs *minus*, less; *minime*, least, prefixed to the positive; as, *jucundus*, pleasant; *minus jucundus*, less pleasant; *minime jucundus*, least pleasant.

2. A small degree of a quality is indicated by *sub* prefixed to the positive; as, *amarus*, bitter; *subamarus*, bitterish, or, somewhat bitter.

3. An *equal* degree of a quality may be denoted by *tam* followed by *quam*, *æque* followed by *ac*, *sic* followed by *ut*, etc.; as, *hæbes, æque ac pecus*, as stupid as a brute.

§ 124. 1. The comparative and superlative in Latin, as in English, are denoted either by peculiar terminations, or by certain adverbs prefixed to the positive. Cf. § 127, 1.

2. The terminational comparative ends in 

Masc.	Fem.	Neut
<i>ior</i> ,	<i>ior</i> ,	<i>ius</i> ;

 the terminational superlative in *issimus*, *issima*, *issimum*.

3. These terminations are added to the root of the positive; as,  
*altus*, *altior*, *altissimus*; high, higher, highest.  
*mitis*, *mitior*, *mitissimus*; mild, milder, mildest.  
*felix*, (gen. *felicis*), *felicior*, *felicissimus*; happy, happier, happiest.

In like manner compare

Arc'-tus, <i>strait</i> .	Cru-dē'-lis, <i>cruel</i> .	Cā'-pax, <i>capacious</i> .
Cā'-rus, <i>dear</i> .	Fer'-tī-lis, <i>fertile</i> .	Clē'-mens, (gen. -tis) <i>merciful</i> .
Doc'-tus, <i>learned</i> .	Lē'-vis, <i>light</i> .	In'-ers, (gen. -tis), <i>sluggish</i> .

#### IRREGULAR COMPARISON.

§ 125. 1. Adjectives in *er* form their superlative by adding *rimus* to that termination; as, *acer*, active; gen. *acris*; comparative, *acrior*; superlative, *acerrimus*.

In like manner, *pauper*, *pauperrimus*. *Vetus* has a similar superlative, *veterimus*, from the old collateral form *veter*.

2. Six adjectives in *lis* form their superlative by adding *lissimus* to the root:—

Facilis,	facilior,	facillimus,	<i>easy</i> .
Difficilis,	difficilior,	difficillimus,	<i>difficult</i> .
Gracilis,	gracilior,	gracillimus,	<i>slender</i> .
Humilis,	humilior,	humillimus,	<i>low</i> .
Similis,	similior,	simillimus,	<i>like</i> .
Dissimilis,	dissimilior,	dissimillimus,	<i>unlike</i> .

*Imbecillus* or *imbecillis*, weak, has two forms, *imbecillissimus* and *imbecillimus*.

3. (a.) Five adjectives in *ficus* (from *fūcio*) derive their comparatives and superlatives from supposed forms in *ens*:—

Beneficus,	beneficentior,	beneficentissimus,	<i>beneficent</i> .
Honorificus,	honorificentior,	honorificentissimus,	<i>honorable</i> .
Magnificus,	magnificentior,	magnificentissimus,	<i>splendid</i> .
Munificus,	munificentior,	munificentissimus,	<i>liberal</i> .
Maleficus,	_____	maleficentissimus,	<i>hurtful</i> .

(b) Adjectives in *dicens* and *völens* form their comparatives and superlatives regularly; but instead of those positives, forms in *dicus* and *völus* are more common; as,

Maledicens or *dicus*, maledicentior, maledicentissimus, *slanderosus*.

Benevölens, or -völus, benevolentior, benevolentissimus, *benevolent*.

4. These five have regular comparatives, but irregular superlatives:—

Dexter,	dexterior,	dextimus,	<i>right</i> .
Extēra, (fem.)	exterior,	extrēmus, or extimus,	<i>outward</i> .
Postēra, (fem.)	posterior,	postrēmus, or postūnus,	<i>hind</i> .
Inferus,	inferior,	infimus, or imus,	<i>below</i> .
Supērus,	superior,	suprēmus, or summus,	<i>above</i> .

REMARK 1. The nominative singular of *postēra* does not occur in the masculine, and that of *extēra* wants good authority.

5. The following are very irregular in comparison:—

Bōnus,	melior,	optimus,	<i>good,</i>	<i>better,</i>	<i>best.</i>		
Mālus,	pējor,	pessimus,	<i>bad,</i>	<i>worse,</i>	<i>worst.</i>		
Māgnus,	mājor,	maximus,	<i>great,</i>	<i>greater,</i>	<i>greatest.</i>		
Parvus,	mīnor,	minimus,	<i>little,</i>	<i>less,</i>	<i>least.</i>		
Multus,	————	plurimus,	} <i>much,</i>	<i>more,</i>	<i>most.</i>		
Multa,	————	plurīma,					
Multum,	plus,*	plurimum,					
Nēquam,	nequior,	nequissimus,	<i>worthless, etc.</i>				
Frūgi,	frugalior,	frugalissimus,	<i>frugal, etc.</i>				

REM. 2. All these, except *magnus*, whose regular forms are contracted, either form their comparatives and superlatives from obsolete adjectives, or take them from other words of similar signification.

## DEFECTIVE COMPARISON.

§ 126. 1. Seven adjectives want the positive:—

Citior, citimus, <i>nearer</i> .	Prior, prīmus, <i>former</i> .
Detior, deterrimus, <i>worse</i> .	Propior, proximus, <i>nearer</i> .
Interior, intimus, <i>inner</i> .	Uterior, ultimus, <i>farther</i> .
Ocior, ocissimus, <i>swifter</i> .	

## 2. Eight want the terminational comparative :—

Consultus, consultissimus, *skilful*.  
 Inclutus, inclutissimus, *renowned*.  
 Invictus, invictissimus, *invincible*.  
 Invitus, invitissimus, *unwilling*.  
 Meritus, meritissimus, (very rare,) *deserving*.

Par, parissimus, (very rare), *equal*.  
 Persuāsus, persuasissimum (neuter) *persuaded*.  
 Sacer, sacerrimus, *sacred*.

## 3. Eight have very rarely the terminational comparative :—

Apricus, apricissimus, *sunny*.  
 Bellus, bellissimus, *fine*.  
 Cōmis, comissimus, *courteous*.  
 Diversus, diversissimus, *different*.

Falsus, falsissimus, *false*.  
 Fīdus, fidissimus, *faithful*.  
 Nōvus, novissimus, *new*.  
 Vetus, veterrimus, *old*.

## 4. The following want the terminational superlative :—

Adolescens, adolescentior, *young*.  
 Agrestis, agrestior, *rustic*.  
 Alacer, alacrior, *active*.  
 Ater, atrior, *black*.  
 Cæcus, cæcior, *blind*.  
 Dēsēs, desidior, *inactive*.  
 Diuturnus, diuturnior, *lasting*.  
 Infinitus, infinitior, *unlimited*.  
 Ingens, ingentior, *great*.  
 Jejūnus, jejunior, *fasting*.  
 Juvēnis, junior, *young*.  
 Licens, licentior, *unrestrained*.  
 Longinquus, longinquior, *distant*.  
 Opīmus, opimior, *rich*.

Proclivis, proclivior, *sloping*.  
 Prōnus, pronior, *bending down*.  
 Protervus, protervior, *violent*.  
 ——— sequior, *worse*.  
 Propinquus, propinquier, *near*.  
 Salutāris, salutarior, *salutary*.  
 Satis, *sufficient*; satius, *preferable*.  
 Sātur, saturior, *full*.  
 Sēnex, senior, *old*.  
 Silvestris, silvestrior, *woody*.  
 Sinister, sinisterior, *left*.  
 Supīnus, supinior, *lying on the back*.  
 Surdus, surdior, *deaf*.  
 Tēres, teretior, *round*.

REMARK 1. The superlative of *juvēnis* and *adolescens* is supplied by *minimus nātū*, youngest; and that of *sēnex* by *maximus nātū*, oldest. The comparatives *minor nātū* and *māior nātū* sometimes also occur.

REM. 2. Most adjectives also in *īlis*, *īlis*, *ālis*, and *bīlis*, have no terminational superlative.

5. Many variable adjectives have no terminational comparative or superlative. Such are,

(a.) Adjectives in *bundus*, *īmus*, *īnus* (except *divīnus*), *ōrus*, most in *īrus*, and in *us* pure (except *-quus*.) Yet *ardūus*, *assidūus*, *egregius*, *exiguus*, *industrius*, *perpetuus*, *pīus*, *strenuus*, and *vacuus*, have sometimes a terminational comparison. So, dropping *i*, *noxior*, *innoxior*, *sobrior*.

(b.) The following—*alūus*, *calvus*, *cānus*, *cīcur*, *claudus*, *degēner*, *delīrus*, *dispar*, *egēnus*, *impar*, *impīger*, *īnvidus*, *lūcer*, *mēmōr*, *mīrus*, *nūdus*, *præcox*, *præditus*, *rūdis*, *salvus*, *sospes*, *superstes*, *vulgāris*, and some others.

§ 127. 1. The comparative and superlative may also be formed by prefixing to the positive the adverbs *māgis*, more, and *maxīme*, most; as, *īdoneus*, fit; *magis īdoneus*, *maxīme īdoneus*.

2. Various degrees of a quality above the positive are expressed by *admōdum*, *aliquanto*, *apprīme*, *bēne*, *imprīmis*, *multum*, *oppīdo*, *perquam*, and *valde*, and also by *per* compounded with the positive; as, *diffīcīlis*, difficult; *perdiffīcīlis*, very difficult. To a few adjectives *præ* is in like manner prefixed; as, *prædūrus*, very hard.

3. The force of the comparative is increased by prefixing *etiam*, even, still, or yet; and that of both comparative and superlative, by



prefixing *longe* or *multo*, much, far; as, *longe nobilissimus*; *longe melior* *iter multo facilius*; *multo maxima pars*.

4. *Vel*, 'even', and *quam*, with or without *possum*, 'as much as possible', before the superlative, render it more emphatic; as, *Cicero vel optimus oratorum Romanorum*. *Quam maximum potest militum numerum colligit*, *quam doctissimus*, extremely learned; *quam celerrime*, as speedily as possible.

NOTE 1. Instead of *quam* with *possum*, *quantus* is sometimes used, in the same case as the superlative; as, *Quantis maximis potuit itineribus continui*.

NOTE 2. *Unus*, with or without *omnium*, is sometimes added to superlatives to increase their force; as, *Hoc ego uno omnium plurimum ūtor*. Cic. *Urbeni unam mihi amicissimam declinavi*, Id. It is used in like manner with *excello*.

5. All adjectives whose signification admits of different degrees, if they have no terminational comparison, may be compared by means of adverbs.

6. Instead of the comparative and superlative degrees, the positive with the prepositions *præ*, *ante*, *præter*, or *supra*, is sometimes used; as, *præ nobis beatus*, happier than we. Cic. *Ante alios pulchritudine insignis*, most beautiful. Liv. Sometimes the preposition is used in connection with the superlative; as, *Ante alios pulcherrimus omnes*. Virg.

7. Among adjectives which denote an invariable quality or limitation, and which, therefore, cannot be compared, are those denoting matter, time, number, possession, country, part, interrogation; also compounds of *jūgum*, *somnus*, *gêro*, and *fêro*, and many others.

## DERIVATION OF ADJECTIVES.

§ 128. Derivative adjectives are formed chiefly from nouns, from other adjectives, and from verbs.

I. Those derived from nouns and adjectives are called *denominatives*. The following are the principal classes:—

1. (a.) The termination *ēns*, added to the root, denotes the material of which a thing is made, and sometimes similarity; as, *aureus*, golden; *argenteus*, of silver; *lignus*, wooden; *vitreus*, of glass; *virgineus*, maidenly; from *aurum*, *argentum*, etc. See § 9, Rem. 3.

(b.) Some adjectives of this kind have a double form in *neus* and *nus*; as, *eburneus* and *eburnus*, of ivory.

(c.) The termination *inus* has the same meaning; as, *adamantinus*, of adamant; *cedrinus*, of cedar; from *adamas* and *cedrus*. So, also, *ēnus*; as, *terrēnus*, of earth, from *terra*.

(d.) The terminations *ēns* or *ius* (Greek *εως*), and also *icus*, belong to adjectives formed from Greek names of men, and denote 'of' or 'pertaining to'; as, *Achillēus*, *Sophoclēus*, *Aristotelēus*, *Platonēus*; *Pythagorēus* and *Pythagoricus*; *Homerēus* and *Homericus*. Names in *ius* make adjectives in *icus*; as, *Archias*, *Archianus*. Sometimes, though rarely in the purest Latin authors, adjectives in *ēus* or *ius* are formed from Latin names; as, *Marcellia* or *-ea*, a festival in honor of the Marcelli.

2. (a.) The terminations *ālis*, *āris*, *ārius*, *ilis*, *atilis*, *icius*, *icus*, *ius*, *ēus*, and *inus*, denote 'belonging' 'pertaining,' or 'relating to'; as, *capitālis*, relating to the life; from *caput*.

So *comitiālis*, *regālis*; *Apollināris*, *consulāris*, *populāris*; *argentarius*; *civilis*, *hostilis*, *juvenilis*; *aquatilis*, *fluviatilis*; *tribunicus*, *patricius*; *bellicus*, *civicus*, *Germanicus*; *accusatorius*, *imperatorius*, *regius*; *Hectorēus*; *caninus*, *equinus*, *ferinus*, *masculinus*; from *comitia*, *rex*, *Apollo*, *consul*, *populus*, *argentum*, *civis*, etc.

(b.) The termination *ilis* sometimes expresses character; as, *hostilis*, hostile; *puerilis*, boyish; from *hostis* and *puer*.

(c.) The termination *inus* belongs especially to derivatives from names of animals, and other living beings.

3. The termination *arius*, as a substantive, seil. *fāber*, etc., generally denotes profession or occupation; as, *argentarius*, a silversmith; from *argentum*;—*coriarius*, *statuarius*; from *corium* and *statua*. When added to numeral adjectives, it denotes how many equal parts a thing contains. See § 121, 4.

4. The terminations *osus* and *lentus* denote abundance, fulness; as, *animosus*, full of courage; *fraudentus*, given to fraud; from *animus* and *fraus*. So *lapidesus*, *vinosus*, *portuosus*, *turbulentus*, *sanguinolentus*, *violentus*. Before *lentus*, a connecting vowel is inserted, which is commonly *ū*, but sometimes *ō*.

NOTE.—Adjectives of this class are called *amplificatives*. See § 104, 12.

5. From adjectives are formed *diminutives* in *ulus*, *cūlus*, etc., in the same manner as from nouns; as, *dulcicūlus*, sweetish; from *dulcis*. So *lentulus*, *missellus*, *parrulus*, etc. See § 100, 3, and § 104, 11. Diminutives are sometimes formed from comparatives; as, *majorculus*, somewhat great, somewhat hard, etc. Double diminutives are formed from *paucus*, viz *pauçillus* and *pauçillulus*; and from *bōnus*, (*bēnus*) are formed *bellus* and *bellulus*.

6. (a.) From the names of places, and especially of towns, are derived *patrial* adjectives in *ensis*, *inus*, *as*, and *ānus*, denoting of or belonging to such places.

(b.) Thus from *Cunnæ* is formed *Cannensis*; from *Sulmo*, *Sulmonensis*. In like manner, from *castra* and *circus* come *castrensis*, *circensis*. But *Athēna* makes *Atheniensis*; and some Greek towns in *ia* and *ēa* drop *i* and *e* in their adjectives; as, *Antiochensis*, *Nicomedensis*.

(c.) Those in *inus* are formed from names of places ending in *ia* and *ium*; as, *Aricia*, *Aricinus*; *Caudium*, *Caudinus*; *Capitolium*, *Capitolinus*; *Latium*, *Latinus*. Some names of towns, of Greek origin, with other terminations, also form adjectives in *inus*; as, *Tarentum*, *Tarentinus*.

(d.) Most of those in *as* are formed from nouns in *um*; some from nouns in *a*; as, *Arpinum*, *Arpinas*; *Capēna*, *Capēnas*.

(e.) Those in *ānus* are formed from names of towns of the first declension, or from certain common nouns; as, *Alba*, *Albānus*; *Rōma*, *Romānus*; *Cūmæ*, *Cūmānus*; *Thēbae*, *Thebānus*; also from some of the second declension; as, *Tusculum*, *Tusculānus*; *Fundī*, *Fundānus*:—*fons*, *fontānus*; *mons*, *montānus*; *urbs*, *urbānus*; *oppidum*, *oppidānus*.

(f.) Adjectives with the terminations *ānus*, *iānus*, and *inus* are formed from names of men; as, *Sulla*, *Sullānus*; *Tullius*, *Tulliānus*; *Jugurtha*, *Jugurthānus*.

(g.) Greek names of towns in *pōlis* form *patrial* adjectives in *politānus*; as, *Neapōlis*, *Neapolitānus*.

(h.) Greek names of towns generally form *patrials* in *ius*; as, *Rhodus*, *Rhodiū*; *Lacedæmon*, *Lacedæmonius*;—but those in *a* form them in *æus*; as, *Larissa*, *Larissæus*; *Smyrna*, *Smyrnceus*.

(i.) From many *patrials*; as, *Britannus*, *Gallus*, *Afer*, *Persa*, *Arabs*, etc., adjectives are formed in *trus* and *ius*; as, *Britannicus*, *Gallicus*, *Africus*, *Persicus*, *Arabicus*; so *Syprus*, *Syrius*; *Thrax*, *Thracius*.

7. A large class of derivative adjectives, though formed from nouns, have the terminations of perfect participles. They generally signify *wearing* or *furnished with*; as,

*alātus*, winged; *barbātus*, bearded; *galeātus*, helmeted; *auritus*, long-eared; *turrītus*, turreted; *cornūtus*, horned; from *ala*, *barba*, *galea*, *auris*, etc.

8. The termination *aneus*, annexed to the root of an adjective or participle in *us*, expresses a resemblance to the quality denoted by the primitive; as, *supervacaneus*, of a superfluous nature.

§ 129. II. Adjectives derived from verbs are called *verbal* adjectives. Such are the following classes:—

1. The termination *bundus*, added to the first root of the verb, with a connecting vowel, which is commonly that of the verb, (see § 150, 5,) has the general meaning of the present participle; as,

*errābundus*, *moribundus*, from *erro*, *morior*, equivalent to *errans*, *moriens*.

(a.) In many the meaning is somewhat strengthened; as, *gratulābundus*, full of congratulations; *lacrimābundus*, weeping profusely.

(b.) Most verbals in *bundus* are from verbs of the first conjugation, a few from those of the third, and but one from the second and fourth respectively, viz. *rudibundus* and *lascivibundus*.

(c.) Some verbal adjectives in *cundus* have a similar sense; as, *rubicundus*, *verēcundus*, from *rubeo* and *vereor*.

2. The termination *idus*, added to the root, especially of neuter verbs, denotes the quality or state expressed by the verb; as,

*algidus*, cold; *calidus*, warm; *madidus*, moist; *rapidus*, rapid; from *algeo*, *caleo*, *madeo*, *rapio*.

3. The termination *uus*, also, denotes the quality expressed by the verb; and adjectives in *uus* derived from active verbs take a passive meaning; as,

*congruus*, agreeing, from *congruo*; so, *assiduus*, *nocuus*, *innocuus*:—*irriguus*, well watered; *conspiciuus*, visible; from *irriġo*, *conspicio*.

4. (a.) The terminations *ilis* and *bilis*, added to the root of a verb, with its connecting vowel, denote passively, capability, or desert; as,

*amabilis*, worthy to be loved; *credibilis*, deserving credit; *placābilis*, easy to be appeased; *agilis*, active; *ductilis*, ductile; from *āmo*, *crēdo*, *plāco*; *āgo*, *dūco*. They are rarely active; as, *horribilis*, *terribilis*, *fertilis*; *aēr per cuncta metabilis*. Plin.

(b.) In adjectives of these forms, derived from verbs of the third conjugation, the connecting vowel is *i*; sometimes, also, in those from verbs of the second conjugation, in these and other forms, *i* is used instead of *e*; as, *horribilis*, *terribilis*, from *horreo* and *terreo*.

(c.) These terminations, with the connecting vowel, are sometimes added to the third root; as, *flexilis*, *flexibilis*; *coctilis*, *coctibilis*, from *flecto* (*flex-*), etc.

5. The termination *icius* or *itius*, added to the third root of the verb, has a passive sense; as, *fictitius*, feigned; *conductitius*, to be hired; from *fingo* (*fict-*), etc.

6. The termination *ax*, added to the root of a verb, denotes an inclination, often one that is faulty; as,

*audax*, audacious; *loquax*, talkative; *rapax*, rapacious; from *audeo*, *loquor*, *rapio*.

7. The termination *ivus*, annexed to the third root of a verb, denotes fitness or ability to produce the action expressed by the verb as, *disjunctivus*, disjunctive, from *disjungo*.



8. Verbals in *tor* and *trix*, (see § 102, 6, (a.)), are often used as adjectives, especially in poetry; as, *victor exercitus*, *victrices lit̃eræ*. In the plural they become adjectives of three terminations; as, *victōres*, *victrices*, *victricia*. So also *hospes*, especially by the later poets, is used as an adjective, having *hospita* in the feminine singular and also in the neuter plural.

§ 130. III. Adjectives derived from participles, and retaining their form, are called *participial adjectives*; as, *āmans*, fond of; *doc-tus*, learned.

IV. Some adjectives are derived from adverbs; as, *crastīnus*, of to-morrow; *hodiernus*, of this day; from *cras* and *hodie*.

V. Some adjectives are derived from prepositions; as, *contrarius*, contrary, from *contra*; *postērus*, subsequent, from *post*.

## COMPOSITION OF ADJECTIVES.

§ 131. Compound adjectives are formed variously:—

1. Of two nouns; as, *capripes*, goat-footed—of *cāper* and *pes*; *ignicōmus*, having fiery hair—of *ignis* and *cōma*.

NOTE.—See, respecting the connecting short *i*, in case the first part of the compound is a noun or an adjective, § 103, Rem. 1.

2. Of a noun and an adjective; as, *noctivāgus*, wandering in the night—of *nox* and *vāgus*. So *lucifūgax*, shunning the light—of *lux* and *fugax*.

3. Of a noun and a verb; as, *corniger*, bearing horns—of *cornu* and *gēro*; *letifer*, bringing death—of *lētum* and *fēro*. So *carnivōrus*, *causidicus*, *ignivōmus*, *lucifūgus*, *particeps*.

4. Of an adjective and a noun; as, *æquevus*, of the same age—of *æquus* and *ævum*; *celeripes*, swift-footed—of *cēler* and *pes*. So *centimānus*, *decennis*, *mag-nanimus*, *misericors*, *unanīmis*.

5. Of two adjectives; as, *centumgeminus*, a hundred-fold; *multicāvus*, having many cavities; *quintusdecīmus*, the fifteenth.

6. Of an adjective and a verb; as, *brevilōquens*, speaking briefly—of *brēvis* and *lōquor*; *magnificus*, magnificent—of *magnus* and *fācio*.

7. Of an adjective and a termination; as, *qualiscumque*, *quocumque*, *uterque*.

8. Of an adverb and a noun; as, *bicorpor*, two-bodied—of *bis* and *corpus*.

9. Of an adverb and an adjective; as, *maledīcax*, slanderous—of *māle* and *ēcax*. So *antemeridiānus*, before mid-day.

10. Of an adverb and a verb; as, *benefīcus*, beneficent—of *bēne* and *fācio*; *malevōlus*, malevolent—of *māle* and *vōlo*.

11. Of a preposition and a noun; as, *āmens*, mad—of *a* and *mens*. So *con-sors*, *decōlor*, *deformis*, *implūmis*, *inermis*.

12. Of a preposition and an adjective; as, *concāvus*, concave; *infīdus*, un-faithful. So *improvidus*, *percāvus*, *prædīves*, *subalbīdus*.

13. Of a preposition and a verb; as, *continuus*, uninterrupted—of *con* and *teneo*; *insciens*, ignorant—of *in* and *scio*. So *præcipuus*, *promiscuus*, *substillus*, *superstes*.

REMARK. When the former part is a preposition, its final consonant is sometimes changed, to adapt it to the consonant which follows it, as, *imprūdēns*—of *in* and *prū-tens*. See § 196; and cf. § 103, R. 2.

## PRONOUNS.

§ 132. 1. A pronoun is a word which supplies the place of a noun.

2. There are eighteen simple pronouns:—

Ego, <i>I</i> .	Hic, <i>this, the latter</i> .	Suus, <i>his, hers, its, etc.</i>
Tu, <i>thou</i> .	Is, <i>that or he</i> .	Cujus? <i>whose?</i>
Sui, <i>of himself, etc.</i>	Quis? <i>who?</i>	Noster, <i>our</i> .
Ille, <i>that, the former</i> .	Qui, <i>who</i> .	Vester, <i>your</i> .
Ipse, <i>himself</i> .	Meus, <i>my</i> .	Nostras, <i>of our country</i> .
Iste, <i>that, that of yours</i> .	Tuus, <i>thy</i> .	Cujas? <i>of what country</i>

3. *Ego, tu*, and *sui*, and commonly also *quis* and its compounds, are substantives: the other pronouns, both simple and compound, are adjectives, but are often by ellipsis used as substantives.

4. *Ego, tu*, and *sui* are commonly called *personal pronouns*. They are a species of appellatives (§ 26, 3,) of general application. *Ego* is used by a speaker to designate himself; *tu*, to designate the person whom he addresses. Hence *ego* is of the first person, *tu* of the second. (§ 35, 2.) *Sui* is of the third person, and has always a reflexive signification, referring to the subject of the sentence. The oblique cases of *ego* and *tu* are also used reflexively, when the subject of the proposition is of the first or second person.

5. The remaining pronouns, except *quis* and its compounds, are adjectives, as they serve to limit the meaning of substantives; and they are pronouns, because, like substantive pronouns, they may designate any object in certain situations or circumstances.

6. *Meus, tuus, suus, noster, vester*, and *cujus*, have the same extent of signification as the pronouns from which they are derived, and are equivalent to the genitive cases of their primitives.

7. Pronouns, like substantives and adjectives, are declined; but most of them want the vocative. *Sui*, from the nature of its signification, wants also the nominative in both numbers.

8. The substantive pronouns take the gender of the objects which they denote. The adjective pronouns, like adjectives, have three genders.

## SUBSTANTIVE PRONOUNS.

§ 133. The substantive pronouns are thus declined:—

*Singular.*

N. ě'-gŏ, <i>I</i> .	tū, <i>thou</i> .	_____.
G. me'-ī, <i>of me</i> .	tu'-ī, <i>of thee</i> .	{ su'-ī, <i>of himself, her-</i>
D. mī'-hī, <i>to me</i> .	tīb'-ī,* <i>to thee</i> .	self, <i>itself</i> .
Acc. mē, <i>me</i> .	tē, <i>thee</i> .	sīb' -ī,* <i>to himself, etc</i>
V. _____	tū, <i>O thou</i> .	sē, <i>himself, etc.</i>
Ab. mē, <i>with me</i> .	tē, <i>with thee</i> .	_____.
		sē, <i>with himself, etc.</i>

\* See § 19, 1, Exc.

*Plural.*

N.	nōs, <i>we</i> .	vōs, <i>ye or you</i> .	
G.	{ nos'-trum } or nos'-trī, } <i>of us</i> .	{ ves'-trum or ves'-trī, } <i>of you</i> .	su'-ī, <i>of themselves</i> .
D.	nō'-bīs, <i>to us</i> .	vō'-bīs, <i>to you</i> .	sīb'-ī, <i>to themselves</i> .
Ac.	nōs, <i>us</i> .	vōs, <i>you</i> .	sē, <i>themselves</i> .
V.	_____	vōs, <i>O ye or you</i> .	_____
Ab.	nō'-bīs, <i>with us</i> .	vō'-bīs, <i>with you</i> .	sē, <i>with themselves</i> .

REMARK 1. *Mē* and *mī* are ancient forms for *mihi*. So *min'* for *mihi*, Pers. 1 2.

REM. 2. The syllable *met* is sometimes annexed to the substantive pronouns, in an intensive sense, either with or without *ipse*; as, *egōmet*, I myself; *mihi-met ipsi*, for myself. It is not annexed, however, to the genitives plural, nor to *tu* in the nominative or vocative. In these cases of *tu*, *tūtē* or *tulēmet* is used. In the accusative and ablative the reduplicated forms *mēmē* and *tētē* in the singular, and *sēsē* in both numbers, are employed intensively. *Mepte*, intensive, *med* and *ted*, for *me* and *te*, and *mis* and *tis* for *mei* and *tui*, occur in the comic writers.

3. *Nostrum* and *vestrum* are contracted from *nostrōrūm*, *nostrārūm*, and *vestrōrūm*, *vestrārūm*. Respecting the difference in the use of *nostrum* and *nostrī*, *vestrum* and *vestrī*, see § 212, R. 2, N. 2.

4. The preposition *cum* is affixed to the ablative of these pronouns in both numbers; as, *mēcum*, *nobiscum*, etc. Cf. § 136, R. 1.

ADJECTIVE PRONOUNS.

§ 134. Adjective pronouns may be divided into the following classes:—*demonstrative*, *intensive*, *relative*, *interrogative*, *indefinite*, *possessive*, and *patrial*.

NOTE. Some pronouns belong to two of these classes.

DEMONSTRATIVE PRONOUNS.

Demonstrative pronouns are such as specify what object is meant.

They are *ille*, *iste*, *hic*, and *is*, and their compounds, and are thus declined:—

<i>Singular.</i>			<i>Plural.</i>		
M.	F.	N.	M.	F.	N.
N. il'-lē,	il'-lā,	il'-lūd,	il'-lī,	il'-læ,	il'-lā,
G. il'-lē'-us,*	il'-lī'-us,	il'-lī'-us,	il'-lō'-rum,	il'-lā'-rum,	il'-lō'-rum,
D. il'-lī,	il'-lī,	il'-lī,	il'-līs,	il'-līs,	il'-līs,
Ac. il'-lūm,	il'-lām,	il'-lūd,	il'-lōs,	il'-lās,	il'-lā,
V. il'-lē,	il'-lā,	il'-lūd,	il'-lī,	il'-læ,	il'-lā,
Ab. il'-lō.	il'-lā.	il'-lō.	il'-līs.	il'-līs.	il'-līs.

\* See § 15, 1.



*Iste* is declined like *ille*.

Singular.			Plural.		
M.	F.	N.	M.	F.	N.
N. hic,	hæc,	hœc,	hī,	hæ,	hæc,
G. hū'-jūs,	hū'-jūs,	hū'-jūs,	hō'-rum,	hā'-rum,	hō'-rum,
D. huic*,	huic,	huic,	his,	his,	his,
Ac. hunc,	hanc,	hœc,	hōs,	hās,	hæc,
V. hīc,	hæc,	hœc,	hī,	hæ,	hæc,
Ab. hōc.	hāc.	hōc.	his.	his.	his.

Singular.			Plural.		
M.	F.	N.	M.	F.	N.
N. is,	e'-ā,	id,	i'-ī,	e'-æ,	e'-ā,
G. ē'-jūs,	ē'-jūs,	ē'-jūs,	e-ō'-rum,	e-ā'-rum,	e-ō'-rum,
D. e'-ī,	e'-ī,	e'-ī,	i'-īs or e'-īs,	i'-īs or e'-īs,	i'-īs or e'-īs,
Ac. e'-um,	e'-am,	id,	e'-ōs,	e'-ās,	e'-ā,
V. —	—	—	—	—	—
Ab. e'-ō.	e'-ā.	e'-ō.	i'-īs or e'-īs.	i'-īs or e'-īs.	i'-īs or e'-īs.

REMARK 1. Instead of *ille*, *ollus* was anciently used; whence *olli* masc. plur. in Virgil. *Illæ* fem., for *illius* and *illi*, is found in Lucretius and Cato, as also in Cato, *hæ* for *huic* fem.; *hice* for *hi*, and *hæc* for *hæ* in Plautus and Terence. *Im* for *eum*, is found in the Twelve Tables; *ei* for *ei*, and *ibus* and *iibus* for *iis*, in Plautus; *ecæ*, fem., for *ei*, and *eābus* for *iis*, in Cato.

REM. 2. From *ecce*, lo! with *ille*, *iste*, and *is*, are formed, in colloquial language, nom., *ecca*; *eccilla*, *eccillud*; acc. sing., *eccum*, *eccam*; *eccillum* (by syncope *eillum*), *eccillam*; *eccistam*; acc. plur., *eccos*, *ecca*.

REM. 3. *Istic* and *illic* are compounded of *iste hic*, and *ille hic*; or, as some say, of *iste ce*, and *ille ce*. The former sometimes retains the aspirate, as *isthic*. They are more emphatic than *ille* and *iste*.

*Istic* is thus declined:—

Singular.			Plural.		
M.	F.	N.	M.	F.	N.
N. is'-tic,	is'-tæc,	is'-tœc, or is'-tūc,	N. —	is'-tæc,	—
Ac. is'-tunc,	is'-tanc,	is'-tōc, or is'-tūc,	Ac. —	—	is'-tæc.
Ab. is'-tōc.	is'-tāc.	is'tōc.			

*Illic* is declined in the same manner.

REM. 4. *Ce*, intensive, is sometimes added to the several cases of *hic*, and rarely to some cases of the other demonstrative pronouns; as, *hujusce*, *huncce*, *hancece*, *hocce*, *hice*, *hæce* or *hæc*, *horunc*, *harumce*, *harunce*, or *harunc*, *hosce*, *asce*, *hisce*; *illiusce*, *illāce*, *illosce*, *illusce*, *illisce*; *istāce*, *istisce*; *ejusce*, *iisce*. When *ne*, interrogative, is also annexed, *ce* becomes *ci*; as, *hæccine*, *hoscine*, *hiscine*; *istuccine*, *istuccine*, *istoscine*; *illicine*, *illanccine*.

REM. 5. *Mōdi*, the genitive of *mōdus*, annexed to the genitive singular of demonstrative and relative pronoun, imparts to them the signification of adjectives of quality; as, *hujusmōdi* or *hujuscemōdi*, like *talis*, of this sort, such *illiusmōdi* and *istiusmōdi*, of that sort; *cujusmōdi*, of what sort, like *qualis*; *cu-*

*juscemōdi, cujusquemōdi, cujusmodicumque*, of what kind soever; *cujusdammōdi*, of some kind. So also *istimōdi, cuimōdi* and *cuicuumōdi*, instead of *istiusmōdi, cujusmōdi*, etc.

REM. 6. The suffix *dem* is annexed to *is*, forming *idem*, "the same," which is thus declined:—

Singular.		
	M.	F.
N.	i'-dem,	e'-ā-dem,
G.	e-jus'-dem,	e-jus'-dem,
D.	e-i'-dem,	e-i'-dem,
Ac.	e-un'-dem,	e-an'-dem,
V.	_____	_____
Ab.	e-ō'-dem.	e-ā'-dem.

Plural.		
	M.	F.
N.	i-i'-dem,	e-æ'-dem,
G.	e-o-run'-dem,	e-a-run'-dem,
D.	e-is'-dem, or i-is'-dem,	e-is'-dem, or i-is'-dem,
Ac.	e-os'-dem,	e-as'-dem,
V.	_____	_____
Ab.	e-is'-dem, or i-is'-dem.	e-is'-dem, or i-is'-dem.

NOTE 1. In compound pronouns, *m* before *d* is changed into *n*; as, *eundem, sorundem*, etc.

NOTE 2. In Sallust *isdem*, and in Palladius *hisdem* occur for *iisdem*; and Ennius in Cicero has *eudemmet* for *eudem*.

## INTENSIVE PRONOUNS.

§ 135. Intensive pronouns are such as serve to render an object emphatic.

To this class belong *ipse*, and the intensive compounds already mentioned. See §§ 133, R. 2, and 134, R. 4.

*Ipe* is compounded of *is* and the suffix *pse*, and is thus declined:—

Singular.			Plural.		
M.	F.	N.	M.	F.	N.
N.	ip'-sē,	ip'-sā,	ip'-sī,	ip'-sæ,	ip'-sā,
G.	ip'-sī'-us,	ip'-sī'-us,	ip'-sō'-rum,	ip'-sā'-rum,	ip'-sō'-rum,
D.	ip'-sī,	ip'-sī,	ip'-sīs,	ip'-sīs,	ip'-sīs,
Ac.	ip'-sum,	ip'-sam,	ip'-sōs,	ip'-sās,	ip'-sā,
V.	ip'-sē,	ip'-sā,	ip'-sī,	ip'-sæ,	ip'-sā,
Ab.	ip'-sō.	ip'-sā	ip'-sīs.	ip'-sīs.	ip'-sīs.

REMARK 1. *Ipe* is commonly subjoined to nouns or pronouns; as, *Jupiter ipse, tu ipse*, Jupiter himself, etc.; and hence is sometimes called the *adjunctive* pronoun.

REM. 2. A nominative *ipsus*, occurs in early writers, and a superlative *ipsis-simus*, his very self, is found in Plautus.

REM. 3. In old writers the *is* of *ipse* is declined, while *pse* remains undeclined; as, *eapse*, (nom. and abl.), *eampse*, and *eopse*, instead of *ipsa, ipsam* and *ipso*. So also *reapse*, . e. *re eapse*, "in fact."

## RELATIVE PRONOUNS.

§ 136. Relative pronouns are such as relate to a preceding noun or pronoun.

1. They are *qui*, who, and the compounds *quicumque* and *quisquis*, whoever. The latter are called *general* relatives.

2. In a general sense, the demonstrative pronouns are often relatives; but the name is commonly appropriated to those above specified. They serve to introduce a proposition, limiting or explaining a preceding noun or pronoun, to which they relate, and which is called the *antecedent*.

*Qui* is thus declined:—

Singular.			Plural.		
M.	F.	N.	M.	F.	N.
N. <i>quī</i> ,	<i>quæ</i> ,	<i>quōd</i> ,	<i>quī</i> ,	<i>quæ</i> ,	<i>quæ</i> ,
G. <i>cū'-jūs</i> ,	<i>cū'-jūs</i> ,	<i>cū'-jūs</i> ,	<i>quō'-rum</i> ,	<i>quā'-rum</i> ,	<i>quō'-rum</i> ,
D. <i>cui</i> *,	<i>cui</i> ,	<i>cui</i> ,	<i>quī'-būs</i> ,	<i>quī'-būs</i> ,	<i>quī'-būs</i> ,
Ac. <i>quem</i> ,	<i>quam</i> ,	<i>quōd</i> ,	<i>quōs</i> ,	<i>quās</i> ,	<i>quæ</i> ,
V. ———	———	———	———	———	———
Ab. <i>quō</i> .	<i>quā</i> .	<i>quō</i> .	<i>quī'-būs</i> .	<i>quī'-būs</i> .	<i>quī'-būs</i> .

REMARK 1. *Quī* is sometimes used for the ablative singular, in all genders and rarely also for the ablative plural. To the ablatives *quo*, *qua*, *qui*, and *quibus*, *cum* is commonly annexed, cf. § 133, 4. Cicero uses *quicum* for *quōcum*, when an indefinite person is meant.

REM. 2. *Quis* (monosyllabic, § 9, R. 1), and *quīs* are sometimes used in the dative and ablative plural for *quibus*. *Cūjus* and *cui* were anciently written *quōjus* and *quoi*: and, instead of the genitive *cūjus*, a relative adjective *cūjus*, *a*, *um*, very rarely occurs.

3. *Quicumque*, (or *quicunque*), is declined like *qui*.

REM. 3. *Qui* is sometimes separated from *cumque* by the interposition of one or more words; as, *quos me cumque vocant terræ*. Virg. A similar separation sometimes occurs in the other compounds of *cumque*.

4. *Quisquis* is thus declined:—

Singular.			Plural.
M.	F.	N.	M.
N. <i>quis'-quis</i> ,	<i>quis'-quis</i> ,†	<i>quid'-quid</i> ,	N. <i>quī'-quī</i> ,
Ac. <i>quem'-quem</i> ,	———	<i>quid'-quid</i> ,	D. <i>qui-bus'-quī būs</i> ,
Ab. <i>quō'-quō</i> .	<i>quā'-quā</i> .	<i>quō'-quō</i> .	

REM. 4. *Quicquid* is sometimes used for *quidquid*. *Quīquī* for *quisquis* occurs in Plautus; and *quidquid* is used adjectively in Cato R. R. 48.

\* See § 9, 5; and cf. § 306, 1 R. 2.

† Cf. § 137, R. (1.)



## INTERROGATIVE PRONOUNS.

§ 137. Interrogative pronouns are such as serve to inquire which of a number of objects is intended.

They are

Quis?	} who? what?	Ecquis?	} is any one?	Cūjus? whose?
Quisnam?		Ecquisnam?		Cujas? of what
Qui?	} which? what?	Numquis?		country?
Quānam?		Numquisnam?		

1. *Quis* is commonly used substantively; *qui*, adjectively. The interrogative *qui* is declined like *qui* the relative.

*Quis* is thus declined:—

Singular.			Plural.		
M.	F.	N.	M.	F.	N.
N. quis,	quæ,	quid,	quī,	quæ,	quæ,
G. cū'-jūs,	cū'-jūs,	cū'-jūs,	quō'-rum,	quā'-rum,	quō'-rum,
D. cui,	cui,	cui,	quī'-būs,	quī'-būs,	quī'-būs,
Ac. quem,	quam,	quid,	quōs,	quās,	quæ,
V. ———	———	———	———	———	———
Ab. quō.	quā.	quō.	quī'-būs.	quī'-būs.	quī'-būs.

REMARK (1.) *Quis* is sometimes used by comic writers in the feminine, and even in the neuter. *Quisnam*, *quisque* and *quisquam* also occur as feminine.

REM. (2.) *Quī* is used for the ablative of *quis* in all genders, as it is for that of the relative *qui*. Cf. § 136, R. 1.

REM. (3.) *Quis* and *qui* have sometimes the signification of the indefinite pronoun *aliquis* (some one, any one), especially after the conjunctions *ec* (for *en*), *si*, *ne*, *neu*, *nisi*, *num*; and after relatives, as *quo*, *quanto*, etc. Sometimes *quis* and *qui* are used in the sense of *quālis*? what sort?

2. The compounds *quisnam* and *quīnam* have respectively the signification and declension of the interrogatives *quis* and *quī*. In the poets *nam* sometimes stands before *quis*. Virg. G. 4, 445.

3. *Ecquis* and *numquis* are declined and used like *quis*; but are sometimes adjectives. Virg. Ecl. 10, 28: Cic. Att. 13, 8.

REM. (4.) *Ecqua* is sometimes found in the nominative singular feminine; and the neuter plural of *numquis* is *numqua*.

REM. (5.) *Ecquī* and *numquī* also occur, declined like the interrogative *quī*, and, like that, used adjectively.

4. *Ecquisnam* and *numquisnam* are declined like *ecquis*; but are found only in the singular;—the former in the nominative in all genders, and in the ablative masculine; the latter in the nominative masculine and accusative neuter. In the nominative feminine and in the ablative, the former is used adjectively.

5. The interrogative *cujus* is also defective:—

<i>Singular.</i>			<i>Plural.</i>
<i>M.</i>	<i>F.</i>	<i>N.</i>	<i>F.</i>
<i>N.</i> cū'-jūs,	cū'-jā,	cū'-jum,	<i>N.</i> cū'-jæ,
<i>Ac.</i> cū'-jum,	cū'-jam,	_____	<i>Ac.</i> cū'-jās.
<i>Ab.</i> _____	cū'-jā.	_____	

6. *Cūjūs* is declined like an adjective of one termination; *cūjas* *cujālīs*. See § 139, 4.

NOTE The interrogative pronouns are used not only in direct questions but in such dependent clauses also, as contain only an indirect question; as, e. g. in the direct question, *quis est?* who is he? in the indirect, *nescio quis sit*, I know not who he is. *Qui*, in this sense, is found for *quis*; as, *qui sit apertit*, he discloses who he is. Cf. § 265, *N.*

## INDEFINITE PRONOUNS.

§ 138. Indefinite pronouns are such as denote an object in a general manner, without indicating a particular individual. They are

<i>Aliquis</i> , some one.	<i>Quisquam</i> , any one.	<i>Quīdam</i> , a certain one.
<i>Siquis</i> , if any.	<i>Quispiam</i> , some one.	<i>Quilibet</i> , } any one you
<i>Nēquis</i> , lest any.	<i>Unusquisque</i> , each.	<i>Quivis</i> , } please.
<i>Quisque</i> , every one.	<i>Aliquīpiam</i> , any, some.	<i>Quis and qui</i> , § 137, R. (3.)

NOTE. *Siquis* and *nequis* are commonly written separately, *si quis* and *ne quis*: so also *unus quisque*.

1. *Aliquis* is thus declined:—

<i>Singular.</i>		
<i>M.</i>	<i>F.</i>	<i>N.</i>
<i>N.</i> al'-i-quis,	al'-i-qua,	al'-i-quod, or -quid,
<i>G.</i> al-i-cū'-jus,	al-i-cū'-jus,	al-i-cū'-jus,
<i>D.</i> al'-i-cui,	al'-i-cui,	al'-i-cui,
<i>Ac.</i> al'-i-quem,	al'-i-quam,	al'-i-quod, or -quid,
<i>V.</i> _____	_____	_____
<i>Ab.</i> al'-i-quo.	al'-i-quā.	al'-i-quo.

<i>Plural.</i>		
<i>M.</i>	<i>F.</i>	<i>N.</i>
<i>N.</i> al'-i-qui,	al'-i-quæ,	al'-i-qua,
<i>G.</i> al-i-quō'-rum,	al-i-quā'-rum,	al-i-quō'-rum,
<i>D.</i> a-liq'-uī-bus,*	a-liq'-uī-bus,	a-liq'-uī-bus,
<i>Ac.</i> al'-i-quos,	al'-i-quas,	al'-i-qua,
<i>V.</i> _____	_____	_____
<i>Ab.</i> a-liq'-uī-bus.	a-liq'-uī-bus.	a-liq'-uī-bus.

\* Pronounced a-lik'-wē-bus. See §§ 9, 4, and 21, 3

2. *Siquis* and *nēquis* are declined in the same manner; but they sometimes have *quæ* in the fem. singular and neut. plural.

(a.) *Aliquis*, in the nominative singular masculine, is used both as a substantive and as an adjective;—*aliqui*, as an adjective, but is nearly obsolete. *Aliquæ* in the fem. sing. occurs as an adjective in Lucretius, 4, 2, 64. *Siqui*, and *nēqui*, which are properly adjectives, are used also substantively for *aliquis* and *nēquis*, and in the nominative singular masculine these two forms are equivalent. The ablatives *aliqui* and *siqui* also occur.

(b.) *Aliquid*, *siquid* and *nēquid*, like *quid*, are used substantively; *aliquid*, etc., like *quod*, are used adjectively.

3. *Quisque*, *quisquam*, and *quispiam*, are declined like *quis*.

(a.) In the neuter singular, however, *quisque* has *quodque*, *quidque*, or *quicque*; *quisquam* has *quidquam* or *quicquam*; and *quispiam* has *quodpiam*, *quidpiam*, or *quippiam*. The forms *quidque* or *quicque*, *quidpiam* or *quippiam* are used substantively.

(b.) *Quisquam* wants the feminine (except *quamquam*, Plaut. Mil. 4, 2, 68), and also the plural, and, with a few exceptions in Plautus, it is always used substantively, its place as an adjective being supplied by *ullus*. *Quispiam* is scarcely used in the plural, except in the nominative feminine, *quæpiam*.

4. *Unusquisque* is compounded of *unus* and *quisque*, which are often written separately, and both words are declined.

Thus *unusquisque*, *uniuscujusque*, *unicuique*, *unumquemque*, etc. The neuter is *unumquodque*, or *unumquidque*. It has no plural. *Unumquidquid* for *unumquidque* occurs in Plautus and Lucretius.

5. *Quidam*, *quilibet*, and *quīvis*, are declined like *qui*, except that they have both *quod* and *quid* in the neuter, the former used adjectively, the latter substantively.

NOTE. *Quidam* has usually *n* before *d* in the accusative singular and genitive plural; as, *quendam*, *quorundam*, etc. Cf. § 134, NOTE 1.

## POSSESSIVE PRONOUNS.

§ 139. 1. The possessive are derived from the genitives of the substantive pronouns, and of *quis*, and designate something belonging to their primitives.

They are *meus*, *tuus*, *suus*, *noster*, *vester*, and *cūjus*. *Meus*, *tuus*, and *suus*, are declined like *bōnus*; but *meus* has in the vocative singular masculine *mī*, and very rarely *meus*. Cf. § 105, R. 3. In late writers *mī* occurs also in the feminine and neuter.

2. *Cūjus* also is declined like *bōnus*; but is defective. See § 137, 5. It occurs only in early Latin and in legal phraseology.

3. *Noster* and *vester* are declined like *pūger*. See § 106.

REMARK 1. The terminations *pte* and *met* intensive are sometimes annexed to possessive pronouns, especially to the ablative singular; as, *suapte pondère*, by its own weight; *suapte manu*, by his own hand. So *nostrapte culpā*; *eximpte amicum*; *meāmet culpā*. The suffix *met* is usually followed by *ipse*; as, *Hannibal suāmet ipse fraude captus abiit*. Liv.; but Sallust has *meāmet facta Ecce*.

REM. 2. *Suus*, like its primitive *sui*, has always a reflexive signification, referring to the subject of the sentence. *Meus*, *tuus*, *noster*, and *vester*, are also used reflexively, when the subject of the proposition is of the first or second person. See § 132, 4.



## PATRIAL PRONOUNS.

4. (a.) These are *nostras* and *cūjas*. See §§ 100, 2, and 128, 6. They are declined like adjectives of one termination; as, *nostras*, *nostratis*, but both are defective.

(b.) *Nostras* is found in the nominative and genitive singular, in the nominative plural, (masc. and fem., *nostrates*, neut. *nostratia*), and in the ablative, (*nostratibus*). *Cujas* or *quōjas* occurs in the nominative, genitive and accusative (*cujatem* masc.) singular, and in the nominative plural, masc. (*cujātes*). Cf. § 137, 6.—*Nostrātis* and *cujātis* (or *quojātis*) also occur in the nominative.

## PRONOMINAL ADJECTIVES.

5. To the adjective pronouns may be added certain adjectives of so general a meaning, that they partake, in some degree, of the character of pronouns. Of this kind are:—

(1.) (a.) *Alius*, *ullus*, *nullus*, and *nonnullus*, which answer to the question, who?

(b.) *Alter*, *neuter*, *alterūter*, *utervis*, and *uterlibet*, which answer to the question, *ūter*? which of two?

(2.) Adjectives denoting quality, size, or number, in a general way. These stand in relation to one another, and are hence called *correlatives*.

REMARK. The *relatives* and *interrogatives* of this class begin with *qu*, and are alike in form. The *indefinites* are formed from the relatives by prefixing *ali*. The *demonstratives* begin with *t*, and are sometimes strengthened by *dem*. A *general relative*, having a meaning more general than the relative, is formed by doubling the simple relative, or by affixing to it the termination *cumque*. A *general indefinite* is formed by annexing *libet* or *vis* to the relative.

(3.) Their mutual relation is denoted by the following table, with which may be compared the *adverbial correlatives*, § 191, R. 1.

Interrog.	Demonstr.	Relat.	Relat. general.	Indefin.	Indef. general.
qualis?	tālis,	quālis,	{ qualis-qualis, qualiscumque. }	————	qualis'libet,
quantus?	{ tantus, tantundem, }	quantus,	{ quantus-quantus, quantuscumque, }	aliquantus,	quantuslibet.
quōt?	tōt, totīdem,	quōt,	{ quot-quot, quotcumque, }	aliquot,	quotlibet,
quōtus?	tōtus,	quōtus,	quotuscumque,	(aliquōtus),	————.

## Diminutives.

quantūlus?	tantūlus.	————.	quantuluscumque.	aliquantūlum.	————.
------------	-----------	-------	------------------	---------------	-------

NOTE 1. The suffix *cumque*, which is used in forming general relatives, is composed of the relative adverb *cum* (*quum*) and the suffix *que*, expressive of universality, as in *quisque* and in adverbs, (see § 191). *Cumque*, therefore, originally signified 'whenever.' When attached to a relative, whether a pronoun, adjective, or adverb, it renders the relative meaning more general; as *qui*, who; *quicumque*, whoever; or, every one who.

NOTE 2. *Cujusmodi* is sometimes used for *qualis*, and *hujusmodi*, *istiusmodi*, *eiusmodi* and *eiusdemmodi* for *tālis*. Cf. § 134, R. 5.

## VERBS.

§ 140. A verb is a word by which something is affirmed of a person or thing.

1. That of which any thing is affirmed is called the *subject* of the verb. (2.) That which is affirmed of the subject is called the *predicate*. Cf. § 201.

3. A verb either expresses an action or state; as, *puer legit*, the boy *reads*; *aqua calet*, the water *is warm*;—or it connects an attribute with a subject; as, *terra est rotunda*, the earth *is round*.

4. All verbs belong to the former of these classes, except *sum*, I am, the most common use of which is, to connect an attribute with a subject. When so used, it is called the *copula*.

§ 141. Verbs are either *active* or *neuter*.

NOTE. Active and neuter verbs are sometimes called *transitive* and *intransitive*; and verbs of motion are by some grammarians divided into *active-transitive* and *active-intransitive*, according as they require, or do not require, an object after them.

I. An *active* or *transitive verb* expresses such an action as requires the addition of an object to complete the sense; as, *amo te*, I love thee; *sequitur consulem*, he follows the consul.

II. A *neuter* or *intransitive verb* expresses such an action or state, as does not require the addition of an object to complete the sense; as, *equus currit*, the horse runs; *gradior*, I walk.

REMARK 1. Many verbs, in Latin, are considered as neuter, which are usually translated into English by active verbs. Thus *indulgeo*, I indulge, *noceo*, I hurt, *pareo*, I obey, are reckoned among neuter verbs. In strictness, such Latin verbs denote rather a state than an action, and their sense would be more exactly expressed by the verb *to be* with an adjective; as, 'I am indulgent, I am hurtful,' etc. Some verbs in Latin, which do not usually take an object after them, are yet active, since the object is omitted by ellipsis. Thus *credo* properly signifies *to intrust*, and, in this sense, takes an object; as, *credo tibi salutem meam*, I intrust my safety to you; but by ellipsis it usually means *to believe*; as, *crede mihi*, believe me.

To verbs belong *voices*, *moods*, *tenses*, *numbers*, and *persons*.

## VOICES.

(a.) Voice, in verbs, is the form by which they denote the relation of the agent to the action of the verb.

(b.) Most active Latin verbs have, for this purpose, two forms, which are called the *active* and *passive voices*.

1. A verb in the *active voice* represents the agent as *acting upon* some person or thing, called the *object*; as, *puer legit librum*, the boy *is reading* a book.

2. A verb in the *passive voice* represents the object as *acted upon* by the agent; as, *liber legitur a puëro*, a book is read by the boy.

REM. 2. By comparing the two preceding examples, it will be seen that they have the same meaning. The passive voice may thus be substituted at pleasure for the active, by making the object of the active the subject of the passive, and placing the subject of the active in the ablative case, with or without the preposition *a* or *ab*, according as it is a voluntary or involuntary agent. The active form is used to direct the attention especially to the agent as acting; the passive, chiefly to exhibit the object as acted upon. In the one case the object, in the other the agent, is frequently omitted, and left indefinite; as, *puer legit*, the boy is reading, scil. *librum, litteras*, etc., a book, a letter, etc. *virtus laudatur*, virtue is praised, scil. *ab hominibus*, by men.

The two voices are distinguished from each other by peculiar terminations. Cf. § 152.

§ 142. 1. Neuter verbs have, in general, only the form of the active voice. They are, however, sometimes used impersonally in the passive voice. See § 184, 2.

2. The neuter verbs *audeo*, I dare, *fido*, I trust, *gaudeo*, I rejoice, and *soleo*, I am wont, have the passive form in the perfect and its cognate tenses; as *ausus sum*, I dared. Hence these verbs are called *neuter passives*, or *semi-deponents*.

3. The neuter verbs *vapulo*, I am beaten, and *veneo*, I am sold, have an active form, but a passive meaning, and are hence called *neutral passives*.

4. (a.) *Deponent* verbs have a transitive or intransitive signification with only the passive form. They are called *deponent verbs*, from *depōno*, to lay aside, as having laid aside their active form, and their passive signification; as, *sēquor*, I follow; *mōrior*, I die.

(b.) Some deponent verbs have both an active and a passive signification, especially in the perfect participle. These are sometimes called *common verbs*. Cf. § 162, 17.

## MOODS.

§ 143. (a.) Moods (or modes) are forms of the verb, which denote the relation of the action or state, expressed by the verb, to the mind of the speaker or to some other action.

(b.) Latin verbs have four moods—the *indicative*, the *subjunctive*, the *imperative*, and the *infinitive*.

1. The *indicative* mood is used in independent and absolute assertions and inquiries; as, *amo*, I love; *audisne?* dost thou hear?

2. The *subjunctive* mood is used to express an action or state simply as conceived by the mind; as, *si me obsēcret, redībō*; if he entreat me, I will return.

3. The *imperative* mood is used in commanding, exhorting or entreating; as, *ama*, love thou; *amanto*, they shall love.



4. The *infinitive* mood is used to denote an action or state in definitely, without limiting it to any person or thing as its subject; as, *virtus est vitium fugere*, to shun vice is a virtue.

## TENSES.

§ 144. Tenses are forms of the verb, denoting the *time* of the action or state expressed by the verb.

1. Time admits of a threefold division, into present, past and future; and, in each of these times, an action may be represented either as going on, or as completed. From these two divisions arise the six tenses of a Latin verb, each of which is distinguished by its peculiar terminations.

2. They are called the *present*, *imperfect*, *future*, *perfect*, *pluperfect*, and *future perfect* tenses.

Present	{ action	{ <i>amo</i> , I love, or am loving; <i>Present tense</i> .
Past	{ not com-	{ <i>amābam</i> , I was loving; <i>Imperfect tense</i> .
Future	{ pleted;	{ <i>amābo</i> , I shall love, or be loving; <i>Future tense</i> .
Present	{ action	{ <i>amāvi</i> , I have loved; <i>Perfect tense</i> .
Past	{ com-	{ <i>amāveram</i> , I had loved; <i>Pluperfect tense</i> .
Future	{ pleted;	{ <i>amāverō</i> , I shall have loved; <i>Future perfect tense</i> .

3. There is the same number of tenses in the passive voice, in which actions not completed are represented by simple forms of the verb, and those which are completed by compound forms.

Present	{ action	{ <i>amor</i> , I am loved; <i>Present tense</i> .
Past	{ not com-	{ <i>amābar</i> , I was loved; <i>Imperfect tense</i> .
Future	{ pleted;	{ <i>amābor</i> , I shall be loved; <i>Future tense</i> .
Present	{ action	{ <i>amātus sum</i> , or <i>fuī</i> , I have been loved; <i>Perfect tense</i> .
Past	{ com-	{ <i>amātus eram</i> , or <i>fuēram</i> , I had been loved; <i>Pluperfect</i> .
Future	{ pleted;	{ <i>amātus ero</i> , or <i>fuēro</i> , I shall have been loved; <i>Future Perfect</i> .

§ 145. I. The *present tense* represents an action as now going on, and not completed; as, *āmo*, I love, or am loving.

1. Any existing custom, or general truth, may be expressed by this tense as, *apud Parthos, signum datur tympano*; among the Parthians, the signal is given by a drum. A general truth is sometimes also expressed by the perfect.

2. The present tense may also denote an action which has existed for some time, and which still exists; as, *tot annos bella gero*; for so many years I have waged, and am still waging war.

3. The present tense is often in narration used for the perfect indefinite. It is then called the *historical present*; as, *desiliunt ex equis, provolunt in primum*; they dismount, they fly forward to the front.

II. The *imperfect tense* represents an action as going on at some past time, but not then completed; as, *amābam*, I was loving.

1. The imperfect sometimes denotes repeated or customary past action; as, *legēbam*, I was wont to read.

2. It may also denote an action which had existed for some time, and which was still existing at a certain past time; as, *audiebat jamdūdum verba*; he had long heard, and was still hearing the words.

3. In letters, and with reference not to the time of their being written, but to that of their being read, the imperfect is sometimes used for the present as, *expectābam*, I was expecting, (i. e. when I wrote).

4. The imperfect also sometimes denotes the *intending*, *preparing*, or *attempting* to act at a definite past time.

III. The *future tense* denotes that an action will be going on hereafter, but without reference to its completion; as, *amābo*, I shall love, or shall be loving.

IV. The *perfect tense* represents an action either as just completed, or as completed in some indefinite past time; as, *amāvi*, I have loved, or I loved.

REMARK. In the former sense, it is called the *perfect definite*, in the latter, the *perfect indefinite*, *historical perfect*, or *aorist*.

V. The *pluperfect tense* represents a past action as completed, at or before the time of some other past action or event; as, *litteras scripsēram*, *quum nuncius vēnit*; I had written the letter, when the messenger arrived.

VI. The *future perfect tense* denotes that an action will be completed, at or before the time of some other future action or event; as, *quum cœnavēro*, *proficiscar*; when I shall have supped, I will go.

NOTE 1. This tense is often, but improperly, called the *future subjunctive*. It has the signification of the indicative mood, and corresponds to the *second future* in English.

NOTE 2. The imperfect, historical perfect, and pluperfect tenses are sometimes called *preterites* or the *preterite tenses*.

NOTE 3. The present, imperfect, and future tenses passive, in English, do not express the exact sense of those tenses in Latin, as denoting an action which is, was, or will be, going on at a certain time. Thus *laudor* signifies, not 'I am praised,' but 'I am in the act of being praised, or, if such an expression is admissible, 'I am being praised.'

REMARK 1. The six tenses above enumerated are found only in the indicative mood.

REM. 2. The subjunctive mood, in the regular conjugation, has the present and past, but no future tenses.

NOTE 4. The tenses of the subjunctive mood have less definiteness of meaning, in regard to time, than those of the indicative. Thus the present and perfect, besides their common signs, *may* or *can*, *may have* or *can have*, *must*, in certain connections, be translated by *might*, *could*, *would*, or *should*; *might have*, *could have*, etc. The tenses of this mood must often, also, be translated by the corresponding tenses of the indicative. For a more particular account of the signification of each of the tenses of the subjunctive mood, see § 260.

REM. 3. The imperative mood has two tenses—a present and a future; the former for that which is to be done at once, and the latter for that which is to be done in future.

REM. 4. The infinitive mood has three tenses—the present, the perfect, and the future; the first of which denotes an incomplete, the second a completed action, and the last an action to be performed.

## NUMBERS.

§ 146. Number, in verbs, is the form by which the *unity* or *plurality* of their subject is denoted. Hence verbs, like nouns, have two numbers—the *singular* and the *plural*. Cf. § 35, 1.

## PERSONS.

§ 147. Person, in verbs, is the form by which they denote the person of their subject. Hence in each number there are three persons—the *first*, *second*, and *third*. Cf. § 35, 2.

1. The imperative *present* has only the second person in both numbers. The imperative *future* has in each number the second and third persons, but in the singular they have both the same form, *-to* in the active, and *-tor* in the passive voice.

2. As the signification of the infinitive mood is not limited to any subject, it admits no change to express either number or person.

3. The following are the terminations of the different persons of each number, in the indicative and subjunctive moods, in both voices:—

	<i>Active.</i>			<i>Passive.</i>		
<i>Person.</i>	1.	2.	3.	1.	2.	3.
<i>Singular.</i>	o, i, or m,	s,	t;	r,	ris,	tur;
<i>Plural.</i>	mus,	tis,	nt.	mur,	mini,	ntur.

These may be called *personal* terminations.

REMARK 1. The perfect indicative active is irregular in the second person singular and plural, which end in *sti* and *stis*, and in one of the forms of the third person plural, which ends in *re*.

REM. 2. The passive form above given belongs to the simple tenses only.

REM. 3. The pronouns of the first and second persons, *ego*, *nos*; *tu* and *vos*, are seldom expressed in Latin as subjects of a finite verb, the several persons being sufficiently distinguished by the terminations of the verb.

## PARTICIPLES, GERUNDS, AND SUPINES.

§ 148. 1. A participle is a word derived from a verb, and partaking of its meaning, but having the form of an adjective.

(1.) Like a verb, it has different *voices* and *tenses*; like an adjective, it has *declension*\* and *gender*; and like both, it has two *numbers*.

(2.) Active verbs have usually *four* participles—two in the active voice, a present and a future; as, *amans*, loving; *amatūrus*, about to love;—and two in the passive voice, a perfect and a future; as, *amatus*, loved. or having been loved; *amandus*, to be loved.

\* See §§ 105, R. 2: and 111, R.



(3.) Neuter verbs have usually only the participles of the active voice.

(4.) Deponent verbs, both active and neuter, may have the participles of both voices.

2. (a.) *Gerunds* are verbal nouns, used only in the oblique cases, and expressing the action or state of the verb; as, *amandi*, of loving, etc.

(b.) Like other abstract nouns, they are found only in the singular number, and by their cases supply the place of a declinable present infinitive active.

3. *Supines* also are verbal nouns of the fourth declension in the accusative and ablative singular; as, *amātum*, to love *amātu*, to be loved.

REMARK. These also serve in certain connections to supply the place of the infinitive present both active and passive. The supine in *um* is called the *former* supine; that in *u*, the *latter*. The former is commonly used in an active, the latter in a passive sense.

## CONJUGATION.

§ 149. 1. The conjugation of a verb is the regular formation and arrangement of its several parts, according to their voices, moods, tenses, numbers, and persons.

2. There are four conjugations, which are characterized by the vowel before *re* in the present of the infinitive active.

In the first conjugation, it is *ā* long;  
 In the second, . . . . *ē* long;  
 In the third, . . . . *ě* short;  
 In the fourth, . . . . *ī* long.

EXCEPTION. *Do*, *dāre*, to give, and such of its compounds as are of the first conjugation, have *ā* short before *re*.

§ 150. A verb, like a noun, consists of two parts—the *root*, and the *termination*. Cf. § 40, 10.

1. The *first* or *general* root of a verb consists of those letters that are found in every part. This root may always be found by removing the termination of the present infinitive.

2. There are also two special roots, the first of which is found in the perfect, and is called the *second* root; the other, found in the supine or perfect participle, is called the *third* root.

3. In regular verbs of the first, second, and fourth conjugations, the *second* root is formed by adding, respectively, *āv*, *u*, and *īr*, to the *general* root; and the *third* root by a similar addition of *āt*, *īt*, and *īt*.

REMARK. Many verbs, in each of the conjugations, form their second and third roots irregularly.

4. In the third conjugation, the second root either is the same as the first, or is formed from it by adding *s*; the third root is formed by adding *t*. See § 171.

NOTE. In the second and fourth conjugations, *e* and *i* before *o* are considered as belonging not to the root, but to the termination. In verbs whose second or third roots are formed irregularly, the general root often undergoes some change in the parts derived from them.

5. The vowel which unites the general root with the remaining letters of the verb, is called the *connecting vowel*. Each conjugation, except the third, is, in a great degree, distinguished by a peculiar connecting vowel, which is the same as characterizes the infinitives. See § 149, 2.

(a.) In the third conjugation, the connecting vowel is generally *ē* or *i*. In the second and fourth conjugations, and in verbs in *io* of the third, a second connecting vowel is sometimes added to that which characterizes the conjugation; as, *a* in *doceant*, *u* in *capiunt*, etc.

(b.) In verbs whose second and third roots are formed irregularly, the connecting vowel often disappears, or is changed in the parts derived from those roots; but it is almost always found in the parts derived from the first root.

§ 151. 1. From the *first* root are derived, in each voice, the present, imperfect, and future indicative; the present and imperfect subjunctive; the imperative, and the present infinitive. From this root are derived also the present participle, the gerund, and the future participle passive.

2. From the *second* root are derived, in the active voice, the perfect, pluperfect, and future perfect indicative; the perfect and pluperfect subjunctive, and the perfect infinitive.

3. (a.) From the *third* root are derived, in the active voice, the supine in *um*, and the future participle; the latter of which, with the verb *esse*, constitutes the future infinitive active.

(b.) From this root are derived, in the passive voice, the supine in *u*, and the perfect participle; from the latter of which, with the verb *sum*, are formed all the tenses which in the active are derived from the second root. The future infinitive passive is formed from the supine in *um*, and *iri*, the present infinitive passive of the verb *eo*, to go.

4. The present and perfect indicative, the supine in *um*, and the present infinitive, are called the *principal parts* of the verb, because from the first three the several roots are ascertained, and from the last, the characteristic vowel of the conjugation. In the passive voice, the principal parts are the present indicative and infinitive, and the perfect participle.

NOTE. As the supine in *um* is wanting in most verbs, the third root must often be determined from the perfect participle, or the future participle active.

§ 152. The following table exhibits a connected view of the verbal terminations in all the conjugations. By annexing these to the several roots, all the parts of a verb may be formed.

ACTIVE VOICE.

PASSIVE VOICE.

INDICATIVE MOOD.

PRESENT TENSE.

SINGULAR.  
Persons.

SINGULAR.  
Persons.

PLURAL.  
Persons.

Conjugation.	SINGULAR.			SINGULAR.			PLURAL.		
	1.	2.	3.	1.	2.	3.	1.	2.	3.
{	1. -o,	-ās,	-āt;	1. -ōr,	-āris or -ārē,	-ātūr;	-āmūr,	-amīnī,	-antūr.
	2. -eo,	-ēs,	-ēt;	2. -eōr,	-ēris or -ērē,	-ētūr;	-ēmūr,	-emīnī,	-entūr.
	3. -o,	-is,	-it;	3. -ōr,	-ēris or -ērē,	-ītūr;	-īmūr,	-imīnī,	-untūr.
	4. -io,	-īs,	-it;	4. -iōr,	-īris or -irē,	-ītūr;	-imūr,	-imīnī,	-iuntūr.

IMPERFECT.

1. -ābam,	-ābās,	-ābāt;	-ābānūs,	-ābār,	-abāris or -abārē,	-abātūr;	-abāmūr,	-abamīnī,	-abantūr.
2. -ēbam,	-ēbās,	-ēbāt;	-ebāmūs,	2. -ēbār,	-ebāris or -ebārē,	-ebātūr;	-ebāmūr,	-ebamīnī,	-ebantūr.
3. -ēbam,	-ēbās,	-ēbāt;	-ebāmūs,	3. -ēbār,	-ebāris or -ebārē,	-ebātūr;	-ebāmūr,	-ebamīnī,	-ebantūr.
4. -iēbam,	-iēbās,	-iēbāt;	-iebāmūs,	4. -iēbār,	-iebāris or -iebārē,	-iebātūr;	-iebāmūr,	-iebamīnī,	-iebantūr.

FUTURE.

1. -ābo,	-ābīs,	-ābīt;	-abīmūs,	1. -ābōr,	-abēris or -abērē,	-abītūr;	-abīmūr,	-abimīnī,	-abuntūr.
2. -ēbo,	-ēbīs,	-ēbīt;	-ebimūs,	2. -ēbōr,	-ebēris or -ebērē,	-ebītūr;	-ebīmūr,	-ebimīnī,	-ebuntūr.
3. -am,	-ēs,	-ēt;	-ēmūs,	3. -ār,	-ēris or -ērē,	-ētūr;	-ēmūr,	-emīnī,	-entūr.
4. -iam,	-iēs,	-iēt;	-iēmūs,	4. -iār,	-ieris or -iērē,	-iētūr;	-iēmūr,	-iemīnī,	-ientūr.

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

PRESENT TENSE.

1. -em,	-ēs,	-ēt;	-ēmūs,	1. -ēr,	-ēris or -ērē,	-ētūr;	-ēmūr,	-emīnī,	-entūr.
2. -eam,	-eās,	-eāt;	-eamūs,	2. -eār,	-eāris or -eārē,	-eātūr;	-eamūr,	-eamīnī,	-eantūr.
3. -am,	-ās,	-āt;	-amūs,	3. -ār,	-āris or -arē,	-ātūr;	-āmūr,	-amīnī,	-antūr.
4. -iam,	-iās,	-iāt;	-iamūs,	4. -iār,	-iāris or -iārē,	-iātūr;	-iāmūr,	-iamīnī,	-iantūr.



IMPERFECT

1. -ārem,	-ārēs,	-ārēt,	-arēmūs,	-arētis,	-ārent.	1. -ārēr,	-arēris or -arērē,	-arēmūr,	-arēmī,	-arentūr.
2. -ērem,	-ērēs,	-ērēt;	-erēmūs,	-erētis,	-ērent.	2. -ērēr,	-erēris or -erērē,	-erēmūr,	-eremū,	-erentūr.
3. -ērem,	-ērēs,	-ērēt;	-erēmūs,	-erētis,	-ērent.	3. -ērēr,	-erēris or -erērē,	-erēmūr,	-eremī,	-erentūr.
4. -īrem,	-īrēs,	-īrēt;	-irēmūs,	-irētis,	-īrent.	4. -īrēr,	-irēris or -irērē,	-irēmūr,	-iremī,	-irentūr.

IMPERATIVE MOOD.

<i>Present.</i>	1. -ā;	-ātē.	<i>Future.</i>	-āto,	-āto;	-atōtē,	<i>Present.</i>	1. -ārē,	-amī.	<i>Future.</i>	-ātōr,	-ātōr,	(-abamīnī,) -antōr.
	2. -ē;	-ētē.		-ēto,	-ēto;	-etōtē,		2. -ērē,	-emī.		-ētōr,	-ētōr,	(-ebimīnī,) -entōr.
	3. -ē;	-itē.		-īto,	-īto;	-itōtē,		3. -ērē,	-imī.		-ītōr,	-ītōr,	(-emīnī,) -untōr.
	4. -ī;	-itē.		-īto,	-īto;	-itōtē,		4. -irē,	-imī.		-ītōr,	-ītōr,	(-iemīnī,) -iuntōr.
<i>INFIN.</i> <i>Pres.</i>	1. -ārē,	<i>PART.</i> <i>Pres.</i>	1. -ans,	<i>GER.</i>	1. -andī,	<i>INFIN.</i> <i>Pres.</i>	1. -ārī,	1. -andūs,					
	2. -ērē,		2. -ens,		2. -endī,		2. -ērī,	2. -endūs,					
	3. -ērē,		3. -ens,		3. -endī,		3. -ī,	3. -endūs,					
	4. -irē.		4. -iens.		4. -iendī.		4. -ī.	4. -iendūs.					

NOTE. Verbs in *io* of the third conjugation have two connecting vowels in all the parts in which they occur in verbs of the fourth conjugation, and these vowels are the same in both.

Terminations added to the Second and Third Roots.

The terminations of the tenses which are formed from the second and third roots, are the same in all the conjugations. Thus:—

ACTIVE VOICE.—SECOND ROOT.

INDICATIVE MOOD.

Perf.	Plup.	Fut. perf.	Singular.	Plural.	Perf.	Plup.	Fut. perf.	Singular.	Plup.	Fut. perf.	Singular.	Plup.	Fut. perf.
Perf.	Plup.	Fut. perf.	Singular.	Plural.	Perf.	Plup.	Fut. perf.	Singular.	Plup.	Fut. perf.	Singular.	Plup.	Fut. perf.

INFIN. Perf. -isse.

THIRD ROOT. INF. Fut. -ūrūs esse. PART. Fut. -ūrūs. F. SUP. -um.

PART. Perf. -ūs. INF. Fut. -um iri. L. SUP. -ū.

**REMARK 1.** In analyzing a verb, the voice, person, and number, are ascertained by the *personal* terminations. See § 147, 3. The conjugation, mood, and tense, are, in general, determined by the letter or letters which intervene between the root of the verb and the personal terminations. Thus in *amabamus*, *mus* denotes that the verb is of the active voice, plural number, and first person; *ba* denotes that it is of the indicative mood, imperfect tense; and the connecting vowel *a* determines it to be of the first conjugation. So in *amarenti*, *mini* denotes the passive voice, plural number, and second person; *re*, the subjunctive mood, imperfect tense; and *a*, as before, the first conjugation.

**REM. 2.** Sometimes, the part between the root of the verb and the personal termination, does not precisely determine the conjugation, mood, and tense, but only within certain limits. In such cases, the conjugation may be learned, by finding the present tense in the dictionary, and if two forms are alike in the same conjugation, they can only be distinguished by the sense. Thus *amēmus* and *docēmus* have the same termination; but, as *amo* is of the first, and *doceo* of the second conjugation, the former is determined to be the subjunctive, the latter the indicative, present. *Regar* may be either the future indicative, or the present subjunctive—*bibimus* either the present or the perfect indicative.

§ 153. SUM, I am, is called an *auxiliary* verb, because it is used, in conjunction with participles, to supply the want of simple forms in other verbs. From its denoting existence, it is sometimes called the *substantive* verb.

**REMARK.** *Sum* is very irregular in those parts which, in other verbs, are formed from the first root. Its imperfect and future tenses, except in the third person plural of the latter, have the form of a pluperfect and future perfect. It is thus conjugated:—

#### PRINCIPAL PARTS.

<i>Pres. Indic.</i>	<i>Pres. Infin.</i>	<i>Perf. Indic.</i>	<i>Fut. Part.</i>
Sum,	es'-sě,	fu'-ī,	fū-tū'-rūs.

#### INDICATIVE MOOD.

##### Present Tense.

	SINGULAR.	PLURAL.
Person.	{ 1. sum, <i>I am</i> , { 2. ěs, <i>thou art</i> ,* { 3. est, <i>he is</i> ;	sŭ'-mŭs, <i>we are</i> , es'-tis, <i>ye† are</i> , sunt, <i>they are</i> .

##### Imperfect.

1. ě'-ram, <i>I was</i> ,	ě-rā'-mŭs, <i>we were</i> ,
2. ě'-rās, <i>thou wast</i> ,	ě-rā'-tis, <i>ye were</i> ,
3. ě'-rāt, <i>he was</i> ;	ě'-rant, <i>they were</i> .

##### Future. shall, or will.

1. ě'-rō, <i>I shall be</i> ,	ěr'-i-mŭs, <i>we shall be</i> ,
2. ě'-ris, <i>thou wilt be</i> ,	ěr'-i-tis, <i>ye will be</i> ,
3. ě'-rit, <i>he will be</i> ;	ě'-runt, <i>they will be</i> .

\* In the second person singular in English, the plural form *you* is commonly used except in solemn discourse; as, *tu es*, you are.

† The plural pronoun of the second person is either *ye* or *you*.

Perfect. *have been, or was.*

- |                                      |  |
|--------------------------------------|--|
| 1. fu'-ī, <i>I have been,</i>        | fu'-ī-mūs, <i>we have been,</i>          |
| 2. fu-is'-tī, <i>thou hast been,</i> | fu-is'-tis, <i>ye have been,</i>         |
| 3. fu'-it, <i>he has been;</i>       | fu-ē'-runt or rē, <i>they have been.</i> |

Pluperfect.

- |                                       |                                   |
|---------------------------------------|-----------------------------------|
| 1. fu'-ē-ram, <i>I had been,</i>      | fu-e-rā'-mūs, <i>we had been,</i> |
| 2. fu'-ē-rās, <i>thou hadst been,</i> | fu-e-rā'-tis, <i>ye had been,</i> |
| 3. fu'-ē-rāt, <i>he had been;</i>     | fu'-ē-rant, <i>they had been.</i> |

Future Perfect. *shall or will have.*

- |   |   |
|---|---|
| 1. fu'-ē-rō, <i>I shall have been,</i>    | fu-er'-ī-mūs, <i>we shall have been</i> |
| 2. fu'-ē-rīs, <i>thou wilt have been,</i> | fu-er'-ī-tis, <i>ye will have been,</i> |
| 3. fu' ē-rīt, <i>he will have been;</i>   | fu'-ē-rint, <i>they will have been.</i> |

### SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

Present. *may, or can.*

- |                               |                            |
|-------------------------------|----------------------------|
| 1. sim, <i>I may be,</i>      | sī'-mūs, <i>we may be,</i> |
| 2. sis, <i>thou mayst be,</i> | sī'-tis, <i>ye may be,</i> |
| 3. sit, <i>he may be</i>      | sint, <i>they may be.</i>  |

Imperfect. *might, could, would, or should.*

- |                                     |                                 |
|-------------------------------------|---------------------------------|
| 1. es'-sem, <i>I would be,</i>      | es-sē'-mūs, <i>we would be,</i> |
| 2. es'-sēs, <i>thou wouldst be,</i> | es-sē'-tis, <i>ye would be,</i> |
| 3. es'-sēt, <i>he would be;</i>     | es'-sent, <i>they would be.</i> |

Perfect.

- |  |  |
|--|--|
| 1. fu'-ē-rim, <i>I may have been,</i>      | fu-ēr'-ī-mus, <i>we may have been,</i> |
| 2. fu'-ē-rīs, <i>thou mayst have been,</i> | fu-ēr'-ī-tis, <i>ye may have been,</i> |
| 3. fu'-ē-rīt, <i>he may have been;</i>     | fu'-ē-rint, <i>they may have been.</i> |

Pluperfect. *might, could, would, or should have.*

- |   |   |
|---|---|
| 1. fu-is'-sem, <i>I would have been,</i>      | fu-is-sē'-mūs, <i>we would have been,</i> |
| 2. fu-is'-sēs, <i>thou wouldst have been,</i> | fu-is-sē'-tis, <i>ye would have been,</i> |
| 3. fu-is'-sēt, <i>he would have been;</i>     | fu-is'-sent, <i>they would have been.</i> |

### IMPERATIVE MOOD.

- |                                      |                                |
|--------------------------------------|--------------------------------|
| Pres. 2. es, <i>be thou,</i>         | es'-tē, <i>be ye.</i>          |
| Fut. 2. es'-tō, <i>thou shalt be</i> | es-tō'-tē, <i>ye shall be,</i> |
| 3. es'-tō, <i>let him be;</i>        | sun'-tō, <i>let them be.</i>   |

### INFINITIVE MOOD.

Present. es'-sē, *to be.*

Perfect. fu-is'-sē, *to have been.*

Future. fū-tū'-rūs (ā, um), es'-sē, or fō'-rē, *to be about to be.*

## PARTICIPLE.

*Future.* fū-tū'-rus, a, um, *about to be.*

§ 154. REMARK 1. A present participle *ens* seems to have been anciently in use, and is still found in the compounds *absens*, *præsens*, and *pōtens*.

REM. 2. The perfect *fui*, and its derivative tenses, are formed from an obsolete *fuo*, whence come also the participle *futūrus*, an old subjunctive present *fuam*, *fuas*, *fuat*; —, —, *fuant*, and the forms *fuximus*, perf. ind., *fuērint*, perf. subj., and *fuisset*, plup. subj.

REM. 3. From *fuo* appear also to be derived the following:—

*Subj. imperf.* fō'-rem, fō'-rēs, fō'-rēt; —, — fō'-rent.  
*Inf. pres.* fō'-rē.

These forms seem to have been contracted from *fuērem*, etc., and *fuēre*. *Fōrem* is equivalent in meaning to *essem*, but the infinitive *fōre* has, in most cases, acquired a future signification, equivalent to *futūrus esse*.

REM. 4. *Siem*, *sies*, *siet*, *sient*, for *sim*, *sis*, *sit*, *sint*, are found in ancient writers, as are also *escit* for *erit*, *escunt* for *erunt*, *ese*, *esētis*, and *esent*, for *esse*, *essētis*, and *essent*.

REM. 5. Like *sum* are conjugated its compounds, *absum*, *adsum*, *dēsum*, *insum*, *intersum*, *obsum*, *præsum*, *subsum*, and *supersum*.

REM. 6. PROSUM, from the old form *prōd* for *prō*, and *sum*, has *d* after *pro*, when the simple verb begins with *e*; as,

*Ind. pres.* prō'-sum, prōd'-es, prōd'-est, etc.  
— *imperf.* prod'-ē-ram, prod'-ē-rās, etc.

REM. 7. (a.) POSSUM is compounded of *pōtis*, able, and *sum*. They are sometimes written separately, and then *pōtis* is the same in all genders and numbers.

(b.) In composition, *is* is omitted in *pōtis*, and *t*, as in other cases, coming before *s*, is changed into *s*. In the infinitive, and imperfect subjunctive, *es* of the simple verb is dropped, as is also *f* at the beginning of the second root. In every other respect *possum* is conjugated like *sum*, wherever it is found; but the imperative, and the parts derived from the third root, are wanting.

*Pres. Indic.*   *Pres. Infin.*   *Perf. Indic.*  
Pos'-sum,   pos'-sē,   pōt'-u-i,   *I can, or I am able.*

## INDICATIVE.

## SUBJUNCTIVE.

*Present.*

pos'-sum, pōt'-tēs, pōt'-test;  
pos'-sū-mūs, pōt'-tes'-tis, pos'-sunt.

pos'-sim, pos'-sīs, pos'-sīt;  
pos'-sī-mūs, pos'-sī-tis, pos'-sint.

*Imperfect.*

pōt'-ē-ram, pōt'-ē-rās, pōt'-ē-rāt;  
pōt'-ē-rā'-mūs, -ē-rā'-tis, -ē-rant.

pos'-sem, pos'-sēs, pos'-sēt;  
pos'-sē-mūs, -sē-tis, pos'-sent.

*Future.*

pōt'-ē-rō pōt'-ē-rīs, pōt'-ē-rīt;  
pōt'-tēr'-i-mūs, pōt'-tēr'-i-tis, pōt'-ē-runt.

*Perfect.*

pōt'-u-i, pōt'-u-is'ti, pōt'-u-īt;  
pōt'-u'-i-mūs, -is'-tis, -ē'-runt or -ē'rē.

pōt'-u'-ē-rim, -ē-rīs, -ē-rīt;  
pōt'-u'-ēr'-i-mūs, -ī-tis, -ē-rint.



*Pluperfect.*

pö-tu'-ě-ram, -ě-rās, -ě-rāt;  
pöt-u-ě-rā'-mūs, -ě-rā'-tīs, -ě-rant.

pöt-u-is'-sem, -is'-sēs, -is'-sēt;  
pöt-u-is-sē'-mūs, -is-sē'-tīs, -is'-sent.

*Future Perfect.*

pö-tu'-ě-rč, pö-tu'-ě-rčs, pö-tu'-ě-rīt;  
pöt-u-ēr'-ī-mūs, pöt-u-ēr'-ī-tīs, pö-tu'-ě-rint.

(No Imperative.)

## INFINITIVE.

*Pres.* pos'-sě. *Perf.* pöt-u-is'-sě.

## PARTICIPIAL ADJECTIVE.

pö'-tens, *able*.

NOTE. The following forms are also found; *potissum* for *possum*, *potessunt* for *possunt*, *potessim* and *possiem* for *possim*, *possies*, *possiet* and *potessit* for *posses* and *possit*, *potessem* for *possem*, *potesse* for *posse*, and before a passive infinitive the passive forms *potestur* for *potest*, *poterātur* for *poterat*, and *possētur* for *posset*.—*Potis* and *pote* without *est* are sometimes used for *potest*.

## § 155. FIRST CONJUGATION.

## ACTIVE VOICE.

## PRINCIPAL PARTS.

<i>Pres. Ind.</i>	<i>Pres. Inf.</i>	<i>Perf. Ind.</i>	<i>Supine.</i>
A'-mō,	ă-mā'-rě,	ă-mā'-vī,	ă-mā'-tum.

## INDICATIVE MOOD.

Present. *love, do love, am loving.*

<i>Sing.</i>	ă'-mō, ă'-mās, ă'-māt,	<i>I love, thou lovest, he loves ;</i>
<i>Plur.</i>	ă-mā'-mūs, ă-mā'-tīs, ă'-mant,	<i>we love, ye love, they love.</i>

Imperfect. *was loving, loved, did love.*

<i>Sing.</i>	ă-mā'-bam, ă-mā'-bās, ă-mā'-bāt,	<i>I was loving, thou wast loving, he was loving ;</i>
<i>Plur.</i>	ăm-ā-bā'-mūs, ăm-ā-bā'-tīs, ă-mā'-bant,	<i>we were loving, ye were loving, they were loving.</i>

Future. *shall, or will.*

<i>Sing.</i>	ă-mā'-bō, ă-mā'-bīs, ă-mā'-bīt,	<i>I shall love, thou wilt love, he will love ;</i>
<i>Plur.</i>	ă-māb'-ī-mūs, ă-māb'-ī-tīs, ă-mā'-bunt,	<i>we shall love, ye will love, they will love.</i>

Perfect. *loved, or have loved.*

<i>Sing.</i>	ă-mā'-vī, ăm-ā-vis'-tī, ă-mā'-vīt,	<i>I have loved, thou hast loved, he has loved ;</i>
<i>Plur.</i>	ă-māv'-ī-mūs, ăm-ā-vis'-tīs, ăm-ā-vē'-runt or -rě,	<i>we have loved, ye have loved, they have loved.</i>

Pluperfect. *had.*

<i>Sing.</i>	ă-māv'-ě-ram, ă-māv'-ě-rās, ă-māv'-ě-rāt,	<i>I had loved, thou hadst loved, he had loved ;</i>
<i>Plur.</i>	ă-māv'-ě-rā'-mūs, ă-māv'-ě-rā'-tīs, ă-māv'-ě-rant,	<i>we had loved, ye had loved, they had loved.</i>

Future Perfect. *shall, or will have.*

<i>Sing.</i>	ă-māv'-ě-rō, ă-māv'-ě-rīs, ă-māv'-ě-rīt,	<i>I shall have loved, thou wilt have loved, he will have loved ;</i>
<i>Plur.</i>	ăm-ā-vēr'-ī-mūs, ăm-ā-vēr'-ī-tīs, ă-māv'-ě-rint,	<i>we shall have loved, ye will have loved, they will have loved</i>

## SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD,

Present. *may, or can.*

<i>Sing.</i>	ă'-mem, ă'-mēs, ă'-mēt,	<i>I may love, thou mayst love, he may love ;</i>
<i>Plur.</i>	ă-mē'-mūs, ă-mē'-tīs, ă'-ment,	<i>we may love, ye may love, they may love.</i>

Imperfect. *might, could, would, or should.*

<i>Sing.</i>	ă-mā'-rem, ă-mā'-rēs, ă-mā'-rēt,	<i>I would love, thou wouldst love, he would love ;</i>
<i>Plur.</i>	ăm-ā-rē'-mūs, ăm-ā-rē'-tīs, ă-mā'-rent,	<i>we would love, ye would love, they would love.</i>

Perfect. *may, or can have.*

<i>Sing.</i>	ă-māv'-ě-rim, ă-māv'-ě-rīs, ă-māv'-ě-rīt,	<i>I may have loved, thou mayst have loved, he may have loved ;</i>
<i>Plur.</i>	ăm-ā-vēr'-ī-mūs, ăm-ā-vēr'-ī-tīs, ă-māv'-ě-rint,	<i>we may have loved, ye may have loved, they may have loved</i>

Pluperfect. *might, could, would, or should have.*

<i>Sing.</i>	ăm-ā-vis'-sem, ăm-ā-vis'-sēs, ăm-ā-vis'-sēt,	<i>I would have loved, thou wouldst have loved, he would have loved ;</i>
<i>Plur.</i>	ăm-ā-vis-sē'-mūs, ăm-ā-vis-sē'-tīs, ăm-ā-vis'-sent,	<i>we would have loved, ye would have loved, they would have loved.</i>

#### IMPERATIVE MOOD.

<i>Pres. Sing.</i>	ă'-mā,	<i>love thou ;</i>
<i>Plur.</i>	ă-mā'-tě,	<i>love ye.</i>
<i>Fut. Sing.</i>	ă-mā'-tǔ,	<i>thou shalt love,</i>
	ă-mā'-tǔ,	<i>he shall love ;</i>
<i>Plur.</i>	ăm-ā-tǔ'-tě,	<i>ye shall love,</i>
	ă-man'-tǔ,	<i>they shall love</i>

#### INFINITIVE MOOD.

<i>Present.</i>	ă-mā'-rě,	<i>to love.</i>
<i>Perfect.</i>	ăm-ā-vis'-sě,	<i>to have loved.</i>
<i>Future.</i>	ăm-ā-tǔ'-rūs, (ă, um,) es'-sě,	<i>to be about to love.</i>

#### PARTICIPLES.

<i>Present.</i>	ă'-mans,	<i>loving.</i>
<i>Future.</i>	ăm-ā-tǔ'-rūs, ă, um,	<i>about to love.</i>

#### GERUND.

<i>G.</i>	ă-man'-dī,	<i>of loving,</i>
<i>D.</i>	ă-man'-dǔ,	<i>for loving,</i>
<i>Ac.</i>	ă-man'-dum,	<i>loving,</i>
<i>Ab.</i>	ă-man'-dǔ,	<i>by loving.</i>

#### SUPINE.

<i>Former.</i>	ă-mā'-tum,	<i>to love.</i>
----------------	------------	-----------------

### § 156. PASSIVE VOICE.

#### PRINCIPAL PARTS.

<i>Pres. Indic.</i>	<i>Pres. Inf'n.</i>	<i>Perf. Part.</i>
A'-mor,	ă-mā'-rī,	ă-mā'-tūs.

## INDICATIVE MOOD.

Present. *am.*

<i>Sing.</i>	ă'-mör, ă-mā'-rīs or -rě, ă-mā'-tūr,	<i>I am loved, thou art loved, he is loved ;</i>
<i>Plur.</i>	ă-mā'-mūr, ă-mām'-ī-nī, ă-man'-tūr,	<i>we are loved, ye are loved, they are loved.</i>

Imperfect. *was.*

<i>Sing.</i>	ă-mā'-bār, ăm-ā-bā'-rīs or -rě, ăm-ā-bā'-tūr,	<i>I was loved, thou wast loved, he was loved ;</i>
<i>Plur.</i>	ăm-ā-bā'-mūr, ăm-ā-bām'-ī-nī, ăm-ā-ban'-tūr,	<i>we were loved, ye were loved, they were loved.</i>

Future. *shall, or will be.*

<i>Sing.</i>	ă-mā'-bör, ă-māb'-ě-rīs or -rě, ă-māb'-ī-tūr,	<i>I shall be loved, thou wilt be loved, he will be loved ;</i>
<i>Plur.</i>	ă-māb'-ī-mūr, ăm-ā-bīm'-ī-nī, ăm-ā-bun'-tūr,	<i>we shall be loved, ye will be loved, they will be loved.</i>

Perfect. *have been, or was.*

<i>Sing.</i>	ă-mā'-tūs sum or fu'-ī, ă-mā'-tūs ēs or fu-is'-tī, ă-mā'-tūs est or fu'-īt,	<i>I have been loved, thou hast been loved, he has been loved ;</i>
<i>Plur.</i>	ă-mā'-tī sū'-mūs or fu'-ī-mūs, ă-mā'-tī es'-tis or fu-is'-tis, ă-mā'-tī sunt, fu-ē'-runt or -rě,	<i>we have been loved, ye have been loved, they have been loved</i>

Pluperfect. *had been.*

<i>Sing.</i>	ă-mā'-tūs ế'-ram or fu'-ế'-ram, ă-mā'-tūs ế'-rās or fu'-ế'-rās, ă-mā'-tūs ế'-rāt or fu'-ế'-rāt,	<i>I had been loved, thou hadst been loved, he had been loved ;</i>
<i>Plur.</i>	ă-mā'-tī ế'-rā'-mūs or fu'-ế'-rā'-mūs, ă-mā'-tī ế'-rā'-tis or fu'-ế'-rā'-tis, ă-mā'-tī ế'-rant or fu'-ế'-rant,	<i>we had been loved, ye had been loved, they had been loved.</i>

Future Perfect. *shall have been.*

<i>Sing.</i>	ă-mā'-tūs ế'-rō or fu'-ế'-rō, ă-mā'-tūs ế'-rīs or fu'-ế'-rīs, ă-mā'-tūs ế'-rīt or fu'-ế'-rīt,	<i>I shall have been loved, thou wilt have been loved, he will have been loved ;</i>
<i>Plur.</i>	ă-mā'-tī ế'-r-ī-mūs or fu'-ế'-r-ī-mūs, ă-mā'-tī ế'-r-ī-tis or fu'-ế'-r-ī-tis, ă-mā'-tī ế'-runt or fu'-ế'-rint,	<i>we shall have been loved, ye will have been loved, they will have been loved</i>



## SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

Present. *may, or can be.*

<i>Sing.</i> ă-měr,	<i>I may be loved,</i>
ă-mē'-rīs or -rě,	<i>thou mayst be loved,</i>
ă-mē'-tūr,	<i>he may be loved;</i>
<i>Plur.</i> ă-mē'-mūr,	<i>we may be loved,</i>
ă-mēm'-ī-nī,	<i>ye may be loved,</i>
ă-men'-tūr,	<i>they may be loved.</i>

Imperfect. *might, could, would, or should be.*

<i>Sing.</i> ă-mā'-rěr,	<i>I would be loved,</i>
ăm-ā-rē'-rīs or -rě,	<i>thou wouldst be loved,</i>
ăm-ā-rē'-tūr,	<i>he would be loved;</i>
<i>Plur.</i> ăm-ā-rē'-mūr,	<i>we would be loved,</i>
ăm-ā-rēm'-ī-nī,	<i>ye would be loved,</i>
ăm-ā-ren'-tūr,	<i>they would be loved.</i>

Perfect. *may have been.*

<i>Sing.</i> ă-mā'-tūs sim or fu'-ě-rim,	<i>I may have been loved,</i>
ă-mā'-tūs sīs or fu'-ě-rīs,	<i>thou mayst have been loved,</i>
ă-mā'-tūs sīt or fu'-ě-rīt,	<i>he may have been loved,</i>
<i>Plur.</i> ă-mā'-tī sī'-mūs or fu-er'-ī-mūs,	<i>we may have been loved,</i>
ă-mā'-tī sī'-tīs or fu-er'-ī-tīs,	<i>ye may have been loved,</i>
ă-mā'-tī sint or fu'-ě-rint,	<i>they may have been loved.</i>

Pluperfect. *might, could, would, or should have been.*

<i>Sing.</i> ă-mā'-tūs es'-sem or fu-is'-sem,	<i>I would have been loved,</i>
ă-mā'-tūs es'-sēs or fu-is'-sēs,	<i>thou wouldst have been loved,</i>
ă-mā'-tūs es'-sēt or fu-is'-sēt,	<i>he would have been loved;</i>
<i>Plur.</i> ă-mā'-tī es-sē'-mūs or fu-is-sē'-mūs,	<i>we would have been loved,</i>
ă-mā'-tī es-sē'-tīs or fu-is-sē'-tīs,	<i>ye would have been loved,</i>
ă-mā'-tī es'-sent or fu-is'-sent,	<i>they would have been loved.</i>

## IMPERATIVE MOOD.

<i>Pres. Sing.</i> ă-mā'-rě,	<i>be thou loved;</i>
<i>Plur.</i> ă-mām'-ī-nī,	<i>be ye loved.</i>
<i>Fut. Sing.</i> ă-mā'-tōr,	<i>thou shalt be loved,</i>
ă-mā'-tōr,	<i>he shall be loved;</i>
<i>Plur.</i> (ăm-ā-bīm'-ī-nī,	<i>ye shall be loved),</i>
ă-man'-tōr,	<i>they shall be loved.</i>

## INFINITIVE MOOD.

<i>Present.</i> ă-mā'-rī,	<i>to be loved.</i>
<i>Perfect.</i> ă-mā'-tūs es'-sē or fu-is'-sē,	<i>to have been loved.</i>
<i>Future.</i> ă-mā'-tum ī'-rī,	<i>to be about to be loved.</i>

## PARTICIPLES.

*Perfect.* ă-mă'-tūs,                      *loved, or having been loved.*  
*Future.* ă-man'-dūs,                      *to be loved.*

## SUPINE.

*Latter.* ă-mă'-tū,                      *to be loved.*

## FORMATION OF THE TENSES.

From the first root, *am*, are derived

	<i>Active.</i>	<i>Passive.</i>
<i>Ind. pres.</i>	amo,	amor.
— <i>imperf.</i>	amābam,	amābar.
— <i>fut.</i>	amābo,	amābor.
<i>Subj. pres.</i>	amem,	amer.
— <i>imperf.</i>	amārem,	amārer.
<i>Imperat. pres.</i>	amā,	amāre.
— <i>fut.</i>	amāto,	amātor.
<i>Inf. pres.</i>	amāre,	amāri.
<i>Part. pres.</i>	amans,	
— <i>fut.</i>		amandus.
<i>Gerund.</i>	amandī.	

From the second root, *amav*, are derived

	<i>Active.</i>	<i>Passive.</i>
<i>Ind. perf.</i>	amāvi,	amātus sum, etc.
— <i>plup.</i>	amavēram,	amātus eram, etc.
— <i>fut. perf.</i>	amavēro,	amātus ero, etc.
<i>Subj. perf.</i>	amavērim,	amātus sim, etc.
— <i>plup.</i>	amavissem,	amātus essem, etc.
<i>Inf. perf.</i>	amavisse,	amātus esse, etc.

From the third root, *amat*, are derived

	<i>Active.</i>	<i>Passive.</i>
<i>Inf. fut.</i>	amatūrus esse,	amātum iri.
<i>Part. fut.</i>	amatūrus.	
— <i>perf.</i>		amātus.
<i>Form. sup.</i>	amātum.	<i>Lat. sup.</i> amātu.

## § 157. SECOND CONJUGATION.

## ACTIVE VOICE.

## PASSIVE VOICE.

## PRINCIPAL PARTS.

*Pres. Ind.* mǒ'-ne-ō.  
*Pres. Inf.* mǒ-nē'-rē.  
*Perf. Ind.* mǒn'-u-ī.  
*Supine.* 'nǒn'-ī-tum.

*Pres. Ind.* mǒ'-ne-ōr.  
*Pres. Inf.* mǒ-nē'-rī.  
*Perf. Part.* mǒn'-ī-tūs.

## INDICATIVE MOOD.

## Present.

*I advise.*  
*Sing.* mǒ'-ne-ō,  
           mǒ'-nēs,  
           mǒ'-nēt;  
*Plur.* mǒ-nē'-mūs,  
           mǒ-nē'-tīs,  
           mǒ'-nent.

*I am advised.*  
*Sing.* mǒ'-ne-ōr,  
           mǒ-nē'-rīs or -rē,  
           mǒ-nē'-tūr;  
*Plur.* mǒ-nē'-mūr,  
           mǒ-nēm'-ī-nī,  
           mǒ-nen'-tūr.

## Imperfect.

*I was advising.*  
*S.* mǒ-nē'-bam,  
       mǒ-nē'-bās,  
       mǒ-nē'-bāt;  
*P.* mǒn-ē-bā'-mūs,  
       mǒn-ē-bā'-tīs,  
       mǒ-nē'-bant.

*I was advised.*  
*S.* mǒ-nē'-bār,  
       mǒn-ē-bā'-rīs or -rē,  
       mǒn-ē-bā'-tūr;  
*P.* mǒn-ē-bā'-mūr,  
       mǒn-ē-bām'-ī-nī,  
       mǒn-ē-ban'-tūr.

## ACTIVE.

## PASSIVE.

## Future.

*I shall or will advise.*

- S.* mǎō-nē'-bǎō,  
mǎō-nē'-bīs,  
mǎō-nē'-bīt;  
*P.* mǎō-nēb'-ī-mūs,  
mǎō-nēb'-ī-tīs,  
mǎō-nē'-bunt.

*I shall or will be advised.*

- S.* mǎō-nē'-bǎōr,  
mǎō-nēb'-ē-rīs or -rē,  
mǎō-nēb'-ī-tūr;  
*P.* mǎō-nēb'-ī-mūr,  
mǎōn-ē-bīm'-ī-nī,  
mǎōn-ē-bun'-tūr.

## Perfect.

*I advised or have advised.*

- S.* mǎōn'-u-ī,  
mǎōn'-u-is'-tī,  
mǎōn'-u-it;  
*P.* mǎō-nu'-ī-mūs,  
mǎōn'-u-is'-tīs,  
mǎōn-u-ē'-runt or -rē.

*I was or have been advised.*

- S.* mǎōn'-ī-tūs sum or fu'-ī,  
mǎōn'-ī-tūs ēs or fu-is'-tī,  
mǎōn'-ī-tūs est or fu'-it;  
*P.* mǎōn'-ī-tī sū'-mūs or fu'-ī-mūs,  
mǎōn'-ī-tī es'-tīs or fu-is'-tīs,  
mǎōn'-ī-tī sunt, fu-ē'-runt or -rē

## Pluperfect.

*I had advised.*

- S.* mǎō-nu'-ē-ram,  
mǎō-nu'-ē-rās,  
mǎō-nu'-ē-rāt;  
*P.* mǎōn-u-ē-rā'-mūs,  
mǎōn-u-ē-rā'-tīs,  
mǎō-nu'-ē-rant.

*I had been advised.*

- S.* mǎōn'-ī-tūs ē'-ram or fu'-ē-ram,  
mǎōn'-ī-tūs ē'-rās or fu'-ē-rās,  
mǎōn'-ī-tūs ē'-rāt or fu'-ē-rāt;  
*P.* mǎōn'-ī-tī ē-rā'-mūs or fu-e-rā'-mūs,  
mǎōn'-ī-tī ē-rā'-tīs or fu-e-rā'-tīs,  
mǎōn'-ī-tī ē'-rant or fu'-ē-rant.

## Future Perfect.

*I shall have advised.*

- S.* mǎō-nu'-ē-rǎō,  
mǎō-nu'-ē-rīs,  
mǎō-nu'-ē-rīt;  
*P.* mǎōn-u-ēr'-ī-mūs,  
mǎōn-u-ēr'-ī-tīs,  
mǎō-nu'-ē-rint.

*I shall have been advised.*

- S.* mǎōn'-ī-tūs ē'-rǎō or fu'-ē-rǎō,  
mǎōn'-ī-tūs ē'-rīs or fu'-ē-rīs,  
mǎōn'-ī-tūs ē'-rīt or fu'-ē-rīt;  
*P.* mǎōn'-ī-tī ēr'-ī-mūs or fu-ēr'-ī-mūs,  
mǎōn'-ī-tī ēr'-ī-tīs or fu-ēr'-ī-tīs,  
mǎōn'-ī-tī ē'-runt or fu'-ē-rint.

## SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

## Present.

*I may or can advise.*

- S.* mǎō'-ne-am,  
mǎō'-ne-ās,  
mǎō'-ne-āt;  
*P.* mǎō-ne-ā'-mūs,  
mǎō-ne-ā'-tīs,  
mǎō'-ne-ant.

*I may or can be advised.*

- S.* mǎō'-ne-ār,  
mǎō-ne-ā'-rīs or -rē,  
mǎō-ne-ā'-tūr;  
*P.* mǎō-ne-ā'-mūr,  
mǎō-ne-ām'-ī-nī,  
mǎō-ne-an'-tūr.

## ACTIVE.

## PASSIVE

## Imperfect.

*I might, could, would, or should advise.*

S. mǒ-nē'-rem,  
mǒ-nē'-rēs,  
mǒ-nē'-rēt;  
P. mǒn-ē-rē'-mūs,  
mǒn-ē-rē'-tis,  
mǒ-n-ē'-rent.

*I might, could, would, or should be advised.*

S. mǒ-nē'-rēr,  
mǒn-ē-rē'-rīs or -rē,  
mǒn-ē-rē'-tūr;  
P. mǒn-ē-rē'-mūr,  
mǒn-ē-rēm'-ī-nī,  
mǒn-ē-ren'-tūr.

## Perfect.

*I may have advised.*

S. mǒ-nu'-è-rim,  
mǒ-nu'-è-rīs,  
mǒ-nu'-è-rīt;  
P. mǒn-u-ēr'-ī-mūs,  
mǒn-u-ēr'-ī-tīs,  
mǒ-nu'-è-rint.

*I may have been advised.*

S. mǒn'-ī-tūs sim or fu'-è-rim,  
mǒn'-ī-tūs sis or fu'-è-rīs,  
mǒn'-ī-tūs sit or fu'-è-rīt;  
P. mǒn'-ī-tī sī'-mūs or fu-ēr'-ī-mūs,  
mǒn'-ī-tī sī'-tīs or fu-ēr'-ī-tīs,  
mǒn'-ī-tī sint or fu'-è-rint.

## Pluperfect.

*I might, could, would, or should have advised.*

S. mǒn-u-is'-sem,  
mǒn-u-is'-sēs,  
mǒn-u-is'-sēt;  
P. mǒn-u-is-sē'-mūs,  
mǒn-u-is-sē'-tīs,  
mǒn-u-is'-sent.

*I might, could, would, or should have been advised.*

S. mǒn'-ī-tūs es'-sem or fu-is'-sem,  
mǒn'-ī-tūs es'-sēs or fu-is'-sēs,  
mǒn'-ī-tūs es'-sēt or fu-is'-sēt;  
P. mǒn'-ī-tī es-sē'-mūs or fu-is-sē'-mūs,  
mǒn'-ī-tī es-sē'-tīs or fu-is-sē'-tīs,  
mǒn'-ī-tī es'-sent or fu-is'-sent.

## IMPERATIVE MOOD.

Pres. S. mǒ-nē, advise thou;

P. mǒ-nē'-tē, advise ye.

Fut. S. mǒ-nē'-tō, thou shalt advise,

mǒ-nē'-tō, he shall advise;

P. mǒn-ē-tō'-tē, ye shall advise,

mǒ-nen'-tō, they shall advise.

Pres. S. mǒ-nē'-rē, be thou advised,

P. mǒ-nēm'-ī-nī, be ye advised.

Fut. S. mǒ-nē'-tōr, thou shalt be advised,

mǒ-nē'-tōr, he shall be advised:

P. (mǒn-ē-bīm'-ī-nī, ye shall be advised.)

mǒ-nēn'-tōr, they shall be advised.

## INFINITIVE MOOD.

Pres. mǒ-nē'-rē, to advise.

Perf. mǒn-u-is'-sē, to have advised.

Fut. mǒn'-ī-tū'-rūs es'-sē, to be about to advise.

Pres. mǒ-nē'-rī, to be advised.

Perf. mǒn'-ī-tūs es'-sē or fu-is'-sē, to have been advised.

Fut. mǒn'-ī-tum ī'-rī, to be about to be advised.



## ACTIVE.

## PASSIVE.

## PARTICIPLES.

*Pres.* mǒ'-nens, *advising.**Perf.* mǒn'-ī-tūs, *advised.**Fut.* mǒn-ī-tū'-rūs, *about to advise.**Fut.* mǒ-nen'-dūs, *to be advised.*

## GERUND.

*G.* mǒ-nen'-dī, *of advising,**D.* mǒ-nen'-dō, *etc.**Ac.* mǒ-nen'-dum,*Ab.* mǒ-nen'-dō.

## SUPINES.

*Former.* mǒn'-ī-tum, *to advise.* | *Latter.* mǒn'-ī-tū, *to be advised.*

## FORMATION OF THE TENSES.

From the first root, *mon*, are derived,

	Active.	Passive.
<i>Ind. pres.</i>	moneo,	moneor.
— <i>imperf.</i>	monēbam,	monēbar.
— <i>fut.</i>	monēbo,	monēbor.
<i>Subj. pres.</i>	moneam,	monear.
— <i>imperf.</i>	monērem,	monērer.
<i>Imperat. pres.</i>	mone,	monēre.
— <i>fut.</i>	monēto,	monētor.
<i>Inf. pres.</i>	monēre,	monēri.
<i>Part. pres.</i>	monens,	
— <i>fut.</i>		monendus.
<i>Gerund.</i>	monendi.	

From the second root, *monu*, are derived,

	Active.	Passive.
<i>Ind. perf.</i>	monui,	monitus sum, etc.
— <i>plup.</i>	monuēram,	monitus eram, etc.
— <i>fut. perf.</i>	monuēro,	monitus ero, etc.
<i>Subj. perf.</i>	monuērim,	monitus sim, etc.
— <i>plup.</i>	monuīsem,	monitus essem, etc.
<i>Inf. perf.</i>	monuisse,	monitus esse, etc.

From the third root, *monit*, are derived,

	Active.	Passive.
<i>Ind. perf.</i>	monui,	monitus sum, etc.
— <i>plup.</i>	monuēram,	monitus eram, etc.
— <i>fut. perf.</i>	monuēro,	monitus ero, etc.
<i>Subj. perf.</i>	monuērim,	monitus sim, etc.
— <i>plup.</i>	monuīsem,	monitus essem, etc.
<i>Inf. perf.</i>	monuisse,	monitus esse, etc.
From the third root,		
<i>Inf. fut.</i>	monitūrus esse,	monitum iri.
<i>Part. fut.</i>	monitūrus,	
— <i>perf.</i>		monitus.
<i>Form. Sup.</i>	monitum.	<i>Lat. Sup.</i> monitu.

## § 158. THIRD CONJUGATION.

## PRINCIPAL PARTS.

*Pres. Ind.* rě'-gǒ.  
*Pres. Inf.* rěg'-ě-rě.  
*Perf. Ind.* rex'-ī.  
*Supine.* rec'-tum.

*Pres. Ind.* rě'-gǒr.  
*Pres. Inf.* rě'-gī.  
*Perf. Part.* rec'-tūs.

## INDICATIVE MOOD.

## Present.

*I rule.*  
*Sing.* rě'-gǒ,  
           rě'-gīs,  
           rě'-gīt;  
*Plur.* rěg'-ī-mūs,  
           rěg'-ī-tīs,  
           rě-gunt.

*I am ruled.*  
*Sing.* rě'-gor,  
           rěg'-ě-rīs or -rě,  
           rěg'-ī-tūr;  
*Plur.* rěg'-ī-mūr,  
           rě-gīm'-ī-nī,  
           rě-gun'-tūr.

## ACTIVE.

## PASSIVE.

## Imperfect.

*I was ruling*

- S. rě-gě'-bam,  
rě-gě'-bās,  
rě-gě'-bāt;  
P. rěg-ē-bā'-mūs,  
rěg-ē-bā'-tis,  
rě-gě'-bant.

*I was ruled.*

- S. rě-gě'-bār,  
rěg-ē-bā'-rīs or -rě,  
rěg-ē-bā'-tūr;  
P. rěg-ē-bā'-mūr,  
rěg-ē-bām'-ī-nī,  
rěg-ē-ban'-tūr.

## Future.

*I shall or will rule.*

- S. rě'-gam,  
rě'-gēs,  
rě'-gēt;  
P. rě-gě'-mūs,  
rě-gě'-tis,  
rě'-gent.

*I shall or will be ruled.*

- S. rě'-gār,  
rě-gě'-rīs or -rě,  
rě-gě'-tūr;  
P. rě-gě'-mūr,  
rě-gēm'-ī-nī,  
rě-gen'-tūr.

## Perfect.

*I ruled or have ruled.*

- S. rex'-ī,  
rex-is'-tī,  
rex'-īt;  
P. rex'-ī-mūs,  
rex-is'-tis,  
rex-ē'-runt or -rě.

*I was or have been ruled.*

- S. rec'-tūs sum or fu'-ī,  
rec'-tūs ēs or fu-is'-tī,  
rec'-tūs est or fu'-īt;  
P. rec'-tī sū'-mūs or fu'-ī-mūs,  
rec'-tī es'-tis or fu-is'-tis,  
rec'-tī sunt, fu-ē'-runt or -re

## Pluperfect.

*I had ruled.*

- S. rex'-ē-ram,  
rex'-ē-rās,  
rex'-ē-rāt;  
P. rex-ē-rā'-mūs  
rex-ē-rā'-tis,  
rex'-ē-rant.

*I had been ruled.*

- S. rec'-tūs ē'-ram or fu'-ē-ram,  
rec'-tūs ē'-rās or fu'-ē-rās,  
rec'-tūs ē'-rāt or fu'-ē-rāt;  
P. rec'-tī ē'-rā'-mūs or fu-ē-rā'-mūs,  
rec'-tī ē'-rā'-tis or fu-ē-rā'-tis,  
rec'-tī ē'-rant or fu'-ē-rant.

## Future Perfect.

*I shall have ruled*

- S. rex'-ē-rō,  
rex'-ē-rīs,  
rex'-ē-rīt;  
P. rex-ēr'-ī-mūs,  
rex-ēr'-ī-tis,  
rex'-ē-rint.

*I shall have been ruled.*

- S. rec'-tūs ē'-rō or fu'-ē-rō,  
rec'-tūs ē'-rīs or fu'-ē-rīs,  
rec'-tūs ē'-rīt or fu'-ē-rīt;  
P. rec'-tī ēr'-ī-mūs or fu-ēr'-ī-mūs,  
rec'-tī ēr'-ī-tis or fu-ēr'-ī-tis,  
rec'-tī ē'-runt or fu'-ē-rint.

## ACTIVE.

## PASSIVE.

## SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

## Present.

*I may or can rule.*

S. rě'-gam,  
rě'-gās,  
rě'-gāt;  
P. rě-gā'-mūs,  
rě-gā'-tis,  
rě'-gant.

*I may or can be ruled.*

S. rě'-gār,  
rě-gā'-rīs or -rě,  
rě-gā'-tūr;  
P. rě-gā'-mūr,  
rě-gām'-ī-nī,  
rě-gan'-tūr.

## Imperfect.

*I might, could, would, or should rule.*

S. rěg'-ě-rem,  
rěg'-ě-rēs,  
rěg'-ě-rēt;  
P. rěg-ě-rě'-mūs,  
rěg-ě-rě'-tis,  
rěg'-ě-rent.

*I might, could, would, or should be ruled.*

S. rěg'-ě-rēr,  
rěg-ě-rě'-rīs or -rě,  
rěg-ě-rě'-tūr;  
P. rěg-ě-rě'-mūr,  
rěg-ě-rēm'-ī-nī,  
rěg-ě-ren'-tūr.

## Perfect.

*I may have ruled.*

S. rex'-ě-rim,  
rex'-ě-rīs,  
rex'-ě-rit;  
P. rex-ēr'-ī-mūs,  
rex-ēr'-ī-tīs,  
rex'-ě-rint.

*I may have been ruled.*

S. rec'-tūs sim or fu'-ě-rim,  
rec'-tūs sis or fu'-ě-rīs,  
rec'-tūs sit or fu'-ě-rit;  
P. rec'-tī sī'-mūs or fu-ēr'-ī-mūs,  
rec'-tī sī'-tīs or fu-ēr'-ī-tīs,  
rec'-tī sint or fu'-ě-rint.

## Pluperfect.

*I might, could, would, or should have ruled.*

S. rex-is'-sem,  
rex-is'-sēs,  
rex-is'-sēt;  
P. rex-is-sē'-mūs,  
rex-is-sē'-tis,  
rex-is'-sent.

*I might, could, would, or should have been ruled.*

S. rec'-tūs es'-sem or fu-is'-sem,  
rec'-tūs es'-sēs or fu-is'-sēs,  
rec'-tūs es'-sēt or fu-is'-sēt;  
P. rec'-tī es-sē'-mūs or fu-is-sē'-mūs,  
rec'-tī es-sē'-tis or fu-is-sē'-tis,  
rec'-tī es'-sent or fu-is-sent.

## IMPERATIVE MOOD.

*Pres. S. rě'-gě, rule thou;**P. rěg'-i-tě, rule ye.**Fut. S. rěg'-i-tō, thou shalt rule,**rěg'-i-tō, he shall rule;**P. rěg-i-tō'-tě, ye shall rule,**rě-gun' tō, they shall rule.**Pres. S. rěg'-ě-rě, be thou ruled;**P. rě-gim'-ī-nī, be ye ruled.**Fut. S. rěg'-i-tōr, thou shalt be ruled,**rěg'-i-tōr, he shall be ruled,**P. (rě-gim'-ī-nī, ye shall, etc.)**rě-gun' tōr, they shall, etc.*

## ACTIVE.

## PASSIVE.

## INFINITIVE MOOD.

*Pres. rĕg'-ĕ-rĕ, to rule.**Perf. rex-is'-sĕ, to have ruled.**Fut. rec-tū'-rūs es'-se, to be about to rule.**Pres. rĕ'-gī, to be ruled.**Perf. rec'-tūs es'-sĕ or fu-is'-sĕ, to have been ruled.**Fut. rec'-tum ī'-rī, to be about to be ruled.*

## PARTICIPLES.

*Pres. rĕ'-gens, ruling.**Fut. rec-tū'-rūs, about to rule.**Perf. rec'-tūs, ruled.**Fut. rĕ-gen'-dūs, to be ruled.*

## GERUND.

*G. rĕ-gen'-dī, of ruling.**D. rĕ-gen'-dō, etc.**Ac. rĕ-gen'-dum,**Ab. rĕ-gen'-dō.*

## SUPINES.

*Former. rec'-tum, to rule.**Latter. rec'-tū, to be ruled.*

## FORMATION OF THE TENSES.

From the first root, *reg*, are derived,

	Active.	Passive.
<i>Ind. pres.</i>	<i>rego,</i>	<i>regor.</i>
<i>— imperf.</i>	<i>regēbam,</i>	<i>regēbar.</i>
<i>— fut.</i>	<i>regam,</i>	<i>regar.</i>
<i>Subj. pres.</i>	<i>regam,</i>	<i>regar.</i>
<i>— imperf.</i>	<i>regērem,</i>	<i>regērer.</i>
<i>Imperat. pres.</i>	<i>rege,</i>	<i>regere.</i>
<i>— fut.</i>	<i>regito,</i>	<i>regitor</i>
<i>Inf. pres.</i>	<i>regere,</i>	<i>regi.</i>
<i>Part. pres.</i>	<i>regens,</i>	
<i>— fut.</i>		<i>regendus.</i>
<i>Gerund.</i>	<i>regendi.</i>	

From the second root, *rex*, are derived,

	Active.	Passive.
<i>Ind. perf.</i>	<i>rexī,</i>	<i>rectus sum, etc.</i>
<i>— plup.</i>	<i>rexeram,</i>	<i>rectus eram, etc.</i>
<i>— fut. perf.</i>	<i>rexero,</i>	<i>rectus ero, etc.</i>
<i>Subj. perf.</i>	<i>rexerim,</i>	<i>rectus sim, etc.</i>
<i>— plup.</i>	<i>rexissem,</i>	<i>rectus essem, etc.</i>
<i>Inf. perf.</i>	<i>rexisse.</i>	<i>rectus esse, etc.</i>

From the third root,

*Inf. fut. rectūrus esse, rectum iri.**Part. fut. rectūrus.**— perf.**Form. Sup. rectum.**rectus.**Lat. Sup. rectū.*§ 159. VERBS IN *IO* OF THE THIRD CONJUGATION.

Verbs in *io* of the third conjugation, in tenses formed from the first root, have, as connecting vowels, *ia*, *ie*, *io*, or *iu*, wherever the same occur in the fourth conjugation; but where they have only a single connecting vowel, it is the same which characterizes other verbs of the third conjugation. They are all conjugated like *cāpio*.



## ACTIVE.

## PASSIVE.

## PRINCIPAL PARTS.

*Pres. Ind.* că'-pi-ō, *to take.**Pres. Inf.* căp'-ē-rē.*Perf. Ind.* cē'-pī.*Supine.* cap'-tum.*Pres. Ind.* că'-pi-ör, *to be taken.**Pres. Inf.* că'-pī.*Perf. Part.* cap'-tūs.

## INDICATIVE MOOD.

## Present.

*S.* că'-pi-ō,

că'-pīs,

că'-pit;

*P.* căp'-i-mūs,

căp'-i-tīs,

că'-pi-unt.

*S.* că'-pi-ör,căp'-ē-rīs *or* -rē,

căp'-i-tūr;

*P.* căp'-i-mūr,

că-pīm'-i-nī,

că'-pi-un'-tūr.

## Imperfect.

*S.* că-pi-ē-bam,că-pi-ē-bās,că-pi-ē-bāt;*P.* că-pi-ē-bā'-mūs,că-pi-ē-bā'-tīs,că-pi-ē-bant.*S.* că-pi-ē-bār,că-pi-ē-bā'-rīs *or* -rē,că-pi-ē-bā'-tūr;*P.* că-pi-ē-bā'-mūr,că-pi-ē-bām'-i-nī,că-pi-ē-ban'-tūr.

## Future.

*S.* că'-pi-am,

că'-pi-ēs,

că'-pi-ēt;

*P.* că-pi-ē-mūs,că-pi-ē-tīs,

că'-pi-ent.

*S.* că'-pi-ār,că-pi-ē-rīs *or* -rē,că-pi-ē-tūr;*P.* că-pi-ē-mūr,

că-pi-ēm'-i-nī,

că-pi-en'-tūr.

The parts formed from the second and third roots being entirely regular, only a synopsis of them is given.

*Perf.* cē'-pī.*Plup.* cēp'-ē-ram.*Fut. perf.* cēp'-ē-rō.*Perf.* cap'-tūs sum *or* fu'-ī.*Plup.* cap'-tūs ē-ram *or* fu'-ē-ram.*Fut. perf.* cap'-tūs ē-rō *or* fu'-ē-rō.

## SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

## Present.

*S.* că'-pi-am,

că'-pi-ās,

că'-pi-āt;

*P.* că-pi-ā-mūs,că-pi-ā-tīs,

că'-pi-ant.

*S.* că'-pi-ār,că-pi-ā-rīs *or* -re,că-pi-ā-tūr;*P.* că-pi-ā-mūr,

că-pi-ām'-i-nī,

că-pi-an'-tūr.

## ACTIVE.

## PASSIVE.

## Imperfect.

*S.* cǎp'-ě-rem,  
cǎp'-ě-rēs,  
cǎp'-ě-rēt;  
*P.* cǎp-ě-rē'-mūs,  
cǎp-ě-rē'-tis,  
cǎp'-ě-rent.

*S.* cǎp'-ě-rēr,  
cǎp-ě-rē'-rīs or -rě,  
cǎp-ě-rē'-tūr;  
*P.* cǎp-ě-rē'-mūr,  
cǎp-ě-rēm'-i-nī,  
cǎp-ě-ren'-tūr.

*Perf.* cēp'-ě-rim.  
*Plup.* cē-pis'-sem.

*Perf.* cap'-tūs sim or fu'-ě-rim.  
*Plup.* cap'-tūs es'-sem or fu-is'-sem.

## IMPERATIVE MOOD.

*Pres. 2. S.* cǎ'-pě; *P. 2.* cǎp'-ī-tě. | *S.* cǎp'-ě-rě; *P.* cǎ-pīm'-ī-nī.  
*Fut. 2.* cǎp'-ī-tō, cǎp'-ī-tō'-tě, | cǎp'-ī-tōr, (cǎ-pī-ēm'-ī-nī,) *3.* cǎp'-ī-tō;  
cǎ-pi-un'-tō. | cǎp'-ī-tōr; cǎ-pi-un'-tōr.

## INFINITIVE MOOD.

*Pres.* cǎp'-ě-rě.  
*Perf.* cē-pis'-sě.  
*Fut.* cap-tū'-rūs es'-sě.

*Pres.* cǎ'-pī.  
*Perf.* cap'-tūs es'-sě or fu-is' sě  
*Fut.* cap'-tum ī-rī.

## PARTICIPLES.

*Pres.* cǎ'-pi-ens.  
*Fut.* cap-tū'-rūs.

*Perf.* cap'-tūs.  
*Fut.* cǎ-pi-en'-dūs.

## GERUND.

*G.* cǎ-pi-en'-dī, etc.

## SUPINES.

*Former.* cap'-tum.

*Latter.* cap'-tū.

## § 160. FOURTH CONJUGATION.

## PRINCIPAL PARTS.

*Pres. Ind.* au'-dī-ō.  
*Pres. Inf.* au-dī'-rě.  
*Perf. Ind.* au-dī'-vī.  
*Supine.* au-dī'-tum.

*Pres. Ind.* au'-dī-ōr.  
*Pres. Inf.* au-dī'-rī.  
*Perf. Part.* au-dī'-tūs.

## ACTIVE.

## PASSIVE.

## INDICATIVE MOOD.

## Present.

*I hear.*

- S.* au'-di-ō,  
au'-dis,  
au'dit ;  
*P.* au-di'-mūs,  
au'-di'-tis,  
au'-di-unt.

*I am heard.*

- S.* au'-di-ōr,  
au-di'-rīs or -rē,  
au-di'-tūr ;  
*P.* au-di'-mūr,  
au-dim'-i-nī,  
au-di-un'-tūr.

## Imperfect.

*I was hearing.*

- S.* au-di-ē'-bam,  
au-di-ē'-bās,  
au-di-ē'-bāt ;  
*P.* au-di-ē-bā'-mūs,  
au-di-ē-bā'-tis,  
au-di-ē-bant.

*I was heard.*

- S.* au-di-ē'-bār,  
au-di-ē-bā'-rīs or -rē,  
au-di-ē-bā'-tūr ;  
*P.* au-di-ē-bā'-mūr,  
au-di-ē-bam'-i-nī,  
au-di-ē-ban'-tūr.

## Future.

*I shall or will hear.*

- S.* au'-di-am,  
au'-di-ēs,  
au'-di-ēt ;  
*P.* au-di-ē'-mūs,  
au-di-ē'-tis,  
au'-di-ent.

*I shall or will be heard.*

- S.* au'-di-ār,  
au-di-ē'-rīs or -rē,  
au-di-ē'-tūr ;  
*P.* au-di-ē'-mūr,  
au-di-ēm'-i-nī,  
au-di-en'-tūr.

## Perfect.

*I heard or have heard.*

- S.* au-di'-vī,  
au-di-vis'-tī,  
au-di'-vit ;  
*P.* au-div'-i-mūs,  
au-di-vis'-tis,  
au-di-vē'-runt or -rē.

*I have been or was heard.*

- S.* au-di'-tūs sum or fu'-ī,  
au-di'-tūs ēs or fu-is'-tī,  
au-di'-tūs est or fu'-it ;  
*P.* au-di'-tī sū'-mūs or fu'-i-mūs,  
au-di'-tī es'-tis or fu-is'-tis,  
au-di'-tī sunt, fu-ē'-runt or -rē.

## Pluperfect.

*I had heard.*

- S.* au-div'-ē-ram,  
au-div'-ē-rās,  
au-div'-ē-rāt ;  
*P.* au-div-ē-rā'-mūs,  
au-div-ē-rā'-tis,  
au-div'-ē-rant.

*I had been heard.*

- S.* au-di'-tūs ē'-ram or fu'-ē-ram,  
au-di'-tūs ē'-rās or fu'-ē-rās,  
au-di'-tūs ē'-rāt or fu'-ē-rāt ;  
*P.* au-di'-tī ē-rā'-mūs or fu-ē-rā'-mūs,  
au-di'-tī ē-rā'-tis or fu-ē-rā'-tis,  
au-di'-tī ē'-rant or fu'-ē-rant.

## ACTIVE.

## PASSIVE

## Future Perfect.

*I shall have heard.*

- S. au-div'-ě-rō,  
au-div'-ě-rīs,  
au-div'-ě-rit;  
P. au-di-věr'-ī-mūs,  
au-di-věr'-ī-tīs,  
au-div'-ě-rint.

*I shall have been heard.*

- S. au-dī'-tūs ě'-rō or fu'-ě-rō,  
au-dī'-tūs ě'-rīs or fu'-ě-rīs,  
au-dī'-tūs ě'-rit or fu'-ě-rit;  
P. au-dī'-tī ěr'-ī-mūs or fu-ěr'-ī-mūs,  
au-dī'-tī ěr'-ī-tīs or fu-ěr'-ī-tīs,  
au-dī'-tī ě'-runt or fu'-ě-rint.

## SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

## Present.

*I may or can hear.*

- S. au'-di-am,  
au'-di-ās,  
au'-di-āt;  
P. au-di-ā'-mūs,  
au-di-ā'-tīs,  
au'-di-ant.

*I may or can be heard.*

- S. au'-di-ār,  
au-di-ā'-rīs or -rě,  
au-di-ā'-tūr;  
P. au-di-ā'-mūr,  
au-di-ām'-ī-nī,  
au-di-an'-tūr.

## Imperfect.

*I might, could, would, or should hear.*

- S. au-di'-rem,  
au-di'-rēs,  
au-di'-rēt;  
P. au-di-rē'-mūs,  
au-di-rē'-tīs,  
au-di'-rent.

*I might, could, would, or should be heard.*

- S. au-dī'-rēr,  
au-di-rē'-rīs or -rě,  
au-di-rē'-tūr;  
P. au-di-rē'-mūr,  
au-di-rēm'-ī-nī,  
au-di-ren'-tūr.

## Perfect.

*I may have heard.*

- S. au-div'-ě-rim,  
au-div'-ě-rīs,  
au-div'-ě-rit;  
P. au-di-věr'-ī-mūs,  
au-di-věr'-ī-tīs,  
au-div'-ě-rint.

*I may have been heard.*

- S. au-dī'-tūs sim or fu'-ě-rim,  
au-dī'-tūs sis or fu'-ě-rīs,  
au-dī'-tūs sit or fu'-ě-rit;  
P. au-dī'-tī sī'-mūs or fu-ěr'-ī-mūs,  
au-dī'-tī sī'-tīs or fu-ěr'-ī-tīs,  
au-dī'-tī sint or fu'-ě-rint.

## Pluperfect.

*I might, could, would, or should have heard.*

- S. au-di-vis'-sem,  
au-di-vis'-sēs,  
au-di-vis'-sēt;  
P. au-di-vis-sē'-mūs,  
au-di-vis-sē'-tīs,  
au-di-vis'-sent.

*I might, could, would, or should have been heard.*

- S. au-dī'-tūs es'-sem or fu-is'-sem,  
au-dī'-tūs es'-sēs or fu-is'-sēs,  
au-dī'-tūs es'-sēt or fu-is'-sēt;  
P. au-dī'-tī es-sē'-mūs or fu-is-sē'-mūs,  
au-dī'-tī es-sē'-tīs or fu-is-sē'-tīs,  
au-dī'-tī es'-sent or fu-is'-sent



## ACTIVE.

## PASSIVE.

## IMPERATIVE MOOD.

*Pres. S.* au'-dī, *hear thou;*  
*P.* au-dī'-tē, *hear ye.*  
*Fut. S.* au-dī'-tō, *thou shalt hear,*  
 au-dī'-tō, *he shall hear;*  
*P.* au-dī-tō'-tē, *ye shall hear,*  
 au-di-un'-tō, *they shall*  
*hear.*

*Pres. S.* au-dī'-rē, *thou heard,*  
*P.* au-dim'-i-nī, *be ye heard.*  
*Fut. S.* au-dī'-tōr, *thou shalt be*  
*heard,*  
 au-dī'-tōr, *he shall be*  
*heard;*  
*P.* (au-di-ēm'-i-nī, *ye shall*  
*be heard,*)  
 au-di-un'-tōr, *they shall*  
*be heard.*

## INFINITIVE MOOD.

*Pres.* au-dī'-rē, *to hear.*  
*Perf.* au-dī-vis'-sē, *to have heard.*  
*Fut.* au-dī-tū'-rūs es-sē, *to be*  
*about to hear.*

*Pres.* au-dī'-rī, *to be heard.*  
*Perf.* au-dī-tūs es'-sē or fu-is'-  
 sē, *to have been heard.*  
*Fut.* au-dī'-tum ī'-rī, *to be about*  
*to be heard.*

## PARTICIPLES.

*Pres.* au'-di-ēns, *hearing.* | *Perf.* au-dī'-tūs, *heard.*  
*Fut.* au-dī-tū'-rūs, *about to hear.* | *Fut.* au-di-en'-dūs, *to be heard.*

## GERUND.

*G.* au-di-en'-dī, *of hearing.*  
*D.* au-di-en'-dō, *etc.*  
*Ac.* au-di-en'-dum,  
*Ab.* au-di-en'-dō.

## SUPINES.

*Former.* au-dī'-tum, *to hear.* | *Latter.* au-dī'-tū, *to be heard.*

## FORMATION OF THE TENSES.

From the first root, *aud*, are de-  
 rived

	Active.	Passive.
<i>Ind. pres.</i>	audio,	audior.
— <i>impe-f.</i>	audiēbam,	audiēbar.
— <i>fut.</i>	audiam,	audiar.
<i>Subj. pres.</i>	audiam,	audiar.
— <i>imperf.</i>	audirem,	audirer.
<i>Imperat. pres.</i>	audi,	audire.
— <i>fut.</i>	audito,	auditor.
<i>Inf. pres.</i>	audire,	audiri.
<i>Part. pres.</i>	audiens,	
— <i>fut.</i>		audiendus.
<i>Gerund.</i>	audiendi.	

From the second root, *audiv*, are derived,

	Active.	Passive.
<i>Ind. perf.</i>	audivi,	auditus sum, etc.
— <i>plup.</i>	audiveram,	auditus eram, etc.
— <i>fut. perf.</i>	audivero,	auditus ero, etc.
<i>Subj. perf.</i>	audiverim,	auditus sim, etc.
— <i>plup.</i>	audivissem,	auditus essem, etc.
<i>Inf. perf.</i>	audivisse,	auditus esse, etc.

From the third root,  
*Inf. fut.* auditurus esse, auditum iri.

*Part. fut.* auditurus.

— *perf.*

auditus.

*Form. sup* auditum

*Lat. sup.* auditu

## DEPONENT VERBS.

§ 161. Deponent verbs are conjugated like the passive voice, and have also all the participles and participial formations of the active voice. Neuter deponent verbs, however, want the future passive participle, except that the neuter in *dum* is sometimes used impersonally. See § 184, 3.

The following is an example of an active deponent verb of the first conjugation :—

## PRINCIPAL PARTS.

Mī'-rōr, mī-rā'-rī, mī-rā'-tūs, *to admire.*

## INDICATIVE MOOD.

<i>Pres.</i>	mī'-rōr, mī-rā'-rīs, etc.	<i>I admire, etc.</i>
<i>Imperf.</i>	mī-rā'-bār, etc.	<i>I was admiring.</i>
<i>Fut.</i>	mī-rā'-bōr,	<i>I shall admire.</i>
<i>Perf.</i>	mī-rā'-tūs sum or fu'-ī,	<i>I have admired.</i>
<i>Plup.</i>	mī-rā'-tūs ē'-ram or fu'-ē-ram,	<i>I had admired.</i>
<i>Fut. Perf.</i>	mī-rā'-tūs ē'-ro or fu'-ē-ro,	<i>I shall have admired.</i>

## SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

<i>Pres.</i>	mī'-rēr, mī-rē-rīs, etc.	<i>I may admire, etc.</i>
<i>Imperf.</i>	mī-rā'-rēr,	<i>I would admire.</i>
<i>Perf.</i>	mī-rā'-tūs sim or fu'-ē-rim,	<i>I may have admired.</i>
<i>Plup.</i>	mī-rā'-tūs es'-sem or fu-is'-sem,	<i>I would have admired.</i>

## IMPERATIVE MOOD.

<i>Pres. S.</i>	mī-rā'-rē, <i>admire thou,</i>	<i>P. mī-rām'-ī-nī, admire ye.</i>
<i>Fut. S.</i>	mī-rā'-tōr, <i>thou shalt admire,</i>	<i>P. (mī-rā-bīm'-ī-nī, ye shall, etc.</i>
	mī-rā'-tōr, <i>he shall admire ;</i>	<i>mī-ran'-tōr, they shall, etc.</i>

## INFINITIVE MOOD.

<i>Pres.</i>	mī-rā'-rī,	<i>to admire.</i>
<i>Perf.</i>	mī-rā'-tūs es'-sē or fu-is'-sē,	<i>to have admired.</i>
<i>Fut. Act.</i>	mī-rā-tū'-rūs es'-sē,	<i>to be about to admire.</i>
<i>Fut. Pass.</i>	mī-rā'-tum ī-rī,	<i>to be about to be admired.</i>

## PARTICIPLES.

<i>Pres.</i>	mī'-rans,	<i>admiring.</i>
<i>Perf.</i>	mī-rā'-tūs,	<i>having admired.</i>
<i>Fut. Act.</i>	mī-rā-tū'-rūs,	<i>about to admire.</i>
<i>Fut. Pass.</i>	mī-ran'-dūs,	<i>to be admired.</i>

## GERUND.

G. mī-ran'-dī, *of admiring, etc.*

## SUPINES.

*Former* mī-rā'-tum, *to admire.* | *Latter.* mī-rā'-tū, *to be admired.*

## REMARKS ON THE CONJUGATIONS.

*Of the Tenses formed from the First Root.*

§ 162. 1. A few words in the present subjunctive of the first and third conjugations, in the earlier writers and in the poets, end in *im*, *is*, *it*, etc. *es*, *ēdim*, *ēdis*, *ēdit*, *edimus*; *comēdim*, *comēdis*, *comēdint*; for *edam*, etc. *comēdam*, etc.; *duim*, *duis*, *duit*, *duint*; and *perduim*, *perduis*, *perduit*, *perduint*; for *dem*, etc. *perdam*, etc. from old forms *duo* and *perduo*, for *do* and *perdo*: so *creduis*, *creduit*, and also *creduam*, *creduas*, *creduat*, for *credam*, etc. from the old form *creduo*, for *credo*. The form in *im*, etc. was retained as the regular form in *sim* and *velim*, from *sum* and *volo*, and in their compounds.

2. The imperfect indicative in the fourth conjugation, sometimes, especially in the more ancient writers, ends in *ībam* and *ībar*, for *iēbam* and *iēbar*, and the future in *ībo* and *ībor*, for *iam* and *iar*; as, *vestībat*, Virg., *largībar*, Propert. for *vestīrēbat*, *largīrēbar*; *scībo*, *opperībor*, for *scīam*, *opperiar*. *ībam* and *ībo* were retained as the regular forms of *eo*, *queo*, and *nequeo*. Cf. § 182.

3. The termination *re*, in the second person singular of the passive voice, is rare in the present, but common in the other simple tenses.

4. The imperatives of *dico*, *dūco*, *fācio*, and *fēro*, are usually written *dic*, *duc*, *fac*, and *fer*; in like manner their compounds, except those compounds of *fācio* which change *a* into *i*; as, *effīce*, *confīce*; but *calfāce* also is found in Cicero; and in old writers *dīce*, *edīce*, *addīce*, *indīce*, *dūce*, *abdūce*, *redūce*, *tradūce*, and *fāce*. *Inger* for *ingēre* is rare. *Scio* has not *sci*, but its place is supplied by *scīto*, and *scītōte* is preferred to *scīte*.

5. In the imperative future of the passive voice, but especially of deponents, early writers and their imitators sometimes used the active instead of the passive form; as, *arbitrāto*, *amplexāto*, *utito*, *nitito*; for *arbitrātor*, etc.; and *censento*, *utunto*, *tuento*, etc. for *censor*, etc.—In the second and third persons singular occur, also, forms in *-mīno*; as, *hortamīno*, *veremīno*, *frusimīno*; for *hortātor*, etc.

6. The syllable *er* was often added to the present infinitive passive by early writers and especially by the poets; as, *amarier* for *amārī*, *dicier* for *dīcī*.

*Of the Tenses formed from the Second Root.*

7. (a.) When the second root ends in *v*, a syncopation and contraction often occur in the tenses formed from it, by omitting *v*, and sinking the first vowel of the termination in the final vowel of the root, when followed, in the fourth conjugation, by *s*, and in the other conjugations, by *s* or *r*; as, *audissem* for *audivissem*, *amasti* for *amavisti*, *implērunt* for *implevērunt*, *nōram* and *nosse* for *novērām* and *novisse*.

(b.) When the second root ends in *iv*, *v* is often omitted without contraction; as, *audiēro* for *audivēro*; *audiisse* for *audivisse*.

(c.) When this root ends in *s* or *x*, especially in the third conjugation, the syllables *is*, *iss*, and *sis*, are sometimes omitted in the termination of tenses derived from it; as, *evasti* for *evasisti*, *extinxti* for *extinxisti*, *divisse* for *divisisse*; *extinxem* for *extinxissem*, *surrexe* for *surrexisse*; *accestis* for *accessistis*, *justi* for *jussisti*; *dixti* for *dixisti*. So *fuxem* for (*facsissem*, i. e.) *fecissem*.

(d.) In the perfect of the first, second, and fourth conjugations, a syncope sometimes occurs in the last syllable of the root and the following syllable of the termination, especially in the third person singular; as, *fūmāt*, *audīt*, *cūpīt*; for *fumāvīt*, *audivīt*, *cupivīt*. So, also, but rarely, in the first person; as, *sepēli*, *enarrāmus*; for *sepelīvī*, *enarrāvimus*.

8. In the third person plural of the perfect indicative active, the form in *erē* is less common than that in *ērunt*, especially in prose.



9. Ancient forms of a future perfect in *so*, a perfect and pluperfect subjunctive in *sim* and *sem*, and a perfect infinitive in *se* sometimes occur. They may, in general, be formed by adding these terminations to the second root of the verb; as, *recepso*, *emissim*, *ausim* from the obsolete perfect, *ausi*, from *audeo*, *confexim* and *promissem*: *divisse* and *promisse*. But when the root ends in *x*, and frequently when it ends in *s*, only *o*, *im*, *em*, and *e*, etc. are added; as, *jusso*, *dixis*; *intellexes*, *percepset*; *surrexe*, *sun.se*. *I*, at the end of the root, in the first conjugation, is changed into *s*; as, *lerasso*, *locassim*. *U*, at the end of the root, in the second conjugation, is changed into *es*; as, *habesso*, *livescit*. Sometimes the vowel of the present is retained in these forms, though changed in the other parts derived from the second root; as, *capso*, *faxo* (*facso*), *faxim* (*facsim*).

NOTE. *Faxo* expresses determination, 'I will,' or, 'I am resolved, to make, cause,' etc. The subjunctive *faxit*, etc., expresses a solemn wish; as, *dii immortales faxint*. *Ausim*, etc. express doubt or hesitation, 'I might venture,' etc. The perfect in *sim* is used also in connection with the present subjunctive; as, *quæso uti tu calamitâtes prohibeas, defendas, averruncesque*. Cato.

10. In the ancient Latin a few examples occur of a future passive of similar form; as, *turbassitur*, *jussitur*, instead of *turbâtum fuërit*, and *jussus fuërit*.—A future infinitive active in *sere* is also found, in the first conjugation, which is formed by adding that termination to the second root, changing, as before, *v* into *s*; as, *expugnassere*, *impetrassere*, for *expugnâtûrum esse*, etc.

### *Of the Tenses formed from the Third Root.*

11. The supine in *um*, though called one of the principal parts of the verb, belongs in fact to very few verbs, the whole number which have this supine not amounting to three hundred. The part called in dictionaries the supine in *um* must therefore, in most cases, be considered as the neuter gender of the perfect participle.

12. In the compound tenses of the indicative and subjunctive moods, the participle is always in the nominative case, but it is used in both numbers, and in all genders, to correspond with the number and gender of the subject of the verb; as, *amâtus*, *-a*, *-um*, *est*; *amâti*, *-æ*, *-a*, *sunt*, etc.

(1.) *Fui*, *fuëram*, *fuërim*, *fuissem*, and *fuisse*, are seldom used in the compound tenses of deponent verbs, and not so often as *sum*, etc., in those of other verbs, but when used they have generally the same sense. It is to be remarked, however, that *fui* with the perfect participle usually denotes that which has been, but which no longer exists. In the pluperfect subjunctive, *förem*, etc., for *essem*, etc., are sometimes found.

(2.) But as the perfect participle may be used in the sense of an adjective, expressing a permanent state, (see § 162, 22), if then connected with the tenses of *sum* its meaning is different from that of the participle in the same connection; *epistola scripta est*, when *scripta* is a participle, signifies, the letter has been written, but if *scripta* is an adjective, the meaning of the expression is the letter is written, and *epistola scripta fuit*, in this case, would signify, the letter has been written, or, has existed as a written one, implying that it no longer exists.

13. The participles in the perfect and future infinitive, are used only in the nominative and accusative, but in all genders and in both numbers; as, *amâtus*, *-a*, *-um*, *esse* or *fuisse*; *amâtum*, *-am*, *-um*, *esse* or *fuisse*; *amâti*, *-æ*, *-a*, *esse* or *fuisse*; *amâtos*, *-as*, *-a*, *esse* or *fuisse*; and so of the others. With the infinitive *fuisse*, *amâtus*, etc. are generally to be considered as participial adjectives.

(1.) These participles in combination with *esse* are sometimes used as indeclinable; as, *cohortes ad me missum facias*. Cic. *Ad me, mea Terentia, scribis te vicum venditurum*. Id.



*Periphrastic Conjugations.*

14. The participle in *rus*, joined to the tenses of the verb *sum*, denotes either *intention*, or *being upon the point of doing something*. This form of the verb is called the *active periphrastic conjugation*.

REMARK 1. As the performance of the act depends either on the will of the subject, on that of others, or upon circumstances, we may say, in English, in the first case, 'I intend,' and in the others, 'I am to,' or 'I am about to' (be or do any thing).

## INDICATIVE.

<i>Pres.</i>	<i>amatūrus sum,</i>	<i>I am about to love.</i>
<i>Imperf.</i>	<i>amatūrus eram,</i>	<i>I was about to love.</i>
<i>Fut.</i>	<i>amatūrus ero,</i>	<i>I shall be about to love.</i>
<i>Perf.</i>	<i>amatūrus fui,</i>	<i>I was or have been about to love.</i>
<i>Plup.</i>	<i>amatūrus fuēram,</i>	<i>I had been about to love.</i>

## SUBJUNCTIVE.

<i>Pres.</i>	<i>amatūrus sim,</i>	<i>I may be about to love.</i>
<i>Imperf.</i>	<i>amatūrus essem,</i>	<i>I would be about to love.</i>
<i>Perf.</i>	<i>amatūrus fuērim,</i>	<i>I may have been about to love.</i>
<i>Plup.</i>	<i>amatūrus fuisset,</i>	<i>I would have been about to love.</i>

## INFINITIVE.

<i>Pres.</i>	<i>amatūrus esse,</i>	<i>to be about to love.</i>
<i>Perf.</i>	<i>amatūrus fuisse,</i>	<i>to have been about to love.</i>

REM. 2. *Fuēro* is scarcely used in connection with the participle in *rus*.

REM. 3. *Amatūrus sim* and *amatūrus essem* serve also as subjunctives to the future *amābo*. The infinitive *amatūrus fuisse* answers to the English, 'I should have loved,' so that in hypothetical sentences it supplies the place of an infinitive of the pluperfect subjunctive.

REM. 4. In the passive, the fact that an act is about to be performed is expressed by a longer circumlocution; as, *in eo est*, or *futūrum est, ut epistola scribātur*, a letter is about to be written. So *in eo erat*, etc., through all the tenses.

15. The participle in *dus*, with the verb *sum*, expresses *necessity* or *propriety*; as, *amandus sum*, I must be loved, or deserve to be loved. With the various moods and tenses of *sum*, it forms a *passive periphrastic conjugation*;—thus :

## INDICATIVE.

<i>Pres.</i>	<i>amandus sum,</i>
<i>Imperf.</i>	<i>amandus ēram,</i>
<i>Fut.</i>	<i>amandus ēro,</i>
<i>Perf.</i>	<i>amandus fui,</i>
<i>Plup.</i>	<i>amandus fuēram,</i>
<i>Fut. Perf.</i>	<i>amandus fuēro.</i>

## SUBJUNCTIVE.

<i>Pres.</i>	<i>amandus sim,</i>
<i>Imperf.</i>	<i>amandus essem,</i>
<i>Perf.</i>	<i>amandus fuērim,</i>
<i>Plup.</i>	<i>amandus fuisset.</i>

## INFINITIVE.

<i>Pres.</i>	<i>amandus esse,</i>
<i>Perf.</i>	<i>amandus fuisse.</i>

REM. 5. The neuter of the participle in *dus* with *est* and the dative of a person, expresses the necessity of performing the action on the part of that person as, *mihi scribendum est* I must write, etc., and so through all the tenses.

### Participles.

16. The following perfect participles of neuter verbs, like those of active deponents, are translated by active participles:—*cænātus*, having supped; *pētus*, having drunk; *pransus*, having dined; and sometimes *jurātus*, having sworn. So also *adultus*, *coalitus*, *conspirātus*, *interitus*, *occāsus*, *obsolūtus*, and *crētus*.

For the active meaning of *ōsus* and its compounds, see § 183, 1.

17. (a.) The perfect participles of some deponent verbs have both an active and a passive sense; as, *adeptus libertātem*, having obtained liberty, or *adeptâ libertāte*, liberty having been obtained. Cf. § 142, 4, (b.)

So *abominātus*, *comitātus*, *commentātus*, *complexus*, *confessus*, *contestātus*, *detestātus*, *dignātus*, *dimensus*, *effātus*, *emensus*, *ementitus*, *emeritus*, *expertus*, *exsecrātus*, *interpretātus*, *largitus*, *machinātus*, *meditātus*, *mercātus*, *metātus*, *oblitus*, *opinātus*, *orsus*, *pactus*, *partitus*, *perfunctus*, *periclitātus*, *pollicitus*, *populātus*, *sepopulātus*, *stipulātus*, *testātus*, *ultus*, *venerātus*.

(b.) The participle in *dus*, of deponent verbs, is commonly passive.

18. The perfect participles of neuter passive verbs have the signification of the active voice; as, *garīsus*, having rejoiced. But *ausus* is used both in an active and a passive sense.

19. The genitive plural of participles in *rus* is seldom used, except that of *futūrus*. *Venturōrum* is found in Ovid, *exiturarum*, *transiturarum* and *periturōrum* in Seneca, and *moriturōrum* in Augustine.

20. In the third and fourth conjugations, the gerund and future passive participle (including deponents) sometimes end in *undum* and *undus*, instead of *endum* and *endus*, especially when *i* precedes; as, *faciundum*, *audiundum*, *scribundus*. *Potior* has usually *potiundus*.

21. Many present and perfect participles are compounded with *in*, signifying not, whose verbs do not admit of such composition; they thus become adjectives; as, *insciens*, ignorant; *imparātus*, unprepared.

22. Participles, when they do not express distinctions of time, become adjectives, and as such are compared; as, *amans*, loving; *amantior*, *amantissimus*. They sometimes also become substantives; as, *præfectus*, a commander; *arsum*, an attempt; *commissum*, an offence.

NOTE. Many words derived from substantives, with the terminations of participles, *ātus*, *itus*, and *ūtus*, are yet adjectives; as, *alātus*, winged; *turrītus*, turreted, etc. See § 128, 7.

### GENERAL RULES OF CONJUGATION.

§ 163. 1 Verbs which have *a* in the first root have it also in the third, even when it is changed in the second; as, *fācio*, *factum* *lābeo*, *habūm*.

2. The connecting vowel is often omitted in the second root, and in such cases, if *v* follows, it is changed into *u*. This happens in most verbs of the second conjugation.

REMARK. Some verbs of the first, second, and third conjugations prefix to the second root their initial consonant with the vowel which follows it, or with *ē*: as, *curro, cūcurri; fallo, fēfelli*. This prefix is called a *reduplication*.

NOTE 1. *Spondeo* and *sto* lose *s* in the second syllable, making *spōpōmī* and *stēti*. For the verbs that take a reduplication, see §§ 165, R. 2; 168, N. 2; 171, Exc. 1, (b.)

3. Verbs which want the second root commonly want the third root also.

4. Compound verbs form their second and third roots like the simple verbs of which they are compounded; as, *audio, audivi, auditum; exaudio, exaudivi, exauditum*.

NOTE 2. Some compound verbs, however, are defective, whose simples are complete, and some are complete, whose simples are defective.

Exc. 1. Compound verbs omit the reduplication; but the compounds of *do, sto, disco, posco*, and some of those of *curro*, retain it.

Exc. 2. Verbs which, in composition, change *a* into *e* in the first root, (see § 189, 1,) retain *e* in the second and third roots of the compound; as, *scando, scandi, scansum; descendo, descendi, descensum*.

Exc. 3. (a.) When *a, æ, or e*, in the first root of the simple verb, is changed in the compound into *i*, (see § 189, 2,) the same is retained in the second and third roots, in case the third root of the simple verb is a dissyllable; as, *hābeo, hābui, hābitum; prohibeo, prohibui, prohibītum*.

(b.) But if the third root is a monosyllable, the second root of the compound has usually the same vowel as that of the simple, but sometimes changes *a* or *e* into *i*, and the third root has *e*; as, *fācio, fēcī, factum; confīcio, confēcī, confectum; tēneo, tēnui, tentum; retīneo, retīnui, retentum; rāpio, rāpui, raptum; abripio, abripiui, abreptum*.

NOTE 3. The compounds of *cādo, āgo, frango, pango*, and *tango*, retain *a* in the third root. See § 172.

Exc. 4. The compounds of *pārio, (ēre)*, and some of the compounds of *do* and *cūbo*, are of different conjugations from their simple verbs. See *do, cūbo* and *pārio* in §§ 165 and 172.

A few other exceptions will be noticed in the following lists.

## FORMATION OF SECOND AND THIRD ROOTS.

### FIRST CONJUGATION.

§ 164. In regular verbs of this conjugation, the second root ends in *āv*, and the third in *āt*; as, *amo, amāvi, amātum*.

The following list contains such regular verbs of this conjugation as are of most frequent occurrence.



**NOTE.** In this and subsequent lists, those verbs which are marked \* are said to have no perfect participle; those marked † to have no present participle. A dash(—) after the present, denotes that there is no second root. The participles in *rus* and *dus*, and the supines in *um* and *u* which are in use, are indicated respectively by the letters *r.*, *d.*, *m.*, and *u.* *Abundo*, for example, has no perfect participle, no supine, no participles in *dus*; but it has a present participle, and a participle in *rus*.

In the lists of irregular verbs, those compounds only are given, whose conjugation differs from that of their simples.

When *p.* is subjoined to a deponent verb, it denotes that some of the parts which have commonly an active meaning, are used either actively and passively, or passively alone. Such verbs are by some grammarians called *common*. Cf. § 142, 4, (b.)

*Abundo, r. to overflow.	Destino, d. to design.	Indico, m. r. d. to show.
Accuso, m. r. d. to accuse.	Dico, m. r. d. to dedicate.	†Inebrio,—, to inebriate.
†Adumbro, to delineate.	Dicto, to dictate.	Initio, to initiate.
Ædifico, r. d. to build.	†Dolo, to hew.	Inquino, to pollute.
Æquo, r. d. to level.	Dono, r. d. to bestow.	Instauro, d. to renew.
Æstimo, r. d. to value.	Duplico, r. d. to double.	Intro, r. d. to enter.
*Ambulo, m. d. to walk.	Duro, r. to harden.	Invito, d. to invite.
Amo, r. d. to love.	†Effigio, to portray.	Irrito, r. d. to irritate.
†Amplio, d. to enlarge.	†Enucleo, to explain.	Itero, u. d. to do again.
Appello, d. to call.	Equito, to ride.	Jacto, r. d. to throw.
Apto, d. to fit.	Erro, to wander.	Judico, r. d. to judge.
Aro, r. d. to plough.	Existimo, u. r. d. to think.	Jugo, d. to couple.
*†Ausculto, to listen.	Exploro, m. d. to search.	Jugulo, m. d. to butcher
*†Autumo, to assert.	Exsulo, m. r. to be ban-	Juro, d. to swear.
†Basio,—, d. to kiss.	ished.	Laboro, r. d. to labor.
*Bello, m. r. d. to wage	Fabrico, d. to frame.	Lacero, d. to tear.
war.	†Fatigo, r. d. to weary.	*Lacto, to suckle.
†Beo, to bless.	Festino, r. to hasten.	†Lanio, d. to tear in pieces
*Boo, to bellow.	Firmo, r. d. to strengthen.	Latro, to bark.
†Brivio, to shorten.	Flagito, m. d. to demand.	Laudo, r. d. to praise.
†Cæco, to blind.	*Flagro, r. to be on fire.—	Laxo, d. to loose.
†Cælo, to carve.	conflagro, r.—deflagro.	†Lêgo, to depute.
†Calceo, d. to shoe.	Flo, d. to blow.	Lêvo, r. d. to lighten.
*†Calcitro, to kick.	Formo, r. d. to form.	Libero, r. d. to free.
Canto, m. to sing.	Foro, d. to bore.	Libo, d. to pour out.
Capto, m. r. d. to seize.	†Fraudo, d. to defraud.	Ligo, to bind.
†Castigo, m. d. to chastise.	†Frëno, to bridle.	†Liquo, d. to melt.
Celebro, d. to celebrate.	†Frio,—, to crumble.	Lito, to appease.
Celo, d. to conceal.	Fugo, r. d. to put to flight.	Loco, r. d. to place.
Jesso, d. to cease.	†Fundo, r. to found.	Lustro, d. to survey.
Certo, r. d. to strive.	†Furio,—, to madden.	Luxurio, to be luxuriant
Clamo, to shout.	†Galeo,—, to put on a	Maeto, d. to sacrifice.
Cogito, d. to think.	helmet.	Maculo, to spot, stain.
Concilio, r. d. to conciliate.	Gesto, d. to bear.	Mando, r. d. to command
Considero, r. d. to con-	Glacio,—, to congeal.	Manduco, to chew.
sider.	Gravo, d. to weigh down.	*Mano, to flow.
Urmo, d. to burn.—con-	Gusto, d. to taste.	Maturo, d. to ripen.
cremo, r.	Habito, m. d. to dwell.	Memoro, u. d. to tell.
†Creo, r. d. to create.	*Halo,—, to breathe.	*Meo, to go.
Crucio, d. to torment.	Hiemo, m. to winter.	*Migro, u. r. d. to depart
Culpo, r. d. to blame.	*Ilio, d. to gape.	*Milito, m. r. to serve as
†Cuneo, d. u wedge in.	†Humo, r. d. to bury.	a soldier
Curo, r. d. to care for.	Ignoro, r. d. to be igno-	†Minio, d. to paint red.
Damno, m. r. d. to con-	rant of.	Ministro, d. to serve.
demn.	Impero, r. d. to command.	Mitigo, d. to pacify.
Decoro, d. to adorn.	†Impetro, r. d. to obtain.	Monstro, r. to show.—
*†Delineo, to delineate.	Inchoo, r. to begin.	†demonstro, d.
Desidero, r. d. to desire.	Indago, r. d. to trace out.	Muto, r. d. to change.



Narro, r. d. to tell.	Pñto, d. to reckon.	Sũdo, to sweat.
Nato, m. r. to swim.	Quasso, d. to shake.	Suffoco, to strangle.
*Naúneo, to be sea-sick	Radio, to emit rays.	Sugillo, d. to taunt.
†Navigo, r. d. to sail.	Rapto, d. to drag away.	Supero, r. d. to overcome
Nave, r. d. to perform.	Recupero, m. r. d. to recover.	Suppedito, to afford.
Nego, m. r. d. to deny.	Recuso, r. d. to refuse.	*Supplico, m. to supplicate.
*No, to swim.	Redundo, to overflow.	*Susurro, to whisper.
Nomino, r. d. to name.	Regno, r. d. to rule.	Tardo, to delay.
Noto, d. to mark.	†Repudio, r. d. to reject.	Taxo, d. to rate.
Novo, r. d. to renew.	Resero, d. to unlock.	Temero, d. to defile.
Nudo, d. to make bare.	*†Retalio, —, to retaliate.	Temporo, r. d. to temper
Nuncupo, r. d. to name.	Rigo, to water.	—obtemporo, r. to obey.
Nuntio, m. r. to tell.—	Rogo, m. r. d. to ask.	Tento, m. r. d. to try.
renuntio, d.	Roto, to whirl around.	Terebro, to bore.
*Nullo, r. to nod.	Sacrifico, m. to sacrifice.	Termino, r. d. to limit.
Obsecro, m. r. d. to beseech.	Sacro, d. to consecrate.	Titubo, to stagger.
Obtrunco, r. to kill.	†Sagino, d. to fatten.	Tolero, u. r. d. to bear.
Onero, r. d. to load.	Salto, r. to dance.	Tracto, u. d. to handle.
Opto, d. to wish.	Saluto, m. r. d. to salute.	*†Tripudio, to dance.
†Orbo, r. to bereave.	Sano, r. d. to heal.	Triumpho, r. to triumph.
Orno, r. d. to adorn.	Satio, to satiate.	Trucido, r. d. to kill.
Oro, m. r. d. to beg.	†Saturo, to fill.	Turbo, d. to disturb.
Paco, d. to subdue.	Sancio, d. to wound.	*Vaco, to be at leisure.
Paro, r. d. to prepare.	*Secundo, to prosper.	*Vapulo, m. d. to be beaten. Cf. § 142, 3.
comparo, d. to compare.	Sedo, m. d. to allay.	Vario, to diversify.
Patro, r. d. to perform.	Servo, r. d. to keep.	Vasto, d. to lay waste.
*Pecco, r. d. to sin.	*†Sibilo, to hiss.	Vellico, to pluck.
†Pio, d. to propitiate.	Sicco, d. to dry.	Verboro, r. d. to beat.
Placo, r. d. to appease.	Signo, r. d. to mark out.—	*Vestigo, to search for
Ploro, m. d. to bewail.	assigno, m.	Vexo, d. to tease.
Porto, u. r. d. to carry.	Simulo, r. d. to pretend.	Vibro, d. to brandish.
Postulo, m. r. d. to demand.	Socio, d. to associate.	Vigilo, to watch.
Privo, d. to deprive.	*Somnio, to dream.	Violo, m. r. d. to violate
Probo, m. u. r. d. to approve.—	Specto, m. r. d. to behold.	Vitio, d. to vitiate.
comprobo, m.	Spero, r. d. to hope.	Vito, u. d. to shun.
Profligo, d. to rout.	*Spiro, to breathe.—	Ululo, to howl.
Proporo, d. to hasten.	spiro. — expiro, r. —	Umbro, r. to shade.
*†Propino, to drink to.	suspiro, d.	Voco, r. d. to call.
Propitio, d. to appease.	Spolio, m. d. to rob.	*Volo, to fly.
Pugno, r. d. to fight.	Spumo, to foam.	Voro, r. to devour.
Pulso, d. to beat.	Stillo, to drop.	Vulgo, r. d. to publish.
Purgo, u. r. d. to cleanse.	Stimulo, to goad.	Vulnoro, d. to wound.
	Stipo, to stuff.	

§ 165. The following verbs of the first conjugation are either irregular or defective.

*Crepo, crepui, to make a noise.	*discrepo, -ui, or -avi. increpo, -ui or -avi, -itum or -atum.	*†Iercrepo, —.	*†recrepo, —.
Cubo, cubui, (perf. subj. cubaris, inf. cubasse), cubitum (sup.), to recline.	incubo, -ui or -avi, d. Those compounds of cubo which take in before b, are of the third conjugation.		
Do, dedi, datum, m. r. d. to give.—	So circumdo, pessumdo, satisdo, and	venumdo; the other compounds of de are of the third conjugation. See § 163, Exc. 1.	
		Domio, domui, domitum, r. d. to tame.	
		Frico, fricui, frictum or fricatum, d. to rub. confrico, —, -atum. So infrico. defrico, —, -atum or -ctum.	
		Juvo, juvi, jutum, r. d., also juvaturus, to help. adjuvo, -juvi, -jutum m. r. d. also adjuvaturus.	
		*Labo, labasse, to totter.	

Lāvo, lāvi, *rar.* lāvāvi, lavātum, lautum or lōtum; (*sup.*) lautum or lavātum, lavāturus, d. *to wash.* Lāvo is also sometimes of the third conjugation.

\*Mīco, micui, d. *to glitter.* dimīco, -āvi or -ui, -atūrus. \*emīco, -ui, -atūrus. \*intermīco, —. \*promīco, —, d.

Nēco, necāvi or necui, necātum, r. d. *to kill.* enēco, -āvi or -ui, -ātum, or -ctum, d. †internēco, —, -ātum.

\*†Nexo, —, *to tie.*

Plīco, —, plicātum, *to fold.* duplīco, -āvi, -ātum, r. d. *multiplīco and replīco have* -āvi, -ātum. \*supplīco, -āvi, m. r. applico, -āvi or -ui, -ātum or -itum, -itūrus. *So implīco.* —complīco, -ui, -itum or -ātum. explico, -āvi or -ui, -ātum or -itum, -atūrus or -itūrus.

Pōto, potāvi, potātum or pōtum, r. r. m. m. d. *to drink.* †epōto, -āvi, -um. —\*perpōto, -āvi.

Sēco, secui, sectum, secatūrus, d. *to*

*cut.*—\*circumsēco, —. \*intersēco —, d. \*persēco, -ui. præsēco, -ui, -tum or -ātum. *So resēco, d.*

\*Sōno, sonui, -atūrus, d. *to sound.* \*consōno, -ui. *So ex-, in-, per-*præsōno. \*resōno, -āvi. \*assōno —. *So circumsōno and dissōno.*

\*Sto, stēti, stātūrus, *to stand.* \*antesto, -stēti. *So circumsto, intersto, supersto.—Its compounds with monosyllabic prepositions have* stīti; as, \*consto, -stīti, -statūrus. *So ex-*sto, in-sto, ob-sto, per-sto. \*præsto, -stīti, -stātūrus, d. \*adsto or asto, -stīti, -stītūrus. \*prosto, -stīti. *So resto, restiti: but subj. perf. restāvērit, Propert, 2, 34, 53.* \*disto, —. *So substo and supersto.*

\*Tōno, tonui, *to thunder.* *So circum-*tōno. attōno, -ui, -itum. intōno, -ui, -ātum. \*retōno, —.

Vēto, vetui, *rarely* āvi, vetitum, *to forbid.*

REMARK 1. The principal irregularity, in verbs of the first and second conjugations, consists in the omission of the connecting vowel in the second root, and the change of the long vowels *ā* and *ē* in the third root into *ī*. The *v* remaining at the end of the second root, when it follows a consonant, is pronounced as *u*; as, *cubo*, (*cubāvi*, by syncope *cubvi*), i. e. *cubui*; (*cubātum*, by change of the connecting vowel,) *cubitum*. Sometimes in the first conjugation, and very frequently in the second, the connecting vowel is omitted in the third root also; as, *juvo*, (*āre*) *jūvi*, *jūtum*; *tēneo*, (*ēre*) *tēnuī*, *tentum*. In the second conjugation several verbs whose general root ends in *d* and *g*, and a few others of different terminations, form either their second or third root or both, like verbs of the third conjugation, by adding *s*; as, *rideo*, *rīsi*, *rīsum*.

REM. 2. The verbs of the first conjugation whose perfects take a reduplication are *do*, *sto*, and their compounds.

REM. 3. The following verbs in *eo* are of the first conjugation, viz. *beo*, *calceo*, *creo*, *cūneo*, *ennucleo*, *illāqueo*, *collīneo*, *delīneo*, *meo*, *nauseo*, *screo*; *eo* and its compounds are of the fourth.

§ 166. All deponent verbs, of the first conjugation, are regular, and are conjugated like *mīror*, § 161; as,

Abomīnor, d. *to abhor.*

Adūlor, d. *to flatter.*

Emūlor, d. *to rival.*

Ancillor, *to be a handmaid.*

\*Aprīcor, *to bask in the sun.*

Arbitror, r. d. *to think.*

Aspernor, d. p. *to despise.*

Aucūpor, r. p. *to hunt after.*

Auxīlor, p. *to help.*

Averser, d. *to dislike.*

Bacchor, p. *to revel.*

Calumnior, *to censure unfairly.*

Causor, *to allege.*

\*Comīssor, m. *to revel.*

Comītor, p. *to accompany.*

Conciōnor, *to harangue.*

\*Confabūlor, m. *to converse together.*

Cōnor, d. *to endeavor.*

†Conspīcor, *to see.*

Contemplor, d. p. *to view attentively.*

Crimīnor, m. p. *to complain of.*

Cunctor, d. p. *to delay.*

Deprēcōr, m. r. d. p. *to deprecate.*

\*†Diglādior, *to fence.*

Dignor, d. p. *to deem worthy.*

Domīnor, p. *to rule.*

Epūlor, r. d. *to feast.*

\*Famūlor, m. *to wait on.*

Fātur, (defect.) u. d. p. *to speak.* See § 183, 6.

†Fērīor, r. *to keep holiday.*

\*Fruimentor, m. *to forage.*

Fūrōr, m. *to steal.*

Glōrior, r. d. *to boast.*

Gratūlor, m. d. *to congratulate.*

Hariōlor, to practise sooth-saying.	Modūlor, d. p. to modulate.	*Rustīcor, to live in the country.
Hortor, d. to encourage.	Mōror, r. d. to delay.	Sciseītor, m. p. to inquire.
Imitor, u. r. d. to imitate.	†Mūtior, p. to borrow.	*Scītor, m. to ask.
Indignor, d. to disdain.	Negōtor, r. to traffic.	Scrūtōr, p. to search.
Infitior, d. to deny.	*†Nūgor, to trifle.	Sōlor, d. to comfort.
Insector, to pursue.	Obsōnor, m. to cater.	Spātor, to walk about.
Insidior, r. d. to lie in wait for.	Obtestor, p. to beseech.	Specūlor, m. r. d. to spy out.
Interprētor, p. to explain.	Opēror, to work.	†Stipūlor, p. to bargain, stipulate.
Jacūlor, p. to hurl.	Opīnor, u. r. d. to think.	†Suāvior, d. to kiss.
Jōcor, to jest.	Opitūlor, m. to help.	Suspīcor, to suspect.
Jātor, r. d. p. to rejoice.	†Otior, to be at leisure.	Testifīcor, p. to testify.
Lamentor, d. p. to bewail.	Pabūlor, m. d. to graze.	Testor, d. p. to testify. Sc
*†Lignor, m. to gather wood.	Pālor, to wander about.	detestor.
Luctor, d. to wrestle.	Percontor, m. to inquire.	Tūtōr, to defend.
Medīcor, r. d. p. to heal.	Periclītōr, d. p. to try.	Vāgor, to wander.
Medītor, p. to meditate.	†Piscor, m. to fish.	Venērōr, d. p. to venerate, worship.
Mercor, m. r. d. p. to buy.	Popūlor, r. d. p. to lay waste.	Vēnor, m. p. to hunt.
Minor, to threaten.	Prādor, m. p. to plunder.	Versor, to be employed.
Mīror, u. r. d. to admire.	Prēcor, m. u. r. d. to pray.	Voeifērōr, to bawl.
Misērōr, d. to pity.	Prōlior, to fight.	
Modērōr, u. d. to govern.	Recordor, d. to recollect.	
	Rimor, d. to search.	
	Rixor, to quarrel.	

NOTE. Some deponents of the first conjugation are derived from nouns, and signify *being* or *practising* that which the noun denotes; as, *ancillāri*, to be a handmaid; *hariolāri*, to practise soothsaying; from *ancilla* and *hariolus*.

## SECOND CONJUGATION.

§ 167. Verbs of the second conjugation end in *eo*, and form their second and third roots in *u* and *it*; as, *moneo*, *monui*, *monitum*.

The following list contains most of the regular verbs of this conjugation, and many also which want the second and third roots:—

*Aceo, to be sour.	*Clāreo, —, to be bright.	*†perhībeo, d. to report.
*Ægreo, —, to be sick.	*Chueo, —, to be famous.	†posthābeo, to postpone.
*Albeo, —, to be white.	*Denseo, —, to thicken.	præbeo, (for præhibeo), r. d. to afford.
*Arceo, d. to drive away; part. adj. aretus or artus. The compounds change a into e; as, coerceo, d. to restrain.	*Diribeo, —, to sort the voting tablets.	*præhibeo, —. dēbeo, (for dehābeo), r. d. to owe.
exerceo, r. d. to exercise.	*Dōleo, r. d. to grieve.	*Hēbeo, —, to be dull.
*Areo, to be dry.	*Egeo, r. to want.	*Horreo, d. to be rough.
*Aveo, —, to covet.	*Emīneo, to rise above.	*Hūmeo, —, to be moist.
*Cāleo, r. to be warm.	*Flacceō, to droop.	*Jāceo, r. to lie.
*Calleo, —, to be hardened. *percalleo, to know well.	*Flāveo, —, to be yellow.	*Lacteo, —, to suck.
*Calveo, —, to be bald.	*Flōreo, to blossom.	*Langueo, —, to be faint.
*Candeo, to be white.	*Fœteo, —, to be fetid.	*Lāteo, to lie hid.
*Cāneo, to be hoary.	*Frigeo, —, to be cold.	*Lenteo, —, to be slow.
*Cārceo, r. d. to want.	*Frondeo, —, to bear leaves.	*Līceo, to be valued.
*Cēveo, —, to fawn.	Hābeo, r. d. to have. The compounds, except posthābeo, change ā into i; as, ad-, ex-, pro-hībeo.	*Liveo, —, to be livid.
	cohībeo, d. to restrain.	*Māceo, —, to be lean.
	inhībeo, d. to hinder.	*Mādeo, to be wet.
		*Māreo, —, to grieve.
		Mēreo, r. to deserve.



- †commēreo, *to fully deserve*. †dēmēreo, *d. to earn*. †einēreo, *to serve out one's time*. \*†permēreo, —, *to go through service*. promēreo, *to deserve*.
- Mōneo, *r. d. to advise*. admōneo, *m. r. d. to remind*. commōneo, *to impress upon*. prāmōneo, *to forewarn*.
- \*Mūceo, —, *to be mouldy*. \*Nigreo, —, *to be black*. \*Niteo, *to shine*. Nōceo, *m. r. to hurt*. \*Oleo, *to smell*. \*Palleo, *to be pale*.
- \*Pāreo, *m. r. d. to obey*. \*Pāteo, *to be open*. Plāceo, *to please*. \*Polleo, —, *to be able*. \*Pūteo, *to stink*. \*Putreo, *to be putrid*. \*Renīdeo, —, *to glitter*. \*Rīgeo, *to be stiff*. \*Rūbeo, *to be red*. \*Scāteo, —, *to gush forth*. \*Sēneo, —, *to be old*. \*Sileo, *d. to be silent*. \*Sordeo, —, *to be filthy*. \*Splendeo, —, *to shine*. \*Squāleo, —, *to be foul*. \*Strīdeo, —, *to creak*. \*Stūdeo, *d. to study*. \*Stūpeo, *to be amazed*.
- \*Sueo, —, *to be wont*. Tāceo, *r. d. to be silent*. \*Tēpeo, *to be warm*. Terreo, *d. to terrify*. Se deterreo, *to deter*. †absterneo, *to deter*. †conterreo, †exterreo, †preterreo, *to frighten*. \*Timeo, *d. to fear*. \*Torpeo, —, *to be stiff*. \*Tūmeo, *to swell*. \*Vāleo, *r. to be able*. \*Vēgeo, —, *to arouse*. \*Vieo, —, *to plait*. *Pa. viētn, shriveled*. \*Vīgeo, *to flourish*. \*Vīreo, *to be green*. \*Uveo, —, *to be moist*.

§ 168. The following verbs of the second conjugation are irregular in their second or third roots or in both.

NOTE 1. As the proper form of verbs of the first conjugation is, *o, āvi, ātum*, of the fourth *io, ivi, itum*, so that of the second would be *eo, ēvi, ētum*. Very few of the latter conjugation, however, retain this form, but most of them, as noticed in § 165, Rem. 1, drop in the second root the connecting vowel, *ē*, and those in *reo* drop *rē*; as, *cāreo*, (*cāvēvi*) *cāvi*, (*cāvētum* or *cāvītum*) *cautum*. Others, imitating the form of those verbs of the third conjugation whose general root ends in a consonant, add *s* to form the second and third roots. Cf. § 165, Rem. 1, and § 171.

NOTE 2. Four verbs of the second conjugation take a reduplication in the parts formed from the second root, viz. *mordeo*, *pendeo*, *spondeo*, and *tondeo*. See § 163, Rem.

- Abōleo, -ēvi, -itum, *r. d. to efface*. \*Algeo, alsi, *to be cold*. Ardeo, arsi, arsum, *r. to burn*. Audeo, ausus sum, (*rarely ausi, whence ausim*, § 183, R. 1,) *r. d. to dare*. Augeo, auxi, auctum, *r. d. to increase*. Cāveo, cāvi, cautum, *m. d. to beware*. Censeo, censui, censum, *d. to think*. recenseo, -ui, -um or -itum. \*percenseo, -ui. \*succenseo, -ui, *d.*
- Cico, cīvi, cītum, *to excite*. *There is a cognate form, cio, of the fourth conjugation, both of the simple verb and of its compounds. The penult of the participles excitus and concitus is common, and that of accītus is always long.*
- \*Connīveo, -nīvi, *to wink at*. Dēleo, -ēvi, -ētum, *d. to blot out*. Dōceo, docui, doctum, *d. to teach*. \*Fāveo, fāvi, fantūrus, *to favor*. \*Ferveo, ferbui, *to boil*. *Sometimes fervo, vi, of the third conjugation.*
- Fleo, flēvi, flētum, *r. d. to weep*. Fōveo, fōvi, fōtum, *d. to cherish*.
- \*Fulgeo, fulsi, *to shine*. Fulgo, *of the third conjugation, is also in use*. Gaudeo, gavīsus sum, *r. to rejoice*. § 142, 2.
- \*Hæreo, hæsi, hæsurus, *to stick*. *So ad-, co-, in-, ob- hæreo; but \*subhæreo, —.*
- Indulgeo, indulsi, indultum, *r. d. to indulge*. Jūbeo, jussi, jussum, *r. d. to order*. \*Lūceo, luxi, *to shine*. pollūceo, -luxi, -luctum.
- \*Lūgeo, luxi, *d. to mourn*. \*Māneo, mansi, mansum, *m. r. d. to remain*. Misceo, miscui, mistum or mixtum, mistūrus, *d. to mix*. Mordeo, momordi, morsum, *d. to bite*. remordeo, -di, -morsum, *r.*
- Mōveo, mōvi, mōtum, *r. d. to move*. Mulceo, mulsi, mulsum, *d. to soothe*. permulceo, permulsi, permulsum and permuletum, *to rub gently*. \*Mulgeo, mulsi or mulxi, *to milk*. emulgeo, —, emulsum, *to milk out*.



Neo, nēvi, nētum, *to spin.*

\*Pāveo, pāvi, d. *to fear.*

\*Pendeo, pependi, *to hang.* \*impendeo, —, propendeo, —, propensum.

Pleo, (*obsolete*). compleo, -ēvi, -etam, *to fill.* So the other compounds.

Prandeo, prandi, pransum, r. *to dine.*

Rideo, rīsi, rīsum, m. r. d. *to laugh.*

\*Sēdeo, sēdi, sessum, m. r. *to sit.*

*The compounds with monosyllabic prepositions change ē into ī, in the first root; as, insideo, insēdi, insessum.*

\*dissideo, -sēdi. So præsideo, and rarely circum-ideo.

Ēoleo, solūtus sum, and rarely solui, *to be accustomed.* § 142, 2.

\*Sorbeo, sorbui, *to suck in.* So \*exsorbeo: but \*resorbeo, —. \*absorbeo, -sorbui or -sorpsi.

Spondeo, sponondi, sponsum, *to promise.* See § 163, Rem.

\*Strideo, īdi, *to whiz.*

Snādeo, suāsi, suāsūm, r. d. *to advise.*

Tēneo, tēnui, tentum, r. d. *to hold.* The compounds change ē into ī in the first and second roots; as, detineo, detīnui, detentum. \*attineo, -tīnui. So pertineo.

Tergeo, tersi, tersum, *to wipe.* Tergo, of the third conjugation, is also in use.

Tondeo, tōtondi, tonsum, *to shear.* The compounds have the perfect tondi.

Torqueo, torsi, tortum, d. *to twist.*

Torreo, torrui, tostum, *to roast.*

\*Turgeo, tursi, *to swell.*

\*Urgeo or urgueo, ursi, d. *to urge.*

Vīdeo, vīdi, vīsum, m. u. r. d. *to see.*

Vōveo, vōvi, vōtum, d. *to vow.*

### § 169. Impersonal Verbs of the Second Conjugation.

Dēcet, decuit, *it becomes.*

Libet, libuit or libitum est, *it pleases, is agreeable.*

Līcet, lieuit or lieitum est, *it is lawful, or permitted.*

l iquet, liquit, *it is clear, evident.*

Misēret, misernit or miseritum est, *it moves to pity; misēret me, I pity.*

Oportet, oportuit, *it behooves.*

Pīget, piguit or pigitum est, d. *it troubles, grieves.*

Pōnitet, pōnituit, pōnitūrus, d. *it repents; pōnitet me, I regret.*

Pūdet, puduit or puditum est, d.; *it shames; pudet me, I am ashamed.*

Tādet, tāduit or tæsūm est, *it disgusts or wearies. pertādet, pertæsūm est.*

NOTE. *Lūbet* is sometimes written for *libet*, especially in the comic writers.

### § 170. Deponent Verbs of the Second Conjugation.

Fāteor, fassus, r. d. p. *to confess.* The compounds change ā into ī in the first root, and into e in the third; as, confiteor, confessus, d. p. *to acknowledge.* \*† diffiteor, *to deny.* profiteor, professus, d. p. *to declare.*

Līceor, licitus, *to bid a price.*

\*Mēdeor, d. *to cure.*

Mēreor, meritus, *to deserve.*

Misēreor, miseritus or misertus, *to pity.*

Polliceor, pollicitus, p. *to promise.*

Reor, rātus, *to think, suppose.*

Tueor, tuitus, d. p. *to protect.*

Vēreor, veritus, d. p. *to fear.*

## THIRD CONJUGATION.

§ 171. In the third conjugation, when the first root ends with a consonant, the second root is regularly formed by adding *s*; when it ends with a vowel, the first and second roots are the same: the third root is formed by adding *t*; as, carpo, carpsi, carptum; arguo, argui, argūtum.

In annexing *s* and *t*, certain changes occur in the final consonant of the root:—

1. The palatals *c*, *g*, *qu*, and also *h*, at the end of the first root, form with the double letter *x* in the second root; in the third root, *c* remains, and the others are changed into *c* before *t*; as, dico, (dic*si*, i. e.), dixi, dictum; rego, (reg*si*, i. e.), rexi, rectum; vōho, vexi, vectum; cōquo, coxi, coctum.

**NOTE.** *Fluo* and *struo* form their second and third roots after the analogy of verbs whose first root ends in a palatal or *h*.

2. *B* is changed into *p* before *s* and *t*; as, *scribo*, *scripsi*, *scriptum*.

3. *D* and *t*, before *s*, are either dropped, or changed into *s*; as, *claudio*, *clausi cēdo*, *cessi*; *mitto*, *misi*. Cf. § 56, I, Rein. 1. After *m*, *p* is sometimes inserted before *s* and *t*; as, *sūmo*, *sumpsi*, *sumptum*. *R* is changed to *s* before *s* and *t* in *gēro* and *ūro*.

4. Some other consonants are dropped, or changed into *s*, in certain verbs.

**Exc. 1.** Many verbs whose first root ends in a consonant, do not add *s* to form the second root.

(a.) Of these, some have the second root the same as the first, but the vowel of the second root, if a monosyllable, is long; as,

Bībo,	Excūdo,	Ico,	Mando,	Scābo,	Solve,	Verro,
Edo,	Fōdio,	Lambo,	Prehendo,	Scando,	Strīdo,	Verto,
Emo,	Fūgio,	Lēgo,	Psallo,	Sido,	Tollo,	Volvo;

to which add the compounds of the obsolete *cando*, *fendo*, and *nuo*.

(b.) Some make a change in the first root. Of these, some change a vowel, some drop a consonant, some prefix a reduplication, others admit two or more of these changes; as,

Ago, ēgi.	Cāpio, cēpi.	Fācio, fēci.
Findo, fidi.	Frango, frēgi.	Fundo, fūdi.
Jācio, jēci.	Liquo, liqui.	Rumpo, rūpi.
Scindo, scīdi.	Sisto, stīti.	Vinco, vīci.

Those which have a reduplication are

Cādo, cēcīdi.	Cædo, cēcīdi.	Cāno, cēcīni.
Curro, cūcurri.	Disco, didīci.	Fallo, fēfelli.
Pāgo, (obs.) pēpīgi	Parco, pēperci.	Pārio, pēpēri.
and pēgi.	Pēdo, pēpēdi.	Pello, pēpūli.
Pendo, pēpendi.	Posco, pōposci.	Pungo, pūpūgi.
Tango, tētīgi.	Tendo, tētēdi.	Tundo, tūtūdi.

**Exc. 2.** Some, after the analogy of the second conjugation, add *u* to the first root of the verb; as,

Alo, alui, etc.	Consūlo,	Gēmo,	Rāpio,	Trēmo,
Cōlo,	Depso,	Gēno, (obs.)	Strēpo,	Vōlo,
Compesco,	Frēmo,	Mōlo,	Texo,	Vōmo.

*Mēto*, *messui*; and *pōno*, *pōsui*; add *su*, with a change in the root.

**Exc. 3.** The following, after the analogy of the fourth conjugation, add *iv* to the first root:—

Arcesso,	Cūpio,	Lācesso,	Rūdo,	Tēro, dropping ě.
Cāpresso,	Incesso,	Pēto,	Quaro, with a change of r into s.	

**Exc. 4.** The following add *v*, with a change in the root; those in *no* and *sco* dropping *n* and *sc*, and those having *er* before *n* changing *t* to *rē* or *rā*:—

Cresco,	Pasco,	Scisco,	Sperno,	Lino,	Sēro,
Nosco,	Quiesco,	Cerno,	Sterno,	Sino,	to sorc.

**Exc. 5.** (a.) The third root of verbs whose first root ends in *d* or *t*, and some in *g*, add *s*, instead of *t*, to the root, either dropping the *d*, *t* and *g*, or changing them into *s*; as, *claudio*, *clausum*; *defendo*, *dēfensum*; *cēdo*, *cessum*; *flecto*, *flexum*; *jīgo*, *jixum*. But the compounds of *do* add *it*; as, *perdo*, *perditum*.

(b.) The following, also, add *s*, with a change of the root —

Excello,	Fallo,	Pello,	Spargo,	Verro.
Percello,	Mergo,	Præmo,	Vello,	

Exc. 6. The following add *t*, with a change of the root; those having *n*, *nc*, *ng*, *nqu*, or *mp* at the end of the first root dropping *n* and *m* in the third:—

Cerno,	Fingo,	Gëro,	Sëro,	Sperno,	Stringo,	Uro,
Côlo,	Fraugo,	Rumpo,	Sisto,	Sterno,	Tëro,	Vinco;

to which add the compounds of *linguo*, and verbs in *sco* with the second root in *v*; the latter drop *sc* before *t*; as, *nosco*, *nôvi*, *nôtum*; except *pasco*, which drops *c* only.

Exc. 7. (a.) The following have *ūt*:—

Bibo,	Elício,	Môlo,	Pôno, with a change of òn into òs.
Gëno, (obs. form of gigno,)	Vômo,	Sino, dropping n.	

(b.) The following, like verbs of the fourth conjugation, add *ūt* to the first root:—

Arcesso,	Cûpio,	Pëto,	Tëro, dropping ě.
Făcesso,	Lă'esso,	Quăro, with a change of r into s.	

For other irregularities occurring in this conjugation, see § 172-174.

§ 172. The following list contains most of the simple verbs, both regular and irregular, in the third conjugation, with such of their compounds as require particular notice:—

*Acuo*, *ăcui*, *ăcūtum*, d. *to sharpen*.

*Ago*, *ēgi*, *actum*, r. d. *to drive*. So *circumago*, *cōgo*, and *përāgo*. \**ambigo*, —, *to doubt*. So *sātāgo*. The other compounds change *ă* into *ī*, in the first root; as, *exīgo*, *exēgi*, *ex-actum*, *to drive out*. \**prōdīgo*, *-ēgi*, *to squander*. See § 189, 2.

*Alo*, *ălui*, *altum*, and later *ălītum*, d. *to nourish*.

\**Ango*, *anxi*, *to strangle*.

*Arguo*, *argui*, *argūtum*, d. *to convict*.

*Arcesso*, *-cessivī*, *-cessitum*, r. d. *to call for*. Pass. inf. *arcessiri* or *arcessi*.

\**Bătuo*, *bătui*, d. *to beat*.

*Bibo*, *bibi*, *bibitum*, d. *to drink*.

\**Cădo*, *cēcidi*, *căsūrus*, *to fall*. The compounds change *ă* into *ī*, in the first root, and drop the reduplication; as, *occido*, *-cidi*, *-cāsūm*, r. *to set*.

*Cădo*, *cēcidi*, *căsūm*, r. d. *to cut*. The compounds change *ă* into *ī*, and drop the reduplication; as, *occido*, *-cidi*, *-cāsūm*.

*Cădo*, (obsolete,) synonymous with *cădeo* of the second conjugation. Hence *accendo*, *-cendi*, *-censum*, d. *to kindle*. So *incendo*, *succendo*.

\**Căno*, *cēcini*, d. *to sing*. The compounds change *ă* into *ī*; as, \**concino*,

*-cīnui*. So *occino*, *præcino*. \**accino*, —. So *incino*, *intercino*, *succino*, *recino*.

\**Capesso*, *-īvi*, r. d. *to undertake*.

*Căpio*, *cēpi*, *captum*, r. d. *to take*. So *antēcăpio*. The other compounds change *ă* into *ī*, in the first root, and into *e* in the third; as, *dēcīpio*, *dēcōpi*, *dēceptum*.

*Carpo*, *carpsi*, *carptum*, d. *to pluck*. The compounds change *a* into *e*; as, *dēcēpo*, *dēcēpsi*, *dēcēptum*.

*Cădo*, *cessi*, *cessum*, r. *to yield*.

*Cello*, (obsolete,) *excello*, *-cellui*, *-culsum*, *to excel*. \**antēcello*, —. So *præcello*, *recello*. *percello*, *-cūli*, *-culsum*, *to strike*.

*Cerno*, *crēvi*, *crētum*, d. *to decree*.

\**Cerno*, —, *to see*.

*Cingo*, *cinxī*, *cinctum*, d. *to gird*.

\**Clango*, —, *to clang*.

*Claudo*, *clausi*, *clausum*, r. d. *to shut*. The compounds change *au* into *ū*; as, *occlūdo*, *occlūsi*, *occlūsum*, *to shut up*.

\*†*Clāudo*, —, *to limp*.

\*†*Clēpo*, *clepsi*, rarely *clēpi*, *to steal*.

*Côlo*, *côlui*, *cultum*, d. *to till*. †*occūlo*, *-cūlui*, *-cultum*, d. *to hide*.

*Cômo*, *compsi*, *comptum*, *to deck*.

\**Compesco*, *-pescui*, *to restrain*.



Consūlo, -sūlui, -sultum, m. r. d. *to consult.*

Cōquo, coxi, coctum, m. d. *to cook.*

Crēdo, crēdidi, crēditum, r. d. *to believe.*

\*Cresco, crēvi, *to grow.* concresco, -crēvi, -crētum.

Cūbo is of the first conjugation. Cf. § 165. \*accumbo, -cūbui, *to lie down.* So the other compounds which insert in.

\*Cūdo, —, *to forge.* excūdo, -cūdi, -cūsum, d. *to stamp.*

Cūpio, cūpivi, cūpitum, d. *to desire.* Subj. imperf. cūpīret. *Lucr.* 1, 72.

\*Curro, cūcurri, cursūrus, *to run.* concurro, succurro, and transcurro, drop the reduplication; the other compounds sometimes drop, and sometimes retain it; as, dēcurro, dēcurri, and dēcūcurri, dēcursum. \*antēcurro, —. So circumcurro.

\*Dēgo, dēgi, d. *to live.*

Dēmo, dempsi, demptum, r. d. *to take away.*

†Depso, depsi, depstum, *to knead.*

Dico, dixi, dictum, u. r. d. *to say.*

\*Disco, didici, discitūrus, d. *to learn.*

\*Dispesco, —, *to separate.*

Divido, divisi, divisum, r. d. *to divide.*

Do is of the first conjugation. abdo, -didi, -ditum, d. *to hide.* So condo, indo. addo, -didi, -ditum, r. d. *to add.* So dēdo, ēdo, prōdo, reddo, trādo, vendo. †dīdo, -dīdi, -ditum, *to distribute.* So abdo, subdo. perdo, -didi, -ditum, m. r. d. *abscondo*, -di or -dīdi, -ditum or -sum.

Dūco, duxi, ductum, m. r. d. *to lead.*

Edo, ēdi, ēsum, m. u. r. d. *to eat.*

Exuo, cxui, cxūtum, d. *to strip off.*

Emo, ēmi, emptum, r. d. *to buy.* So coēmo. The other compounds change ē to ī; as, exīno, -ēmi, -emptum.

Fācesso, -cessi, -cessitum, *to execute.*

Fācio, fēcī, factum, m. u. r. d. *to do.* Compounded with a preposition, it changes ā into ī in the first root, and into ē in the third, makes -fice in the imperative, and has a regular passive. Compounded with other words, it retains ā when of this conjugation, makes fāc in the imperative, and has the passive, fīo, factum. See § 180.

Fallo, fēfelli, falsum, d. *to deceive.*

\*réfello, -felli, d. *to refute.*

Fendo, (obsolete.) dēfendo, -fendi, -fensum, m. u. r. d. *to defend.* offendo, -tendi, -fensum, d. *to offend.*

Fēro, tūli, lātum, r. d. *to bear.* See § 179. A perfect tēvūli is rare. Its compounds are affēro attūli, allātum;

aufēro, abstūli, ablātum; diffēro, distūli, dilātum; confēro, contūli, collātum; infēro, intūli, illātum; offēro, obtūli, oblātum; effēro, extūli, elātum; suffēro, sustūli, sublātum; and circum-, per-, trans-, dē-, prō-, antē-, praefero, -tūli, -lātum.

\*Fervo, vi, *to boil.* Cf. ferveo, 2d conj. Fīdo, —, fīsus, *to trust.* See § 162, 18. confido, confisus sum or confīdi, *to rely on.* diffīdo, diffisus sum, *to distrust.*

Fīgo, fixi, fixum, r. rarely fictum, *to fix.*

Fīndo, fīdi, fissum, d. *to cleave.*

Fīngo, fīxi, fictum, d. *to feign.*

Flecto, flexi, flexum, r. d. *to bend.*

\*Flīgo, flīxi, *to dash.* So confīgo. afflīgo, -flīxi, -flictum, *to afflict.* So inflīgo. prōflīgo is of the first conjugation.

Fluo, fluxi, fluxum, (fluctum, obs.) r. *to flow.*

Fōdio, fōdi, fossum, d. *to dig.* Old pres. inf. pass. fōdiri: so also ef-fōdiri.

Frango, frēgi, fractum, r. d. *to break.* The compounds change a into i, in the first root; as, infringo, infrēgi, infractum, *to break in upon.*

\*Frēmo, frēmui, d. *to roar, howl.*

Frēdo, —, frēsūm or fressum, *to gnash.*

Frīgo, frixi, frictum, rarely frīxum, *to roast.*

\*Fūgio, fūgi, fūgtūrus, d. *to flee.*

\*Fulgo, —, *to flash.*

Fundo, fūdi, fūsum, r. d. *to pour.*

\*Fūro, —, *to rage.*

\*Gēmo, gēmui, d. *to groan.*

Gēro, gessi, gestum, r. d. *to bear.*

Gigno, (obsolete gēno,) gēnui, gēnītum r. d. *to beget.*

\*Glisco, —, *to grow.*

\*Glūbo, —, *to peel.* deglūbo, —, -gluptum.

Gruo, (obsolete.) \*congruo, -grui, *to agree.* So ingruo.

Ico, īci, ictum, r. *to strike.*

Imbuo, imbui, imbūtum, d. *to imbue.*

\*Incesso, -cessivi or -cessi, *to attack.*

†Induo, indui, indūtum, *to put on.*

Jācio, jēcī, jactum, d. *to cast.* The compounds change ā into ī in the first root, and into ē in the third. (§ 163, Exc. 3); as, rejicio, rejēcī, rejectum.

Jungo, junxi, junctum, r. d. *to join.*

Lācesso, -cessivi, -cessitum, r. d. *to provoke.*

Lācio, (obsolete.) The compounds change ā into ī; as, allicio, -lexi, -lectum, d. *to allure.* So illicio, pellicio. ēllicio -licui, -licitum, *to draw out.*



Lædo, læsi, læsum, m. r. *to hurt*. The compounds change æ into ī; as, illīdo, illīsi, illīsum, *to dash against*.

\*Lambo, lambi, *to lick*.

Lēgo, lēgi, lectum, r. d. *to read*. So allēgo, perlēgo, praelēgo, relēgo, sublēgo, and translēgo; the other compounds change ē into ī; as, colligo, collēgi, collectum, *to collect*. But the following add s to form the second root; § 171, 1; diligo, -lexi, -lectum, *to love*. intelligo, -lexi, -lectum, u. r. d. *to understand*. negligo, -lexi, -lectum, r. d. *to neglect*.

Lingo, —, linctum, d. *to lick*. \*delingo, —, *to lick up*.

Līno, līvi or lēvi, lītum, d. *to daub*.

\*Linquo, liqui, d. *to leave*. relinquo, -liqui, -lictum, r. d. *delinquo*, -liqui, -lictum. So derelinquo.

Lūdo, lūsi, lūsum, m. r. *to play*.

\*Luo, lui, luitūrus, d. *to atone*. abluo, -lui, -lūtum, r. d. diluo, -lui, -lūtum, d. So eluo.

Mando, mandi, mansum, d. *to chew*.

Mergo, mersi, mersum, r. d. *to dip*. So immergo; but pres. inf. pass. immergēri, Col. 5, 9, 3.

Meto, messui, messum, d. *to reap*.

Metuo, metui, metūtum, d. *to fear*.

\*Mingo, minxi, mictum, (sup.) *to make water*.

Minuo, minui, minūtum, d. *to lessen*.

Mitto, misi, missum, r. d. *to send*.

Mōlo, mōlui, mōlitum, *to grind*.

Mungo, (obsolete.) emungo, -munxi, -munctum, *to wipe the nose*.

Necto, nexi, nexum, d. *to knit*. innecto, -nexui, -nexum. So annecto, connecto.

\*Ningo or -guo, ninxi, *to snow*.

Nosco, nōvi, nōtum, d. *to learn*. agnosco, -nōvi, -nītum, d. *to recognize*. cognosco, -nōvi, -nītum, u. r. d. *to know*. So recognosco. \*internosco, nōvi, *to distinguish between*. præcognosco, —, præcognitum, *to fore-know*.

\*dignosco, —. So prænoscō. ignosco, -nōvi, -nōtum, d. *to pardon*.

Nūbo, nupsi, or nupta sum, nuptum, m. r. *to marry*.

Nuo, (obsolete,) *to nod*. \*abnuo, -nui, -nuitūrus, d. *to refuse*. \*annuo, -nui. So innuo, renuo.

\*Olo, olui, *to smell*.

Pando, —, passum or pansum, *to open*. So expando. dispando, —, -pansum.

Pago, (obs. the same as paco whence pasciscor,) pēpigi, pactum, *to bargain*: hence

Pango, panxi or pēgi, pactum, panctū-

rus, d. *to drive in*. compingo, -pēgi, -pactum. So impingo. \*oppango, -pēgi. \*depango, —. So repango, suppingo.

\*Parco, pēperci rarely parsi, paritūrus *to spare*. Some of the compounds change a to e; as, \*comparco or comperco. \*imperco, —.

Pario, pēperi, partum, paritūrus, d. *to bring forth*. The compounds are of the fourth conjugation.

Pasco, pāvi, pastum, m. r. d. *to feed*.

Pecto, —, pexum, and pectitum, d. *to comb*. So depecto. repecto.

\*Pēdo, pēpēdi. \*oppēdo, —.

Pello, pēpūli, pulsūm, d. *to drive*. Its compounds are not reduplicated.

Pendo, pēpendi, pensum, r. *to weigh*. The compounds drop the reduplication. See § 163, Exc. 1.

Pēto, pētīvi, pētītum, m. u. r. d. *to ask*.

Pingo, pinxi, pictum, *to paint*.

Pinso, pinsi, pinsitum, pinsum or pistum, *to pound*.

\*Plango, planxi, planetūrus, *to lament*.

Plaudo, plausi, plausum, d. *to clap, applaud*. So applaudo. \*†circumplaudo, —. The other compounds change au into ō.

Plecto, —, plexum, d. *to twine*.

\*Pluo, pluī or plūvi, *to rain*.

Pōno, pōsui, (anciently posīvi), pōsitum, r. d. *to place*.

\*†Porricio, —, *to offer sacrifice*.

\*Posco, pōposci, d. *to demand*.

Prehendo, { -di, -sum, r. d. *to seize*.

Prendo, }  
Prēmo, pressi, pressum, r. d. *to press*. The compounds change ē into ī, in the first root; as, imprīmo, impressi, impressum, *to impress*.

Prōmo, prōmpsi, promptum, r. d. *to bring out*.

\*Psallo, psalli, *to play on a stringed instrument*.

Pungo, pūpūgi, punctum, *to prick*. compungo, -punxi, -punctum. So dispungo, expungo. interpungo, —, -punctum. \*repingo, —.

Quæro, quæsi, quæsitum, m. r. d. *to seek*. The compounds change æ into ī; as, requiūro, requisivi, requisitum, *to seek again*.

Quatio, —, quassum, *to shake*. The compounds change quā into cū; as, concūtio, -russi, -cussum, d. discūtio, -cussi, -cussum, r. d.

Quiesco, quiēvi, quiētum, r. d. *to rest*.

Rādo, rāsi, rāsum, d. *to shave*.

Rāpio, rāpui, rāptum, r. d. *to snatch*. The compounds change ā into ī in the

*first and second roots, and into e in the third; as, diripio, -rīpui, -reptum, m. r. So eripio and prærīpio.*

**Rēgo, rexi, rectum, r. d. to rule.** *The compounds change ē into ī, in the first root; as, dirigo, direxi, directum.*  
*\*pergo, (for perrigo), perrexī, r. to go forward. surgo (for surrigo), surrexi, surrectum, r. d. to rise. So porrigo (for prorigo), to stretch out.*

*\*Rēpo, repsi, to creep.*

**Rūdo, rōsi, rōsum, r. to gnaw.** *ab-, ar-, e-, ob-, prae-rūdo, want the perfect.*

*\*Rūdo, rudiui, to bray.*

**Rumpo, rūpi, ruptum, r. d. to break.**

**Ruo, rui, rūtum, ruitūrus, to fall.**  
*diruo, -rui, -rūtum, d. So obruo.*  
*\*corruo, -rui. So irruo.*

**\*Sāpio, sapīvi, to be wise.** *The compounds change ā into ī; as, \*resāpio, -sāpīvi or -sāpui. \*desāpio, —, to be silly.*

*\*†Scābo, scābi, to scratch.*

**Scalpo, scalpsi, scalptum, to engrave.**

**Sālo or sallo, — salsum, to salt.**

**\*Scando, —, d. to climb.** *The compounds change a into e; as, ascendo, ascendi, ascensum, r. d. descendo, descendi, (anciently descendīdi,) descensum.*

**Sciudo, scīdi, (anciently sciscīdi), scissum, d. to cut.**

**Scisco, scīvi, scītum, d. to ordain.**

**Scrībo, scripsi, scriptum, r. d. to write.**

**Sculpo, sculpsi, sculptum, d. to carve.**

**Sēro, sēvi, sātum, r. d. to sow.** *consēro, -sēvi, -sītum. So insēro, r., and obsēro.*

**Sēro, —, sertum, to entwine.** *Its compounds have -sēruī; as, assēro, -sēruī, -sertum, r. d.*

*\*Serpo, serpsi, to creep.*

*\*Sido, sīdi, to settle. Its compounds have generally sēdi, sessum, from sedeo.*

*\*Sīno, sīvi, sītūrus, to permit. desīno, desīvi, desītum, r. § 284, R. 3, Exc. 2.*

**Sisto, stīti, stātum, to stop.** *\*absisto, -stīti. So the other compounds; but circumsisto wants the perfect.*

**Solvo, solvi, solūtum, r. d. to loose.**

**Spargo, sparsi, sparsum, r. d. to spread.**  
*The compounds change a into e; as, respergo, -spersi, -spersum; but with circum and in, a sometimes remains.*

**Spēcio, (obsolete.)** *The compounds change ē into ī, in the first root; as, aspicio, aspexi, aspectum, d. to look at. inspicio, inspexi, inspectum, r. d.*

**Sperno, sprēvi, sprētum, d. to despise.**

*†Spuo, spui, to spit. \*respuo, respuī, d.*

**Stātuo, stātui, stātūtum, d. to place**  
*The compounds change ā into ī; as, instituo, institui, institūtum, to institute.*

**Sterno, strāvi, strātum, d. to strew.**

*\*Sternuo, sternui, to squeeze.*

*\*Sierto, —, to snore. \*†desterto, destertui.*

*\*Stinguo, —, to extinguish. distinguo, distinxī, distinctum. So exstinguo, r. d.*

*\*Strēpo, strēpui, to make a noise.*

*\*Strīdo, strīdi, to creak.*

**Stringo, strinxī, strictum, r. d. to bind or tie tight.**

**Struo, straxī, structum, d. to build.**

**Sūgo, suxi, suctum, to suck.**

**Sūno, sumpsī, sumptum, r. d. to take.**

**Suo, —, sūtum, d. to sew.** *So consuo, dissuo. insuo, -sui, sūtum. \*as-suo, —.*

**Tāgo, (very rare), to touch.** *Hence*

**Tango, tētigi, tactum, r. d. to touch.**  
*The compounds change a into i in the first root, and drop the reduplication; as, contingo, contigi, contactum, r.*

**Tēgo, texi, tectum, r. d. to cover.**

*\*Temno, —, d. to despise. contemno, -tempsi, -temptum, d.*

**Tendo, tētendi, tentum or tensum, to stretch.** *The compounds drop the reduplication; as, extendo, -tendi, -tentum or -tensum. So in-, os-, and retendo. detendo has tensum. The other compounds have tentum.*

*\*†Tergo, tersi, tersum, to wipe. Tergeo, of the second conjugation has the same second and third roots.*

**Tēro, trīvi, trītum, d. to rub.**

**Texo, texui, textum, d. to weave.**

**Tingo or tinguo, tinxi, tinctum, r. d. to moisten, tinge.**

*\*Tollo, anciently tētūli, rarely tolli, d. to raise. The perfect and supine sustūli and sublātum from suffēro take the place of the perfect and supine of tollo and sustollo. \*sustollo, —, r. to raise up, to take away. \*attoiio, —. So extollo.*

**Trāho, traxī, tractum, r. d. to draw.**

*\*Trēmo, trēmui, d. to tremble.*

**Tribuo, tribui, tributum, r. d. to ascribe.**

**Trūdo, trūsi, trūsūm, to thrust.**

**Tundo, tūtūdi, tunsum or tūsūm, to beat.** *The compounds drop the reduplication, and have tūsūm. Yet contunsum, detunsum, obtunsum, and retunsum, are also found.*

**Ungo, (or -guo), unxi, unctum, d. to anoint.**

Uro, ussi, ustum, d. *to burn.*

\*Vālo, —, *to go.* So supervādo. *The other compounds have vāsi; as, \*evādo, evāsi, r. So pervādo; also invādo, r. d.*

Vēho, vexi, vectum, r. *to carry.*

Vello, velli or vulsi, vulsum, d. *to pluck.* So avello, d., divello, evello, d., revello, revelli, revulsum. *The other compounds have velli only, except intervello, which has vulsi.*

\*Vergo, versi, *to incline.*

Verro, —, versum, d. *to brush.*

Verto, verti, versum, r. d. *to turn.* See § 174, *Note.*

Vinco, vici, victum, r. d. *to conquer.*

\*Viso, —, d. *to visit.*

\*Vivo, vixi, victurus, d. *to live.*

\*Volo, vōlui, velle (*for vōlere*), *to be willing.* See § 178.

Volvo, volvi, vōlūtum, d. *to roll.*

Vōmo, vōmui, vōmitum, r. d. *to vomit*

REMARK. Those verbs in *io* (and deponents in *ior*), of the third conjugation, which are conjugated like *capio* (page 115) are, *cāpio, cūpio, faciō, fōdio, fūgio, jācio, pārio, quātio, rāpio, sāpio*, compounds of *lācio* and *spēcio*, and *grādior, mālīor, pātior*, and *mōrior*: but compare *mōrior* in § 174, and *ōrior*, and *pōrior* in § 177.

### Inceptive Verbs.

§ 173. Inceptive verbs in general either want the third root, or adopt that of their primitives: (see § 187, II, 2). Of those derived from nouns and adjectives, some want the second root, and some form it by adding *u* to the root of the primitive.

In the following list, those verbs to which *s* is added, have a simple verb in use from which they are formed:—

\*Acesco, ācui, s. *to grow sour.*

\*Egresco, *to grow sick.*

\*Albesco, —, s. *to grow white.*

\*Alesco, —, s. *to grow.* coalesco, -alui, -alitur, *to grow together.*

\*Ardesco, arsi, s. *to take fire.*

\*Aresco, —, s. *to grow dry.* \*exaresco, -arui. So inaresco, peraresco.

\*Augesco, auxi, s. *to increase.*

\*Cālesco, cālui, s. *to grow warm.*

\*Calvesco, —, s. *to become bald.*

\*Candesco, candui, s. *to grow white.*

\*Cānesco, cānui, s. *to become hoary.*

\*Clāresco, clārui, s. *to become bright.*

\*Condormisco, -dormivi, s. *to go to sleep.*

\*Conticesco, -ticiui, *to become silent.*

\*Crebresco, crēbui and crebrui, *to increase.*

\*Crūdesco, crūdui, *to become violent.*

\*Dētesco, —, *to grow rich.*

\*Dūcesco, —, *to grow sweet.*

\*Dūresco, dūrui, *to grow hard.*

\*Evītesco, evī'ui, *to become worthless.*

\*Extimesco, -timui, *to fear greatly.*

\*Fātisco, —, *to gape.*

\*Flaccesco, flaccui, s. *to wilt.*

\*Fervesco, ferbui, s. *to grow hot.*

\*Flōresco, flōrui, s. *to begin to flourish.*

\*Frācesco, frācui, *to grow rancid.*

\*Frigesco, —, s. *to grow cold.* \*perfrigesco, -frixi. So refrigesco.

\*Frondesco, —, s. *to put forth leaves.*

\*Frūticesco, —, *to put forth shoots.*

\*Gēlasco, —, s. *to freeze.* So \*congēlasco, s. *to congeal.*

\*Gēmisco, —, s. *to begin to sigh.*

\*Gemmasco, —, *to begin to bud.*

\*Gēnērasco, —, s. *to be produced.*

\*Grandesco, —, *to grow large.*

\*Grāvesco, —, *to grow heavy.*

\*Hæresco, —, s. *to adhere.*

\*Hēbesco, —, s. *to grow dull.*

\*Horresco, horrui, s. *to grow rough.*

\*Hūmesco, —, s. *to grow moist.*

\*Ignesco, —, *to become inflamed.*

\*Indōlesco, -dōlui, d. *to be grieved.*

\*Insōlesco, —, *to become haughty.*

\*Intēgrasco, —, *to be renewed.*

\*Jūvēnesco, —, *to grow young.*

\*Languesco, languui, s. *to grow languid.*

\*Lāpidesco, —, *to become stone.*

\*Lātesco, —, *to grow broad.*

\*Lātesco, *to be concealed.* s. \*delītesco -litui; \*oblītesco, -litui.

\*Lentesco, —, *to become soft.*

\*Liquesco, —, s. *to become liquid* \*delīquesco, -licui.

\*Lūcesco, —, s. *to grow light, to dawn*

\*Lūtesco, —, s. *to become muddy.*

\*Macesco, —, s. } *to grow lean.*

\*Macresco, — }  
\*remacresco, -macrui.

\*Mādesco, mādui, s. *to grow moist.*



\**Marcresco*, —, s. to pine away.  
 \**Mātūresco*, mātūrui, to ripen.  
 \**Misēresco*, misērui, s. to pity.  
 \**Mītesco*, —, to grow mild.  
 \**Mollesco*, —, to grow soft.  
 \**Mūtesco*, —, to become dumb. \**ob-*  
*mūtesco*, obmūtui.  
 \**Nigresco*, nigrui, s. to grow black.  
 \**Nītesco*, nītui, s. to grow bright.  
 \**Nōtesco*, nōtui, to become known.  
 \**Obbrūtesco*, —, to become brutish.  
 \**Obdormisco*, —, s. to fall asleep.  
 \**Obsurdesco*, -surdui, to grow deaf.  
 \**Occallesco*, -callui, to become callous.  
 \**Olesco*, (scarcely used.) \**ābōlesco*,  
 -ōlēvi, s. to cease. *ādōlesco*, -ōlēvi,  
 -ultum, s. to grow up. *exōlesco*,  
 -ōlēvi, -ōlētum, to grow out of date.  
 So *obsōlesco*. *inōlesco*, -ōlēvi, -ōll-  
 tum, d. to grow in or on.  
 \**Pallesco*, pallui, s. to grow pale.  
 \**Pātesco*, pātui, s. to be opened.  
 \**Pāvesco*, pāvi, s. to grow fearful.  
 \**Pertimesco*, -tīmui, d. to fear greatly.  
 \**Pīnguesco*, —, to grow fat.  
 \**Pūbesco*, —, to come to maturity.  
 \**Puērasco*, —, to become a boy.  
 \**Pūtesco*, —, s. } to become putrid.  
 \**Putresco*, —, s. }  
 \**Rāresco*, —, to become thin.  
 \**Rēsīpisco*, -sīpui, s. to recover one's  
 senses.  
 \**Rīgesco*, rīgui, s. to grow cold.  
 \**Rūbesco*, rūbui, s. to grow red. \**ērū-*  
*besco*, -rūbui, d.

\**Sānesco*, —, to become sound. \**con*  
*sānesco*, -sānui.  
 \**Sēnesco*, sēnui, s. d. to grow old. So  
*consēnesco*.  
 \**Sentiſco*, —, s. to perceive.  
 \**Siccesco*, —, to become dry.  
 \**Sīlesco*, sīlui, s. to grow silent.  
 \**Sōlīdesco*, —, to become solid.  
 \**Sordesco*, sordui, s. to become filthy.  
 \**Splendesco*, splendui, s. to become  
 bright.  
 \**Spūnesco*, —, to begin to foam.  
 \**Stērīlesco*, —, to become barren.  
 \**Stūpesco*, stūpui, s. to become aston-  
 ished.  
*Suesco*, suēvi, suētum, s. to become ac-  
 customed.  
 \**Tābesco*, tābui, s. to waste away.  
 \**Tēnēresco* and -asco, —, to become  
 tender.  
 \**Tēpesco*, tēpui, s. to grow warm.  
 \**Torpesco*, torpui, s. to grow torpid.  
 \**Trēmisco*, —, s. to begin to tremble.  
 \**Tūnesco*, tūmtui, s. } to begin to swell.  
 \**Turgesco*, —, s. }  
 \**Uvesco*, —, to become moist.  
 \**Vālesco*, —, s. to become strong.  
 \**Vānesco*, —, to vanish. \**ēvānesco*,  
 ēvānui.  
 \**Vētērasco*, vētērāvi, to grow old.  
 \**Viresco*, vīrui, s. to grow green.  
 \**Vīvesco*, vixi, s. to come to life. \**rē-*  
*vīvisco*, -vixi.

### § 174. Deponent Verbs of the Third Conjugation.

*Apiscor*, aptus, to get. The compounds  
 change ā into i in the first root, and  
 into e in the third; as, *ādīpiscor*,  
*ādeptus*. So *indīpiscor*.

*Expergiscor*, experrectus, to awake.

\**Fātiscor*, to gape or crack open. The  
 compounds change ā into ē; as, *dēfē-*  
*tiscor*, -fessus.

*Fruor*, fruitus or fructus, fruitūrus, d.  
 to enjoy.

*Fungor*, functus, r. d. to perform.

*Grādiōr*, gressus, to walk. The com-  
 pounds change ā into ē; as, *aggrēdiōr*,  
*aggressus*, r. d. Inf. pres. *aggrēdi*  
 and *aggrēdiri*; so, *progrēdi* and *progrē-*  
*dīri*; and pres. ind. *ēgrēditur*, *Plaut.*

\**Irascor*, to be angry.

*Lābor*, lapsus, r. to fall.

\**Liquor*, to melt, flow.

*Lōquer*, locūtus, r. d. to speak.

\**Miniscor*, (obsolete.) *comminiscor*, com-  
 mentus, p. w. invent. \**rēmīniscor*,  
 to remember.

*Mōrior*, (mōri, rarely mōrīri,) mortuus,  
 mōritūrus, d. to die. So *ēmōrīri*, *Plaut.*  
 for *emōri*.

*Nanciscor*, nactus or nactus to obtain.

*Nascor*, nātus, nascitūrus, u. to be born.

*Nītor*, nixus or nīsus, nīsurus, to lean  
 upon.

*Obliviscor*, oblītus, d. p. to forget.

*Pāciscor*, pactus, d. to bargain. So  
*dēpāciscor*.

*Pātior*, passus, r. d. to suffer. *perpētior*  
 -pessus.

From *plecto*, to twine, come, *amplec-*  
*tor*, *amplexus*, d. p. *complector*, *com-*  
*plexus*, p. So *circumplector*.

*Prōficiscor*, prōfectus, r. to depart.

*Quēror*, questus, m. u. d. to complain.

\**Ringor*, to swirl.

*Sēquor*, sēcūtus, r. d. to follow.

*Tuor*, tūtus, to protect.

\**Vescor*, d. to eat.

*Ulciscor*, ultus, m. d. p. to avenge.

*Utor*, ūsus, r. d. to use.



NOTE. *Dēvertor, prævortor, rēvertor*, compounds of *verto*, are used as deponents in the present and imperfect tenses; *rēvertor* also, sometimes, in the perfect.

## FOURTH CONJUGATION.

§ 175. Verbs of the fourth conjugation regularly form their second root in *iv*, and their third in *it*; as, *audio, audivi, auditum*.

The following list contains most regular verbs of this conjugation:—

*Audio, -ivi or -ii, m. u. r. d. to hear.*  
*\*Cio, cīvi, to excite. Ct. cieo, § 168.*  
*Conodio, -ivi or -ii, to season.*  
*Custōdio, -ivi or -ii, d. to guard.*  
*\*Dormio, -ivi or -ii, m. r. d. to sleep.*  
*Erūdio, -ivi or -ii, d. to instruct.*  
*Expēdio, -ivi or -ii, d. to disentangle.*  
*Finio, -ivi or -ii, r. d. to finish.*  
*\*Gestio, -ivi or -ii, to exult; desire.*  
*Impēdio, -ivi or -ii, r. d. to entangle.*  
*Insānio, -ivi or -ii, to be mad.*  
*Irrētio, -ivi or ii, to ensnare.*  
*Lēnio, -ivi or ii, d. to mitigate.*  
*Mollio, -ivi or -ii, d. to soften.*

*\*Mūgio, -ivi or -ii, to belhew.*  
*Mūnio, -ivi or -ii, r. d. to fortify.*  
*Mūtio, -ivi, to mutter.*  
*Nūtrio, -ivi or -ii, d. to nourish.*  
*Partio, -ivi or -ii, r. to divide.*  
*Pōlio, -ivi, d. to polish.*  
*Pūnio, -ivi or -ii, d. to punish.*  
*Rēdīnio, -ivi, to crown.*  
*Scio, -ivi, u. r. to know.*  
*Servio, -ivi or -ii, m. r. d. to serve.*  
*Sōpio, -ivi or -ii, to lull asleep.*  
*Stābilio, -ivi or -ii, to establish.*  
*Tinnio, -ivi or -ii, r. to tinkle.*  
*Vestio, -ivi or -ii, to clothe.*

§ 176. The following list contains those verbs of the fourth conjugation which form their second and third roots irregularly, and those which want either or both of them.

REMARK. The principal irregularity in verbs of the fourth conjugation arises from following the analogy of those verbs of the third conjugation whose first root ends in a consonant; as, *sēpio, sepsi, septum*. A few become irregular by syncope; as, *vēnio, vēni, ventum*.

*Amīcio, -ui or -xi, amictum, d. to clothe.*  
*\*Balbūtio, —, to stammer.*  
*Bullio, ii, itum, to bubble.*  
*\*Cēcūtio, —, to be dim-sighted.*  
*\*Cambio, —, to exchange.*  
*\*Dementio, —, to be mad.*  
*Effūtio, —, to babble.*  
*Eo, ivi or ii, itum, r. d. to go. The compounds have only ii in the perfect, except ōbeo, præeo, and sūbeo, which have ivi or ii. All the compounds want the supine and perfect participles, except ūleo, ambio, inco, ōbeo, prætereo, sūbeo, circūmeo or circueo, rēdeo, transeo, and \*tvēneo, vēni r. (from vēnum eo), to be sold.*

*Farcio, farsī, fartum or faretum, to cram. The compounds generally change a to e; as, refercio, -fersi, -fertum, but con- and ef-, -farcio and -fercio.*

*Fastīdio, -ii, -itum, d. to loathe.*

*\*Fērio, —, d. to strike.*

*\*Fērōcio, —, to be fierce.*  
*Fulcio, fulsi, fultum, d. to prop up.*  
*\*Gannio, —, to yelp, bark.*  
*\*Glōcio, —, to cluck as a hen.*  
*\*Glūtio, ivi, or glūtii, to swallow.*  
*Grandio, —, to make great.*  
*\*Grunnio, grunnii, to grunt.*  
*Haurio, hausi, rar. haurii, haustum, rar. hausitum, haustūrus, hausūrus, u. d. to draw.*  
*\*Hinnio, —, to neigh.*  
*\*Ineptio, —, to trifle.*  
*\*Lascivio, lascivii, to be wanton.*  
*\*Ligūrio, ligūrii, to feed delicately.*  
*\*Ippio, —, r. to be blear-eyed.*  
*\*Obēdio, obēdii, r. to obey.*  
*Pārio is of the third conjugation, but its compounds are of the fourth, changing ā to ē; as, āpērio, āpēriui, āpertum, r. d. to open. So ōpērio, d. compērio, compēri, compertum, rarely dep. compērior, to find out. So rēpērio, r. d.*

**Pāvio**, —, **pāvītum**, *to beat.*

**\*Prūrio**, —, *to itch.*

**Queo**, **quīvi** or **quii**, **quītum** *to be able.*  
So **\*nēqueo**.

**\*Raucio**, —, *r.* *to be hoarse.*

**\*Rūgio**, —, *to roar as a lion.*

**Sævio**, **sævii**, **ītum**, *r.* *to rage.*

**\*Sāgio**, —, *to perceive keenly.*

**\*Sālio**, **sālui** or **sālii**, *to leap.* The compounds change **ā** into **i**; as, **\*absīho**, —. So **circumsīlio**. **\*assīlio**, **-ui**. So **dissīlio**, **insīlio**. **\*dēsīlio**, **-ui** or **-ii**. So **exsīlio**, **rēsīlio**, **subsīlio**. **\*transīlio**, **-ui** or **-īvi**, *d.* So **prōsīlio**.

**Sāio**, —, **ītum**, *r.* *d.* *to salt.*

**Sancio**, **sanxi**, **sancītum** or **sanctum**, *d.* *to ratify, sanction.*

**Sarcio**, **sarsi**, **sartum**, *d.* *to patch.*

**Sarrio**, **-īvi** or **-ui**, **sarrītum**, *d.* *to weed, hoe.*

**\*Scātūrio**, —, *to gush out.*

**Sentio**, **sensi** **sensum**, *r.* *to feel.*

**Sēpēlio**, **sēpeli** or **-ii**, *rar.* **sēpēli**, **sēpultum**, *r.* *d.* *to bury.*

**Sēpio**, **sepsi**, **septum**, *d.* *to hedge in.*

**\*Singultio**, —, *to sob, hiccup.*

**\*Sitio**, **sitii**, *to thirst.*

**Sutlio**, **-ii**, **-itum**, *d.* *to fumigate.*

**\*Tussio**, —, *to cough.*

**\*Vāgio**, **vāgii**, *to cry.*

**Vēnio**, **vēni**, **ventum**, *r.* *to come.*

**Vincio**, **vinxi**, **vinctum**, *r.* *d.* *to bind.*

**NOTE.** Desiderative verbs want both the second and third roots, except these three;—**\*ēsūrio**, —, **ēsūrītus**, *r.* *to desire to eat*; **\*nuptūrio**, **-īvi**, *to desire to marry*; **\*partūrio**, **-īvi**, *to be in travail*. See § 187, II. 3.

### § 177. Deponent Verbs of the Fourth Conjugation.

**Assentior**, **assensus**, *r.* *d.* *p.* *to assent.*

**Blandior**, **blanditus**, *to flatter.*

**Largior**, **largītus**, *p.* *to give, bestow.*

**Mentior**, **mentītus**, *r.* *p.* *to lie.*

**Mētior**, **mensus** or **mētītus**, *d.* *p.* *to measure.*

**Mōlior**, **mōlitus**, *d.* *to strive, toil.*

**Ordior**, **orsus**, *d.* *p.* *to begin.*

**Orior**, **ortus**, **ōritūrus**, *d.* *to spring up.*  
*Except in the present infinitive, this verb seems to be of the third conjugation.*

**Pērior**, (*obs.* *whence pēritus.*) **ex-pērior**, **expertus**, *r.* *d.* *to try.* **oppērior**, **oppertus** or **oppēritus**, *d.* *to wait for.*

**Partior**, **partītus**, *d.* *to divide.*

**Pōtior**, **pōtitus**, *r.* *d.* *to obtain, enjoy.*  
*In the poets the present indicative and imperfect subjunctive are sometimes of the third conjugation.*

**Sortior**, **sortītus**, *r.* *to cast lots.*

## IRREGULAR VERBS.

§ 178. Irregular verbs are such as deviate from the common forms in some of the parts derived from the first root.

They are *sum*, *vōlo*, *fěro*, *ědo*, *fīo*, *eo*, *queo*, and their compounds.

*Sum* and its compounds have already been conjugated. See § 153. In the conjugation of the rest, the parts which are irregular are fully exhibited, but a synopsis only, of the other parts is, in general, given. Some parts of *volo* and of its compounds are wanting.

1. *Volo* is irregular only in the present of the indicative and infinitive, and in the present and imperfect of the subjunctive.

**REMARK.** It is made irregular partly by syncope, and partly by a change in the vowel of the root. In the present infinitive also and in the imperfect subjunctive, after *ē* was dropped, *r* following *l* was changed into *l*; as, **velēre** (*velre*) *velle*; **velērem** (*velrem*) *vellem*.

*Pres. Indic.*      *Pres. Infin.*      *Perf. Indic.*

**vōl'-lō,**

**vel'-lē,**

**vōl'-u-ī,**

*to be willing, to wish.*

## INDICATIVE.

<i>Pres. S.</i> vō'-lō, vīs, vult;	<i>Perf.</i> vōl'-u-ī
<i>P.</i> vōl'-ū-mūs, vul'-tis, vō'-lunt.	<i>Plup.</i> vō-lu'-ē ram
<i>Imperf.</i> vō-lē'-bam, vō-lē'-bās, etc.	<i>Fut. perf.</i> vō-lu'-ē-rō.
<i>Fut.</i> vō'-lam, vō'-lēs, etc.	

## SUBJUNCTIVE.

<i>Pres. S.</i> vē'-lim, vē'-lis, vē'-lit;	<i>Perf.</i> vō-lu'-ē-rim.
<i>P.</i> vē-lī'-mūs, vē-lī'-tis, vē'-lint.	<i>Plup.</i> vōl-u-is'-sem.
<i>Imperf. S.</i> vel'-lem, vel'-lēs, vel'-lēt;	
<i>P.</i> vel-lē'-mūs, vel-lē'-tis, vel'-lent.	

## INFINITIVE.

<i>Pres.</i> vel'-lē.
<i>Perf.</i> vōl-u-is'-sē.

## PARTICIPLE.

<i>Pres.</i> vō'-lens.
------------------------

NOTE. *Volt* and *voltis*, for *vult* and *vultis*, and *vin'*, for *visne* are found in Plautus and other ancient authors.

2. *Nōlo* is compounded of the obsolete *nē* (for *non*) and *vōlo*. The *v* of *vōlo* after *nē* is dropped, and the vowels (*ē ō*) are contracted into *ō*.

<i>Pres. Indic.</i>	<i>Pres. Infin.</i>	<i>Perf. Indic.</i>	
nō'-lō,	no'-lē,	nōl'-u-ī,	<i>to be unwilling.</i>

## INDICATIVE.

<i>Pres. S.</i> nō'-lō, non'-vis, non'-vult;	<i>Perf.</i> nōl'-u-ī.
<i>P.</i> nōl'-ū-mūs, non-vul'-tis, nō'-lunt.	<i>Plup.</i> nō-lu'-ē-ram.
<i>Imperf.</i> nō-lē'-bam, -bās, -bāt, etc.	<i>Fut. perf.</i> nō-lu'-ē-rō.
<i>Fut.</i> nō'-lam, -lēs, -lēt, etc.	

## SUBJUNCTIVE.

<i>Pres. S.</i> nō'-lim, nō'-lis, nō'-lit;	<i>Perf.</i> nō-lu'-ē-rim.
<i>P.</i> nō-lī'-mūs, nō-lī'-tis, nō'-lint.	<i>Plup.</i> nōl-u-is'-sem.
<i>Imperf. S.</i> nol'-lem, nol'-lēs, nol'-lēt;	
<i>P.</i> nol-lē'-mūs, nol-lē'-tis, nol'-lent.	

## IMPERATIVE.

<i>Present.</i>	<i>Future.</i>
<i>Sing. 2</i> nō'-lī; <i>Plur.</i> nō-lī-tě.	<i>Sing. 2.</i> nō-lī'-tō, <i>Plur.</i> nōl-lī-tō' tě,
	<i>3.</i> nō-lī'-tō; nō-lun'-tě

## INFINITIVE.

<i>Pres.</i> nol'-lē.
<i>Perf.</i> nōl-u-is'-sē.

## PARTICIPLE.

<i>Pres.</i> nō'-lens.
------------------------

NOTE. In *non-vis*, *non-vult*, etc. of the present, *non* takes the place of *ne*, but *nevis* and *nevult* also occur in Plautus.

3. *Mālo* is compounded of *māgis* and *vōlo*. In composition *māgis* drops its final syllable, and *vōlo* its *v*. The vowels (*ā ō*) are then contracted into *ā*.

<i>Pres. Indic.</i>	<i>Pres. Infin.</i>	<i>Perf. Indic.</i>
mā'-lō,	mal'-lē,	māl'-u-ī, to prefer.

## INDICATIVE.

<i>Pres. S.</i> mā'-lō, mā'-vis, mā'-vult;	<i>Perf.</i> māl'-u-ī.
<i>P.</i> māl'-ū-mūs, mā-vul'-tis, mā'-lunt.	<i>P'up.</i> mā-lu'-ē-ram.
<i>Imperf.</i> mā-lē'-bam, -bās, etc.	<i>Fut. perf.</i> mā-lu'-ē-rō.
<i>Fut.</i> mā'-lam, -lēs, etc.	

## SUBJUNCTIVE.

<i>Pres. S.</i> mā'-lim, mā'-lis, mā'-lit;	<i>Perf.</i> mā-lu'-ē-rim.
<i>P.</i> mā-lī'-mūs, mā-lī'-tis, mā'-lint.	<i>Plup.</i> māl-u-is'-sem.
<i>Imperf. S.</i> mal'-lem, mal'-lēs, mal'-lēt;	
<i>P.</i> mal-lē'-mūs, mal-lē'-tis, mal'-lert.	

## INFINITIVE.

<i>Pres.</i> mal'-lē.	<i>Perf.</i> māl-u-is'-sē.
-----------------------	----------------------------

NOTE. *Māvōlo*, *māvōlunt*; *māvōlet*; *māvēlim*, *māvēlis*, *māvēlit*; and *māvellem*; for *mālo*, *mālunt*, etc., occur in Plautus.

§ 179. *Fēro* is irregular in two respects:—1. Its second and third roots are not derived from the first, but from otherwise obsolete verbs, viz. *tūlo* for *tollo*, and *tlao*, sup. *tlātum*, by aphæresis, *lātum*:—2. In the present infinitive active, in the imperfect subjunctive, and in certain parts of the present indicative and imperative, of both voices, the connecting vowel is omitted. In the present infinitive passive, *r* is doubled.

## ACTIVE VOICE.

## PASSIVE VOICE.

<i>Pres. Indic.</i> fē'-rō, (to bear.)	<i>Pres. Indic.</i> fē'-rōr, (to be borne.)
<i>Pres. Infin.</i> fer'-rē,	<i>Pres. Infin.</i> fer'-rī,
<i>Perf. Indic.</i> tū'-lī,	<i>Perf. Part.</i> lā'-tūs.
<i>Supine.</i> lā'-tum.	

## INDICATIVE.

## Present.

<i>S</i> fē'-rō, fers, fert;	fē'-rōr, fer'-ris or -rē, fer'-tūr;
<i>P</i> fēr'-ī-mūs, fer'-tis, fē'-runt.	fēr'-ī-mūr, fē-rīm'-ī-nī, fē-run'-tūr

<i>Imperf.</i> fē-rē'-bam.	<i>Imperf.</i> fē-rē'-bār.
<i>Fut.</i> fē'-ram, -rēs, etc.	<i>Fut.</i> fē'-rār -rē'-ris or -rē'-rē, etc.
<i>Perf.</i> tū'-lī.	<i>Perf.</i> lā'-tūs sum or fu'-ī.
<i>Plup.</i> tū'lē'-ram.	<i>Plup.</i> lā'-tūs ē'-ram or fu'-ē-ram.
<i>Fut. perf.</i> tū'lē'-rō	<i>Fut. perf.</i> lā'-tūs ē'-rō or fu'-ē-rō.



## SUBJUNCTIVE.

<i>Pres.</i> fě·ram, -rās, etc.	<i>Pres.</i> fě'-rār, -ra'-rīs or -rā'-rě, etc.
<i>Imperf.</i> fer'-icm, -rēs, etc.	<i>Imperf.</i> fer'-rēr, -rē-rīs, etc.
<i>Perf.</i> tū'-lē-rim.	<i>Perf.</i> lā' tūs sim or fu'-ě-rim.
<i>Plup.</i> tū-lis'-sem.	<i>Plup.</i> lā tūs es'-sem or fu-is'-sem.

## IMPERATIVE.

<i>Pres. S.</i> fěr ;	<i>P.</i> fer'-tě.	<i>Pres. S.</i> fer'-rě ;	<i>P.</i> fě-rīm'-ī-nī.
<i>Fut. S.</i> fer'-tō,	<i>P.</i> fer-tō'-tě,	<i>Fut. S.</i> fer'-tōr,	<i>F.</i> (fě-rēm'-ī-nī.)
fer'-tō ;	fě-run'-tō.	fer'-tōr ;	fě-run'-tōr.

## INFINITIVE.

<i>Pres.</i> fer'-rě.	<i>Pres.</i> fer'-rī.
<i>Perf.</i> tū-lis'-sě.	<i>Perf.</i> lā'-tūs es'-sě or fu-is'-sě.
<i>Fut.</i> lā-tū'-rūs es'-sě.	<i>Fut.</i> lā'-tum ī-rī.

## PARTICIPLES.

<i>Pres.</i> fě'-rens.	<i>Perf.</i> lā'-tūs.
<i>Fut.</i> lā-tu'-rūs.	<i>Fut.</i> fě-ren'-dūs.

## GERUND.

fě-ren'-dī, etc.

## SUPINES.

*Former.* lā'-tum.*Latter.* lā'-tū.

**NOTE.** In the comic writers the following reduplicated forms are found in parts derived from the second root, viz. *tetūli*, *tetulisti*, *tetūlit*, *tetulērunt* ; *tetulēro*, *tetulērīt* ; *tetulisse*, and *tetulisse*.

§ 180. *Fīo*, 'to become,' is properly a neuter verb of the third conjugation, having only the parts derived from the first root ; but it is used also as a passive of *fācio*, from which it takes those parts of the passive which are derived from the third root, together with the participle in *dus*. The infinitive present has been changed from the regular form *fīērē* to *fīērī*.

<i>Pres. Indic.</i>	<i>Pres. Infin.</i>	<i>Perf. Part.</i>
fī'-ō,	fī'-ērī,	fac'-tūs, to be made or to become.

## INDICATIVE.

<i>Pres. S.</i> fī'-ō, fīs, tīt ;	<i>Perf.</i> fac'-tūs sum or fu'-ī.
<i>P.</i> fī-mūs, fī'-tīs, fī'-unt.	<i>Plup.</i> fac'-tūs ẽ'-ram or fu'-ẽ'-ram.
<i>Imperf.</i> fī-ẽ'-bam, fī-ẽ'-bās, etc.	<i>Fut. perf.</i> fac'-tūs ẽ'-rō or fu'-ẽ'-rō.
<i>Fut.</i> fī'-am, fī'-ēs, etc.	

## SUBJUNCTIVE.

<i>Pres.</i> fī'-am, fī'-ās, etc.	<i>Perf.</i> fac'-tūs sim or fu'-ẽ'-rim.
<i>Imp.</i> fī'-ẽ'-ram, -ẽ'-rēs, etc.	<i>Plup.</i> fac'-tūs es'-sem or fu-



§ 182. *Eo* is irregular in the parts which, in other verbs, are formed from the first root, except the imperfect subjunctive and the present infinitive. In these, and in the parts formed from the second and third roots, it is a regular verb of the fourth conjugation

NOTE. *Eo* has no first root, and the parts usually derived from that root, consist, in this verb, of terminations only.

<i>Pres. Indic.</i>	<i>Pres. Infin.</i>	<i>Perf. Indic.</i>	<i>Perf. Part.</i>
e'-ō,	ī-rē,	ī-vī,	ī-tum, to go.

## INDICATIVE.

<i>Pres. S.</i> e'-ō, is, it;	<i>Fut.</i> ī-bō, ī-bīs, ī-bīt, etc.
<i>P.</i> ī-mūs, ī-tīs, e'-unt.	<i>Perf.</i> ī-vī, ī-vis'-tī, ī-vīt, etc.
<i>Imperf. S.</i> ī-bam, ī-bās, ī-bāt;	<i>Plup.</i> īv'-ē-ram, īv'-ē-rās, etc.
<i>P.</i> ī-bā-mūs, etc.	<i>Fut perf.</i> īv'-ē-rō, īv'-ē-rīs, etc.

## SUBJUNCTIVE.

<i>Pres.</i> e'-am, e'-ās, e'-āt, etc.	<i>Perf.</i> īv'-ē-rim, īv'-ē-rīs, etc.
<i>Imperf.</i> ī-rem, ī-rēs, ī-rēt, etc.	<i>Plup.</i> ī-vis'-sem, ī-vis'-sēs, etc.

## IMPERATIVE.

<i>Pres. S.</i> ī;	<i>P.</i> ī-tē.
<i>Fut.</i> 2. ī-tō,	ī-tō'-tē,
3. ī-tō;	e-un'-tō.

## INFINITIVE.

<i>Pres.</i> ī-rē.
<i>Perf.</i> ī-vis'-sē.
<i>Fut.</i> ī-tū-rūs es'-sē.

## PARTICIPLES.

<i>Pres.</i> ī-ens, ( <i>gen.</i> e-un'-tīs.)
<i>Fut.</i> ī-tū-rūs, a, um.

## GERUND.

e-un'-dī,
e-un'-dō, etc.

REMARK 1. In some of the compounds the forms *eam*, *ies*, *iet* occur, though rarely, in the future; as, *redeam*, *redies*, *abiet*, *exiet*, *prodient*. *Istis*, *issem*, and *isse*, are formed by contraction for *ivistis*, *ivissem*, and *ivisse*. See § 162, 7.

REM. 2. In the passive voice are found the infinitive *iri*, and the third persons singular *itur*, *ibātur*, *ibitur*, *itum est*, etc.; *eātur*, *irētur*, *eundum est*, etc., which are used impersonally. See § 184, 2, (a.)

REM. 3. The compounds of *eo*, including *vēneo*, are conjugated like the simple verb, but most of them have *ui* in the perfect rather than *ivi*. See under *eo* in § 176. *Adeo*, *anteo*, *ineo*, *prætereo*, *sūbeo*, and *transeo*, being used actively, are found in the passive voice. *Iniētur* occurs as a future passive of *ineo*. *Ambio* is regular, like *audio*, but has either *ambibat* or *ambiēbat*.

NOTE. *Queo*, I can, and *nequeo*, I cannot, are conjugated like *eo*, but they want the imperative mood and the gerund, and their participles rarely occur. They are sometimes found in the passive voice, before an infinitive passive.

## DEFECTIVE VERBS.

§ 183. (1.) Defective verbs are those which are not used in certain tenses, numbers, or persons.

REMARK. There are many verbs which are not found in all the tenses, numbers, and persons, exhibited in the paradigms. Some, not originally defective, are accounted so, because they do not occur in the classics now extant. Others are in their nature defective. Thus, the first and second persons of the passive voice must be wanting in many verbs, from the nature of their signification.

(2.) The following list contains such verbs as are remarkable for wanting many of their parts:—

- |                               |                              |                                   |
|-------------------------------|------------------------------|-----------------------------------|
| 1. Odi, <i>I hate.</i>        | 6. Fāri, <i>to speak.</i>    | 11. Cēdo, <i>tell, or give me</i> |
| 2. Cœpi, <i>I have begun.</i> | 7. Quæso, <i>I pray.</i>     | 12. Confit, <i>it is done.</i>    |
| 8. Mēmīni, <i>I remember.</i> | 8. Ave, } <i>hail, or</i>    | 13. Dēfit, <i>it is wanting.</i>  |
| 4. Aio, } <i>I say.</i>       | 9. Salve, } <i>farewell.</i> | 14. Infīt, <i>he begins.</i>      |
| 5. Inquam, }                  | 10. Apāge, <i>begone.</i>    | 15. Ovat, <i>he rejoices.</i>     |

1. *Odi*, *cœpi*, and *memīni* are used chiefly in the perfect and in the other parts formed from the second root, and are thence called *preteritive verbs*. *Odi* has also a deponent form in the perfect:— Thus,

IND. perf. ō'-di or ō'-sus sum; *plup.* ōd'-ē-ram; *fut. perf.* ōd'-ē-ro.

SUBJ. perf. ōd'-ē-rim; *plup.* ō-dis'-sem.

INF. perf. ō-dis'-se; *fut.* ō-sū'-rum es'-se.

PART. *fut.* ō-sū'-rus; *perf.* ō'-sus.

NOTE 1. *Exōsus* and *pērōsus*, like *ōsus*, are used actively. *Odīvīt*, for *ōdit*, occurs, M. Anton. in Cic. Phil. 13, 19: and *odiendi* in Appuleius.

2. IND. perf. cœ'-pi; *plup.* cœp'-ē-ram; *fut. perf.* cœp'-ē-ro.

SUBJ. perf. cœp'-ē-rim; *plup.* cœ-pis'-sem.

INF. perf. cœ-pis'-se; *fut.* cœp-tū'-rum es'-se.

PART. *fut.* cœp-tū'-rus; *perf.* cœp'-tus.

NOTE 2. In Plautus are found a present, *cœpio*, present subjunctive, *cœpiam*, and infinitive, *cœpere*. Before an infinitive passive, *cæptus est*, etc., rather than *cœpi*, etc., are commonly used.

3. IND. perf. mēm'-i-ni; *plup.* mē-mīn'-ē-ram; *fut. perf.* mē-mīn'-ē-ro.

SUBJ. perf. mē-mīn'-ē-rim; *plup.* mēm'-i-nis'-sem.

INF. perf. mēm'-i-nis'-sē.

IMPERAT. 2 pers. S. mē-men'-to; P. mēm-en-tō'-tē.

NOTE 3. *Odī* and *memīni* have, in the perfect, the sense of the present, and, in the pluperfect and future perfect, the sense of the imperfect and future, as, *fugiet atque odērit*. Cic. In this respect. *nōvi*, I know, the perfect of *novio*, to learn, and *consuēvi*, I am wont, the perfect of *consuesco*, I accustom myself, agree with *odī* and *memīni*.

4. IND. pres. ai'-o,\* a'-īs, a'-īt; —, —, ai'-unt.\*

— *imp.* ai-ē'-bam, ai-ē'-bās, ai-ē'-bāt; ai-ē-bā'-mūs, ai-ē-bā'-tīs, ai-ē'-bant.

SUBJ. pres. —, ai'-ās, ai'-āt; —, —, ai'-ant.

IMPERAT. pres. a'-ī. PART. pres. ai'-ens.

NOTE 4. *Ais* with *ne* is contracted to *ain'*; like *viden'*, *ābin'*, for *videns abisne*. The comic writers use the imperfect *aibas*, *aibat* and *aibant*, which are dissyllabic.

5. IND. pres. in'-quam, in'-quīs, in'-quīt; in'-quī-mūs, in'-quī-tīs, in'-qui-unt,

— *imp.* —, —, in-qui-ē'-bāt, and in-quī-bāt; —, —, in-qui-ē'-bant

— *fut.* —, in'-qui-ēs, in'-qui-et; —, —, —.

— *perf.* —, in-quis'-tī, in' quīt; —, —, —.

SUBJ. pres. —, in'-qui-ās, in'-qui-āt; —, in-qui-ā'-tīs, in'-qui-ant.

IMPERAT. in'-quē, in'-quī-to.

6. IND. pres. —, —, fā'-tūr; *fut.* fā'-bōr, — fāb'-ī-tūr.

— *perf.* fātus est; *plup.* fātus eram.

IMPERAT. fā'-rē. PART. pres. fāns; *perf.* fā'-ūs; *fut.* fān'-dūs.

INFIN. pres. fā'-rī or fā'-rī-ēr. GERUND. *gen.* fān'-dī; *abl.* fān'-dō.

SUPINE, fā'-tū.

\* Pronounced a'-yo, a'-yunt, etc., wherever the diphthong *ai* is followed by a vowel. See § 9, 1.



*Interfāri* has the forms *interfātur*, *interfāta est*, *interfāri*, *interfāns*, and *interfātus*.—*Effāri* has *effābor*, *effābore*, *effātus est*, *effāti sunt*; imperat. *effāre*; *effāri*, *effātus*, *effandus*, *effandō*; *effātu*.—*Præfāri* occurs in the following forms, *præfātur*, *præfāmur*; *præfabantur*; *præfārer*; *præfarentur*; *præfāti sūmus*; *præfātus fuero*; imperat. *præfāto*, *præfāmino*; *præfāns*, *præfātus*, *præfandus*; *præfando*.—*Prōfāri* has *profātur*, *profāta est*, *profāta sunt*, *profātus* and *prōfāns*.

7. IND. pres. quæ'-so, —, quæ'-sit; quæs'-ū-mūs, —, —.  
INF. pres. quæs'-ē-rē.
8. IMPERAT. ā'-vē, ā'-vē'-tē; ā'-vē'-to. INF. ā'-vē'-rē.  
NOTE. *Acēre* and *salvēre* are often used with *jūbeo*.
9. IND. pres. sal'-ve-o; fut. sal'-vē'-bīs. INF. pres. sal'-vē'-rē.  
IMPERAT. sal'-vē, sal'-vē'-tē; sal'-vē'-to.
10. IMPERAT. āp'-ā-gē. So *āge* with a subject either singular or plural.
11. IMPERAT. sing. cē'-do; pl. cet'-tē for cēd'-ī-tē. Hence *cēdodum*.
12. IND. pres. con'-fīt; fut. con'-fī'-et.  
SUBJ. pres. con'-fī'-āt; imperf. con'-fī'-ē-rēt. INF. pres. con'-fī'-ē-rī.
13. IND. pres. dē'-fīt; pl. dē'-fī'-unt; fut. dē'-fī'-ēt. SUBJ. pres. dē'-fī'-āt.  
INF. pres. dē'-fī'-ē-rī. So *ef-fī'-ē-rī*, and *in-ter-fī'-ē-rī*. *Plaut.*; and *in-ter-fī'-at*. *Lucr.*
14. IND. pres. in'-fīt; pl. in'-fī'-unt.
15. IND. pres. ō'-vāt. SUBJ. pres. ō'-vēt; imperf. ō'-vā'-rēt.  
PART. pres. ō'-vans; perf. ō'-vā'-tūs; fut. ōv'-ā-tū'-rūs. GERUND, ō-van'-dī.

REMARK 1. Among defective verbs are sometimes, also, included the following:—*Fōrem*, *fōres*, etc., *fōrē*, (see § 154, R. 3.) *Ausim*, *ausis*, *ausit*; *auxint*. *Faxo* and *faxim*, *faxis*, *faxit*; *faximus*, *faxitis*, *faxint*. *Faxem*. The form in *o* is an old future perfect; that in *im* a perfect, and that in *em* a pluperfect subjunctive. See § 162, 7, (c.), and 9.

REM. 2. In the present tense, the first person singular, *fūro*, to be mad, and *dor* and *der*, from *do*, to give, are not used. So in the imperative *scī*, *cūpe* and *polle*, from *scio*, *cūpio*, and *polleo*, do not occur.

REM. 3. A few words, sometimes classed with defectives, are formed by contraction from a verb and the conjunction *sī*; as, *sis* for *sī vis*, *sultis* for *sī vultis*, *sōdes* for *sī audes* (for *audies*.)

## IMPERSONAL VERBS.

§ 184. (a.) Impersonal verbs are those which are used only in the third person singular, and do not admit of a personal subject.

(b.) The subject of an impersonal verb in the active voice is, for the most part, either an infinitive, or an infinitive or subjunctive clause; but in English the neuter pronoun, *it*, commonly stands before the verb, and represents such clause; as, *me delectat scribēre*, *it delights me to write*. Sometimes an accusative depending on an impersonal verb takes, in English, the place of a subject; as, *me misēret tui*, *I pity thee*.

1. Impersonal verbs in the active voice are conjugated in the several conjugations like *delectat*, *it delights*; *dēcet*, *it becomes*; *contingit*, *it happens*; *evēnit*, *it happens*; *this*:—

	1st Conj.	2d Conj.	3d Conj.	4th Conj.
IND. Pres.	delectat,	deceat,	contingit,	evēnit,
Imp.	delectābat,	decēbat,	contingēbat,	eveniēbat,
Fut.	delectābit,	decēbit,	continget,	eveniet,
Perf.	delectāvit,	decuīt,	contigit,	evēnit,
Plup.	delectavērat,	decuērat,	contigērat,	evenērat,
Fut. perf.	delectavērit.	decuērit.	contigērit.	evenērit.
SUB. Pres.	delectet,	deceat,	contingat,	eveniat,
Imp.	delectāret,	decēret,	contingēret,	eveniret,
Perf.	delectavērit,	decuērit,	contigērit,	evenērit,
Plup.	delectavisset.	decuisset.	contigisset.	evenisset.
INF. Pres.	delectāre,	decēre,	contingēre,	evenire,
Perf.	delectavisse.	decuisse.	contigisse.	evenisse.

2 (a.) Most *neuter* and many *active* verbs may be used impersonally in the passive voice, by changing the personal subject of the active voice into an ablative with the preposition *a* or *ab*; as,

*Illi pugnant*; or *pugnātur ab illis*, they fight. *Illi quærent*, or *quæritur ab illis*, they ask. Cf. § 141, Rem. 2.

(b.) In the passive form, the subject in English is, commonly, either the *agent*, expressed or understood, or an *abstract* noun formed from the verb; as,

*Pugnātum est*, we, they, etc. fought; or, the battle was fought. *Concurritur*, the people run together; or, there is a *concourse*.

(c.) Sometimes the English subject in the passive form is, in Latin, an oblique case dependent on the verb; as, *favētur tibi*, thou art favored.

The following are the forms of impersonal verbs in the several conjugations of the passive voice:—

#### INDICATIVE MOOD.

Pres.	pugnātur,	favētur,	curritur,	venitur,
Imp.	pugnabātur,	favebātur,	currebātur,	veniebātur,
Fut.	pugnabitur,	favebitur,	currētur,	veniētur,
Perf.	pugnātum est or fuit,	fautum est or fuit,	cursum est or fuit,	ventum est or fuit,
Plup.	pugnātum erat or fuērat,	fautum erat or fuērat,	cursum erat or fuērat,	ventum erat or fuērat,
Fut. p.	pugnātum erit or fuērit.	fautum erit or fuērit.	cursum erit or fuērit.	ventum erit or fuērit.

#### SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

Pres.	pugnētur,	faveātur,	currātur,	veniātur,
Imp.	pugnārētur,	faverētur,	currerētur,	venirētur,
Perf.	pugnātum sit or faērit,	fautum sit or fuērit,	cursum sit or fuērit,	ventum sit or fuērit,
Plup.	pugnātum esset or fuisset.	fautum esset or fuisset.	cursum esset or fuisset.	ventum esset or fuisset.

#### INFINITIVE MOOD.

Pres	pugnāri,	favēri,	curri,	venīri,
Perf	pugnātum esse or fuisse,	fautum esse or fuisse,	cursum esse or fuisse,	ventum esse or fuisse,
Fut.	pugnātum iri.	fautum iri.	cursum iri.	ventum iri.

3. In like manner, in the periphrastic conjugation, the neuter gender of the participle in *dus*, both of active and neuter verbs, is used impersonally with *est*, etc., and the *dative* of the person; as, *nibi scribendum fuit*, I have been obliged to write; *moriendum est omnibus*, all must die. See § 162, 15, R. 5.

REMARK 1. Grammarians usually reckon only ten real impersonal verbs, all of which are of the second conjugation, viz. *dēcet*, *libet*, *licet*, *liquet*, *misēret oportet*, *piget*, *pēnitet*, *pūdet*, and *tēdet*. (See § 169.) Four of these, *dēcet*, *libet*, *licet*, and *liquet* occur also in the third person plural, but without personal subjects. There seems, however, to be no good reason for distinguishing the verbs above enumerated from other impersonal verbs. The following are such other verbs as are most commonly used impersonally:—

(a.) In the first conjugation:—

Constat, <i>it is evident.</i>	Vācat, <i>there is leisure.</i>	Pugnātur, <i>a battle is fought.</i>
Jūvat, <i>it delights.</i>	Certātur, <i>there is a contention.</i>	Stātur, <i>they stand firm.</i>
Præstat, <i>it is better.</i>		
Restat, <i>it remains.</i>	Peccātur, <i>a fault is committed.</i>	
Stat, <i>it is resolved.</i>		

(b.) In the second conjugation:—

Appāret, <i>it appears.</i>	Pertinet, <i>it pertains.</i>	Persuadētur, <i>he, they, etc. are persuaded.</i>
Attinet, <i>it belongs to.</i>	Plācet, <i>it pleases.</i>	
Displicet, <i>it displeases.</i>	Flētur, <i>we, etc. weep, or, there is weeping.</i>	Pertæsum est, <i>he, they, etc. are disgusted with.</i>
Dōlet, <i>it grieves.</i>		
Miserētur, <i>it distresses.</i>	Nocētur, <i>injury is inflicted.</i>	Silētur, <i>silence is maintained.</i>
Pātet, <i>it is plain.</i>		

(c.) In the third conjugation:—

Accēdit, <i>it happens.</i>	Miserescit, <i>it distresses.</i>	Desinītur, <i>there is an end.</i>
Condūcit, <i>it is useful.</i>	Sufficit, <i>it suffices.</i>	Scribitur, <i>it is written.</i>
Contingit, <i>it happens.</i>	Creditur, <i>it is believed.</i>	Vivītur, <i>we, etc. live.</i>
Fallit, or } <i>it escapes me;</i>	Curritur, <i>people run.</i>	
Fūgit me, } <i>I do not know.</i>		

(d.) In the fourth conjugation:—

Convēnit, <i>it is agreed upon; it is fit.</i>	Expēdit, <i>it is expedient.</i>	Scītur, <i>it is known.</i>
Evēnit, <i>it happens.</i>	Dormītur, <i>we, they, etc. sleep.</i>	Itur, <i>they, etc. go.</i>
		Venītur, <i>they, etc. come.</i>

(e.) Among irregular verbs:—

Fit, <i>it happens.</i>	Prætērit me, <i>it is unknown to me.</i>	Rēfert, <i>it concerns.</i>
Intērest, <i>it concerns.</i>		Sūbit, <i>it occurs.</i>
Obest, <i>it is hurtful.</i>	Prōdest, <i>it avails.</i>	Supērest, <i>it remains.</i>

(f.) To these may be added verbs signifying the state of the weather, or the operations of nature. The subject of these may be *Jupiter*, *deus*, or *cælum*, which are sometimes expressed. Of this kind are the following:—

Fulget, }	Lapidat, <i>it rains stones.</i>	Tōnat, <i>it thunders.</i>
Fulgūrat, } <i>it lightens.</i>	Lucescit, }	Vesperascit, } <i>evening</i>
Fulminat, }	Illucescit, } <i>it grows light.</i>	Advesperascit, } <i>ap-</i>
Fēlat, <i>it freezes.</i>	Ningit, <i>it snows.</i>	Invesperascit, } <i>proaches.</i>
Franginat, <i>it hails.</i>	Pluit, <i>it rains.</i>	

*Lapidat*, *ningit*, and *pluit* are also used impersonally in the passive voice.



REM. 2. Impersonal verbs, not being used in the imperative, take the subjunctive in its stead; as, *delectet*, let it delight. In the passive voice, their perfect participles are used only in the neuter.

REM. 3. Most of the impersonal verbs want participles, gerunds, and supines; but *penitet* has a present participle, futures in *rus* and *das*, and the gerund. *Pūdet* and *pīget* have also the gerund and future passive participle.

REM. 4. Most of the above verbs are also used personally, but frequently in a somewhat different sense; as, *ut Tiberis inter eos et pons interesset*, so that the Tiber and bridge were between them.

## REDUNDANT VERBS.

§ 185. Redundant verbs are those which have different forms to express the same meaning.

Verbs may be redundant in *termination*; as, *fabrīco* and *fabrīcor*, to frame;—in *conjugation*; as, *lāvo*, -āre, and *lāvo*, -ēre, to wash;—or in certain tenses; as, *ōdi* and *ōsus sum*, I hate.

1. The following deponent verbs, besides their passive form, have an active form in *o*, of the same meaning, but which is, in general, rarely used. A few, however, which are marked *r.*, occur more rarely than the corresponding forms in *o*.

Abominor, to abhor.	Fabrīcor, to frame.	Oscitor, to gape.
Adūlor, to flatter.	Fenēror, to lend on interest.	Pacificor, <i>r.</i> to make a peace.
Altercor, to dispute.	Fluctuor, to fluctuate.	Palpor, to caress.
Amplexor, to embrace.	Frustror, to disappoint.	Partior, to divide.
Arbitror, to suppose.	Fruticor, to sprout.	Popūlor, to lay waste.
Argūtor, to prate.	Impertior, <i>r.</i> to impart.	Pūnior, to punish.
Assentior, to assent.	Jurgor, to quarrel.	Ruminor, to ruminate.
Aucūpor, to hunt after.	Lacrīnor, <i>r.</i> to weep.	Sciscitor, to inquire.
Angūror, to foretell.	Ludificor, to ridicule.	Sortior, to cast lots.
Aurīgor, to drive a chariot.	Luxūrior, <i>r.</i> to be rank.	Stabūlor, to stable.
Auspīcor, to take the auspices.	Medīcor, to heal.	Tueor, to defend.
Cachinnor, <i>r.</i> to laugh aloud.	Mēreor, to deserve.	Tumultuor, to be in confusion.
Comītor, to accompany.	Mētor, to measure.	Tūtor, to defend.
Commentor, to deliberate.	Misēreor, to commiserate.	Ūtor, to use.
Convīvor, to feast together.	Modēror, to moderate.	Urīnor, to dive.
Cunctor, (cont.), to delay.	Munēror, <i>r.</i> to bestow.	Velificor, to set sail.
Dignor, to deem worthy.	Nictor, <i>r.</i> to wink.	Venēror, to reverence.
Depascor, to feed upon.	Nūtrior, <i>r.</i> to nourish.	Vociferor, to bawl.
Elucubror, to elaborate.	Obsōnor, to cater.	
	Opīnor, to suppose.	

2. The following verbs are redundant in conjugation:—

Boo, -āre, } to roar.	Fulgeo, -ēre, } to shine.	Sōno, -āre, } to sound.
Boo, -ēre, <i>r.</i> }	Fulgo, -ēre, <i>r.</i> }	Sōno, -ēre, }
Bullo, -āre, } to boil.	Lāvo, -āre, }	Strideo, -ēre, } to creak.
Bullio, -ire, }	Lāvo, -ēre, <i>r.</i> }	Strido, -ēre, }
Cīo, -ēre, } to excite.	Līno, -ēre, }	Tergeo, -ēre, } to wipe.
Cīo, -ire, <i>r.</i> }	Līnio, -ire, <i>r.</i> }	Tergo, -ēre, }
Denso, -āre, } to thicken.	Nicto, -āre, }	Tueor, -ēri, } to protect.
Denseo, -ēre, }	Nicto, -ēre, }	Tuor, -i, <i>r.</i> }
Ferveo, -ēre, } to boil.	Sālo, -ēre, }	
Fervo, -ēre, }	Sālio, -ire, }	
Fōdio, -ēre, } to dig.	Scāteo, -ēre, }	
Iōdio, -ire, <i>r.</i> }	Scāto, -ēre, <i>r.</i> }	

Those marked *r.* are rarely used.



*Mōrior, ōrior, and pōrior*, also, are redundant in conjugation in certain parts See in lists §§ 174 and 177.

§ 186. 1. Some verbs are spelled alike, or nearly alike, but differ in conjugation, quantity, pronunciation, or signification, or in two or more of these respects.

Such are the following:—

Abdico, -āre, to abdicate.	Edo, -ēre, to eat.	Nitor, -i, to strive.
Abdico, -ēre, to refuse.	Ēdo, -ēre, to publish.	Obsēro, -āre, to lock up
Accido, -ēre, to fall upon.	Edūco, -āre, to educate.	Obsēro, -ēre, to sow.
Accido, -ēre, to cut down.	Edūco, -ēre, to draw out.	Occido, -ēre, to fall.
Addo, -ēre, to add.	Effēro, -āre, to make wild.	Occido, -ēre, to kill.
Adeo, -īre, to go to.	Effēro, -re, to carry out.	Opērio, -īre, to cover.
Aggēro, -āre, to heap up.	Excido, -ēre, to fall out.	Opēror, -āri, to work.
Aggēro, -ēre, to heap upon.	Excido, -ēre, to cut off.	Oppērior, -īri, to wait for
Allēgo, -āre, to depute.	Ferio, -īre, to strike.	Pando, -āre, to bend.
Allēgo, -ēre, to choose.	Fero, -re, to bear.	Pando, -ēre, to extend.
Appello, -āre, to call.	Fērior, -āri, to keep holiday.	Pāro, -āre, to prepare.
Appello, -ēre, to drive to.	Frigeo, -ēre, to be cold.	Pāreo, -ēre, to appear.
Cādo, -ēre, to fall.	Frigo, -ēre, to fry.	Pārio, -ēre, to bring forth
Cādo, -ēre, to cut.	Fūgo, -āre, to put to flight.	Pārio, -āre, to balance.
Cēdo, -ēre, to yield.	Fūgio, -ēre, to fly.	Pendeo, -ēre, to hang.
Cāleo, -ēre, to be hot.	Fundo, -āre, to found.	Pendo, -ēre, to weigh.
Calleo, -ēre, to be hard.	Fundo, -ēre, to pour out.	Percōlo, -āre, to filter.
Cāno, -ēre, to sing.	Incido, -ēre, to fall into.	Percōlo, -ēre, to adorn.
Cāneo, -ēre, to be gray.	Incido, -ēre, to cut into.	Permāneo, -ēre, to remain.
Cāreo, -ēre, to want.	Indico, -āre, to show.	Permāno, -āre, to flow through.
Cāro, -ēre, to card wool.	Indico, -ēre, to proclaim.	Prædico, -āre, to publish.
Cēlo, -āre, to conceal.	Inficio, -ēre, to stain.	Prædico, -ēre, to foretell.
Cælo, -āre, to carve.	Infitor, -āri, to deny.	Prōdo, -ēre, to betray.
Censeo, -ēre, to think.	Intercido, -ēre, to happen.	Prōdeo, -īre, to come forth.
Sentio, -īre, to feel.	Intercido, -ēre, to cut asunder.	Recēdo, -ēre, to retire.
Claudo, -ēre, to shut.	Jāceo, -ēre, to lie.	Recido, -ēre, to fall back
Claudo, -ēre, to be lame.	Jācio, -ēre, to throw.	Recido, -ēre, to cut off.
Colligo, -āre, to bind together.	Lābo, -āre, to totter.	Reddo, -ēre, to restore.
Colligo, -ēre, to collect.	Lābor, -i, to glide.	Rēdeo, -īre, to return.
Cōlo, -āre, to strain.	Lacto, -āre, to suckle.	Refēro, -re, to bring back
Cōlo, -ēre, to cultivate.	Lacto, -āre, to deceive.	Refērio, -īre, to strike back
Compello, -āre, to accost.	Lēgo, -āre, to depute.	Relēgo, -āre, to remove.
Compello, -ēre, to force.	Lēgo, -ēre, to read.	Relēgo, -ēre, to read over
Concido, -ēre, to cut to pieces.	Liceo, -ēre, to be lawful.	Sēdo, -āre, to allay.
Concido, -ēre, to fall.	Liceor, -ēri, to bid for.	Sēdeo, -ēre, to sit.
Concendo, -ēre, to embark.	Liquo, -āre, to melt.	Sīdo, -ēre, to sink.
Conscindo, -ēre, to tear to pieces.	Liqueo, -ēre, to be manifest.	Sēro, -ēre, to sow.
Consterno, -āre, to terrify.	Liquor, -i, to melt.	Sēro, -ēre, to entwine.
Consterno, -ēre, to strew over.	Māno, -āre, to flow.	Succido, -ēre, to fall under.
Decido, -ēre, to fall down.	Māneo, -ēre, to stay.	Succido, -ēre, to cut down
Decido, -ēre, to cut off.	Mando, -āre, to command.	Vādo, -ēre, to go.
Decipio, -ēre, to deceive.	Mando, -ēre, to eat.	Vādor, -āri, to bind over by bail.
Desipio, -ēre, to dote.	Meto, -ēre, to reap.	Vēneo, -īre, to be sold.
Deligo, -āre, to tie up.	Mētor, -āri, to measure.	Venio, -īre, to come.
Deligo, -ēre, to choose.	Mētor, -āri, to measure.	Vēnor, -āri, to hunt.
Diligo, -ēre, to love.	Mētuo, -ēre, to fear.	Vincio, -īre, to bind.
Dico, -ēre, to say.	Misēror, -āri, to pity.	Vinco, -ēre, to conquer.
Dico, -āre, to dedicate.	Misēreor, -ēri, to pity.	Vōlo, -āre, to fly.
	Mōror, -āri, to delay.	Vōlo, velle, to be willing.
	Mōrior, -i, to die.	
	Nīteo, -ēre, to glitter.	

## 2. Different verbs have sometimes the same perfect ; as,

Aceo, acui, <i>to be sour.</i>	Fulcio, fulsi, <i>to prop.</i>	Pāveo, pāvi, <i>to fear.</i>
Acuo, acui, <i>to sharpen.</i>	Lūceo, luxi, <i>to shine.</i>	Pasco, pāvi, <i>to feed.</i>
Cresco, crēvi, <i>to grow.</i>	Lūgeo, luxi, <i>to mourn.</i>	Pendeo, pependi, <i>to hang</i>
Cerno, crēvi, <i>to decree.</i>	Mulceo, mulsi, <i>to soothe.</i>	Pendo, pependi, <i>to weigh</i>
Fulgeo, fulsi, <i>to shine.</i>	Mulgeo, mulsi, <i>to milk.</i>	

To these add some of the compounds of *sto* and *sisto*.

## 3. Different verbs have sometimes, also, the same supine or perfect participle ; as,

Fricco, frictum, <i>to rub.</i>	Pango, pactum, <i>to drive</i>	Pātior, passus, <i>to suffer.</i>
Frigo, frictum, <i>to roast.</i>	<i>in.</i>	Tēneo, tentum, <i>to hold.</i>
Māneo, mansum, <i>to remain.</i>	Paciſcor, pactus, <i>to bargain.</i>	Tendo, tentum, <i>to stretch.</i>
Mando, mansum, <i>to chew.</i>	Pando, passum, <i>to extend.</i>	Verro, verſum, <i>to brush.</i>
		Verto, verſum, <i>to turn.</i>

## DERIVATION OF VERBS.

§ 187. Verbs are derived either from nouns, from adjectives, or from other verbs.

I. Verbs derived from nouns or adjectives are called *denominatives*.

1. (a.) Active denominatives are generally of the first conjugation ; those which are neuter, of the second. They are usually formed by adding respectively *o* and *eo* to the root ; as,

### FROM NOUNS.

<i>Actives.</i>	<i>Neuters.</i>
Armo, <i>to arm</i> , (arma.)	Flōreo, <i>to bloom</i> , (flos.)
Fraudo, <i>to defraud</i> , (fraus.)	Frondeo, <i>to produce leaves</i> , (frons.)
Nomīno, <i>to name</i> , (nomen.)	Lūceo, <i>to shine</i> , (lux.)
Numēro, <i>to number</i> , (numērus.)	Vireo, <i>to flourish</i> , (vis.)

### FROM ADJECTIVES.

Albo, <i>to whiten</i> , (albus.)	Albeo, <i>to be white</i> , (albus.)
Celebro, <i>to frequent</i> , (celēber.)	Calveo, <i>to be bald</i> , (calvus.)
Libēro, <i>to free</i> , (liber.)	Flāveo, <i>to be yellow</i> , (flāvus.)

(b.) Sometimes a preposition is prefixed in forming the derivative ; as,

Coacervo, <i>to heap together</i> , (acervus.)	Exstirpo, <i>to extirpate</i> , (stirps.)
Excāvo, <i>to excavate</i> , (cāvus.)	Illāqueo, <i>to insnare</i> , (lāqueus.)

2. Many deponents of the first conjugation, derived from nouns, express the exercise of the character, office, etc., denoted by the primitive ; as, *architector*, *to build* ; *comitor*, *to accompany* ; *fūr*, *to steal* ; from *architectus*, *cōmes*, and *fūr*.

3. Such as denote resemblance or imitation are called *imitatives* ; as, *cornicor*, *to imitate a crow*, from *cornix* ; *Græcor*, *to imitate the Greeks*. Some of these end in *isso* ; as, *patrisso*, *to imitate a father*.

II. Verbs derived from other verbs are either *frequentatives*, *inceptives*, *desideratives*, *diminutives*, or *intensives*.

1. *Frequentatives* express a repetition, or an increase of the action expressed by the primitive.

(a.) They are all of the first conjugation, and are formed by adding *o* to the third root; as, *dōmo*, (*dōmūt-*) *dōmīto*. So *adjūvo*, *adjūto*, *dīco*, *dicto*; *gēro*, *gesto*. In verbs of the first conjugation, *āl* of the root is often changed into *ūt*; as, *clāmo*, to cry, (*clamāt-*) *clamīto*, to cry frequently.

(b.) A few frequentatives are formed by adding *ito* to the first root of the primitive; as, *āgo* (*āg-*) *āgīto*. So *lāteo*, *lālīto*; *nosco*, *noscito*; *quæro*, *quæritō*.

(c.) Frequentatives, from primitives of the second, third, and fourth conjugations, sometimes serve again as primitives, from which new frequentatives are formed; as, *dico*, *dicto*, *dictito*; *curro*, *curso*, *cursito*; *vēnio*, *vento*, *ventito*. Sometimes the second or intermediate form is not in use.

(d.) Some frequentatives are deponent; as, *mīnitor*, from *mīnor* (*mīnāt-*); *versor*, from *verto* (*vers-*). So *amplexor*, *sector*, *lōquitor*, from *amplector*, *sēquor*, and *lōquor*.

(e.) When verbs of this class express simply an increase of the action denoted by the primitive, they are, by some grammarians, called *intensives*.

2. *Inceptives*, or *inchoatives* mark the beginning of the action or state expressed by the primitive.

(a.) They all end in *sco*, and are formed by adding that termination to the root of the primitive, with its connecting vowel, which, in the third conjugation, is *i*; as, *cāleo*, to be hot; *cālesco*, to grow hot.

So *lābo*, (*āre*), *lābasco*; *ingēmo*, (*ēre*), *ingēmisco*; *obdormio*, (*ire*), *obdormisco*. *Hisco* is contracted for *hiasco*, from *hio*, (*āre*).

(b.) Most inceptives are formed from verbs of the second conjugation.

(c.) Some inceptives are formed from nouns and adjectives by adding *asco* or *esco* to the root; as, *puērasco*, from *puer*; *jūvenēscō*, from *jūvenis*.

NOTE. Inceptives are all neuter, and of the third conjugation. See § 173.

Some verbs in *sco*, which are not inceptives, are active; as, *disco*, *posco*.

3. *Desideratives* express a desire of doing the act denoted by the primitive.

(a.) They are formed from the third root, by adding *ūrīo*; as, *cæno*, to sup, (*cænāt-*) *cænātūrīo*, to desire to sup.

(b.) Desideratives are all of the fourth conjugation. See § 176, Note.

(c.) Verbs in *ūrīo*, having *u* long, are not desideratives; as, *prūrīo*, *ligūrīo*.

4. *Diminutives* denote a feeble or trifling action. They are formed by adding *illo* to the root of the primitive; as, *conscribillō*, to scribble, from *conscribo*.

They are few in number, and are all of the first conjugation.

5. *Intensives* denote eager action. They are usually formed by adding *so*, *esso*, or *isso* to the root of the primitive; as, *fācesso*, to act earnestly—from *fācio*.

So *cāpesso*, *incesso*, from *cāpio* and *incēda*. *Concupisco*, to desire greatly, though in form an inceptive, is in its signification, an intensive.

NOTE. Verbs of all these classes have sometimes simply the meaning of their primitives.



## COMPOSITION OF VERBS.

§ 188. Verbs are compounded variously :—

1. Of a noun and a verb; as, *ælifīcio*, *belligĕro*, *lucrīfācio*. See § 103, R. 1.
2. Of an adjective and a verb; as, *amplīfīcio*, *multiplīco*.
3. Of two verbs; as, *calīfācio*, *madīfācio*, *patīfācio*.

REM. In verbs of this class, the first part, which is a verb of the second conjugation, loses its final *o*; the second part is always the verb *fācio*.

4. Of an adverb and a verb; as, *bēnīfācio*, *mālēdīco*, *sātāgo*, *nōlo*, *neglīgo*.
5. Of a preposition and a verb; as, *addūco*, *excōlo*, *prōdo*, *subrĕpo*, *discerno* *sējungo*.
6. Of a preposition and a noun, as, *pernocto*, *īrrĕtio*.

§ 189. In composition with particles, the vowels *a* and *e* and the diphthong *æ* in the radical syllable of the simple verb are often changed in the compound.

1. The following simple verbs in composition change *a* into *e* :—

Arceo,	Carpō,	Farcio,	Jactō,	Pārio,	Patro,	Spargo.
Candeo,	Damno,	Fātiscor,	Lactō,	Partio,	Sacro,	Tracto.
Capto,	Fallo,	Grādior,	Mandō,	Pātior,	Scandō,	

Exc. *A* is retained in *amando*, *præmando*, *desacro*, and *retracto*; *prædamno*, and *pertracto* sometimes also occur. *A* is also changed into *e* in *occenio* from *canto*, and *anhĕlo* from *hālo*; *comperco* also is found.

2. The following, in the first root, change *ā* and *ĕ* into *ī*; viz.

āgo, cādo, ĕgeo, ĕmo, frango, pango, prĕmo, rĕgo, sĕdeo, spĕcio, tango.

3. These change *ā* and *ĕ*, in the first and second roots, into *ī*; viz.

sālio, *to leap*, sāpio, tāceo, and tĕnec.

4. These change *ā* into *ī*, and *æ* into *ī*, in all the roots; viz.

hābeo, lācio, lāteo, plāceo, stātuo; cædo, lædo, and quæro.

5. The following change *ā*, in the first root, into *ī*, and in the third root into *e*; viz.

cāno, cāpio, fāteor, jācio, rāpio, and āpiscor.

Exc. (a.) *A* is retained in *circumāgo*, *perāgo*, *satāgo*; *antĕhābeo*, *postlābeo*, *lĕpango*, *rĕpango*, *complāceo*, and *perplāceo*. *Occāno* and *rĕcāno* also sometimes occur. *E* is retained in *coĕmo*, *circumsĕdeo*, and *sūpersĕdeo*. *Antĕcāpio* and *antĕcĕpio* are both used; so also are *sūperjācio* and *sūperjĕcio*.

(b.) *Cōgo* and *dĕgo* are formed, by contraction, from *con*, *de*, and *āgo*; *dĕmo*, *prōmo* and *sūmo*, from *de*, *pro*, *sub*, and *ĕmo*; *prabeo*, and perhaps *dĕbeo*, from *præ*, *de*, and *hābeo*; *pergo* and *surgō*, from *per*, *sub*, and *rĕgo*.

NOTE 1. *Fācio*, compounded with a preposition, changes *ā* into *ī* in the first root, and into *e* in the third; as, *affīcio*, *affīci*, *affĕctum*. Some compounds of *fācio* with nouns and adjectives, change *ā* into *ī*, and also drop *i* before *o*, and are of the first conjugation; as, *signīfīco*, *letīfīco*, *magnīfīco*. *Spĕcio* forms some compounds in the same manner; as, *conspīcor* and *suspīcor*.

NOTE 2. *Lĕgo*, compounded with *con*, *de*, *di*, *e*, *inter*, *nec*, and *se*, changes *ĕ* into *i*, in the first root; as, *collīgo*, *neglīgo*, etc.; but with *ad*, *præ*, *per*, *re*, *sub* and *trans*, it retains *ĕ*; as, *allĕgo*.

NOTE 3. *Calco* and *salto*, in composition, change *a* into *u*; as, *inculco*, *insulto*. *Plaudo* changes *au* into *ō*; as, *explōdo*; except *applaudo*. *Audio* changes *au* into *ē* in *obĕdīo*. *Caruso*, *claudio*, and *quītio*, drop *a*; as, *accūsō*, *rĕclūdō*, *percūtīo*. *Jūro* changes *ū* into *ē* in *dĕjĕro* and *pĕjĕro*, but *dĕjūro*, also, is in use.



NOTE 4. In the compounds of *cāreo*, *māneo*, and *trāho*, *ā* remains unchanged and so also does *æ* in the compounds of *hæreo*.

NOTE 5. The simple verbs with which the following are compounded are not used:—

Dēfendo,	Impēdio,	Confūto	Instigo,	Connīveo,	
Offendo,	Imbuo,	Rēfūto,	Impleo,	Percello,	
Expērior,	Compello, (-āre,)	Ingruo,	Compleo,	Induo,	and some
Expēdio,	Appello, (-āre,)	Congruo,	Rēnīdeo,	Exuo,	others.

For the changes produced in prepositions by composition with verbs see § 196.

## PARTICLES.

§ 190. 1. *Particles* are those parts of speech which are neither declined nor conjugated. They are divided into four classes—*adverbs*, *prepositions*, *conjunctions*, and *interjections*.

NOTE. A word may sometimes belong to two or more of these classes, according to its connection.

## ADVERBS.

2. An adverb is a particle used to modify or limit the meaning of a verb, an adjective, or another adverb; as,

*Bēne et sapienter dixit*, he spoke *well* and *wisely*; *Cānis ēgrēgie fidēlis*, a *remarkably* faithful dog; *Nīmis valde laudāre*, to praise *too much*. Compare § 277, R. 1.

3. Adverbs, in regard to their *signification*, are divided into various classes; as, adverbs of *place*, *time*, *manner*, etc., and some belong to either class according to their connection.

4. In regard to their *etymology*, adverbs are either *primitive* or *derivative*.

REMARK. Among primitive adverbs are here classed not only such as cannot be traced to any more remote root, but also all which are not included in the regular classes of derivative adverbs hereafter mentioned.

## PRIMITIVE ADVERBS.

§ 191. The primitive adverbs are few in number, when compared with the derivatives, and most of them are contained in the following lists marked I, II, and III.

### I. Adverbs of *Place* and *Order*.

ādeo, so far, as far.	ālīcūbi, somewhere.	ālīquōversum, towards
ād hūc, to this place.	ālīcundē, from some	some place.
adversūs,	place.	ālīundē, from another
adversum,	place.	place.
exadversūs,—um,	ālīō, to another place.	
ālīā, by another way.	ālīquā, in some way.	circā, } around.
ālīās, in another place.	ālīorsum, towards another	circum, } around.
ālībī, elsewhere.	er place.	circitēr, on every side.
	ālīquō, to some place.	circumcircā, all around.

citrā, *on this side*.  
 citro, *hither*.  
 contrā, *over against*.  
 cōram, *before*.  
 dēhinc, *henceforth*.  
 deinceps, *successively*.  
 deindē, *after that*.  
 dēniquē, *finally*.  
 dēnuo, *again*.  
 deorsum, *downward*.  
 dextrorsum, *towards the right*.  
 eā, *that way*.  
 eādem, *the same way*.  
 eō, *to that place, thither*.  
 eōdem, *to the same place*.  
 exindē, *after that*.  
 extrā, *without*.  
 extrinsēcūs, *from without*.  
 fōrās, *out of doors*.  
 fōris, *without*.  
 hāc, *this way*.  
 hactēnūs, *thus far*.  
 hic, *here*.  
 hinc, *hence*.  
 hūc, *hither*.  
 hūcuscquē, *thus far*.  
 horsum, *hitherward*.  
 ibi, *there*.  
 ibīdem, *in the same place*.  
 illāc, *that way*.  
 illīc, *there*.  
 illīnc, *thence*.  
 illō, *thither*.  
 illorsum, *thitherward*.  
 illūc, *thither*.  
 indē, *thence*.  
 indīdem, *from the same place*.

infrā, *below, beneath*.  
 inībi, *in that place*.  
 intrinsēcūs, *from within*.  
 intrā, *intro*.  
 introrsum, } *within*.  
 intūs, }  
 istāc, *that way*.  
 istīc, *there*.  
 istīnc, *thence*.  
 istō, istūc, *thither*.  
 juxtā, *near, alike*.  
 nēcūbi, *lest any where*.  
 neutro, *to neither side*.  
 neutrūbi, *to neither place, to neither side*.  
 nullibi, } *no where*.  
 nusquam, }  
 pēnitūs, *within*.  
 pōnē, *post, behind, back*.  
 porro, *onward*.  
 prōcūl, *far*.  
 prōpē, proptēr, *near*.  
 prorsum, *forward*.  
 prōtinūs, *onward*.  
 quā? *in which way?*  
 quāquā, } *what way*  
 quācumque, } *soever*.  
 quāquē, *wheresoever*.  
 quālibēt, } *in every way*.  
 quāvis, }  
 quō? *whither?*  
 quōd, } *how far*.  
 quousquē, }  
 quōpiam, } *to some place*.  
 quōquam, }  
 quōquō, } *whither-*  
 quōcumquē, } *soever*.  
 quōquōversūs, *toward every side*.

qucrsum? *whitherward?*  
 quōvis, } *to every place*.  
 quōlibēt }  
 retro, } *backward*.  
 retrorsum, } *back*.  
 rursum, }  
 sīcūbi, *if any where*.  
 sīcundē, *if from any place*.  
 sīnistrorsum, *towards the left*.  
 subtēr, *beneath*.  
 sūpēr, suprā, *above, on top*.  
 sursum, *upward*.  
 tum, *then, in the next place*.  
 ūbi? *where?*  
 ūbicumquē, } *wherever*.  
 ūbiūbi, } *wheresoever*.  
 ūbilibēt, } *any where*.  
 ūbiquē, } *every where*.  
 ūbivīs, }  
 ultrā, ultro, *beyond*.  
 unde? *whence?*  
 undēlibēt, } *from every*  
 undēvis, } *where*.  
 undīquē, }  
 undeundē, } *whence-*  
 undēcumquē, } *soever*.  
 uspiam, } *somewhere*.  
 usquam, } *any where*.  
 usquē, *all the way*.  
 usquēquāquē, *in all ways*.  
 utrimquē, *on both sides*.  
 utrō? *which way?*  
 utrōbi? *in which place?*  
 utrōbiquē, *in both places*.  
 utrōquē, *to both sides*.  
 utrōquēversum, *toward both sides*.

REMARK 1. (a.) The interrogative adverbs of place, *ūbi?* where? *undē?* whence? *quō?* whither? and *quā?* in what way? have relation to other adverbs formed in a similar manner, thus constituting a system of *adverbial correlatives* similar to that of the pronominal adjectives. See § 139, 5, (3.)

(b.) As in the case of the pronominal correlatives, the *interrogative* and *relative* forms are alike, beginning with *u* or *qu*. The *demonstratives* are formed from *is*, which is strengthened by *dem*, and the *indefinite* from *aliquis*. The *general relatives* and the *general indefinites* or *universals*, like those of the pronominal adjectives, are made, the former by doubling the simple relatives or by appending to them the termination *cumquē*, 'soever,' and the latter by adding *quē*, *vīs*, or *libēt*. Thus :

Interrog.	Demonstr.	Relat.	Gen. Relat.	Indefin.	Gen. Indefin.
ūbi?	ibi, ibīdem,	ūbi,	ūbiūbi, ūbicumquē,	ālicūbi,	ūbiquē, ūbivīs, ūbilibēt.
undē?	indē, indīdem,	undē,	undeundē, undēcumquē,	ālicundē,	undiquē, undēvis, undēlibēt,
quō?	eō, eōdem,	quō,	quōquō, quōcumquē,	āliquō,	quōvis, quōlibēt,
quā?	eā, eādem.	quā.	quāquā, quācumquē.	āliquā.	quāvis. quālibēt.

(c.) To those answering *ubi?* may be added *alibi*, *nullibi*, and *inibi*, the latter being a strengthened form of *ibi*. In like manner *aliundē*, *utrimquē*, *intrinsecus*, and *extrinsecus* may be added to those answering to *undē?* and *alic* to those answering to *quō?* So also to *utrō?* answer *utrōquē* and *neutro*.

(d.) The demonstratives *ibi*, *indē*, and *eō* are used only in reference to relative sentences which precede; but more definite demonstratives are formed from the pronouns *hic*, *istē*, and *illē*, answering in like manner to *ubi?* *undē?* and *quō?* These together with the preceding correlatives are, in the following table, arranged respectively under their several interrogatives *ubi?* *undē?* *quō?* *quā?* and *quorsum?*—Thus:

<i>ubi?</i>	<i>undē?</i>	<i>quō?</i>	<i>quā?</i>	<i>quorsum?</i>
<i>hic</i> ,	<i>hinc</i> ,	<i>hūc</i> ,	<i>hāc</i> ,	<i>horsum</i> ,
<i>istie</i> ,	<i>istine</i> ,	<i>istūc</i> ,	<i>istāc</i> ,	<i>istorsum</i> ,
<i>illie</i> ,	<i>illinc</i> ,	<i>illūc</i> ,	<i>illāc</i> ,	<i>illorsum</i> ,
<i>ibi</i> ,	<i>indē</i> ,	<i>eō</i> ,	<i>eā</i> ,	_____
<i>ibidem</i> ,	<i>indidem</i> ,	<i>eōdem</i> ,	<i>eādem</i> ,	_____
<i>alibi</i> ,	<i>aliundē</i> ,	<i>aliō</i> ,	<i>aliā</i> ,	<i>alorsum</i> ,
<i>alicubi</i> .	<i>alicundē</i> .	<i>aliquō</i> .	<i>aliquā</i> .	<i>aliquoversum</i> .

(e.) *Hic*, *hinc*, *hūc*, refer to the place of the speaker; *istie*, *istine*, *istūc*, to the place of the second person or person addressed; and *illie*, *illinc*, *illūc*, to that of the third person or the person or thing spoken of. Cf. § 207, R. 23, (a.) and (d.)

(f.) The interrogative adverbs *ubi*, *undē*, *quō*, *quā*, etc. are often used without a question, simply as adverbs of place; as, *In eam partem itūros, atque ibi futūros Helvetios, ubi eos Cæsar constituisset*.

(g.) In consequence of a transfer of their meaning, some of the adverbs of place, as, *hic*, *ibi*, *ubi*, *hinc*, *indē*, *hactenūc*, etc., become also adverbs of time and some of them are used also as conjunctions.

## II. Adverbs of Time.

<i>aetūtum</i> , immediately.	<i>illicō</i> , immediately.	<i>quamdiū?</i> how long?
<i>abhinc</i> , from this time.	<i>indē</i> , after that, then.	<i>quandō?</i> when?
<i>adeō</i> , so long (as).	<i>interdum</i> , sometimes.	<i>quandocumquē</i> , whenever.
<i>adhūc</i> , until now, still.	<i>intērim</i> , meanwhile.	<i>quandōq</i> iē, at some time.
<i>aliās</i> , at another time	<i>itērum</i> , again.	<i>quātēr</i> , four times.
<i>aliquamdiū</i> , for awhile.	<i>jam</i> , now, already.	<i>quoad?</i>
<i>aliquandō</i> , at some time.	<i>jamdiū</i> , { long ago.	<i>quousquē?</i> { how long?
<i>aliquōtiēs</i> , several times.	<i>jamdūdum</i> , {	<i>quondam</i> , formerly.
<i>antē</i> , { before,	<i>jamjam</i> , presently.	<i>quōtidie</i> , daily.
<i>anteā</i> , { previously.	<i>jampridem</i> , long since.	<i>quōtiēs?</i> how often?
<i>atēhāc</i> , formerly.	<i>mōdo</i> , just now.	<i>quim</i> or <i>cum</i> , when.
<i>bis</i> , twice. (see § 119).	<i>mox</i> , soon after.	<i>rursus</i> , again.
<i>cirētēr</i> , about, near.	<i>nondum</i> , not yet.	<i>sæpē</i> , often.
<i>crās</i> , tomorrow.	<i>nonnumquam</i> , sometimes.	<i>sēmēl</i> , once.
<i>cum</i> or <i>quim</i> , when.	<i>nūdiūs tertius</i> , three days ago.	<i>semper</i> , always.
<i>deinceps</i> in succession.	<i>nunc</i> , now.	<i>statim</i> , immediately.
<i>deindē</i> or <i>iein</i> , { thereupon,	<i>numquam</i> , never.	<i>sūbindē</i> , immediately, now and then.
<i>exincē</i> or <i>exin</i> , { afterward.	<i>nūpēr</i> , lately.	<i>tamdiū</i> , so long.
<i>dēhinc</i> , from this time.	<i>olim</i> , formerly.	<i>tandem</i> , at length.
<i>dēmum</i> , at length.	<i>pārupēr</i> , { for a short	<i>tantispēr</i> , for so long.
<i>dēnique</i> , lastly.	<i>paulispēr</i> , { time.	<i>tēr</i> , thrice.
<i>diū</i> , long.	<i>prēndiē</i> , two days hence.	<i>tōtiēs</i> , so often.
<i>dūdum</i> , previously.	<i>porro</i> , hereafter, in future.	<i>tūc</i> , then, then.
<i>eousquē</i> , so long.	<i>post</i> , <i>postea</i> , afterwards.	<i>ubi</i> , when, as soon as.
<i>herē</i> or <i>hērī</i> , yesterday.	<i>posthāc</i> , hereafter.	<i>unquam</i> , ever.
<i>hic</i> , here, hereupon.	<i>postrīdiē</i> , the day after.	<i>usquē</i> , until, ever.
<i>hinc</i> , from this time, since.	<i>prīdem</i> , long since.	<i>ūt</i> or <i>ūti</i> , as, as soon as
<i>nōdiē</i> , to-day.	<i>prīdiē</i> , the day before.	<i>when</i> .
<i>ibi</i> , then, thereupon.	<i>prōtīnūc</i> , instantly.	
<i>intētidem</i> , now and then, repeatedly.		



## III Adverbs of Manner, Quality, Degree, etc,

ādeo, so, to that degree.	ninīs, } too much.	sānē, truly.
adinōdum, very much.	nimum, }	sāt, } enough
ālītēr, otherwise.	nōn, not.	sātīs, }
ceu, as, like as.	omnino, altogether, only.	sātius, rather.
cūr? why?	pænē, almost.	scilicet, truly, to wit.
duntaxāt, only, at least.	pālam, openly.	scūs, otherwise.
ētiam, also, truly, yes.	pārītēr, equally.	seorsum, } separately.
ētiāmmū, } also, besides.	pārum, too little.	seorsūs, }
ētiāntum, }	paulātīm, by degrees.	sic, so.
fērē, } almost, nearly.	pēnitūs, wholly.	sicūt, } so as, as.
fermē, }	pērindē, } just as,	sicūtī, }
fortassē, perhaps.	proindē, } as though.	sīmūl, together.
frustrā, in vain.	perquam, very much.	singillātīm, one by one
grātīs, freely.	plērumquē, for the most	solum, only, alone.
haud, not.	part, commonly.	tam, so, so much.
haudquāquam, by no	pōtiūs, rather.	tāquam, like, as if.
means.	porro, moreover, then.	tantōpere, so greatly.
hūcūquē, so far.	præter, beyond, except.	tantum, so much, only.
identidem, constantly.	præsertim, particularly.	tantummodō, only.
immō, nay, on the con-	prōfecto, truly.	temerē, at random.
trary.	prōpē, almost, near.	ūnā, together.
itā, so.	prōpēmōdum, almost.	usquēquāquē, in all points
Item, just so, also.	prorsūs, wholly.	in all ways.
itidem, in like manner.	quam, how much, as.	ūt, } as.
juxtā, equally, alike.	quamobrem, wherefore.	ūtī, }
māgis, more.	quārē? why? wherefore?	ūtiquē, at any rate, cer-
mōdo, only.	quāsī, as if, as it were.	tainly.
næ or nē, truly, verily.	quēmadmodum, as.	utpōtē, as, inasmuch as.
nē, not.	quīdem, } indeed.	valdē, very much.
nēdum, much less.	equīdem, }	vēl, even.
nempē, truly, forsooth.	quōmōdō? how? in what	vēlūt, } as, like as, for
nēquāquam, } by no	manner?	vēlūtī, }
neutiquam, } means.	quōque, also.	vicissim, in turn, again.
nimirum, certainly, to be	rite, duly.	videlicet, clearly, to wit.
sure.	saltem, at least.	vix, scarcely.

REM. 2. Adverbs denoting quality, manner, etc., are sometimes divided into those of, 1. Quality; as, *bēnē, malē*. 2. Certainty; as, *certē, plānē*. 3. Contingence; as, *fortē*. 4. Negation; as, *haud, nōn, nē, immō*. 5. Affirmation; as, *næ, quīdem, ūtiquē, nempē*. 6. Swearing; as, *herclē*. 7. Explaining; as, *videlicet, utpōtē*. 8. Separation; as, *seorsum*. 9. Joining together; as, *sīmūl, ūnā*. 10. Interrogation; as, *cūr? quārē?* 11. Quantity or degree; as, *sātīs, ādeo*. 12. Excess; as, *perquam, mucimē*. 13. Defect; as, *pārum, pænē*. 14. Preference; as, *pōtiūs, sātius*. 15. Likeness; as, *itā, sic*. 16. Unlikeness; as, *ālītēr*. 17. Exclusion; as, *tantum, solum*.

REM. 3. *Non* is the ordinary Latin negation. *Haud* signifies either 'not at all,' or 'not exactly.' It is used by the comic and later writers in all combinations, but in the authors of the best age its use is more especially limited to its connection with adjectives and adverbs denoting a measure; as, *haud multum, haud magnum, haud parvus, haud mediocris, haud paulo, haud prout, haud longe*. especially *haud sâne* in connection with other words: as, *haud sâne facile, res haud sâne difficilis, haud sâne intelligo*; also *haud quisquam, haud umquam, haud quāquam*. With verbs *haud* is scarcely used until Livy and Tacitus, except in the common phrase *haud scio an*, which is equivalent to *nescio an*.—*Nē*, (or *nī*) is the primitive Latin negative particle, signifying *no* or *not*. It is used in this sense and as an adverb, (a) with *quīdem* to make an emphatic negation of the word standing between them: as, *nē in oppidis quīdem*, not even in the towns; (b) in composition as in *nescio, nefas, neuter* etc.; (c) with imperatives and



subjunctives used as imperatives; as, *Nē puēri, nē tanta animis irasciscite bella* Virg. So, also, in wishes and asseverations; as, *Nē id Jupiter senēret*, may Jupiter forbid it. Liv. *Nē rivam, si sciō*, may I die, if I know. Cic.; and in concessive and restrictive clauses; as, *Nē fuērīt*, suppose there was not. Cic. *Sint misericordes in iuribus cecarū, ne illis sanguinem nostram largiantur*, only let them not, etc. Cic. So *dum ne, dummodo ne, mōdo ne, dum quidem ne*; and in intentional clauses with *ut*.—*Immo*, as a negative, substitutes something stronger in the place of the preceding statement, which is denied; as, *Causa igitur non bona est? Immo optima, sed*, etc. Cic. It may often be translated by 'nay,' or 'may even.'

REM. 4. *Quidem* gives particular emphasis to a word or an idea, and then answers to our 'certainly' or 'indeed,' but frequently, especially with a pronoun, it merely adds emphasis. *Equidem*, which is considered as a compound of *ego* and *quidem*, is used exclusively in this sense by Cicero, Virgil, and Horace, but by other and particularly by later writers it is used like *quidem*.—*Nempe*, 'surely,' is often used ironically, when we refute a person by concessions which he is obliged to make, or by deductions. In other connections it may be translated 'namely.'

REM. 5. *Sic, itā, tam*, as also *tantopere*, and *adeo* signify 'so.' *Sic* is more particularly the demonstrative 'so,' or 'thus'; as, *sic se res habet*. *Ita* defines or limits more accurately, and is equivalent to our 'in such a manner,' or 'only in so far'; as, *ita defendito, ut neminem laedas*. Frequently, however, *ita* has the signification of *sic*, but *sic* has not the limiting sense of *ita*.—*Tam*, 'so much,' generally stands before adjectives and adverbs, and increases the degree; before vowels *tantopere* is generally used instead of *tam*.—*Adeo*, 'to that degree' or 'point,' increases the expression to a certain end or result. Hence it forms the transition to the conclusion of an argument or to the essential part of a thing; and Cicero employs it to introduce the proofs of what he has previously alleged; as, *Id adeo ex ipso senatus consulto cognoscite*, and always in such case puts *adeo* after a pronoun.

REM. 6. *Umquam*, 'ever,' and *usquam*, 'somewhere,' like *quisquam*, require a negation in the sentence, and thus become equivalent to *numquam* and *nusquam*. A negative question, however, may supply the place of a negative proposition; as, *num tu eum umquam ridisti?*—*Usquam*, like *quispiam*, is not negative, but is the same as *alicubi*, but strengthened, just as *quispiam* is the same as *aliquis*. So, also, *quopiam* is used affirmatively, and *quoquam* negatively.—*Jam*, with a negative, answers to our 'longer'; as, *Nihil jam spero*, I no longer hope for any thing. When used to connect sentences it signifies 'further,' or 'now.'—*Usque* is commonly accompanied by the prepositions *ad, in, ab, ex*. It rarely signifies 'ever and anon'; as, *Naturam expellas furcā, tamen usque recurret*. Hor.—*Nūper, mōdo*, and *mox* are relative and indefinite.—*Dūdum*, 'previously,' or 'before,' in relation to a time which has just passed away, may often be translated 'just before.'—*Jamdūdum* signifies 'long before,' or 'long since.' With the poets *jamdūdum* contains the idea of impatience, and signifies 'without delay,' 'forthwith'; as, *Jamdūdum sumite penas*. Virg.—*Tandem*, 'at length,' also expresses the impatience with which a question is put.

REM. 7. *Tunc* is 'then,' 'at that time,' in opposition to *nunc*, 'now': *Tum* is 'then,' as the correlative of *quum*, 'when'; as, *quum omnes adessent, tum ille exorsus est dicere*, when all were present, then he began to speak. Without a relative sentence *tum* signifies 'hereupon,' or 'thereupon'; but a relative sentence may always be supplied. The same difference exists between *etiam nunc* and *etiam tum*, 'still,' or 'yet'; and between *nunc ipsum* and *tum ipsum*; *quummaxime* and *tummaxime*, 'just,' or 'even then'; for *etiam nunc, nunc ipsum* and *quummaxime* refer to the present; but *etiam tum, tum ipsum*, and *tummaxime*, to the past.

## DERIVATION OF ADVERBS.

§ 192. Adverbs are derived from nouns, adjectives, pro nouns, and participles.

## I. From Nouns.

1. Of these a few end in *im* (generally *ātim*), and denote manner as,

*grēgātīm*, in herds; *membrātīm*, limb by limb; *vicissātīm*, or more frequently *vicissim*, by turns; from *grex*, *membrum*, and *vicis*.

2. Some end in *itus*, and denote origin or manner; as, *cœlitus*, from heaven; *funditus*, from the bottom; *rādicitus*, by the roots; from *cœlum*, *fundus*, and *rādix*.

3. Some are merely the different cases of nouns used adverbially; as,

(a.) Some adverbs of time; as, *mānē*, *noctū*, *diū*, *temporē* or *temporī*, *īnitio*, *principiō*, *mōdo*.—(b.) Adverbs of place; as, *fōrīs*, *fōrās*.—(c.) Adverbs of manner; as, *spontē*, *fortē*, *grātis* or *grātūs*, *īngrātūs*, *vulgō*, *partim*.

## II. From Adjectives and Participles.

By far the greater number of derivative adverbs come from adjectives and participles (present and perfect), and end in *ē* and *tēr*.

1. Adverbs derived from adjectives and participles of the second declension, are formed by adding *ē* to the root; as,

*agrē*, scarcely; *altē*, high; *libērē*, freely; *longē*, far; *miserē*, miserably; *plēnē*, fully; *doctē*, learnedly; *ornātē*, elegantly; from *ager*, *altus*, *liber*, *longus*, *miser*, *plenus*, *doctus*, and *ornatus*. *Bēnē*, well, is from *bonus*, or an older form *bēnus*.

REMARK. A few adverbs in *e* differ in meaning from their adjectives; as, *sānē*, certainly; *valdē*, very; from *sanus*, sound, well; and *validus*, strong.

Exc. 1. A few adverbs derived from adjectives and participles of the second declension, add *itēr*, *itūs*, *im*, or *ātim* to the root; as,

*nāvitēr*, actively; *antiquitūs*, anciently; *divinitūs*, divinely; *privātīm*, privately; *tuātīm*, after your manner; *singulātīm*, *singillātīm*, *sigillātīm*, or *singultīm*, severally; *cāsīm*, *captīm*, *sensīm*, *statīm*, etc. from *nāvus*, *antiquus*, *divinus*, *privatus*, *tuus*, *singuli*, *cāsus*, *captus*, etc.

Exc. 2. Some adverbs are formed with two or more of the above terminations with the same meaning; as, *dūrē*, *duritēr*; *firmē*, *firmitēr*; *nāvē*, *nāvitēr*; *largē*, *largitēr*; *luculentē*, *luculentēr*; *turbulentē*, *turbulentēr*: so *cautē* and *cautīm*; *hāmānē*, *hāmānitēr*, and *hāmānitūs*; *pūblicē* and *pūblicitūs*.

2. Adverbs derived from adjectives and participles of the third declension, are formed by adding *itēr* to the root, except when it ends in *t*, in which case *ēr* only is added; as,

*acutēr*, sharply; *felicitēr*, happily; *turpitēr*, basely;—*ēlēgantēr*, elegantly; *prudentēr*, prudently; *amantēr*, lovingly; *propērantēr*, hastily; from *acer*, *felix*, *turpis*, *ēlégans*, *prudens*, *amans*, and *propērans*. So also from the obsolete *alius* for *aliūs*, and *propis*, (neuter *propē*), come *alitēr* and *proptēr* for *propitēr*.

Exc. From *audax* comes by syncope *audactēr*; from *fortis* comes *fortitēr*; from *omnis*, *omnino*; from *uber*, *ūbertim*; and from *nēquam*, *nēquitēr*.

3. From the cardinal numerals are formed numeral adverbs in *ies*; as,

*quinguiēs, dēciēs*, from *quingvē* and *dēcem*. So *tōtiēs* and *quōtiēs*, from *tōt* and *quōt*. See § 119.

4. Some adverbs are merely certain cases of adjectives. Such are,

(a.) Ablatives in *ō*, from adjectives and participles of the second declension; as, *citō*, quickly; *continuō*, immediately; *falsō*, falsely; *crēbrō*, frequently; *mēritō*, deservedly; *nēcōpīnātō*, unexpectedly; *fortuitō*, by chance; *auspicātō*, auspiciously; *consultō*, designedly; and a few in *ā* from adjectives of the first declension; as, *recta*, straight on; *unā*, together. In like manner, *rēpēntē*, suddenly, from *rēpens*; and *pēregre* or *pēregri*, from *pēreger*.

(b.) Nominatives or accusatives of the third declension in the neuter singular; as, *facilē, difficilē, recens, sublimē, and impūnē*; and some also of the second declension; as, *cēterum, plūrumquē, multum, plūrimum, pōtissimum, paulum, nimium, parum*, and the numeral adverbs, *primum, iterum, tertium, quartum*, etc. which have also the termination in *ō*, and so also *postrēmum (ō)*, and *ultimum (ō)*. The neuter plural sometimes occurs also, especially in poetry; as, *multā gēnere; tristiā ululāre; crēbrā ferire*.

(c.) Accusatives of the first declension; as, *bifariam, trifariam, multifariam, omnifariam*, etc. scil. *partem*.

NOTE 1. The forms in *ē* and *ō* from adjectives of the second declension have generally the same meaning, but *vērē* and *vēro* have a somewhat different sense. *Vērē*, truly, is the regular adverb of *vērūs*, true; but *vēro* is used in answers, in the sense of 'in truth,' or 'certainly.' In this use it is added to the verb used in the question; as, *adjustinē hērī in convivio?* The affirmative answer is *ego vēro adfui*, or without the verb, *ego vēro*, and negatively, *minimē vēro*; and as *vēro* thus merely indicates a reply, it is often untranslatable into English.—*Certō*, on the other hand, usually takes the meaning of the adjective *certus*, while *certē* often signifies 'at least'; as, *victī sūmus, aut, si dignitas vinci non pōtest, fracti certē*; but *certē* is frequently used in the sense of 'certainly,' especially in the phrase *certē scio*.

NOTE 2. Some adjectives, from the nature of their signification, have no corresponding adverbs. Of some others, also, none occur in the classics. Such are *āmens, dirūs, discors, gnārūs, rīdīs, trux, imbellis, immōbilis*, and similar compounds. In place of the adverbs formed from *vētūs* and *fidūs*, *vētustē* and *antīquē* are used for the former, and *fidēlitēr* for the latter, from *vētustus, antiquūs*, and *fidēlis*.

III. From the adjective pronouns are derived adverbs of place, etc (See § 191, Rem. 1.)

REMARK. The terminations *ō* and *ūc* denote the place *whither*, instead of the accusative of the pronoun with a preposition; as, *eō* for *ad eum locum*; *hūc* for *ad hunc locum*; the terminations *dē* and *inc* denote the place *from which*; *ī* and *ic*, the place *in which*; and *ā* and *ūc*, the place *by or through which*; as, *ēā; viā* or *parte* being understood.

IV (a.) A few adverbs are derived from prepositions; as, *subtūs*, beneath; from *sub*; *proptēr*, near; from *proptē*. (b.) *Mordicūs* and *versūs* are derived from the verbs *mordeo* and *verto*.

REMARK. Diminutives are formed from a few adverbs: as, *clam, clancūlum; primum, primūlum; celerius, celeriusculē; sapiūs, sapiusculē; benē, bellē, bellissimē*,



## COMPOSITION OF ADVERBS.

## § 193. Adverbs are compounded variously:—

1. Of an adjective and a noun; as, *postulū, quōtidī, magnōpērē, maximōpērē, quantōpērē, tantōpērē, tantummōdo, solummōdo, multimōdis, quētanquam*—of *postērō diē, magnō opērē*, etc.

2. Of a pronoun and a noun; as, *hōdiē, quārē, quōmōdō*—of *hōc diē, quā rē*, etc.

3. Of an adverb and a noun; as, *nūliū, sēpēmērō*—of *nunc diēs*, etc.

4. Of a preposition and a noun; as, *commīnū, ēminū, illico, obiter, extēplū, cōtrā, postmōdō, cōmōdum, prōpēdiem*—of *con, e, and mātū*; *in* and *locū*; etc.

5. Of an adjective and a pronoun; as, *aliōquī* or *aliōquīn, cētēroquī* or *cētēroquīn*—of *aliū* and *quī*, i. e. *aliō quō (mōdo)*, etc.

6. Of a pronoun and an adverb; as, *aliquādiū, ālicūbi*—of *aliquis, diū*, and *ibi*; *nēquāquam* and *nēquicquam*—of *nē* and *quisquam*.

7. Of two verbs; as, *ilicēt, scilicēt, videlicēt*—of *irē, scire, vidērē*, and *licēt*.

8. Of an adverb and a verb; as, *quolibēt, ubivīs, undelibēt*. So *deinceps*—from *dein* and *cāpio*; *duntaxat*—from *dum* and *taxo*.

9. Of a participle with various parts of speech; as, *deorsum, dextrorsum, hōrsum, retrorsum, sursum*—of *dē, dextēr, hīc, retro, supēr*, and *vorsūs* or *versūs*.

10. Of two adverbs; as, *jāmdūdum, quamdiū, tandiū, cummaximē, tummaximē quousquē, sicut*.

11. Of a preposition and an adjective; as, *dēnuo, imprīmīs, cumprimīs, apprimē, incassum*—of *dē novō, in primīs*, etc.

12. Of a preposition and a pronoun; as, *quaproptēr, postea, intēreā, prætēreā, hactēnūs, quātēnūs, āliquātēnūs, eātēnūs*—of *proptēr quā, post ea* or *eam*, etc.

13. Of a preposition and an adverb; as, *ābhinc, ādhūc, dērēpentē, intēribi, interdiū, interdum, persēpē*.

14. Of two or three prepositions; as, *insupēr, prōtinūs, indē, dein, deindē, pērindē*.

15. Of a conjunction and an adverb; as, *nēcūbi, sicūbi*—of *nē, sī*, and *ālicūbi*.

16. Of an adverb and a termination scarcely used except in composition as, *ibidem, parumpēr, quāndocumquē, ubiquē, utcumquē*.

17. Of three different parts of speech; as, *forsitān*—of *fors, sīt, ān, quemadmodum, quāmobrem*, etc.

18. Of an adverb and an adjective; as, *nimirum, utpōtē*.

19. Of an adjective and a verb; as, *quantumvis, quantumlibēt*.

## Signification of certain Compound and Derivative Adverbs.

1. The adverbs *continuo, prōtinus, statim, confestim, subito, repente* and *dērepente, actū, illico, ilicet, extēplo*, signify in general ‘directly’ or ‘immediately’; but, strictly, *continuo* means, ‘immediately after’; *statim*, ‘without delay’; *confestim*, ‘directly’; *subito*, ‘suddenly, unexpectedly’; *prōtinus*, ‘farther,’ viz. in the same direction, and hence, ‘without interruption’; *repente* and *dērepente*, ‘at once,’ opposed to *sensim*, ‘gradually,’ (see Cic. Off. 1. 33); *actū*, ‘instantaneously,’ i. q. *eōdem actū*; *illico*, and more rarely *ilicet*, ‘forthwith, the instant,’ (Virg. Æn. 2, 424, Cic. Mur. 10); so also *extēplo*, (Liv. 41, 1).

2. *Præsertim, præcipue, imprimis, cumprimis, apprimē*, are generally translated ‘principally,’ but, properly, *præsertim* is ‘particularly,’ and sets forth a particular circumstance with emphasis; *præcipue*, from *præcāpio*, has reference to privilege, and signifies ‘especially’; *imprimis* and *cumprimis*, signify ‘principally,’ or ‘in preference to others’; and *apprimē*, ‘before all,’ ‘very,’ is used



In pure Latin to qualify and strengthen only adjectives. *Admōdum* properly signifies 'according to measure,' that is, 'in as great a measure as can be,' 'very, exceedingly.' With numerals it denotes approximation, 'about.' *Ad mōdum nihil* and *admōdum nullus* signify 'nothing at all' and 'no one at all.'

3. *Mōdo* is the usual equivalent for 'only.' *Sōlum*, 'alone,' 'merely,' points to something higher or greater. *Tantum*, 'only,' 'merely,' intimates that something else was expected. The significations of *sōlum* and *tantum* are strengthened by *mōdo*, forming *sōlummōdo* and *tantummodo*. *Suntaxat*, 'only, solely,' is not joined with verbs. It also signifies 'at least,' denoting a limitation to a particular point. *Saltem* also signifies 'at least,' but denotes the reduction of a demand to a minimum; as, *Eripe mihi hunc dolōrem, aut minue saltem*.

4. *Frustrā* implies a disappointed expectation; as in *frustra suscipere labōres*. *Nēquicquam* denotes the absence of success, as in Hor. Carm. 1, 3, 21. *Incassum*, composed of *in* and *cassum*, 'hollow' or 'empty,' signifies 'to no purpose'; as, *tēla incassum jacere*.

## COMPARISON OF ADVERBS.

§ 194. 1. Adverbs derived from adjectives with the terminations *ē* and *tēr*, and most of those in *o*, are compared like their primitives.

2. The comparative, like the neuter comparative of the adjective, ends in *iūs*; the superlative is formed from the superlative of the adjective by changing *ūs* into *e*; as,

*dūrē, dūriūs, dūrissimē*; *fācilē, fāciliūs, fācillimē*; *ācritēr, ācriūs, ācerrimē*; *rārō, rāriūs, rārissime*; *mātūrē, mātūriūs, mātūrissime* or *māturrime*.

3. Some adverbs have superlatives in *ō* or *um*; as, *mēritissimō, plurimum, primō* or *primum, pōtissimum*.

4. If the comparison of the adjective is irregular or defective, (see §§ 125, 126), that of the adverb is so likewise; as,

*bēnē, mēliūs, optimē*; *mālē, pējūs, pessimē*; *pārum, minūs, minimē*; *multum, plūs, plurimum*; —, *priūs, primō* or *primum*; —, *ociūs, ocissime*; —, *dētēriūs, dētērrime*; —, *pōtiūs, pōtissime* or *pōtissimum*; *mēritō*, —, *mēritissimo*; *sātis, sātius*, —. *Māgis, maximē*, (from *magnūs*,) has no positive; *nūpēr, nūperrime*, has no comparative. *Prōpē, prōpiūs, proxime*: the adjective *prōpiōr* has no positive in use. The regular adverb in the positive degree from *ūbēr* is wanting, its place being supplied by *ūbertim*, but *ūbēriūs* and *ūberrimē* are used. So instead of *tristitēr, tristē*, the neuter of *tristis*, is used, but the comparative *tristiūs* is regular; and from *sōcors* only *sōcordiūs*, the comparative, is in use.

5. *Diū* and *sēpē*, though not derived from adjectives, are yet compared;—*diū, diūtius, diūtissime*; *sēpē, sēpiūs, sēpissime*. A comparative *tempēriūs*, from *tempērī* or *tempōrī*, also sometimes occurs. So *sēcūs, sēcūs*.

6. Adverbs, like adjectives, are sometimes compared by prefixing *māgis* and *maximē*; as, *māgis āpertē, maximē accommodātē*.

## PREPOSITIONS.

§ 195. 1. A preposition is a particle which expresses the relation between a noun or pronoun and some preceding word.

2. Prepositions express the relations of persons or things, either to one another, or to actions and conditions; as, *āmor meus erga te*, my love to ward thee; *eo ad te*, I go to thee

3. Some prepositions have the noun or pronoun which follows them in the accusative, some, in the ablative, and some, in either the accusative or the ablative.

4. Twenty-six prepositions have an accusative after them:—

<i>ad</i> , to, towards, at, for.	<i>extrā</i> , without, beyond.	<i>post</i> , after, since, behind.
<i>adversus</i> , } against,	<i>infra</i> , under, beneath.	<i>præter</i> , past, before,
<i>adversum</i> , } towards.	<i>inter</i> , between, among,	<i>against, beyond, besides.</i>
<i>antē</i> , before.	<i>during.</i>	<i>propē</i> , near by, nigh.
<i>apud</i> , at, with, near, be-	<i>intrā</i> , within.	<i>propter</i> , near, on account
<i>fore, in presence of.</i>	<i>juxtā</i> , near to, next to.	<i>of.</i>
<i>circā</i> , } around, about.	<i>ob</i> , for, on account of,	<i>secundum</i> , after, behind,
<i>circum</i> , }	<i>before.</i>	<i>along, next to, accord-</i>
<i>circiter</i> , about, near.	<i>pēnēs</i> , in the power of,	<i>ing to.</i>
<i>cis</i> , } on this side, within.	<i>with.</i>	<i>suprā</i> , above, over.
<i>citrā</i> , }	<i>pēr</i> , through, throughout,	<i>trans</i> , over, beyond.
<i>contrā</i> , against, opposite.	<i>by, during.</i>	<i>ultrā</i> , beyond.
<i>ergā</i> , towards, opposite.	<i>pōnē</i> , behind.	

5. Eleven prepositions have after them an ablative:—

<i>ā</i> , }	<i>dē</i> , from, down from, af-	<i>præ</i> , before, for, on ac-
<i>ab</i> , } from, after, by.	<i>ter, of, concerning.</i>	<i>count of, in comparison</i>
<i>abs</i> , }	<i>ē</i> , } out of, from, of, by,	<i>with.</i>
<i>absquē</i> , without, but for.	<i>ex</i> , } after.	<i>prō</i> , before, for, instead
<i>cōram</i> , before, in pres-	<i>pālam</i> , before, in pres-	<i>of, according to.</i>
<i>ence of.</i>	<i>ence of.</i>	<i>sīnē</i> , without.
<i>cum</i> , with.		<i>tēnūs</i> , as far as, up to.

6. Five prepositions take after them sometimes an accusative, and sometimes an ablative:—

<i>clam</i> , without the knowl-	<i>sūb</i> , under, about, near.	<i>sūpēr</i> , above, over; upon
<i>edge of.</i>	<i>subtēr</i> , under, beneath.	<i>concerning.</i>
<i>In</i> , in, on; to, into, against.		

REMARK 1. Prepositions are so called, because they are generally placed before the noun or pronoun whose relation they express. They sometimes, however, stand after it. Cf. § 279, 10.

REM. 2. *A* is used only before consonants; *ab* before vowels, and frequently before consonants, though rarely before labials: *abs* is obsolete, except in the phrase *abs te*.

*E* is used only before consonants, *ex* before both vowels and consonants.

REM. 3. *Versus*, which follows its noun, (cf. § 235, R. 3), *usquē*, and *exadversus* (*um*), sometimes take an accusative, *simul* and *prōcūl*, an ablative, and are then by some called prepositions. *Secūs*, with an accusative, occurs in Pliny and Cato.

REM. 4. Many of the prepositions, especially those which denote place, are also used as adverbs. Cf. § 191.

### Signification and Use of certain Prepositions.

REM. 5. (a.) *Ad* denotes direction, and answers to the questions Whither? and Till when? as, *Venio ad te*. *Sophocles ad summam senectutem tragedias fecit*. Cic. It also denotes a fixed time; as, *ad hōram*, at the hour; *ad tempus aliquid facere*,—at the right time. But sometimes *ad tempus* denotes 'for a time.' Sometimes, also, *ad* denotes the approach of time; as, *ad lucem*, *ad vesperum*, *ad extrēmum*, towards day-break, etc.; and also the actual arrival of a time; as, *ad prima signa veris profectus* at the first sign of Spring.

(b) In answer to the question Where? *ād* signifies 'near' a place; as, *ād urbem esse*; *ād portas urbis*; *pugna navālis ād Tenēdum*. It is used like *in*, 'at,' in such phrases as *ād ædem Bellōne*, or, without *ædem*, *ād Opis*; *negotium habēre ād portum*.—With numerals it may be rendered 'to the amount of' or 'nearly'; as, *ād ducentos*. It is also used like *circitōr* without any case, as, *Occisus ād hominum millibus quatuor*.—The phrase *omnes ād ūnum* signifies, 'all without exception,' 'every one.'

(c.) *Ad* often denotes an object or purpose, and hence comes its signification of 'in respect to'; as, *hōmo ād labōres belli impiger*. It is also used in figurative relations to denote a model, standard, or object of comparison, where we say 'according to,' or 'in comparison with'; as, *ād mōdum*, *ād effigiem*, *ād similitudinem*, *ād speciem alicujus rei*; *ād normam*, etc. *ād voluntātem alicujus facere aliquid*. *Ad verbum* signifies, 'word for word'; *nihil ād hanc rem*, 'nothing in comparison with this thing.'

REM. 6. *Apūd* expresses nearness to, and was primarily used of persons as *ād* was applied to things. *Apūd* also denotes rest, and *ād* direction, motion, etc. Hence it signifies 'with,' both literally and figuratively. With names of places it signifies 'near,' like *ād*; as, *Māle pugnatum est apūd Caudium*. But in early writers, *apūd* is used for *in*; as, *Augustus apūd urbem Nōlam extinctus est*,—at Nola.—With *me*, *te*, *se*, or the name of a person, it signifies 'at the house' or 'dwelling of'; as, *Fuisti apūd Læcam illā nocte*.—Before appellatives of persons having authority in regard to any matter, it is translated 'before,' 'in the presence of'; as, *apūd judices*, *apūd prætorem*, *apūd populum*.—It is also used with names of authors, instead of *in* with the name of their works; as, *Apūd Xenophontem*, but we cannot say *in Xenophonte*.

REM. 7. *Adversūs*, *contrā*, and *ergā* signify 'opposite to.' *Contrā* denotes hostility, like our 'against'; *ergā*, a friendly disposition, 'towards'; and *adversūs* is used in either sense. But *ergā* sometimes occurs in a hostile sense.

REM. 8. *Intrā* signifies 'within,' in regard both to time and place. In regard to place it is used in answer to both questions Where? and Whither? It denotes time either as an entire period, when it is equivalent to 'during,' or as unfinished, when it corresponds with 'under,' or 'before the expiration of.'

REM. 9. *Për*, denoting place, signifies, 'through,' and also 'in,' in the sense of 'throughout.'—With the accusative of persons it signifies 'through,' 'by the instrumentality of.' It often expresses the manner; as, *për lītēras*, by letter; *për injuriām*, *për scēlus*, with injustice, criminally; *për iram*, from or in anger; *për simulatiōnem*, *për speciem*, *për causam*, under the pretext; *për occasiōnem*, on the occasion; *për ridiculū*, in a ridiculous manner.—It sometimes signifies 'on account of'; as, *për valetudinē*, on account of illness.—*Për me licet*,—so far as I am concerned.

REM. 10. *A* or *āb*, denoting time, is used with nouns, both abstract and concrete, with the same general meaning; as, *ā primā ætate*, *āb ineunte ætate*, *āb initio ætatis*, *āb infantia*, *ā pueritia*, *āb adolescentia*; and, *ā puero*, *ā pueris*, *āb adolescentulo*, *āb infante*, all of which signify 'from an early age.' So also, *ā parvis*, *ā parvulo*, *ā tenēro*, *ā tenēris unguiculis*, which expressions are of Greek origin.—*Ab initio*, *ā principio*, *ā primo*, properly denote the space of time from the beginning down to a certain point; as, *Urbem Rōmam a principio reges habuere*, i. e. for a certain period after its foundation. But frequently *āb initio* is equivalent to *initio*, in the beginning.—The adherents or followers of a school are often named from its head; as, *ā Platone*, *āb Aristotēle*, etc.—In comic writers *āb* is sometimes used instead of the genitive; as, *ancilla āb Andriā*.—In a figurative sense it signifies 'with regard to'; as, *āb equitatu firmus*.—With names of persons it also denotes relationship, and signifies 'on the side of'; as, *Augustus ā matre Magnum Pompeium artissimo contingebat gradu*,—on his mother's side.—*Stātīm*, *confestim*, *recens āb aliquā re*, 'immediately after.'—*Ab itinēre aliquid facere*, to do a thing while on a journey.

REM. 11. *Cum* is used not only to designate accompanying persons but also accompanying circumstances; as, *cum aliquo ire*; *hostes cum detrimento sunt*



*depulsi*. It signifies also 'in,' i. e. 'dressed in'; as, *cum tunicā pullā sedere*. With verbs implying hostility, it signifies 'with,' in the sense of 'against'; as, *cum aliquo bellum gerere*; *cum aliquo queri* to complain of or against.

REM. 12. *Dē* commonly signifies 'concerning,' 'about.' Hence *traditur dē Homēro* is very different from *traditur ab Homēro*; in the former, Homer is the object, in the latter the agent.—In the epistolary style, when a new subject is touched upon, *dē* signifies 'in regard to,' 'as respects'; as, *dē frātre, confidē ita esse, ut semper volui*.—It often signifies 'down from'; and also 'of,' in a partitive sense; as, *hōmo dē plēbe, ūnus dē populo*.—From its partitive signification arises its use in denoting time; as, *in comitium dē nocte venire*, i. e. even by night, or spending a part of the night in coming; hence *multā dē nocte, mediā dē nocte*, 'in the depth of night,' 'in the middle of the night.'—In other cases, also, it is used for *ex* or *ab*; as, *Audivi hoc dē parente meo puer*. Cic.; especially in connection with *emere, mercari, conducere*. *Triumphum agere dē Gallis* and *ex Gallis* are used indiscriminately.—Sometimes, like *secundum*, it signifies 'in accordance with,' 'after'; as, *dē consilio meo*:—sometimes it denotes the manner of an action; as, *denuo, dē integro*, afresh; *dē improviso*, unexpectedly; *dē industriā*, purposely:—*quā dē re, quā dē causā, quibus dē causis*, for which reason or reasons.

REM. 13. *Ex*, 'from,' 'out of.' *Ex equo pugnare*, to fight on horseback; so *ex itinere scribere*: *ex adverso, ē regione*, opposite; *ex omni parte*, in or from all parts.—*Ex vino* or *ex aquā coquere* or *bibere*, i. e. 'with wine,' etc. are medical expressions.—It sometimes denotes manner; as, *ex animo laudare*, to praise heartily; *ex sententiā* and *ex voluntate*, according to one's wish.—It is also, like *dē*, used in a partitive sense; as, *ūnus ē plēbe, ūnus ē multis*.

REM. 14. *In*, with the accusative, signifying 'to' or 'into,' denotes the point towards which motion proceeds; as, *in aedem ire*; or the direction in which a thing extends; as, *dēcem pēdes in altitudinem*, in height; so, also, it denotes figuratively the object towards which an action is directed, either with a friendly or a hostile design; as, *amor in patriam, odium in malos cives, in milites liberālis*; *oratio in aliquem*, a speech against some one.—It also denotes a purpose; as, *pecuniā data est in rem militārem*. *Pax data Philippo in has lēges est*, on these conditions.—With words denoting time, it expresses a predetermination of that time, like 'for'; as, *invitare aliquem in postērum diem*, for the following day. *In diem vivere*, to live only for the day; *in futurum, in postērum, in reliquum*, for the future; *in æternum, in perpetuum*, forever; *in præsens*, for the present: with all these adjectives *tempus* may be supplied. *In* with *singuli*, expressed or understood, denotes a distribution, and may be translated 'to,' 'for,' 'on,' 'over.'—*In singulos dies*, or simply *in dies*, with comparatives and verbs denoting increase, signifies 'from day to day.'—In some phrases it denotes the manner of an action; as, *servilem in modum, mirum in modum*; so *in univēsum*, in general; *in commūne*, in common; *in vicem*, alternately, or, instead of; *in alicujus locum aliquid petere*, in the place, or, instead of.

REM. 15. *In*, with the ablative, signifies 'in,' 'on,' 'upon,' and answers to the question, Where? When a number or quantity is indicated, it signifies 'among,' and is equivalent to *inter*. It may sometimes be translated 'with,' or 'notwithstanding'; as, *In summā copiā oratōrum, nemo tamen Cicerōnis laudem æquavit*.—With nouns which by themselves denote time, such as *æcūlum, annus, mensis, dies, nox, vesper*, etc., the time, in answer to the question When? is expressed by the simple ablative; but *in* is used with words which acquire the signification of time only by such connection; as, *in consulātu in principio, in bello*; but even with these *in* is sometimes omitted, but is usually retained in connection with the gerund or gerundive; as, *in legendo, in legendis libris*. *In præsenti*, or *in præsentiā*, signifies 'at the present moment,' 'for the present.'—*Est in eo, ut aliquid fiat* signifies that something is or the point of happening.



## PREPOSITIONS IN COMPOSITION.

§ 196. Most of the prepositions are used also in forming compound words. In composition, they may be considered either in reference to their form, or their force.

I. (a.) Prepositions in composition sometimes retain their final consonants, and sometimes change them, to adapt them to the sounds of the initial consonants of the words with which they are compounded. In some words, both forms are in use; in others, the final consonant or consonants are omitted.

1. *A*, in composition, is used before *m* and *v*; as, *āmōreo*, *āvello*, and sometimes before *f* in *āfui* and *āfōre*, for *abfui* and *abfōre*. *Ab* is used before vowels, and before *d*, *f*, *h*, *j*, *l*, *n*, *r*, and *s*; as, *abjūro*, *abrōgo*, etc. *Abs* occurs only before *c*, *q*, and *t*; as, *abscondo*, *absque*, *abstineo*. In *aspello*, *aspernor*, and *asporto*, the *b* of *abs* is dropped; in *aufēro* and *aufugio*, it is changed into *v*.

2. *Ad* remains unchanged before vowels and before *b*, *d*, *h*, *m*, *v*. It often changes *d* into *c*, *f*, *g*, *l*, *n*, *p*, *r*, *s*, *t*, before those letters respectively; as, *accēdo*, *affēro*, *aggrēdior*, *allēgo*, *annūtor*, *appōno*, *arrīgo*, *assēquor*, *attollo*. Its *d* is usually omitted before *s* followed by a consonant, and before *gn*; as, *aspergo*, *aspicio*, *agnosco*, *agnātus*. Before *q*, the *d* is changed into *c*; as, *acquirō*.

3. *Ante* remains unchanged, except in *antīcīpo* and *antīsto*, where it changes *e* to *i*; but *antesto* also occurs.

4. *Circum* in composition remains unchanged, only in *circūmeo* and its derivatives the *m* is often dropped; as, *circueo*, *circuitus*, etc.

5. *Cum* (in composition, *com*), retains *m* before *b*, *m*, *p*; as, *combībo*, *committo*, *compōno*: before *l*, *n*, *r*, its *m* is changed into those letters respectively; as, *colligo*, *connūtor*, *corripio*: before other consonants, it becomes *n*; as, *condūco*, *conjungo*. Before a vowel, *gn* or *h*, *m* is commonly omitted; as, *coro*, *coopto*, *cognosco*, *cohabitō*; but it is sometimes retained; as, *comēdo*, *cōmes*, *cōmiter*. In *cōgo* and *cōgito* a contraction also takes place; as, *cōūgo*, *cōgo*, etc. In *combūro*, *b* is inserted.

6. *Ex* is prefixed to vowels, and to *c*, *h*, *p*, *q*, *s*, *t*; as, *exeo*, *exīgo*, *excurro*, *exhibeo*, *expēdio*. Before *f*, *x* is assimilated, and also rarely becomes *ec*; as, *effēro*, or *ecfēro*. *S* after *x* is often omitted; as, *exēquor*, for *exsēquor*; in *excidium* (from *exscindo*), *s* is regularly dropped. *E* is prefixed to the other consonants; as, *ēbībo*, *ēdico*, except in *eclex*. Before these however, with the exception of *n* and *r*, *ex* is sometimes used; as, *exmōreo*. *E* is sometimes used before *p*; as, *ēpōto*.

7. *In* remains unchanged before a vowel. Before *b*, *m*, *p*, it changes *n* into *m*; as, *imbuo*, *immitto*, *impōno*: before *l* and *r*, *n* is assimilated; as, *illigo*, *irrētio*: before *gn*, *n* is omitted; as, *ignārus*. Before the other consonants *n* is unchanged. In some compounds, *in* retains *d* before a vowel, from an ancient form *indu*; as, *indigēna*, *indigeo*, *indolesco*. So anciently *induperātor*, for *inverātor*.

8. *Inter* remains unchanged, except in *intelligo* and its derivatives, in which *r* before *l* is assimilated.

9. *Ob* remains unchanged before vowels and generally before consonants. Its *b* is assimilated before *c*, *f*, *g*, *p*; as, *occurro*, *officio*, *oggnatio*, *oppēto*. In *ōmitto*, *b* is dropped. An ancient form *obs*, analogous to *abs* for *ab*, is implied in *obsolesco*, from the simple verb *oleo*, and in *ostendo*, for *obstendo*.

10. *Per* is unchanged in composition, except in *pellicio* and sometimes in *pellūceo*, in which *r* is assimilated before *l*. In *pējero*, *r* is dropped.

11. *Post* remains unchanged, except in *pōnarium* and *pōmērīdiānus*, in which *st* is dropped.

12. *Præ* and *præter* in composition remain unchanged, except that *præ* is shortened before a vowel. Cf. § 283, II Exc. 1.

13. *Prō* has sometimes its vowel shortened, (cf. § 285, 2, Exc. 5) and, to avoid hiatus, it sometimes takes *d* before a vowel; as, *prōdeo*, *prōdesse*, *prōdigo*. Before verbs beginning with *r* and *l*, *præ* sometimes becomes *por* and *pol*; as *porrigo*, *pollicor*.

14. *Sūb* in composition remains unchanged before a vowel and before *b*, *d*, *j*, *l*, *n*, *s*, *t*, *v*. Before *c*, *f*, *g*, *m*, *p*, *r*, its *b* is regularly assimilated; as, *succēdo*, *suffēro*, *suggēro*, *summōcco*, *supplicō*, *surrīpio*. Before *c*, *p*, and *t*, it sometimes takes the form *sus* from *subs*, analogous to *abs* and *obs*; as, *suscipio*, *suspendo*, *suscollo*: *b* is omitted before *s*, followed by a consonant; as, *suspicio*.

15. *Subter* and *sūper* in composition remain unchanged.

16. *Trans* remains unchanged before a vowel. It omits *s* before *s*; as, *transcendo*: in *trādo*, *trādūco*, *trājicio*, and *trāno*, *ns* is commonly omitted.

(b.) The following words are called *inseparable prepositions*, because they are found only in composition:—

*Ambi* or *amb*, (Greek ἀμφί), *around, about*. *Rēd* or *rē*, *again, back*. *Vē*, *not*.  
*Dis* or *dī*, *arunder*. *Sē*, *apart, aside*.

1. *Amb* is always used before a vowel; as, *ambāges*, *ambarvālis*, *ambēdo*, *ambigo*, *ambio*, *ambūro*: except *ampulla*, *āmicio*, and *ānhēlo*. Before consonants it has the forms *ambi*; as, *ambidens*, *ambīfāriam*, *ambivium*: *am*; as, *amplector*, *ampūto*: or *an*; as, *anceps*, *anfractus*, *anquīro*.

2. *Dis* is prefixed to words beginning with *c*, *p*, *q*, *s* before a vowel, *t*, and *h*; as, *discutio*, *dispōno*, *disquiro*, *distendo*, *dishiasco*: but *disertus* is formed from *dissero*; before *f*, *s* is changed into *f*; as, *diffēro*: in *dirimo*, and *diribeo* (from *dis habeo*), *s* becomes *r*. *Dī* is prefixed to the other consonants, and to *s* when followed by a consonant; as, *dīdūco*, *dīmitto*, *dīstinguo*, *dīspicio*. But both *dis* and *dī* are used before *j*; as, *disjungo*, *dījūlico*, and before *r* in *rumpo*.

3. *Rēd* is used before a vowel or *h*; *rē* before a consonant; as, *rēdāmo*, *rēdeo*, *rēdhībeo*, *rēdāgo*, *rēdūleo*, *rēduulo*;—*rējicio*, *rēpōno*, *rēreritor*. But *rēd* is used before *do*; as, *reddo*. The connecting vowel *i* is found in *rēdicivus*; and in the poetical forms *relligio*, *relliquie*, and sometimes in *reccido* the *d* is assimilated. In later writers *re* is sometimes found before a vowel or *h*.

4. *Sē* and *vē* are prefixed without change; as, *sēcēdo*, *sēcūrus*; *vēgrandis*, *vēcors*.

§ 197. II. Prepositions in composition usually add their own signification to that of the word with which they are united; but sometimes they give to the compound a meaning different from that of its simples. The following are their most common significations:—

1. *A*, or *ab*, *away, from, down; entirely; un-*. With verbs it denotes removal, disappearance, absence; as, *aufēro*, *abūtor*, *absum*. With adjectives it denotes absence, privation; as, *āmens*, *absōnus*.

2. *Ad*, *to, toward; at, by*. In composition with verbs *ad* denotes (a) *motion to*, (not *into*), as, *accēdo*; (b) *addition*, as, *ascribo*; (c) *nearness*, as, *assideo*; (d) *assent, favor*, as, *amuo*, *arrideo*; (e) *repetition* and hence *intensity*, as, *accēdo*; (f) *at, in consequence of*, as, *arrigo*. It is sometimes augmentative, rarely inchoative.

3. *Ambi*, *around, about, on both sides*.

4. *Circum*, *around, about, on all sides*.

5. *Cōm* or *cōn*, *together, entirely*. In composition with verbs it denotes (a) *union*, as, *concurro*, *consūlo*; (b) *completeness*, as, *combūro*, *conficio*; (c) *with effort*, as, *conjicio*, *conclāmo*; (d) *in harmony*, as, *consōno*, *consentio*; (e) *on or over*, like the English *be-*, as, *collino*, *to besmear*.

6. *Contra*, against, opposite.

7. *Dē*, off, away, through, over, down; entirely; very, extremely. With verbs *dē* denotes (a) *down*; as, *dēmitto*; (b) *removal*; as, *dētondeo*; (c) *absence*; as, *dēsum*, *dēhābeo*; (d) *prevention*; as, *dēhortor*; (e) *unfriendly feeling*; as, *despicio*, *dērideo*.—With adjectives *dē* denotes (a) *down*; as, *dēclivis*; (b) *without*; as, *dēmens*.

8. *Dis*, asunder, apart, in pieces, in two; dis-, un-; very greatly. With verbs *dis* denotes (a) *division*; as, *divido*, *dilābor*; (b) *difference*; as, *discrepo*, *dissentio*; (c) *the reverse of the simple notion*; as, *displīceo*, *diffīdo*; (d) *intensity*; as, *dilaudo*.—With adjectives *dis* denotes *difference*; as, *discolor*, *discors*.

9. *E*, or *ex*, out, forth, away, upward, without, -less, un-; utterly, completely, very. With verbs it denotes (a) *out*; as, *exeo*, *exīmo*, *ēlāboro*; (b) *removal of something*; as, *ēdormio*; (c) *publicity*; as, *ēdico*; (d) *ascent*; as, *exsisto*; (e) *completeness*; as, *ēdisco*, *exūro*; (f) with denominative verbs, *change of character*; as, *expio*, *effēro* (āre); (g) *removal of what is expressed by the noun whence the verb is derived*; as *ēnōdo*; (h) *the reversal of the fundamental idea*; as, *explico*; (i) *distance*; as, *exaudio*.—With adjectives formed from substantives it denotes *absence*; as, *exsomnis*.

10. *In*, with verbs, signifies in, on, at; into, against; as, *inhābito*, *induo*, *ingēmo*, *īneo*, *illīdo*. With adjectives, un-, in-, im-, il-, ir-, not; as, *ignōtus*, *inhospitālis*, *immortālis*. Some of its compounds have contrary significations, according as they are participles or adjectives; as, *intectus*, *part.*, covered, *adj.*, uncovered.

11. *Inter*, between, among, at intervals.

12. *Ob*, with verbs, signifies to, towards; as, *ōbeo*, *ostendo*; against; as, *obluctor*, *obnuntio*; at, before; as, *ōbambūlo*, *obversor*; upon; as, *occulco*; over; as *obdūco*.

13. *Per*, with verbs, denotes, through, thoroughly, perfectly, quite; as, *perdūco*, *perficio*, *perdo*: with adjectives, through, very; as, *pernox*, *perlēvis*.

14. *Post*, after, behind.

15. *Præ* in composition with verbs denotes (a) *before in place*; as, *præmitto*; (b) *by or past*; as, *præfluo*; (c) *in command*; as, *præsum*, *præficio*; (d) *superiority*; as, *præsto*; (e) *before in time*; as, *prædico*, *præcerpo*; *at the extremity*; as, *præūro*.—With adjectives, (a) *before in place or time*; as, *præceps*, *præscius*; (b) *very*; as, *præaltus*, *præclārus*.

16. *Præter*, past, by, beyond, besides.

17. *Prō*, before, forward, forth, away, down; for; openly; as, *prōlūdo*, *porrigo*, *prōterreo*, *prōtēro*, *prōcūro*, *prōfiteor*.

18. *Rē*, again, against, back, re-, un-, away; greatly; as, *rēflōresco*, *rēpendo*, *rēfērio*, *rēfūgo*, *rēcondo*.

19. *Sē*, without, aside, apart; as, *sēcūro*, *sēpōno*, *sēcēdo*, *sēcūrus*.

20. *Sūb* up, from below upwards, under. With verbs *sūb* also signifies (a) *assistance*; as, *subvenio*; (b) *succession*; as, *succino*; (c) *in place of*; as, *sufficio*; (d) *near*: as, *subsum*; (e) *secretly, clandestinely*; as, *surrīpio*, *subdūco*; (f) *something, a little*; as, *subrīdeo*, *sūbaccūro*.—With adjectives it signifies, *slightly, rather*; as, *sūbobscūrus*, *sūbabsurdus*, *sūbācidus*.

21. *Subter*, beneath, under, from under, secretly, privately.

22. *Sūper*, above, over, left over, remaining, super-; as, *sūpersēdeo*, *sūpersum*, *sūperstes*, *sūpervacūneus*.

23. *Trans*, over, across, through; beyond; as, *trādo*, *transeo*, *transfīgo*, *transalpinus*.

24. *Vē*, not, without; very; as, *vēgrandis*, *vēcors*, *vēpalidus*.

REMARK. In composition the preposition seems often to add nothing to the signification of the word with which it is compounded.



## CONJUNCTIONS.

§ 198. A conjunction is a particle which connects words or propositions.

The most usual conjunctions are,

ātque, } and, as; than.	nē, lest, that not.	quō, in order that.
āc, }	-nē, whether.	quoad, as long as, until.
āc si, as if.	nēque or nēc, neither, nor.	quōd, because, but.
ādeo, so that, so.	nēque...nēque, }	quodsī, but if.
ān, }	nēc...nēc, }	quōnīnus, that not.
anne } whether.	nēque...nēc, }	quōniam, since, because.
annon, whether or not.	nēc...nēque, }	quōquē, also.
antēquam, before.	necnē, or not.	quum or cum, when, since
āt, ast, but.	nēquē, neither, nor.	because.
āt enim, but indeed.	nēquē or nēc...ēt, }	quum...tum, both...and.
atquī, but.	nēquē or nēc...quē, }	sēd, but.
attāmēn, but yet.	the one hand, but on the	sīcūt, }
aut, either, or.	other.	sīcūtī, }
aut...aut, either...or.	nēve or neu, nor, and not.	sī, if.
autem, but.	nēve...nēve, }	sī mōdo, if only.
cētērum, but, however	neu...neu, }	simūl, }
ceu, as like as, as if.	nī, nīsī, unless.	simūlāc (-atquē) }
cum or quum, since.	num, whether.	as soon
dōnēc. as long as, until.	præūt, in comparison with.	as.
dum, provided, while, as	proūt, according as, just	sīn, but if, if however.
long as, until.	as, as.	sīvē or sen, or if.
dummodo, if but, if only.	proinde, hence, therefore.	sīvē...sīvē, }
enimvēro, in very deed.	proptēreā, therefore, for	whether...or.
enim, }	that reason.	sen...sen, }
ētēnim, }	postquam, after, since.	sīquīdem, if indeed, since.
eō, therefore.	priusquam, before.	tāmēn, however, still.
ēquīdem, indeed.	quam, as, than.	tāmetsī, although.
ergo, therefore.	quamvis, although.	tamquam, as if.
ēt, and.	quando, quāquīdem,	tum...tum, both...and.
ēt...ēt }	whereas, since.	undē, whence.
both...and;	quamquam, although.	ūt, }
ēt...quē, }	quāpropter, }	that, as that, so that,
as well...as.	quārē, }	ūtī, }
ēt...nēque or nēc, on the	quamobrem, }	to the end that.
one hand, but not on the	quōcircā, }	ūt sī, as if.
other.	quantumvis, }	utrum, whether.
ētiam, also.	quamlibet, }	-vē, }
ētiamsi, }	quāsi, as if, just as.	vēl, }
although,	-quē, and.	either, or.
etsī, }	-quē...ēt, }	vēl...vēl, either...or.
though.	-quē...quē, }	vēlūt, }
iccirco, }	quā, because.	even as, just as,
ideo, }	quīn, but that, that not.	like as.
therefore.	quippē, because.	vēro, truly, but indeed.
igitūr, }		vērūn, but.
itāquē, }		vēruntāmēn, yet, notwith-
lēcēt, though, although.		standing.
mōdo, provided.		vērūn-enim vēro, but in-
nam, namquē, for.		deed.

Conjunctions, according to their different uses, are divided into two general classes,—coördinate and subordinate.

I. Coördinate conjunctions, are such as join coördinate or similar constructions; as,

*Luna et stellæ fulgēbant,* The moon and the stars were shining. *Concidunt venti, fugiuntque nubes,* The winds subside, and the clouds disperse. *Difficile factu est, sed conābor tamen,* It is difficult to accomplish but still I will try.



Coordinate conjunctions include the following subdivisions, viz. *copulative*, *disjunctive*, *adversative*, *illative*, and most of the *causal* conjunctions.

II. Subordinate conjunctions are such as join dissimilar constructions; as,

Edo, *ut vivam*, I eat that I may live. *Pyrrhus rex in itinēre incidit in canem, qui interfecti hominis corpus custodiēbat. Mergi pullos in aquam jussit, ut bibērent, quoniam esse nollent.*

Subordinate conjunctions include all those connectives which unite subordinate or dependent clauses. These are the *concessive*, *illative*, *final*, *conditional*, *interrogative*, and *temporal* conjunctions, and the *causals* *quod*, *quoniam*, *quoniam*, etc. To these may be added also the relatives whether pronouns, adjectives, or adverbs.

The following paragraphs contain a specification of the several conjunctions comprised in each of the preceding subdivisions, and remarks respecting their particular import and use as connectives.

1. COPULATIVE conjunctions connect things that are to be considered jointly; as, *et*, *ac*, *atque*, the enclitic *quē*, which, combined with the negation belonging to the verb, becomes *nēquē* or *nēc*, and, the negation being doubled, *nēc nōn* or *nēquē nōn*, it becomes again affirmative and equivalent to *et*. To these are to be added *etiam* and *quōquē*, with the adverbials *item* and *etiam*.

REMARK. (a.) *Et* and *quē* differ in this, *et* connects things which are conceived as different, and *quē* adds what belongs to, or naturally flows from them. *Et*, therefore, is copulative and *quē* adjunctive. Hence, in an enumeration of words, *quē* frequently connects the last of the series, and by its means the preceding idea is extended without the addition of any thing which is generically different. In connecting propositions *quē* denotes a consequence, and is equivalent to 'and therefore.'

(b.) *Ac* never stands before vowels, *atque* chiefly before vowels, but also before consonants.—*Atque*, being formed of *ad* and *quē*, properly signifies 'and also,' 'and in addition,' thus putting things on an equality, but giving emphasis to the latter. In the beginning of a proposition, which is explanatory of that which precedes, *atque* or *ac* introduces a thing with great weight, and may be rendered 'now'; and in answers; as, *Cognoscite hos versus? Ac memoriter*, it is rendered 'yes, and that.' *Ac* being an abridged form of *atque* loses somewhat of its power in connecting single words, and its use alternates with that of *et*; it is preferred in subdivisions, whereas the main propositions are connected by *et*.

(c.) *Nēquē*, compounded of the ancient *nē* for *nōn* and *quē*, is used for *et nōn*. *Et nōn* itself is used, when only one idea or one word of a proposition is to be negated; as, *patior et non moleste fero*; and also when our 'and not' is used for 'and not rather' to correct an improper supposition; as, *Si quam Rubrius injuriam suo nomine ac non impulsu tuo fecisset*. Cic. *Et nōn* is commonly found also in the second clause of a sentence when *et* precedes, but *nēquē*, also, is often used in this case. *Nēc nōn* or *nēquē nōn*, in classical prose, is not used like *et* to connect nouns, but only to join propositions, and the two words are separated. In later writers, however, they are not separated and are equivalent to *et*.

(d.) *Etiam* has a wider extent than *quōquē*, for it contains the idea of our 'even,' and it also adds a new circumstance, whereas *quōquē* denotes the addition of a thing of a similar kind. Hence *etiam* is properly used to connect sentences, while *quōquē* refers to a single word. *Etiam* signifies 'and further,' *quōquē*, 'and so,' 'also.' *Quōquē* always follows the word to which it refers, *etiam* in similar cases is usually placed before it, but when it connects propositions its place is arbitrary. *Et*, too, in classical prose, is sometimes used in the sense of 'also.' So often is *nōn mēlo—sed et*, 'not only—but also,' or 'but even.'

(e.) Copulative conjunctions are often repeated in the sense of 'both—and,' 'as well—as,' 'not only—but also' *Et—et* is of common occurrence; so, in later writers, but rarely in Cicero, *et—quē*, *quē—et* connect single words, but not in Cicero; *quē—quē*, occur for the most part only in poetry, or in connection with the relative.—Negative propositions are connected in English by 'neither—nor,' and in Latin by *nēquē—nēquē*, *nēc—nēc*, *nēquē—nēc*, and rarely by *nēc—nēquē*. Propositions, one of which is negative and the other affirmative 'on the one hand—but not on the other,' or, 'not on the one hand—but on the other,' are connected by *et—nēquē* or *nēc*, *nēquē* or *nēc—et*, and occasionally by *nēc* or *nēquē—quē*.

2. DISJUNCTIVE conjunctions connect things that are to be considered separately; as, *aut*, *vēl*, the enclitic *vē*, and *sivē* or *seu*.

REMARK. (a.) *Aut* and *vēl* differ in this; *aut* indicates a difference of the object, *vēl*, a difference of expression, i. e. *aut* is objective, *vēl*, subjective. *Vēl* is connected with the verb *velle*, and is generally repeated, *vēl—vēl*, 'choose this or choose this,' and the single *vēl* is used by Cicero only to correct a preceding expression, and commonly combined with *dicam*, *pōtius*, or *etiam*.—Hence by ellipsis *vēl* has acquired the signification of the adverb, 'even,' and so enhances the signification of the word modified by it; as, *Quum Sophocles vel optime scripsērit Electram*, where *bēne* is to be supplied before *vel*, and the latter is used for the purpose of correcting the preceding expression. Cf. § 127, 4. By means of its derivation from *velle* it has, also, the signification of 'for example' or 'to take a case,' for which *vēlūt* is more frequently used.—(b.) *Vē*, the apocopated *vēl*, leaves the choice free between two or more things, and in later but good prose *vēl* is used in the same manner.

(c.) *Sivē* commonly retains the meaning of *sī*, and is then the same as *vēl sī*, but sometimes loses it, and is then equivalent to *vēl*, denoting a difference of name; as, *Vocabulum sivē appellatio*. Quint. The form *seu* is rarely used by Cicero except in the combination *seu pōtius*.—(d.) *Aut* and *vē* serve to continue the negation in negative sentences, where we use 'nor'; as, *nōn—aut*, where *nōn—nēquē* also may be used. They are used also in negative questions; as, *Num leges nostras moresvē nōvīt?* Cic.; and after comparatives; as, *Doctrīna paulo aspērior, quam veritas aut natūra patiātur*. Cic. It is only when both ideas are to be united into one that a copulative is used instead of *aut* and *vē*.—(e.) 'Either—or' is expressed in Latin by *aut—aut*, denoting an opposition between two things, one of which excludes the other, or by *vēl—vēl*, denoting that the opposition is immaterial in respect to the result, so that the one need not exclude the other; as, *Vēl imperatōre vel milite me utimini*. Sall.—*Sivē—sivē* is the same as *vēl sī—vēl sī*, and retains the meaning of *vēl—vēl*. If nouns only are opposed to each other, an uncertainty is expressed as to how a thing is to be called; as, *Crētum lēges, quas sive Jupiter sive Mīnos sanxit*; i. e. I do not know whether I am to say Jupiter or Minos.

3. COMPARATIVE conjunctions express a comparison. These are, *ūt* or *ūtī sīcūt*, *vēlūt*, *proūt*, *præūt*, the poetical *ceu*, *quam*, *tamquam*, (with and without *sī*), *quāsī*, *ūt sī*, *ac sī*, with *ac* and *atquē*, when they signify 'as.'

REMARK. *Ac* and *atquē* signify 'as' or 'than' after adverbs and adjectives which denote similarity or dissimilarity; as, *æquē*, *juxtā*, *pār* and *pārītēr*, *pērindē* and *proindē*, *prō eō*, *similis* and *similiter*, *dissimilis*, *tālis*, *tōtīdem*, *alius* and *ālītēr*, *contrā*, *sēcūs*, *contrārius*.—*Quam* is rarely used after these words, except when a negative particle is joined with *alius*; as, *Virtus nihil aliud est, quam*, etc.; and *et* and *quē* do not occur in this connection.—*Ac* is used for *quam*, after comparatives, in poetry and occasionally by late prose writers; as, *Artius atque hedera*. Hor. *Iulianus ac sī*. Id.

4. CONCESSIVE conjunctions express a concession, with the general signification 'although.' These are *etsī*, *etiamsī*, *tāmetsī*, or *tāmēnetsī* *quamquam*, *quāmvīs*, *quantūmvīs*, *quāmlibēt*, *licēt*, *ūi* in the sense of 'even if' or 'although,' and *quum* when it signifies 'although.'

REMARK. *Tāmēn* and other particles signifying 'yet,' 'still,' are the correlatives of the concessive conjunctions; as, *Ut desint vires, tāmēn est laudanda*



**voluntas.** Ovid. The adverb *quidem* becomes a concessive conjunction, when it is used to connect propositions and is followed by *sed*.—*Quamquam*, in absolute sentences, sometimes refers to something preceding, which it limits and partly nullifies: as, *Quamquam quid loquor?* Yet why do I speak?

5. **CONDITIONAL** conjunctions express a condition, their fundamental signification being 'if.' These are *sī*, *sīn*, *nīsī* or *nī*, *sī mōdo*, *dum mōdō*, 'if only,' 'if but,' (for which *dum* and *mōdo* are also used alone), *dum mōdō nē*, or simply *mōdo nē* or *dum nē*.

REMARK. (a.) In order to indicate the connection with a preceding proposition, the relative *quod*, which in such case loses its signification as a pronoun, and may be rendered, 'nay,' 'now,' 'and,' or 'then,' is frequently put before *sī* and sometimes before *nīsī* and *etsī*, so that *quodsī* may be regarded as one word, signifying 'now if,' 'but if,' or 'if then.' It serves especially to introduce something assumed as true, from which further inferences may be drawn. It sometimes signifies 'although.' *Quodnīsī* signifies 'if then—not,' and *quod-etiā*, 'nay, even if.' *Quod* is found also before *quum*, *ubi*, *quā*, *quoniam*, *nē*, *ut*, and even before the relative pronoun.

(b.) *Nī* and *nīsī* limit a statement by introducing an exception, and thus differ from *sī nōn*, which introduces a negative case. It is often immaterial whether *nīsī* or *sī nōn* is used, but the difference is still essential. *Sī nōn* is used when single words are opposed to one another, and in this case *sī minūs* may be used instead of *sī nōn*.—If after an affirmative proposition its negative opposite is added without a verb, our 'but if not' is commonly expressed in prose by *sī minūs* or *sīn minūs* or *sīn aliter*; as, *Educ tecum etiam omnes tuos; et minūs, quam plurimos.* Cic.; rarely by *sī nōn*.

6. **ILLATIVE** conjunctions express an inference or conclusion, with the general signification of 'therefore,' 'consequently.' These are *ergo*, *igitūr*, *tāquē*, *eō*, *ideo*, *iccirco*, *proindē*, *proptēreā*, and the relative conjunctions, *quaproptēr*, *quārē*, *quamobrem*, *quōcirca*, *undē*, 'wherefore.'

REMARK. *Ergo* and *igitūr* denote a logical inference.—*Itāquē*, 'and thus,' expresses the relation of cause in facts.—*Ideo*, *iccirco*, and *proptēreā*, 'on this account,' express the agreement between intention and action.—*Eō*, 'on this account,' or 'for this purpose,' is more frequently an adverb of place.—*Proindē*, 'consequently,' implies an exhortation.—*Undē*, 'whence,' is properly an adverb of place.—*Adeo*, 'so that,' or simply 'so,' is also properly an adverb. *Hinc*, 'hence,' and *indē*, 'thence,' continue to be adverbs.

7. **CAUSAL** conjunctions express a cause or reason, with the general signification of 'for' and 'because.' These are *nam*, *namquē*, *enim*, *etēnim*, *quā*, *quod*, *quoniam*, *quippe*, *quum*, *quando*, *quandōquidem*, *siquidem*; and the adverbs *nimirum*, *nempē*, *scilicēt*, and *videlicēt*.

REMARK. (a.) *Nam* is used at the beginning of a proposition, *enim*, after the first or second word. *Nam* introduces an objective reason, and *enim* merely a subjective one. There is the same difference between *namquē* and *etēnim*. *Namquē*, however, though constantly standing at the beginning of a proposition in Cicero, Cæsar, and Nepos, is in later writers often put after the beginning. *Enim* in the sense of *at enim* or *sed enim* is sometimes, by comic writers, put at the beginning of a proposition.—*Nam*, *enim*, and *etēnim* are often used in the sense of 'namely,' or 'to wit,' to introduce an explanation of something going before. *Nimirum*, *videlicēt*, and *scilicēt* likewise answer to our 'namely' or 'viz.' *Nimirum*, compounded of *nī* and *mīrum*, and signifying 'a wonder if not,' is used as a connective in the sense of 'undoubtedly' or 'surely,' and implies strong confidence in the truth of the proposition with which it is connected.—*Videlicēt* and *scilicēt* introduce an explanation, with this difference that *videlicēt* generally indicates the true, and *scilicēt* a wrong explanation. Sometimes, however, *nam*, *enim*, *etēnim*, *nimirum*, and *videlicēt* are used in an ironical sense, and *scilicēt* introduces a true reason.—*Nempē* 'surely,' often assumes a sarcastic meaning when another person's concession is taken for the purpose of refuting him.—(b.) *Quā* and *quod* indicate a defi-

nite and conclusive reason, *quoniam*, (i. e. *quum jam*), a motive.—*Ideo*, *iccirco*, *propterea* *quod*, and *quia*, are used without any essential difference, except that *quia* introduces a more strict and logical reason, whereas *quoniam*, signifying ‘now as,’ introduces important circumstances.—*Quando*, *quandoquidem*, and *siquidem* approach nearer to *quoniam* than to *quia*, as they introduce only subjective reasons. *Quandoquidem* denotes a reason implied in a circumstance previously mentioned; *siquidem*, a reason implied in a concession. In *siquidem* the meaning of *si* is generally dropped, but it sometimes remains, and then *si* and *quidem* should be written as separate words; as, *O fortunatam rempublicam, si quidem hanc sentinam eiecērit*. Cic.—*Quippe*, with the relative pronoun or with *quum*, introduces a subjective reason. When used elliptically without a verb it signifies ‘forsooth’ or ‘indeed.’ Sometimes it is followed by a sentence with *enim*, and in this way gradually acquires the signification of *nam*.

8. FINAL conjunctions express a purpose, object, or result, with the signification of ‘in order that,’ or ‘in order that not.’ These are *ut* or *utī*, *quod nē* or *ut nē*, *nēvē* or *neu*, *quā* and *quomīnūs*.

REMARK. *Ut*, as a conjunction indicates either a result or a purpose, ‘so that,’ and ‘in order that.’ When indicating a result, if a negative is added to it, it becomes *ut nōn*; when indicating a purpose, if the negative is added, it becomes *nē* or *ut nē*, but *ut nōn* also is very rarely used for *nē*.—*Nēvē* (i. e. *vēl nē*) signifies either ‘or in order that not,’ or ‘and in order that not.’ *Ut nē* is a pleonasm, not differing perceptibly from *nē*. It is used more frequently by Cicero than by other writers. *Quō nē* for *nē* occurs once in Horace.

9. ADVERSATIVE conjunctions, express opposition, with the signification of ‘but.’ These are *sēd*, *autem*, *vērūm*, *vēro*, *āt* (poetical *ast*), *āt enim*, *atquī*, *tāmen*, *attāmen*, *sedtāmen*, *vēruntāmen*, *āt vēro*, (*ēnimvēro*), *vērūmēnim*, *vērūm vēro*, *cētērum*.

REMARK. (a.) *Sēd* denotes a direct opposition, and interrupts the narrative or argument; *autem* marks a transition, and denotes at once a connection and an opposition. *Porro*, ‘further,’ denotes progression and transition but not opposition, except in later authors.—*Vērūm* has a similar relation to *vēro* as *sēd* to *autem*. *Vērūm*, while it denotes opposition, contains also an explanation. *Vērc* connects things which are different, but denotes the point in favor of which the decision should be. It thus forms the transition to something more important, as in the phrase, *Illud vērō plane non est ferendum*, i. e. that which I am about to mention. In affirmative answers *vēro* is often added to the verb; as, *Dasne? Do vēro*. Hence, when the protasis supplies the place of a question, it is sometimes introduced into the apodosis merely to show that it contains an answer. Hence also *vēro* alone signifies ‘yes,’ like *sānē*, *itā*, and *ētiam*.—*Enimvēro*, ‘yes, ily,’ ‘in truth,’ does not denote opposition. It sometimes, like *vēro*, forms the transition to that which is most important. The compound *vērūm enimvēro* denotes the most emphatic opposition.

(b.) *At* denotes that that which is opposed is equivalent to that which precedes. It frequently follows *sī*, in the sense of ‘yet,’ or ‘at least’; as, *etsi non sapientissimus, at anūcissimus*. It is especially used to denote objections whether of the speaker himself or of others. *At enim* introduces a reason for the objection implied in *at*.—By *atquī*, ‘but still,’ ‘but yet,’ or ‘nevertheless,’ we admit what precedes, but oppose something else to it; as, *Magnum narras, vix credibile. Atquī sic habet*. Hor. So, also, when that which is admitted, is made use of to prove the contrary. Finally, *atquī* is used in syllogisms, when a thing is assumed which had before been left undecided; in this case it does not denote a direct opposition of facts, and may be translated by ‘now,’ ‘but,’ ‘but now.’—*Cētērum*, properly ‘as for the rest,’ is often used by later writers for *sēd*.—*Contra ea*, in the sense of ‘on the other hand,’ is used as a conjunction. So *adeo* with a pronoun, when it may be translated ‘just,’ ‘precisely,’ ‘even,’ ‘indeed,’ or an intensive ‘and.’

10. TEMPORAL conjunctions, express time. These are *quum*, *quum primum*, *ūt*, *ut primum*, *ubi*, *postquam*, *antēquam*, and *prius quam*, *quando*, *simulac* or *simulatque*, or *simū* alone, *dum usque aum*, *dōnēc*, *quoad*.



**REMARK.** *Ut* and *ŭbi*, as particles of time, signify 'when.' *Dum*, *dōnēc*, and *quoad* signify either 'as long as,' or 'until.' *Dum* often precedes *intēreā* or *intērim*, and both *dum* and *donēc* are often preceded by the adverbs *usquē*, *usquē* *ēō* or *usquē* *ādeo*.

11. **INTERROGATIVE** conjunctions indicate a question. These are, *num*, *utrum*, *ān*, and the enclitic *ně*. This, when attached to the three preceding particles, forming *numně*, *utrumně*, and *anně*, does not affect their meaning. With *nōn* it forms a special interrogative particle *nonně*. To these add *ec* and *ēn*, as they appear in *ecquis*, *ecquando*, and *ēnnmquam*, and *numquid* and *ecquid*, when used simply as interrogative particles.

**REMARK.** (a.) The interrogative particles have no distinct meaning by themselves in direct questions, but only serve to give to a proposition the form of a question. In direct speech the interrogative particles are sometimes omitted, but in indirect questions they are indispensable, except in the case of a double question, where the first particle is sometimes omitted.—*Ecquid* and *numquid*, as interrogative particles, have the meaning of *num*, *quid* in this case having no meaning, but they must be carefully distinguished from the interrogative pronouns *ecquid* and *numquid*. *En*, or when followed by a *q*, *ec* is, like *num*, *ně*, and *ān*, an interrogative particle, but is always prefixed to some other interrogative word.

(b.) In direct questions, *num* and its compounds *numně*, *numnam*, *numquid*, *numquidnam*, and the compounds with *ēn* or *ec* suppose that the answer will be 'no'; as, *Num putas me tam dementem fuisse?* But *ecquid* is sometimes used in an affirmative sense. In general the negative sense of these particles does not appear in indirect questions.

(c.) *Ně* properly denotes simply a question, but it is used sometimes affirmatively and sometimes negatively. When *ně* is attached, not to the principal verb but to some other word, a negative sense is produced; as, *mene istud potuisse facere putas?* Do you believe that I would have done that? The answer expected is 'no.' When attached to the principal verb *ně* often gives the affirmative meaning, and the answer expected is 'yes.'—*Nonně* is the sign of an affirmative question; as, *Canis nonne lupo similis est?*—*Utrum*, in accordance with its derivation from *ŭter*, which of two, is used only in double questions whether consisting of two or more. It is sometimes accompanied by *ně*, which is usually separated from it by one or more words; as, *Utrum, taceamne an predicem?* In later writers, however, *utrumně* is united into one word. *Ně* is rarely appended to interrogative adjectives, but examples of such use are sometimes found in poetry; as, *uterně*; *quōně malo*; *quantaně*. In a few passages it is even attached to the relative pronoun.

(d.) *An* is not used as a sign of an indirect question before the silver age; when so used it answers to 'whether.' It is used by Cicero exclusively in a second or opposite question, where we use 'or'; as, *Si satis, nihil interest utrum aqua sit, an vinum; nec refert, utrum sit aureum poculum, an vitreum, an manus concava.* Sen. In direct interrogations, when no interrogative clause precedes, *in*, *anně*, *ān* *věro* are likewise used in the sense of 'or,' that is in such a manner that a preceding interrogation is supplied by the mind; as, *Invitus te offendi, an putas me delectari ludentis hominibus?* Here we may supply before *an* *putas*, etc. the sentence, 'Do you believe this?'—*An*, after a preceding question, is rendered by 'not,' and it then indicates that the answer cannot be doubtful; as, *A rebus gerendis senectus abstrahit. Quibus? An his, quæ geruntur juventute ac viribus?* Is it not from those kinds of business, which? etc. Here we may suppose *aliisne?* to be supplied before *an* *his?* Is it from other kinds of business, or from those? etc. Such questions may be introduced by *nonně*, but without allusion to an opposite question, which is implied in *ān*.

(e.) To the rule that *ān*, in indirect questions, is used exclusively to indicate a second or opposite question, there is one great exception, for it is employed in single indirect questions after such expressions as *aubito*, *dubium est*, *incertum*, *deliběro*, *hæsito*, and especially after *nescio* or *haud scio*, all of which denote uncertainty, but with an inclination to the affirmative; as, *Si per se virtus sine*

*fortūna ponderanda sit dubito an hunc primum omnium ponam*, If virtue is to be estimated without reference to its success, I am not certain whether I should not prefer this man to all others. *Nep.* It is not Latin to say *dubito annon* for *dubito an*.—*Nescio an*, or *haud scio an* are used quite in the sense of ‘perhaps,’ so that they are followed by the negatives *nullus*, *nēno*, *numquam*, instead of *ullus*, *quisquam* and *umquam*. When the principal verb is omitted, *an* is often used in the sense of *aut*; as, *Themistocles, quum ei Simonides, an quis alius, artem memorie polliceretur*, etc. In such cases *incertum est* is understood, and in Tacitus is often supplied.—The conjunction *sī* is sometimes used in indirect interrogations instead of *num*, like the Greek *ei*, and it is so used by Cicero after the verb *expōrior*.

NOTE 1. The conjunctions *-ne*, *-que*, *-ve*, are not used alone, but are always affixed to some other word, and are hence called *enclitics*.

NOTE 2. Some words here classed with conjunctions are also used as *ad* verbs, and many classed as adverbs are likewise conjunctions; that is, they at the same time qualify verbs, etc., and connect propositions; as, *Cetēris in rebus, quum venit calamitas, tum detrimentum accipitur*, In other concerns, when misfortune comes, then damage is received.

NOTE 3. Conjunctions, like adverbs, are variously compounded with other parts of speech, and with each other; as, *atque*, (i. e. *adque*), *iccirco* or *idcirco*, (i. e. *id-circa*), *ideo*, *namque*, etc. In some, compounded of an adverb and a conjunction, each of the simple words retains its meaning, and properly belongs to its own class; as, *etiam* (*et jam*) and now; *itāque*, and so; *neque* or *nec*, and not.

## INTERJECTIONS.

§ 199. An interjection is a particle used in exclamation, and expressing some emotion of the mind.

The most usual interjections are,

āh! ah! alas!	hein! oh! indeed! well! hah! alas! alack?
āha! aha! ah! haha!	heu! oh! ah! alas!
āpāgē! away! begone!	heus! ho! ho there! hark! halloo!
ātāt! or atatte! oh! ah! alas! lo!	hui! hah! ho! oh!
au! or hau! oh! ah!	iō! ho! hurrah! huzzah!
eccē! lo! see! behold!	ō! o! oh! ah!
ēhem! ha! what!	ōh! oh! o! ah!
ēheu! ah! alas!	ōhē! ho! halloo! ho there!
ēho! eliodum! ho! soho!	ōho! oho! aha!
eiā! or hciā! ah! ah ha! indeed!	oi! hoy! alas!
ēn! lo! see! behold!	pāpæ! strange! wonderful?
eu! well done! bravo!	phui! foh! fugh!
eugē! well done! good!	phy! pish! tush!
euax! } huzzah! hurrah!	prō! or prōh! oh! ah!
euœ! }	st! hist! whist! hush!
ha! hold! ho!	tatæ! so! strange!
ha! ha! he! ha! ha!	væ! ah! alas! woe!
hei! ah! wo! alas!	vah! vaha! ah! alas? oh?

REMARK 1. An interjection sometimes denotes several different emotions. Thus *vah* is used to express wonder, grief, joy, and anger.

REM. 2. Other parts of speech may sometimes be regarded as interjections; as, *pax!* be still! So *indignum*, *infandum*, *mālum*, *misērum*, *miserabile*, *nēfas*, when used as expressions of astonishment, grief, or horror; and *mactē* and *macti*, as expressions of approbation. In like manner the adverbs *nūc*, *profecō cito*, *bene*, *belle*; the verbs *quæso*, *prēcōr*, *ōro*, *obsecro*, *amābo*, *āge*, *āgite*, *cūdo cōdes*, (for *si andes*), *sis*, *sultis*, (for *si vis* and *si vultis*), *āgēsis*, *āgēdum*, and *āgite lum*, and the interrogative *quid?* what? used as exclamations.

REM. 3. With the interjections may also be classed the following invocations of the gods : *hercūles, hercūle, hercle* ; or *mehercūles, mehercūle, mehercle* ; *medius fidiūs, mecastor, ecastor, ecēre, pol, edepol, equirine, per deum, per deum immortālem, per deos, per Jōrem, prō (or prōh) Jūpiter, prō dii immortāles, prō deum fidem, prō deum atque hominum fidem, prō deum immortālium* (scil. *fidem*), etc.

---

## SYNTAX.

§ 200. 1. Syntax treats of the construction of sentences.

2. A sentence is a thought expressed in words ; as, *Cānes latrant*, The dogs bark.

3. All sentences are either

(1.) DECLARATIVE ; as, *Venti spīrant*, The winds blow :—

(2.) INTERROGATIVE ; as, *Spīrantne venti?* Do the winds blow?—

(3.) EXCLAMATORY ; as, *Quam vehēmenter spīrant venti!* How fiercely the winds blow!—or

(4.) IMPERATIVE ; as, *Venti, spīrāte*, Blow, winds.

4. The mood of the verb in the first three classes of sentences is either the indicative or the subjunctive ; in imperative sentences it is either the imperative or the subjunctive.

5. A sentence may consist either of one proposition or of two or more propositions connected together.

## PROPOSITIONS.

§ 201. 1. A proposition consists of a *subject* and a *predicate*.

2. The subject of a proposition is that of which something is affirmed.

3. The predicate is that which is affirmed of the subject.

Thus, in the proposition, *Equus currit*, The horse runs, *ēquus* is the subject and *currit* is the predicate.

NOTE. The word *affirm*, as here used, includes all the various significations of the verb, as expressed in the several moods.

4. Propositions are either *principal* or *subordinate*.

5. A principal proposition is one which makes complete sense by itself ; as,

*Phōcion fuit perpētuo pauper, quum ditissimus esse posset*, *Phōcion was always poor though he might have been very rich.*



6. A subordinate proposition is one which, by means of a subordinate conjunction, is made to depend upon or limit some part of another proposition; as,

*Phōcion fuit perpētuo pauper, quum ditissimus esse posset, Phocion was always poor, though he might have been very rich.*

7. Subordinate propositions are used either as *substantives*, *adjectives*, or *adverbs*, and are accordingly called *substantive*, *adjective* or *adverbial propositions* or *clauses*.

8. Substantive clauses are connected with the propositions on which they depend by means of the final conjunctions *ut*, *ne*, *quo*, *quin*, etc., sometimes by *quod*, and in clauses containing an indirect question, by interrogative pronouns, adjectives, adverbs and conjunctions. See §§ 262 and 265.

REMARK. A dependent substantive clause often takes the form of the accusative with the infinitive and in that case has no connective; as, *Gaudeo te valēre*.

9. Adjective clauses are connected by means of relatives, both pronouns and pronominal adjectives; as, *qui*, *quālis*, *quantus*, etc. Adverbial clauses are connected either by relative adverbs of place and time, (§ 191, R. 1, (b.)), or by temporal, conditional, concessive, comparative, and sometimes by causal conjunctions.

10. A sentence consisting of one proposition is called a *simple sentence*; as,

*Cādunt fōlia, The leaves fall. Semirāmis Babylōnem condidit.*

11. A sentence consisting of a principal and one or more subordinate propositions is called a *complex sentence*; as,

*Qui fit, ut nēmo contentus vivat?* How happens it, that no one lives content?  
*Quis ego sim, me rogās,* You ask me, who I am.

12. A sentence consisting of two or more principal propositions, either alone or in connection with one or more subordinate propositions, is called a *compound sentence*; as,

*Spīrant venti et cādunt fōlia, The winds blow, and the leaves fall.*

13. The propositions composing a complex or a compound sentence are called its *members* or *clauses*; the principal proposition is called the *leading clause*, its subject, the *leading subject*, and its verb, the *leading verb*.

## SUBJECT.

§ 202. 1. The subject also is either *simple*, *complex*, or *compound*.

2. The simple subject, which is also called the *grammatical subject*, is either a noun or some word standing for a noun; as,

*Avēs vōlant, Birds fly. Tu lēgis, Thou readest. A est v̄cālis, A is a vowel. Mentiri est turpe, To lie is base.*

3. The complex subject, called also the *logical subject*, consists of the simple subject with its modifications; as,

*Conscientia bēne actæ vitæ est jūcundissima, The consciousness of a well spent life is very pleasant.* Here *conscientia* is the grammatical, and *conscientia bēne actæ vitæ* the complex subject.

4. The compound subject consists of two or more simple or complex subjects to which a single predicate belongs; as,

*Lūna et stellæ fulgēbant*, The moon and stars were shining. *Grammāticæ ac mūsicæ jūctæ fuērunt*, Grammar and music were united. *Semper hōnos nōmenque tuum laudesque mīnēbunt*.

REMARK. Words are said to *modify* or *limit* other words, when they serve to explain, describe, define, enlarge, restrict, or otherwise qualify their meaning.

5. Every sentence must contain a subject and a predicate, called its *principal* or *essential* parts: any sentence may also receive additions to these, called its *subordinate* parts.

### *Complex or Modified Subject.*

6. The complex subject is formed by adding other words to the simple subject. All additions to the subject, like the subject itself, are either *simple*, *complex*, or *compound*.

I. *Simple additions.* The subject may be modified by adding:—

1. A *single word*:—

(1.) A noun in the same case; as,

*Nos consules dēsūmus*, We consuls are remiss. *Mūcius augur multa narrāvit*, Mucius the augur related many things.

(2.) A noun or pronoun in an oblique case, modifying or limiting the subject; as,

*Amor multītūdīnis commōvētur*, The love of the multitude is excited. *Cura mei*, Care for me. *Viribus usus*, Need of strength.

(3.) An adjective, adjective pronoun, or participle; as,

*Fūgit invidā ætas*, Envious time flies. *Mea māter est bēnigna*. *Dūcit agmīna Penthēsīlēa fūrens*. *Litēra scripta mānet*.

2. A *phrase* consisting of a preposition and its case; as,

*Sōpor in grāmīne*. *Oppīda sine præsīdio*. *Receptio ad te*.

3. A dependent adjective *clause* introduced by *qui*, *quālis*, *quantus*, etc.; as,

*Lēve fit, quod bēne fertur, ōnus*, The burden, which is borne well, becomes light. *Litērae, quas scripsisti, acceptæ sunt*. *Ut, quālis (ille) hābēri vellet, tālis esset*. *Tanta est inter eos, quanta maxīma esse pōtest, mōrum distantia*.

II. *Complex additions.* The subject may be modified:—

1. By a *word* to which other words are added.

(1.) When the word to which other words are added is a noun or pronoun, it may be modified in any of the ways above mentioned.

(2.) When it is an adjective it may be modified:—

(a.) By an adverb either simple or modified; as,

*Erat expectātiō valde magna*. *Præsīdium non nīmīs firmum*.

(b.) By a noun in an oblique case; as,

*Major pietāte*, Superior in piety. *Contentiōnis cūpidus*, Fond of contentment. *Patri similis*, Like his father. *Nūdus membra*. *Jūvēnes patre digni*.

(c.) By an infinitive, a gerund, or a supine; as,

*Insuētus* vinci, Not accustomed to be conquered. *Vēnandi stūdiōsus*, Fond of hunting. *Mirābile dictu*, Wonderful to tell.

(d.) By a phrase consisting of a preposition and its case; as,

*Rūdis in rēpublicā*, Unskilled in civil affairs. *Ab ēquitātu firmus*. *Cēler in pugnam*. *Prōnus ad fidem*.

(e.) By a subordinate clause; as,

*Mēlior est certa pax*, quam spērāta victōria, A certain peace is better than an expected victory. *Dūbius sum*, quid faciā.

(3.) When it is a participle, it may be modified like a verb. See § 203.

2. By a phrase consisting of a preposition and its case to which other words are added; as,

*De victōria Cēsāris fāma perfertur*, A report concerning Cæsar's victory is thought.

REMARK 1. As the case following the preposition is that of a noun or pronoun, it may be modified like the subject in any of the foregoing ways.

REM. 2. The preposition itself may be modified by an adverb, or by a noun or adjective in an oblique case; as,

*Longe ultra*, Far beyond. *Multo ante noctem*, Long before night. *Sexennio post Vēios captos*, Six years after the capture of Veii.

3. By a subordinate clause, to whose subject or predicate other words are added.

REMARK. These additions may be of the same form as those added to the principal subject or predicate of the sentence.

III. Compound additions. The subject may be modified:—

1. By two or more nouns in the same case as the subject, connected by a coördinate conjunction; as,

*Consūles*, Brūtus et Collatīnus, The consuls, Brutus and Collatinus.

2. By two or more oblique cases of a noun or pronoun connected coördinately; as,

*Vitæque nēcisque pōtestas*. *Pēriculōrum et lābōrum incitāmentum*.

3. By two or more adjectives, adjective pronouns, or participles, connected coördinately; as,

*Grāve bellum perdiūtūrumque*. *Anīmī tēnēri atque molles*.

4. By two or more adjective clauses connected coördinately; as,  
*Et qui fēcēre, et qui facta āliōrum scripsēre, multi laudantur*. Sall.

5. By two or more of the preceding modifications connected coördinately; as,

*Genus homīnum agreste, sine legībūs, sine imperio, libērum, atque solūtum*.

REM. 1. A modified grammatical subject, considered as one complex idea, may itself be modified; as,

*Omnia tua consilia*, All thy counsels. Here *omnia* modifies, not *consilia*, but the complex idea expressed by *tua consilia*. So *Triginta nāves longæ*. *Præpōtens finitimus re-*



REM. 2. An infinitive, with the words connected with it, may be the logical subject of a proposition; as,

*Virtus est vitium fugere*, To shun vice is a virtue.

REM. 3. A clause, or any member consisting of two or more clauses, may be the logical subject of a proposition; as,

*E cælo descendit* 'Nosce te ipsum.' *Æquum est*, ut hoc facias.

REM. 4. The noun or pronoun which is the subject of a proposition is put in the nominative, when the verb of the predicate is a finite verb; but when the verb is in the infinitive, the subject is put in the accusative.

NOTE 1. A verb in any mood, except the infinitive, is called a *finite verb*.

NOTE 2. In the following pages, when the term *subject* or *predicate* is used alone, the grammatical subject or predicate is intended.

## PREDICATE.

§ 203. 1. The predicate, like the subject, is either *simple*, *complex*, or *compound*.

2. The simple predicate, which is also called the *grammatical predicate*, is either a single finite verb, or the copula *sum* with a noun, adjective, and rarely with an adverb; as,

*Sol læcet*, The sun *shines*. *Multa animalia rēpunt*, Many animals *creep*. *Brēvis est rō aptus*, Pleasure is *brief*. *Eurōpa est pēninsula*, Europe is a *peninsula*. *Rectissime sunt apud te omnia*.

3. The complex predicate, called also the *logical predicate*, consists of the simple predicate with its modifications; as,

*Scīpio fūdīt Annibālis cōpiās*, Scipio *routed the forces of Hannibal*. Here *fūdīt* is the grammatical, and *fūdīt Annibālis cōpiās* the logical predicate.—So, *Rōmulus Rōmānæ conditor urbis fuit*.

4. The compound predicate consists of two or more simple or complex predicates belonging to the same subject; as,

*Prōbitus laudātur et alget*, Honesty is *praised and neglected*. *Lēti vis rāpuit rāpietque gentes*. *Lucius Cātīlīna fuit magnā vi et avīni et corpōris, sed ingenio malo pravōque*.

### *Complex or Modified Predicate.*

5. The complex predicate is formed by adding other words to the simple predicate. All additions to the predicate, like the predicate itself, are either simple, complex, or compound.

I. *Simple additions*. The predicate may be modified by adding:—

1. A *single word*;—

(1.) A noun or adjective in the same case as the subject. This occurs after certain neuter verbs and passive verbs of naming, calling, etc. (See § 210, R. 3.); as,

*Servus fit libertinus*, The slave becomes a *freeman*. *Servius Tullius rex esse declaratus*. *Aristides justus est appellatus*. *Incēdo regīna*.

(2.) A noun or pronoun in an oblique case; as,

*Spe vivimus*, We live *by hope*. *Deus regit mundum*, God rules the world.

## (3.) An adverb either simple or modified ; as,

Sæpe *vēnit*, He came *often*. *Festina lente*, Hasten *slowly*. *Lit̄eræ facīle dis-  
suntur*. *Chr̄emes nimis graviter cruciat̄ adolescentūlum*.

## (4.) An infinitive mood ; as,

*Capit̄ discere*, He desires *to learn*. *Audeo dic̄ere*. *Ver̄ esse cœp̄erat*.

2. A *phrase* consisting of a preposition and its case ; as, *Vēnit ad urbem*, He came *to the city*.

3. A dependent substantive or adverbial *clause* ; as,

*V̄ereor ne repr̄ehendar*, I fear *that I shall be blamed*. *Zēn̄em, quum Athēnis essem, audibam fr̄equent̄*. *Fac̄ cōgites*.

II. *Complex additions*. The predicate may be modified :—

1. By a *word* to which other words are added.

REMARK. These words are the same as in the corresponding cases of complex additions to the subject. See § 202, II.

2. By a *phrase* consisting of a preposition and its case, to which other words are added. See complex additions to the subject, § 202.

3. By a subordinate *clause*, to whose subject or predicate other words are added. See complex subject, § 202, II, 3.

REM. 2. Each of the words constituting a proposition may be modified by two or more additions not dependent on, nor connected with each other, and consisting either of single words, phrases, or dependent clauses ; as, *Agamem-  
nōnis belli gl̄oria*. *Pāternum ōdiūm erga Rōmānos*. *Mens sibi conscia recti*. *Mea maxime int̄est, te vāl̄ere*. *Ago tibi gr̄atias*. *Meipsum inert̄iæ condemno*. *Eos hoc mōneo*. *In quo te accūso*. *Mōnet eum, ut suspiciōnes vit̄et*.

III. *Compound additions*. 1. The predicate may be modified by two or more words, phrases, or clauses, joined together by a coördinate conjunction. See Compound additions to the subject, § 202, III.

2. The leading verb is usually either in the indicative or imperative mood, but sometimes in the subjunctive or the historical infinitive.

3. The members of a compound sentence are connected by coördinate conjunctions ; those of a complex sentence by some relative word, or by a subordinate conjunction.

4. Instead of a dependent clause connected by a conjunction, a noun and participle, or two nouns, sometimes stand as an abridged proposition ; as,

*Bello confecto discessit*, i. e. *quum bellum confectum esset, discessit*, The war being finished, or when the war was finished, he departed. *Nil desp̄erandum Teucro dūce*.

5. An infinitive may be modified like the verb of a predicate.

6. *Agreement* is the correspondence of one word with another in gender, number, case, or person.

7. A word is said to *govern* another, when it requires it to be put in a certain case or mood.

8. A word is said to *depend* on another, when its case, gender, number, mood, tense, or person, is determined by that word.

9. A word is said to *follow* another, when it depends upon it in construction, whatever may be its position in the sentence.

## APPOSITION.

§ 204. A noun, annexed to another noun or to a pronoun, and denoting the same person or thing, is put in the same case; as,

*Urbs Rōma*, The city Rome. *Nos consules*, We consuls. So *Apud Herodōtum*, patrem *histōriæ*, sunt *innumerabiles fabulæ*, In Herodotus, the father of history, etc. Cic. *Lapides silices*, flint stones. Liv. *Ante me consulein*, Before I was consul. *Fons cui nōmen Arethūsa est*. Cic.

REMARK 1. (a.) A noun, thus annexed to another, is said to be in *apposition* to it. It is generally added for the sake of explanation, identification, or description; sometimes it denotes character or purpose; as, *Ejus fugæ comitem me adiunxi*, I added myself, as a companion of his flight; and sometimes the time, cause, reason, etc., of an action; as, *Alexander puer*, Alexander when a boy. *Cūto sēnex scribere histōriam instituit*. Suet.

(b.) A noun in apposition, like an adjective used as an epithet, (§ 205, N. 2,) assumes the attribute denoted by it as belonging to the noun which it limits, while the predicate-nominative affirms it. Hence both nouns belong to the same part of the sentence, whether subject or predicate. In cases of apposition, there seems to be an ellipsis of the ancient participle *ens*, being; *qui est*, who is; *qui vocatur*, who is called; or the like.

REM. 2. If the annexed noun has a form of the same gender as the other noun, it takes that form; as, *Usus magister egrēgius*. Plin. *Philosōphia magistra vitæ*. Cic. If the annexed noun is of the common gender, the adjective qualifying it takes the gender of the preceding noun; as, *Laurus fidissima custos*.

REM. 3. The annexed noun sometimes differs from the other in gender or in number; as, *Duo fulmina belli*, *Scipiādas*, clādem *Libyæ*. Virg. *Mitylēnæ*, urbs *nobilis*. Cic. *Tulliolā*, deliciæ *nostræ*. Id.;—and sometimes in both; as, *Nāte*, *meæ vires*. Virg. *Nos*, animæ *viles*, *inhumāta infletāque turba*. Id.

REM. 4. The substantive pronoun is sometimes omitted before the word in apposition to it; as, *Consul dixi*, scil. *ēgo*; (I) the consul said. And instead of the substantive pronoun, a possessive adjective pronoun is sometimes used; as, *Tua dōmus*, *tālis viri*. Cic. See § 211, R. 3, (b.)

REM. 5. A noun may be in apposition to two or more nouns, and, in such case, is usually put in the plural; as, *M. Antonius*, *C. Cassius*, tribūni *plēbis*, M. Antonius, C. Cassius, tribunes of the people. Cæs. *Publius et Serrius* *Sullæ*, *Serri filii*. Sall. *Tib. et Gaius* *Gracchi*. Cic. *Oratiōes L. et C. Aureliōrum* *Orestārum*. Id. But sometimes in the singular; as, *Cn. et L. Domitius*. Cic.

(1.) So when the nouns are connected by *cum*, the annexed noun taking the case of the former; as, *Dicæarchum vëro cum Aristoxëno*, *doctos sâne homines*, *omittāmus*. Cic.

(2.) If the nouns are proper names of different genders, a masculine noun is annexed rather than a feminine, when both forms exist; as, *Ad Ptoiemæum* *Cleopatramque* *rēges legāti missi sunt*. Liv.

REM. 6. The annexed noun is sometimes in the genitive; as, *Urbem Patāvī locā it*, The city of Patavium. Virg. *Plurimū* *Eridāni amnis*. Id. *Arborem* *f cū nunquam vidērat*. Cic. *In oppido* *Antiochiæ*. Id. *Rupili et Persi par*. Hor.

REM. 7. The name of a town in the genitive occurs with an ablative in apposition to it; as, *Corinthi* *Achaicæ urbe*; At Corinth, a city of Achaia. Tac. *Antiochiæ*, *celēbri urbe*. Cic. See § 221, Note, and § 254, Rem. 3.

REM. 8. (a.) A proper name, after *nōmen* or *cognōmen*, with a verb followed by a dative, is put in apposition either to *nōmen*, etc., or to the dative, the latter by a species of attraction; as, *Fons*, *cui nōmen Arethūsa est*. Cic. *Stirps virilis*, *sui* *Ascanium parentes dixere nōmen*. Liv. *Nōmen* *Arctūro est mihi*, I have the



name *Arcturus*. *Plaut. Cui nunc cognōmen Iūlo additur. Virg. Cui Egerio inditum nōmen. Liv.—(b.)* The name may also be put in the genitive; as, *Nōmen Mercūrii est mīhi Plaut. Q. Metellus, cui Macedonici nōmen inditum erat. Vell. Cf. R. 6.—(c.)* In *Illa cōias, cui fecimus Aurea nōmen, Ov. Met. 15, 96, Aurea* is used as an indeclinable noun, instead of *Auream* (scil. *etātem*); or *Auræ*, dat. (scil. *etāti*.)

REM. 9. A clause may supply the place of one of the nouns; as, *Ogillet oratōrem institui—rem arduam*, Let him reflect that an orator is training—a difficult thing. *Quint.—*So also a neuter adjective used substantively, as, *Triste lūpus stabālis*, The wolf, a sad thing to the folds. *Virg. Vārium et mutabile semper femina. Id.*

REM. 10. Sometimes the former noun denotes a whole, and its parts are expressed by nouns in apposition to it; as, *Oncrārie, pars maxima ad Ægimūrum—aliæ adversus urbem ipsam delatæ sunt*, The ships of burden were carried, the greatest part, to Ægimurus,—others opposite to the city itself. *Liv. Pictōres et poëtæ suum quisque ōpus a vulgo considerāri vult. Cic.* In the construction of the ablative absolute, *quisque* remains in the nominative, though the word to which it is in apposition is in the ablative; as, *Multis sibi quisque impērium petentibus. Sall. J. 18.* So also, in *Liv. 26, 29, quisque* remains in the nominative although the word to which it is in apposition is in the accusative with the infinitive.

To this rule may be subjoined that which relates to the agreement of interrogative and responsive words.

REM. 11. The principal noun or pronoun in the answer to a question, must be in the same case as the corresponding interrogative word; as,

*Quis hērūs est tibi? Amphitruo, scil. est.* Who is your master? *Amphitruo (is.) Plaut. Quid quæris? Librum, scil. quæro.* What are you looking for? *A book. Quotā hōrā venisti? Sextā.* At what hour did you come? *At the sixth.*

NOTE 1. Instead of the genitive of a substantive pronoun, the corresponding possessive pronoun is often used, agreeing with its noun; as, *Cūjus est liber? Meus, (not Mei.) (See § 211, Rem. 3, (b.))* So *cūjum* for genitive *cūjus? Cūjum pŕeūs? an Melibæi? Non; vērūm Ægōnis. Virg.*

NOTE 2. Sometimes the rules of syntax require the responsive to be in a different case from that of the interrogative; as, *Quanti emisti? Viginti minis. Damnatusne es furti? Imo alio crimine.* See §§ 214, R. 1, and 217, R. 2.

## ADJECTIVES.

§ 205. Adjectives, adjective pronouns, and participles, agree with their nouns, in gender, number, and case; as,

*Bōnus vir,* A good man.

*Benigna māter,* A kind mother.

*Triste bellum,* A sad war.

*Spc amissā,* Hope being lost.

*Bōnos viros,* Good men.

*Vānæ lēges,* Useless laws.

*Minācia verba,* Threatening words.

*Hec res,* This thing.

So, *Mea māter est benigna.*

*Hec lēges vānæ sunt.*

NOTE 1. Adjectives, according to their meaning, (§ 104), are divided into two classes—*qualifying* and *limiting*—the former denoting some *property* or *quality* of a noun; as, a *wise* man, lead is *heavy*; the latter *defining* or *restricting* its meaning; as, *this* man, *ten* cities. To the former class belong such adjectives as denote a property or quality, including all participles and participial adjectives; to the latter, the adjective pronouns, pronominal adjectives, and numerals.

**NOTE 2.** An adjective, participle, or pronoun, may either be used as an epithet to modify a noun, or, with the copula *sum*, may constitute a predicate. In the former case the quality is *assumed*, in the latter it is *asserted*. In both cases, the rule for their agreement is, in general, the same. See § 210, R. 1.

**NOTE 3.** Any word or combination of words added to a noun to modify or limit its meaning is of the nature of an adjective.

**NOTE 4.** In the following remarks, the word *adjective* is to be considered as including participles, either alone or combined with the auxiliary *sum*, and also adjective pronouns, unless the contrary is intimated.

**REMARK 1.** An adjective agrees also with a substantive pronoun, taking its gender from that of the noun for which the pronoun stands; as, *Ipse capellas æger ægo*, scil. *ægo*, *Melibæus*; Virg. *Fortunâte puer, tu nunc eris alter ab illo*. Id. *Ut se totum ei tradêret*. Nep. *O me misêrum* (spoken by a man), *misêrum me* (spoken by a woman). So *salvi sũmus*, *salvæ sũmus*, scil. *nos*, masculine or feminine.—In general propositions which include both sexes, the pronouns are considered masculine; as, *Nos frãges consũmẽre nãti*. Hor.

**REM. 2.** An adjective may belong to each of two or more nouns, and in such case is put in the plural. If the nouns are of the same gender, the adjective agrees with them in gender, as well as in number; as,

*Lũpus et agnus siti compulsi*, A wolf and a lamb, constrained by thirst. Phæd. *Sicilia Sardiãque amissæ*. Liv.

When the nouns are of different genders,

(1.) If they denote living things, the adjective is masculine rather than feminine; as,

*Pãter mihi et mãter mortui sunt*, My father and mother are dead. Ter. So also *uterque* in the singular. *Prociubit uterque*, scil. *Deucãlion et Pyrrha*. Ovid.

(2.) If they denote things without life, the adjective is generally neuter; as,

*His gẽnus, ætas, eloquentia prõpe æquãlia fuẽre*, Their family, age, and eloquence, were nearly equal. Sall. *Regna, impẽria, nobilitãtes, honõres, divitiæ in cãsa sũta sunt*. Cic. *Huic bella, rapĩne, discordia civilis, grãta fuẽre*. Sall. *Anima atque animus, quamvis integra rêcens in corpus eant*. Lucr.

**NOTE.** When nouns denoting things without life are of the same gender (either masculine or feminine), but of different numbers, the adjective is sometimes neuter; as, *Cræso et rĩta et patrimonĩi partes, et urbs Barce concessa sunt*. Just.; sometimes also when both nouns are in the singular number; as, *Plerosque relocĩtas et rêgio hostibus ignãra tutãta sunt*. Sall. *Nox atque prãda remorãta sunt*. Id.

(3.) If one of the nouns denotes an animate, and another an inanimate thing, the adjective is sometimes neuter, and sometimes takes the gender of that which has life; as,

*Numĩde atque signa militãria obscurãti sunt*, The Numidians and the military standards were concealed. Sall. *Romãni rêgem regnumque Macedõniæ sua futũra sciunt*. Liv. *Jãne, fãc æternos pãcem pacisque ministros*. Ovid.

**Exc. to REM. 2.** The adjective often agrees with the nearest noun, and is understood with the rest; as,

*Sociis et rĩge rêcepto*, Our companions and king having been recovered. Virg. *Agri omnes et mãria*. Cic. *Cognitum est salũtem, libẽres, fãnam, jorũnas esse cãrissĩmas*. Cic.

**NOTE.** A noun in the singular, followed by an ablative with *cum*, has sometimes a plural adjective, the gender being the same as if the nouns were connected by *et*; as, *Filiam cum filio accitos*. Liv. *Itha cum Louso de Nemitre sâti*. Ovid. *Filium Alexandri cum matre in arcem custodiendos mittit*. Just.

**REM. 3.** (1.) An adjective qualifying a collective noun is often put in the plural, taking the gender of the individuals which the noun denotes; as,

*Pars certare parâti*, A part, prepared to contend. Virg. *Pars per agros dilapsi. .... suam quisque spem exsèquentes*. Liv. *Supplex turba erant sine iudice tûti*. Ovid. This construction always occurs when the collective noun is the subject of a plural verb. See § 209, R. 11.

(2) Sometimes, though rarely, an adjective in the singular takes the gender of the individuals; as, *Pars arduus altis pulverulentus èquis fûrit*. Virg. *Pars âna ducum—fractus morbo*. Ovid.

(3) Sometimes other nouns, which only in a figurative sense denote human beings, have by *synæsis* an adjective of a different gender from their own, referring to the words which they include; as, *Latium Còpuoque agro mulctâti* Latium and Capua were deprived of their land. Liv. *Còpita conjurâtiônis virgis cæsi ac sècûri percussî sunt*. Id. *Auxilia irâti*. Id. So after *millia*; as, *Duo millia Tÿriòrum, crûcibus affixi*. Curt. Cf. § 323, 3, (4.)

**REM. 4.** Two adjectives in the singular are sometimes joined to a plural noun; as, *Mûria Tyrrhènum atque Adriâtienum*, The Tuscan and Adriatic seas. Liv. *Cum lègiônibus sècundâ et tertiâ*. Liv. *Circa portas Collinam Esquilinamque*. Id. But sometimes the noun is in the singular; as, *Inter Esquilinam Collinamque portam*. Id. *Lègio Martia et quarta*. In comic writers, an adjective or participle in the singular is sometimes used with a plural pronoun; as, *Nôbis præsente*. Plaut. *Absente nôbis*. Ter.

**REM. 5.** A participle which should regularly agree with the subject of a proposition, when placed after the noun of the predicate, (a) sometimes takes the gender and number of the latter; as, *Non omnis error stultitia est dicenda*, Not every error is to be called folly. Cic. *Gens unîversa Vènèti appellâti*. Liv. (b.) Sometimes also it agrees with a noun following the subject and in apposition to it; as, *Còrinthum, patres vestri, tòtius Græciæ lûmen, exstinctum esse voluêrunt*. Cic.; or (c) with the noun of a subordinate sentence; as, *Illòrum urbem ut pròpugnaculum oppositum esse barbaris*. Nep.

**REM. 6.** When the subject of an infinitive is omitted after a dative of the same signification, (§ 239, R. 1.) an adjective in the predicate, belonging to that subject, is sometimes put in the dative; as, *Mihî negligentem esse non licuit*, i. e. *me negligentem esse mihî non licuit*. Cic. *Da mihî justo sanctoque vidèri*. Hor. A noun is sometimes expressed with the adjective; as, *Vôbis necesse est fortibus esse viris*. Liv. But the adjective often agrees with the omitted subject; as, *Expèdit bonas esse vòbis*, scil. *vos*. Ter. *Si civi Rômâno licet esse Gadiâtum*. Cic.

**REM. 7.** (1.) An adjective is often used alone, especially in the plural, the noun, with which it agrees, being understood; as,

*Bôni sunt rârî*, scil. *hômînes*, Good (men) are rare. *Cæsar suos misit*, scil. *mîlites*, Cæsar sent his (soldiers). *Dextra*, scil. *mânus*, The right (hand). *Au-plentur pinguis fôrma*, scil. *carnis*. Virg. *Hiberna*, scil. *castra*. *Altum* scil. *mare*. *Quartâna*, scil. *febris*. *Immortâles*, scil. *Dii*. Lucr. *Amantium*, scil. *rômânûm*. Ter. *Illum indignanti similem, similemque mimanti aspiciêres*, scil. *hômîni*. Virg. *Tibi primas diffèro*, scil. *partes*. Cic. *Respice præteritum*, scil. *tempus* which is often omitted, as in *ex quo*, *ex eo*, and *ex illo*, scil. *tempore*. *Cognôre ex meorum omnium litêris*, scil. *amicòrum*. Cic. So patriarchal adjectives; as *Missi ad Parthum Arméniumque lègât*, scil. *règem*. *In Tuscûlâno*, scil. *brædio*.



NOTE 1. The noun to be supplied with masculine adjectives is commonly *hōmīnes*, but when they are possessives, it is oftener *āmīci*, *mīlītes*, *cīves*, or *pro-pīnqui*.

NOTE 2. The noun to be supplied is often contained in a preceding clause.

(2.) An adjective in the neuter gender, without a noun, is often used substantively, where, in English, the word *thing* or *things* is to be supplied; as,

*Bōnum*, a good thing; *vālum*, a bad thing, or, an evil. So *hōnestum vērum*, *turpe*; and in the plural, *bōna*, *māla*, *turpia*, *lēvia*, *cālestia*, etc. *Lābor omnia vincit*, Labor overcomes all things. Virg.

NOTE 1. The Latins generally preferred adding *res* to an adjective, to using its neuter as a substantive. But sometimes, when *res* is used, an adjective or pronoun referring to it is put in the neuter instead of the feminine; as, *Eārūm vērum utrumque*. Cic. *Ilāmānārūm vērum fortūna plērāque regit*. Sall. *Illu-te rōgo, sumptui ne parcus ullā in re, quod ad vālētūdīnem ōpus sīt*. Cic. *Omnium rerum mors est extrēmum*. Cic.

NOTE 2. Instead of *thing* or *things*, other words may sometimes be supplied, as the sense requires. With a preposition, neuter adjectives form adverbial phrases; as, *A primo*, At first. Plaut. *Per mūtua*, Mutually. Virg. *In primis*, In the first place. *Ad hoc*, or *Ad hęc*, Moreover, besides.

(3.) Adjectives used substantively often have other adjectives agreeing with them; as, *Alia omnia*, All other (things.) Plin. *Iniquissūmi mei*, My greatest enemies. *Fāmiliāris meus*. Cic. *Iniquus noster*. Id. *Iusta fūnebria*. Liv. *Jōris omnia plēna*. seil. sunt. Virg.

REM. 8. (a.) Imperatives, infinitives, adverbs, clauses, and words considered merely as such, may be used substantively, and take a neuter adjective in the singular number; as, *Suprēmum vāle dīxit*, He pronounced a last farewell. Ovid. *Dulce et dēcōrum est pro patriā mōri*. Hor. *Velle suum cuique est*. Pers. *Cras istud quando vēnit?* Mart. J. *Rēdibo actūtum*. A. Id. *actūtum diu est*. Plaut. *Excepto quod non simul esses, cētera letus*. Hor. (b.) In the poets and later prose writers the adjective, as in Greek, is sometimes in the neuter plural; as, *Ut Ēnēas pēlāgo jactētur*—nōta tibi. Virg.

REM. 9. (a.) Adjectives and adjective pronouns, instead of agreeing with their nouns, are sometimes put in the neuter gender, with a partitive signification, and their nouns in the genitive; as, *Multum tempōris*, for *multum tempus*; much time. Id. *rei*, for *ea res*; that thing. So, plus *ēlōquentiæ*, the other form not being admissible with *plus*. (See § 110, (b.) Neuter adjectives are used in like manner in the plural; as, *Vāna vērum*, for *vānæ res*. Hor. *Plērāque hūmānārūm vērum*. Sall. Cf. § 212, R. 3, N. 4. But in some such examples, the adjective seems to be used substantively, according to Rem. 7, (2); as, *Acūta belli*. Hor. *Tellāris ōperta*. Virg. *Summa pectōris*.

NOTE. The adjectives thus used partitively in the singular, for the most part, signify quantity. See § 212, Rem. 3, Note 1.

REM. 10. A neuter adjective is sometimes used adverbially in the nominative or accusative, both singular and plural; as, *Dulce ridētēm Lālāgū am ībo*, dulce lōquentem. Hor. *Magnum stridens*. Virg. *Arma horrendum sōnāre*. Id. *Multa deos vēnērātī sunt*. Cic. *Hōdie aut summum cras*. Id. See § 192, II. 4, (b.)

REM. 11. (a.) A noun is sometimes used as an adjective; as, *Nemo mīles Rōmānus*, No Roman soldier. Liv. *Nemo fēre adōlescens*. Cic. *Vir nemo bonus*. Id. Cf. § 207, R. 31, (c.) *Tībērim accōlis glāriis orbātum*. Tac. *Incōla turba*. Ovid. The poets use in this manner the Greek patronymics in *as* and *is*; as, *Pēlius hasta*. Ovid. *Laurus Parnasis*. Id. *Ūrsa Libysta*. Virg. Cf. also § 129, 8.

(b.) An adverb is also sometimes used as an adjective; as, *Nēque enim ignārī sūmus ante mālōrum*; i. e. *antiquōrum* or *præiētīlōrum*. Virg. *Nunc hōmīnum mōres* Plaut.

REM. 12. (a.) An adjective or adjective pronoun, used *partitively*, stands alone, and commonly takes the gender of the genitive plural, which depends upon it; but when it is preceded by a noun of a different gender, to which it refers, it usually takes that gender, but sometimes that of the genitive; as, *Elēphanto belluārum nulla est prudētiōr*, No beast is wiser than the elephant. Cic. *Iulus, qui est omnium flūminum maximus*. Cic. *Vēlocissimum omnium animālium est delphīnus*. Plin. See § 212, Rem. 2.—(b.) So also with *de*, *ex*, *in*, *apud*, *inter*, etc., with the ablative or accusative instead of the partitive genitive. See § 212, R. 2, N. 4.

(c.) When a *collective* noun follows in the genitive singular, (§ 212, R. 2.) the adjective takes the gender of the individuals which compose it; as, *Vir fortissimus nostrę civitātis*, The bravest man of our state. Cic. *Maximus stirpis*. Liv.

REM. 13. (a.) When a possessive pronoun or adjective is used instead of the genitive of its primitive or of its corresponding noun (see § 211, R. 3, (b.) and (c.) and R. 4), an adjective agreeing with that genitive is sometimes joined with such possessive; as, *Solius meum peccatum corrigi non pōtest*, The fault of me alone cannot be corrected. Cic. *Noster duōrum eventus*. Liv. *Tuum ipsius studium*. Cic. *Pugna Rōmāna stābilis suo pondere incumbētiū in hostem*. Liv.

(b.) Sometimes a noun in the genitive is expressed, in apposition to the substantive pronoun for which the possessive stands; as, *Pectus tuum, hōminis simplicis*. Cic.

REM. 14. An adjective, properly belonging to the genitive, is sometimes made to agree with the noun on which the genitive depends, and *vice versā*; as, *Edificatiōnis tuę consilium for tuum*, Your design of building. Cic. *Accūsantes violāti hospitii fedus*, for *violātum*. Liv. *Ad māiōra initia rerum dūcētibz fātis*, for *māiōrum*. Id. *Iis nōminibus civitātum, quibus ex civitatibus*, etc., for *cārum civitātum*. Cæs.

REM. 15. (a.) An adjective agreeing with a noun is sometimes used, instead of an adverb qualifying a verb, especially in poetry; as, *Ecce vēnit Tēlimum propērus*, Lo, Telamon comes in haste. Ovid. *Læti pacem agitābāmus*, for *lete*. Sall. *Ænēas se inātūtinus agitabat*, for *māne*. Virg. *Nec lūpus grēgibus nocturnus obambulat*, i. e. by night. Id.

(b.) So *nullus* is used for *non*; as, *Mēmīni tāmeti nullus mōneas*, Though you do not suggest it. Ter. *Sextus ab armis nullus discēdit*. Cic. *Prior, primus, princeps, propior, proximus, solus, unus, ultimus, multas, tōtus*, and some others, are used instead of their neuters, adverbially; as, *Priori Rēmo augūrium vēnisse fertur*. Liv. *Hispania postrēma omnium prōvinciārum perdomita est*. Liv. *Scærola sōlos nōvem menses Asię præfuit*, Only nine months. Cic. *Unum hoc dico*, This only I say. Id. This is sometimes done, for want of an adverb of appropriate meaning; as, *Prōnus cecidit*. Ovid. *Frēquentes convēnant*. Sall.

(c.) In such expressions, *tu*, in the nominative, sometimes takes an adjective in the vocative, and *vice versā*; as, *Sic vēniās hōdiernę*. Tibull. *Salve, primus omnium pāteris patrię appellāte*. Plin.

REM. 16. (a.) A noun is often qualified by two or more adjectives; and sometimes the complex idea, formed by a noun with one or more adjectives, is itself qualified by other adjectives, which agree in gender, etc. with the noun.

(b.) When several adjectives, each independently of the other, qualify a noun, if they precede it, they are almost always connected by one or more conjunctions; as, *Multā et variā et cōpiōsā oratiōne*. Cic. If they follow it, the conjunction is sometimes expressed, and sometimes omitted; as, *Vir altus et excellens*. Cic. *Actio, variā, vehēmens, plēna veritātis*. Id.

(c.) But when one of the adjectives qualifies the noun, and another the complex idea formed by the first with the noun, the conjunction is always omitted; as, *Periculōsissimum civile bellum*, A most dangerous civil war. Cic. *Māiam domesticam disciplinam*. Id. So with three or more adjectives; *Externos multos clāros viros nōminārem*. Cic. Cf. § 202, III., R. 1.

REM. 17. The first part, last part, middle part, etc., of any place or time are generally expressed in Latin by the adjectives *primus*, *mēdius*, *ultimus*, *extrēmus*, *intimus*, *infimus*, *imus*, *summus*, *suprēmus*, *rēliquus*, and *cētera*; as,

*Mēdia nox*, The middle of the night. *Summa arbor*, The top of a tree. *Suprēmos montes*, The summits of the mountains. But these adjectives frequently occur without this signification; as, *Ab extrēmo complexu*, From the last embrace. Cic. *Infimo loco nātus*, Of the lowest rank. Id.

REM. 18. The participle of the compound tenses of verbs, used impersonally in the passive voice, is neuter; as, *Ventum est*. Cic. *Itum est in viscēra terræ*. Ovid. *Scribendum est mihi*. See § 134, 2 and 3.

## PRONOUNS.—RELATIVES.

§ 206. REM. 19. (a.) Relatives agree with their antecedents in gender, number, and person, but their case depends on the construction of the clause to which they belong; as,

*Puer qui lēgit*, The boy who reads. *Ædificiū quod extruxit*, The house which he built. *Littere quas dēdi*, The letter which I gave. *Non sum quālis ēram*, I am not such as I was. Hor. So *Deus cūjus munere vivimus, cui nullus est similis, quem colimus, a quo facta sunt omnia, est æternus*. *Addictus Herminippo, et ab hoc ductus est*. *Aquilo, quantus frangit ilices*. Hor.

NOTE 1. This rule includes all adjectives and adjective pronouns which relate to a noun in a preceding clause. Its more common application, however, is to the construction of the demonstrative pronouns and the relative *qui*.

NOTE 2. When a pronoun refers to the mere words of a sentence, it is said to be used *logically*. *Qui* and *is* are so used, and sometimes also *hic* and *ille*.

(b.) The relative may be considered as placed between two cases of the same noun, either expressed or understood, with the former of which it agrees in gender, number, and person, and with the latter in gender, number, and case.

(1.) Sometimes both nouns are expressed; as,

*Erant omnino duo itinēra, quibus itinēribus dōmo exire possent*, There were only two routes, by which routes they could leave home. Cæs. *Crūdēlissimo bello, quāle bellum nulla unquam barbāria gessit*. Cic. But it is most frequent with the word *dies*; as, *Fōre in armis certo die, qui dies futūrus erat*, etc. Cic. The repetition of the substantive is necessary, when, for any reason, it becomes doubtful to which of two or more preceding substantives the relative refers.

(2.) Usually the antecedent noun only is expressed; as,

*Animum rēge, qui, nisi pāret, impērat*, Govern your passions, which rule, unless they obey. Hor. *Tantæ multitudinis, quantam capit urbs nostra, concursus est ad me factus*. Cic. *Quot capitum vivunt, totidem studiōrum milia*. Hor.

(3.) Sometimes the latter noun only is expressed, especially when the relative clause, as is frequently the case, precedes that of the antecedent; as,

*Quibus de rebus ad me scripsisti, cōram vidēbimus*; scil. *de rebus*, In regard to the things of which you wrote to me, we will consider when we meet. Cic. *In quem primum egressi sunt locum, Trōja vocātur*; scil. *locus*. Liv. *Quantū vi expētant, tantā defendunt*. *Quālesque visus eram vidisse viros, ex ordine tāles inspicio*. Ovid.



(a.) The place of the antecedent is sometimes supplied by a demonstrative pronoun; as, *Ad quas res aptissimi erimus, in iis potissimum elaborabimus.* Cic. But the demonstrative is often omitted when its case is the same as that of the relative, and not unfrequently, also, when the cases are different. When the relative clause precedes that of the antecedent, *is* is expressed only for the sake of emphasis. Hence we find such sentences as, *Maximum ornamentum amicitiae tollit, qui ex ea tollit reverentiam.* Cic. *Terra quod accipit, nunquam sine usura reddit.* Id.—The demonstrative adjectives and adverbs are in like manner often omitted before their corresponding relatives; *talis* before *qualis*, *tantus* before *quantus*, *inde* before *unde*, *ibi* before *ubi*, etc.

(b.) Sometimes the latter noun only is expressed, even when the relative clause does not precede; as, *Quis non malarum quas amor curas habet, hæc inter obliviscitur?* Hor.

(4.) Sometimes neither noun is expressed; this happens especially when the antecedent is designedly left indefinite, or when it is a substantive pronoun; as,

*Qui bene latuit, bene vixit*, scil. *homo*, (He) who has well escaped notice, has lived well. Ovid. *Sunt quos curriculo pulvèrem Olympicum collegisse juvat.* scil. *homines*, There are whom it delights, i. e. Some delight. Hor. *Non habeo quod te accusem*, scil. *id propter quod.* Cic. *Non solum sapiens vidèris, qui hinc absis, sed etiam beatus*, scil. *tu.* Cic.

(5.) The relative is sometimes either entirely omitted; as, *Urbs antiqua fuit; Tyra tenuere coloni*, scil. *quam* or *eam*, There was an ancient city (which) Tyrian colonists possessed, Virg.; or, if once expressed, is afterwards omitted even when, if supplied, its case would be different; as, *Bocchus cum peditibus, quos filius ejus adduxerat, neque in priore pugna adfuèrant, Romanos invadunt, for et qui non in priore*, etc. Sall.

(6.) (a.) The relative sometimes takes the case of the antecedent, instead of its own proper case; as, *Quum scribas et aliquid agas eorum, quorum consuesti*, for *quæ*. Cic. *Raptim quibus quisque potèrat elātis, exhibant*, for *iis, quæ quisque efferre potèrat, elātis.* Liv.

(b.) The antecedent likewise sometimes takes the case of the relative, the substantive either preceding or following the pronoun; as, *Urbem quam statuc vestra est*, for *urbs*. Virg. *Eunuchum quem dedisti nobis, quas turbas dedit!* for *Eunuchus*. Ter. *Naucratem quem convenire volui, in navi non erat.* Plaut. *Atque alii, quorum comædia prisca virorum est*, for *atque alii viri, quorum est.* Hor. *Illi, scripta quibus comædia prisca viris est*, for *illi viri, quibus.* Id. *Quos pueros miseram, epistolam mihi attulerunt.* Cic.

These constructions are said to occur by *attraction*.

(7.) (a.) An adjective, which properly belongs to the antecedent, is sometimes placed in the relative clause, and agrees with the relative; as, *Inter jocos, quos inconditos jaciunt*, for *jocos inconditos, quos*, etc. Amidst the rude jests which they utter. Liv. *Verbis, quæ magna volunt.* Virg. *Calore, quem multum habet.* Cic.

(b.) This is the common position of the adjective, when it is a numeral, a comparative or a superlative; as, *Nocte quam in terris ultimam egit*, The last night which he spent upon earth. *Æsculapius, qui primus cubus obligarissus dicitur.* Cic. *Consiliis parere, quæ nunc pulcherrima Nantes dat senior*, Listen to the excellent advice, which, etc. Virg. Some instances occur in which an adjective belonging to the relative clause, is placed in that of the antecedent; as, *Quum venissent ad vada Volaterrana, quæ nominantur*, Which are called Volaterran. Cic.

(8.) When to the relative or demonstrative is joined a noun explanatory of its antecedent, but of a different gender or number, the relative or demonstrative usually agrees with that noun; as,

*Santonēs non longe a Tōlōsātium finibus absunt, quæ civitas est in prœvin. cā*  
The Santones are not far distant from the borders of the Tolosates, which  
state is in the province. Cæs. *Ante comitia, quod tempus longē obērat.*  
Sall. *Rōmæ fānum Diāne pōpuli Lātini cum pōpulo Rōmāno fēcērunt: ea erat*  
confessio cāpūt rērum Rōmāni esse; i. e. that thing or that act. Liv. *Sī crēna*  
*fāciendū sunt, quæ amīci vēlūt, nō amīcitiæ tāles, sed conjūrātiōnes pūnīdæ*  
*sunt:* i. e. such things or such connections. Cic. So, *Ista quidem vis, Sarely*  
this is force. *Ea ipsa causa belli fuit,* for *id ipsum.* Hither also may be refer-  
red such explanatory sentences as, *Qui meus amor in te est,* Such is my love  
for you. Cic.

(9.) If the relative refers to one of two nouns, denoting the same  
object, but of different genders, it agrees with either; as,

*Flūmen est Arar quod in Rhodānum influit.* Cæs. *Ad flūmen Oxum perversum*  
*est, qui turbidus semper est.* Curt.

(10.) When, in a relative clause containing the verb *suxi* or a verb  
of naming, esteeming, etc., a predicate-noun occurs of a different  
gender from the antecedent, the relative commonly agrees with the  
latter; but when the preceding noun is to be explained and distin-  
guished from another, the relative agrees with the former; as,

*Nātūre vultus quem dixere Chaos,* The appearance of nature which they  
called chaos. Ovid. *Gēnus hōmīnum quod Hēlōtes vocatur.* Nep. *Animāl,*  
quem vocāmus hōmīnem, The animal whom we call man. Cic. *Locus in car-*  
*cēre, quod Tullianum appellatur.* Sall. *Pecūniarum conquisitio; eos esse belli*  
*civilis nervos dicitur Mucianus.* Tac.

(11.) The relative sometimes agrees with a noun, either equiva-  
lent in sense to the antecedent, or only implied in the preceding  
clause; as,

*Abundantia eārum rērum, quæ mortales prīma putant,* An abundance of those  
things, which mortals esteem most important. Sall. Cf. § 205, R. 7, (2.) N. 1.  
But sometimes when a neuter adjective used substantively has preceded, *res*  
with a relative follows; as, *Permulta sunt, quæ dici possunt, quā re intelligatur.*  
Cic. *Fatūle monstrum, quæ, etc., scil. Cleopātra.* Hor. Cf. § 323, 3, (4.)

(a.) A relative or demonstrative pronoun, referring to a collective noun, or  
to a noun which only in a figurative sense denotes a human being, sometimes  
takes the gender and number of the individuals which the noun implies; as,  
*Equitatum, quos.* Sall. *Gēnus, qui prænuntur.* Cic. *Senatus*—ii. Sall.

(b.) A pronoun in the plural often follows a noun in the singular, referring  
not only to the noun but to the class of persons or things to which it belongs,  
as, *Dēmocritum omittamus; nihil est enim apud istos, quod, etc.* i. e. with Demo-  
critus and his followers. Cic. *Dionysius negavit se jure illo nigro quod cana*  
*cāpūt erat, delectatum.* Tum is, qui illa coxerat, etc. Id.

(12.) The antecedent is sometimes implied in a possessive pronoun; as,  
*Omnes laudare fortūnas meas, qui natum tāli ingēnio præditum habērem; scil.*  
*mei,* All were extolling my fortune, who, etc. Ter. *Id mea minime refert, qui*  
*sum natu maximus.* Id. *Nostrum consilium laudandum est, qui voluerim, etc.* Cic.;  
or in a possessive adjective; as, *Servili tumultu, quos, etc.* Cæs.

(13.) (a.) Sometimes the antecedent is a proposition; the relative then is  
commonly neuter; as, *Postrēmo, quod difficillimum inter mortales, gloriā in-*  
*ridi im vicisti,* Finally, you have overcome envy with glory, which, among men  
is most difficult. Sall. *Equidem expectabam jam tuas literas, idque cum multis.*  
Cic.

(b.) In such instances, *id* is generally placed before the relative pronoun,  
referring to the idea in the antecedent clause; as, *Sive, id quod constat, Plutonis*  
*studiosus audiendi fuit.* Cic. *Diem consumi volebant, id quod fecerunt.* Id.

(c.) Sometimes *is*, referring to a clause, agrees with a noun following; as  
*is velle atque idem nolle, ea demum firma amicitia est.* Sall.

(14.) *Quod* relating to a preceding statement, and serving the purpose of transition, is often placed at the beginning of a sentence after a period, where it may be translated by 'nay,' 'now,' or 'and.' It is thus used especially before *si*, *etsi*, and *nisi*; as, *Quodsi illinc inanis profūgisses, tamen ista tua fuga nefaria iudicāretur*, i. e. and even if you had fled without taking any thing with you, still, etc. Cic. Verr. 1, 14. *Quodsi*, 'if then,' is especially used in introducing something assumed as true, from which further inferences may be drawn. Sometimes also it is equivalent to 'although.' *Quodnisi* signifies 'if then—not'; as, *Quodnisi ego meo adventu illius cōatus aliquantulum repressissem, tam multos*, etc. *Quodetsi* is 'nay, even if'; as, *Quodetsi ingēnis magnis praediti quidam dicendi cōpiam sine ratiōne consequuntur, ars tamen et dux certior.*—*Quod* is found also before *quum*, *ubi*, *quia*, *quoniam*, *nē* and *utrum*, where the conjunction alone would seem to be sufficient; as, *Quod utinam illum, cū ipso impio facinore in hos miserius projectus sum, eadem haec simulatē videam.* Sall. It is so used even before a relative in Cic. Phil. 10, 4, *fin.*—*Quod*, in such examples, seems to be an accusative, with *propter* or *ad* understood.

(15.) (a.) A relative is always plural, when referring to two or more nouns in the singular. If the nouns are of different genders, the gender of the relative is determined by Rem. 2, page 185; as, *Ninus et Semiramis, qui Bābylōna condiderant*, Ninus and Semiramis, who had founded Babylon. Vell. *Cūbro fūvili et tibicine, quæ sibi sumpsērat.* Cic. *Ex summā letitiā atque lasciviā, quæ avertit quies pēpērat.* Sall. *Naves et captivos quæ ad Chium capta erant.* Liv.

(b.) If the antecedents are of different persons, the relative follows the first person rather than the second or third, and the second rather than the third; as, *Tu et pater, qui in convivio erātis. Ego et tu, qui erāmus.* Cf. § 209, R. 12, (7.)

(16.) The relative adjectives *quōt*, *quantus*, *quālis*, are construed like the relative *qui*. They have generally, in the antecedent clause, the corresponding demonstrative words, *tōt*, *tantus*, *tālis*; but these are also often omitted. Frequently also the order of the clauses is reversed, so that the relative clause precedes the demonstrative.

(17.) *Qui*, at the beginning of a sentence, is often translated like a demonstrative; as, *Quæ quum ita sint*, Since these (things) are so. Cic.

(18.) The relative *qui* with *sum* and either a nominative or the ablative of quality, is used in explanatory clauses, instead of *pro*, 'in accordance with,' or 'according to'; thus, instead of *Tū, pro tuā prudentiā, quid optimum faceris, ridēbis.* Cic., we may say, *quæ tua est prudentiā, or, quā prudentiā es.* So, *Velis tantummodo, quæ tua virtus, expugnābis.* Hor. *Quā prudentiā es, nihil te fugiet.* Cic.

(19.) A relative clause is sometimes used for the purpose of denoting by circumlocution the person of the agent in a definite but not permanent condition; as, *li, qui audiunt*, or *qui adsunt*, i. e. the hearers, the persons present. So, also, a relative clause is used for the English expression 'above mentioned'; as, *Ex libris quos dixi* or *quos ante (supra) laudāvi*: and the English 'so called,' or 'what is called,' is expressed by *quem*, *quam*, *quod vocant*, or by *qui*, *quæ*, *quod vocatur*, *dicitur*, etc.; as, *Nec Hermas hos, quos vocant, impēre (Athēnis) licebat.* Cic. *Vestra, quæ dicitur, vita, mors est.* Id.

(20.) Relative and demonstrative adverbs (see § 191, R. 1), are frequently used instead of relative and demonstrative pronouns with prepositions; as, *Is, unde te audisse dūis*, i. e. a quo. Cic. *Diritiæ apud illos sunt, aut ubi illi volunt*, i. e. apud quos. Sall. *Huic ab adolescentiā bella intestina, caedes, rapinae, discordia civilis, grāta fuisse*, ibique iuventutem exercuit, i. e. in iis, in these things. Sall.

(21.) With *quam qui* and the superlative after *tam* the verb of the relative clause is sometimes omitted; as, *Tam mihi grātum id erit, quam quod grātissimum.* Cic. *Tam enim sum amicus reipublicæ, quam qui maxime.* Id. *Tam sum mitis quam qui lenissimus.* Id. So also with *ut qui* without *tam*; as, *Te semper sic colam et tuebor, ut quem diligentissime.* Id.



## DEMONSTRATIVES.

§ 207. REM. 20. The oblique cases of the personal pronoun of the third person (*him, her, etc.*) are commonly expressed in prose by the oblique cases of *is, ea, id*. *Hic* and *ille*, however, being more emphatic, take the place of *is, ea, id*, in lyric poetry, and occasionally in prose also, when particular emphasis is intended. The cases of *ipse, ipsa, ipsum*, also, are employed for this purpose, when the individuality of the person is to be distinctly expressed. In reflexive sentences, the oblique cases of the pronoun of the third person, are regularly supplied by *sui, sibi, se*; and it is only when the person of the leading subject is to be referred to with particular emphasis, that *ipse* is used instead of *sui*.

REM. 21. The demonstrative pronouns, *is* and *ille*, are sometimes used, especially with *quidem*, where a corresponding word in English is unnecessary; as, *Sapientie studium vetus id quidem in nostris, sed tamen, etc.* Cic. *O hominem semper illum quidem mihi aptum, nunc vero etiam suavem.* Id. *Quem neque fides, neque iusjurandum, neque illum misericordia, repressit*, Whom neither fidelity, nor an oath, nor pity, has restrained. Ter. *Is* when used for the sake of emphasis seems sometimes in English to be superfluous; as, *Male se res habet, quum, quod virtute effici debet, id tentatur pecunia.* Cic.

REM. 22. *Sic, ita, id, hoc, illud*, are often used redundantly as a preliminary announcement of a subsequent proposition, and are added to the verb on which this proposition depends; as, *Sic a maioribus suis accēperant, tanta populi Romani esse beneficia, ut, etc.* Cic. *Te illud admoneo, ut quotidie meditare, resistendum esse iracundiae.* Id. *Hoc tibi persuadeas velim, me nihil omisisse*, I wish you to be persuaded of this—that I have omitted nothing. These pleonastic additions have generally no influence on the construction of propositions, but in a few instances they are followed by *ut*; as, *De cuius dicendi copia sic accēpimus, ut, etc.* Cic. *Ita enim definiit, ut perturbatio sit, etc.* Id. In the phrase *hoc, illud*, or *id agere ut*, the pronoun is established by custom and is necessary. See § 273, 1, (a.)

REM. 23. (a.) *Hic* 'this' refers to what is near to the speaker either in place or time, *ille* 'that' to what is more remote. Hence *hic* sometimes refers to the speaker himself, and *hic homo* is then the same as *ego*. On this account *hic* is sometimes called the demonstrative of the first person. When reference is made to two things previously mentioned, *hic* commonly refers to the latter, *ille* to the former, and the pronouns are arranged in the same order, as the objects to which they relate; as, *Iguavia corpus hēbetat, labor firmat; illa maturam enectutem, hic longam adolescentiam reddit*, Sloth enervates the body, labor strengthens it; the former produces premature old age, the latter protracted youth. Cels.

(b.) But the order is often reversed, so that *hic* refers to the object first mentioned, and *ille* to the one mentioned last; as, *Sic deus et virgo est; hic spe celer, illa timore.* Ovid. So when *alter...alter*, 'the one...the other,' refer to two things mentioned before, the previous order is sometimes observed and sometimes reversed; but wherever there is ambiguity the order is reversed, so that the first *alter* refers to the last object. Sometimes *hic...hic* are used instead of *hic...ille*. So *ille...ille* sometimes denote 'the one...the other.'

(c.) *Hic* and *ille* have the same relation to time present and past as *nunc* and *tunc*. See § 277; and hence whatever, in speaking of present time, is expressed by *hic* and its derivative adverbs, *hic, hinc, huc*, and *adhuc*, is expressed by *ille* and its derivatives, when it is spoken of as belonging to past time.

REM. 24. *Ille*, when not in opposition to *hic*, is often used to denote that which is of general notoriety; as, *Magno illi Alexandro similimus*, Very like Alexander the Great. Vell. *Mēdēa illa*, The celebrated Medea. Cic. Hence *ille* is sometimes added to other pronouns, to refer to something discussed before; as, *Avēbant visere, quis ille tot per annos opes nostras spreisset.* Tac. *Ille* is sometimes translated *this*; as, *Unum illud dico*, This only I say. Cic. *Ille*

sometimes marks a change of persons, and may then be translated 'the other' as, *Vercingetōrix obviam Cæsari proficiscitur*. Ille (scil. Cæsar) oppidum Noviodūnum oppugnare instituērat. Cæs.

REM. 25. *Iste* properly refers to the person addressed, and for this reason is called the demonstrative of the second person.—*Ille* refers to the person spoken of, and is hence called the demonstrative of the third person. Thus *iste liber* is thy book, but *ille liber* is the book of which we are speaking. Hence, in letters, *hic* and its derivatives are used of the writer; *iste* and its derivatives of the person addressed; *ille*, etc., of some other person or thing. See § 191, R. 1, (e) *Iste* from its frequent forensic use, and its application to the opponent, often denotes contempt.

REM. 26. (a.) *Is* does not, like *hic*, *ille*, and *iste*, denote the place or order of the object to which it relates, but either refers without particular emphasis to something already mentioned or to something which is to be defined by the relative *qui*. *Hic*, *is*, or *ille*, may be used in this way before the relative, but only *hic* or *is* after it; as, *Qui docet, is discit*, or *hic discit*, but not *ille discit*, unless some individual is referred to.

(b.) *Is* before a relative or *ut* has sometimes the sense of *tālis*, such, denoting a class; as, *Nēque enim tu is es, qui quid sis nescias*, Nor are you such a person, as not to know what you are. Cic.; sometimes it has the force of *idem*; as, *vos —ii*. Cic. Manil. 12.

(c.) If the noun to which *is* refers is to receive some additional predicate, we must use *et is*, *atque is*, *isque*, *et is quidem*, and with a negative *nec is*; as, *Vincula vērō, et ea sempiterna*, etc. Cic. *Unā in dōmo, et ea quidem angusta*, etc. Id. *Adolescentes aliquot, nec ii tenui loco orti*, etc. Liv. *Sed is* is used when the additional predicate is opposed to the preceding; as, *Seruitutem in senectute probo, sed eam, sicut alia, modicam*. Cic. The neuter *et id*, or *idque*, serves to introduce an addition to the preceding proposition; as, *Quamquam te, Marce fili, annum jam audientem Cratippum, idque Athenis*, etc.

(d.) *Is* is not expressed when it would be in the same oblique case as the preceding noun to which it refers; as, *Pater amat liberos et tamen castigat. Multos illustrat fortuna, dum vexat*.

(e.) When in English 'that' or 'those' is used instead of the repetition of the preceding substantive, *is* is never used in Latin, and *ille* only in later authors. In such cases the noun is commonly not repeated in Latin, and no pronoun is used in its place; as, *Philippus hostium manus sæpe vitavit, suorum effugere non valuit*, those of his own subjects. Curt. Sometimes the substantive is repeated; as, *Judicia civitatis cum judicis principis certant*. Vell. Sometimes a possessive adjective is used instead of the genitive depending on the omitted substantive; as, *Terentii fabulas studiōse lēgo*, Plautus minus delector: and sometimes instead of the genitive or a possessive adjective the name of the person itself is put in the case which the verb governs; as, *Si cum Lycurgo et Dracōne et Solōne nostras lēges conferre volueritis*. Cic.—In Cicero *hic* and *ille* when the preceding substantive is understood, retain their demonstrative signification, and therefore do not merely supply the place of the omitted substantive; as, *Nullam enim virtus aliam mercedem desiderat, præter hanc*, i. e. this one of which I am speaking. Cic.

REM. 27. (a.) *Idem*, as denoting a subject which stands in equal relations to two different predicates, often supplies the place of *item* or *etiam*, 'also,' 'at the same time,' or of *tamen*, 'yet' if the things are apparently inconsistent; as, *Musici, qui erant quondam iidem poete*. Musicians, who formerly were poets also. Cic. *Euphrates et Tigris magno aquarum divortio iter percurrunt; iidem (and yet) paulatim in arcus coeunt*.

(b.) *Et ipse*, on the other hand, denotes that the same predicate belongs to two subjects. It is rendered by 'too' or 'also'; as, *Antoninus Commodus nihil paternum habuit, nisi quod contra Germanos feliciter et ipse pugnavit*, for *item* or *ipse quoque*. Entr.—So, also, *nec ipse* is used in the sense of 'neither'; as *Primis repulsis Maharbal cum majore robore virorum missus nec ipse eruptionum cohortum sustinuit*. Liv.



(c.) *Idem* is sometimes repeated in the sense of 'at once,' denoting the union of qualities which might be thought incompatible; as, *Fuere quidam qui idem ornate idem versute dicent*, There have been some who could speak at once elegantly and artfully. Cic.

(d.) 'The same as' is variously expressed in Latin, by *idem* with *qui*, *ac* or *atque*, *quam*, *quasi*, *ut* or *cum*; as, *Verres idem est qui fuit semper*, Verres is the same as he has always been. Cic. *Vita est eadem ac fuit*. Liv. *Dispensationem expōnimus iisdem fere verbis ut actum est*. Cic. *Eandem constituit potestatem quam si*, etc. Cic. *Eodem loco res est, quasi ea pecunia legata non esset*. Id. *Hunc ego eodem mecum patre genitum*, etc. So also poetically with the *dativæ*; as, *Eadem aliis sopitu quiete est*. Lucr. Cf. § 222, R. 7.

### IPSE, INTENSIVE OR ADJUNCTIVE.

REM. 28. (a.) *Ips e*, when used with a substantive pronoun taken reflexively agrees either with such pronoun or with the subject of the proposition, according as either is emphatic; as, *Agam per me ipse*, I will do it myself. Cic. *Non ego medicinā* (i. e. *ut alii me consolentur*); *me ipse consolor*. Cic. *Accusando eum, a cuius crudelitate vosmet ipsi armis vindicastis*. Liv.—Cn. *Pompeium omnibus, Lentulum mihi ipsi antepōno*. Cic. *Fac ut te ipsum custodias*. Id. *Deforma est de se ipsum predicare*. Id.—But Cicero often construes *ipse* as the subject, even where the emphasis belongs to the object; as, *Quid est negotii continere eos, quibus præsis, si te ipse contineas?*

(b.) When *ipse* is joined with a possessive pronoun used reflexively, it usually takes the case of the subject; as, *Meam ipse legem negligo*; not *meam ipsius*, according to § 211, R. 3, (a). So, *Si ex scriptis cognosci ipsi suis potuissent*. Cic. *Eam fraudem vestrā ipsi virtute vitastis*. Liv. But the genitive is necessary when the possessive does not refer to the subject; as, *Tuā ipsius causā hoc feci*. And it is sometimes found where the case of the subject should be used; as, *Conjecturam de tuo ipsius studio cōpēris*, instead of *ipse*.—(c.) *Ips e* is sometimes used as reflexive without *sui*; as, *Omnes boni, quantum in ipsis fuit, Cæsarem occiderunt*. Cic.

(d.) *Ips e*, with nouns denoting time or number, expresses exactness, and may be rendered, 'just,' 'precisely'; or 'very,' 'only'; as, *Dyrhachio sum profectus ipso illo die, quo lex est data de nobis*, on the very day. Cic. *Triginta dies erant ipsi, quam has dābam literas, per quos nullas a vobis acciperam*, just thirty days. Id. *Et quisquam dubitabit—quam facile imperio atque exercitu vocios et rectigalia conservaturus sit, qui ipso nomine ac rūmore defendērit*, by his very name, or, by his name only. Id.

### GENERAL RELATIVES.

REM. 29. *Quicumque*, *quisquis*, and the other general relatives (see § 139, 5, R., are, in classical prose, always connected with a verb, and form the protasis. *Quicumque* is commonly used as an adjective, and *quisquis* as a substantive; but the neuter *quodcumque* is used as a substantive with a following genitive; as, *Quodcumque militum*; and, on the other hand, *quisquis* is rarely an adjective; as, *Quisquis erit vite color*. Hor.; and even the neuter *quidquid* is used in the same manner; as, *Quisquis honos timuli, quidquid solamen humani est*. Virg. *Quicumque* seems sometimes even in Cicero equivalent to *omnis* or *quivis*; as, *Quæ sanari poterunt, quacumque ratione sanabo*, What can be cured, I will cure by every possible means. Cic. Yet *possum* is rather to be supplied;—'in whatever way I can.' But in later writers *quicumque* is frequently used in the absolute sense for *quivis* or *quilibet*; as, *Ciceronem cuicumque eorum fortiter proposuerim*. Quint. *Qualiscumque* and *quantuscumque* are likewise used in an absolute sense by ellipsis; as, *Tu non concupisces quanticumque ad libertatem pervenire?* At any price, be it ever so high. Sen. So *quisquis* is occasionally used, not as a relative, but as an indefinite pronoun.—*Siquis* often seems to stand as a relative, like the Greek *ὅστις* for *ὅστις* 'whoever'; but it always contains the idea of 'perhaps'; as, *Nuda fere Alpium cacumina sunt, et si quid est pabuli, obruunt nives*. Liv.



## INDEFINITE PRONOUNS.

REM. 30. (a.) *Aliquis* and *quispiam* are particular and affirmative, corresponding to the English *some one*; as, *Hērēditas est pēcūnia, quæ morte alicujus ad quempiam pervēnit jūre*, An inheritance is property which, at the death of some one, falls to some (other) one by law. Cic. *Multi sine doctrinā aliquid omnium gēnērū et artium constāuntur*. Id.

(b.) *Aliquis* is more emphatic than the indefinite pronoun *quis*. (See § 137, (3.) Hence *aliquis* stands by itself, but *quis* is commonly connected with certain conjunctions or relative words, but these are sometimes separated from it by one or more words. Sometimes, however, *quis* is used without such conjunctions or relatives; as, *Morbus autē egestas aut quid ejusmodi*. Cic. *Lētrāhēre quid de aliquo*. Id. *Injūriam cui facere*. Id. So, *Dixerit quis*, Some one might say. But even after those conjunctions which usually require *quis*, *aliquis* is used when employed antithetically and of course emphatically; as, *Timēbat Pompeius omnia, ne aliquid vos timērētis*. Cic. In English the emphasis of *aliquis* is sometimes expressed by 'really'; as, *Sensus moriendi, si aliquis esse potest, is ad exiguum tempus dūrat*. Cic.—*Quispiam*, also, is sometimes used like *quis* after *si*, etc., and sometimes stands alone; as, *Queret fortasse quispiam*.

REM. 31. (a.) *Quisquam*, 'any one,' and *ullus*, 'any,' are universal. Like *umquam* and *usquam* they are used in propositions which involve a universal negative, or which express an interrogation with a negative force, or a condition (usually with *si* or *quasi*); also, after comparatives, after the adverb *rit*, and the preposition *sine*; as, *Nēque ex castris Cātilinæ quisquam omnium discesserat*. Nor had any one departed from the camp of Catiline. Sall. *Nec ullo cāsū potest contingere, ut ulla intermissio fiat officiū*. Cic. *An quisquam potest sine perturbatiōe mentis irasci?* Id. *Tērior hic tyrannus Syracūsānis fuit, quam quisquam supēriorum*. Id. *Vix quidquam spei est*. Sen. But after the dependent negative particles *ne*, *nēve*, and the negative interrogative particle *num*, *quis* and not *quisquam* is used.

(b.) But *quisquam* and *ullus* after *si* are often used not in a negative sense, but instead of *aliquis* or *quis*, serving only to increase the indefiniteness which would be implied in the latter pronouns; as, *Aut enim nemo, quod quidem magis crēdo, aut, si quisquam, ille sapiens fuit*, if any man. Cic. Hence, ultimately, even without *si*, where the indefiniteness is to be made emphatic, *quisquam*, *ullus*, *umquam* and *usquam* were used; as, *Quamdiu quisquam erit, qui te defendere audeat, vives*. Cic. *Bellum maxime omnium mēmōrābile, quæ umquam gesta sunt, scripturus sum*. Tac.

(c.) *Ullus* is properly an adjective, but *quisquam* is commonly used without noun, except it is a word denoting a person; as, *Cuiquam civi*, To any citizen. *Cujusquam oratoris eloquentiam*. Hence *quisquam* corresponds to the substantive *nemo* and *ullus* to the adjective *nullus*. *Nemo* is often used with other substantives denoting male persons so as to become equivalent to the adjective *nullus*; as, *nemo pictor*, *nemo adolescens*, and even *homo nemo*. Cic. *Quisquam* is sometimes used in a similar manner: as, *quisquam homo*, *quisquam civis*. On the other hand *nullus* and *ullus* are used as substantives instead of *nemo* and *quisquam*, especially the genitive *nullius* and the ablative *nullo*.

REM. 32. (a.) *Alius*, like *ullus*, though properly an adjective, is sometimes used like a pronoun. It is often repeated, or joined with an adverb derived from it, in the same proposition, which may be translated by two separate propositions, commencing respectively with 'one...another'; as, *Aliud aliis placet ut optimum*, One thing seems best to one, another to another. Cic. *Aliis aliunde periculum est*, Danger threatens one from one source, another from another; or, Danger threatens different persons from different sources. Ter. *Dionysium aliter cum aliis de nobis locutum audiebam*. Cic.—*Alter* is used in the same manner when only two persons are spoken of, but there are no adverbs derived from it; as, *Alter in alterum causam conferebant*, They accuse each other.

(b.) *Alius*, repeated in different propositions, is also translated 'one...another' as, *Aliud agitur, aliud simulatur*, One thing is done, another pretended. Cic. *Aliter loquitur, aliter scribit*, like *aliter ac* or *atque*, He speaks otherwise than he writes. So *Aliud loquitur, aliud scribit*.

(c.) *Uterque*, 'each of two,' is always used by Cicero in the singular number, when only two individuals are spoken of. Its plural, *utrique*, is used only when each of two parties consists of several individuals; as, *Macedones—Tyrrii, utrique*. But in other good prose writers the plural *utrique* is occasionally used in speaking of only two; as, *Utrique Dionysii*. Nep. Cf. § 209, R. 11, (4.)

REM. 33. (a.) *Quidam* differs from *aliquis* by implying that a person or thing, though indefinitely described, is definitely known; as, *Quidam de collegis nostris*, A certain one of our colleagues. Cic. *Scis me quodam tempore Mætonium vixisse tecum*. Id.

(b.) *Quidam* is sometimes used for *some*, as opposed to *the whole*, or to *others*, as, *Excesserunt urbe quidam, alii mortem sibi consciverunt*, Some departed from the city, others destroyed themselves. Liv. Hence it is used to soften an expression, where in English we say 'so to speak,' etc.; as, *Milro est quoddam bellum naturale cum corro*, A kind of natural warfare. Cic. *Fuit enim illud quoddam cæcum tempus servitutis*. Id. *Et enim omnes artes quæ ad humanitatem pertinet, habent quoddam commune vinculum et quasi cognatione quadam inter se continentur*. Id.—*Tamquam* is used for the same purpose, and also *ut ita dicam*.

REM. 34. *Quivis* and *quilibet*, 'any one,' and *unusquisque*, 'each,' are universal and absolute; as, *Omnia sunt ejusmodi quivis ut perspicere possit*, All are of such a nature that any one can perceive. Cic. *Ilic apud majores nostros adhibebatur peritus, nunc quilibet*. Id. *Natura unumquemque trahit ad descendum*. A negative joined with them denies only the universality which they imply; as, *Non enim homini contingit adire Corinthum*, i. e. not to every man without distinction. Hor. *Cuiquam* would have made the negation universal.

REM. 35. (a.) *Quis que* signifies *each, every one*, distributively or relatively, and generally stands without a noun; as, *Quod cuique obtigit, id quisque teneat*, Let each one keep what has fallen to each. Cic. Hence it is used particularly after relative and interrogative pronouns and adverbs; as, *Scipio pollicetur sibi magnæ curæ fore, ut omnia civitatibus, quæ cuiusque fuissent, restituerentur*. Cic. *Ut prædici posset, quid cuique eventurum, et quo quisque fato natus esset*. Id. *Cur fiat quidque queris: recte omnino*. Id. *Quo quisque est sollertior, hoc docet laboriosius*. Id. *Ut quisque optime dicit, ita maxime dicendi difficultatem timet*. Id. And hence the expression *quotusquisque* in the sense of 'how few among all.' It is also used distributively after numerals; as, *Décimus quisque sorte lectus*, Every tenth man. *Quinto quoque anno*, In every fifth year. So also after *suus*; as, *Sui cuique liberi carissimi: suum cuique placet*. (Respecting the order of the words, cf. § 279, 14: and respecting *quisque* in the nominative in apposition to a noun or pronoun in the ablative absolute or in the accusative with the infinitive, see § 204, R. 10.)

(b.) *Quisque* with a superlative, either in the singular or the plural, denotes universality, and is generally equivalent to *omnes* with the positive; as, *doctissimus quisque*, Every learned man, i. e. all the learned; but often, also, in connection with the verb, it retains the idea of a reciprocal comparison, and is to be rendered by the superlative; as, *In omni arte optimum quidque rarissimum*, The best is the rarest. Cic. *Altissima quæque flumina minimo sono labuntur*, The deepest rivers flow with the least sound. Curt. With *primus*, it denotes the *first possible*; as, *Primo quoque tempore*, As soon as possible. Cic.

#### POSSESSIVES.

REM. 36. (a.) The possessive pronouns *meus*, *tuus*, *suus*, *noster*, and *vester* are joined to nouns, to indicate an action or possession of the persons denoted by their primitives; as, *Tutus amor meus est tibi*, My love is secure to you. Ovid. *Tuam vicem dolore soleo*. Cic.—These pronouns, as in English, when belonging to two substantives, are generally expressed but once, even when the substantives are of different genders; as, *amor tuus ac iudicium de me*.

(b.) But these pronouns are sometimes used when the persons to which they refer are the *objects* of an action, feeling, etc.; as, *Nam neque tuâ negligentia neque odio id fecit tuo*, For he did it neither through neglect nor hatred of you. Ter. See § 211, R. 3.



(c) The possessive pronouns, especially when used as reflexives, are often omitted; as, *Quo rēvertar? in patriam?* scil. *meum*, Whither shall I return? to (my) country? Ovid. *Dextrā mūnēra porrexit*, scil. *suā*. Id. But they are expressed when emphasis or contrast is intended, where in English 'own' might be added to the pronoun; as, *Ego non dicam, tamen id poteritis cum amicis vestris cogitare*. Cic.

(a) When besides the person of the subject, that of a remote object also occurs in the proposition, the possessive pronoun will refer to the latter; as, *Patris animum mihi reconciliasti*, i. e. *patris mei animum* rather than *tui*.

(e) As reflexives, *meus*, etc., are translated my, thy his, her, its, our, your their; or my own, thy own, his own, etc.

## THE REFLEXIVES *SUI* AND *SUUS*.

§ 208. REM. 37. (a.) *Sui* and *suus* properly refer to the subject of the proposition in which they stand; as,

*Oppidāni facinus in se ac suos fœdum consciscunt*, The citizens decide on a foul crime against themselves and their friends. Liv.

(b.) They continue to be used in successive clauses, if the subject remains the same; as,

*Ipse se quisque diligit, non ut aliquam a se ipse mercēdem exigat caritatis suæ, sed quod per se sibi quisque carus est*. Cic.

(1.) In dependent clauses, in which the subject does not remain the same, the reflexives are commonly used in references to the leading subject, when the thoughts, language, purposes, etc., of that subject are stated; as,

*Arōvistus prædicavit, non sēse Gallis, sed Gallos sibi bellum intūlisse*, Ariovistus declared that he had not made war upon the Gauls, but the Gauls upon him. Cæs. *Hōmērum Colōphōnii civem esse dicunt suum*, The Colophonians say that Homer is their citizen. Cic. *Tyrannus petivit ut se ad amicitiam tertium ascriberent*. Id. But sometimes, to avoid ambiguity, the cases of *is* or *ille* are used in such clauses in references to the leading subject; as, *Helvëti sēse Allobrōges vi coactūros existimābant, ut per suos fines eos ire pātērentur*. Cæs. Here *suos* refers to the subject of the dependent clause, and *eos* to *Helvëti*, the subject of the leading clause. And sometimes, even in the same dependent clause, two reflexive pronouns are used, referring to different persons; as, *Scythæ petēbant ut rēgis sui filium matrīmōnio sibi iungēret*. Curt.

(2.) If, however, the leading subject, whose thoughts, etc., are expressed, is indefinite, the reflexives relate to the subject of a dependent clause; as,

*Mēdēam prædicant* (scil. *hōmīnes*) *in fugā frātris sui membra in iis locis, quā se pārens persēquērētur, dissipāvisse*. Cic. *Ipsūm rēgem trādunt opērātum his sacris se abdīdisse*. Liv.

(3.) (a.) When the leading verb is in the passive voice, the reflexive often refers not to its subject, but to that which would be its subject in the active voice; as,

*A Cæsare invitor ut sim sibi lēgātus*, i. e. *Cæsar me invitāt*, I am invited by Cæsar to become his lieutenant. Cic.

(b.) So when the subject is a thing without life, the reflexive may relate to some other word in the sentence, which denotes a thing having life; as,

*Cānum tam fīda custōdia quid significat aliud, nisi se ad hōmīnum commodā tātes esse gēnērātos?* Cic.



(4.) Instead of *sui* and *suus*, whether referring to a leading or a subordinate subject, *ipse* is sometimes used, to avoid ambiguity from the similarity of both numbers of *sui*, and also to mark more emphatically than *suus*, the person to whom it relates; as,

*Jugartha lēgātos mīsit, qui ipsi liberisque vitam pēterent*, Jugurtha sent ambassadors to ask life for himself and his children. Sall. *Ea molestissime ferre hōmīnes dēbent, quæ ipsōrum culpā contracta sunt*.

(5.) In the plural number, with *inter*, *se* only is used, if the person or thing referred to is in the nominative or accusative; *se* or *ipse*, if in any other case; as,

*Frātres inter se quum formā, tum mōribus similes*, Brothers resembling each other both in person and character. Cic. *Fēras inter sēse conciliat nātūra*. Cic. *Incidunt aliquā a doctis etiam inter ipsos mūtuo reprehensa*. Quint.

(6.) (a.) When reference is made not to the subject of the proposition, but to some other person or thing, *hic*, *is*, or *ille*, is generally used, except in the cases above specified; as,

*Thēmistōcles servum ad Xerxem mīsit, ut ei nuntiāret, suis verbis, adversārios ājus in fugā esse*, Themistocles sent his servant to Xerxes, to inform him (Xerxes), in his (Themistocles') name, that his (Xerxes') enemies were upon the point of flight. Nep.

(b.) But when no ambiguity would arise, and especially when the verb is of the first or second person, *sui* and *suus* sometimes take the place of the demonstrative pronouns; as,

*Suam rem sibi salvam sistam*, I will restore his property entire to him. Plaut.

(c.) On the contrary, the demonstratives are sometimes used for the reflexives; as,

*Helvētīi persuādent Raurācis, ut unā cum iis prōficiscantur*, The Helvetii persuade the Rauraci to go with them. Cæs.—In some instances, a reflexive and a demonstrative are used in reference to the same person; as, *Ita se gessit* (scil. *Ligārius*) *ut ei pacem esse expēdiret*. Cic. *C. Claudii orantis per sui frātris pārentisque ejus mānes*. Liv.—Sometimes the reflexives refer to different subjects in the same sentence; as, *Ariōvistus respondit, nēmīnem sēcum suā pernīcie contendisse* (Cæs.); where *se* refers to Ariovistus, and *suā* to nēmīnem.

(7.) (a.) *Suus* often refers to a word in the predicate of a sentence, and is then usually placed after it; as,

*Hunc cives sui ex urbe ejēcērunt*, Him his fellow-citizens banished from the city. Cic. *Titūrius quum prōcul Ambiorigem, suos cōhortantem, conspexisset*. Cæs.

(b.) *Suus*, and not *hūjus*, is used when a noun is omitted; as,

*Octāvius quem sui* (scil. *āmīci*) *Cæsārem salūtābant*, Octavius, whom his followers saluted as Cæsar.

(c.) *Suus* is also commonly used when two nouns are coupled by *et*, but not when they are connected by a conjunction; as,

*Ptolēmæus amīcos Demetrii cum suis rēbus dimisit*, Ptolemy dismissed the friends of Demetrius with their effects. Just.

(8.) *Suus* sometimes denotes *fit*, *favorable*; as,

*Sunt et sua dōna pārenti*, There are likewise for my father suitable presents. Virg. *Ut liberātor ille pōpuli Rōmāni oppērirētur tempora sua*. Liv. *Alphēnus utēbātur pōpulo sane suo*. Cic. Sometimes it signifies *peculiar*; as, *Molles sua iura Sābei*, scil. *mittunt*, i. e. the frankincense for which their country was famous. Virg. *Fessosque sōpor suus occupat artus*. Id.

## NOMINATIVE.

## SUBJECT-NOMINATIVE AND VERB.

§ 209. (a.) The noun or pronoun which is the subject of a finite verb is put in the nominative.

NOTE 1. (a.) A verb in any mood except the infinitive is called a finite verb. (b.) In historical writing the nominative is sometimes joined with the present infinitive instead of the imperfect indicative. Cf. R. 5.

(b.) A verb agrees with its subject-nominative, in number and person; as,

*Ego lægo*, I read.

*Tu scribis*, Thou writest.

*Equus currit*, The horse runs.

*Nos lægimus*, We read.

*Vos scribitis*, You write.

*Equi currunt*, Horses run.

NOTE 2. The imperative singular is sometimes used in addressing several persons; as, *Huc nātas adjice septem*, scil. *vos*, *Thēbaides*. Ovid. Met. 6, 182. So *Adde dēfectiōnem Itāliæ*, scil. *vos*, *mīlites*. Liv. 26, 41.

REMARK 1. (a.) The nominatives *ëgo*, *tu*, *nos*, *vos*, are seldom expressed, the termination of the verb sufficiently marking the person; as,

*Cüpio*, I desire; *vivis*, thou livest; *hābēmus*, we have. See § 147, 3.

(b.) But when emphasis or opposition is intended, the nominatives of the first and second persons are expressed; as, *Ego rēges ëjēcī*, *vos tÿrannos intrōdūcītis*, I banished kings, you introduce tyrants. Auct. ad Her. *Nos, nos, dīco āperte*, *consūles dēsūmus*. Cic. *Tu es patrōnus*, *tu pāter*. Ter. In indignant questions and addresses *tu* is expressed; as, *Tu in fōrum prōdīre*, *tu lūcem conspīcēre*, *tu in hōrum conspectum rēnīre cōnārīs?* Auct. ad Her.

REM. 2. The nominative of the third person is often omitted:—

(1.) When it has been expressed in a preceding proposition:—

(a.) As nominative; as, *Mōsa prōfluit ex monte Vōsëgo*, *et in Oceānum inflūit*. Cæs.; or (b) in an oblique case; as, *Cursōrem mīsērunt*, *ut id nuntiāret*, scil. *cursor*. Nep.; or (c) in a possessive adjective; as, *Et rēreor quo se Jūnōnia rērant Hospītia*; *haud tanto cessābit cardine rērum*, scil. *illa*, i. e. *Jūnō*. Virg. Æn. I. 672.

(2.) When it is a general word for *person* or *thing*:—

Thus *hōmīnes* is often omitted before *aiunt*, *dīcunt*, *fērunt*, etc.; as, *Uī aiunt*, As they say. Cic. *Maxīme admirantur eum, qui pecūniā non mēritur*. Id.—So *bēne est*, *bēne hābet* or *bēne āgītur*, It is well; as, *Si vales*, *bēne est*, *egc valeo*. Cic. *Quum mēlius est*, *grātūlor dis*. Afran. *Optūme hābet*, Nothing can be better. Plaut. *Bēne hābet*: *jacta sunt fundāmenta dēfensiōnis*. Cic. *Bēne āgītur pro nocīa*. Plaut.

NOTE 3. This omission of the nominative is common in the clause preceding a relative; as, *Qui Bāvium non ōdit*, *āmet tua carmina*, *Mæri*, scil. *hōmo*, Let him who hates not Bavius, love your verses, Mævius. Virg. *Vastātur agrī quod inter urbem ac Fidēnas est*, scil. *id spātium*. Liv. *Sunt quos jūrat*...scil. *hōmīnes*, There are (those) whom it delights. Hor. *Est qui nec rētēris pōcūla Massici spērnit*, scil. *hōmo*. Hor. Here *sunt quos* and *est qui* are equivalent to *quādam*, *āliquis*, or *āliqui*. So, *Est quod gaudeas*, There is (reason) w̄ y you should rejoice. Cic. *Nēque erat cur fallēre vellent*. Ovid. *Est ubi id vāleat*. Cic. *Est quum non est sātius*, etc. Auct. ad Her. In the latter cases the adverbs are equivalent to *in quo*, scil. *lōco*, *tempōre*

REM. 3 (1.) The nominative is *wanting* before verbs denoting the state of the weather, or the operations of nature; as,

*Fulgurat*, It lightens. Plin. *Ningit*, It snows. Virg. *Lūcescēbat*, It was growing light. Liv. *Jam advesperascit*. Cic.

(2.) The nominative is also wanting before the third person singular of the passive of neuter verbs, and of active verbs used impersonally; as,

*Fāvētur tibi a me*, Thou art favored by me. *Ejus orātiōni vēhēmenter ab omnibus reclamatum est*. Cic. Proinde ut bene *vīritur*, diu *vīritur*. Plaut. *Ad exitum ventum est*. Sen. *Actum est de impērio*. See § 184, 2: and cf. § 229, R. 5, (b.)

NOTE 4. A nominative, however, is expressed before the passive of some neuter verbs, which, in the active voice, are followed by an accusative; as, *Pugna pugnata est*. Cic. See § 232, (1.)

(3.) It is wanting also before the neuter of the future passive participle with *est*; as,

*Si vis me flēre dōlendum est primum ipsi tibi*, If you wish me to weep, you yourself must first grieve. Hor. *Orandum est, ut sit mens sana in corpore sano*. Juv. *Ad villam revertendum est*. Cic.

(4.) The nominative is also wanting before the impersonal verbs *miseret*, *pœnitet*, *pūdet*, *tædet*, and *pīget*; as,

*Eos ineptiarum pœnitet*, They repent of their follies. Cic. *Miseret te aliorum, tui te nec miseret nec pūdet*. Plaut. *Me civitatis morum pīget tædetque*. Sall.—In such examples, the sense will sometimes permit us to supply *fortuna*, *conditio*, *mēmoria*, etc. So in the expression, *Vēnit in mentem*, It came into mind as, *In mentem vēnit de spēculo*, scil. *cōgitatio*, etc. Plaut.—An infinitive or a subjunctive clause sometimes forms the subject of these verbs; as, *Te id nullo modo pūduit facere*, To do that by no means shamed you. Ter. *Non pœnitet me, quantum profēcērim*. Cic.

(5.) The subject of the verb is sometimes an infinitive or a neuter participle (either alone or with other words), one or more propositions, or an adverb. (Cf. § 202, R. 2 and 3: and § 274, R. 5, (b.)) The verb is then in the third person singular; as,

*Vācāre culpā magnum est sōlātium*, To be free from fault is a great consolation. *Nēque est te fallere quidquam*, To deceive you in any thing is not (possible.) Virg. *Mentiri non est meum*. Plaut. *Te non istud audivisse mirum est*, That you have not heard that is wonderful. Cic. ‘*Summum jus, summa injuria*,’ *factum est jam tritum sermōne proverbium*. Id. *Ni dēgēnērātum in aliis huic quōque dēcōri offēcisset*. Liv. (Cf. § 274, R. 5, (b.)) *Sin est ut vēlis mānere illam apud te*. Ter. *Nec profuit Hydrea crescere per damnum, gēminasque rēsūmēre vīres*. Ovid. *Dic mihi, cras istud, Postūme, quando vēnit?* Tell me, Postumus, when does that to-morrow come? Mart. *Pārūne campis atque Nep̄tūno super fūsum est Lātini sanguinis?* Hor.

(a.) This construction is especially common with impersonal verbs; as, *Orātor irem irasci non dēcet*, That an orator should be angry, is not becoming. Cic. *Illoc fieri et oportet et opus est*. Id. *Me pedibus dīlectat claudere verba*, Hor. *Intērest omnium recte facere*. Cic. *Cāsu accidit, ut, id quod Rōmæ audierat orīmus nuntiāret*. Id. Sometimes a neuter pronoun is interposed between a proposition and its verb; as, *Impūne facere quæ libet, id est regem esse*. Sall. Cf. § 203, (13,) (a.)

(6.) The nominative is also wanting before *pōtest*, *cæpit* or *cæptum est*, *incīpit*, *dēsinit*, *dēbet*, *sōlet*, and *vīdētur*, when followed by the infinitive of an impersonal verb; as,



*Pigēre eum facti cōpit*, It began to repent him (i. e. he began to repent) of his conduct. Just. *Sapientia est una, quā praeceptrice, in tranquillitate vivi potest*. Cic. *Tædēre sōlet āvāros impendū*. Quint.

REM. 4. The verb is sometimes omitted; as,

*Di meliōra pās*, scil. *dent* or *vēlint*, May the gods grant better things to the pious. Virg. *Vērūm hēc hactēnus*, scil. *diximus*. Cic. *Pertineo* is understood in such expressions as *nihil ad me*, *nihil ad rem*; *Quid hoc ad Epicūrum?* What does this concern Epicurus? *Quorsus hēc?* i. e. *quorsus hēc pertinet?* What is that for?—*Pārābo* is to be supplied, in *Quo mihi hanc rem?* Of what use is this to me? and, *Unde mihi aliquam rem?* Whence am I to get any thing? as, *Quo mihi bibliōthēcas?* Sen. *Unde mihi lapidem?* Hor. A tense of *fācio* is often to be supplied, as in *Recte ille*, *melius hī*; *Bēne Chrīsippus, qui dēcet*. Cic. *Nihil per vim unquam Clōdīus, omnia per vim Milo*. Id. *Quæ quum dixisset Cotta finem*. Id. So, also in the phrases *nihil aliud quam*; *quid aliud quam*; *nihil præterquam*, which signify ‘merely’; as, *Tisaphernes nihil aliud quam bellum comparavit*. Nep. This verb is in like manner omitted with *nihil amplius quam*; *nihil minus quam*, and in the phrase *si nihil aliud*.—*Ait* or *inquit* is sometimes omitted in introducing the direct words of another, and more frequently in relating a connected conversation; as, *Tum ille*; *hic ego*; *huic ego*. *Dicit* is sometimes omitted in quoting a person’s words; as, *Scite Chrīsippus: ut glādiū causā vaginam, sic præter mundum cetera omnia aliorum causā esse generata*. Cic.—After *per* in adjurations *oro*, *rōgo* or *præcor* is often omitted; as, *Per ego vos deos patrū, vindicāte ab ultimo dedecōre nōmen gentemque Persarū*; i. e. *per deos patrios vos oro, vindicāte*. Curt. This omission is most common with the copula *sum*; as, *Nam Polydorus ego*, scil. *sum*, For I am Polydorus. Virg. And so *est* and *sunt* are often omitted with predicate adjectives, and especially in proverbial phrases; as, *Quot hōmīnes tot sententiæ*. Ter. *Omnia præclāra rara*, scil. *sunt*. Cic. So also *est* and *sunt* are often omitted in the compound tenses of the passive voice; as, *Agro mulctātī*, scil. *sunt*. Liv. Cf. § 270, R. 3.

NOTE 5. In Latin, as in English, a verb is often joined to one of two connected nominatives and understood with the other, and that even when the persons are different; as, *magis ego te amo, quam tu me*, scil. *amas*. After a negative verb a corresponding positive verb is sometimes to be supplied; as, after *nēgo*, *dīco*, after *veto*, *jūbeo*, and in this case *et* takes the signification of *sed*. Cf. § 323, 1, (2.), (b.)

NOTE 6. Sometimes, when the verb of an appended proposition is omitted, its subject is attracted to the case of a noun in the leading proposition with which is joined a participle of the omitted verb; as, *Hannibal Minūcium, magistrum equitum, pari ac dictātōrem dolo prōductum in prælium, fugavit*, i. e. *pari ac dictātor dolo prōductus fuerat*. Nep. Hann. 5. So Liv. 34, 32.

REM. 5. In the historic style the nominative is sometimes found with the present infinitive; as,

*Intērim quōtidie Cæsar Aduos frūmentum flāgitāre*, Meanwhile Cæsar was daily demanding corn of the Adui. Cæs. *Nos pavidi trēpidāre metu*. Virg. *Id horrendum ferri*. Id.

NOTE 7. The infinitive in this construction is called the *historical infinitive* and is used instead of the imperfect indicative to express in a lively manner a continued or repeated action or condition.

REM. 6. The relative *qui* may refer to an antecedent either of the first, second, or third person; and its verb takes the person of the antecedent; as,

*Egō qui lēgo*, I who read. *Tu qui scrībīs*, Thou who writest. *Equus qui currit*, The horse which runs. *Vos qui quærītis*, You who ask.

REM. 7. (a.). Verbs in the first person plural, and the second person singular, are sometimes used to express general truths; as,

*Quam multa faciūmus causā amicōrum!* How many things we do (i. e. men do) for the sake of friends! Cic. *Si vis me flēre, dōlendum est primū ipsi tibi,* Whoever wishes me, etc. Hor.

(L.) *Nos* is often used for *ego*, and *noster* for *meus*; and even when the pronoun is not expressed, the verb is frequently put in the first person plural instead of the first person singular. The genitive *nostri* is used for *mei*, but *nos trum* always expresses a real plurality.

REM. 8. The accusative is sometimes used for the nominative by attraction. See § 206, (6.) (b.)

REM. 9. The verb sometimes agrees with the *predicate-nominative*, especially if it precedes the verb; as, *Amantium iræ amoris integratio est*, The quarrels of lovers are a renewal of love. Ter. *Lōca, quæ proxima Carthāginem, Numidia appellātur*. Sall. And sometimes it agrees with the nearest subject of a subordinate sentence; as, *Sed ei cārīōra semper omnia, quam dēcus atque pūdicitia fuit*. Sall. Cat. 25.

REM. 10. In cases of apposition, the verb commonly agrees with the noun which is to be explained; as, *Tulliōla, dēlicia nostræ, flāgitat*. Cic. But sometimes the verb agrees, not with the principal nominative, but with a nearer noun in apposition to it; as, *Tungri, civitas Galliæ, fontem hābet insignem*, The Tungri, a state of Gaul, has a remarkable fountain. Plin. *Cōrioli oppidum captum (est)*. Liv.

REM. 11. A collective noun has sometimes, especially in poetry, a plural verb; as,

*Pars epulis ōnērānt mensas*, Part load the tables with food. Virg. *Turba ruunt*. Ovid. *Atria turba tēnent; vēniunt lēve vulgus euntque*. Id.

(1.) (a.) A plural verb, joined to a collective noun, usually expresses the action, etc. of the *individuals* which that noun denotes. In Cicero, Sallust, and Cæsar, this construction scarcely occurs in simple sentences; but it is often used, when the subject of the verb is expressed not in its own, but in a preceding clause; as, *Hoc idem gēnēri hūmāno evēnit, quod in terrā collōcāti sint*, because they (scil. *hōmīnes*) live on earth. Cic. In Livy it occurs more frequently; as, *Locros omnis multitūdō ābeunt*.

(b.) Abstract nouns are sometimes used collectively, instead of their concretes; as, *nōbilitas* for *nōbiles*, *jūventus* for *jūvēnes*, *vicīnia* for *vicīni*, *servitium* for *servi*, *lēvis armātūra* for *lēviter armāti*, etc. (c.) *Miles*, *ēques*, *pēdes*, and similar words are sometimes used collectively for the soldiery, the cavalry, etc.

(2.) When two or more clauses have the same collective noun as their subject, the verb is frequently singular in the former, and plural in the latter; as, *Jam ne nocte quīdem turba ex eo lōco dilābēbātur, refractūrosque carcērem minābantur*. Liv. *Gens eādē, quæ te crūdēli Daunīa bello insēquitur, nos si pellant, nīhil abfōre crēdunt*. Virg.

(3.) *Tantum*, followed by a genitive plural, has sometimes a plural verb, like a collective noun; as, *Quīd huc tantum hōmīnum incēdunt?* Why are so many men coming hither? Plaut.

(4.) A plural verb is sometimes used, though not by Cicero, after *uterque* and *quisque*, *pars...pars*, *alius...alius*, and *alter...alterum*, on account of the idea of plurality which they involve; as, *Uterque eōrum ex castris exercitum edūcunt*, Each of them leads his army from the camp. Cæs. *Intimus quisque libertōrum vineti abreptique (sunt)*. Tac. *Alius alium, ut prælium incipiant, circumspectant*. Liv. Cf. § 207, R. 32, (c.)

NOTE 8. This construction may be explained by passages like the following, in which the plural is placed first, and then the singular, denoting its parts; *Cetēri, suo quisque tempore, adērunt*. Liv. *Decemviri perturbāti alius in aliam partem castrōrum discurrunt*. Id. See § 204, R. 10.



REM. 12. Two or more nominatives singular, not in apposition, generally have a plural verb; as,

*Fūror irāque mentem præcipitant*, Fury and rage hurry to (my) mind. *Virg*  
*Dum ætas, mētus, māgister, prohibēbant*. Ter.

(1.) If the predicate belongs to the several nominatives jointly, the verb is always plural; as, *Grammaticæ quondam ac mūsicæ junctæ fuērunt*. Quint.

(2.) A verb in the singular is often used after several nominatives singular, especially if they denote things without life; as,

*Mens enim, et ratio et consilium in sēnibus est*. Cic. *Bēnēficientia, libērāltas, bonitas, justitia funditus tollitur* Id

NOTE 9. This construction is most common when the several nominatives, as in the preceding examples, constitute, as it were, but one idea. So also the compound subject *Sēnātus pōpulusque Rōmānus* has always a predicate in the singular. The same construction sometimes, especially in the poets, occurs with names of persons; as, *Gorgias, Thrāsýmāchus, Prōtāgōras, Prōdicus, Hippias in hōnōre fuit*. Cic. *Quin et Prōmētheus et Pēlōpis pārens dulci lābōrum dēcipitū sōno*. Hor. When the nominatives denote both persons and things, the verb is commonly plural; as, *Cōitio consūlum et Pompeius obsunt*. Liv.

(3.) When one of the nouns is plural, the verb is generally so; but sometimes it is singular, when the plural noun does not immediately precede it; as, *Dii te pēnātes patrūque, et patris imāgō, et dōmus rēgia, et in dōmo rēgālē sōlium, et nōmen Turquīnium creat vōcalque rēgem*. Liv.

(4.) When each of the nominatives is preceded by *et* or *tum*, the verb agrees with the last; as, *Hoc et ratio doctis, et nēcēssitas barbāris, et mos gentibus, et fēris nātūra ipsa præscripsit*, This reason has dictated to the learned, and necessity to barbarians, and custom to nations, and nature itself to wild beasts. Cic. *Et ego, et Cicerō meus flāgitābit*. Id. *Tum ætas vīresque, tum āvita glōria ānimum stīmulābat*. Liv. So when the subject consists of two infinitives; as, *Et faciēre, et pati fortia, Rōmānum est*. Cic. *Unus et alter* always takes a singular verb; as, *Dicit unus et alter breviter*. Cic. *Unus et alter assuitur pannus*. Hor.

(5.) When the nominatives are connected by *aut*, sometimes the plural, but commonly the singular, is used; as,

*Si Sōcrātes aut Antisthēnes dicēret*, If Socrates or Antisthenes should say. Cic. *Ut quosque stūdiū privātū aut grātia occūpāvērunt*. Liv.

(a.) The plural is necessary with disjunctives, if the subject includes the first or second person; as, *Quod in Dēcēmviris nēque ego nēque Cēsār hābiti es sēmūs*. Cic.—(b.) With *aut...aut* and *nec...nec* the singular is preferred, but with *seu...seu* and *tam...quam* the verb is in the plural.

(6.) A nominative singular, joined to an ablative by the preposition *cum*, sometimes has a singular but more frequently a plural verb; as, *Dōmītiūs cum Messālā certus esse vidēbātur*. Cic. *Bocchus, cum pēditibus, postrēmam Rōmānōrum āciem invādunt*, Bocchus, with his foot-soldiers, attacks the rear of the Roman army. Sall. *Ipse dux, cum āliquot principibus, capiuntur*. Liv.

(7.) If the nominatives are of different persons, the verb is of the first person rather than the second or third, and of the second rather than the third; as,

*Si tu et Tullia valētis, ego et Cicerō valēmūs*, If you and Tullia are well, Cicerō and I are well. Cic. *Hæc nēque ego nēque tu fēcimus*. Ter. *Ego pōpulusque Rōmānus bellum iūdico faciōque*. Liv.

(a.) Yet sometimes the verb agrees in number and person with the nearest nominative, and is understood with the other; as, *Vos ipsi et sēnāvis frēquens restitit*. This is always the case when the action of the verb is qualified with reference to each nominative separately; as, *Ego misēre tu feliciter vivis*.



REM. 13. The interjections *en*, *ecce*, and *O*, are sometimes followed by the nominative; as,

*En Priāmus!* Lo Priam! Virg. *En ěgo, vester Ascānius.* Id. *Ecce hōmo Cūtiēnus!* Cic. *Ecce tue litēre.* Id. *O vir fortis atque āmicus!* Ter.

### PREDICATE-NOMINATIVE.

§ 210. A noun in the predicate, after a verb neuter or passive, is put in the same case as the subject, when it denotes the same person or thing; as,

(a.) When the subject is in the nominative; *Ira facit brēvis est*, *Azger* is a short madness. Hor. *Ego vocor Lyconides*, I am called Lyconides. Plaut. *Ego incēdo regina*, I walk a queen. Virg. *Cūius et Lūcius frātres fuērunt.* Cic.—So (b.) when the subject is in the accusative with the infinitive; *Jūdicem me esse vōb.* Cic.

(c.) Sometimes also a *dative*, denoting the same object, both precedes and follows a verb neuter or passive. See § 227, N.—And (d.) a predicate ablative sometimes follows passive participles of *choosing*, *naming*, etc.; as, *Consulibus certiōribus factis.* Liv. See § 257, R. 11.

(e.) If the predicate noun has a form of the same gender as the subject, it takes that form; as, *Licentia corruptrix est mōrum.* Cf. § 204, R. 2.—(f.) But if the subject is neuter, the noun of the predicate, if it has both a masculine and a feminine form, takes the former; as, *Tempus vitę māgister est.*

(g.) An infinitive may supply the place of a predicate nominative. See § 269, R. 4.

REMARK 1. (a.) Adjectives, adjective pronouns, and participles, standing in the predicate, after verbs neuter or passive, and relating to the subject, agree with it in gender, number, and case.

(b.) When the subject consists of two or more nouns, the gender and number of such predicate adjectives are determined by § 205, R. 2.

REM. 2. (a.) The noun in the predicate sometimes differs in gender and number from the subject; as, *Sanguis ěrant lācrimę*, Her tears were blood. Ovid. *Captivi militum pręda fuērunt.* Liv.

(b.) So when a subject in the singular is followed by an ablative with *cum*, the predicate is plural; as, *Exsules esse jubet L. Turquinius cum conjūge et libēris.* Liv.

REM. 3. The verbs which most frequently have a noun, etc., in the predicate agreeing in case, etc., with their subject, are:—

(1.) The *copula sum*; as, *Ego Jōvis sum filiū.* Plaut. *Disce esse pāter.* Ter. The predicate with *sum* may be an adverb of place, manner, etc.; as, *Quod est longe āliter.* Cic. *Rectissime sunt āpud te omnia*, Every thing with you is in a very good condition. Id.; or a noun in an oblique case; as, *Nūmen sine tūre est.* Ovid. *Sunt nobis mītia pōma.* Virg.

(2.) Certain neuter verbs denoting *existence*, *position*, *motion*, etc.; as, *vivō*, *existō*, *appāreo*, *cādō*, *eo*, *erādō*, *fūgiō*, *incēdo*, *jūceo*, *māneo*, *sēleo*, *sto*, *velō*, etc. Thus, *Rex circūbat pēdes*, The king went round on foot. Plin. *Quos judicābat non posse orātōres erādere.* Cic. *Ego huic causę patrēnus exstiti.* Cic. *Qui fit, ut nēmo contentus vīval?*

(3.) The passive of verbs denoting,

(a.) To *name* or *call*; as, *appellor*, *dicor*, *nōminor*, *nuncupor*, *perhibeor*, *sālūtor*, *scribor*, *inscribor*, *vōcor*. Thus, *Cognōmine Justus est appellātus*, He was called by the surname Just, Nep. *Aristeus olivę dīcitur inventor* Cic.

(d.) To choose, render, appoint, or constitute; as, *constituor, creor, declāror, designor, eligor, fio, reddor, rēnunciōr*. Thus, *Dux a Rōmānīs electus est Q. Fābius. Postquam ēphēbus factus est. Nep. Certior factus sum.*

(e.) To esteem or reckon; as, *censeor, cognoscor, crēdor, dīprēhor, existimor, dūcor, fēror, hābeor, jūdicor, mēmōror, nūmēror, pūtor, rēpērior, rēdor*. Thus, *Crēdēbar sanguinis auctor ēgo. Ovid. Mālim vidēri timīdus quam pārū prūdens. Cic.*

NOTE 1. With several passives of the last class, when followed by a predicate-nominative, etc., an infinitive of *sum* is expressed or understood; as, *Amens mihi fuisse videor*, I think I was beside myself. Cic. But the dative of the first person is sometimes omitted after *videor*; as, *Satis docuisse vīdor*. II.—*Atilius prūdens esse putābātur*. Id. So with *dicor* (to be said), and *perhibeor*; as, *Vērus patriæ dicēris esse pāter. Mart. Hoc ne locūtus sine mercēde existimer. Phaed.*

NOTE 2. *Audīo* is sometimes used by the poets like *appellor*; as, *Tu rexque pāterque audisti cōram. Hor.*

REM. 4. A predicate-nominative is used after many other verbs to denote a purpose, time, or circumstance of the action; as, *Cōmes additus Œdēlides*, Œolides was added as a companion. Virg. *Lūpus obambulat nocturnus*. Id. *Appāret liquido sublimis in æthēre Nisus*. Id. So with an active verb; *Audīvi hoc puer. Cic. Sāpiens nil facit invitus. Id. Rempūblicam dēfendi adōlescens. Id. Cf. § 204, R. 1.*

NOTE 3. Instead of the predicate-nominative, a dative of the end or purpose sometimes occurs (see § 227); sometimes an ablative with *pro*; as, *audācia pro mūro est*; and sometimes the ablatives *lōco* or *in nūmēro* with a genitive; as, *ille est mihi pārentis lōco; in hostium nūmēro hābētur*.

REM. 5. The noun *ōpus*, signifying 'need,' is often used as a predicate after *sum*. It is, in such cases, translated by the adjectives *needful, necessary*, etc.; as, *Dux nōbis et auctor ōpus est. Cic. Multi ōpus sunt bōves. Varr. (Dixit) aurum et ancillas ōpus esse. Ter. Usus* also is occasionally so construed.

REM. 6. When the pronoun, which is the subject of an infinitive, is omitted, the case of the predicate is sometimes, in the poets, attracted into that of the subject of the verb on which the infinitive depends; as, *Uxor invicti Jōvis esse nescis*, i. e. *te esse uxōrem. Hor. Rētūlit Ajax esse Jōvis prōnēpos. Ovid.*

## GENITIVE.

### GENITIVE AFTER NOUNS.

§ 211. A noun which limits the meaning of another noun, denoting a different person or thing, is put in the genitive; as,

*Amor glōriæ*, Love of glory; *Arma Achillis*, The arms of Achilles; *Pāter patriæ*, The father of the country; *Vitium iræ*, The vice of anger; *Nēmōrum custos*, The guardian of the groves; *Amor hābendi*, Love of possessing.

NOTE 1. In the first example, *amor* denotes love in general; *glōriæ* limits the affection to the particular object, glory. Such universally is the effect of the genitive, depending upon a noun. Hence the limitation of a noun by a genitive resembles that which is effected by an adjective. In each the noun limited constitutes with its limitation only a single idea.

REMARK 1. The genitive denotes various relations, the most common of which are those of *Source*; as, *Rādii sōlis*, The rays of the sun;—*Cause*; as, *Dolor podagræ*, The pain of the gout;—*Effect*; as, *Artifex mundi*, The Creator of the world;—*Connection*; as, *Pāter consūlis*, The father of the council;—*Possession*; as, *Dōmus Cæsāris*, The house of Cæsar;—*Object*; as, *Cōgitatō alicujus rei*, A thought of something;—*Purpose*; as, *Appārātus triumphī*, Preparation for a triumph;—*A whole*; as, *Pars hōminum*, A part

of men; this is called the *partitive* genitive;—*Character* or *Quality*; as, *Adolescens summæ audaciæ*, A youth of the greatest boldness;—*Material* or *Component Parts*; as, *Montes auri*, Mountains of gold; *Acerrus scutōrum*, A heap of shields;—*Time*; as, *Frumentum diērum decem*, Corn for ten days Sall.

REM. 2. The genitive is called *subjective* or *active*, when it denotes either that *to which a thing belongs*, or the *subject* of the action, feeling, etc., implied in the noun which it limits. It is called *objective* or *passive*, when it denotes the *object* affected by such action, or towards which such feeling is directed; as,

*Subjective.*

*Facta virōrum*, Deeds of men.  
*Dolor animi*, Grief of mind.  
*Iunonis ira*, The anger of Juno.

*Objective.*

*Odium vitii*, Hatred of vice.  
*Amor virtutis*, Love of virtue.  
*Desiderium otii*, Desire of leisure.

(a.) Whether a genitive is subjective or objective is to be determined by the meaning of the words, and by their connection. Thus, *prōvidentiā Dei* signifies God's providence, or that exercised by him. *timor Dei*, the fear of God, or that exercised towards him. The same or similar words, in different connections, may express both significations. Thus, *mētus hostium*, fear of the enemy, may mean, either the fear felt by the enemy, or that felt by their opponents. So *vulnus Ulixis* (Virg. *Æn.* 2, 436.) denotes the wound which Ulysses had given; *vulnus Ænēæ*, (Id. *Æn.* 12, 323.) that which Æneas had received.

(b.) The relation expressed by the English *possessive case* is subjective, while that denoted by *of* with its case is either subjective or objective.

(c.) The objective genitive is of very extensive use in Latin in the limitation of verbal nouns and adjectives, whatever may be the construction of the verbs from which such nouns and adjectives are derived, whether they take an accusative or some other case or even a preposition.

(d.) When ambiguity would arise from the use of the objective genitive, a preposition with an accusative or ablative is commonly used; as, *Amor in rempublicam*, for *reipublicæ*, Love to the state. Cic. *Odium erga Rōmānos*, for *Rōmānōrum*. Nep. *Cūra de salūte patriæ*, for *salūtis*. Cic. *Predator ex sociis*, for *sociōrum*. Sall. Sometimes both constructions are combined; as, *Rēvērentia adversus hōmīnes et optimi cūjusque et reliquōrum*. Cic. Off. 1, 28.

NOTE. A limiting genitive is sometimes used instead of a noun in apposition, especially with *vox*, *nōmen*, *verbum*, etc.; as, *vox vōluptātis*, the word pleasure; *nōmen amicitia*, the word *amicitia*; *dōmīni appellatio*. This is usual when the genus is defined by the species; as, *arbor fici*, a fig-tree; *flos violæ*, a violet; *virtus continentia*, the virtue of abstinence: and in geographical names; as, *oppidum Antiōchiæ*. Cf. § 204, R. 6.—Cicero frequently uses a genitive in this manner with *gēnus* and *causa*; as, *Unum gēnus est eōrum, qui*, etc. *Duæ sunt causæ, una pudōris, altera scēlōris*.—So, also, the genitive of gerunds; as, *Triste est nōmen ipsum cārendi*, The very word *to want* is sad. Cic.

REM. 3. (a.) A substantive pronoun in the genitive, limiting the meaning of a noun, is commonly objective; as,

*Cūra mei*, Care for me. Ovid. *Pars tui*, Part of thee. Id. *Vestri curam agite*. Curt. This genitive is used especially with verbal substantives in *or* *ix* and *io*; as, *Accūsator mei*. Cic. *Nimia aestimatio sui*. Id. *Rationem et sui et aliorum habere*. Id.

(b.) Instead of the *subjective* or *possessive* genitive of a substantive pronoun, the corresponding adjective pronoun is commonly used; as,

*Liber meus*, not *liber mei*, My book. *Cūra mea*, My care, *i. e.* the care exercised by me. Cic. *Tuas literas exspecto*. Id. Yet the subjective genitive of a substantive pronoun sometimes occurs; as, *Tui inīus studiū*, By the zeal of yourself alone. Cic.



(c.) And not unfrequently, also, an adjective pronoun occurs instead of the *objective* genitive; as, *Mea injūria*, Injury to me. Sall. So, *Invidia tua*, Envy of thee. *Fiducia tua*, Confidence in thee. Plaut. *Spes mea*, The hope placed in me. With *causā* the adjective pronoun, and never the genitive, is used; as, *Meā causā*, For my sake. Plaut.

REM. 4. (a.) Instead, also, of the *subjective* genitive of a *noun*, a possessive adjective is often used; as, *Causa rēgia*, for *causa rēgis*. Cic. *Hērilis fūus*, for *hēri filius*. Id. *Evandrius ensis*, for *Evandri*. Virg. *Hercūleus labor*, for *Hercūlis*. Hor. *Cīvilis fūror*, for *cīrium*. Hor. So, also, for the *objective* genitive, *Mētus hostīlis*, Fear of the enemy. Sall.

(b.) The genitive of the person implied in the adjective pronoun or possessive adjective, or an adjective agreeing with such genitive, is sometimes added as an apposition; as, *Vestrā ipsōrum causā hoc fēcī*. In the poets and later prose writers a participle also is found agreeing with such implied genitive; as, *Mea scripta vulgo rēcitāre timentis*. Hor. Cf. § 204, R. 4, and § 205, R. 13.

REM. 5. In the predicate after *sum*, and sometimes after other verbs, the dative is used like the *objective* genitive; as,

*Idem amor exitium pēcōri (est), pēcōrisque māgistro*. Virg. *Vitis ut arbōribus dēcōri est, ut vitibus ūvæ—Tu dēcus omne tuis*. Virg. In this passage the dative *dēcōri* and the nominative *dēcus* are used with no difference of meaning. Cf. § 227, R. 4. *Auctor fui sēnātui*. Cic. *Muræna lēgātus Lūcillo fuit*. Id. *Erit ille mihi semper deus*. Virg. *Huic causæ patrōnus exstiti*. Cic. *Huic ego me bello dūcem prōfiteor*. Id. *Se tertium (esse) cui fātum fōret urbis pōtiri*. Id.—*Cum P. Africāno sēnātus ēgit, ut lēgātus frātri prōfiscerētur*. Id. *Cæsar tēgimenta gāleis milites ex viminibus facere jubet*. Cæs. *Trinōbantibus Cæsar impērat—frumentum exercitui*. Id. *Quod nēque insidiæ consūli prōcēdēbant*. Sall. *Quem exitum tantis mālīs spērarent?* Id. *Sanctus vir et ex sententia ambōbus, scil. qui fuit*. Id. See § 227, R. 4.

NOTE. The dative in the preceding examples has been thought by some grammarians to depend on the nouns connected with it; as, *exitium*, *dēcus*, *auctor*, *lēgātus*, *deus*, *patrōnus*, etc.; by others it has been held to depend on these nouns in connection with the verbs, and not upon either separately; but the better opinion seems to be that, which makes such datives grammatically dependent upon the verbs only, though logically connected also with the nouns.

(1.) Instead, also, of the *possessive* genitive, a dative of the person may follow a verb, when its act has relation to the body or possessions of such person; as,

*Sēse omnes flentes Cæsūri ad pēdes prōjēcērunt*, They all, weeping, cast themselves at the feet of Cæsar. Cæs. *Cui corpus porrigitur*, For whom the body, i. e. whose body, is extended. Virg. *Tum vēro exarsit jūveni dōlor ossibus ingens*. Id. *Transfigitur scūtum Pulfiōni*. Cæs.

REM. 6. When the limiting noun denotes a *property*, *character*, or *quality*, it has an adjective agreeing with it, and is put either in the genitive or the ablative; as,

*Vir exempli recti*, A man of correct example. Liv. *Adolescens summæ audāciæ*, A youth of the greatest boldness. Sall. *Fossa pēdum vīginti*, A ditch of twenty feet, (i. e. in width). Cæs. *Hamilcar sēcum duxit filium Hannibālem annōrum novem*. Nep. *Athēnienses dēligunt Pēriclem, spectatæ virtūtis virum*. Just. *Quinquāginta annōrum rēpērium*. Id. *Iter unius diēi*. Cic. *Pulchritūdine eximiā fēmina*, A woman of exquisite beauty. Cic. *Maxīmo natū filius*, The eldest son. Nep. *L. Cātīlina fuit magnā vī et animi et corpōris, sed ingēnio mālo prāvōque*. Sall. *Spēlunca infīnitā altitūdīne*. Cic.—Sometimes both constructions occur in the same proposition; as, *Lentūlum nostrum, eximiā spe summæ virtūtis adolescentem*. Cic.

(1.) A genitive sometimes supplies the place of the adjective; and the noun denoting the property, etc., is then always put in the ablative; as, *Est bos cervi figurā* ..of the form of a stag. Cæs. *Uri sp̄cie et colōre tauri*. Id. *Frūtex palni altitudīne*. Plin. *Clāvī digiti pollicis crassitudīne*. Cæs.

(2.) All the qualities and attributes of persons and things, whether inherent or accidental, may be thus expressed by the genitive and ablative of quality, provided the substantives are *immediately* connected; as, *fossa quīndēcim pēdum*; *hōmo antiquā virtūte*. It hence follows that such genitives and ablatives, when used to express duration of time or extent of space, are distinguished from the cases in which the accusative is required, since the latter case always follows adjectives or verbs; as, *fossa quīndēcim pēdes lāta*; *puer dēcem annos nātus*. Cf. § 236.

(3.) Whether the genitive or the ablative of quality is preferable in particular cases, can frequently be determined only by reference to classical authority; but, in general, the genitive is used more frequently to express inherent qualities than such as are merely accidental, while the ablative is used indifferently for either purpose. In speaking of transitory qualities or conditions the ablative is always used: as, *Magno timōre sum*, I am in great fear. Cic. *Bōno animo eum*. Id. *Quanto fuērīm dōlōre mēmīnistī*. Id. *Maximo hōnōre Servius Tullius erat*. Liv. With plural substantives the genitive is rare; while in expressions of measure it is used rather than the ablative.

(4.) An accusative instead of a genitive of quality is used with *sēcus* (sex), *gēnus* and *pondo*; as, *Libērōrum cāpitum virile sēcus ad dēcem millia capta*, i. e. of the male sex, instead of *sexūs virilis*. Liv. So *gēnus*, when joined with a pronoun, as *hoc*, *id*, *illud*, *quod*, or with *omne*, is used for *hūjus*, *ējus*, *omnis*, etc., *gēneris*; as, *Orātiōnes aut āliquīd id gēnus scribēre*,—of that kind. Cic. *Concrēdere nūgas hoc gēnus*. Hor. So *pondo* is joined as an indeclinable word to the accusatives *libram* and *libras*; as, *Dictātor cōrōnam auream libram pondo in Cāpitōlio Jōvi dōnum pōsuit*,...a pound in weight. Liv. Cf. § 236, R. 7.

(5.) The genitive *mōdi* with an adjective pronoun supplies the place of a pronoun of quality; as, *cūjusmōdi librī*, the same as *quāles librī*, what kind of books; *hūjusmōdi librī*, i. e. *tāles librī*, such books. So, also, *gēneris* is used, but less frequently.

(6.) With the genitive of measure are often connected such ablatives as *longitudīne*, *lātitudīne*, etc., or *in longitudīnem*, etc.; as, *fossa dēcem pēdum lātitudīne*; but the genitive does not depend on these words.

(7.) *Sum* may be followed by either the genitive or the ablative of quality with an ellipsis of the word limited, which, with the genitive, is *hōmo*, *res*, *nēgōtium*, *prōprium* or *prōprius*, etc., and with the ablative, *præditus*, *instructus*, *ornātus*, etc. Cf. Rem. 8, and §§ 244, and 249, I..

REM. 7. (1.) The limited noun is sometimes omitted; as, *O mīsēre sortis!* scil. *hōmīnes*; O (men) of wretched fortune! Lucan. *Ad Diāne*, scil. *cedem*. Ter. *Hectōris Andrōmache*, scil. *uxor*. Virg. *Suspiciōnis vitandæ*, scil. *causā*. Tac. So *filius* or *filia*; as, *Hannibal Gisgōnis*.

(2.) The omitted noun may sometimes be supplied from the preceding words; as, *Cūjum pēcus? an Mēlibœi? Non*; *vērūm Agōnis*, scil. *pēcus*. Virg. An adjective is often expressed referring to the noun omitted: as, *Nullam virtus āliam mercēdem dēsīderat*, *præter hanc* (scil. *mercēdem*) *laudīs*. Cic.

REM. 8. The limited noun is often wanting in the predicate of a sentence after *sum*. This usually happens.

(1.) When it has been previously expressed; as,

*Hæc dōmus est Cæsāris*, This house is Caesar's. *Nō enī auræ tam sæpe vocātū esse putans Nymphæ*. Ovid. *Nāres ōnērariās, quārū mīnor nulla erat duum milium amphōrum*, i. e. *quārū mīnor nulla erat quāvis duum*, etc. Cic.

(2.) When it is a general word denoting a person, an animal, etc. as,



*Thūcydides, qui ejusdem ætātis fuit*, scil. *hōmo*, Thucydides, who was of the same age. Nep. *Multum ei detraxit, quod aliēnæ erat civitātis*, scil. *hōmo* or *civis*. Id. *Primum stipendium mēruit annōrum dēcem septemque*, scil. *adolescens*. Id. *Somni ut sint lābōris efficiant*, scil. *animālin*. Cæs. ( *Clodius* ) *somni brevissimū erat*. Suet. *Mirā sum alacritāte*. Cic. *Uulgus ingēnio mōbili erat*. Sall. *Non est jūris sui*, He is not his own master. Lucan. *Pōtestātis suæ esse*. Liv. *Suārumque rerum erant*. Id. Cf. Rem. 6, (7.)

(3.) When it is a general word denoting *thing*, for which, in English, the words *part, property, duty, office, business, characteristic, etc.* are commonly supplied; as,

*Tēmēritas est flōrentis ætātis, prūdētia sēnectūtis*, Rashness is (the characteristic) of youth, prudence of old age. Cic. *Est hoc Gallicæ consuetūdinis*. Cæs. So, *stultitiæ est; est lēvitātis*, etc., which are equivalent to *stultitia est, lēvitas est*. *Omnia hostium erant*. A *paucis* ēmi, *quod multōrum esset*. Sall.

(a.) This happens especially when the subject of the verb is an infinitive, or an entire clause, in which case, instead of the genitive of the personal pronouns, *mei, tui*, etc., the neuters of the possessives, *meum, tuum*, etc., are used; as, *Adolescentis est majōres natū rēvēreri*, It is (the duty) of a youth to reverence the aged. Ovid. *Cūjusvis hōminis est errāre, nullius nisi insipientis in errōre persērārē*. Cic. *Paupēris est nūmērāre pēcus*. Ovid. So especially *mōris est*; as, *Nēgāvit mōris esse Græcōrum, ut in courēcio virōrum accumbērent mālīeres*, the same as *mōrem esse Græcōrum*. Cic. *Nihil tam æquandæ libertātis esse*. Liv. So when the verb is omitted; *Tāmen officiū duxit, exōrāre patrem*, scil. *esse*. Suet. *Non est mentiri meum*. Ter. *Tuum est, M. Cāto, vidēre quid agatur*.

(b.) Instead of the genitive of a substantive, also, the neuter of a possessive adjective derived from it is sometimes used; as, *Hūmānum est errāre*, To err is human. Ter. *Et facere et pati fortia Rōmānum est*. Liv.

(4.) The same construction sometimes occurs after *fācio*, and some other verbs mentioned in § 230, *esse* being understood; as, *Asia Rōmānōrum facta est*, Asia became (a possession) of the Romans. Just. *Agrum suæ ditiōnis fēcisse*. Liv.

(5.) The limited noun is sometimes wanting, when it is a general word, though not in the predicate after *sum*; as, *Magni formīca lābōris*, scil. *animal*, The ant (an animal) of great labor. Hor. So *Ei venit in mentem pōtestātis tuæ* scil. *mēmōria*, or the like. Cic.

NOTE. When the noun which is wanting denotes a *thing*, grammarians sometimes supply *nēgōtium, officiū, mūnus, ōpus, res, causa*, etc. It is an instance of a construction common in Latin, to omit a noun when a general idea is intended. See § 205 Rem. 7, (2.)

REM. 9. The *limiting* noun also is sometimes omitted; as,

*Tra millia*, scil. *passuum*. In most cases of this kind, an adjective, adjective pronoun, or participle, is expressed in the genitive.

REM. 10. Two genitives sometimes limit the same noun, one of which is commonly subjective, and the other objective; as,

*Agamemnonis belli glōria*, Agamemnon's glory in war. Nep. *Illius administratiō provincie*. Cic. *Eōrum diērum consuetūdine itinēris nostri exercitūs perspectā*. Cæs. *Orbitus reipublicæ tālium virōrum*. Cic. *Pro vētēribus Helvētiōrum injūris pōpuli Rōmāni*. Cæs.

REM. 11. *Opus* and *ūsus* are rarely limited by a genitive or accusative, but generally by an ablative, of the thing needed; as,

*Argentī ūsus fuit*, There was need of money. Liv. *Ad consilium pensandum temporis ōpus esse*. Id. *Proemii non semper ūsus est*. Quint. *Sī quo ōpēra pōrum ūsus est*. Liv. *Puēro ōpus est cibus*. Plaut. *Ūsus est hōminem astutum*. Id. See § 243



REM. 12 The relation denoted by the genitive in Latin, is generally expressed, in English, by *of*, or by the possessive case. Cf. R. 2, (b.) The objective genitive may often be rendered by some other preposition; as,

*Rēmediū dōlōris*, A remedy for pain. *Injūria patris*, Injury to a father. *Descensus Averni*, The descent to Avernus. *Ira belli*, Anger on account of the war. *Pōtestas rei*, Power in or over a thing.

NOTE. Certain limitations of nouns are made by the accusative with a preposition and by the ablative, either with or without a preposition. Cf. § 202, 6, I. and II.

## GENITIVE AFTER PARTITIVES.

§ 212. Nouns, adjectives, adjective pronouns, and adverbs denoting a part, are followed by a genitive denoting the whole; as,

*Pars civitātis*, A part of the state. *Nulla sōrōrum*, No one of the sisters. *Aliquis philōsophōrum*, Some one of the philosophers. *Quis mortālīum?* Who of mortals? *Māior iuvēnum*, The elder of the youths. *Doctissimus Rōmānōrum*, The most learned of the Romans. *Multum pecūniæ*, Much (of) money. *Satis eloquentiæ*, Enough of eloquence. *Ubīnam gentium sūmus?* Where on earth are we?

NOTE. The genitive thus governed denotes either a *number*, of which the partitive designates one or more individuals; or a *whole*, of which the partitive designates a portion. In the latter sense, the genitive of common and abstract nouns commonly follows either the neuter of adjectives and adjective pronouns, or adverbs; and that of material nouns depends on substantives signifying quantity, weight or measure; as, *mēdimnum trītīci*, a bushel of wheat; *libra farris*; *jūgērū agri*; *magna vis auri*.

REMARK 1. Nouns denoting a part are *pars*, *nēmo*, *nihil*, etc., and also nouns denoting measure, weight, etc.; as, *mōdius*, *mēdimnum*, and *libra*; as,

*Nēmo nostrum*, No one of us. *Maxīma pars hōmīnum*. *Nihil hūmānārū rerū*. Cic. *Dimīdium militum*. Liv. *Mēdimnum trītīci*. Cic.

REM. 2. Adjectives and adjective pronouns, denoting a part of a number, including partitives and words used partitively, comparatives, superlatives, and numerals, are followed by the genitive plural, or by the genitive singular of a collective noun.

(1.) Partitives (§ 104. 9.); as, *ultus, nullus, sōlus, alius, ūter, ūterque, ūtercumque, ūtervis, ūterlibet, neuter, alter, altērūter, aliquis, quīdam, quispiam, quisquis, quisque, quisquam, quicumque, unusquisque, quis? qui? quōt? quōtus? quōtusquisque? tōt, aliquōt, nonnulli, plērīque, multi, pauci, mēdius*. Thus, *Quisquis deōrum*, Whoever of the gods. Ovid. *Consūlum alter*, One of the consuls. Liv. *Multī hōmīnum*, Many men. Plin. *Et mēdius iuvēnum ibat*; i. e. between. Ovid. For the gender of adjectives used partitively, see § 205, R. 12.

(2.) Words used partitively; as, *Expediti militum*, The light-armed (of the) soldiers. Liv. *Dēlecti equitum*. Id. *Vētēres Rōmānōrum dūcum*. Vell. *Sūpēri deōrum*, The gods above. Hor. *Sancte deōrum*. Virg. *Dēgēnēres canum*. Plin. *Piscium fēmine*. Id.

(3.) Comparatives and superlatives; as, *Doctior iuvēnum*. *Orātōrum prae-  
stantissimus*. *Eloquentissimus Rōmānōrum*. *Optimus omnium*.

(4.) Numerals, both cardinal and ordinal; also the distributive *singūli*; as, *Equitum centum quinquāginta interfecti*, A hundred and fifty of the horsemen were killed. Curt. *Sāpientum octāvus*. Hor. *Singūlos vestrum*. Curt.

(5.) The meaning is often nearly the same, whether the partitive adjective agrees in case and number with a noun, or takes such noun after it in the genitive; as, *Doctissimus Rōmānōrum*, or, *doctissimus Rōmānus*: *Alter consūl m*, or *alter consul*. But the genitive cannot be used, when the adjective includes the same number of things as that of which the whole consists; as, *Veniāmus ad viros*, qui duo sūpersunt; not *quōrum duo*, since these are all, though we say in English, 'of whom two survive.'

NOTE 1. (a.) The comparative with the genitive denotes one of *two* individuals or classes; the superlative denotes a part of a number greater than two; as, *Māior frātrum*, The elder of two brothers. *Maxīmus frātrum*, The eldest of three or more.

(b.) In like manner, *ūter*, *alter*, and *neuter*, generally refer to two; *quis*, *ālus*, and *nullus*, to a whole consisting of more than two; as, *Uter nostrum*? Which of us (two)? *Quis vestrum*? Which of you (three or more)?

NOTE 2. *Nostrum* and *vestrum* are used as partitive genitives, in preference to *nostrī* and *vestrī*, and are always joined with *omnium* even when the genitive is a subjective one; as, *Patria, quę commūnis est omnium nostrum pārens*. Cic. But *vestrum* sometimes occurs in other connections also without a partitive meaning; as, *Quis ērit tam cupidus vestrum*. Cic.

NOTE 3. The partitive word is sometimes omitted; as, *Fīes nōbīlium tu quōque fontium*, scil. *ūnus*. Hor. *Centies sestertium*, scil. *centēna millia*.

NOTE 4. The noun denoting the whole, after a partitive word, is often put in the ablative, with the prepositions *de*, *e*, *ex*, or *in*, or in the accusative, with *apud* or *intēr*; as, *Nēmo de iis*. *Alter ex censōribus*. Liv. *Unus ex multis*. Cic. *Acerrīmus ex sensibus*. Id. *Thāles, qui sāpientissīmus in septem fuit*. Id. *Primus inter omnes*. Virg. *Cræsus inter rēges opulēntissīmus*. Sen. *Apud Helvētios nōbilissīmus*.

NOTE 5. The whole and its parts are frequently placed in apposition, distributively; as, *Interfectōres, pars in fōrum, pars Sīrācūsas pergunt*. Liv. See § 204, R. 10.

NOTE 6. *Cuncti* and *omnes*, like partitives, are sometimes followed by a genitive plural; as, *Attālus Mācēdōnum fēre omnibus persuāsīt*, Attālus persuaded almost all the Macedonians. Liv. *Cunctos hōmīnum*. Ovid. *Cunctas prōvinciārum*. Plin.

NOTE 7. In the following passage, the genitive singular seems to be used like that of a collective noun: *Tōtius autem injustitię nulla capitālior est*, etc. Cic. Off. 1, 13. The phrase *Rem nullo mōdo prōbābilem omnium* (Cic. Nat. Deor. 1, 27,) seems to be used for *Rem nullo omnium mōdōrum prōbābilem*.

REM. 3. The genitive denoting a whole, may depend on a neuter adjective or adjective pronoun. With these the genitive singular is commonly used; as,

*Plus eloquentię*, More (of) eloquence. *Tantum fidei*, So much fidelity. *Id temporis*, That time. *Ad hoc ætātis*. Sometimes the genitive plural; as, *Id misēriārum*. Ter. *Armōrum quantum*. Cæs.

NOTE 1. (a.) Most neuter adjectives used partitively denote quantity; as, *tantum*, *quantum*, *aliquantum*, *plūs*, *minus*, *minimum*, *dimīdium*, *multum*, *nīmium*, *paulum*, *plūrimum*, *rēliquum*; with the compounds and diminutives, *tantūlum*, *tantūlem*, *quantūlum*, *quantūluncumque*, etc.; to which add *mēdium*, *summum*, *ultimum*, *aliud*, etc. The pronouns thus used are *hoc*, *id*, *illud*, *istud*, *īdem*, *quod*, and *quid*, with their compounds, *aliquid*, *quidquid*, *quippiam*, *quidquam*, *quodcumque*.

(b.) Most of these adjectives and pronouns may either agree with their nouns, or take a genitive; but the latter is more common. *Tantum*, *quantum*, *aliquantum*, and *plūs*, when they denote quantity, are used with a genitive only as are also *quid* and its compounds, when they denote a part, sort, etc., and *quod* in the sense of *quantum*. Thus, *Quantum crēvit Nīlus*, *tantum spei in annum est* Sen. *Quid mūliēris uxōrem hābes*? What kind of a woman... Ter.

*Aliquid formæ.* Cic. *Quid hoc rei est?* What does this mean? Ter. *Quod auri, quod argenti, quod ornāmentōrum fuit, id Verres abstūli.*

NOTE 2. Neuter adjectives and pronouns, when followed by a genitive, are to be accounted substantives, and in this construction are found only in the nominative and accusative.

NOTE 3. Sometimes the genitive after these adjectives and pronouns is a neuter adjective, of the second declension, without a noun; as, *Tantum boni*, So much good. *Si quid habes novi*, If you have any thing new. Cic. *Quid reliquū est?* Ter. *Nihil* is also used with such a genitive; as, *Nihil sinceri*, No sincerity. Cic. This construction occurs very rarely with neuter adjectives in *ē* of the third declension, and only in connection with neuters of the second declension; as, *Si quidquam non dico civilis sed humani esset.* Liv.

NOTE 4. In the poets and in the prose writers later than Cicero, neuter adjectives in the plural number are sometimes followed by a genitive, either singular or plural, with a partitive signification; as, *Extrēma impērii*, The frontiers of the empire. Tac. *Pontes et viarum angusta*, The bridges and the narrow parts of the roads. Id. *Opaca locorum.* Virg. *Antiqua fœderum.* Liv. *Cuncta camporum.* Tac. *Exercent colles, atque horum asperrima pascunt.* Virg. Cf. § 205, R. 9.

REM. 4. The adverbs *sāt*, *sātis*, *pārum*, *nīmis*, *ābunde*, *largīter*, *affātīm*, and *partīm*, used partitively, are often followed by a genitive; as,

*Sat ratiōnis*, Enough of reason. Virg. *Sātis eloquentiæ, pārum sapiētiæ*, Enough of eloquence, (yet) but little wisdom. Sall. *Nimis insidiarum.* Cic. *Terrōris et fraudis ābunde est.* Virg. *Auri et argenti largīter.* Plaut. *Cōpiarum affātīm.* Liv. *Quum partīm illorum mihi familiārissimī essent.* Cic.

NOTE 1. The above words, though generally adverbs, seem, in this use, rather to be nouns or adjectives.

NOTE 2. (a.) The genitives *gentium*, *terrārum*, *loci*, and *locorum*, with certain adverbs of place, strengthen their meaning; as, *Usquam terrarum.* Just. *Usquam gentium*, Any where whatever. Plaut. *Ubi terrarum sumus?* Where in the world are we? Cic. *Abire quo terrarum possent.* Liv. *Ubi sit loci.* Plin. *Eo loci*, equivalent to *eo loco*, In that place. Tac. *Eodem loci res est.* Cic. *Nescire quo loci esset.* Id. But the last three examples might perhaps more properly be referred to Rem. 3.

(b.) The adverbs of place thus used are *ubi*, *ubīnam*, *ubicumque*, *ubiūbi*, *ubivis*, *ubique*, *unde*, *usquam*, *nusquam*, *quo*, *quocumque*, *quōvis*, *quōquo*, *aliquo*, *hic*, *huc*, *eo*, *eodem*. *Loci* also occurs after *ibi* and *ibidem*; *gentium* after *longe*; as, *Ibi loci*, In that place. Plin. *Abes longe gentium.* Cic. So, *minime gentium*, By no means. Ter. *Viciniae* in the genitive is used by the comic writers after *hic* and *huc*; as, *Hic proximæ viciniae.* Plaut. *Huc viciniae.* Ter. Cf. § 221, R. 3, (4.)

NOTE 3. *Huc*, *eo*, *quo*, when used figuratively to express a degree, are joined also with other genitives; as, *Eo insolentiae furorisque processit*, He advanced to such a degree of insolence and madness. Plin. *Huc enim malorum ventum est.* Curt. *Huccine rerum venimus?* Have we come to this? Pers. *Eo miseriærum venire*, To such a pitch of misery. Sall. *Quo amentiae progressi sitis.* Liv.

NOTE 4. The genitives *loci*, *locorum*, and *temporis*, appear to be redundant after the adverbs *adhuc*, *inde*, *interea*, *postea*, *tum*, and *tunc*, in expressions denoting time; as, *Adhuc locorum*, Till now. Plaut. *Inde loci*, After that. Lucr. *Interea loci*, In the mean time. Ter. *Postea loci*, Afterwards. Sall. *Tum temporis*, and *tunc temporis*, At that time. Just. *Locorum* also occurs after *id*, denoting time; as, *Ad id locorum*, Up to that time. Sall. Cf. R. 3.

NOTE 5. When the genitive *ejus* occurs after *quoad*, in such connections as the following: *Quoad ejus facere poteris.* Cic.; or passively, *Quoad ejus fieri possit*, As far as may be. Cic.; the *ejus* refers to the preceding clause; literally, as much of it as possible.



NOTE 6. *Prædie* and *postridie*, though reckoned adverbs, are followed by a genitive, depending on the noun *dies* contained in them; as, *Prædie ejus diēi*, lit. On the day before that day, i. e. The day before. Cic. *Prædie insidiarum*, The day before the ambush. Tac. *Postridie ejus diēi*, The next day. Cæs. When they are followed by an accusative, *ante* or *post* is understood. Cf. § 238, 1, (b.)

NOTE 7. Adverbs in the superlative degree, like their adjectives, are followed by a genitive; as, *Optime omnium*, Best of all. Cic.

## GENITIVE AFTER ADJECTIVES.

§ 213. A noun, limiting the meaning of an adjective, is put in the objective genitive, to denote the relation expressed in English by *of*, *in*, or *in respect to*; as,

<i>Aridus</i> landis, Desirous of praise.	<i>Plēna</i> timōris, Full of fear.
<i>Appētens</i> glōriæ, Eager for glory.	<i>Egēnus</i> aquæ, Destitute of water.
<i>Mēmor</i> virtūtis, Mindful of virtue.	<i>Doctus</i> fandi, Skilful in speaking.

So, *Nescia* mens fātī, The mind ignorant in regard to fate. Virg. *Impōtens* iræ, lit. Powerless in respect to anger, i. e. unable to control it. Liv. *Hōmīnes expertes* vērītātis, Men destitute of truth. Cic. *Lactis abundans*, Abounding in milk. Virg. *Terra fērax* arbōrum, Land productive of trees. Plin. *Tēnax* prōpōsiti vir, A man tenacious of his purpose. Hor. *Æger* animi, Sick in mind. Liv. *Locus mēdius* jūgūli summūque lācerti, i. e. between. Ovid. *Mōrum diversus*. Tac. *Opērum solūtus*. Hor. *Liber* labōrum. Id. *Intēger* vitæ scēlērisque pūrus, Upright in life, and free from wickedness. Hor. *Vini pollens Liber*. Plaut.

From the above examples, it will be seen that the genitive after an adjective is sometimes translated by other words besides *of*, *in*, or *in respect to*, though the relation which it denotes remains the same. Cf. 211, R. 12.

REMARK 1. The following classes of adjectives, which, as denoting a relation to a thing, are called *relative adjectives* (§ 104, 13), are frequently limited by a genitive; viz. (1.) *Verbals* in *ax*; as, *capax*, *edax*, *fērax*, *fūgax*, *percivax*, *tēnax*, etc.—(2.) *Participials* in *ns*, and a few in *tus*, with their compounds; as, *amans*, *appētens*, *cūpiens*, *efficiens*, *pātiens*, *impātiens*, *sitiens*;—*consultus*, *doctus*, *solūtus*.—(3.) Adjectives denoting *desire* or *aversion*; as, *āvārus*, *āvidus*, *cūpidus*, *studiōsus*; *fastidiōsus*:—*participation*; as, *particeps*, *affinis*, *consors*, *exsors*, *expers*, *inops*:—*knowledge*, *experience*, *capacity*, and their contraries; as, *callidus*, *compos*, *consciū*, *gnārus*, *ignārus*, *pēritus*, *impēritus*, *impos*, *pōtens*, *impōtens*, *prūdens*, *imprūdens*, *expertus*, *inexpertus*, *consciū*, *insciū*, *nesciū*, *insolens*, *insolitus*, *insuētus*, *rūdis*, *sollers*:—*memory* and *forgetfulness*; as, *mēmor*, *immēmor*, etc.:—*certainty* and *doubt*, as, *certus*, *incertus*, *ambiguus*, *dūbius*, *suspensus*:—*care* and *negligence*; as, *anxiū*, *sollicitus*, *prōvidus*, *imprōvidus*, *sēcūrus*:—*fear* and *confidence*, as, *pavidus*, *timidus*, *trēpidus*, *impavidus*, *fīdens*, *interritus*:—*guilt* and *innocence*; as, *noxius*, *reus*, *suspectus*, *compertus*, *mānifestus*, *innoxius*, *innocens*, *innocens*:—*plenty* and *want*; as, *abundans*, *plenus*, *dives*, *sātus*, *largus*, *inops*, *egēnus*, *inānis*, *pauper*, *parcus*, *solūtus*, *vacuus*.

(a.) In the poets and later prose writers, many other adjectives, particularly those which express mental emotions, are in like manner limited by a genitive, especially by *animi*, *ingēniū*, *mentis*, *iræ*, *militiæ*, *belli*, *labōris*, *rērum*, *ævi*, *fātūri*, *mōrum*, and *fidei*.

REM. 2. The limiting genitive, by a Greek construction, sometimes denotes a *cause* or *source*, especially in the poets; as, *Lassus* maris, et viārum, *militiæque*. Hor. *Fessus* viæ. Stat. *Fessus* maris. Hor. *Attōnitus* serpentis. Sil. *Mens* interrita lēti. Ovid.

REM. 3. Participles in *ns*, when used as such, take after them the same case as the verbs from which they are derived; as, *Se amans*, Loving himself. Cic. *Mare* terram *appētens*. Id.

REM. 4. Instead of the genitive, denoting *of*, *in*, or *in respect to*, a different construction is sometimes used after many of these adjectives; as,

(1.) An infinitive or a subjunctive clause; as, *Certus ire*, Determined to go. Ovid. *Cantāre pēriti*. Virg. *Fēlicior unguere tēla*. Id. *Ancius quid facte opus sit*. Sall. *Vire mēmor quam sis ævi brēvis*. Hor.—So *aliēnus*, *avidus*, *callidus*, *cupidus*, *firmus*, *frēquens*, *guārus*, *impōtens*, *inops*, *letus*, *largus*, *liber*, *pollens*, *mēmor*, *dūbius*, etc.

(2.) An accusative with a preposition; as, *Ad rem avidior*. Ter. *Avidus in direptiones*. Liv. *Animus capax ad praecepta*. Ovid. *Ad casum fortunamq;us fēlix*. Cic. *Ad fraudem callidus*. Id. *Diligens ad custodiendum*. Id. *Negligentior in patrem*. Just. *Vir ad disciplinam pēritus*. Cic. *Ad bella rudis*. Liv. *Potens in res bellicas*. Id. *Alacer ad mālēficia*. Cic. *Inter bellum et pacem nihil mēdium est*. Id.—So with *ad*, *fētilis*, *firmus*, *infirmus*, *potens*, *stērilis*, etc.—with *in*, *cupidus*, *parcus*, *potens*, *prodigus*, etc.

(3.) An accusative without a preposition, chiefly in the poets; as, *Nudus membra*, Bare as to his limbs. Virg. *Os, hūmērosque deo similis*. Id. *Cētera fulvus*. Hor. *Cuncta pollens*. Sen. Ag. See § 234, II.

(4.) An ablative with a preposition; as, *Avidus in pecūniis*, Eager in regard to money. Cic. *Anxius de fāmā*. Quint. *Rudis in jure civili*. Cic. *Pēritus de agriculturā* Varr. *Prudens in jure civili*. Cic. *Reus de vi*. Id. *Purus ab cultu hūmāno*. Liv. *Certior factus de re*. Cic. *Sollicitus de re*. Id. *Super scelēre suspectus*. Sall. *Inops ab amīcis*. Cic. *Pauper in ære*. Hor. *Mōdicus in cultu*. Plin. *Ab aquis stērilis*. Apul. *Copiōsus a frūmento*. Cic. *Ab equitatu firmus*. Id. So with *in*, *immōdicus*, *parcus*, *uber*:—with *ab* *aliēnus*, *beātus*, *extorris*, *immūnis*, *inops*, *liber*, *nudus*, *orbis*, *vacuus*.

(5.) An ablative without a preposition; as, *Arte rudis*, Rude in art. Ovid. *Regni crimine insons*. Liv. *Compos mente*. Virg. *Prudens consilio*. Just. *Ager pedibus*. Sall. *Præstans ingenio*. Cic. *Mōdicus sēvēritatē*. Tac. *Nihil insidiis vacuum*. Cic. *Amor et melle et felle est fēcundissimus*. Plaut. *Mēdius Pollice et Castore*. Ovid. Cf. Rem. 5.

In many instances, the signification of the accusative and ablative after adjectives differs, in a greater or less degree, from that of the genitive.

REM. 5. As many of the adjectives, which are followed by a genitive, admit of other constructions, the most common use of each, with particular nouns, can, in general, be determined only by recourse to the dictionary, or to the classics. Some have,

(1.) The genitive only; as, *bēignus*, *capax*, *exsors*, *impos*, *impōtens*, *insāciabilis*, *irritus*, *liberālis*, *mōdicus*, *mūnificus*, *prælargus*, and many others.

(2.) The genitive more frequently; as, *compos*, *consors*, *egēnus*, *exhēres*, *expers*, *fētilis*, *indigus*, *inops*, *parcus*, *particeps*, *pauper*, *prodigus*, *prosper*, *stērilis*.

(3.) The genitive or ablative indifferently; as, *dives*, *fēcundus*, *fērax*, *immūnis*, *inānis*, *immōdicus*, *jējunus*, *lurgus*, *nūmius*, *opulentus*, *pēritus*, *plēnus*, *potens*, *purus*, *refertus*, *sātur*, *uber*, *vacuus*.

(4.) The ablative more frequently; as, *abundans*, *aliēnus*, *cassus*, *copiōsus*, *extorris*, *firmus*, *fētus*, *frēquens*, *grācidus*, *grāvis*, *infirmus*, *liber*, *locuples*, *letus*, *nactus*, *nudus*, *onustus*, *orbis*, *pollens*, *satiātus*, *truncus*, *vālidus*, *viduus*.

(5.) The ablative only; as, *beātus*, *crōber*, *densus*, *mutilus*, *tūmidus*, *turgidus*.

For the ablative after many of the preceding adjectives, see § 250.

REM. 6. Some adjectives usually limited by a dative, sometimes take a genitive instead of the dative; as, *similis*, *dissimilis*, etc. See § 222, R. 2.

REM. 7. Many adjectives in addition to the genitive or ablative denoting *of* or *in respect to*, take also another case to express a different relation; as, *Mens sibi conscia recti*. Cf. § 222, R. 3. *Consciū* has also sometimes the dative instead of the genitive of the thing; as, *Consciū huic faciōri*. Cic.



## GENITIVE AFTER VERBS

§ 214. *Sum*, and verbs of *valuing*, are followed by a genitive, denoting *degree of estimation*; as,

*A me argentum, quanti est, sūmō*, Take of me so much money as (he) is worth. Ter. *Magni æstimābat pecūniam*, He valued money greatly. Cic. *At nunc plūris est, quam tunc fuit*. Id. *Tanti est*, It is worth so much; and, absolutely, It is worth while. Cic. *Hūjus non fācio*, I don't care *that* for it.

REMARK 1. (a.) Verbs of valuing are joined with the genitive, when the value is expressed in a *general* or *indefinite* manner by:—

(1.) A neuter adjective of quantity; as, *tanti, quanti, plūris, minōris, magni permagni, plūrimi, maximi, minimi, parvi, tantidem, quanticumque, quantivis, quantilibet*, but only very rarely *multi* and *mājōris*.

(2.) The nouns *assis, flocci, nanci, nihili, pili, tērencii*, and also *pensi* and *hūjus*.

(b.) But if the price or value of a thing is a *definite* sum, or is expressed by a *substantive*, other than *assis, flocci*, etc., it is put in the *ablative*. Cf. § 252.

REM. 2. The verbs of valuing are *æstimō, existimō, dūco, fācio, fio, habeo, pendo, pūto, depūto, taxo*. Thus, *Ut quanti quisque se ipse fāciat, tanti fiat ab amicis*, That as much as each one values himself, so much he should be valued by his friends. Cic. *Sed quia parvi id dūceret*. Id. *Hōnōres si magni non putēmus*. Id. *Non assis fācis?* Catull. *Nēque quod dixi, flocci existimat*. Plaut.

NOTE 1. (a.) The phrase *æqui boni*, or *æqui bonique fācio*, or *consūlo*, I take a thing in good part, am satisfied with it, may be classed with genitives of value; as, *Nos æqui bonique fācimur*. Liv. So, *Bōni consūluit* Plin.—(b.) A genitive of price is joined also to *ceno, habito, doceo*, etc.; as, *quanti hābitas?* what rent do you pay for your house or lodging? *quanti docet?* what are his terms in teaching?

NOTE 2. After *æstimō*, the ablatives *magno, permagno, parvo, nihilo*, are sometimes used instead of the genitive; as, *Dāta magno æstimas, accepta parvo*. Sen. *Pro nihilo*, also, occurs after *dūco, habeo*, and *pūto*; and *nihi* with *æstimō* and *mōror*. Cf. § 231, R. 5.

NOTE 3. The neuter adjectives above enumerated, and *hūjus*, may be referred to a noun understood, as *prētii, æris, pondēris, mōmenti*; and may be considered as limiting a preceding noun, also understood, and denoting some person or thing; as, *Æstimō te magni*, i. e. *hōminem magni prētii*. *Scio ejus ordinis auctoritatem semper apud te magni fuisse*, i. e. *rem magni mōmenti*. The words *assis*, etc., may also be considered as depending on an omitted noun; as, *prētio rem*, etc.

REM. 3. Statements of *price*, also, when *general* or *indefinite*, are put in the genitive after verbs of *buying, selling, letting, and hiring*, as,

*Mercātōres non tantidem vendunt, quanti emērunt*. Cic. *Nulla pestis hūmāno gēnēri plūris stetit, quam ira*. Sen.

NOTE 1. Verbs of buying, selling, etc., are *ēmo, vendo*, the neutral passive *vēneo, consto, prōsto*, and *liceo*, to be exposed for sale.

NOTE 2. With verbs of buying, selling, etc., the ablatives *magno, permagno, plurimo, parvo, minimo*, and *nihi* are often used instead of the genitive; as, *Non pōtest parvo res magna constāre*. Sen. *Quanti emēre possum minimo?* What is the lowest price I can buy at? Plaut. Sometimes also the adverbs *cāre bene*, and *māle* take the place of the genitive or ablative of price.



§ 215. (1.) *Misereor, miseresco*, and the impersonals *misēret, pœnitet, pūdet, tædet*, and *pīget*, are followed by a genitive of the object in respect to which the feeling is exercised; as,

*Misērēmīni sociōrum*, Pity the allies. Cic. *Misērescīte rēgis*, Pity the king. Virg. *Mea māter, tui me misēret, mei pīget*, I pity you, and am dissatisfied with myself. Acc. *Eos ineptiarum pœnitet*. Cic. *Frātris me pūdet pīgetque*. Ter. *Me civitātis mōrum pīget tædetque*. Sall. So the compound *distædet*; *Haud quod tui me, nēque dōmi distædeat*. Plaut.; and the passive; *Numquam suscepti nēgōtii eum pertæsum est*. Nep. *Lentitūdinis eōrum pertæsa*. Tac. *Misēritum est me tuārum fortunārum*. Ter. *Cave te frātrum misēreātur*. Cic. *Pūdet (me) deōrum hōminumque*, I am filled with shame in reference both to gods and men. Liv.

NOTE 1. *Misērescit* is sometimes used in the same manner as *misēret*; as, *Nunc te misērescat mei*. Ter. *Misēreo*, as a personal verb, also, occurs with a genitive; as, *Ipse sui misēret*. Luer.

REMARK. The genitive after the above impersonals seems to depend on some general word constituting the grammatical subject of such verbs, and signifying, *matter, business, fact, case, circumstances, conduct, character*, etc., cf § 211, R. 8, (3); and § 209, R. 3, (4.) Instead of the genitive with its omitted noun, an infinitive or clause with *quod* or with an interrogative particle is sometimes used as a subject; as, *Non me hoc jam dicere pūdebīt*. Cic. *Non pœnitet me quantum profēcērim*, I am not dissatisfied with my progress. Id. These verbs have also sometimes a nominative; as, *Me quīdem hæc conditio non pœnitet*. Plaut. *Non te hæc pudent?* Ter.

NOTE 2. *Misēret* occurs with an accusative of the object, instead of a genitive; as, *Mēnēdēmi vicem misēret me*. Ter. So, also, *Pertæsus ignāviam suam*. Suet.

NOTE 3. (a.) These impersonals, as active verbs, take also an accusative of the person exercising the feeling which they express. See § 229, R. 6.—(b.) Sometimes also the accusative of the *neuter pronouns* and of *nihil*, denoting *to what degree* the feelings are exercised; as, *Sēquitur ut nihil (sāpien-tem,) pœniteat*. Cic. Cf. § 232, (3.)

(2.) *Sātāgo* is sometimes followed by a genitive denoting *in what respect*; as,

*Is sātāgit rērum suārum*, He is busily occupied with his own affairs. Ter. This compound is often written separately, and in either case the genitive seems to depend upon *sāt*. See § 212, R. 4. *Agito*, with *sāt*, in like manner, is followed by a genitive; as, *Nunc āgitas sāt tūte tuārum rērum*. Plaut.

§ 216. *Rēcorder, mēmīni, rēmīniscor*, and *oblīviscor*, are followed by a genitive or accusative of the object remembered or forgotten; as,

*Flāgitiorum suorum rēcorderābitur*. Cic. *Omnes grādus ætātis rēcorder tuæ*, I call to mind all the periods of your life. Id. *Mēmīni vivōrum*, I am mindful of the living. Id. *Nūmēros mēmīni*, I remember the measure. Virg. *Rēmīnisci veltēris fāmæ*. Nep. *Dulces mōriens rēmīniscitur* Argos. Virg. *Rēmīnisci āmicos*. Ovid. *Oblitus sui*. Virg. *Injūriarum oblīviscitur*. Nep. *Oblīviscor injūrias*. Cic. *Oblīviscere Graios*. Virg.

REMARK 1. (a.) When the thing remembered or forgotten is expressed by a neuter pronoun or adjective, it is always put in the accusative. An accusative of the *person* with these verbs is unusual, except that *mēmīni*, when referring to a contemporary always takes an accusative of the person; as, *Cin- nam mēmīni*. Cic.

(b.) An infinitive or a dependent clause sometimes follows these verbs; as, *Memento mihi suppētias ferre*. Plaut. *Esse quōque in fātis rēminiscitur*, affōre tempus, quo mārē, etc. Ovid. *Obliti quid dēceat* Hor. *Mēmīni te scribere*. Cic. *Quæ sum passūra rēcordor*. Ovid.

REM. 2. *Rēcordor* and *mēmīni*, to remember, are sometimes followed by an ablative with *de*; as, *Pētīmus ut de suis libēris rēcordentur*. Cic. *De pallā memento*. Plaut.

REM. 3. *Mēmīni*, signifying to make mention of, has a genitive, or an ablative with *de*; as, *Nēque hūjus rei mēmīnit*, poeta. Quint. *Mēmīnistī de exsūlibus*. Cic. With *vēnit mihi in mentem*, the person or thing may be made the subject of *vēnit*; as, *Misēra ubi vēnit in mentem mortis mētus*. Plaut. *Vēnit hoc mihi in mentem*; or an infinitive or subjunctive clause may supply the place of the subject:—for the genitive with this phrase, as in *Sōlet mihi in mentem vēnire illius temporis*, see § 211, R. 8, (5.) The genitive with *rēcordor* is very rare.

§ 217. Verbs of *accusing, convicting, condemning, and acquitting*, with the accusative of the person, are followed by a genitive denoting the *crime*; as,

*Arguit me furti*, He charges me with theft. *Altērum accūsāt probri*, He accuses another of villany. *Meipsum inertīæ condemno*. Cic.

REMARK 1. (a.) To this rule belong the verbs of

Accusing; *accūso*, *āgo*, *arcesso*, *arguo*, *cito*, *dēfēro*, *incrēpo*, *incūso*, *instimūlo*, *postūlo*, and more rarely *alligo*, *anquīro*, *astringo*, *capto*, *incrēpito*, *urgeo*, *interrogō*, *reum āgo* or *fācio*, *ālicui diem dico*, *cum āliquo āgo*.—Convicting; *convinco*, *coarguo*, *prēhendo*, *tēneor*, *obstringor*, *obligor*.—Condemning; *damno*, *condemno*, *infāmo*, and more rarely *jūdico*, *nōto*, *plector*.—Acquitting; *absolvo*, *libēro*, *purgo*, and rarely *solvo*. To the verbs of accusing, etc., may be added the adjectives denoting guilt and innocence, which likewise take a genitive. Cf. § 213, R. 1, (3.)

(b.) The genitives which follow these verbs are, *audāciæ*, *āvaritiæ*, *cædis*, *falsi*, *furti*, *ignāviæ*, *impiētātis*, *injūriarum*, *lētītātis*, *mājestātis*, *mālēficii*, *mendācii*, *parrīciū*, *peccāti*, *pēcūlātus*, *probri*, *prōditionis*, *rei cāpitālis*, *rēpētundarum*, *scēlēris*, *stultitiæ*, *tēmēritātis*, *timōris*, *vānitātis*, *vēnēficii*, etc.

REM. 2. (a.) Instead of the genitive, an ablative with *de* is often used after *accūso*, *dēfēro*, *anquīro*, *arguo*, *postūlo*, *damno*, *condemno*, *absolvo*, and *purgo*; as, *Accūsāre de negligentīā*. Cic. *De vi condemnāti sunt*. Id. *De rēpētundis est postulātus*. Id. Sometimes with *in*, after *accūso*, *coarguo*, *convinco*, *tēneor*, and *dēprēhendor*; as, *In quo te accūso* (Cic.); and after *libēro*, with *a* or *ab*; as, *A scēlère libērāti sumus*. Cic. *Accūso* and *damno* with *inter* occur in the phrases *inter sicārios accusāre*, etc., to charge with assassination.

(b.) With some of the above verbs, an ablative without a preposition is often used; as, *Libērāre culpā*. Cic. *Crīmen quo argui posset*. Nep. *Prōconsūlem postulatērat rēpētundis*. Tac. This happens especially with general words denoting crime; as, *scēlus*, *mālēficiū*, *peccātum*, etc.; as, *Me peccāto solvo*. Liv. The ablatives *crīmīne* and *nōmīne*, without a preposition, are often inserted before the genitive; as, *Arcessēre āliquem crīmīne ambitus*. Liv. *Nōmīne scēlēris conjārātōnisque damnāti*. Cic.; and when not so inserted they are to be understood.

(c.) Sometimes a clause takes the place of the genitive; as, *Eum accūsābant quod sociētātem fecisset*. Nep. So the infinitive with the accusative. *Quid? quod me—arguit sērum accessisse?* Ovid.

REM. 3. (a.) The punishment is commonly expressed by the genitive; as, *capitis*, *mortis*, *multæ*, *pēcūniæ*, *quadrupli*, *octupli*; but sometimes by the ablative; as, *cāpite*, *morte*, *multā*, *pēcūniā*: and always by this case when a definite sum is mentioned; as, *quīndēcim millibus æris*: or the accusative with *ad* or *in*



as, *ad pœnam, ad bestias, ad mētalla, in mētallum, in expensas*;—sometimes though rarely, in the poets, by the dative; as, *Damnātus morti*. Lucr.—(b.) *Vōti* or *vōtōrum*, and less frequently *vōto* or *vōtis damnāri*, signifies ‘to be condemned to fulfil one’s vow,’ and is consequently equivalent to ‘to obtain what one wishes.’ So also in the active voice, *Damnābis tu quōque vōtis*. Virg. *Perdo* is used by Plautus as a verb of accusing, with *cāpitis*; *Quem ego cāpitis perdam*, will charge with a capital offence. So *cāpīte* or *cāpitis pēriclitāri*, Plaut., signifies ‘to be in peril of one’s life.’ With *plecto* and *plector*, *cāput* is used in the ablative only.—(c.) *Damni infecti* is put in the genitive (depending upon *nōmine* understood) after *sātisdo*, *prōmitto*, *stipulāri*, *rēprōmitto*, and *caveo*; as, *Si quis in pāriēte dēmōliendo damni infecti prōmiserit*. Cic.

REM. 4. *Accūso*, *incūso*, and *insimūlo*, instead of the genitive, sometimes take the accusative, especially of a neuter pronoun; as, *Si id me non accūsas*. Plaut. *Quæ me incūsāveras*. Ter. *Sic me insimulāre falsum faciūsus*. Plaut. See § 231, Rem. 5.

REM. 5. (a.) The following verbs of accusing, etc., are not followed by a genitive of the crime, but, as active verbs, by an accusative:—*cālumnior*, *carpo*, *corripio*, *crimīnor*, *culpo*, *excūso*, *multo*, *pūnio*, *rēprēhendo*, *sūgillo*, *tazo*, *trādūco*, *vītūpēro*; as, *Culpāre infēcunditātem agrōrum*. Colum. *Excūsāre errōrem et ādolescentiam*. Liv.

(b.) This construction also sometimes occurs with *accūso*, *incūso*, *arguo*, and *inarguo*; as, *Ejus ācārītiām perfīdiāmque accūsārat*. Nep. *Culpām arguo*. Liv. With *multo*, the punishment is put in the ablative only, without a preposition; as, *Exsiliis, morte multantur*. Cic.

§ 218. Verbs of admonishing, with the accusative of the person, are followed by a genitive of the person or thing respecting which the admonition is given; as,

*Mīlites tempōris mōnet*, He admonishes the soldiers of the occasion. Tac. *Admōnēbat āliūm ēgestātis, āliūm cūpīditātis suæ*. Sall.

NOTE. The verbs of admonishing are *mōneo*, *admōneo*, *commōneo*, and *commōnēfacio*.

REMARK 1. Instead of the genitive, verbs of admonishing sometimes have an ablative with *de*; as, *De æde Tellūris me admōnes*. Cic.—sometimes an accusative of a pronoun or adjective in the neuter gender; as, *Eos hoc mōneo* Cic. *Illud me admōneo*. Id.; and in the passive, *Multa admōnēmur*. Id.—rarely also a noun in the accusative; as, *Eam rem nos lōcus admōnuīt*. Sall.

REM. 2. Instead of the genitive, verbs of admonishing are also often followed by an infinitive or clause; as, *Sōror alma mōnet succēdere* Lauso Turnum, His sister admonishes Turnus to take the place of Lausus. Virg. *Mōnet, ut suspīciōnes vītet*. Cæs. *Sed eos hoc mōneo, dēsīnant fūrēre*. Cic. *Mōnet rātiōnem frūmenti esse hābendam*. Hirt. *Immortālia ne spēres mōnet annus*. Hor. *Discipūlos d ūnum mōneo, ut, etc.* Quint. *Mōneo quīd factō ōpus sit*. Ter. See § 273, 2.

§ 219. *Rēfert* and *intērest* are followed by a genitive of the person or thing whose concern or interest they denote; as,

*Hūmānitātis rēfert*. It concerns human nature. Plin. *Rēfert omnium āntīmadverti in mālōs*. Tac. *Intērest omnīum recte faciēre*, It concerns all to do right. Cic.

REMARK 1. Instead of the genitive of the substantive pronouns, the adjective pronouns *mea*, *tua*, *sua*, *nostra*, and *vestra*, are used; as,

*Mea nihil rēfert*, It does not concern me. Ter. *Illud mea magni intērest*, That greatly concerns me. Cic. *Tua et mea maxīme intērest, te valēre*. Cic. *Māgis reipūblicæ intērest quāmea*. Id. *Magni intērest Cicerōnis, vel meā vōtiūs, vel meherculē utriusque, me intervēnīre dicenti*. Id.



NOTE. *Rēfert* rarely occurs with the genitive, but often with the pronouns *mea*, *tua*, etc., and most frequently without either such pronoun or a genitive; as, *quid rēfert? magni* or *magnopere rēfert*.

REM. 2. In regard to the case of these adjective pronouns, grammarians differ. Some suppose that they are in the accusative plural neuter, agreeing with *commōda* or the like understood; as, *Intērest mea*, i. e. *est inter mea*, It is among my concerns. *Rēfert tua*, i. e. *rēfert se ad tua*, It refers itself to your concerns. Others think that they are in the ablative singular feminine, agreeing with *re*, *causā*, etc., understood, or in the dative. The better opinion seems to be, that they are in the accusative feminine for *meam*, *tuam*, *sua*, etc., that *rēfert* was originally *rem fert*, and that hence the *e* of *rēfert* is long.

REM. 3. Instead of the genitive, an accusative with *ad* is sometimes used; as, *Ad hōnōrem meum intērest quam primum urbem me vērīre*. Cic. *Quid id ad me aut ad meam rem rēfert*. Plaut.—sometimes, though rarely, an accusative without a preposition; as, *Quid te igitur rētūlit?* Plaut—or a dative; as, *Dic quid rēferat intra nātūræ fīnes vīventi*. Hor.

REM. 4. The subject of these verbs, or the thing which is of interest or importance, is sometimes expressed by a neuter pronoun; as, *Id mea minime rēfert*. Ter. *Hoc vehēmenter intērest reipublicæ*. Cic.; and sometimes by an infinitive with its accusative, or *ut*, or an interrogative particle with a subjunctive clause; as, *multum mea intērest te esse diligentem*, or *ut diligens sis*, or *utrum diligens sis nec ne*. When the infinitive alone is used with *rēfert* or *intērest*, the preceding subject is understood; as, *omnium intērest recte facere*, scil. *se*.

REM. 5. The degree of interest or importance is expressed by adverbs or by neuter adjectives, etc., in the accusative or genitive; as, *magis*, *magnopere*, *vehēmenter*, *pārum*, *minime*, etc.; *multum*, *plūs*, *plūrimum*, *nihil*, *aliquid*, etc.; *tanti*, *quantī*, *magni*, *permagni*, *plūris*. But *minimo* *discrimine rēfert* is found in Juv. 5, 123.

§ 220. Many verbs which are usually otherwise construed, are sometimes followed by a genitive. This rule includes

1. Certain verbs denoting an affection of the mind; *ango*, *discrucior*, *excrucio*, *fallo*, *pendeo*, which are followed by *ānīmī*; *dēcipior*, *dēsīpio*, *fallor*, *fasūdio*, *inīdeo*, *mīror*, *vēreor*; as, *Absurde facis, quī angas te ānīmī*. Plaut. *Me ānīmī fallit*. Lucr. *Dēcipitur lābōrum*. Hor. *Dēsīpiēbam mentis*. Plaut. *Iustitiæ prius mīrer belline lābōrum*. Virg.

2. The following, in imitation of the Greek idiom; *abstīneo*, *dēsīno*, *purgo*. Hor.; *dēsisto*. Virg.; *laudo*, *prōhibeo*. Sil.; *lēro*, *partīcīpo*. Plaut.; *libēro*. Liv.; *dissolvo*. Tibull.: compare *liber lābōrum*; *opērum vācuus*; *pūrus scēlērīs*. § 213.

3. Some verbs denoting *to fill*, *to abound*, *to want* or *need*, *to free*, which are commonly followed by an ablative. Such are *abundo*, *cāreo*, *compleo*, *expleo*, *impleo*, *ēgeo*, *indigeo*, *sātūro*, *obsātūro*, *scāteo*; as, *Adōlescentem suæ tēmēritātis implet*, He fills the youth with his own rashness. Liv. *Ānīmum explesse flammæ*. Virg. *Egeo consilii*. Cic. *Non tam artis indigent quam lābōris*. Id. See §§ 249 and 250, (2.)

4. *Pōtior*, which also is usually followed by an ablative; as, *Urbis pōtīri*, To make oneself master of the city. Sall. *Pōtīri regnī* (Cic.), *hostium* (Sall.), *rerum*, To make oneself master of the world. Cic. *Pōtīo* (active) occurs in Plautus; as, *Eum nunc pōtīvī servitūtis*, He has made him partaker of slavery. In the same writer, *pōtītus est hostium* signifies, 'he fell into the hands of the enemy.' So, also, *Alīquem compētīre prædiæ* or *vōtī*. App. So, *Rerum adeptus est*. Tac. *Dōminātiōnis apīsci*. Id. *Regnāvī pōpūlōrum*. Hor.

## GENITIVE OF PLACE.

§ 221. 1. The name of a town *in which* any thing is said to be, or to be done, if of the first or second declension and singular number, is put in the genitive; as,

*Habitat Miletī*, He lives at Miletus. Ter. *Quid Rōmæ faciā?* What can I do at Rome? Juv. *Hercūles Tȳri maxime cōlitur*. Cic.

NOTE. For the construction of nouns of the third declension or plural number, see § 254. The following appears to be the best explanation that has been given of this diversity of construction, depending solely on the number or declension of the noun. The name of the town 'where' or 'in which' is probably neither in the genitive nor the ablative, but always, as in Greek, in the dative. Since the genitive and dative are alike in the singular of the first declension and the dative and ablative plural are the same in all declensions, such examples as *Rōmæ* and *Athēnis* present no difficulty. In the third declension the dative and ablative singular were anciently alike, and in such ablatives as *Ansurī*, *Carthāgīni*, *Lacēdæmōni*, the old form remains, see § 82, Exc. 5, (c.) In the second declension there was an old dative in *oi*, as in Greek, which was commonly changed to *o*, but sometimes to *i*: and the latter is still found in *nulli*, *uni*, etc., see § 107, and in the adjective pronouns; as, *illi*, etc.

REMARK 1. Names of islands and countries are sometimes put in the genitive, like names of towns; as, *Ithacæ vivere*, To live in Ithaca. Cic. *Corcȳræ fuimus*. Id. *Cōnon plūrimū Cypri vixit*, Timōtheus Lesbī. Nep. *Quum Miltiades dōmum Chersōnēsī habuit*. Id. *Crētæ jussit considere Apollo*. Virg. *Rōmæ Nūmidæque faciēdra ejus mēmorat*. Sall.

REM. 2. (a.) Instead of the genitive, the ablative of names of towns of the first and second declension and singular number, is sometimes, though rarely, used; as, *Rex Tȳro dēcēdit*, The king dies at Tyre. Just. *Et Cōrintho et Athēnis et Lacēdæmōne nunciāta est victōria*. Id. *Pons quem ille Abȳdo fēcērat*. Id. *Hujus exemplar Rōmā nullum habemus*. Vitruv. *Non Lībyæ, non ante Tȳro*. Virg. For the explanation of this apparent anomaly, see the preceding note; in accordance with which it may be remarked, that the adverbs of place, *ubi*, *ibi*, *ibidem*, *alibi*, *alicubi*, *hic*, *illic*, *istic*, etc., appear from their form to be ancient datives.—(b.) When the noun is qualified by an adjective, it is put, not in the genitive, but in the ablative with *in*; as, *In ipsā Alexandriā*. Cic. And poetically without *in*, *Gēnus Longā nostrum dōminābitur Albā*. Virg.—(c.) When *urbs*, *oppidum*, *lōcus*, etc., follow the genitive of place as appositions, they are put in the ablative either with, or, more rarely, without, *in*; as, *Archias Antiōchiæ natus est, cēlebrī quondam urbe*. Cic. *Cīves Rōmānos Neāpōli*, in cēleberrimo oppido *sape vidimus*. Id. But when *in urbe*, etc., precede the name of a town, the latter also is put in the ablative; as, *In oppido Citio*. Nep.; and but very rarely in the genitive; as, *Cassius in oppido Antiōchiæ est*,—in the town of Antioch. Cic., where the genitive depends on *oppido*.

REM. 3. The genitives *dōmi*, *militiæ*, *belli*, and *hūmi*, are construed like names of towns; as,

*Tēnit se dōmi*, He staid at home. Cic. *Vir dōmi clārus*. Liv. *Spargit hūm rissos dextes*,—on the ground. Ovid. *Militiæ* and *belli* are thus used, especially when opposed to *dōmi*; as, *Una semper militiæ et dōmi fuimus*,—both at home and in the camp. Ter. So *Dōmi militiæque*. Cic. *Et dōmi et militiæ*. Id. *Militiæ dōmīque*. Liv. *Militiæ et dōmi*. Ter. *Belli dōmīque*, in war and in peace. Hor.

(1.) *Dōmi* is thus used with the possessives *meæ*, *tucæ*, *sucæ*, *nostræ*, *restræ*, and *aliēnæ*; as, *Dōmi nostræ vixit*, He lived at my house. Cic. *Apud eum sic fui tamquam meæ dōmi*. Id. *Sacrificium, quod aliēnæ dōmi fieret invisere*. Id. But with other adjectives, an ablative, generally with a preposition, is used; as, *In viduā dōmo*. Ovid. *Pāternā dōmo*. Id. Sometimes also with the possessives, as, *Mēi in dōmo*. Hor. *In dōmo suā*. Nep. So, instead of *hūmi*, 'upon the ground,

*hūmo* is sometimes used, with or without a preposition; as, *In hūmo ārēnōsd* Ovid. *Sēdēre hūmo nūdā*. Id.

(2.) When a genitive denoting the possessor follows, either *dōmi* or *in dōmo* is used; as, *Dēprēhensus dōmi Cēsāris*. Cic. *Dōmi illius fuisti*. Id. *In dōmo Cēsāris*. Id. *In dōmo ejus*. Nep.

(3.) The ablative *dōmo* for *dōmi* also occurs, but not in Cicero; as, *Ego id nunc expērior dōmo*. Plaut. *Dōmo se tēnēre*. Nep. *Dōmo abditus*. Suet. *Bello* for *belli* is found in Livy—*Dōmi bellōque*. So, also, *hūmo* for *hūmi*; *Strātus hūmo*. Stat. *Figit hūmo plantas*. Virg.: and *in hūmo lūmen figit*. Ovid.

(4.) *Terræ* is sometimes used like *hūmi*; as, *Sacra terræ cēlāvimus*. Liv. *Prōjectus terræ*. Virg. *Ignes terræ condit*. Luc. So, also, *ārēnæ*; *Truncum reliquit ārēnæ*. Virg.: and *viciniæ*; *Proximæ viciniæ habitat*. Plaut.

(5.) The genitive of names of towns, *dōmi*, *militiæ*, etc., is supposed by some to depend on a noun understood; as, *urbe*, *oppido*, *ædibus*, *sōlo*, *lōco*, *tempōre*, etc., but see a different explanation above in Note.

## GENITIVE AFTER PARTICLES.

II. Certain adverbs are followed by the genitive. See § 212, R. 4.

III. The genitive plural sometimes depends on the preposition *tēnus*; as,

*Cūmārum tēnus*, As far as Cumæ. Cœl. *Crūrūm tēnus*. Virg. *Lātērum tēnus*. Id. *Urbium Corcyræ tēnus*. Liv.—For the ablative after *tēnus*, and for the place of the preposition, see § 241, and R. 1.

## DATIVE.

§ 222. 1. The dative is the case of reference, as it denotes the object with reference to which the subject acts, or in reference to which it possesses any specified quality; or, in other words, the object *for* which, to the *benefit* or *loss* of which, any thing is or is done. Hence, in distinction from the dative of the *end* (§ 227) the dative of reference is called *dativus commōdi et incommōdi*, the dative of advantage and disadvantage; as,

*Scribo vōbis hunc librum*, I write this book *for* you. *Prōsum tibi*, or *Tibi utilis sum*, I am useful *to* you.

2. Hence the dative of advantage and disadvantage may be used (a) with adjectives and particles whose meaning is incomplete unless the object is mentioned in reference to which the quality exists. (b) With verbs both transitive and intransitive. If transitive they take an accusative of the nearer and a dative of the remoter object, if intransitive they take a dative only. (c) With certain verbs compounded with prepositions, after which the dative is used instead of the case which the preposition, if separate, would govern. (d) After a few verbal substantives derived from verbs which govern a dative.

## DATIVE AFTER ADJECTIVES.

3. A noun limiting the meaning of an adjective, is put in the dative, to denote the *object* to which the quality is directed; as,



*Utilis, agris*, Useful to the fields. Juv. *Jucundus amicis*, Agreeable to his friends. Mart. *Inimicus pietati*, unfriendly to rest. Id. *Charta inutilis scribendo*, Paper not useful for writing. Plin.

NOTE. The dative is commonly translated by the prepositions *to* or *for*; but sometimes by other prepositions, or without a preposition.

REMARK 1. Adjectives signifying *useful, pleasant, friendly, fit, like, inclined, ready, easy, clear, equal*, and their opposites, also those signifying *near*, many compounded with *con*, and verbals in *bilis*, are followed by the dative; as,

*Felix tuis*, Propitious to your friends. Virg. *Oratio, ingrata*, Gallis, A speech displeasing to the Gauls. Cæs. *Amicus tyrannidi*, Friendly to tyranny. Nep. *Labori inhabilis*, Unsuited to labor. Colum. *Patri similis*, Like his father. Cic. *Nihil tam est Lysiae diversum, quam Isocrates*. *Aptum Tempori*. Id. *Malo prorsus*. Sen. *Promptus seditioni*. Tac. *Cuivis facile est*. Ter. *Mihi certum est*. Cic. *Par fratri tuo*. Id. *Falsa veris finitima sunt*. Id. *Oculi concordes corpori*. Colum. *Multis bonis flebilis*. Hor. *Mors est terribilis iis, quorum*, etc. Cic.

(a.) The following are some of the adjectives included in Rem. 1, viz. *gratus, acceptus, dulcis, jucundus, latus, suavis; ingratus, insuavis, injucundus, molestus, gravis, acerbus, odiosus, tristis;—utilis, inutilis, bonus, saluber, salutaris, fructuosus, calamitosus, damnosus, funestus, noxius, pestifer, perniciosus, exitiosus:—amicus, benivolus, carus, familiaris, æquus, fidus, fidelis, propitius, secundus; inimicus, adversus, amulus, alienus, contrarius, infestus, infidus, iniquus, iratus;—aptus, accommodatus, appositus, habilis, idoneus, opportunus; ineptus, inhabilis, importunus, inconveniens;—æqualis, par, impar, dispar, similis, dissimilis, assimilis, discolor;—pronus, proclivis, propensus, promptus, paratus:—facilis, difficilis:—apertus, conspicuus, manifestus, perspicuus, obscurus, certus, compertus, notus, ambiguus, dubius, ignotus, incertus, insolitus;—vicinus, finitimus, confinis, contermimus, propior, proximus, cognatus, concolor, concors, congruus, consanguineus, consentaneus, consonus, conveniens, contiguus, continuus, continens*.

(b.) Many adjectives of other significations, including some compounds of *ob*, *sub*, and *super*, as *obnoxius, obvius, subjectus, supplex*, and *superstes*, are also followed by a dative of the object,

(c.) After verbals in *bilis*, the dative is usually rendered by the preposition *by*; as, *Tibi credibilis sermo*, A speech creditable to you, i. e. worthy to be believed by you. Ovid.

(d.) The expression *dicto audiens*, signifying obedient, is followed by the dative; as, *Syracusani nobis dicto audientes sunt*. Cic. *Audiens dicto fuit jussis magistratum*. Nep. In this phrase, *dicto* is dative limiting *audiens*, and the words *dicto audiens* seem to form a compound equivalent to *obediens*, and, like that, followed by a dative; thus, *Nec plebs nobis dicto audiens atque obediens est*. Liv. So *dicto obediens*; as, *Futura es dicto obediens, annon, patri?* Plaut.

REM. 2. (a.) The adjectives *æqualis, affinis, alienus, cognominis, communis, contrarius, fidei, insuetus, par, dispar, peculiāris, proprius, propinquus, sacer, similis, assimilis, consimilis, dissimilis, socius, vicinus, superstes, supplex*, and some others, instead of a dative of the object, are sometimes followed by a genitive; as, *Par hujus*, Equal to him. Lucan. *Proprium est oratoris ornate dicere*. Cic. But most of these words, when thus used, seem rather to be taken substantively; as, *Æqualis ejus*, His contemporary. Cic.

(b.) *Similis, assimilis, consimilis, dissimilis, par* and *dispar*, take the genitive, when an internal resemblance, or a resemblance in character or disposition, is to be expressed, and hence we always find *mei, tui, sui, nostri, vestri, similis*; as, *Plures reges Romuli quam Numæ similes*. Liv.

(c.) *Amicus, inimicus*, and *familiaris*, owing to their character as substantives, take a genitive even in the superlative; as, *Homo amicissimus nostrorum hominum*,—very friendly to our countrymen. Cic. On the other hand, *hostis*, though a substantive, is sometimes used like an adjective, being modified by

an adverb, and taking an object in the dative; as, *Expectantibus omnibus quisnam esset tam impius, tam dēmens, tam diis hominibusque hostis, qui*, etc. Cf. § 277, R. 1.

REM. 3. Some adjectives with the dative are followed by another case denoting a different relation; as, *Mens sibi conscia recti*, A mind conscious to itself of rectitude. Virg. See § 213, R. 7.

REM. 4. Many adjectives, instead of the dative of the object, are often followed by an accusative with a preposition.

(1.) Adjectives signifying useful, fit, and the opposite, take an accusative of the thing with *ad*, but only a dative of the person; as, *Homo ad nullam rem utilis*. Cic. *Locus aptus ad insidias*. Id.

(2.) Adjectives denoting motion or tendency, take an accusative with *ad* more frequently than a dative; as, *Piger ad pœnas, ad prœmia velox*, Ovid; *Ad aliquem morbum proclivior*, Cic.; *Ad omne facinus paratus*, Id.; *Pronus ad fidem*, Liv.;—sometimes with *in*; as, *Celer in pugnam*. Sil.

(3.) Many adjectives, signifying an affection of the mind, may have an accusative of the object with *in*, *erga*, or *adversus*, instead of the dative; as, *Fidelis in filios*. Just. *Mater acerba in suos partus*. Ovid. *Gratus erga me*. Cic. *Gratum adversus te*. Id. So *Dissimilis in dominum*. Tac.

(4.) Adjectives signifying like, equal, common, etc., when plural, are often followed by the accusative with *inter*; as, *Inter se similes*. Cic. *Hæc sunt inter eos communia*. Id. *Inter se diversi*. Id.

REM. 5. *Proxior* and *proximus*, instead of the dative, have sometimes, like their primitive *prope*, an accusative; as, *Quod vitium propius virtutem erat*. Sall. *P. Crassus proximus mare Oceânium hémârat*. Cæs. *Ager, qui proximus finem Mëgâlôpôlitânarum est*. Liv. Cf. § 238, 1.

REM. 6. (a.) Some adjectives, instead of the dative, have at times an ablative with a preposition. Thus, *par*, *communis*, *consentaneus*, *discors*, with *cum*; as, *Quem parem cum libëris fecisti*. Sall. *Consentaneum cum iis litëris* Cic. *Civitas secum discors*. Liv. So *alienus* and *diversus* with *a* or *ab*; as, *Alienus a me*, Ter.; *A ratione diversus*, Cic.; or without a preposition; as, *Alienum nostrâ amicitia*. Id.—(b.) *Frētus*, which regularly takes the ablative, is in Livy construed with the dative; as, *fortünæ frētus*; *nulli rei frētus*, etc. Cf. § 244.—(c.) The participial adjectives *junctus* and *conjunctus*, instead of the dative, take sometimes the ablative either with or without *cum*.

REM. 7. *Idem* is sometimes followed by the dative, chiefly in the poets; as *Jupiter omnibus idem*. Virg. *Invitum qui servat, idem facit occidenti*. Hor. In the first example, *omnibus* is a dative of the object; in the second, the dative follows *idem*, in imitation of the Greek construction with *αὐτός* and is equivalent to *quod occidens*, or *quod facit is, qui occidit*. *Similis* is construed in the same manner in Hor. Sat. 1, 3, 122. *Idem* is generally followed not by a case, but by *qui*, *ac*, *atque*, *ut*, *quasi*, or *quam*; sometimes by the preposition *cum*. Cf. § 207, R. 27, (d.) *Similis* and *par* are sometimes, like *idem*, followed by *ac* and *atque*.

REM. 8. Some verbal substantives are followed by the dative, when derived from verbs governing the dative; as, *Iustitia est obtemperatio scriptis legibus institutisque populorum*. Cic. *Traditio alicujus rei alteri*. Id. *Exprobratio cuiquam veteris fortunæ*. Liv.

NOTE. A dative of the object often follows *esse* and other verbs, in connection with a predicate nominative or accusative, but such dative is dependent, not on the noun, but on the verb. Cf. § 227, R. 4.



## DATIVE AFTER VERBS.

§ 223. A noun limiting the meaning of a verb, is put in the dative, to denote the *object to* or *for* which any thing is, or is done; as,

*Mea dōmua tibi pātet*, My house is open *to you*. Cic. *Pars optāre locum tecto*, A part choose a site *for a building*. Virg. *Tibi sēris, tibi mētis*, You sow *for yourself*, you reap *for yourself*. Plaut. *Licet nēmīni contra patriam dūcere exercitum*, It is not lawful *for any one* to lead an army against his country. Cic. *Hoc tibi prōmitto*, I promise *you* this. Id. *Ikeret latēri lētātis arundo*. Virg. *Surdo fabulam narras*. Hor. *Mihi responsum dedit*. Virg. *Sic vos non vōbis fertis arātra, boves*. Id. *Omnibus bonis expedit saluam esse rempūblicam*. Cic. *Aptat habendo ense*. Virg.

NOTE. The dative is thus used after all verbs, whether transitive or intransitive, personal or impersonal, and in both voices, provided their signification admits a reference to a remoter object, for whom or to whose benefit or injury any thing is done. In the passive voice, from their nature, neuter verbs can only be so construed impersonally. Cf. § 142, 1, and § 222, 2.

REMARK 1. The dative after many verbs is rendered not by *to* or *for*, but by other prepositions, or without a preposition. Many intransitive Latin verbs are translated into English by verbs transitive, and the dative after them is usually rendered like the object of a transitive verb.—Most verbs after which the signs *to* and *for* are not used with the dative, are enumerated in this and the following sections.

REM. 2. Many verbs signifying to favor, please, trust, assist, and their contraries, also to command, obey, serve, resist, threaten, and be angry, take a dative of the object.

NOTE. The neuter verbs comprehended in this rule generally express in the verbal form the meaning of those adjectives, which are followed by the dative, (cf. § 222, R. 1.) Thus, (a.) *Illa tibi fāvet*, She favors *you*, or is favorable *to you*. Ovid. *Mihi placēbat Pompōnius, minime displicēbat*. Cic. *Qui sibi fidit*. Hor. *Non licet sui commōdi causā nocēre altēri*. Cic. *Non invīdētur illi aetati sed etiam fāvētur*. Id. *Despērat salūti suae*. Id. *Nēque mihi vestra decet ēta auxiliāntur*. Sall. *Impērat aut servit collecta pecūnia cuique*. Hor. *Obēdire et pārere vōluntāti*. Cic. *Quōniam factiōni inimicōrum rēsistere nēquiverit*. Sall. *Mihi minābātur*. Cic. *Irasci inimicis*. Cæs.

(b.) So *Adūlor*, assentior, blandior, commōdo, fāveo, grātificor, grātor, grātūlor, and its verbal grātūlābundus, ignosco, indulgeo, lēnōcīnor, palpor, parco, plando, respondeo, stūdeo, suppārāsitor; amūlor, incommōdo, invīdeo, nōceo, obsum, officio;—arrīdeo, vlāceo; displiceo;—crēdo, fido, confīdo; despēro, diffīdo;—admīnīcūlor, auxiliōr, mēdicor, mēdicor, opitūlor, patrōcīnor, prōsum, subveniō, succurro; dēsum, insīdiōr;—impēro, mando, mōdēror, prēcīpio, tempēro; ausculto, morīgēror, obēdio, obsēcundo, obsēquor, obtempēro, pāreo, dicto audiens sum;—ancillor, famūlor, ministro, servīc, inservio, prāstōlor;—adversor, refrāgor, obsto, obrecto, rēluctor, rēnūtor, rēpugno, rēvīsto, and, chiefly in the poets, bello, certo, luctor, pugno;—mīnor, commūnor, intervīnor;—irascor, succenseo, stōmāchor.—To these may be added *aquo, ulaq̄uo, convīcior, dēgēnēro, excello, nūbo, suppēdīto, prāvārīcor, rēcīpio* (to promise), rēnūncio, suādeo, persuādeo, dissuādeo, supplīco, vāco, vīdeor, and sometimes misceo and lāteo;—also the impersonals *accidit, convēnit, condūcit, contingit, dēcet, dōlet, expedit, licet, libet, or libet, liquet, placet*, etc.—(c.) Intransitive verbs governing a dative are often used impersonally in the passive with the same case; as, *mīhi invidētur*, I am envied. *Mīhi mūdī ētur*, I am reviled. *Mīhi parcitur*, I am spared. Hor. *Hoc persuādētur mīhi*, I am persuaded of this.

(1.) (a.) Many of the above verbs, which, as intransitive, take the dative sometimes become transitive and are followed by an accusative; as, *adūlor, ausculto, blandior, dēgēnēro, despēro, indulgeo, lāteo, mēdeor, mēdicor, mōdēror, obrecto, prāstōlor, prōvideo*, etc.; as, *Adulāri aliquem*. Cic. *Hanc cāre dēgēnēres*. Ovid. *Indulgeo me*. Ter. *Hujus adventum prāstōlans*. Cæs. *Prōvidēre rem frūmentāriam*. Id.—Sometimes also by a preposition and the ablative or accusative; as, *A Stōicis dēgēnērārīt Pāvētius*. Cic. *De rēpūblicā despērāre*. Id. *Obrectārunt inter se*. Nep.—or by a dependent clause; as, *Quæ despērai tractāta nītescere posse, rēlinquit*. Hor.



(b.) Others, as transitive verbs, have, with the dative, an accusative, expressed or understood; as, *impéro, mando, ministro, minor, comminor, interminor præcipio, recipio, renuncio*, etc.; as, *Equites imperat civitatibus*; where *cogendos* is perhaps to be supplied, He enjoins upon the states the providing of cavalry. Cæs. See § 274, R. 5. *Ministrare victum alicui*. Varr. *Deflagrationem urbi et Italiae toti minabatur*. Cic.

(c.) *Æquo* and *adæquo* are construed with the accusative and either the dative or *cum* with the ablative.—*Invideo* takes either a single dative of the person or thing, a dative of the person and an accusative of the thing; as, *Honorem mihi invident*. Hor.; or, when *invidere* is used in the sense of *privare*, a dative of the person and an ablative of the thing; as, *Non inviderunt laude sua mulieribus*. Liv. In Horace, by a Greek construction, the genitive is once used instead of the accusative or ablative of the thing; as, *Næque ille sèpòsiti ciceris nec longæ invidet ævæ*.

(d.) *Cedo*, used transitively, takes a dative of the person and an accusative of the thing; but sometimes the thing is expressed by the ablative; as, *cedere alicui possessione hortorum*. So, also, *concedo tibi locum*, or *concedo tibi loco*.

(2.) Many verbs which, from their significations, might be included in the above classes, are, as transitive verbs, only followed by an accusative; as, *delecto, jûvo, adjûvo, adjûto, lædo, offendo*, etc.—*Jûbeo* is followed by the accusative with an infinitive, and sometimes by the accusative alone, or the dative with the infinitive or subjunctive; as, *Jûbeo te bene sperare*. Cic. *Lex jûbet ea quæ facienda sunt*. Id. *Ubi Britannico jussit exurgere*. Tac. *Quibus jussérat, ut instantibus resistèrent*. Id.—*Fido* and *confido* are often followed by the ablative, with or without a preposition; as, *Fidere cursu*. Ovid. Cf. § 245

§ 224. Many verbs compounded with these eleven prepositions, *ad, antè, cõn, in, intèr, õb, post, præ, prõ, sũb, and sũpèr*, are followed by the dative; as,

*Annuæ cœptis*, Be favorable to our undertakings. Virg. *Rõmãnis æquitibus literæ affèruntur*, Letters are brought to the Roman knights. Cic. *Antècellere omnibus*, To excel all. Id. *Antetulit iræ religionem*. Nep. *Audetque viris concurrere virgo*. Virg. *Exercitum exercitui, dũces dũcibus comparare*. Liv. *Imminet his ær*. Ovid. *Pecori signum impressit*. Virg. *Nox prælio intervénit*. Liv. *Interdixit histriõibus scenam*. Suet. *Meis commõdis officis et obstat*. Cic. *Cum se hostium telis objecissent*. Id. *Posthabui mea seriã ludo*. Virg. *Certãmini præsedat*. Suet. *Hibernis Labicnum præposuit*. Cæs. *Gẽnibus procumbere*. Ovid. *Miseris succurrere disco*. Virg. *Iis subsidia submittēbat*. Cæs. *Timidis supervénit Ægle*. Virg.

NOTE 1. This rule implies that the compound retains the meaning of the preposition; and the dative following such compound is then used instead of the case governed by the preposition. When such compounds are transitive they have with the dative an accusative also, like other transitive verbs.

1. *Accedo, accresco, accumbo, acquiesco, adæquito, adhæreo, adjaceo, adno, adnato, adsto, adstipulor, adsum, adversor, affulgeo, allabor, alludo, annuo, appareo, applaudo, appropinquo, arrepo, arrideo, aspiro, assenior, assideo, assiso, assuesco, assurgo* :—*addo, adhabeo, adjicio, adjungo, adnoveo, adverto, advevo, affero, affigo, alligo, applico, applico, aspergo*.

2. *Antecedo, antecello, anteo, antesto, antevénio, anteverto*;—*antefero, antehabeo, antepono*.

3. *Cohæreo, colludo, concino, congruo, consentio, consõno, consuesco, convivo, and chiefly in the poets, coeo, concumbo, concurro, contendo*;—*conflo, conjungo, comparo, compõno*.

4. *Incido, incubo, incumbo, indormio, ingemisco, inhæreo, inhio, innascor, innitor, insideo, insisto, insto, insudo, insulto, invado, invigilo, iuacrimo, illudo, immineo, innotior, immoror, impendeo, insum*;—*immisceo, imperio, impõno, imprimo, incido, includo, induo, infero, ingero, injicio, insero, inspergo, insuesco, inuro*.

5. *Intercedo, intercedo, intercludo, interjaceo, intermisco intersum intervénio*;—*interficio, interjicio, interpono*.

6. *Obambūlo, oborro, obdēquito, obluctor, obmurmūro, obrēpo, obsto, obsisto, obstrēpo obsum, obtracto, obvēnio, obversor, occumbo, occurro, occurso, officio;—obdūco, obficio offēro, offundo, oppōno.*

7. *Pesifēro, posthābeo, postpōno, postpūto, postscribo.*

8. *Præcēdo, præcurro, præeo, prælūceo, præmīneo, prænūleo, præsideo, præsum, prævāleo, prævertor;—præfēro, præficio, præpōno.*

9. *Prōcumbo, prōficio, prōpugno, prospicio, prōvideo.*

10. *Succēdo, succresco, succumbo, succurro, sufficio, suffragor, sūbōleo, subjāces, subrēno subsum, subvēnio;—subdo, subicio, subjūgo, submitto, suppōno, substerno.*

11. *Sūpercurro, sūpersto, sūpersum, sūpervēnio, sūpervivo.*

NOTE 2. In some verbs compounded with prepositions the meaning of the preposition is lost. Such compounds are either not followed by a dative, or the case depends, not on the preposition, but on the signification of the verb, according to § 223.

REMARK 1. (a.) Some verbs, compounded with *ab, dē, ex, circum,* and *contrā,* are occasionally followed by the dative; as, *absum, dēsum, dēlabor, despēro, excido, circumdo, circumfundo, circumjāceo, circumjicio, contrādico, contrāeo;* as, *Serta cāpiti dēlapsa,* The garlands having fallen from his head. Virg. *Numquid nūmmi excidērunt tibi?* Plaut. *Tigris urbi circumfunditur.* Plin. *Sibi despērans.* Cæs.—(b.) *Circumdo* and *circumfundo* take either an accusative of the thing with a dative of the person, or an ablative of the thing with an accusative of the person; as, *circumdo ālicui custōdias,* or *circumdo āliquem custōdiis.* *Aspergo, inaspergo, dōno, impertio, exuo, and induo,* are construed in the same manner. Cf. § 251, R. 2.

REM. 2. Some verbs of repelling and taking away (most of which are compounds of *ab, dē,* or *ex*), are sometimes followed by the dative, though more commonly by the ablative; as, *abigo, abrogo, abscindo, aufēro, adimo, arceo, dēfendo, dēmo, dēpello, dērogo, dētrāho, ēripio, ēruo, excutio, eximo, extorqueo, extrāho, exuo, prohibeo, surripio.* Thus, *Nec mihi te ēripient,* Nor shall they take you from me. Ovid. *Solstitium pēcōri dēfendite.* Virg. *Hunc arcēbis pēcōri.* Id. So rarely *abrumpo, āliēno, fūror,* and *rāpio.*

REM. 3. Some verbs of differing (compounds of *dī* or *dis*) likewise occur with the dative, instead of the ablative with the preposition *ab,* or poetically with the ablative alone; as, *diffēro, discrepo, discordo, dissentio, dissideo, disto;* as, *Quantum simplex hilārisque nēpōti discrepet, et quantum discordet, parcus āvāro.* Hor. *Distābit infido scurræ āmicus.* Hor. *Græcis Tuscānicæ stātuae diffērunt.* Quint. *Cōmædia differt sermōni.* Hor. So likewise *misceo;* as, *Mista inōdestiæ grāvitas.* Cic.

REM. 4. Many verbs compounded with prepositions, especially with *ad, con,* and *in,* instead of the dative, either constantly or occasionally take the case of the preposition, which is frequently repeated. Sometimes, also, a preposition of similar signification is used; as, *Ad primam vōcem timidas aduertitis aures.* Ovid. *Nemo eum antecessit.* Nep. *Saxa rides solā coālescere calce.* Lucr. *Infērunt omnia in ignem.* Cæs. *Silex incumbēbat ad amnem.* Virg. *Innixus inōdērāmine nāvīs.* Ovid. *In Pansam frātre innixus.* Plin. *Conferite hamū pācem cum illo bello.* Cic. In this substitution of one preposition for another, *ad* is used for *in,* and *in* for *ad;* *ab* for *ex;* *ad, antē, contrā,* and *in,* for *ab;* *ad* and *ante,* for *prō.*

REM. 5. Neuter verbs of motion or of rest in a place, when compounded with the prepositions, *ad, antē, con, in,* etc., either take the dative, or, acquiring an active signification, are followed by the accusative; as, *Helvetiū reliquos Gallos virtūte præcēdunt,* The Helvetii surpass the other Gauls in valor. Cæs. *Uterque, Isocrātem ætate præcurrit.* Cic. So *præeo, præsto, præverto, præcello.* See § 233, (3.)

§ 225. I. Verbs compounded with *sūis, bēne,* and *māle,* are followed by the dative; as,



*Et nātūræ et lēgibus sātisfēcit*, He satisfied both nature and the laws. Cic. *Tibi dī bēnēfāciunt omnes*, May all the gods bless you. Plaut. But also, *Amīcum erga bēne fēcī*. Id. *Mālēdicit utrīque*. Hor. So *sātisdo*, *bēnēdico*, *mālēfācio*.

NOTE. These compounds are often written separately; and the dative always depends not on *sātis*, *bēne*, and *māle*, but on the simple verb. So, also, *bēne* and *māle* *alicui* *vōlo*; as, *Tibi bēne ex ānimo vōlo*. Ter. *Illi ego ex omnibus optime vōlo*. Plaut. *Non sibi māle vult*. Petron. In like manner *valēre dīco*, and *vale dīco*; as, *Augustus discēdens (e cūriā) sēdentibus singulis valēre dīcēbat*. Suet. *Tibi valēdīvēre non licet grātis* Sen.—In late writers *bēnēdico* and *mālēdico* sometimes take the accusative.

II. Verbs in the passive voice are sometimes followed by a dative of the agent, chiefly in the poets and the later prose writers; as, *Quidquid in hac causā mihi susceptum est*. Cic. *Nēque cernitur ulli*, Nor is he seen by any one. Virg. *Nulla tuarum ausita mihi nēque visa sororum*. Id. *Barbārus hic ego sum, quia non intelligor ulli*. Ovid. But the agent after passives is usually in the ablative with *a* or *ab*. See § 248, I.

III. The participle in *dus* is followed by a dative of the agent; as,

*Unda omnibus enāviganda*, The wave over which (we) all must pass. Hor. *Nōbis, cum sēmel occidit brēvis lux, Nox est perpētua ūna dormiēda*. Catull. *Adhibenda est nōbis diligētia*, We must use diligence. Cic. *Vestigia summōrum hōminum sibi tēnda esse dicit*. Id. *Si vis me flēre, dōlendum est primum ipsi tibi*. Hor. *Fāciendum mihi pūtāvi, ut respondērem*. Id.

REMARK 1. The dative is sometimes wanting when the agent is indefinite; as, *Orandum est, ut sit mens sāna in corpore sāno*. Juv. *Hic vincendum aut moriendum, milites, est*. Liv. In such examples, *tibi*, *vōbis*, *nōbis*, *hōminibus*, etc., may be supplied. Cf. § 141, R. 2.

REM. 2. The participle in *dus* sometimes, though rarely, has, instead of the dative of the agent, an ablative with *ā* or *ab*; as, *Non eos in deōrum immortalium nūmēro vērērandos a vōbis et cōlendos pūtātos?* Cic. *Hæc a me in dicendo prætereunda non sunt*. Id.—The dative after participles in *dus* is by some referred to § 226.

IV. Verbs signifying motion or tendency are followed by an accusative with *ad* or *in*; as,

*Ad templum Palladis ibant*. Virg. *Ad prætorem hōminem traxit*. Cic. *Vergit ad septemtriōnes*. Cæs. *In conspectum vēnīre*. Nep.

So *curro*, *dūco*, *fēro*, *festīno*, *fūgio*, *inclino*, *lēgo*, *mitto*, *pergo*, *porto*, *præcipito*, *prōpēro*, *tendo*, *tollo*, *vādo*, *verto*.

REMARK 1. So likewise verbs of calling, exciting, etc.; as, *Eurum ad se vōcat*. Virg. *Prōvōcasce ad pugnam*. Cic. So *ānimo*, *hortor*, *incito*, *invito*, *lūcesso*, *stimulo*, *suscito*; to which may be added *attineo*, *conformo*, *pertineo*, and *specto*.

REM. 2. But the dative is sometimes used after these verbs; as, *Clāmor in cœlo*. Virg. *Dum tibi litēre meæ vēniant*. Cic. *Grēgem vīridi compellere hībisco*. Virg. *Sēdibus hunc rēfer ante suis*. Id. After *vēnio* both constructions are used at the same time; as, *Vēnit mihi in mentem*. Cic. *Vēnit mihi in suspiciōnem*. Nep. *Eum vēnisse Germānis in amicitiam cognōcērat*. Cæs. *Prōpinquo* (to approach) takes the dative only.

REM. 3. Sometimes also verbs signifying motion are followed by an accusative of place without a preposition, a supine in *um*, an infinitive, or an adverb of place; as, *Rōmam prōfectus est*. *Ite dōmum*. *Rus ibum*. *Lāvīnia vēnit histōra*. Virg. *Nēque ego te dērisum vēnio*. Plaut. *Non nos Libyos pōpūlāre pēnātes vēnimus*. Virg. *Huc vēnit*. Plaut. See §§ 237, 276, II. 271, N. 2.

REM. 4. After *do*, *scribo*, or *mitto litēras*, the person for whom they are written or to whom they are sent, is put either in the dative or in the accusative with *ad*; as, *Ex eo loco tibi litēras ante dēdēramus*. Cic. *Vulturcius litēras sibi*



ad Catilinam dātas esse, dicēbat. Id. Cæsar scribit Labiēno cum, etc. Cæs. Ad me Cūrius de te scripsit. Cic. But to give one a letter to deliver is also expressed by *dāre lītēras alicui*, and also the delivery of the letter by the bearer.

§ 226. *Est* is followed by a dative denoting a *possessor*;—the thing possessed being the subject of the verb.

*Est* thus used may generally be translated by the verb *to have* with the dative as its subject; as, *Est mihi dōmī pāter*, I have a father at home. Virg. *Sunt nobis mītia pōma*, We have mellow apples. Id. *Grātiā nobis opus est tui*, We have need of your favor. Cic. *Innocētiæ plus pēriculī quam hōnōris est*. Sall. *An nescis longas rēgibus esse mānus?* Ovid. So with an infinitive as the subject, *Nec tibi sit dāros acuisse in pēlia dentes*. Tib. 4, 3, 3. The first and second persons of *sum* are not thus construed.

REMARK 1. Hence *mihi est nōmen* signifies, I have the name, my name is, or I am called. The proper name is put either in the nominative, the dative, or the genitive. See § 204, R. 8. So also *cognōmen*, *cognōmentum*, and, in Tacitus *vōcābūlum*, *est mihi*.—Sometimes, also, a possessive adjective agreeing with *nōmen*, etc., supplies the place of the proper name; as, *Est mihi nōmen Tarquīnium*. Gell. *Mercūriāle impōsuere mihi cognōmen*. Hor.

REM. 2. The dative is used with a similar signification after *fōre*, *suppētīt*, *ābest*, *deest*, and *dēfīt*; as, *Pauper enim non est, cui rērum suppētīt ūsus*. Hor. *Si mihi cauda fōret, cercopithēcus eram*. Mart. *Dēfuit ars vobis*. Ovid. *Non dēfōre Arsacidis virtutem*. Tac. *Lac mihi non dēfīt*. Virg. *Hoc unum illi abfuit*. Cic.

REM. 3. With the dative of the person after *est* Sallust and Tacitus sometimes join, by a Greek idiom, *vōlens*, *cūpiens*, and *invītus*; as, *Quia nēque plēbi militiā vōlenti (esse) pātābātur*, Because the common people were not thought to like the war. Sall. *Ut quibusque bellum invītis aut cūpientibus erat*, According as each liked or disliked the war. Tac.

#### DATIVE OF THE END OR PURPOSE.

§ 227. *Sum*, and several other verbs, are followed by two datives, one of which denotes the *object to which*, the other the *end for which*, any thing is, or is done; as,

*Mihi maxīmæ est cūræ*, It is a very great care to me. Cic. *Spēro nobis hanc conjunctiōnem vōluptātī fōre*, I hope this union will afford us pleasure. Id. *Mātri puellam dōno dedit*. Ter. *Fābio laudi dātum est*. Cic. *Vitio id tibi vertunt*. Plaut. *Id tibi hōnōri habētur*. Cic. *Mātūravit collēgæ vēnīre auxilio*. Liv. *Cui bōno fuit?* To whom was it an advantage? Cic.

REMARK 1. The verbs after which two datives occur, are *sum*, *fōre*, *fō*, *do*, *dōno*, *dūco*, *habeo*, *rēlinquo*, *tribuo*, *verto*; also *curro*, *eo*, *mitto*, *prōficiā*, *vēnio*, *appōno*, *asigno*, *cēdo*, *comparo*, *pateo*, *suppēdīto*, *ēmo*, and some others.

REM. 2. The dative of the *end* or *purpose* is often used after these verbs, without the dative of the object; as,

*Exemplo est formīca*, The ant is (serves for) an example. Hor. *Absentium lōna divīni facere*. Liv. *Reliquit pignōri pūāmīna*. Plaut. *Que esui et potui*. Gell. *Esse dērisui*, To be a subject of ridicule. Tac. *Rēceptui cādere*, To sound a retreat. Cæs. *Aliquid dōti dicare*, To set out as dowry. Cic.

REM. 3. (a.) The verb *sum*, with a dative of the end, may be variously rendered; as by the words *brings*, *affords*, *serves*, *does*, etc. The sign *for* is often omitted with this dative, especially after *sum*. Instead of it, *as*, or some other particle, may at times be used: as,

*Ignāvia erit tibi magno dēdēcōri*, Cowardice will bring great disgrace to you. Cic. *Hæc res est argūmento*, This thing is an argument, or serves as an argument. Id. *Hæc vitio mihi dant*, This they set down as a fault in me. *Universos cūræ habuit*. Suet. *Una res erat magno usui*. ... was of great use. Lucil. *Quod tibi magnōpēre cordi est, mihi rēhēmenter displicet*, What is a great pleasure, an object of peculiar interest to you, etc. Id.

(b.) Sometimes the words *fit*, *able*, *ready*, etc., must be supplied, especially before a gerund or a gerundive; as, *Quum solvendo civitates non essent*, ... not able to pay. Cic. *Divites, qui onēri fērendo essent*. Liv. *Quæ restinguendo igni fōrent*. Liv. *Rādix ejus est vescendo*. Plin.

REM. 4. Instead of the dative of the end, a predicate nominative or accusative is sometimes used; as, *Nātūrā tu illi pāter es*, By nature you are his father. *Amor est exitium pēcōri*: or the purpose is expressed by the accusative with *ad* or *in*; as, *Alicui cōmes est ad bellum*. Cic. *Se Rēmis in clientēlarū dicābant*. Cæs.: or by the ablative with *pro*; as, *Innocentia pro mālivolentiā dūci cōpit*. Sall. *Alicubus sunt arbōres pro cūbilibus*. Cæs.

REM. 5. Instead, also, of the dative of the end or purpose, *quo?* to what end? for what purpose? why? sometimes occurs, with an accusative, which generally depends on a verb understood, or with an infinitive or a clause; as, *Quo mihi fortunam, si non concēditur ūti?* Hor. *Quo tibi, Pasiphaæ, prētiōsas sūmere vestes?* Ovid.

REM. 6. After *do* and other similar active verbs an accusative of the purpose is found in apposition; as, *Lātini cōrōnam auream Jōvi dōnum in Cāpitōlium mittunt*. Liv. *Alicui cōmitem esse dātum*. Cic. Cf. § 204, R. 1; and § 230, R. 2.

NOTE. The dative, instead of the accusative, is sometimes used after the infinitive, when a dative precedes, and the subject of the infinitive is omitted as, *Vobis nēcesse est fortibus esse viris*. Liv. *Maximo tibi et civi et dūci evādere contigit*. Val. Max. See §§ 205, R. 6, and 239, R. 1.

## DATIVE AFTER PARTICLES.

§ 228. Some particles are followed by the dative of the object; as,

1. Some adverbs derived from adjectives; as,

*Prōpius Tibēri quam Thermōpylis*. Nep. *Proxime castris*, Very near to the camp. Cæs. *Prōpius stābulis armenta tēnērent*. Virg. *Congruenter nātūræ, convēienterque vivēre*, Agreeably to nature. Cic. *Epīcūrus quam sibi constanter convēienterque dicat, non libōrat*. Id. *Nēmīni nimiam bene est*. Afran. *Mihi numquam in vitā fuit melius*. Hor. *Vivēre vitæ hōmīnum amice*. Cic. *Bene mihi, bene vobis*. Plaut. *So, Mihi obviam vēnistī*. Cic. *In certāmīna sacro comminus ire viro*. Sil. *Quæstōres prōvinciæ mihi præsto fuērunt*. Cic. *Sāmos es: exadversum Milēto*. App.

REMARK. *Prōpius* and *proxime*, like their primitive *prōpe*, are sometimes construed with *a* and the ablative; as, *Prōpe a meis aedibus*. Cic. *Stellæ errantes prōpius a terris*. Id. *A Surā proxime est Philiscum, oppidum Parthōrum*. Plin.

2. Certain prepositions, especially in comic writers; as, *Mihi clam est*, It is unknown to me. Plaut. *Contra nobis*. Id. But in such instances they seem rather to be used like adjectives.

3. Certain interjections; as, *Hæi mihi!* Ah me! Virg. *Væ mihi!* Wo is me. Ter. *Væ victis esse!* Liv. *Væ misero mihi*. Plaut. *Hem tibi*. Id. *Ecce tibi*. Cic.

NOTE. (a.) The dative of the substantive pronouns seems sometimes nearly redundant, but it always conveys the expression of a lively feeling, and is therefore termed *dātivus ethicus*; as,

*Fur mihi es, ...* in my opinion. Plaut. *An ille mihi liber, cui mulier imperat?* Cic. *Tongilium mihi eduxit.* Id. *Ubi nunc nobis deus ille magister?* Virg. *Ecce tibi Sebosus!* Cic. *Hem tibi talentum argenti! Philippicum est.* Plaut. *Sibi* is sometimes subjoined quite pleonastically to *suis*; as, *Suo sibi gladio hunc jugulo.* Plaut. *Ignorans suo sibi servit patri.* Id. *Sibi suo tempore.*

(b.) The following phrases also occur with *volo* and a reflexive pronoun: *quid tibi vis?* what do you want? *quid sibi iste vult?* what does he want? *quid vult sibi hæc oratio?* what does this speech mean? *quid hæc sibi dona volunt?* what is the meaning of these presents? or, what is their object?

## ACCUSATIVE.

### ACCUSATIVE AFTER VERBS.

§ 229. The object of a transitive verb is put in the accusative; as,

*Lēgātos mittunt,* They send ambassadors. Cæs. *Animus movet corpus,* The mind moves the body. Cic. *Da veniam hanc,* Grant this favor. Ter. *Eum imitāti sunt,* They imitated him. Cic. *Pisces Sýri vénérentur.* Id.

REMARK 1. A transitive verb, with the accusative, often takes a genitive, dative, or ablative, to express some additional relation; as,

*Te convinco amentię,* I convict you of madness. Cic. *Da locum meliōribus,* Give place to your betters. Ter. *Solvit se Teucria luctu,* Troy frees herself from grief. Virg. See those cases respectively.

REM. 2. Such is the difference of idiom between the Latin and English languages, that many verbs considered transitive in one, are used as intransitive in the other. Hence, in translating transitive Latin verbs, a preposition must often be supplied in English; as, *Ut me caveret,* That he should beware of me. Cic. On the other hand, many verbs, which in Latin are intransitive, and do not take an accusative, are rendered into English by transitive verbs; as, *Ille mihi favet,* He favors me: and many verbs originally intransitive acquire a transitive signification.

REM. 3. The verb is sometimes omitted:—

1. To avoid its repetition; as, *Eventum senātus, quem (scil. dare) vidēbitur, dabit.* Liv.

2. The interrogative interjection *quid?* what? depends on *ais* or *censes*. So also *quid vērō?* *quid igitur?* *quid ergo?* *quid enim?* which are always followed by another question, and both questions may be united into one proposition, the first serving merely to introduce the interrogation. With *quid postea?* *quid tum?* supply *sequitur*. With *quid quod*, occurring in transitions, *dicam de eo* is omitted, but it may be rendered ‘nay,’ ‘nay even,’ ‘but now,’ ‘moreover,’ etc., without an interrogation.—*Dicam* is also to be supplied with *quid multa?* *quid plūra?* *ne multa;* *ne multis;* *ne plūra*. The infinitive *dicere* is also sometimes omitted; as, *Nimis multa videor de me.* Cic. *Perge reliqua.* Id.

REM. 4. The accusative is often omitted:—

1. When it is a reflexive pronoun; as, *Nox præcipitat, scil. se.* Virg. *Tum trōra avertit.* Id. *Eo lavatum, scil. me.* Hor.

The reflexives are usually wanting after *aboleo*, *abstineo*, *accingo*, *adæquo*, *æquo*, *agglōmēro*, *augeo*, *cēlēro*, *congēmino*, *continuo*, *dēclino*, *dēcōquo*, *dēsino*, *diffēro*, *dūro*, *erumpo*, *flēcto*, *dēflēcto*, *facesso*, *incipio*, *inclino*, *insinuo*, *irrumpo*, *jungo*, *lavo*, *laxo*, *lenio*, *māliūro*, *mollio*, *mōvco*, *mūto*, *pōno*, *præcipio*, *prorumpo*, *quatio*, *rēmitto*, *retracto*, *rēdo*, *sisto*, *stabulo*, *suppedito*, *tardo*, *tēneo*, *tendo*, *trājicio*, *transmitto*, *turbo*, *vario*, *vergo*, *verto*, *dēverto*, *rēverto*, *vestio*, *vibro*; and more rarely after many others.

2. When it is something indefinite has been previously expressed in a case, or is easily supplied; as, *Ego, ad quos scribam, nescio, scil. lītēras.* Cic. *De quo et tecum ēgi diligenter, et scripsi ad te.* Id. *Bēne fēcit Silius.* Id. *Ducit in hostem, scil. exercitum.* L. v.



REM. 5. An infinitive, or one or more substantive clauses, may supply the place of the accusative after an active verb; as,

*Da mihi fallere.* Hor. *Reddes dulces loqui, reddes ridere decurum.* Id. *Cūpiam* me esse clementem. Cic. *Athēnienses statuērunt* ut naves conscenderent. Id. *Vereor* ne a doctis reprehendar. Id. *Ence, Bacche, sonat.* Ovid. Sometimes both constructions are united; as, *Di iram miserantur inānem ambōrum, et tantos mortālibus esse labōres.* Virg.—Respecting the infinitive with and without a subject-accusative after an active verb, see § 270–273; and for the substantive after such verbs, see § 273.

(a.) In such constructions, the *subject* of the dependent clause is sometimes put in the accusative as the *object* of the leading verb; as, *Nosti Marcellum, quam tardus sit,* for *Nosti quam tardus sit Marcellus.* Cic. *Illum, ut vivat, optant.* Ter. *At te ego faciam, ut minus valeas.* Plaut.

(b.) An ablative with *de* may also supply the place of the accusative, by the ellipsis of some general word denoting *things, facts, etc.*, modified by such ablative; as, *De rēpublicā vestrā paucis accipe.* Sall. Compare a similar omission of a *subject* modified by *de* and the ablative, § 209, R. 3, (2.)

REM. 6. The impersonal verbs of feeling, *miseret, pœnitet, pudet, tædet, piget, miserescit, miseretur, and pertæsum est*, are followed by an accusative of the person exercising the feeling, and a genitive of the object in respect to which it is exercised. Cf. § 215, (1.); as,

*Eōrum nos miseret,* We pity them. Cic. The impersonal *Veritum est* also occurs with such an accusative; *Quos non est veritum pōnere,* etc. Cic.

REM. 7. *Jurat, delectat, fallit, fugit, præterit, and decet*, with their compounds, take an accusative of the person; as,

*Te hilari animo esse valde me jurat,* That you are in good spirits greatly delights me. Cic. *Fugit me ad te scribere.* Cic. *Illud alterum quam sit difficile, te non fugit.* Id. *Nec vero Cæsarem fefellerit.* Cæs. *Facis, ut te decet.* Ter. So also when used personally; as, *Parvum parva decet.* Hor.; but *decet* often takes the accusative of the person with the infinitive; as, *Hunc maculam nos decet effugere.* Ter.; and in comic writers a dative; as, *Vobis decet.* Ter.

For *mea, tua, sua, nostra, vestra*, after *refert* and *interest*, see § 219, R. 1: and for the accusative by attraction, instead of the nominative, see § 206, (6,) (b.)

§ 230. Verbs signifying to name or call; to choose, render or constitute; to esteem or reckon, which in the passive voice have two nominatives, are followed in the active voice by two accusatives, one of the *object* and the other of the *predicate*. Cf. § 210, R. 3, (3.); as,

*Urbem ex Antiōchī patris nōmine Antiōchiā vocāvit,* He called the city Antiōch, etc. Just. *Ludos facis me,* You make game of me. Plaut. *Me consulem fecistis.* Cic. *Iram bene Eumius initium dixit insanie.* Id. *Ancum Marcium regem populus creavit.* Liv. *Sulpicium accusatorem suum numerabat, non competitorum.* Cic. *Quam vos testes habeam.* Nep.

NOTE 1. The following are among the verbs included in this rule, viz. *appello, dico, nōmīno, nuncipo, perhibeo, saluto, scribo* and *inscribo, vōco*; *capio, constituo, creō, delecto, designo, dico, eligo, facio, efficio, instituo, lægo, prælo, reddo, renuncio, dāco, dignor, existimo, habeo, iudico, nūmero, puto, reperto, intelligo, invero, se prætere or præstare, etc*

NOTE 2. An ablative with *ex* occurs, though rarely, instead of the accusative of the object; as, *Fortuna me, qui liber fuëram, servum fecit, e summo infimum.* Plaut. Cf. *Qui recta præva faciunt.* Ter.

NOTE 3. An infinitive may supply the place of the objective accusative; as *si simulasse vocat crimen.* Ovid.:—and sometimes of the predicate accusative

also; as, *Si rēpērire vōcas āmittēre certius; aut si scīre ūbi sit rēpērire vōcas.* Id. So also an adjective may supply the place of the predicate accusative; as *Præbuit se dignum suis mājōribus.* Cic. *Cæsārem certiorē faciunt.* Cæs.

REMARK 1. After verbs signifying to esteem or reckon, one of the accusatives is often the subject, and the other the predicate, of *esse* expressed or understood; as,

*Eum āvārum possūmus existimāre.* Cic. *Tālem se impērātōrem præbuit.* Nep. *Præsta te eum, qui mihi es cognitus.* Cic. *Mercūrium omnium inventōrem artium fērant;* hunc viarum atque itinērum dūcem arbitrantur. Cæs.; or an adjective supplies the place of the predicate accusative; as, *Ne me existimāris ad mēnendum esse prōpensiōrem.* Cic.

NOTE 4. Instead of the predicate accusative, (1) *pro* with the ablative sometimes follows *pūto*, *dūco*, and *hābeo*, but denotes only an approximation; as, *Aliquid pro certo hābere* or *pūtāre.* *Ea pro falsis dūcūt.* Sall. *Aliquem pro hoste hābere.* Cæs.—So also *in* with the ablative; as, *Nihil præter virtutem in bonis hābere.* Cic. *Aliquem in nūmēro hostium dūcere.* Cic.—and the ablative without *in*; as, *Ut ros affiniū loco dūcerem.* Sall.—So also *e* or *ex* with the ablative; as, (1) *fāceret quod e rēpūblicā fidēque suā dūceret.* Liv.—Sometimes (2) the genitive; as, *Officiū duxit exorāre filiæ patrem.* Suet. (See § 211, R. 8, (3).) So with a genitive or an ablative of price or value; as, *Pūtāre aliquem nihilo.* Cic. *Non hābeo nanci Morsum augūrem.* Enn.—and sometimes (3) a dative; as, *Quando tu me hābes despiciātui.* Plaut.:—or an adverb; as, *Ægre hābuit, filium id pro pārente ausum.* Liv. And (4) *ad* or *in* with the accusative; as, *Lōca ad hibernācula lēgere.* Liv. *Aliquem in Patres lēgere.* Id.: or (5) the genitive depending on the ablative of cause, manner, etc.; as, *Qui servitatem dēditiōnis nōmine appellant.* Cæs.

REM. 2. Many other verbs, besides their proper accusative, take a second, denoting a purpose, time, character, etc.

Such are *do*, *tribuo*, *sūmo*, *pēto*, *pōno*, *adjungo*, *ascribo*, *cognosco*, *accio*, *fungo*, *significo*, etc.; as,

*Quāre ejus fūgæ cōmitē me adjungērem.* Cic. *Hōmīnum opīnio socium me ascribit tuis laudibus.* Id. *Quos ego sim toties jam dēdignāta mārītōs.* Virg. *Hunc igitur rēgem agnoscamus, qui Philippum dēdignātur patrem?* Curt. *Filiam tuam mihi uxōrem posco.* Plaut. *Pētīt hanc Sātūrnia mūnus.* Ovid. Such constructions may often be referred to apposition, or to an ellipsis of *esse*.

§ 231. Verbs of asking, demanding, and teaching, and *cēlo* (to conceal), are followed by two accusatives, one of the person, the other of the thing; as,

*Hoc te vēhēmēter rōgo.* Cic. *Illud te ōro, ut,* etc. Id. *Rōgo te nummēs,* I ask you for money. Mart. *Posce deos vēniā,* Ask favor of the gods. Virg. *Quum lēgent quis mūsicam dōcuerīt Epāmīnondam,* When they shall read who taught Epaminondas music. Nep. *Antigōnus iter omnes cēlat,* Antigonus conceals his route from all. Id. *Dēprēcāri deos māla.* Sen. *Quēdīdie Cæsar Edōas frūmētum flāgitāre.* Cæs. *Multa deos ōrans.* Virg.

REMARK 1. This rule includes the verbs of asking and demanding, *flāgitō*, *exflāgitō*, *obsecro*, *ōro*, *exōro*, *contendo*, *percontor*, *posco*, *rēposco*, *consūlo*, *prēcōr*, *dēprēcōr*, *rōgo*, and *interdōgo*, which, with the accusative of the person, take the accusative of the neuter pronouns *hoc*, *id*, *illud*, *quod*, *quid*, more frequently than that of a substantive. of teaching, *dōceō*, *edōceō*, *dēdōceō*, and *ērūdo*, which last has two accusatives only in the poets. *Admōnō* and *consulo* are rarely found with two accusatives; as, *Consulan. hanc rem pūicos.* Plaut. *Eam rem nos lōcus admōnuit.* Sall.

REM. 2. Instead of the accusative of the person, verbs of asking and demanding often take the ablative with *ab* or *ex*; as, *Non dēbābam abs te has lītēras poscēre.* Cic. *Vēniā ōrēmus ab ipso.* Virg. *Istud vōlēbam ex te percontāri.* Plaut.

REM. 3 (a.) Instead of the accusative of the thing, the ablative with *de* is sometimes used; as, *Sic ego te eisdem de rebus interrōgem.* Cic. *De itinere hostium senatum docet.* Sall. *Bassus noster me de hoc libro celarit.* Cic. C. § 229 R. 5, (b.)—(b.) Sometimes also instead of the accusative of the thing an infinitive, or an infinitive or subjunctive clause is used; as, *Deos precari debetis, ut urbem defendant.* Cic. *Ut doceam Rullum posthac tacere.* Id. *Docui id non fieri posse.* Id. *Doceant eum qui vir Sex. Roscius fuerit.* Id.—(c.) With verbs of teaching, the instrument by means of which the art is practised is put in the ablative; as, *Aliquem fidibus docere.* Cic. *Docere aliquem armis.* Liv. *Littere* may be used either in the accusative or in the ablative; as, *Te litteras doceo.* Cic. *Doctus Graecis literis.* Id.

REM. 4. Some verbs of asking, demanding, and teaching, are not followed by two accusatives; as, *exigo, peto, postulo, quero, scitor, discitor*, which, with the accusative of the thing, take an ablative of the person with the preposition *ab, de, or ex*; *imbuo, instituo, instruo*, etc., which are sometimes used with the ablative of the thing, generally without a preposition, and are sometimes otherwise construed; as, *Instituere aliquem ad dicendum.* Cic.

REM. 5. (a.) Many active verbs with the accusative of the person, take also an accusative denoting *in what respect* or *to what degree* the action of the verb is exerted.

(b.) The accusative of degree, etc., is commonly *nilil*, a neuter pronoun, or a neuter adjective of quantity; as, *Non quo me aliquid juvare posses.* Cic. *Pauca pro tempore milites hortatus.* Sall. *Id adjuta me.* Ter. *Nequē est te fallere quidquam.* Virg. Cf. § 232, (3.)

REM. 6. By a similar construction, *genus* and *seculus*, 'sex,' are sometimes used in the accusative, instead of the genitive of quality; as, *Nullas hoc genus vigilias vigilarunt.* Gell. So, *Omnes muliebri seculo.* Suet. Cf. 211, R. 6, (4.)

§ 232. (1.) Some neuter verbs are followed by an accusative of kindred signification to their own; as,

*Vitam jucundam vivere*, To live a pleasant life. Plaut. *Mirum somniavi somnium*, I have dreamed a wonderful dream. Id. *Furere hunc furorem.* Virg. *Istam pugnam pugnabo.* Plaut. *Pugnare dicenda Musis proelia.* Hor. *Lusum insolentem ludere.* Id. *Si non servitutem serviat.* Plaut. *Quoror laud faciles questus.* Stat. *Juravi verissimum iusjurandum.* Cic. *Ignotas jubet iras vias.* Val. Flacc. So, also, *Ire exsequias*, To go to a funeral. Ter. *Ire supplicias*, To go to one's assistance. *Ire infitias*, To deny. This expression is equivalent to *infitor*, and may like that take an accusative; as, *Si hoc unum adjunxero, quod nemo eat infitias.* Nep.: or the accusative with the infinitive; as, *Nequē infitias inus Siciliam nostram provinciam esse.* Liv. *Ut suum gaudium gauderemus.* Cael. ad Cic. *Proficisci magnum iter.* Cic. *Pollux utque reditque viam.* Virg. This accusative is usually qualified by an adjective.

(2.) Verbs commonly neuter are sometimes used transitively, and are then followed by an accusative.

Accusatives are thus used with *oleo* and *sapio*, and their compounds, *redoleo, resipio*; as, *Olet unguenta*, He smells of perfumes. Ter. *Olere peregrinum*, To have a foreign smell. Cic. *Orationes redolentes antiquitatem.* Id. *Mella herbam eam sapiunt*, The honey tastes of that herb. Plin. *Uva piceum resipiens.* Id. So, *Sitio honores.* Cic. *Carnem pluit.* Liv. *Claudius aeam studiosissime lusit.* Suet. *Erumpere diu coercitam iram in hostes.* Liv. *Libros evigilare.* Ovid. *Præire verba.* Liv. *Nec vox hominem sonat.* Virg. *Sudare mella.* Id. *Morientem nomine clamat.* Id. *Quis post vina gravem militiam aut pauperiem crepat?* Hor. *Omnes una manet nox.* Id. *Ingrati animi crimen horreo.* Cic. *Ego neas quoror fortunas.* Plaut. *Vivere Bacchanalia.* Juv. *Pastorem saltaret uti Cyclopa, rogabat.* Hor. So the passive; *Nunc agrestem Cyclopa moritur.* Id. *Xerxes quum mare ambulantisset, terram navigasset.* Cic. *Qui stadium currit.* Id. *Communia jura migrare.* Id. *Te volo colloqui.* Plaut. *Ea dissere malsi.* Cic.



*Cōrydon ardēbat Alexin.* Virg. *Stygiās jūrārimus undas.* Ovid. *Nāvtygāt æquor* Virg. *Currimus æquor.* Id. *Pascuntur sylvas.* Id.

NOTE 1. Accusatives are found in like manner after *ambūlo*, *calleo*, *dōleo*, *ēquīto*, *fleo*, *gaudeo*, *gēmo*, *glōrior*, *horreo*, *lātor*, *lātro*, *nāto*, *palleo*, *pāveo*, *pēreo*, *dēpēreo*, *prōcedo*, *quēror*, *rīdeo*, *sīleo*, *sibīlo*, *tāceo*, *trēmo*, *trēpido*, *vādo*, *vēnio*, etc.

(3.) Neuter verbs and sometimes adjectives also may be followed by an accusative denoting *in what respect*, or *to what degree*, the feeling, condition, etc., is manifested; as,

*Nihil libōro.* Cic. *Num id lacrimat virgo?* Does the maid weep on that account? Ter. *Multa ālia peccat.* Cic. *Quicquid dēlirant rēges, plectuntur Achivi.* Hor. *Nec tu id indignārī posses.* Liv. *Illud mihi lētandum vīdeo.* Cic. *Illud valde tibi assentior.* Id. *Idem glōriārī.* Id. *Hæc glōrians.* Liv. *Non stūdet ūnum.* Hor.—So, *Id opēram do*, I strive for this. Ter. *Consilium pētis, quid tibi sim auctor.* Cic. *Quod quīdam auctōres suut,* Which is attested by some authors. Liv. *Nil nostri mīserēre?* Virg.—*Nihil Rōmāncē plēbis similis.* Liv. *Sēnātus nihil sāne intentus.* Sall. These limiting accusatives have commonly the force of adverbs, particularly *nihil*, which is used like an emphatic *non* in the sense of 'in no way,' 'in no respect.' So *non nihil*, 'to some extent,' 'in some measure.'

NOTE 2. In the above and similar examples, the prepositions *ob*, *propter*, *per*, *ad*, etc., may often be supplied. This construction of neuter verbs is most common with the neuter accusatives *id*, *quid*, *quidquam*, *āliquīd*, *quicquid*, *quod*, *nihil*, *nonnihil*, *idem*, *illud*, *tantum*, *quantum*, *ūnum*, *multa*, *pauca*, *ālia*, *cētēra*, *omnia*, etc. Cf. § 256, R. 16, N.

§ 233. Many verbs are followed by an accusative depending upon a preposition with which they are compounded.

(1.) Active verbs compounded with *trans*, *ad*, and *circum*, have sometimes two accusatives, one depending upon the verb, the other upon the preposition; as,

*Omnem ēquitātum pontem transducit,* He leads all the cavalry over the bridge. Cæs. *Agēsīlāus Hellespontum cōpiās trājēcit.* Nep. *Petrēius jusjūrandum ad Igīt Afrānium.* Cæs. *Roscillum Pompēius omnia sua præsīdia circumduxit.* Id. So, *Pontus scōpūlos sūperjācit undam.* Virg. So, also, *adverto* and *indūco* with *ānimum*; as, *Id ānimum advertit.* Cæs. *Id quod ānimum induxerat paulisper non tēnuīt.* Cic. So, also, *injicio* in Plautus—*Ego te mānum injiciam.*

(2.) Some other active verbs take an accusative in the passive voice depending upon their prepositions; as,

*Māgicas accingier artes,* To prepare oneself for magic arts. Virg. In prose writers the *ad* is in such cases repeated; as, *accingi ad consulātum.* Liv. *Classis circumvēhitur arcem.* Id. *Quod anguis dōmi vectem circumjēctus fuisset* Cic. *Lōcum prætērvectus sum.* Id.

(3.) Many neuter verbs, especially verbs of motion, or of rest in a place, when compounded with prepositions which govern an accusative, become transitive, and accordingly take an accusative; as,

*Gentes quæ märe illud adjācent,* The nations which border upon that sea. Nep. *Obēq̄stīare agmen.* Curt. *Incēdunt mēstos lōcos.* Tac. *Transilui flammās.* Ovid. *Succēdere tecta.* Cic. *Lūdōrum diēbns, quā cognitiōnem intervēnerant.* Tac. *Adire prōvinciam.* Suet. *Cāreat ne praelium ineat.* Cic. *Ingrēdi iter pēdibus.* Cic. *Epīcūri horti quos mōdo prætēribāmus.* Id.

NOTE. To this rule belong many of the compounds of *ambūlo*, *cēdo*, *curro*, *eo*, *ēquīto*, *quo*, *grādiar*, *lābor*, *no* and *nāto*, *rēpo*, *sālio*, *scando*, *vādo*, *vēhor*, *vēnio*, *vōlo*;—*cūbo*, *īdeo*, *sēdeo*, *sisto*, *sto*, etc., with the prepositions included in § 224, and with *ex*.

**REMARK 1.** Some neuter verbs compounded with prepositions which govern an ablative, in like manner become transitive, and are followed by an accusative; as,

*Nēmīnem convēni*, I met with no one. Cic. *Qui societatem coiēris*. Id. *Aversari* hōnōres. Ovid. *Ursi arborem āversi dērēpunt*. Plin. *Edormi* crāpulam. Cic. *Egressus* exsiliū. Tac. *Erādītque celer* ripam. Virg. *Excēdere* nūmērum. Tac. *Exire* limen. Ter. *Tibur aquae fertile præfluunt*. Hor.

**REM. 2.** After verbs both active and neuter, compounded with prepositions which take an accusative, the preposition is often repeated, or one of similar signification is used; as,

*Cæsar se ad nēmīnem adjunxit*. Cic. *Multitudinem* trans Rhēnum *in Galliam* transducere. Cæs.—*In Galliam invāsīt Antōnius*. Cic. *Ad me adire* quosdam mēmīni. Id. *Orātor peragrat* per ānimos hōmīnum. Id. *Ne in sēnātum accēderem*. Id. *Rēgina ad templum incessit*. Virg. *Juxta gēnītōrem adstat Lāvīnia*. Id. *Fīnis extra quos egrēdi non possim*. Cic. A dative instead of the accusative often follows such compounds, according to § 224. *Circum* is not repeated.

**NOTE.** Some verbal nouns and verbal adjectives in *bundus* are followed by an accusative, like the transitive verbs from which they are derived; as,

*Quid tibi huc rēceptio ad te est meum* vīrum? Wherefore do you receive my husband hither to you? Plant. *Quid tibi, mālum, me, aut quid ego āgam, cūratiō 'st?* Id. *Quid tibi hanc ūditio est?* Id. *Quid tibi hanc nōtio est, inquam, āmicam meam?* *Quid tibi hanc digito tactio 'st?* Id. *Hanno vitābundus* castra *hostium* consulesque. Liv. *Mithridātes Rōmānum mēditābundus* bellum. Just. *Mirābundi* vānam spēcīem. Liv. *Pōpūlabundus* agros. Sisenn. *Carnificem imāginābundus*. App.

**§ 234.** A verb in the passive voice has the same government as in the active, except that the accusative of the active voice becomes the nominative of the passive.

**NOTE 1.** The accusative of the person with the infinitive, after verbs of *saying* and *commanding*, may become the subject of the passive voice; as, Active, *Dico rēgem esse justum*;—Passive, *Rex dicitur justus esse*. Act. *Jūbeo te rēdire*;—Pass. *Jūbēris rēdire*: the construction in the passive being the same as though *rēgem* and *te* had depended immediately upon *dico* and *jūbeo*.—So, also, when the accusative of the person is the object of the verb and the infinitive stands as the accusative of the thing. Cf. § 270, N.

**I.** When a verb, which in the active voice takes an accusative both of the person and of the thing, is changed to the passive form, the accusative of the person becomes the nominative, and the accusative of the thing is retained; as,

*Rōgātus est* sententiam, He was asked his opinion. Liv. *Interrogātus* causam. Tac. *Sēgētes ālimentāque debita dīres poscebātur* hūmus. Ovid. *Mōtus dēcēri* gaudet *Iōnicos mātūra* virgo. Hor. *Omnes belli artes edoctus*. Liv. *Nesne hoc cēlātus tam diu?* Ter. *Multa in extis mōnēmur*. Cic.

**NOTE 2.** The accusative of the thing after *doctus* and *ēdoctus* is rare; and after *cēlāri* it is generally a neuter pronoun; as *hoc* or *id cēlābar*; of this I was kept in ignorance; but it is found also with the person in the dative; as, Id. *Alcibiādi diūtius cēlāri non pōtuit*. Nep. Alcib. 5. *Cēlo*, and especially its passive, generally takes *de* with the ablative.

**REMARK 1.** (*a.*) *Induo* and *exuo*, though they do not take two accusatives in the active voice, are sometimes followed by an accusative of the thing in

the passive; as, *Indūtur ātras vestes*, She puts on sable garments. Ovid *Thōrāca indūtus*. Virg. *Exūta est Rōma senectam*. Mart. So *indūcor* and *cīngor*; as, *Ferrum cīngitur*. Virg. So *reīngitur* angnem. Ovid.

(b.) When two accusatives follow an active verb compounded with *trans* the passive retains that which depends upon the preposition; as, *Belyæ Rhēnum antiquitus transducti*. Cæs.

REM. 2. The future passive participle in the neuter gender with *est*, is sometimes, though rarely, followed by an accusative; as, *Multa rōvis rēbus quum sit āgendum*. Lucr. *Quam (viam) nobis ingrēdiendum est*. Cic.

II. Adjectives, verbs, and perfect participles, are sometimes followed by an accusative denoting the *part* to which their signification relates; as,

*Nūdus membra*, Bare as to his limbs. Virg. *Os hūmērosque deo similis*. Id. *Clāri gēnus*. Tac. *Tribūni suam vicem anxii*. Liv. *Trēmīt artus*. Virg. *Cētēra parce puer bello*. Id. *Sibila colla tūmentem*. Id. *Explēri mentem ūquit*. Id. *Grj̄us crātur oculos*. Ovid. *Picti scūta Lābici*. Virg. *Collis frontem lēuiter fustigātus*. Cæs. *Anīmum iuceusus*. Liv. *Oblitus faciēm suo crāre*. Tac.

REMARK 1. In this construction an ablative is often joined with the perfect participle; as, *Miles fractus membra lābore*. Hor. *Dextērum gēnu lāpide ictus*. Suet. *Adversum fēmur trāgūlā grāviter ictus*. Liv.

REM. 2. This is a Greek construction, and is usually called the *limiting or Greek accusative*. It is used instead of an ablative of limitation, (§ 250,) and occurs most frequently in poetry.

REM. 3. A limiting accusative instead of the ablative is found also in a few ordinary expressions, as in *partim* (for *partem*), *vicem*, *magnum* and *maximam partem*, instead of *magā* or *maximā ex parte*, or the adverb *fēre*; as, *Maximam partem lucte vīrunt*. Cæs. *Magnum partem ex iambis nostra constat oratio*. Cic. Livy has *magna pars*, viz. *Nūmidæ*, *magna pars agrestes*.—So *cētēra* and *rēliqua* are joined to adjectives in the sense of *cētēris*, ‘for the rest,’ ‘in other respects’; as, *Proximum regnum, cētēra ēgrēgium, ab ūā parte haud sātis prospērum fuit*. Liv. So *cētēra similis*, *cētēra bonus*. *A te bis terre summum litēras accēpi*. Cic.—So, also, in the expressions *id temporis*; *id, hoc* or *idem ætātis*, *illud hōre*, for *eo tempore*, *eā ætate*, etc.; *id gēnus*, *omne gēnus*, *quod gēnus*.

III. Some neuter verbs which are followed by an accusative, are used in the passive voice, the accusative becoming the subject, according to the general rule of active verbs; as,

*Tertiā vīrītur ætas*. Ovid. *Bellum militābitur*. Hor. *Dormītur hiems*. Mart. *Multa peccantur*. Cic. *Adītur Gnossius Mīnos*. Sen. *Ne ab omnibus circumsistēretur*. Cæs. *Hostes iuvādi posse*. Sall. *Campus obītur aquā*. Ovid. *Plūres in-euntur grātīæ*. Cic. *Ea res silētur*. Id.

## ACCUSATIVE AFTER PREPOSITIONS.

§ 235. (1.) Twenty six prepositions are followed by the accusative.

These are *ad*, *adversus* or *adversum*, *antē*, *apūd*, *circā* or *circum*, *circiter*, *cīs* or *citrā* *contrā*, *ergā*, *extrā*, *īnfā*, *intēr*, *intrā* *juxtā* *ob*, *pēnēs*, *pēr*, *post*, *pōnē*, *prætēr*, *prōptēr*, *sēcundum*, *suprā*, *trans*, *ultrā*; as,

*Ad templum nōn æquæ Pallidis ibant*,—to the temple. Virg. *Adversus hostes*, Against the enemy. Liv. *Germāni qui cīs Rhēnum incolunt*,—this side the Rhine. Cæs. *Quum tantum rēsideat intra mūros nālī*. Cic. *Principio rērum impērium pēnes rēges erat*. Just. *Templum pōnam propter āquā*. Virg. *Inter āgendum*. Id. *Ante dōcandū*. Id. Respecting the signification of some of the preceding prepositions see § 195, R. 5, etc.



REMARK 1. *Cis* is generally used with names of places; *citra* with other words also; as, *Cis Taurum*. Cic. *Cis Padum*. Liv. *Paucos cis menses*. Plaut. *Citra Veliam*. Cic. *Citra satiētatem*, Not to satiety. Col. *Citra jātigātōnem*. Cels. *Citra Trōjāna tempōra*. Ovid.

REM. 2. *Inter*, signifying *between*, applies to two accusatives jointly, and sometimes to a single plural accusative; as, *Inter me et Scīpiōnem*. Cic. *Inter nātos et parentes*. Id. *Inter nos*, Among ourselves. Id. *Inter fulcārios*, Among the scythe-makers. Cic. When it denotes time it signifies *during*, and more rarely *at*; as, *Inter ipsum pugnæ tempus*. Liv. *Inter cænā*. Cic.

REM. 3. *Ante* and *post* are commonly joined with concrete official titles, when used to indicate time, rather than with the corresponding abstract nouns; as, *ante* or *post* *Cicērōnem* consulem, rather than *ante* or *post* consulātum *Cicērōnis*.

(2.) *In* and *sub*, denoting *motion* or *tendency*, are followed by the accusative; denoting *situation*, they are followed by the ablative; as,

*Via dūcīt in urbem*, The way conducts into the city. Virg. *Noster in te amor*. Cic. *Callināchi epigramma in Cleombrōtum est*—on or concerning Cleombrotus. Id. *Exercitus sub jūgum missus est*, The army was sent under the yoke. Cæs. *Magna mei sub terras ibit imāgo*. Virg. *Mēdiā in urbe*, In the midst of the city. Ovid. *In his fuit Arivistus*. Cæs. *Bella sub Iliacis mōnibus gērere*, To wage war under the Trojan walls. Ovid. *Sub nocte silenti*. Virg.

REM. 4. The most common significations of *in*, with the accusative, are, *into*, *to*, *towards*, *until*, *for*, *against*, *about*, *concerning*,—with the ablative, *in*, *on*, *upon*, *among*. In some instances, *in* and *sub*, denoting tendency, are followed by the ablative, and, denoting situation, by the accusative; as, *In conspectu meo audet venīre*. Phæd. *Natiōnes quæ in amicitiam pōpuli Rōmāni, ditiōnemque essent*. Id. *Sub jūgo dictātor hostes misit*. Liv. *Hostes sub montem consēdisse*. Cæs.

REM. 5. *In* and *sub*, in different significations, denoting neither tendency nor situation, are followed sometimes by the accusative, and sometimes by the ablative; as, *Amor crescit in hōras*. Ovid. *Hostilem in mōdum*. Cic. *Quod in bōno servo dici posset*. Id. *Sub eā conditiōne*. Ter. *Sub pœnā mortis*. Suet.

REM. 6. In expressions relating to time, *sub*, denoting *at* or *in*, usually takes the ablative; as, *Sub adventu Rōmānōrum*. Liv. *Sub luce*. Ovid. *Sub tempōre*. Lucan. Denoting *near*, *about*, *just before* or *just after*, it takes the accusative; as, *Sub lucem*. Virg. *Sub lūnina prima*. Hor. *Sub hoc hērūs inquit*. Id.

REM. 7. *In* is used with neuter adjectives in the accusative in forming adverbial phrases; as, *In unīversum*, In general. *In tōtum*, Wholly. So, *in plēnum*; *in incertum*; *in tantum*; *in quantum*; *in majus*; *in mēlius*; *in omnia*, in all respects, etc.

(3.) *Sūper*, when denoting place or time, is followed by the accusative, and sometimes poetically by the ablative; but when it signifies *on*, *about*, or *concerning*, it takes the ablative. With the accusative *sūper* signifies *over*, *above*, *besides* or *in addition to*; with numerals, *more than*; as,

*Sūper labentem culmīna tecti*, Gliding over the top of the house. Virg. *Super tres mōdios*. Liv. *Sūper morbum etiam fāmes affēcit exercitum*. Id. *Super tēnēro prosternit grāmīne corpus*, He stretches his body on the tender grass. Virg. *Multa sūper Priāmo rōgitans sūper Hectōre multa*, ... concerning Priam etc. Id.

REM. 8. The compound *dēsūper* is found with the accusative, and *insūper* with the accusative and the ablative.

(4.) *Subter* generally takes the accusative, but sometimes, in poetry, the ablative; as,

*Subter terras*, Under the earth. Liv. *Subter densā testūdīne*. Virg.

(5.) *Clam* is followed by either the accusative or the ablative; as,

*Clam* vos, Without your knowledge. Cic. *Clam* patrem. Ter. *Clam* matrem suam. Plaut. *Clam* vobis. Cæs. *Neque potest clam* ine esse. Plaut. *Clam* uxore meâ. Id. Its diminutive *clanculum* is once followed by the accusative, *clanculum* patres. Ter.

REM. 9. The adverbs *versus* or *versum* and *usque* are sometimes annexed to an accusative, principally of place, which depends on *ad* or *in*, and sometimes the preposition is omitted; as, *Ad Oceanum versus proficisci*. Cæs. *Fugam* ed se *versum*. Sall. *In Galliam versus castra movere*. Id.—*Usque ad Numantiam*. Cic. *Usque in Pamphyliam*. Id. *Ad noctem usque*. Plaut.—*Brundisium versus*. Cic. *Terminos usque Libyæ*. Just. *Usque Ennain profecti*. Cic. *Versus* is always placed after the accusative.—*Usque* occurs more rarely with *sub* and *trans* with the accusative; as, *Trans Alpes usque transfertur*. Cic. *Usque sub extremum brumæ imbrem*.—*Versus* also rarely follows *ab*, and *usque* either *ab* or *ex* with the ablative; as, *Ab septemtrione versus*. Varr. *A fundamento usque movisti mare*. Plaut. *Usque ex ultimâ Syriâ*. Cic. *Usque a pueritiâ*. Ter. *Usque a Rómulo*. Cic. *Usque a mâne ad vespèrum*. Plaut.

REM. 10. Prepositions are often used without a noun depending upon them but such noun may usually be supplied by the mind; as, *Multis post annis*, i. e. *post id tempus*. Cic. *Circum Concordiæ*, scil. *ædem*. Sall.

REM. 11. The accusative, in many constructions, is supposed to depend on a preposition understood; as, *Quid opus est plûrâ?* i. e. *propter quid?* why? i. q. *cur?* or *quâre?* Cic. So, *Quid me ostentem?* Id. But it is not easy, in every case, to say what preposition should be supplied. For the accusative without a preposition after neuter verbs, see § 232. For the accusative of limitation, see § 234, II.

## ACCUSATIVE OF TIME AND SPACE.

§ 236. Nouns denoting duration of time, or extent of space, are put, after adjectives and verbs, in the accusative, and sometimes after verbs in the ablative; as,

ACC. *Appius cæcus multos annos fuit*, Appius was blind many years. Cic. *Biduam Lædiciæ fuit*. Id. *Dies totos de virtute disserunt*. Id. *Te jam annum audientem Cratippum*. Id.—*Décrêverunt intercalarium quinque et quâdrâginta dies longum*. Id.—*Quum abessem ab Amâno iter unius diei*. Id. *Tres pateat calî spatium non amplius ulnas*. Virg. (Cf. § 256, R. 6.) *A portu stadia centum et vîginti processimus*. Cic.—*Duas fossas quindécim pèdes lâtas perduxit*,—two ditches fifteen feet broad. Cæs. *Fossæ quinos pèdes altæ*. Id. *Foramina longa pèdes tres semis*. Cato. *Orbem olearium crassum digitos sex facito*. Id.—ABL. *Vixit annis undetrîginta*. Suet. *Quatuordécim annis exsilium tôle-ravit*. Tac. *Trîginta annis vixit Panætius*. Cic.—*Exercitus Rômânus tridui itinere ab-fuit ab amne Tanai*. Tac. *Æsculâpii templum quinque millibus passuum dis-tans*. Liv.

NOTE 1. The ablative denoting extent of time and space is rarely used by Cicero, and less frequently than the accusative by other writers.

NOTE 2. The accusative denoting extent of space sometimes follows the ad-verb; *longe*, *alte*, etc.; as, *Campestris locus alte duos pèdes et semissem inf-diendus est*. Colum. *Vercingétorix locum castris deligit ab Avaico longe millia passuum selécim*. Cæs.

NOTE 3. (a.) *Old*, in reference to the time which a person has lived, is expressed in Latin by *natus*, with an accusative of the time; as, *Decessit Alexander mensem unam, annos tres et trîginta natus*. Just. (b.) A person's age may also be expressed without *natus* by a genitive of the time closely connected with his name, according to § 211, R. 6; as, *Alexander annorum trium et trîginta decessit*. (c.) *Older* or *younger* than a certain age is expressed by prefixing to the accusative or genitive of the definite ago the ad-

verbs *plus* or *minus*, or the adjectives *māior* or *mīnor*, either with or without *quam*. See § 256, R. 6 and 7.—Sometimes, also, the ablative depends on the comparative; as, *Minor viginti quinque annis nātus*. Nep. *Minor triginta annis nātus*. Cic. *Biennio quam nos major*. Id. Cf. § 256, R. 16. (1.)

REMARK 1. Nouns denoting time or space, used to limit *other nouns*, are put in the genitive or ablative. See § 211, R. 6.

REM. 2. A term of time not yet completed may be expressed by an ordinal number, as, *Nos vicēsimum jam diem patimur hēbescere aetatem hōrum auctōritātis*. Cic. *Pūnico bello duodēcimum annum Itālia arēbatur*. Liv. Hence in the passive, *Nunc tertia vivitur aetas*. Ovid.

REM. 3. The accusative or ablative of space is sometimes omitted, while a genitive depending on it remains; as, *Castra quae abērant bidui*, scil. *ex itinere* or *spatio*. Cic.

REM. 4. To denote a place by its distance from another, the ablative is commonly used; as, *Millibus passuum sex a Cēsāris castris consēdit*. Cæs.; but sometimes the accusative: as, *Tria passuum millia ab ipsā urbe castra posuit*. Liv. The only words used for this purpose in the ablative alone are *spatio* and *interrallo*; as, *Quindēcem ferme millium spatio castra ab Tarento posuit*. Id.

NOTE 4. For *abhinc* and a cardinal number, with the accusative or ablative of past time, see § 253, R. 2. For the ablative denoting difference of time or space, see § 256, R. 16.

REM. 5. A preposition is sometimes expressed before an accusative of time or space, but it generally modifies the meaning; as, *Quem per decem annos aluimus*, ... during ten years. Cic.

REM. 6. When the place from which the distance is reckoned is not mentioned, *ab* is sometimes placed before the ablative of distance, as if this depended on the preposition; as, *A millibus passuum duobus castra posuerunt*, Two miles from the place, or, Two miles off. Cæs.

REM. 7. An *accusative of weight* also occurs when expressed by *libram* or *libras* in connection with *pondo*. Cf. § 211, R. 6. (4.)

## ACCUSATIVE OF PLACE.

§ 237. After verbs expressing or implying motion, the name of the town *in which the motion ends* is put in the accusative without a preposition; as,

*Regulus Carthāginem rediit*, Regulus returned to Carthage. Cic. *Capuam flecti iter*, He turns his course to Capua. Liv. *Calpurnius Rōmam proficiscitur*. Sall. *Rōmam erat nunciatum*. Cic.

REMARK 1. The accusative, in like manner, is used after *iter* with *sum*, *habeo*, etc.; as, *Iter est mihi Lānūvium*. Cic. *Cēsārem iter habere Capuam*. Id. And even after *sum* alone; as, *Omnia illa municipia, quae sunt a Vibōne Brundisium*. Cic. So with a verbal noun; as, *Adventus Rōmam*. Liv. *Reditus Rōmam*. Cic.

REM. 2. (a.) The preposition to be supplied is *in*, denoting *to* or *into*, which is sometimes expressed; as, *In Ephesum abiit*. Plant. *Ad*, before the name of a town, denotes direction towards it; as, *Iter dirigere ad Mutinum*. Cic.; and also its vicinity; as, *Adolescentulus miles profectus sum ad Capuam*; i. e. *in castra ad Capuam*. Id. So, *Laelius cum classe ad Brundisium venit*. Cæs. *Cesar ad Gēnēvam pervēnit*. Id. *Quum ego ad Hierāclēam accēderem*. Cic.

(b.) When *urbs*, *oppidum*, *locus*, etc., follow the names of towns as appositions, they generally take a preposition; as, *Dēmārātus se centulit Tarquinios, in urbem Etrūriæ florētissimam*. Cic. *Ad Cirtam oppidum iter constituunt*. Sall.—So also when the name of the town is qualified by an adjective; as, *Magnum*



*iter ad doctas proficisci cōgor* Athēnas. Prop. But the poets and later prose writers sometimes omit the preposition; as, Ovid, *Her.* 2, 83.

REM. 3. Instead of the accusative, a dative is sometimes, though rarely used; as, *Carthāgini nuncios mittam*. Hor. Cf. § 225, IV. and R. 2.

REM. 4. *Dōmus* in both numbers, and *rus* in the singular, are put in the accusative, like names of towns; as,

*Itē dōmum*, Go home. Virg. *Galli dōmos ābiērant*,—had gone home. Liv. *Rus ibo*, I will go into the country. Ter.

NOTE. (a.) When *dōmus* is limited by a genitive or a possessive adjective pronoun, it sometimes takes a preposition: with other adjectives, the preposition is generally expressed; as, *Non introēo in nostram dōmum*. Plaut. *Vēnisse in dōmum Leccæ*. Cic. *Ad eam dōmum profecti sunt*. Id. *In dōmos sup̄eras scandere cūra fuit*. Ovid. Rarely, also, when not limited; as, *Sōcrātes phīlōsophiū in dōmos intrōdūxit*. Cic. So, *lārem suū*. App., or *ad lārem suū*. Cic. *Cāricas in Albense rus inferre*. Plin. *Quum in sua rūra vērunt*. Cic. With the possessor's name in the genitive, either *dōmum* or *in dōmum* is used; as, *Pompōni dōmum vēnisse*. Cic. *In dōmum Mælii tēla infēruntur*. Liv.

(b.) *Dōmus* is sometimes used in the accusative after a verbal noun; as, *Dōmum rēditiōnis spe sublātā*. Cæs. So, *Itio dōmum*. Cic. *Concursus dōmum*. Cæs. Cf. R. 1.

REM. 5. (a.) Before the names of countries and of all other places in which the motion ends, except those of towns, and *dōmus* and *rus*, the preposition is commonly used; as, *Ex Asiā transis in Eurōpam*. Curt. *Te in Epīrum vēnisse gaudeo*. Cic. But it is sometimes omitted; as, *Dēveniunt spēluncam*. Virg. *Trēvēre lōcos*. Id. *Tūmūlum antiquæ Cērēis sēdemque sacrātam vēnimus*. Id. *Ibis Cērōpios portus*. Ovid. So, also, before names of countries, especially those ending in *us*; as, *Ægyptus*, *Bospōrus*, *Chersōnēsus*, *Epīrus*, *Pēlōponnēsus*, etc. So, also, *Illyricum profectus*. Cæs. *Mācēdōniā pervēnit*. Liv. *Africam transiturus*. Id. So, Tacitus construes even names of nations, when used, as they often are, for those of countries; as, *Ductus inde Cangos exercitus*. *Ibēros ad patriū regnū pervādit*. So, Virgil, *Nos ibimus Afros*.—Pliny has, *Insulas Rubri Māris nāvigant*.

(b.) Before the names of small islands the preposition is frequently omitted; as, *Pausānam cum classe Cyprum misērunt*. Nep.: but rarely before the names of the larger islands; as, *Sardinia*, *Britannia*, *Crēta*, *Eubœa*, *Sicilia*.

(c.) Before accusatives of any words denoting locality after verbs of motion, the poets omit the preposition; as, *Itāliam—Lāviniāque vēnit litōra*. Virg.—The old accusative *fōras* is used, like names of towns, to denote the place *whither*, while *fōris* denotes the place *where*; as, *Vāde fōras*. Mart. *Exi fōras* Plaut.

## ACCUSATIVE AFTER ADJECTIVES, ADVERBS AND INTERJECTIONS.

§ 238. 1. (a.) The adjectives *prōpior* and *proximus*, with their adverbs *prōpius* and *proxime*, like their primitive *prōpe*, are often joined with the accusative; as,

*Ipsē prōpior montē suos collōcat*. Sall. *Crassus proximus mārē Oceānum hēmārat*. Cæs.—*Libyēs prōpius mārē Africū āgītābant*. Sall. *Proxime Hispaniā Mauri sunt*. Id.

(b.) The adverbs *prīdie* and *postrīdie* are also often followed by the accusative; as, *Prīdie eum diē*. Cic. *Prīdie idus*. Id. *Postrīdie ludos*. Id.—(c.) An accusative sometimes follows *intus* and *cōminus* as, *Intus dōmum*. Plaut. *Argestes cōminus ire sues*, scil. *in*. Prop.

REMARK 1. The accusative with *prīdie* and *postrīdie* is by some referred to *ante* and *post* understood. For the genitive after these words, see § 212, R. 4, N. 6.—Respecting *versus*, *usque*, *exadversus* (-um) and *sēcus* with the accusative, see § 195, R. 3: and § 235, R. 3.

REM. 2. The adverb *bēne*, by the elipsis of *rālīre jūbeo*, is sometimes followed by the accusative in forms of drinking health; as, *Bēne vcs, bēne nos, bēne tō bēne me, bēne nostram etiam Stēphānium!* Plaut. *Bēne Messālam*, a health to Messala. Tibull. It is also construed with the dative. See § 228, 1.

2. In exclamations, the noun or pronoun which marks the *object of the feeling* is put in the accusative either with or without the interjections, *O! ah! heu! eheu! ecce! en! hem! pro! or vae!*as,

*En quātuor āras! ecce duas tibi Daphni!* Behold four altars! lo, two for thee, Daphnis! Virg. *Eccum! eccos! eccillum!* for *ecce eum! ecce eos! ecce illum!* Plaut. *O praeclārum custōdem!* Cic. *Heu me infēlicem!* Ter. *Pro Deūm hōminūque fidem!* Cic. *Ah me, me!* Catull. *Eheu me misērum!* Ter. *Hem astūtias!* Id. *Vae te!* Plaut. *Vae me!* Sen. *Misēram me!* Ter. *Hōmīnem grāvem et civem ēgrēgium!* -Cic. Cf. § 228, 3.

NOTE. The accusative after interjections is supposed to depend on some verb of emotion to be supplied.

## SUBJECT-ACCUSATIVE.

§ 239. The subject of the infinitive mood is put in the accusative; as,

*Mōleste Pompeium id ferre constābat*, That Pompey took that ill, was evident. Cic. *Eos hoc nōmine appellārī fas est.* Id. *Mīror te ad me nihil scribēre*, I wonder that you do not write to me. Cn. Mag. in Cic. *Campos jūbet esse pātentes.* Virg.

NOTE 1. In historical writing the present infinitive has sometimes its subject in the nominative. Cf. § 209, R. 5.

REMARK 1. The subject of the infinitive is omitted when it precedes in the genitive or dative case; as, *Est adōlescentis mājores nātū vērērī*, scil. *eum.* Cic. *Expēdit bōnas esse vōbis*, scil. *vos.* Ter.; and rarely when it precedes in the accusative; as, *Ea pōpūlus letārī et mērito dicēre fiērī*; and also when its place is supplied by a possessive pronoun expressed or understood; as, *Non fuī consilium* (meum)—*servilibus officiis intentum aetatem agere* (scil. *me*). Sal.

REM. 2. A substantive pronoun is also sometimes omitted before the infinitive, when it is the subject of the preceding verb; as, *Pollicitus sum susceptūrum* (*esse*), scil. *me*, I promised (that I) would undertake. Ter. *Sed reddere posse negābat*, scil. *se.* Virg.

REM. 3. The subject of the infinitive is often omitted, when it is a general word for person or thing; as, *Est aliud irācundum esse, aliud irātum*, scil. *hōmīnem.* Cic. See § 269, R. 1.

REM. 4. The subject-accusative, like the nominative, is often wanting. See § 209, R. 3. The subject of the infinitive may be an infinitive or a clause. See § 269, R. 3.

NOTE 2. For the verbs after which the subject-accusative with the infinitive is used see § 272. For the accusative in the predicate after infinitives neuter and passive, see § 210.

## VOCATIVE.

§ 240. The vocative is used, either with or without an interjection, in addressing a person or thing.

REMARK 1. The interjections *O*, *heu*, and *pro* (*proh*), also *ah*, *ai* (*hai*), *ěhem*, *ěho*, *ěhodum*, *eia* (*heia*), *hem*, *heus*, *hui*, *io*, and *ohe*, are followed by the vocative; as,

*O formōse puer!* O beautiful boy! Virg. *Heu virgo!* Id. *Pro sancte Jūpiter!* Cic. *Ah stulte!* Ter. *Heus Sýre!* Id. *Ohe libelle!* Mart. *Ehodum bōne vir.* Ter.—*Urbem*, mi Rūfe, cōle. Cic. *Quinctili Vare, lēgiōnes redde.* Suet. *Quo mōritūre ruis?* Hor. *Macte virtūte esto.* Cic.

REM. 2. The vocative is sometimes omitted, while a genitive depending upon it remains; as, *O māsēræ sortis!* scil. *hōmīnes.* Lucan.

NOTE. The vocative forms no part of a proposition, but serves to designate the person to whom the proposition is addressed.

## ABLATIVE.

The ablative denotes certain relations of nouns and pronouns, all of which are expressed in English by means of prepositions. In Latin this case is sometimes accompanied by a preposition, and sometimes stands alone. Cf. § 37, 6.

## ABLATIVE AFTER PREPOSITIONS.

§ 241. Eleven prepositions are followed by the ablative.

These are *ā*, (or *āb*, *abs*), *absquē*, *dē*; *cōram*, *pūlam*, *cum*, *ex*, (*ē*) *sinē*, *tēnus*, *prō*, and *præ*; as,

*Ab illo tempore*, From that time. Liv. *A scribendo*, From writing. Cic. *Cum exercitu*, With the army. Sall. *Certis de causis*, For certain reasons. Cic. *Ex fugā*, From flight. Id. *Pālam pōpulo*. Liv. *Sine labōre*. Cic. *Cūpulo tēnus*. Virg. *Cantābit vācuus cōram lātrōne viātor*. Juv. cf. § 195, 5.

NOTE. Of the prepositions followed by the ablative, five signify removal or separation, viz. *ā* (*āb* or *abs*), *dē*, *ē* (or *ex*), *absquē* and *sinē*.

REMARK 1. *Tēnus* is always placed after its case. It sometimes takes the genitive plural. See § 221, III.—*Cum* is always appended to the ablative of the personal pronouns *me*, *te*, *se*, *nōbis*, and *vōbis*, and commonly to the ablatives of the relative pronoun, *quo*, *quā*, *quibus*, and *quī*. Cf. § 133, 4, and § 136, R. 1.

REM. 2. The adverbs *prōcul* and *simul* are sometimes used with an ablative, which depends on the prepositions *a* or *ab*, and *cum* understood; as, *Prōcul māri*, Far from the sea. Liv. *Simul nōbis hābitat*. Ovid. *Prōcul dūbio*. Suet. The prepositions are frequently expressed; as, *Prōcul a terrā*. Cic. *Prōcul a patriā*. Virg. *Tēcum simul*. Plaut. *Vōbiscum simul*. Cic.—So, rarely, *æque*. *Qui me in terrā æque fortunātus erit*. Plaut. Cf. *Nōvi æque omnia tēcum*. Id.

REM. 3. Some of the above prepositions, like those followed by the accusative, are occasionally used without a noun expressed; as, *Quum cōram sūmus*. Cic. *Cum frātre an sine*. Id. Cf. § 235, R. 10

REM. 4. The ablative follows also the prepositions *in* and *sub*, when they answer to the question 'where?' *super*, when it signifies 'on' or 'concerning'; and sometimes *clam* and *subter*. Cf. § 235, (2.)—(5.)

REM. 5. *In* is generally joined with the ablative after verbs of placing, as, *pōno*, *lōco*, *collōco*, *stātuo*, *constituo*, and *consido*; as, *Et sāle tābentes artus in itōre pōnunt*. Virg.—So, also, after verbs signifying to have, hold, or regard



as, *habeo, dūco, nūmero*, etc.—After verbs of *assembling, concealing, and including*, *in* is followed by either the accusative or the ablative.—After *dēfigo, inscribo, insculpo, incido*, and *insēro*, *in* is usually joined with the ablative.

§ 242. Many verbs compounded with *āb, dē, ex*, and *sūper* are followed by an ablative depending upon the preposition; as,

*Abesse urbe*, To be absent from the city. Cic. *Abire sēdibus*, To depart from their habitations. Tac. *Ut se mālēdictis non abstineant*. Cic. *Dētrūdēt nāves scōpulo*, They push the ships from the rock. Virg. *Nāvi ēgressus est*. Nep. *Excēdere finibus*. Liv. *Cesar praelio sūpersēdere stāuit*. Cæs. *Tribūto ac dēlectu sūpersessum est*. Cic. So the adjective *extorris*; as, *Extorris patriā, dōmo*. Sall. And so the verbal *ēruptio*, as, *Mutinā ēruptio*. Cic.

REMARK 1. The preposition is often repeated, or one of similar signification is used; as, *Dētrāhēre de tuā famā nunquam cōgitāri*. Cic. *Ex oculis abiērunt*. Liv. *Exire a patriā*. Cic. *Exire de vitā*. Id. Cf. § 224, R. 4.

REM. 2. These compound verbs are often used without a noun; but, in many cases, it may be supplied by the mind; as, *Equites dēgressi ad pēdes cil. ēquis*. Liv. *Abire ad Deos*, scil. *vitā*. Cic.

REM. 3. Some verbs compounded with *ab, de*, and *ex*, instead of the ablative, are sometimes followed by the dative. See § 224, R. 1 and 2. Some compounds, also, of neuter verbs, occur with the accusative. See § 233, R. 1.

## ABLATIVE AFTER CERTAIN NOUNS, ADJECTIVES, AND VERBS.

§ 243. *Opus* and *ūsus*, signifying *need*, usually take the ablative of the thing needed; as,

*Auctōritāte tuā nobis opus est*, We need your authority. Cic. *Nunc ānīmīs opus, nunc pectōre firmo*. Virg. *Nāves, quibus consūli ūsus non esset*, Ships, for which the consul had no occasion. Liv. *Nunc viribus ūsus, nunc mānibus rapt*. Virg.

REMARK 1. (a.) *Opus* and *ūsus* are sometimes followed by the ablative of a perfect participle; as, *Mātūrāto opus est*, There is need of haste. Liv. *Usus facto est mihi*. Ter. *Ubi summus impērātor non ādest ad exercitum, citius, quod non facto est ūsus, fit, quam quod facto est opus*. Plaut. After *opus*, a noun is sometimes expressed with the participle; as, *Opus fuit Hirtio convento*,—of meeting, or, to meet, § 274, R. 5. Cic. *Opus sibi esse dōmīno ējus invento*. Liv.—or a supine is used; as, *Ita dictu opus est*, It is necessary to say, I must say. Ter.—Instead of the ablative with *opus est*, an infinitive, either alone or with a subject accusative, or *ut* with a subjunctive clause, sometimes occurs; as, *Opus est te ānīmō valēre*. Cic. *Mihi opus est, ut lāvem*. Id.

(b.) *Opus* and *ūsus*, though nouns, are seldom limited by the genitive. In a few passages they are construed with the accusative. See § 211, R. 11.

REM. 2. *Opus* is sometimes the subject and sometimes the predicate of *est*; *usus*, which seldom occurs except in ante-classic poets, is, with only rare exceptions, the subject only. The person to whom the thing is needful is put in the dative; (§ 226.) With *opus* the thing needed may either be the subject of the verb in the nominative or accusative, or follow it in the ablative; as, *Dux nobis opus est*. Cic. *Verres multa sibi opus esse aiēbat*. Id.; or, *Dūce nobis opus est*. The former construction is most common with neuter adjectives and pronouns; as, *Quod non opus est, asse cārum est*. Cato apud Sen.—In the predicate *opus* and *ūsus* are commonly translated ‘needful’ or ‘necessary’ Cf. § 210, R. 4.

NOTE For the ablative of character, quality, etc., limiting a noun, see § 211, R. 6

§ 244. *Dignus, indignus, contentus, præditus, and frētus*, are followed by the ablative of the object; as,

*Dignus* laude, Worthy of praise. Hor. *Vox pōpuli mājestāte indigna*, A speech unbecoming the dignity of the people. Cæs. *Bestiæ eo contentæ non querunt amplius*. Cic. *Hōmo scēlère præditus*. Id. *Plērique ingēnio frētī*. Id.—So, *Æquam est me atque illo*. Plaut.

REMARK 1. The adverb *digne*, in one passage, takes the ablative; *Peccat ūter nostrum cruce dignius*. Hor.—*Dignor*, also, both as the passive of the obsolete *digno*, and as a deponent verb, is followed by an ablative of the thing, As a deponent it takes also an accusative of the person; as, *Haud æquidem tāli me hōnōre dignor*. Virg.—Pass. *Qui tāli hōnōre dignāti sunt*. Cic. Conjūgio, *Archisa, Vēneris dignāte sūperbo*. Virg.—Sometimes as a deponent, instead of the ablative of the thing, it is followed by an infinitive clause; as, *Non ego grammaticas ambire tribus et pulpita dignor*. Hor. And both *dignor* and *dēdignor* are followed by two accusatives, one of the object the other of the predicate. See § 230, R. 2.

REM. 2. (a.) *Dignus* and *indignus* are sometimes followed by the genitive; as, *Suscipe cōgītatiōnem dignissimam tuæ virtūtis*. Cic. *Indignus avōrum*. Virg.; and *dignus* sometimes takes a neuter pronoun or adjective in the accusative; as, *Non me censes scīre quid dignus siem?* Plaut. *Frētus* is in Livy construed with the dative. Cf. § 222, R. 6, (b.)

(b.) Instead of an ablative, *dignus* and *indignus* often take an infinitive, especially in the passive; as, *Erāt dignus amārī*. Virg.; or a subjunctive clause, with *qui* or *ut*; as, *Dignus qui impēret*. Cic. *Non sum dignus, ut figam pālum in pāriētem*. Plaut.; or the supine in *u*; as, *Digna atque indigna relātu vōciferans*. Virg. *Contentus* is likewise joined with the infinitive; as, *Non hæc artes contenta pāternas edidicisse fuit*. Ovid.—So, *Nāves pontum irrumpēro frētæ*. Stat.

§ 245. I. *Utor, fruor, fungor, pōtior, vescor*, and their compounds, are followed by the ablative; as,

*Ad quem tum Jūno supplex* his vōcibus ūsa est,—addressed these words. Virg. *Fruī* vōluptāte, To enjoy pleasure. Cic. *Fungitur officio*, He performs his duty. Id. *Oppido pōtiti sunt*. Liv. *Vescitur aurā*. Virg. His rēbus *perfruor*. Cic. *Lēgibus abūtī*. Id. *Dēfuncti* impērio. Liv. Grāvi opēre *perfungimur*. Cic. *O tandem magnis pēlāgi dēfuncte pēriclis*. Virg.

The compounds are *abutor, deutor, perfruor, defungor*, and *perfungor*.

NOTE. *Utor* may take a second ablative, as an apposition or a predicate, like the predicate accusative, (§ 230, R. 2), and may then be translated by the verb *to have*; as, *Ille facili me utētur patre*, He shall have in me an indulgent father. Ter.

REMARK. In early writers these verbs sometimes take an accusative; as, *Quam rem mēdici utuntur*. Varr. *Ingēnium frui*. Ter. *Datāmes militāre mūsus fungens*. Nep. *Gentem aliquam urbem nostram pōtūram pūtem*. Cic. *Saras lauros rescari*. Tibull. *In prōlōgis scribendis opēram abūtitur*. Ter.—*Pōtior* is, also, found with the genitive. See § 220, 4.

II. 1. *Nitor, innitor, fīdo* and *confīdo*, may be followed by the ablative without a preposition; as, *Hastā innixus*. Liv. *Fidēre cursu*. Ovid. *Nātūræ scī confidēbant*. Cæs.

2. *Misceo* with its compounds takes, with the accusative of the object, the ablative of the thing mingled with; as, *Miscēre pābula sāle*. Coll. *Aquas nec-tāre*. Ovid. *Aër multo calōre admixtus*. Cic.

3. *Assuesco, assuēfacio, consuesco, insuesco*, and sometimes *acquiesco*, take either the dative or the ablative of the thing; as, *Aves sanguine et prædā assuētæ*. Hor. *Nullo officio aut disciplinā assuēfactus*. Cæs. Cf. § 224.

4. *Vivo* and *ēpūlor*, 'to live or feast upon,' are followed by the ablative; as *Dāpībus ēpūlāmur ōpīmis*. Virg. *Lacte atque pēcōre vivunt*. Cæs.

5. *Sto* signifying 'to be filled or covered with,' and also when signifying 'to cost,' is followed by the ablative without a preposition; when signifying 'to persevere in, stick to, abide by,' 'to rest or be fixed on,' it is followed by the ablative either with or without *in*; as, *Jam pulvĕre cælum stāre vident*. Virg.—*Multo sanguīne ac vulnĕribus ea Pēnīs victōria stētit*. Liv. *Stāre conditionibus*. Cic. *Omnīs in Ascānio stat cūra pārentis*. Virg.—*Consto*, 'to consist of' or 'to rest upon,' is followed by the ablative either alone or with *ex*, *de*, or *in*; as, *Constat mātĕries sōlido corpōre*. Lucr. *Hōmo ex ānīmo constat et corpōre*. Cic.

REMARK 1. *Fīdo*, *confīdo*, *misceo*, *admisceo*, *permisceo*, and *assuesco* often take the dative.

REM. 2. When a preposition is expressed after the above verbs, *sto*, *fīdo*, *confīdo*, *nītor*, *innītor*, and *assuesco* take *in* or *ad*; *acquiesco*, *in*; and *misceo* with its compounds, *cum*.

§ 246. Perfect participles denoting *origin* are often followed by the ablative of the *source*, without a preposition.

Such are *nātus*, *prōgnātus*, *sātus*, *creātus*, *crētus*, *ēdītus*, *gĕnītus*, *gĕnĕrātus*, *ortus*; to which may be added *ōriundus*, descended from.

Thus, *Nāte deā!* O son of a goddess! Virg. *Tantālo prōgnātus*, Descended from Tantalus. Cic. *Sātus Nĕreīde*, Sprung from a Nereid. Ovid. *Creātus rĕge*. Id. *Alcānōre crēti*. Virg. *Edīte rĕgibus*. Hor. *Diis gĕnite*. Virg. *Argōlīco gĕnĕrātus Alēmōne*. Ovid. *Ortus nullis mājōribus*. Hor. *Celestī sēmīne ōriundi*. Lucr.

REMARK 1. The preposition is also rarely omitted after the verbs *creo*, *gĕnĕro*, and *nascor*; as, *Uī patre certo nascĕrĕre*. Cic. *Fortes creantur fortibus*. Hor.

REM. 2. After participles denoting origin, the preposition *ex* or *de* is usually joined to the name of the mother; and in a few passages *ex* or *ab* is joined to the name of the father; as, *Prōgnāti ab Dīte patre*. Cæs. In speaking of one's ancestors *ab* is frequently used; as, *Plērosque Belgas esse ortos a Germānis*. Id.

REM. 3. Origin from a place or country is generally expressed by a patrial adjective; as, *Thrāsībūlus Athēniensis*, Thrasybulus of Athens. Livy often uses *ab*; as, *Turnus Herdōnius ab Ariciā*. Cæsar prefers the ablative alone; as, *Cn. Magius Crēmōnā*; and in this manner is expressed the tribe to which a person belongs; as, *Q. Verres Rōmiliā*,—of the Romilian tribe.

## ABLATIVE OF CAUSE, ETC.

§ 247. Nouns denoting the *cause*, *manner*, *means*, and *instrument*, after adjectives and verbs, are put in the ablative without a preposition.

NOTE. The English prepositions with the ablative of cause, manner, means, and instrument are *by*, *with*, *in*, etc.

1. The *cause*. (1.) Adjectives which have a passive signification, as denoting a state or condition produced by some external cause, may take such cause in the ablative; as,

*Campāni fuĕrunt sūperbi bōnītāte agrōrum*. Cic. *Animal pābūlo letum*. Sen. *Prælio fessi lassique*, Weary and faint with the battle. Sall. *Hōmīnes agrāvi morbo*. Cic.

(2.) Neuter verbs expressing an action, state or feeling of the subject originating in some external cause, may take that cause in the ablative; as,



*Intēriit fāme*, He perished with hunger. *Laude āliēnā dōlet*. Cic. *Lātor tuā dignitāte*. Id. *Gaude tuo bōno*. Id. *Suā victōriā glōriāri*. Cæs. *Aquilōnibus labōrant quercēta*. Hor.—So with *bēne est* and the dative; as, *Mihi bēne erat non piscibus urbe pētītis, sed pullo atque hādo*. Hor. *Ubi illi bēne sit ligno, aquā cālīdā, eibo, vestimentis*, etc. Plaut.

NOTE 1. After such adjectives and neuter verbs, a preposition with its case often supplies the place of the simple ablative.

NOTE 2. In exclamations of encouragement or approbation the defective adjective *macte*, *macti*, either with or without the imperative of *esse* (*esto, este, estōte*), is joined with an ablative of cause, especially with *virtūte*.

NOTE 3. After neuter verbs and adjectives denoting emotions, accusative those of *care*, *grief*, and *sorrow*, the accusative *vīcem*, with a genitive or a possessive pronoun, is used, instead of the ablative *vīce*, to signify 'for' or 'on account of'; as, *Rēmīttimus hoc tibi, ne nostram vīcem irascāris*, That you may not be angry on our account. Liv. *Tuam vīcem sēpe dōleo, quod*, etc. Cic. *Suam vīcem māgis anxius, quam ejus, cui auxilium ab se pētēbātur*. Liv.

REMARK 1. When the cause is a voluntary agent, it is put in the accusative with the preposition *ob*, *propter*, or *per*; as, *Non est æquum me propter vos dīcīpi*. Ter. These prepositions, and *a*, or *ab*, *de*, *e* or *ex*, and *præ*, are also sometimes used when the cause is not a voluntary agent; as, *Ob adultērium cæsi*. Virg. *Nec loqui præ mœrōre pōtuit*. Cic.

REM. 2. (a.) After active verbs, the cause, unless expressed by an ablative in *u* from substantives having no other case; as, *Jussu, rōgātu* and *admōnītu*, is seldom expressed by the simple ablative, but either by a preposition, or by *causā*, *gratiā*, *ergo*, etc., with a genitive; as, *Lēgibus propter mētum pāret*. Cic. *Ne ob eam rem ipsos dēspicēret*. Id. *Dōnāri virtūtis ergo*. Id. *Si hoc hōnōris mei causā suscēpēris*. Id. But with *causā*, etc., the adjective pronoun is commonly used for the corresponding substantive pronoun; as, *Te ābesse meā causā, mōleste fēro*. Cic. Cf. § 211, R. 3, (b.)

(b.) When the cause is a state of feeling, a circumlocution is often used with a perfect participle of some verb signifying 'to induce'; as, *Cūpīditāte ductus, inductus, incītātus, incensus, inflammātus, impulsus, mōtus, captus*, etc. *Mihi bēnē-volentiā ductus tribuēbat omnia*. Cic. Livy frequently uses *ab* in this sense; as, *Ab irā, a spe, ab odio*, from anger, hope, hatred.

2. The *manner*. *Cum* is regularly joined with the ablative of manner, when expressed simply by a noun, not modified by any other word; and also when an adjective is joined with the noun, provided an additional circumstance, and not merely an essential character of the action, is to be expressed. Thus:

*Cum vōluptāte āliquem audire*. *Verres Lampsācum vēnit cum magnā cālāmī-tātē civitātis*. Cic. Hence also when the connection between the subject and the noun denoting the attribute is only external; as, *Prōcēdere cum veste purpureā*: in distinction from *Nūdis pēdibus incēdere*; *Aperto capite sēdere*, etc., which express circumstances or attributes essential to the subject.

*Ent mōdus, rātio, mos, ritus*, etc., signifying manner, never take *cum*, and it is omitted in some expressions with other substantives; as, *Hoc mōdo scripsi*; *Constituērunt quā rātione āgērētur*; *Mōre bestiārum vāgārī*; *Latrōnum ritu vivēre*; *Equo animo fēro*; *Maximā fide amicitias coluit*. *Summā æquitāte res constituī*; *Viam inērēdibili celeritātē confēcīt*; *Librum magnā eūrā diligentiāque scripsīt*; the action of the verb being intimately connected with the circumstance expressed by the ablative. So in some expressions with substantives alone; as, *Silentio pratērīre* or *fāzēre āliquīd*; *Lēge āgēre*; *Jūre* and *injūriā fācēre*; *Magistrātus vitio creatus*; *Recte et ordine fīt*.

REM. 3. The *manner* is also sometimes denoted by *de* or *ex* with the ablative; as, *De* or *ex industriā*, On purpose. Liv. *Ex integro*, Anew. Quint.

3. The *means* and *instrument*. An ablative is joined with verbs of every kind, and also with adjectives of a passive signification, to express the means or instrument; as,

*Amicos observantiā, rem parsimōniā retinuit*, He retained his friends by attention, his property by frugality. Cic. *Auro ostrōque decōri*. Virg. *Ægrescū mēdendo*. Id. *Cornibus tauri, apri dentibus, morsu leōnes se tūtantur*. Cic. *Cæsus est virgis*. Id. *Trabs saucia sēcūri*. Ovid. For the ablative of the *means* after verbs of *filling*, etc., see § 249, I.

REM. 4. When the means is a person, it is seldom expressed by the simple ablative, but either by *per*, or by the ablative *opērā* with a genitive or a possessive pronoun; as, *meā, tuā, suā, opērā*, which are equivalent to *per me, per te per se*, and denote both good and bad services. *Bēnēficio meo*, etc., is used of good results only; as, *Bēnēficio meo patres sunt*. Sall. But persons are sometimes considered as involuntary agents, and as such expressed by the ablative without a preposition; as, *Servos, quibus silvas publicas depopulātus erat*. Cic.—When *per* is used to express the means, it is connected with external concurring circumstances, rather than with the real means or instrument. Hence we always say *vi oppidum cēpit*, but *per vim ei bona eripuit*.

REM. 5. The material instrument is always expressed by the ablative without a preposition; as, *Conficere cervum sagittis; gladio aliquem vulnerare; trahere pectus ferro*.

§ 248. The ablative is used with passive verbs to denote the *means* or *agent* by which any thing is effected, and which in the active voice is expressed by the nominative. This ablative is used either with *ab* or without it, according as it is a person or a thing.

I. The *voluntary agent* of a verb in the passive voice is put in the ablative with *a* or *ab*; as,

(In the active voice,) *Clōdus me diligit*, Clodius loves me (Cic.); (in the passive,) *A Clōdio diligor*, I am loved by Clodius. *Laudatur ab his, culpatur ab illis*. Hor.

REMARK 1. (1.) The general word for persons, after verbs in the passive voice, is often understood; as, *Prōbitas laudatur*, scil. *ab hōmīnibus*. Juv. So after the passive of neuter verbs; as, *Discurritur*. Virg. *Tōto certatum est corpore regni*. Id. Cf. § 141, R. 2.

(2.) The agent is likewise often understood, when it is the same as the subject of the verb, and the expression is then equivalent to the active voice with a reflexive pronoun, or to the middle voice in Greek; as, *Quum omnes in omni genere scelerum voluntur*, scil. *a se*. Cic.

REM. 2. Neuter verbs, also, are sometimes followed by an ablative of the voluntary agent with *a* or *ab*; as,

*M. Marcellus periit ab Annibale*, M. Marcellus was killed by Hannibal. Plin. *Ne vir ab hoste cadat*. Ovid.

REM. 3. The preposition is sometimes omitted; as, *Nec conjūga captus*. Ovid. *Cōlitur linigērā turbā*. Id. *Pereat meis excisus Argivis*. Hor.

For the dative of the agent after verbs in the passive voice, and participles in *dus*, see § 225, II. and III.

II. The *involuntary agent* of a verb in the passive voice, or of a neuter verb is put in the ablative without a preposition, as the cause, means, or instrument as, *Maximo dōlōre conficior*. Cic. *Frangi cupiditate*. Id. *Æacides tēlo jacea* Hector. Virg.

**NOTE.** The involuntary agent is sometimes personified, and takes *a* or *ab*. A voluptatibus deseri. Cic. A naturā datum homini vivendi cum scilicet. Ib. Vinci a voluptate. Id. Victus a labore. Id.

§ 249. I. A noun denoting the means, by which the action of a verb is performed, is put in the ablative after verbs signifying to *affect* in any way, to *fill*, *furnish*, *load*, *array*, *equip*, *endow*, *adorn*, *reward*, *enrich*, and many others.

**REMARK 1.** This rule includes such verbs as *afficio*, *aspergo*, *conspergo*, *inspergo*, *respergo*, *compleo*, *expleo*, *impleo*, *oppleo*, *repleo*, *suppleo*, *cumulo*, *farcio*, *refercio*, *satio*, *exsatio*, *satiuro*, *stipo*, *constipo*, *obruo*, *onero*, *augeo*, *induo*, *vestio*, *armo*, *orno*, *circumdo*, *circumfundo*, *mactio*, *locupletio*, *instruo*, *imbuo*, *dono*, *impertio*, *remuneror*, *honesto* *honoro*, etc.; as,

Terrōre implētur Africa, Africa is filled with terror. Sil. Instruere epulas mensas, They furnished the tables with food. Ovid. Ut ejus animum his opinionibus imbuas, That you should imbue his mind with these sentiments. Cic. Naves onerant auro, They load the ships with gold. Virg. Cumulat altaria donis He heaps the altars with gifts. Id. Terra se gramine restit, The earth clothes itself with grass. Id. Mollibus ornabat cornua sertis. Id. Multo cibo et potione complēti. Cic. Libros puerilibus fabulis refecere. Id. Satiari delectatione non possum. Id. Homines saturati honoribus. Id. Senectus stipata studiis juvenitatis. Id. Me tanto honore honestas. Plaut. Equis Africam locupletavit. Colum. Studium tuum nullā me novā voluptate affecit. Cic. Terram nox obruit umbris. Lucr.

**REM. 2.** Several verbs denoting to fill, instead of the ablative, sometimes take a genitive. See § 220, 3.

**REM. 3.** The active verbs *induo*, *dono*, *impertio*, *aspergo*, *inspergo*, *circumdo*, and *circumfundo*, instead of the ablative of the thing with the accusative of the person, sometimes take an accusative of the thing, and a dative of the person; as, Cui quum Deianira tunicam induisset. Cic. Donare munera civitas. In the earliest writers *dono*, like *condono*, has sometimes two accusatives or an accusative of the person with the infinitive.

II. A noun denoting that in *accordance* with which any thing is, or is done, is often put in the ablative without a preposition; as,

Nostro more, According to our custom. Cic. Instituto suo Caesar copius suas eduxit, According to his practice. Cæs. Id factum consilio meo,—by my advice. Ter. Pacem fecit his conditionibus,—on these conditions. Nep.

**NOTE.** The prepositions *de*, *ex*, *pro*, and *secundum* are often expressed with such nouns; as, Neque est facturum quidquam nisi de meo consilio. Cic. Ex consuetudine aliquid facere. Plin. Ep. Decet quidquid agas, agere pro viribus. Vic. Secundum naturam vivere. Id.

III The ablative denoting *accompaniment*, is usually joined with *cum*; as,

Vagamur ægentes cum conjugibus et liberis, Needy, we wander with our wives and children. Cic. Sepe admirari soleo cum hoc C. Laelio. Id. Julium cum his ad te literis misi. Id. Ingressus est cum gladio. Id. Romam veni cum feltri. Cum occasu solis copius educere,—as soon as the sun set.

**REMARK.** But *cum* is sometimes omitted before words denoting military and naval forces, when limited by an adjective; as, Ad castra Caesaris omnibus copiis contendērunt. Cæs. Inde toto exercitu profectus. Liv. Eodem decem navibus C. Furius venit. Liv. And sometimes in military language *cum* is omitted, when accompanying circumstances are mentioned, and not persons; as, Castra clamore invadunt.



§ 250. 1. A noun, adjective, or verb, may be followed by the ablative, denoting *in what respect* their signification is taken; as,

*Piētate filius, consiliis pārens*, In affection a son, in counsel a parent. Cic. *Rēges nōmīne māgis quam impērio*, Kings in name rather than in authority. Nep. *Oppidum nōmīne Bibrax*. Cæs.—*Jūre pēritus*, Skilled in law. Cic. *Anxius animo*, Anxious in mind. Tac. *Pēdibus æger*, Lame in his feet. Sall. *Crīne rāber, niger ore*. Mart. *Fronte lætus*. Tac. *Māior nātū*. Cic. *Prudentiā non infērior, ūsu vērō etiā supērior*. Id. *Maximus nātū*. Liv.—*Animo angī*, To be troubled in mind. Cic. *Contrēmisco tōtā mente et omnibus artibus*, I am agitated in my whole mind and in every limb. Id. *Captus mente*, Affected in mind, i. e. deprived of reason. Id. *Altēro oculo cāpitur*. Liv. *Ingēniū laude flōrūt*. Cic. *Pollere nobilitate*. Tac. *Animōque et corpore torpet*. Hor.

REMARK. This may be called the *ablative of limitation*, and denotes the relation expressed in English by ‘in respect of,’ ‘in regard to,’ ‘as to,’ or ‘in.’—Respecting the genitive of limitation after adjectives, see § 213;—after verbs, § 220, 1: and respecting the accusative of limitation, see § 231, R. 5; § 232, (8.); and § 234, II.

2. (1.) Adjectives of plenty or want are sometimes limited by the ablative; as,

*Dōmus plēna servis*, A house full of servants. Juv. *Dives agris*, Rich in land. Hor. *Fērax sæcūlum bonis artibus*. Plin.—*Inops verbis*, Deficient in words. Cic. *Orba frātribus*, Destitute of brothers. Ovid. *Viduum arbōribus solum*. Colum. *Nūdus agris*. Hor. For the genitive after adjectives of plenty and want, see § 213, R. 3–5.

(2.) Verbs signifying to abound, and to be destitute, are followed by the ablative; as,

*Scātentem belluis pontum*, The sea abounding in monsters. Hor. *Urbs rēdundat militibus*, The city is full of soldiers. Auct. ad Hor. *Villa abundat porco, hædo, agno, gallinā, lacte, cāseo, melle*. Cic.—*Vīrum qui pēcūniā ēgeat*, A man who is in want of money. Id. *Cārere culpā*, To be free from fault. Id. *Mea adolescentia indiget illōrum bonā existimātiōne*. Id. *Abundat audaciā, consilio et ratiōne deficitur*. Id.

REMARK 1. To this rule belong *abundo, exubero, rēdundo, scāteo, affluo, circumfluo, disfluo, superfluo, suppedito, valeo, vigeo*;—*cāreo, ēgeo, indigeo, vāco, deficior, destituor*, etc.

REM. 2. The *genitive*, instead of the ablative, sometimes follows certain verbs signifying to abound or to want. See § 220, 3.

REM. 3. To do any thing with a person or thing, is expressed in Latin by *fācere* with *de*; as, *Quid de Tulliolā meā fiet?* Cic; and more frequently by the simple ablative, or the dative; as, *Quid hoc homīne or huic homīni faciātis?* What can you do with this man? Cic. *Nescit quid faciat auro*,—what he shall do with the gold. Plaut. *Quid me fiat parvi pendis*, You care little what becomes of me. Ter.—*Sum* is occasionally used in the same manner; as, *Metum cōpērunt quidnam se futurum esset*,—what would become of them. Liv.

§ 251. A noun denoting that of which any thing is deprived, or from which it is freed, removed, or separated, is often put in the ablative without a preposition.

This construction occurs after verbs signifying to *deprive, free, deprive, drive away, remove, depart*, and others which imply separation.

NOTE. The principal verbs of this class are *arceo*, *pello*, *dēpello*, *expello*, *abdicō*, *interdicō*, *dēfendo*, *dēturbo*, *dējicio*, *ējicio*, *absterreo*, *dēterreo*, *mōveo*, *āmōveo*, *dēmōveo*, *rēmōveo*, *sēcerno*, *prōhibeo*, *sēpāro*, *exclūdo*, *interclūdo*, *ābeo*, *exeo*, *cēdo*, *dēcēdo*, *discēdo*, *dēsisto*, *ēvādo*, *abstīneo*, *spōlio*, *prīvo*, *orbo*, *libēro*, *expēdio*, *laxo*, *nūdo*, *solvo*, *exsolvo*, *exōnēro*, *lēvo*, *purgo*, to which may be added the adjectives *liber*, *immūnis*, *pūrus*, *vācuus*, and *āliēnus*; as,

*Nūlantur arbōres fōliis*, The trees are stripped of leaves. Plin. *Hoc me libēra mētā*, Free me from this fear. Ter. *Tūne eam philōsōphiam sēquēre, quæ spōliat nū* *us jūdicio, privat apprōbātiōne, orbat sensibus?* Cic. *Solvit se Teucra luctu*. Virg. *Te illis sēdibus arcēbit*. Cic. *Q. Varium pellere possessiōnibus cōnātus est* Id. *Omnes tribu rēmōti*. Liv. *Lēvare se ære āliēno*. Cic. *Me lēves chōri sēcernunt pōpulo*. Hor. *Animus omni liber cūrā et angōre*. Cic. *Utrumque hōminū āliēnissimum*. Id. When *āliēnus* signifies 'averse' or 'hostile to,' it takes the ablative with *ab*, or rarely the dative; as, *Id dicit, quod illi causæ maximo est āliēnum*. Id. In the sense of 'unsuited,' it may also be joined with the genitive; as, *Quis āliēnum pūtet ējus esse dignitātis?* Id.—*Alius* too, in analogy with adjectives and verbs of separation, sometimes takes an ablative; as, *Nēce pites ālium sāpiente bōnōque beātum*. Hor.; but this may also be referred to the ablative after comparatives. Cf. § 256, R. 14.

REMARK 1. Most verbs of depriving and separating are more or less frequently followed by *ab*, *de* or *ex*, with the ablative of the thing, and always by *ab* with the ablative of the person; as, *Tu Jūpiter, hunc a tuis āris arcēbis*. Cic. *Præsidiū ex arce pēpulerunt*. Nep. *Aquam de agro pellere*. Plin. *Ex ingrātā civitāte cēdere*. Cic. *Arcem ab incendio libērāvit*. Id. *Solvēre belluam ex cātēnis*. Auct. ad Her.—*Sēdes rēmōtas a Germānis*. Cæs. *Se ab Etruscis sēcernēre*. Liv.

REM. 2. *Arceo*, in the poets, sometimes takes the dative, see § 224, R. 2., and sometimes an infinitive; as, *Plāgamque sēdere cēdendo arcēbat*. Ovid.—*Prōhibeo* and *dēfendo* take either the accusative of the person or thing to be defended, with the ablative of the thing to be warded off—or the reverse—*āliquem* or *āliquid a pēriculo*, or *pēriculum ab āliquo*. They are also sometimes construed with the dative, see § 224, R. 2, and sometimes with infinitive or subjunctive clauses. *Prōhibeo* has rarely two accusatives; as, *Id te Jūpiter prōhibessit*. Plaut.; or poetically the accusative and genitive; as, *Captæ prōhibēre Pænos āquīlæ*. Sil.—*Interdicō* takes the person either in the accusative or the dative, and the thing in the ablative, *āliquem* or *ālicui* *āliquā re*; as, *Quibus quum āquā et igni interdixissent*. Cæs.—Instead of the ablative, a subjunctive clause with *ne*, and more rarely with *ut*, sometimes follows *interdicō*.—*Absum*, in like manner, takes the ablative with *ab*, and sometimes the dative; as, *Curtæ nescio quid semper ābest rei*. Hor. Cf. § 224, R. 1.—*Abdicō* takes sometimes an ablative, and sometimes an accusative of the thing renounced; as, *Abdicāre se māgistrātu*. Cic. *Abdicāre māgistrātum*. Sall. In Plautus, *circumdūco*, to cheat, takes the ablative of the thing. *Interclūdo*, instead of an ablative of the thing with an accusative of the person, sometimes takes an accusative of the thing and a dative of the person; as, *Itinērum angustīæ multitudine fūgam interclūsērunt*. Cæs.: and, instead of the ablative of the thing, a subjunctive clause with *quōminus* occurs: *Interclūdor dōlōre, quōminus ad te plū a scribam*. Cic.

REM. 3. Verbs which signify to *distinguish*, to *differ*, and to *disagree*, are generally construed with *ab*, but sometimes, especially in the poets, with the ablative alone.

NOTE. Verbs signifying to distinguish, etc., are *distinguo*, *discerno*, *sēcerno*, *diffēro*, *discrēpo*, *dissideo*, *disto*, *dissentio*, *discordo*, *ābhorreo*, *āliēno*, and *ābāliēno*.—*Dissentio*, *dissideo*, *discrēpo*, and *discordo* are construed also with *cum*.—The verbs which signify to *differ* are sometimes construed with the dative; as, *Distat infido scurræ āmicus*. Hor., and in like manner the adjective *diversus*; as, *Nihil est tam Lysīæ diversum, quam Isocrātes*. Quint.



## ABLATIVE OF PRICE.

§ 252. The *price* or *value* of a thing is put in the ablative, when it is a definite sum, or is expressed by a substantive; as,

*Quum te trēcentis tālentis rēgi Cotto vendidisses*, When you had sold yourself to king Cottus for three hundred talents. Cic. *Vendidit hic auro patriam*, This one sold his country for gold. Virg. *Cibus uno asse venālis*. Plin. *Constitit quādringentis millibus*. Varr. *Dēnis in diem assibus ānimum et corpus (militum) aestimāri*. Tac. *Lēvi mōmento aestimāre*. Cæs. *Istuc verbum vile est viginti minis*. Plaut. *Asse cārum est*. Sen. Ep.

REMARK 1. The verbs which take an ablative of price or value are (1) *aestimo*, *æſco*, *fācio*, *fio*, *hābeo*, *pendo*, *pōto*, *dēpōto*, *taxo*; (2) *ēmo*, *mercor*, *vendo*, *do*, *vēneo*, *sto*, *consto*, *prosto*, *condūco*, *lōco*, *vāleo*, *lvo*, and *liceo*.—To these must be added others, which express some act or enjoyment for which a certain price is paid; as, *Lāvor quādrante*. *Trīginta millibus Caelius hābitat*. Cic. *Vix drachmis est obrōnātus dēcem*. Ter. *Dōceo tālento*, etc. So *esse* in the sense 'to be worth'; as, *Sextante sal in Itāliā erat*.

REM. 2. Respecting the genitive of price or value, when expressed in a *general* or *indefinite* manner, see § 214.

REM. 3. The price of a thing, contrary to the general rule, is often expressed indefinitely by a neuter adjective; as, *magno*, *permagno*, *parvo*, *tantūlo*, *plūre*, *minimo*, *plūrimo*, *vili*, *viliōri*, *vilissimo*, *nimio*, etc.; as, *Plūre venit*. Cic. *Conduxit non magno dōmum*. Id. These adjectives refer to some noun understood, as *prētio*, *ære*, and the like, which are sometimes expressed; as, *Parvo prētio ea vendidisse*. Cic.—The adverbs *bene*, *pulchre*, *recte*, *māle*, *cāre*, etc., sometimes take the place of the genitive or ablative of price; as, *Bene emēre*; *recte vendēre*; *optime vendēre*, etc.

REM. 4. Varro has used *vāleo* with the accusative; as, *Dēnārii dicti, quod dēnos æris vālēbant*.

REM. 5. *Mūto* and its compounds, *commūto* and *permūto*, are commonly construed like verbs of selling, the thing parted with being put in the accusative, and the thing received in exchange for it, in the ablative; as, *Chāōniam glandem pingui mūtāvit aristā*. Virg. But these cases are often reversed, so that the thing received is put in the accusative and the thing given for it in the ablative; as, *Cur valle permūtem Sābinā divitias opērosiōres?* Why should I exchange my Sabine valley for more wearisome riches? Hor.—Sometimes in this construction *cum* is joined with the ablative.

## ABLATIVE OF TIME.

§ 253. A noun denoting the *time at* or *within* which any thing is said to be, or to be done, is put in the ablative without a preposition; as,

*Die quinto dēcessit*, He died on the fifth day. Nep. *Hoc tempore*, At this time. Cic. *Tertiā vigiliā ēruptionem fēcērunt*, They made a sally at the third watch. Cæs. *Ut hieme nāviges*, That you should sail in the winter. Cic. *Proximo triennio omnes gentes subēgit*. Nep. *Agamemnon cum universā Græciā vix dēcem annis unam cēpit urbem*. Nep.

NOTE 1. The English expression 'by day' is rendered in Latin either by *interdiu* or *die*; 'by night,' by *noctu* or *nocte*; and 'in the evening,' by *vespère* or *vespəri*; see § 82, Exc. 5, (a.) *Lūdis* is used for *in tempore ludōrum*; and *Sāturnālibus*, *Lātīnis*, *glādiātōribus*, for *lūdis Sāturnālibus*, etc. Other nouns not witherly expressing time are used in that sense in the ablative either with or propout *in*, as *initio*, *principio*, *adventu* and *discessu ālicujus*, *cōmittis*, *nūmultu bello*, *pāce*, etc.; or *in initio*, etc. But *bello* is more common without *in*, if it is



joined with an adjective or a genitive; as, *Bello Pūnico sēcundo, bello Lātīnōrum*; and so, also, *pugnā Cannensī*. So we say in *puērītiā*, but omit in with an adjective; as, *extrēmā puērītiā*. *In* is very rarely used with nouns expressing a certain space of time; as, *annus, dies, hōra*, etc., for the purpose of denoting the time of an event. *In tempore* signifies either 'in distress,' or 'in time,' i. e. 'at the right time'; but in both cases *tempore* alone is used, and *tempore* in the sense of 'early' has even become an adverb, an earlier form of which was *tempōri* or *tempēri*, whose comparative is *tempērius*.

REMARK 1. When a period is marked by its distance before or after another fixed time, it may be expressed by *ante* or *post* with either the accusative or the ablative.—(a.) The preposition is regularly placed before the accusative, but after the ablative. If an adjective is used, the preposition is often placed between the adjective and the noun. In this connection the ordinal as well as the cardinal numbers may be used. Hence the English phrase 'after three years,' or 'three years after,' may be expressed in these eight ways; *post tres annos, tribus annis post; post tertium annum, tertio anno post; tres post annos, tribus post annis; tertium post annum, tertio post anno*.

(b.) When *ante* or *post* stands last, an accusative may be added to denote the time before or after which any thing took place; as, *Multis annis post dēcenīviros*. Cic. So *Consul factus est annis post Rōmā conditam trēcentis duōdēnōnāginta*.

NOTE 2. *Post* and *ante* sometimes precede the ablatives, as *ante annis octo; post paucis diēbus*; and also before such ablatives as are used adverbially, as *post aliquanto; ante paulo*.

NOTE 3. *Quam* and a verb are sometimes added to *post* and *ante* in all the forms above specified; e. g. *tribus annis postquam vēnērāt; post tres annos quam vēnērāt; tertio anno postquam vēnērāt; post annum tertium quam vēnērāt*, etc.; all of which expressions signify 'three years after he had come.' Sometimes *post* is omitted; as, *tertio anno quam vēnērāt*.

NOTE 4. Instead of *postquam*, 'after,' we may use *ex quo, quum*, or a relative agreeing with the preceding ablative; as, *Ipse octo diēbus, quibus has lītēras dābam, cum Lēpidi cōpias me conjungam*; i. e. in eight days after the date of this letter. Planc. in Cic. Fam. *Mors Sex. Roscii quatriduo, quo is occisus est, Chrīsogōno nuntiātur*,—four days after he had been killed. Cic. *Quem triduo, quum has dābam lītēras, exspectābam*,—three days after the date of this letter. Planc. in Cic. In such cases *in* is sometimes joined with the ablative; as, *In diēbus paucis, quibus hæc acta sunt, moritur*. Ter.

REM. 2. The length of time before the present moment may be expressed by *ābhinc* with the accusative, and, less frequently, the ablative; as, *Questor fuisti ābhinc annos quātūordēcim*. Cic. *Cōmītiis jam ābhinc trīginta diēbus habitis*. Id. The same is also expressed by *ante* with the pronoun *hic*; as, *ante hos sex menses maledixisti mihi*,—six months ago. Phæd. *Ante* is sometimes used instead of *ābhinc*: and the length of time before is sometimes expressed by the ablative joined with *hic* or *ille*; as, *Paucis his diēbus*, or *paucis illis diēbus*,—a few days ago.

REM. 3. The time at which any thing is done, is sometimes expressed by the reuter accusative *id*, with a genitive; as, *Vēnit id tempōris*. Cic. So with a preposition; *Ad id diēi*. Gell. See § 212, R. 3.

REM. 4. (a.) The time at or within which any thing is done, is sometimes, with personal subjects, expressed by *de*, with the ablative; as, *De tertiā vigiliā ad hostes contendit*,—in the third watch. Cæs. *Ut jugulent homines surgunt de nocte latrones*. Hor. So, also, with *sub*; as, *Ne sub ipsā profectiōe milites oppidum irrumpērent*,—at the very time of his departure. Cæs. *Sub adventu Romanorum*, While the Romans were arriving. Id.

(b.) The time within which any thing occurs, is also sometimes expressed by *intra* with the accusative; as, *Dimidium partem natiōnum subēgit intra viginti dies*. Plaut. *Intra dēcimum diem, quam Phēras vēnērāt*, In less than ten days after... Liv

REM. 5. The time within which a thing happens, is often expressed by the ablative with *in*; especially (a) in connection with numerals; as, *Bis in die sātūrum fieri*; *vix ter in anno nuntium audire*; and (b), as in the use of *intra*, to denote that the event happened before the time specified had fully expired.

REM. 6. Instead of *in pueritiā, adolescentiā, iuventūte, senectūte*, etc., in stating the age at which a person performed any action, the concretes *puer, adolescens, iuvenis, senex*, etc., are commonly joined to the verb; as, *Ch. Pompeius, adolescens se et patrem consilio servavit*.—So, also, adjectives ending in *enārius* are sometimes used in stating the number of years a person has lived; as, *Cicero sexagēnārius*.

For the ablative denoting duration of time, see § 236.

## ABLATIVE OF PLACE.

§ 254. The name of a town *in which* any thing is said to be, or to be done, if of the third declension or plural number, is put in the ablative without a preposition; as,

*Alexander Bābylōne est mortuus*, Alexander died at Babylon. Cic. *Intērērūt multum*—*Thēbis nūtritus an Argis*,—whether brought up at Thebes or at Argos. Hor. *Nātus Tibūre vel Gābiis*. Id.

REMARK 1. 'In the country' is expressed by *rūre*, or more commonly by *rūri*, without a preposition; as, *Pater filium rūri hābitāre jussit*. Cic. With an adjective only *rūre* is used; as, *Interdum nūgāris rūre pāterno*. Hor. Cf. § 221, N.

REM. 2. (a.) The preposition *in* is sometimes expressed with names of towns; as, *In Philippis quidam nunciāvit*. Suet.

(b.) Names of towns of the first and second declension, and singular number, and also *dōmus* and *hūmus*, are in like manner sometimes put in the ablative without *in*. See § 221, R. 2 and R. 3.—So, also, *terrā mārīque*, by land and by sea. *In* is also frequently omitted with *lōco* and *lōcis*, especially when joined with an adjective and having the meaning of 'occasion'; as, *Hoc lōco, multis lōcis*, etc.—*Libro* joined with an adjective, as *hoc, primo*, etc., is used without *in* when the whole book is meant, and with *in* when only a portion is referred to. An ablative of place joined with *tōto, tōtā, tōtis*, is generally used without *in*; as, *Urbe tōtā gēmītus fit*. Cic. *Tōtā Asiā vāgātur*. Id. *Tōto mārī*. Id. But in such cases *in* is sometimes used. So *cunctā Asiā*. Liv.

REM. 3. Before the names of countries, of nations used for those of countries, and of all other places in which any thing is said to be or to be done, except those of towns, and excepting also the phrases specified in the first and second remarks, the preposition *in* is commonly used; as, *Iphicrātes in Thrāciā vixit*, *Chares in Sigēo*. Nep. *Rūre ego viventem, tu dicis in urbe beātūm*. Hor. *Aio hoc fieri in Grāciā*. Plaut. *In Bactriānis Sogdiānisque urbes conludit*. *Lūcus in urbe fuit*. Virg. But it is sometimes omitted by writers of every class and period; as, *Mīlites stātivis castris hābēbat*. Sall. *Magnis in laudibus fuit tōtā Grāciā*. Nep. *Pōpuli sensus maxime theātro et spectāculis perspectus est*. Cic. *Pompeius se oppido tēnet*. Id. In the poets and later prose writers this omission is of very frequent occurrence not only with names of towns but with ablatives of all nouns answering to the question, where? as, *Nāvita puppe pēdens*. Ovid. *Ibam forte Viā Sacrā*. Hor. *Silvisque agrisque viisque corpōra fēcū iuvenē*. Ovid. *Mēdio alveo concursus est*. Liv.—*Fōris*, out at the door, abroad, is properly an ablative of place; as, *Fōris cēnat*. Cic. Cf. § 237, R. 5, (c.)

§ 255. 1. After verbs expressing or implying motion, the name of a town *whence* the motion proceeds, is put in the ablative, without a preposition; as,

*Brundisio profecti sumus*, We departed from Brundisium. Cic. *Diogenes Syracensis expulsus Corinthi pueros docebat*. Id. *Demetrius Tarquinios Corintho fugit*. Id. *Accipi tuas literas datus Placentiam*. Id. *Interim Romam per literas certior fit*; scil. *datus* or *missus*. Sall. J. 82. So, also, after a verbal noun; as, *Narbonem reditus*. Cic.

REMARK 1. The ablatives *domo*, *humo*, and *rure* or *ruri*, are used like names of towns, to denote the place whence motion proceeds; as,

*Domo profectus*, Having set out from home. Nep. *Surgit humo juvenis*, The youth rises from the ground. Ovid. *Rure huc advenit*. Ter. *Si ruri veniet*. Id. Virgil uses *domo* with *unde*; as, *Qui genus? unde domo?* and Livy instead of *domo abesse*, has *esse ab domo*. With an adjective, *rure*, and not *ruri*, must be used.

REM. 2. With names of towns and *domus* and *humus*, when answering the question 'whence?' *ab*, *ex*, or *de*, is sometimes used; as, *Ab Alexandria profectus*. Cic. *Ex domo*. Id. *De vitifera venisse Viennam*. Mart. *Ab humo*. Virg.

REM. 3. (a.) With other names of places whence motion proceeds, *ab*, *ex*, or *de*, is commonly expressed; as, *Me a portu premisit*. Plaut. *Ex Asia trans in Europam*. Curt. *Ex castris proficiscuntur*. Cæs. *De Pomptino*, scil. *prædio*. Cic.—So, also, before names of nations used for those of countries; as, *Ex Medis ad adversariorum hibernacula pervenit*. Nep.

(b.) But the preposition is sometimes omitted; as, *Litteræ Macedoniæ allatæ*. Liv. *Classis Cypro advenit*. Curt. *Cessissent loco*. Liv. *Ni cite vicis et castellis proximis subventum foret*. Id. *Ite sacris, propèrâte sacris, laurumque capillis pōnite*. Ovid. *Finibus omnes prorsilire suis*. Virg. *Advolvunt ingentes montibus ornos*. Id. This omission of the preposition is most common in the poets and later prose writers.

2. The place *by*, *through*, or *over* which, after verbs of motion, commonly follows *per*; but frequently also it is put in the ablative without a preposition; as,

*Per Thebas iter fecit*. Nep. *Exercitum viâo transducit*. Cæs. *His pontibus pabulatum mittebat*. Id. *Tribuni militum portu Collinâ urbem intravere sub signis, mediâque urbe agmine in Aventinum pergunt*. Liv. *Legiones Penninis Cottianisque Alpibus, pars monte Graio, traducuntur*. Tac. *Equites viâ breviori præmisi*. Cic.

## ABLATIVE AFTER COMPARATIVES.

§ 256. 1. When two objects are compared by means of the comparative degree, a conjunction, as *quam*, *atque*, etc., is sometimes expressed, and sometimes omitted.

2. The comparative degree, when *quam* is omitted, is followed by the ablative of that with which the comparison is made; as,

*Nihil est virtute formosius*, Nothing is more beautiful than virtue. Cic. *Quis C. Lælio comior?* Who is more courteous than C. Lælius? Id.

REMARK 1. The person or thing with which the subject of a proposition is compared, is usually put in the ablative; as,

*Sidere pulchrior ille est, tu lerior cortice*. Hor. *Vilius argentum est auro, virtutibus aurum*. Id. *Tullus Hostilius ferocior Romulo fuit*. Liv. *Lætinâ nihil vilius arescit*. Cic. *Quid magis est durum saxo, quid mollius undâ?* Ovid. *Hoc nemo fuit minus ineptus*. Ter. *Albanum, Mæcenâs, sive Falerium te magis apocōsitis delectat*. Hor.



REM. 2. An object with which a person or thing addressed is compared, is also put in the ablative; as, *O fons Bandusiæ splendidior vitro!* Hor.

REM. 3. Sometimes the person or thing with which the subject of a proposition is compared, instead of following it in the ablative, is connected with it by *quam*, and it is then put in the same case as the subject, whether in the nominative or the accusative; as, *Oratio quam habitus fuit miserabilior.* Cic. *Afirmo nullam esse laudem ampliorem quam eam.* Id. So, also, when an ablative in the case absolute takes the place of the subject; as, *Eodem* (scil. *dūce*, *plūra*, *quam* *grægario milite*, *tôlérante.* Tac.

REM. 4. If the person or thing which is compared with any object is neither the subject of the sentence nor the person addressed, *quam* is commonly used, and the object which follows it is then put in the nominative with *sum*, and sometimes in an oblique case to agree with the object with which it is compared; as, *Meliorem, quam ego sum, suppono tibi.* Plant. *Ego hominem callidorem rudi neminem quam Phormionem.* Ter. *Adventus hostium fuit agris, quam urbi terribilior.* Liv. *Omnes fontes æstâte, quam hieme, sunt gelidiores.* Plin. *Thémistoclis nomen, quam Solónis, est illustrius.* Cic.—The following example illustrates both the preceding constructions:—*Ut tibi multo majori, quam Africænus fuit, me non multo minorem quam Lælium facile et in républicâ et in amicitia adjunctum esse patiare.* Cic.

REM. 5. (a.) The person or thing with which the object of an active verb is compared, though usually connected with it by *quam*, (R. 4,) is sometimes put in the ablative, especially in the poets, and frequently also even in prose, if the object is a pronoun, particularly a relative pronoun; as, *Attalo, quo gratiorem inimicum non habui, sororem dedit,* He gave his sister to Attalus, than whom, etc. Curt. *Hoc nihil gratius facere potes.* Cic. *Causam enim suscepisti antiquiorem memoriâ tuâ.* Id. *Exegi monumentum ære perennius.* Hor. *Cur olivum sanguine viperino cautius vitat?* Id. *Quid prius dicam solitis parentis laudibus?* Id. *Majora viribus audes.* Virg. *Nullam sacrâ vite prius severis arborem.* Hor. *Nullos his mallem ludos spectasse.* Id. § 178, 3.

(b.) The ablative instead of *quam* is never used with any other oblique case except the accusative, but *quam* is sometimes found, even where the ablative might have been used; as, *Melior tutiorque est certa pax quam sperata victória.* Liv. After *quam*, if the verb cannot be supplied from the preceding sentence, *est*, *fuit*, etc., must be added; as, *Hæc verba sunt M. Varronis, quam fuit Claudius, doctioris.* Gell. *Drusum Germanicum minorem natu, quam ipse erat, fratrem amisit.* Sen.

REM. 6. (a.) *Minus*, *plus*, and *amplius* with numerals, and with other words denoting a certain measure or a certain portion of a thing, are used either with or without *quam*, generally as indeclinable words, without influence upon the construction, but merely to modify the number; as, *Non plus quam quatuor millia effugerunt, not effugit.* Liv. *Pictores antiqui non sunt usi plus quam quatuor coloribus, not pluribus.* Cic.

(b.) *Quam* is frequently omitted with all cases; as, *Minus duo millia hominum ex tanto exercitu effugerunt.* Liv. *Milites Romani sæpe plus dimidiati mensis cibaria ferebant.* Cic. *Quam plus annum æger fuisset.* Liv. *Sedecim non amplius eo anno legionibus defensum imperium est.* Id.

(c.) These comparatives, as in the preceding example, are sometimes inserted between the numeral and its substantive, and sometimes, when joined with a negative, they follow both, as a sort of apposition; as, *Quinque millia armatorum, non amplius, relictum erat presidium*,—a garrison of five thousand soldiers, not more. Liv. So, also, *longius*; *Cæsar certior est factus, magnas Gallorum copias non longius millia passuum octo ab hibernis suis æfuisse.* Cæs. See § 236.

(d.) The ablative is sometimes used with these as with other comparatives; as, *Dies triginta aut plus eo in navi fui.* Ter. *Triennio amplius.* Cic. *Hora amplius moriebantur.* Id. *Ne longius triduo ab castris absit.* Cæs. *Apud Suæros non longius anno remanere uno in loco incolendi causâ licet.* Id. *Quam initio non amplius duobus millibus habuisset.* Sall.

REM. 7. *Quam* is in like manner sometimes omitted without a change of case, after *mājor*, *mīnor*, and some other comparatives; as, *Obsīdes ne minōres octōmū dēnm amōrūm neu mājōres quīnm quādrāgēnum*,.... of not less than eighteen, nor more than forty-five years of age. Liv. *Ex urbēxo exercitū quī minōres quīnque et trīgintū annis ērant, in nāres imposīti sunt*. The genitive and ablative, in these and similar examples, are to be referred to § 211, R. 6. *Longius ab urbe mille passuum*. Liv. *Annos nātus māgis quādrāginta*. Cic.

REM. 8. When the second member of a comparison is an infinitive or a clause, *quam* is always expressed; as, *Nihil est in dicendo mājus quam ut fāveat orātori audītor*. Cic.

REM. 9. Certain nouns, participles, and adjectives,—as *ōpīniōne*, *spe*, *expectātiōne*, *fīde*,—*dicto*, *sōlito*,—*æquo*, *crēdiōili*, *nēcessārio*, *vēro*, and *iusto*,—are used in a peculiar manner in the ablative after comparatives; as, *Opīniōne cēlōrins ventūrus esse dīcitur*,—sooner than is expected. Cæs. *Dicto citius tāmēdū æquōra plūcat*, Quicker than the word was spoken. Virg. *Injūrias grācius æquo habēre*. Sall.

(a.) These ablatives supply the place of a clause; thus, *grācius æquo* is equivalent to *grācius quam quōd æquum est*. They are often omitted; as, *Tæmīstocles libērius vīcibat*, scil. *æquo*. Nep. In such cases, the comparative may be translated by the positive degree, with *too*, *quite*, or *rather*, as in the above example—‘He lived too freely,’ or ‘rather freely.’ *Vōluptas quū mājor est atque longior, omne ānīmī lāmen exstīnguit*,—when it is too great, and of too long continuance. Cic. So *tristior*, scil. *sōlito*, rather sad.

(b.) The English word ‘still,’ joined with comparatives, is expressed by *ētiam* or *vel*, and only in later prose writers by *ād huc*; as, *Ut in corpōribus magnæ dissimilitūdīnes sunt, sic in ānīmīs exsistunt mājōres ētiam vārīetātēs*. Cic.

REM. 10. (a.) With *infērior*, the dative is sometimes used, instead of the ablative; as, *Vir nullā arte cuiquam infērior*. Sall. The ablative is also found; as, *Ut hūmānos cāsus virtūte infēriōres pūtes*. Cic. But usually *infērior* is followed by *quam*; as, *Tīmōtheus bellī laude non infērior fuit, quam pāter*. Cic. *Grātiā non infērior, quam quī unquam fuērunt amplissimī*. Id.

(b.) *Quālis*, ‘such as,’ with a comparative, occurs poetically instead of the relative pronoun in the ablative; as, *Nardo pērunctum, quāle non perfectius meæ libōrārīnt mānus*; instead of *quo*. Hor. Epod. 5, 59. *Animæ quāles nēque candidiōres terra tūlit*; for *quibus*. Id. Sat. 1, 5, 41.

REM. 11. *Quam pro* is used after comparatives, to express disproportion; as, *Prelūm atrōcius quam pro nūmēro pugnantium*, The battle was more severe than was proportionate to the number of the combatants. Liv. *Mīnor, quam pro tūmultu, cædes*. Tac.

REM. 12. When two adjectives or adverbs are compared with each other, both are put in the comparative; as, *Triumphus clārior quam grātor*, A triumph more famous than acceptable. Liv. *Fortius quam fēlicius bellum gessērunt*. So, also, when the comparative is formed by means of *māgis*; as, *Māgis audacter quam pārāte ad dicendū vēnībat*. Cic.—Tacitus uses the positive in one part of the proposition; as, *Spēciem excelsæ glōriæ vēhēmentius quam caute apētībat*; or even in both; as, *Clāris mājōribus quam vētustis*.

REM. 13. (a.) *Pōtius* and *māgis* are sometimes joined pleonastically with *malle* and *præstāre*, and also with comparatives; as, *Ab omnibus se dīsertos pōtius quam abs te dīfēnsos esse mālunt*. Cic. *Quī māgis vēre vīcēre quam dīs impērāre mālūt*. Liv. *Ut emōrī pōtius quam servīre præstāret*. Cic. *Mīhi quovīs fūga pōtius quam ulla prōvīnciā esset optātior*. Id. *Quis māgis queat esse beātior?* Virg.

(b.) So, also, the prepositions *præ*, *ante*, *præter*, and *supra*, are sometimes used with a comparative; as, *Unus præ cētēris fortior exsurgit*, Apul. *Scēlère ante ālios immānior omnes*. Virg. They also occur with a superlative; as, *Ante ālios cārissimus*. Nep. As these prepositions, when joined with the positive, denote comparison, they seem in such examples to be redundant, See § 127.

REM. 14. *Alius* is sometimes in poetry treated as a comparative, and construed with the ablative instead of *atque* with the nominative or accusative; as, *Nōre pūtes ālium sāpiente bōnōque beātum*. Hor. *Alius Lysippo*. Id. But compare § 251, N.

REM. 15. By the poets *ac* and *atque* are sometimes used instead of *quam* after comparatives; as, *Quanto constantior īdem in ritus, tanto tērius miser ac prior ille, qui*, etc. Hor. *Arctius atque hēdērā prōcēra adstringitur illex*. Id.

REM. 16. The degree of difference between objects compared is expressed by the ablative:—

(1.) Of substantives; as, *Minor āno mense*, Younger by one month. Hor. *Sesquipēde quam tu longior*, Taller than you by a foot and a half. Plaut. *Hiberiā dimidio minor quam Britannia*. Cæs. *Dimidio minōris constābit*, It will cost less by half. Cic. *Quam molestum est āno digito plus habēre* !....to have one finger more, i. e. than we have, to have six fingers. Id.—but the expression is ambiguous, as it might mean ‘to have more than one finger.’ *Sūperat capite et cervicibus altis*. Virg.

(2.) Of neuter adjectives of quantity and neuter pronouns, in the singular number. Such are *tanto*, *quanto*, *quo*, *eo*, *hoc*, *multo*, *parvo*, *paulo*, *ninio*, *āliquanto*, *tantūto*, *altēro tanto* (twice as much); as, *Multo doctior es patre*, Thou art (by) much more learned than thy father. The relative and demonstrative words, *quanto*—*tanto*, *quo*—*eo*, or *quo*—*hoc*, signifying ‘by how much—by so much,’ are often to be translated by an emphatic *the*; as, *Quanto sūmus supēriōres, tanto nos submissius gērāmus*, The more eminent we are, the more humbly let us conduct ourselves: lit. by how much—by so much—. Cic. *Eo grāvior est dōlor, quo culpa est māior*. Id. But the relative word generally precedes the demonstrative; as, *Quo difficilior, hoc prāclārius*. Id. Poetically, also, *quam māgis*—*tam māgis* are used instead of *quanto māgis*—*tanto māgis*. Virg. *Æn.* 7, 787: and *quam māgis*—*tanto māgis*. Lucr. 6, 459.—*Iter multo facilius*,—much easier. Cæs. *Parvo brēvius*, A little shorter. Plin. *Eo māgis*, The more. Cic. *Eo minus*. Id. *Istoc māgis vāpūlābis*, So much the more. Plaut. *Via altēro tanto longior*,—as long again. Nep. *Multo id maximum fuit*. Liv.

(3.) The ablative of degree is joined not only with comparatives but with verbs which contain the idea of comparison; as, *mālo, prāsto, supēro, excello, antēcello, antēcēdo*, and others compounded with *ante*; and also with *ante* and *post*, in the sense of ‘earlier’ and ‘later’; as, *Multo prāstat*. Sall. *Post paulo*, A little after. Id. *Multo ante lūcis adventum*, Long before—. Id. *Multis partibus* is equivalent to *multo*; as, *Nūmēro multis partibus esset infērior*. Cæs.

NOTE. The accusatives *multum*, *tantum*, *quantum*, and *āliquantum*, are sometimes used instead of the corresponding ablatives; as, *Aliquantum est ad rem autior*. Ter. *Multum improbiōres sunt*. Plaut. *Quantum dōmo infērior, tantum glōriā supērior erat*. Val. Max. Cf. § 232, (3.)—So *longe*, ‘far,’ is frequently used for *multo*; as, *Longe mēlior*. Virg. *Longe et multum antēcēllere*. Cic. So, *pars pēdis sesqui māior*,—longer by one half. Id.

## ABLATIVE ABSOLUTE.

§ 257. A noun and a participle are put in the ablative, called *absolute*, to denote the time, cause, means, or concomitant of an action, or the condition on which it depends; as,

*Pythāgoras*, Tarquīnio regnante, *in Italiā vēnit*, Pythagoras came into Italy, in the reign of Tarquin. Cic. *Lūpus, stimūlante fāme, captat ōrile*, Hunger inciting, the wolf seeks the fold. Ovid. *Mīlites, pecōre e longinquioribus vicis adacto, extrēmam fāmē sustentābant*. Cæs. *Hac ōrātiōne lūpūtā, conciliū dimisit*. Id. *Galli, re cognitā, obsidiōnem relīnquunt*. Id. *Virtūte exceptā, nihil īmūctā prāstābilius pūtētis*. Cic.



**NOTE 1.** The Latin ablative absolute may be expressed in English by a similar construction, but it is commonly better to translate it by a clause connected by *when*, *since*, *while*, *although*, *after*, *as*, etc., or by a verbal substantive: *as, Te adjūrate*, With thy assistance. *Non—nisi te adjūrate*, Only with thy assistance, or not without thy assistance. *Te non adjūrate*, Without thy assistance. Cf. § 274, R. 5, (c.)

**REMARK 1.** This construction is an abridged form of expression, equivalent to a dependent clause connected by *quum*, *si*, *etsi*, *quamquam*, *quavis*, etc.

Thus, for *Tarquīnio regnante*, the expression *dum Tarquīnius regnābat* might be used; for *hac orātiōne habitā*;—*quum hanc orātiōnem habuisset*, or *quum hac orātiōne habitā esset*,—*concilium dimisit*. The ablative absolute may always be resolved into a proposition, by making the noun or pronoun the subject, and the participle the predicate.

**REM. 2.** This construction is common only with present and perfect participles. Instances of its use with participles in *rus* and *dus* are comparatively rare; as,

*Cæsare ventūro, Phosphore, redde diem.* Mart. *Irruptūris tam infestis nātiōnibus.* Liv. *Quum concio plausum, meo nōmine recitando, dedisset*,—when my name was pronounced. Cic. *Quum immolandā Iphigēniā tristis Culchas esset.* Id. *Quis est enim, qui, nullis officiū praeceptis tradendis, philosophum se audeat dicere*—without propounding any rules of duty. Cic. Cf. § 274, R. 5, (c.) and R. 9.

**REM. 3. (a.)** A noun is put in the ablative absolute, only when it denotes a different person or thing from any in the leading clause. Cf. § 274, 3, (a.)

(b.) Yet a few examples occur of a deviation from this principle, especially with a substantive pronoun referring to some word in the leading clause; as, *Se audiente, scribit Thucydides.* Cic. *Lēgio ex castris Varrōnis, adstante et in spectante ipso, signa sustulit.* Cæs. *Me dūce, ad hunc vōti finem, me milite, veni.* Ovid. So *M. Porcius Cato, vivo quoque Scipione, allātūre ejus magnitudinem solitus erat.* Liv.

**NOTE 2.** Two participles must not be put together in the ablative absolute agreeing with the same noun. Thus, we may say *Porcia saepe maritum cogitantem invenerat*, but not, *Porcia marito cogitante invento*.

**NOTE 3.** Instead of the ablative absolute denoting a cause, an accusative with *ob* or *propter* occurs in Livy and in later writers; as, *Cănōpum condidit Spartani, ob sepultum illic rectorem nāris Cănōpum.* Tac. *Decemetri liberos Sibyllinos inspicere jussi sunt propter terribiles homines nōvis prodigiis.* Liv.

**REM. 4.** The ablative absolute serves to mark the time of an action, by reference to that of another action. If the present participle is used, the time of the action expressed by the participle, is the same as that of the principal verb. The perfect participle and the future in *rus*, denote respectively an action as prior or subsequent to that expressed by the principal verb.

Thus in the preceding examples—*Pythāgōras. Tarquīnio regnante, in Italiā venit*, Pythagoras came into Italy during the reign of Tarquinius. *Galli, re cognitā, obsidiōnem relinquunt*, The Gauls, having learned the fact, abandon the siege. So, *Rex apam non nisi migrātūro exāmine foras prōcēdit*, The king-bee does not go abroad, except when a swarm is about to emigrate. Plin.

NOTE 4. *Non prius quam, non nisi, ut, vĕlut, and tamquam*, are sometimes joined with the participle; as, *Tibĕrius excessum Augusti non prius pĕlam fĕcit quam Agrippa iuvĕne intĕrupto*, —not until. Suet. *Galli lĕti, ut explorāta victoriā, ad castra Rōmānōrum pergunt*. Cæs. *Antiōchus, tamquam non transitūris in Asiam Rōmānis*, etc. Liv.

REM. 5. (a.) The construction of the ablative absolute with the perfect passive participle, arises frequently from the want of a participle of that tense in the active voice.

Thus, for Cæsar, having sent forward the cavalry, was following with all his orces,' we find, '*Cæsar, ĕquitātu præmisso, subsĕquēbātur omnibus cōpiis*.'

(b.) As the perfect participle in Latin may be used for both the perfect active and the perfect passive participles in English, its meaning can, in many instances, be determined only by the connection, since the agent with *a* or *ab* is generally not expressed with this participle in the ablative absolute, as it is with other parts of the passive voice. Thus, *Cæsar, his dictis, concilium dimisit*, might be rendered, '*Cæsar, having said this*, or *this having been said* (by some other person), dismissed the assembly.'

(c.) As the perfect participles of deponent verbs correspond to perfect active participles in English, no such necessity exists for the use of the ablative absolute with them; as, *Cæsar, hæc locūtus, concilium dimisit*. In the following example, both constructions are united: *Itaque...agros Remōrum depōpulāti, omnibus vicis, ædificiisque incensis*. Cæs.

REM. 6. The perfect participles of neuter deponent verbs, and some also of active deponents, which admit of both an active and a passive sense, are used in the ablative absolute; as, *Ortā lūce*. Cæs. *Vel extincto vel ĕlapso animo, nullum rĕsidĕre sensum*. Cic. *Tam multis glōriam ĕjus adeptis*. Plin. *Litēras ad exercitus, tamquam adepto principātu, misit*. Tac.

REM. 7. (a.) As the verb *sum* has no present participle, two nouns, or a noun and an adjective, which might be the subject and predicate of a dependent clause, are put in the ablative absolute without a participle; as,

*Quid, adōlescentūlo dūce, efficĕre possent*, What they could do under the guidance of a youth. Cæs. *Me suāsōre atque impulsōre, hoc factum*, By my advice and instigation. Plaut. *Hannibāle vīro*, While Hannibal was living. Nep. *Invitā Minervā*, In opposition to one's genius. Cic. *Cĕlo sĕrĕno*, When the weather is clear. Virg. *Me ignāro*, Without my knowledge. Cic. With names of office, the concrete noun is commonly used in the ablative absolute, rather than the corresponding abstract with *in* to denote the time of an event; as, *Rōmam vĕnit* Mārio consule, He came to Rome in the consulship of Marius. Cic.

(b.) The nouns so used as predicates are by some grammarians considered as supplying the place of participles by expressing in themselves the action of a verb. Such are *dux, cōmes, adjūtor* and *adjūtrix, auctor, testis, jūdex, interpres, māgister* and *māgistra, præceptor* and *præceprix*; as, *dāce nātūrā*, in the sense of *dūcente nātūrā*, Under the guidance of nature; *jūdice Pōlybio*, According to the judgment of Polybius.

REM. 8. A clause sometimes supplies the place of the noun; as, *Nondum comperto quam in rēgiōnem vēnisset rex*. Liv. *Audito vēnisse nuncium*. Tac. *Vāle dicto*. Ovid. This construction, however, is confined to a few participles; as, *audito, cognito, comperto, explorāto, despĕrāto, nunciāto, dicto, ĕdicto*. But the place of such participle is sometimes supplied by a neuter adjective in the ablative: as, *Incerto præ tĕnebris quid pĕtĕrent*. Liv. Cf. R. 7, (a.) *Haud cūquam cĕcĕbio quin hostium essent*. Id. *Juxta pĕriculōso vĕra an ficta prōnĕret*. Tac.

REM. 9. (1.) The noun in the ablative, like the subject nominative, is sometimes wanting; (a) when it is contained in a preceding clause; as, *Atticus Servīam Brūtī nātrem, non minus post mortem ĕjus, quam flōrente, cōluit*, scil. ea

i. e. Brūto. Nep. (b) When it is the general word for person or persons followed by a descriptive relative clause; as, *Hannibal Ibērum cōpias trājēcit, præmissis, qui Alpium transitus spēcūārentur*. Liv. (c) When the participle in the neuter singular corresponds to the impersonal construction of neuter verbs in the passive voice; as, *In annis transgressu, multum certāto, Bardesānes rēcit*. Tac. *Mihi, errāto, nulla rēnia, recte facto, exigua lous prōpōnitur*. Cic. *Quam, nondum pālam facto, viri mortūque prōmiscue complōrērentur*. Liv. *Nam jam etāte eā sam, ut non siet, peccāto, mi ignosci æquum; i. e. si peccātum fuērit*. Ter. Cf. § 274, R. 5, (b.)

(2.) So in descriptions of the weather; as, *Tranquillo*, scil. *māri*, the sea being tranquil. Liv. *Sērēno*, scil. *cælo*, the sky being clear. Id. *Arānei sērēno texunt, nūbilo texunt*,—in clear and in cloudy weather. Plin. Substantives when used thus are to be considered as ablatives of time; as, *Cōmitiis, lūdiis, Circensibus*. Suetonius has used *proscriptiōne* in the sense of ‘during the proscription.’ So *pāce et Principe*. Tac. *Impērio pōpuli Rōmāni*. Cæs.

REM. 10. This ablative is sometimes connected to the preceding clause by a conjunction; as, *Cesar, quamquam obsidiōne Massiliæ retardante, brevī tamen omnia subēgit*. Suet. *Dēcemvirī non ante, quam perlātis lēgibus, dīpōsitūros impēriam esse aicbant*. Liv.

REM. 11. A predicate ablative is sometimes added to passive participles of naming, choosing, etc. § 210, (3.); as, *Hasdrubāle impērātore suffecto*. Liv.

## CONNECTION OF TENSES.

§ 258. Tenses, in regard to their connection, are divided into two classes—*principal* and *historical*.

A. The principal tenses are, the *present*, the *perfect definite*, and the *two futures*.

B. The historical, which are likewise called the *preterite* tenses (§ 145, N. 2.), are the *imperfect*, the *historical perfect*, and the *pluperfect*.

I. In the connection of leading and dependent clauses, only tenses of the same class can, in general, be united with each other. Hence:—

1. A *principal* tense is followed by the *present* and *perfect definite*, and by the periphrastic form with *sim*. And:—

2. A *preterite* tense is followed by the *imperfect* and *pluperfect*, and by the periphrastic form with *essem*.

NOTE. The periphrastic forms in each class supply the want of subjunctive futures in the regular conjugation.

The following examples will illustrate the preceding rules:—

(a.) In the first class. *Scio quid āgas. Scio quid ēgēris. Scio quid actūrus sis.—Audīxi quid āgas, I have heard what you are doing. Audiri quid ēgēris Audiri quid actūrus sis.—Audiam quid āgas, etc.—Audirēro quid āgas, etc.*

(b.) In the second class. *Sciēbam quid āgēres. Sciēbam quid ēgisses. Sciēbam quid actūrus esses.—Audīxi quid āgērēs, I heard what you were doing. Audiri quid ēgisses. Audiri quid actūrus esses —Audirēram quid āgēres, etc.*

The following may serve as additional examples in the first class; viz. of *principal* tenses depending on,—1.

(1.) The PRESENT; as, *Non sum ita hēbes, ut istuc dīcam*. Cic. *Quantum solōrem accēpērim, tu existimāre pōtes*. Id. *Nec dūbīto quin rēditus ejus reipūblīcæ sālūt īrū fūtūrus sit*. Id.



(2.) The PERFECT DEFINITE; as, *Satis prōvisum est, ut ne quid āgēre possint.* Cic. *Quis mūsicis, quis huic stūdio litērarum se dēdidit, quin omnem illārum artium rīm comprēhendērit.* Id. *Dēfectiōnes solis prādictæ sunt, quæ, quantæ, quando futūræ sint.* Id.

(3.) The FUTURES; as, *Sic facillime, quanta oratorum sit, semperque fuerit paucitas, iudicabit.* Cic. *Ad quos dies rediturus sim, scribam ad te.* Id. *Si scieris aspidem litere uspiam, et velle aliquem imprudentem super eam assidere, cuius mors tibi emolumentum factura sit, impròbe feceris, nisi monueris, ne assideat.* Id.

The following, also, are additional examples in the second class, viz. of *preterite tenses* depending on,—2.

(1.) The IMPERFECT; as, *Unum illud extimescebam, ne quid turpiter facerem, vel jam effecissem.* Cic. *Non enim dubitabam, quin eas libenter lecturus esses,* Id.

(2.) The HISTORICAL PERFECT; as, *Veni in ejus villam ut libros inde promerem.* Cic. *Hec quum essent nuntiata, Valerius classem extemplo ad ostium fluminis duxit.* Liv.

(3.) The PLUPERFECT; as, *Pavor cepērat milites, ne mortiferum esset vulnus.* Liv. *Ego ex ipso audieram, quam a te liberaliter esset tractatus.* Cic. *Non satis mihi constitērat, cum aliquāne animi mei molestia, an potius libenter te Athenis visurus essem.* Id.

REMARK 1. (a.) When the present is used in narration for the historical perfect, it may, like the latter, be followed by the imperfect; as, *Legatos mittunt, ut pacem impetrarent.* Cæs.

(b.) The present is also sometimes followed by the perfect subjunctive in its historical sense; as, *Pandite nunc Heliconæ, deæ, cantusque movēte, Qui bello exciti reges, quæ quemque secutæ Complērint campos acies.* Virg.

REM. 2. The perfect definite is often followed by the imperfect, even when a present action or state is spoken of, if it is possible to conceive of it in its progress, and not merely in its conclusion or result; and especially when the agent had an intention accompanying him from the beginning to the end of the action; as, *Feci hoc, ut intelligeres,* I have done this that you might understand; i. e. such was my intention from the beginning. *Sunt philosophi et fuerunt, qui omnino nullam habere censērent humanarum rerum procuratiōnem deos.* Cic.

REM. 3. (a.) The historical perfect is not regularly followed by the perfect subjunctive, as the latter is not, in general, used in reference to past action indefinite.

(b.) These tenses are, however, sometimes used in connection, in the narrative of a past event, especially in Livy and Cornelius Nepos; as, *Factum est ut plus quam colligæ Miltiades vulnerit.* Nep.

(c.) The imperfect and perfect are even found together after the historical perfect, when one action is represented as permanent or repeated, and the other simply as a fact; as, *Adeo nihil miseriti sunt, ut incursiones facerent et Veios in animo habuerint oppugnare.* Liv.

(d.) The historical perfect may even be followed by the present, when a general truth is to be expressed, and not merely one which is valid for the time indicated by the leading verb; as, *Antiocho pacem petenti ad priores conditiones nihil additum, Africano predicante, neque Romanis, si vincantur, animos minui, neque, si vincant, secundis rebus insolescere.* Just.

REM. 4. (a.) As present infinitives and present participles depend for their time upon the verbs with which they are connected, they are followed by such tenses as those verbs may require; as, *Apelles pictores quoque eos peccare dicebat, qui non sentirent, quid esset satis.* Cic. *Ad te scripsi, te leviter accūsans in eo, quod de me cito credidisses.* Id.

(b.) In like manner the tense of the subjunctive following the infinitive future is determined by the verb on which such infinitive depends; as, *Sol Phaëthonti filio factūrum se esse dixit quicquid optasset.* Cic.

REM. 5. (a.) The perfect infinitive follows the general rule, and takes after it a principal or a preterite tense, according as it is used in the definite or in the historical sense; as, *Arbitramur nos ea præstitisse, quæ ratio et doctrina præscripsit.* Cic. *Est quod gaudeas te in ista loca venisse, ubi aliquid sapere viderere.* Id.

(b.) But it may sometimes take a different tense, according to Rem. 2; as *Ea mihi videor et esse Deos, et quales essent satis ostendisse.* Cic.

II. Tenses belonging to different classes may be made dependent on each other, when the sense requires it.

(a.) Hence a present or perfect definite may follow a preterite, when the result of a past action extends to the present time; as, *Ardēbat autem Hortensius cupiditate dicendi sic, ut in nullo umquam flagrantius studium viderim;* i. e. that up to this time I have never seen. Cic. And, on the other hand, a preterite may follow a present to express a continuing action in the past; as, *Scitote oppidum esse in Siciliā nullum, quo in oppido non isti delecta mulier ad libidinem esset:* (*esset* here alludes to the whole period of Verres' prætorship.) Cic.

(b.) But without violating the rule which requires similar tenses to depend upon each other, the *hypothetical* imperfect subjunctive, may be followed by the present or perfect subjunctive, since the imperfect subjunctive refers to the present time; as, *Memorare possem quibus in locis maximas hostium copias populus Rōmānus parvā manu fuderit.* Sall. *Possem* here differs from *possum* only by the hypothetical form of the expression.

## INDICATIVE MOOD.

§ 259. The indicative is used in every proposition in which the thing asserted is represented as a reality.

NOTE. Hence it is used even in the expression of conditions and suppositions with *si*, *nisi*, *etsi*, and *etiamsi*, when the writer, without intimating his own opinion, supposes a thing as actual, or, with *nisi*, makes an exception, which, only for the sake of the inference, he regards as actual; as, *Mors aut plāne negligenda est, si omnino exstinguit animum, aut etiam optanda, si aliquo eum deducit, ubi sit futurus eternus.* Cic. *Adhuc certe, nisi ego insanio, stulte omnia et incaute fiunt.* Id.—It is likewise used in interrogations.

REMARK 1. The several tenses have already been defined, and their usual significations have been given in the paradigms. They are, however, sometimes otherwise rendered, one tense being apparently used with the meaning of another, either in the same or in a different mood. Thus,

(1.) (a.) The present is often used for the historical perfect in narration, see § 145, I. 3.—(b.) It is sometimes used also for the future to denote the certainty of an event, or to indicate passionate emotion. So, also, when the leading sentence contains the present imperative, *si* is often joined with the present instead of the future; as, *Defende si pōtes.*—(c.) The present is also used for the imperfect or perfect, when it is joined with *dum* 'while'; as, *Dum ego in Siciliā sum, nullu statua dejecta est.* Cic. It is even so used by Livy in transitions from one event to another; as, *Dum in Asiā bellum geritur, ne in Aitolis quidem quiete res fuerant.* But the preterites are sometimes used with *dum* 'while'; and *dum* 'as long as' is regularly joined with the imperfect.

(2.) (a.) The perfect, in its proper signification, i. e. as a perfect definite, denotes an act or state terminated at the present time. Thus Horace, at the close of a work, says, *Exegi monūmentum ære pērennius;* and Ovid, in like circumstances, *Jamque opus exegi.* So, also, Panthus in Virgil, in order to de-

note the utter ruin of Troy, exclaims, *Fuimus Trōes, fuit Ilium* i. e. We are no longer Trojans, Ilium is no more.—(b.) The perfect *indefinite* or *historical* perfect is used in relating past events, when no reference is to be made to the time of other events; as, *Cæsar Rubicōnem transiit*, Cæsar crossed the Rubicon. (c.) As in the epistolary style the imperfect is used instead of the present, when an incomplete action is spoken of (§ 145, II. 3), so the historical perfect is in like circumstances employed instead of the present, when speaking of a completed action. With both the imperfect and perfect, when so used, however, the adverbs *nunc* and *etiamnunc* may be used instead of *tunc* and *etiamtum*.

(d.) The historical perfect is sometimes used for the pluperfect in narration; as, *Sed postquam aspexi, illico cognōvi*, But after I (had) looked at it, I recognized it immediately. Ter.—This is the usual construction after *postquam* or *posteaquam*, *ubi*, *ubi primum*, *ut*, *ut primum*, *quum primum*, *simul*, *simul ut*, *simul ac*, or *simul atque*, all of which have the signification of ‘as soon as,’ and sometimes after *præquam*. But when several conditions are to be expressed in past time, the pluperfect is retained after these particles; as, *Idem simulac se remiserat, neque causa suberat, quare animi laborem perferret, luxuriōsus reperiebatur*. Nep. So, also, *postquam* is joined with the pluperfect, when a definite time intervenes between events, so that there is no connection between them; as, *Hannibal anno tertio, postquam dōmo profugerat, cum quinque navibus Africam accessit*. Id.—In a very few passages the imperfect and pluperfect *subjunctive* are joined with *postquam*.

(3.) The pluperfect sometimes occurs, where in English we use the historical perfect; as, *Dixerat, et spissis noctis se condidit umbris*, She (had) said, and hid herself in the thick shades of night. Virg. Sometimes, also, it is used for the historical perfect to express the rapidity with which events succeed each other; so, also, for the imperfect, to denote what had been and still was.

(4.) The future indicative is sometimes used for the imperative; as, *Valebis*, Farewell. Cic. And:—

(5.) The future perfect for the future; as, *Alio loco de oratorum animo et injuriis vidēro*, I shall see (have seen)... Cic. This use seems to result from viewing a future action as if already done, and intimates the rapidity with which it will be completed.

REM. 2. When a future action is spoken of either in the future, or in the imperative, or the subjunctive used imperatively, and another future action is connected with it, the latter is expressed by the *future* tense, if the actions relate to the same time; as, *Naturam si sequemur ducem, numquam aberrabimus*. Cic.; but by the future perfect, if the one must be completed before the other is performed; as, *De Carthagine vereri non ante desinam, quam illam excisam esse cognovero*. Cic. In English the present is often used instead of the future perfect; as, *Faciam si poterō*, I will do it, if I can. *Ut sementem feceris, ita metes*, As you sow, so you will reap. Cic.

REM. 3. In expressions denoting the propriety, practicability or advantage of an action not performed, the indicative of the preterites (§ 145, N. 2.) is used, where the English idiom would have led us to expect the imperfect or pluperfect subjunctive.

(a.) This construction occurs with the verbs *oportet*, *recesse est*, *dēbeo*, *convēnit*, *possum*, *dēcet*, *licet*, *reor*, *pūto*: and with *par*, *fas*, *cōpia*, *æquum*, *justum*, *consentāneum*, *satis*, *sātius*, *æquius*, *mélius*, *utilius*, *optimilius*, and *optimum—est*, *erat*, etc.

(b.) In this connection the imperfect indicative expresses things which are not, but the time for which is not yet past; the historical perfect and the pluperfect indicative, things which have not been, but the time for which is past; as, *Ad mortem te duci jam pridem oportebat*, i. e. thy execution was necessary and is still so; hence it ought to take place. Cic.—*Longe utilius fuit angustias aditus occupare*, It would have been much better to occupy the pass. Curt. *Catilina erupit e senatu triumphans gaudio, quem omnino vivum illinc exire non oportuerat*. Cic.



(c.) In both the periphrastic conjugations, also, the preterites of the indicative have frequently the meaning of the subjunctive; as, *Tam bona constanter præda tēnenda fuit*,—ought to have been kept. Ovid. This is more common in hypothetical sentences than in such as are independent.

(d.) The indicative in such connections is retained, even when a hypothetical clause with the imperfect or pluperfect subjunctive is added, and it is here in particular that the indicative preterites of the periphrastic conjugations are employed; as, *Quæ si dubia aut præcul essent, tamen omnes bonos reipublicæ consilire decēbat*. Sall. *Quodsi Cn. Pompeius privatus esset hoc tempore, tamen erat mittendus*. Cic.—*Dēlērī tōtus exercitus pōtuit, si fūgientes persēcūti victōres essent*. Liv. *Quas nisi manūmisisset, tormentis etiā dedendi fuērunt*. Cic. *Si te non invēnissem, peritūrus per præcipitia fui*. Petr. But the subjunctive also is admissible in such cases in the periphrastic conjugations.

REM. 4. (1.) The preterites of the indicative are often used for the pluperfect subjunctive, in the conclusion of a conditional clause, in order to render a description more animated. They are so used,

(a.) When the inference has already partly come to pass, and would have been completely realized, if something else had or had not occurred, whence the adverb *jam* is frequently added; as, *Jam fāmes quam pestilentia tristior erat; nī annōnæ fōret subventum*,—would have been worse. Liv. The same is expressed by the verb *cæpi* instead of *jam*; as, *Britanni circumīre terga vincētium cæpērant, nī, etc.* Tac. And without *jam*; *Effigies Pisōnis traxērant in Gēmōnias ac divellēbant* (would have entirely destroyed them) *nī, etc.* Id.

(b.) The perfect and pluperfect are likewise used in this sense, and a thing which was never accomplished is thus, in a lively manner, described as completed; as, *Et pēractum erat bellum sine sanguine, si Pompeium opprimere Brundisii (Cæsar) pōtuisset*. Hor.—The imperfect indicative is rarely used, also, for the imperfect subjunctive, when this tense is found in the hypothetical clause; as, *Stultum erat mōnere, nisi fiēret*. Quint.—Sometimes, also, the preterites of the indicative are thus used in the condition; as, *At fuērat melius, si se puer iste tēnēbat*. Ovid. See § 261, R. 1.

(2.) 'I ought' or 'I should,' is expressed by the indicative of *dēbeo*, and *possum* is in like manner often used for *possem*; as, *Possum persēqui multa oblectāmenta rerum rusticarum, sed, etc.*, I might speak of the many pleasures of husbandry, but, etc.; and it is usual in like manner to say, *difficile est, longum est, infinitum est, e. g. narrāre, etc.*, for, 'it would be difficult,' 'it would lead too far,' 'there would be no end,' etc.

(3.) The indicative is used in like manner after many general and relative expressions, especially after the pronouns and relative adverbs which are either doubled or have the suffix *cumque*; as, *quisquis, quotquot, quicumque, utut, utcumque, etc.*, see §§ 139, 5, (3.) and 191, I. R. 1, (b.); as, *Quidquid id est, traxo Danaos et dōna fērentes*. Virg. *Quem sors cumque dābit, lucro appōne*. Hor. *Sed quōquo mōdo sēse illud habet*. But however that may be. Cic.—In like manner sentences connected by *sive*—*sive* commonly have the verb in the indicative, unless there is a special reason for using the subjunctive; as, *Sive verum est, sive falsum, mihi quidem ita rēnūciātum est*. Later writers however use the subjunctive both with general relatives, etc., and with *sive*—*sive*.

## SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

§ 260. The subjunctive mood is used to express an action or state simply as conceived by the mind.

NOTE. The subjunctive character of a proposition depends, not upon its substance, but upon its form. 'I believe,' 'I suppose,' are only conceptions, but my believing and supposing are stated as facts, and, of course, are expressed by means of the indicative. When, on the other hand, I say, 'I should be

lieve,' 'I should suppose,' the acts of believing and supposing are represented not as facts, but as mere conceptions. Hence the verb that expresses the purpose or intention for which another act is performed, is put in the subjunctive, since it expresses only a conception; as, *Edo ut vivam*, I eat that I may live. This mood takes its name from its being commonly used in *subjoined* or dependent clauses attached to the main clause of a sentence by a subordinate connective. In some cases, however, it is found in independent clauses, or in such, at least, as have no obvious dependence.

I. The subjunctive, in some of its connections, is to be translated by the indicative, particularly in *indirect questions*, in clauses expressing a result, and after *adverbs of time*; as,

*Rogas me quid tristis sim*,—why I am sad. Tac. *Stellârum tanta est multitudo, ut nûmērâri non possint*,—that they cannot be counted. *Quum Cæsar esset in Galliâ*, When Cæsar was in Gaul. Cæs.

II. The subjunctive is used to express what is contingent or hypothetical, including *possibility, power, liberty, will, duty, and desire*.

REMARK 1. The tenses of the subjunctive, thus used, have the significations which have been given in the paradigms, and are, in general, not limited, in regard to time, like the corresponding tenses of the indicative. Thus,

(1.) The present may refer either to present or future time; as, *Médiocribus et quis ignescas vitiis teneor*, I am subject to moderate faults, and such as you may excuse. Hor. *Orat a Cæsare ut det sibi vêniam*, He begs of Cæsar that he would give him leave. Cæs.

(2.) The imperfect may relate either to past, present, or future time; as, *Si fata fuissent ut cadërem*, If it had been my fate that I should fall. Virg. *Si possem, sânior essem*, I would be wiser, if I could. Ovid. *Ceteros rapërem et prosternërem*, The rest I would seize and prostrate. Ter.

(3.) The perfect subjunctive has always a reference to present time, and is equivalent to the indicative present or perfect definite; as, *Errârim fortasse*, Perhaps I may have erred. Plin.—When it has a future signification it is not to be accounted a perfect, but the subjunctive of the future perfect. See Rem. 4 and 7, (1.) But compare § 258, R. 1, (b.) and R. 3, (b.)

(4.) The pluperfect subjunctive relates to past time, expressing a contingency, which is usually future with respect to some past time mentioned in connection with it; as, *Id responderunt se factûros esse, quum ille vento Aquilône vênisset Lemnum....* when he should have come.... Nep.

REM. 2. The imperfects *vellem, nollem, and mëllem*, in the first person, express a wish, the non-reality and impossibility of which are known; as, *vellem*, I should have wished.—In the second person, where it implies an indefinite person, and also in the third when the subject is an indefinite person, the imperfect subjunctive is used in the sense of the pluperfect, and the condition is to be supplied by the mind. This is the case especially with the verbs, *dico, pûto, arbitror, crëdo*; also with *video, cerno, and discerno*; as, *Mestique (crëdëres victos) rëdeunt in castra*,—one might have thought that they were defeated. Liv. *Pecuniæ an fãmæ mînus parcëret, haud fâcile discernëres*. Sall. *Qui vidëret equum Trôjânûm intrôductum, urbem captam dicëret*. Cic. *Quis umquam crëdëret? Id. Quis pûtaret? Id.*—The imperfect subjunctive is frequently used, also, for the pluperfect in interrogative expressions; as, *Socrâtes quum rögâretur cûjâtem se esse dicëret, Mundânûm, inquit. Id. Quod si quis deus dicëret, numquam pûtârem me in Acadëmiâ tamquam philôsôphum dispûtâtûrum*, If any god had said....I never should have supposed. Cic.

REM. 3. The subjunctive in all its tenses may denote a supposition or concession; as, *Vendat ædes vir bônus*, Suppose an honest man is selling a house. Cic. *Dixërit Epicûrus*, Grant that Epicurus could have said. Id. *Vërum anceps pugnæ fuërat fortûna*.—Fuisset, Grant that it might have been. Virg. *Mâlus civis Cn. Carbo fuit. Fuërit aliûs*, He may have been to others. Cic.—This concessive subjunctive is equivalent to *esto ut*.



REM. 4. The present and perfect subjunctive are used in independent propositions to soften an assertion. When so used, they do not differ essentially from the present and future indicative; as, *Forsitan quærātis*, You may perhaps ask. *Velim sic existītes*, I would wish you to think so. *Nemo istud tibi concēdat, or concesserit*, No one will grant you that. *Hoc sine ullā dubitātione confirmāverim, eloquentiam rem esse omnium difficillimam*, This I will unhesitatingly affirm. Cic. *Nil ego contulērim jūcundo sānus amico*. Hor. The form which is called the perfect subjunctive, when thus used for the future, seems to be rather the subjunctive of the future perfect: see Rem. 7, (1.) *Volo* and its compounds are often so used in the present; as, *Velim obvias mihi lītēras crēbro mittas*, I wish that you would frequently send, etc. Cic. The perfect subjunctive is also rarely used in the sense of a softened perfect indicative; as, *Forsitan temēre fecerim*, I may have acted inconsiderately.

REM. 5. The subjunctive is used in all its tenses, in independent sentences, to express a doubtful question implying a negative answer; as, *Quo eam?* Whither shall I go? *Quo irem?* Whither should I go? *Quo ivērim?* Whither was I to have gone? *Quo ivissem?* Whither should I have gone? The answer implied in all these cases is, 'nowhere.' So, *Quis dubitet quin in virtute divitiæ sint?* Who can doubt that riches consist in virtue? Cic. *Quisquam nūmen Jūnōnis adorēt præterea?* Virg. *Quidni, inquit, mēmīnerim?* Cic. *Quis vellet tantū nuntius esse māli?* Ovid.

REM. 6. The present subjunctive is often used to express a wish, an exhortation, asseveration, request, command, or permission; as,

*Mōriar, si, etc.* May I die, if, etc. Cic. *Peream, si non, etc.* May I perish, if, etc. Ovid. So, *Ne sim salvus*. Cic. *In mēdia arma ruāmus*, Let us rush.... Virg. *Ne me attingas, scēleste!* Do not touch me, villain! Ter. *Fāciat quod tūbet*, Let him do what he pleases. Id. The perfect is often so used; as, *Ipe viderit*, Let him see to it himself. Cic. *Quam id recte fāciam, viderint sapiētes*. Id. *Mēmīnerimus, etiam adversus infimos justitiā esse servandam*. Id. *Nihil incommōdo cōfētūdinis tuæ fēcēris*. Id. *Emas, non quod opus est, sed quod necesse est*. Sen. *Dōnis impiū ne placāre audeant deos; Plūtōnem audiant*. Cic. *Nātīram expellas furca, tamen usque rēcurret*. Hor.

(a.) The examples show that the present subjunctive, in the first person singular, is used in asseverations; in the first person plural, in requests and exhortations; in the second and third persons of the present and sometimes of the perfect, in commands and permissions, thus supplying the place of the imperative, especially when the person is indefinite.

(b.) With these subjunctives, as with the imperative, the negative is usually not *non* but *ne*; as, *ne dicas*; *ne dicat*; *ne dixeris*. So, also, *ne fuērit*, *or let ne fuērit*.

(c.) The subjunctive for the imperative occurs most frequently in the third person. In the second person it is used principally with *ne*; as, *ne dicas*. In the latter case the perfect very frequently takes the place of the present; as, *ne dixeris*. The subjunctive is also used in the second person, instead of the imperative, when the person is indefinite.

(d.) In precepts relating to past time, the imperfect and pluperfect, also, are used for the imperative; as, *Forsitan non nemo vir fortis dixerit, restitisses, mortem pugnans oppetisses*,—you should have resisted. Cic.

REM. 7. In the regular paradigms of the verb, no future subjunctive was exhibited either in the active or passive voice.

(1.) When the expression of futurity is contained in another part of the sentence, the future of the subjunctive is supplied by the other tenses of that mood, viz. the future subjunctive by the present and imperfect, and the future perfect by the perfect and pluperfect. Which of these four tenses is to be used depends on the leading verb and on the completeness or incompleteness of the action to be expressed. The perfect subjunctive appears to be also the subjunctive of the future perfect, and might not improperly be so called; as



*Tantum moneo, hoc tempus si amisēris, te esse nullum umquam māgis idoneum rēperturum*, I only warn you, that, if you should lose this opportunity, you will never find one more convenient. Cic.

(2.) If no other future is contained in the sentence, the place of the future subjunctive active is supplied by the participle in *rus*, with *sim* and *essem*; as, *Non dubitat quin brēvi Trōja sit pēritūra*, He does not doubt that Troy will soon be destroyed. Cic. In hypothetical sentences the form with *fuērīm* takes the place of a pluperfect subjunctive; as, *Quis enim dubitat, quin, si Sāguntinis impietate tulissēmus opem, totum in Hispāniam āversūri bellum fuērīmus*. Liv. The form in *fuissem* occurs also, but more rarely; as, *Appāruit, quantam excelsitūra mōlem vērā fuisset clādes, quum*, etc. See *Periphrastic Conjugation*, § 182, 14.

(3.) The future subjunctive passive is supplied, not by the participle in *du*s, but by *fūtūrum sit* or *esset*, with *ut* and the present or imperfect of the subjunctive; as, *Non dubito quin fūtūrum sit, ut laudētur*, I do not doubt that he will be praised.

## PROTASIS AND APODOSIS.

§ 261. In a sentence containing a *condition* and a *conclusion*, the former is called the *protasis*, the latter the *apodōsis*.

1. In the *protasis* of conditional clauses with *si* and its compounds, the imperfect and pluperfect subjunctive imply the *non-existence* of the action or state supposed, the imperfect, as in English, implying present time. In the *apodosis* the same tenses of the subjunctive denote what the result would be, or would have been, had the supposition in the *protasis* been a valid one; as,

*Nisi te satis incitatum esse confidērem, scribērem plūra*, Did I not believe that you have been sufficiently incited, I would write more (Cic.); which implies that he *does believe*, and therefore *will not write*. *Si Neptūnus, quod Thēseus prōmisērat, non fecisset, Thēseus filio Hippōlyto non esset orbatus*. Id.

2. The present and perfect subjunctive in the *protasis*, imply the *real or possible existence* of the action or state supposed; as,

*Si vclit*, if he wishes, or, should wish, implying that he either does wish, or, at least, may wish. In the *apodosis* the present or perfect either of the subjunctive or of the indicative may be used.

REMARK 1. The tenses of the *indicative* may also be used in the *protasis* of a conditional sentence with *si*, etc.; as, *Si vāles, bene est*. Cic. *Si quis antea mirābātur quid esset, ex hoc tempore mirētur pōtius....* Id.—The conjunction *si* in the *protasis* is often omitted; as, *Libet agros emi. Primum quero quos agros?* If you will buy lands, I will first ask, etc. But the *protasis* may be rendered without *if*, and either with or without an interrogation, as, You will buy lands, or, Will you buy lands? The future perfect often occurs in the *protasis* of such sentences; as, *Cāsus medicusve levārit ægrum ex precipiti, māter dīlira necābit*, (Hor.) Should chance or the physician have saved him, the silly mother will destroy him. *Si* is in like manner omitted with the imperfect and pluperfect subjunctive, in supposing a case which is known not to be a real one; as, *Abſque te esset, hōdie numquam ad sōlem occāsum vivērem*. Plaut.

REM. 2. The present and perfect subjunctive differ but slightly from the indicative, the latter giving to a sentence the form of reality, while the subjunctive represents it as a conception, which, however, may at the same time be a reality. The second person singular of the present and perfect subjunctive often occurs in addressing an indefinite person, where, if the person were definite, the indicative would be used; as, *Mēmōria minuitur, nisi eam exerceas*. Cic. When the imperfect or pluperfect is required to denote a past action

the indicative must be used, if its existence is uncertain, as those tenses in the subjunctive would imply its non-existence. In the *oratio obliqua*, when the leading verb is a present or a future the same difference is observed between the tenses of the subjunctive as in hypothetical sentences; but when the leading verb is a preterite the difference between possibility and impossibility is not expressed.

REM. 3. The present and perfect subjunctive are sometimes used, both in the *protasis* and *apodosis* of a conditional sentence, in the sense of the imperfect and pluperfect; as, *Tu, si hic sis, aliter sentias*, If you were here, you would think otherwise. Ter. *Quos, ni mea cūra resisterat, jam flammæ tulérunt*. Virg.

REM. 4. The *protasis* of a conditional sentence is frequently not expressed, but implied; as, *Magno mercentur Atride, i. e. si possint*. Virg.; or is contained in a participial clause; as, *Agis, etsi a multitudine victus, gloriā tamen omnes vicit*. Just. So, also, when the participle is in the ablative absolute; as, *Dona-rem tripodas—dāvite me scilicet artium, quas aut Parrhāsius protulit, aut Scōpas*. Hor. *C. Mācius Porsēnam interficere, prōpositā sibi morte, cōnātus est*. Cic. It is only in later writers that the concessive conjunctions *etsi*, *quamquam*, and *quavis* are expressed with the participle, but *tamen* is often found in the *apodosis*, even in the classic period, when a participial clause precedes as a *protasis*.

REM. 5. In hypothetical sentences relating to past time, the actions seem often to be transferred in a measure to the present by using the imperfect, either in the *protasis* or the *apodosis*, instead of the pluperfect; as, *Quod certe non fēcisset, si suum nūm̄rum (nautārum) nāves habērent*. Cic. *Cimbri si statim infesto agmine urbem pētissent, grande discrimen esset*. Flor. Sometimes the imperfect, although the actions are completed, appears both in the *protasis* and the *apodosis*.

REM. 6. *Nisi*, *nisi vērō*, and *nisi forte* are joined with the indicative, when they introduce a correction. *Nisi* then signifies 'except'; as, *Nescio*; *nisi hoc video*. Cic. *Nisi vērō*, and *nisi forte*, 'unless perhaps,' introduce an exception, and imply its improbability; as, *Nemo fere saltat sobrius, nisi forte insanit*. Cic. *Nisi forte* in the sense of 'unless you suppose,' is commonly used ironically to introduce a case which is in reality inadmissible.

## SUBJUNCTIVE AFTER PARTICLES.

### A. SUBSTANTIVE CLAUSES.

§ 262. A clause denoting the purpose, object, or result of a preceding proposition, takes the subjunctive after *ut*, *ne*, *quo*, *quin*, and *quominus*; as,

*Ea non, ut te instituērem, scripsi*, I did not write that in order to instruct you. Cic. *Irritant ad pugnandum, quo fiant acriōres*, They stimulate them to fight, that they may become fiercer. Varr.

REMARK 1. *Ut* or *ūtī*, signifying 'that,' 'in order that,' or simply 'to' with the infinitive, relates either to a purpose or to a result. In the latter case it often refers to *sic*, *ita*, *adeo*, *tam*, *tālis*, *tantus*, *is*, *ijusmodi*, etc., in the preceding clause; as,

*Id mihi sic erit grātum, ut grātius esse nihil possit*, That will be so agreeable to me, that nothing can be more so. Cic. *Non sum ita hēbes, ut istuc dicam*. Id. *Nēque tam erāmus āmentes, ut explorāta nobis esset victōria*. Id. *Tantum indulgit dolōri, ut eum pietas vinceret*. Nep. *Ita* and *tam* are sometimes omitted; as, *Epāmīnondas fuit etiā disertus ut nemo Thēbanus ei par esset eloquentiā*, instead of *tam disertus*. Id. *Esse oportet ut vivas, non vivere ut edas*. Auct. ad Her. *Sol efficit ut omnia flōreant*. Cic.

REM. 2. *Ut*, signifying ‘even if’ or ‘although,’ expresses a supposition merely as a conception, and accordingly takes the subjunctive; as,

*Ut dēsint vires, tāmen est laudanda vōluntas*, Though strength be wanting, yet the will is to be praised. Ovid. *Ut*, in this sense, takes the negative *non*; as, *Exercitus si pācis nōmen audiērit, ut non rēferat pēdem* (even if it does not withdraw) *insistet certe*. Cic.

REM. 3. *Ut*, with the subjunctive denoting a result, is used with impersonal verbs signifying *it happens, it remains, it follows, etc.*, as,

*Quā fit, ut nēmō contentus vivat?* How does it happen that no one lives contented? Hor. *Huic contigit, ut patriam ex servitūte in libertātem vindicāret*. Nep. *Sēquitur igitur, ut etiā vitia sint parca*. Cic. *Rēliquum est, ut egredier mihi consulam*. Nep. *Restat igitur, ut mōtus astrōrum sit vōluntārius*. Cic. *Extrēmum illud est, ut te ōrem et obsecrem*. Id.

NOTE 1. To this principle may be referred the following verbs and phrases signifying ‘it happens,’ viz. *fit, fieri non pōtest, accidit, incidit, contingit, evēnit, ūsu vēnit, occurrit* and *est* (it is the case, or it happens, and hence *esto*, be it that):—and the following, signifying ‘it remains,’ or ‘it follows,’ viz. *fūtūrum, extrēmum, prōpe, proximum*, and *rēliquum*—*est, rēlinquitur, sēquitur, restat*, and *sūp̄erest*; and sometimes *accēdit*.

NOTE 2. *Contingit* with the dative of the person is often joined with the infinitive, instead of the subjunctive with *ut*; as, *Non cuius hōmīni contigit ādire Cōrinthum*. Hor. And with *esse* also and other verbs of similar meaning, the predicate (as in the case of *licet*) is often found in the dative.—*Sēquitur* and *efficitur*, ‘it follows,’ have sometimes the accusative with the infinitive and sometimes the subjunctive; and *nascitur*, in the same sense, the subjunctive only.

NOTE 3. *Mos* or *mōris est, consuetūdo* or *consuetūdinis est*, and *nātūra* or *consuetūdo fert*, are often followed by *ut* instead of the infinitive.—*Ut* also occurs occasionally after many such phrases as *nōrum est, rīrum, nātūrāle, nēcesse, cōsistātum, vīrum, singulāre*—*est*, etc., and after *aequum, rectum, vērū, ūtile, vērīsimile*, and *integrum*—*est*.

For other uses of *ut*, with the subjunctive, see § 273.

REM. 4. *Ut* is often omitted before the subjunctive, after verbs denoting *willingness* and *permission*; also after verbs of *asking, advising, reminding, etc.*, and the imperatives *dic* and *fac*; as,

*Quid vis ficiam?* What do you wish (that) I should do? Ter. *Insāni fēriant sine litōra fluctus*. Virg. *Tentes dissimulāre rōgat*. Ovid. *Id sīnas ōro*. Id. *Se suādēre, dixit, Pharnabāzo id nēgōtīi dūret*. Nep. *Accēdat oportet actio vāria*. Cic. *Fac cōgītes*. Sull. So, *Vide ex nāvī effērantur, quāe*, etc. Plaut

Verbs of *willingness, etc.*, are *vōlo, mālō, permitto, concēdo, pātior, sīno, licet, vōto*, etc.; those of *asking, etc.*, are *rōgo, ōro, quāso, mōneō, admōneō, jūbēo, mando, pēto, prēcōr, censeo, suādeo, oportet, nēcesse est, postūlo, hortor, cāro, dēcerno, cōto, impēro*.

REM. 5. *Nē*, ‘that not,’ ‘in order that not,’ or ‘lest,’ expresses a purpose negatively; as,

*Cūra ne quid ei dēsīt*, Take care that nothing be wanting to him. Cic. *Nēmō prudens pūnit, ut ait Plātō, quia peccātum est, sed ne peccātur*. Id. *Ut ne* is frequently used for *ne*, especially in solemn discourse, and hence in laws; as *Op̄ra dētur, ut iūdicia ne fiant*. Id. *Quo ne* is used in the same manner in one passage of Horace. *Missus ad hoc—quo ne per vācūm Rōmāno incurreret hostēs*.—On the other hand *ut non* is used when a simple result or consequence is to be expressed, in which case *ita, sic, tam* are either expressed or understood as, *Tum forte agrētābam, ut ad nuptias tuas vēnīre non possem*. In a few cases however, *ut non* is used for *ne*.—*Ut non* is further used, when the negation re-



fers to a particular word or to a part only of the sentence, as in similar cases *nō* must be used, and not *nisi*; as, *Confer te ad Manlium, ut a me non jectus ad alios, sed invitatus ad tuos isse videāris.* Cic.

REM. 6. *Nē* is often omitted after *cāve*; as,

*Cāve pūtes,* Take care not to suppose. Cic. Compare § 267, R. 3.

REM. 7. After *mētuo*, *tīmeo*, *vēreor*, and other expressions denoting fear or caution, *nē* must be rendered by *that* or *lest*, and *ut* by *that* not.

NOTE 3. To the verbs *mētuo*, *tīmeo*, and *vēreor* are to be added the substantives expressing fear, apprehension or danger, and the verbs *terreo*, *conterreo*, *dēterreo*, *cāreo*, to be on one's guard, *video* and *obserro* in requests (as, *vide vidēte* and *ridendum est*), in the sense of 'to consider'; as,

*Milo mētūbat, ne a servis indicārētur,* Milo feared that he should be betrayed by his servants. Cic. *Vēreor, ne, dum minuere velim labōrem, augeam.* Id. *Pācor erat, ne castra hostie aggrēderētur.* Liv. *Illa dno vēreor, ut tibi possim concedere,* I fear that I cannot grant.... Cic. *Qūendum est ne assentatōribus patēfaciāmus aures, neu adūlārī nos sūānus.* Cic. *Vide ne hoc tibi obsit.* *Terruit gentes, grāve ne rēdiret sēcūlum Pyrrhæ.* *Multitudinem dēterrent, ne frūmentum confērant.* Cæs. *Me misērum! ne prōna cādas.* Ovid.

NOTE 4. *Nēve* or *neu* is used as a continuative after *ut* and *ne*. It is properly equivalent to *aut ne*, but is also used for *et ne* after a preceding *ut*; as, on the other hand, *et ne* is used after a negation instead of *aut ne*; as, *Lēgem tūlit, ne quis ante actārum rērum accūsārētur, nēve multārētur.* Nep. *Cæsar milites non longiōre orātiōne cōhortātus, quam ūti suæ pristinæ virtūtis mēmōriam rētīnērent, neu perturbārentur animo—prælii committendi signum dedit.* Cæs. *Nēque*, also, is sometimes used for *et ne* after *ut* and *ne*; as, *Ut ea prætermittam, nēque eos appellem.* Cic. *Cur non sancitis ne vicinus patricio sit plibeus, nec eōdem itinere eat.* Liv.—*Ne non* is sometimes used for *ut* after verbs of fearing; as, *Tīmeo ne non impētre,* I fear I shall not obtain it.

REM. 8. The proposition on which the subjunctive with *ut* and *nē* depends, is sometimes omitted; as, *Ut ita dicam.* Cic. *Ne singulos nōminem* Liv.

NOTE 5. *Nēdum*, like *ne*, takes the subjunctive; as, *Optimis temporibus clarissimī viri vim tribūniciam sustinere non pōtuerunt: nēdum his temporibus sine iudiciōrum rēmediis salvi esse possimus,—still less, etc.* Cic. *Ne* is sometimes used in the sense of *nēdum*; as, *Nōram eam pōtestatem (scil. tribūnōrum plēbis) eripere patribus nostris, ne nunc dulcedine semel capti fērant dēsiderium.* Liv.—*Nēdum* without a verb has the meaning of an adverb, and commonly follows a negative; as, *Ægre inermis tanta multitudo, nēdum armata, sustinēri pōtest.* Liv. *Ne*, also is used in the same manner in Cic. Fam. 9, 26.

REM. 9. *Quō*, 'that,' 'in order that,' or, 'that by this means,' especially with a comparative; *non quō*, or *non quod*, 'not that,' 'not as if'; *non quin*, 'not as if not'; which are followed in the apodōsis by *sed quod*, *sed quia*, or *sed* alone; and *quōmīnus*, 'that not,' after clauses denoting hindrance, take the subjunctive; as,

*Adjūta me, quo id fiat facilius,* Aid me, that that may be done more easily. Ter. *Non quo rēpūblicā sit mihi quicquam cārius, sed despērātis etiā Hippocrātes vētat adhibere mēdicinam.* Cic. *Non quod sōla ornent, sed quod excellent.* Id. *Nēque rēcūsavit, quo minus lēgis pœnam sūbiret.* Nep. *Ego me dūcem in civili bello nēgōri esse, non quin rectum esset, sed quia,* etc. Cic. And instead of *non quin* we may say *non quo non*, *non quod non*, or *non quia non*; and for *non quod*, *non eo quod*, or *non ideo quod*.

REM. 10. *Quin*, after negative propositions and questions with *quis* and *quid* implying a negative, takes the subjunctive. *Quin* is used,

1. For a relative with *non*, after *nemo*, *nullus*, *nihil*....*est*, *repperitur*, *invenitur* etc., *vix est*, *ægre repperitur*, etc.; as, *Messinam nemo venit*, *quin viderit*, i. e. *qui non viderit*, No one came to Messina who did not see. Cic. *Nego ullam picturam fuisse....quin conquiescerit*, i. e. *quam non*, etc. Id. *Nihil est*, *quin male narrando possit depravari*. Ter. *Quis est*, *quin cernat*, *quantu vis sit in sensibus*! Cic.

NOTE 6. When *quin* is used for the relative it is commonly equivalent to the nominative *qui*, *que*, *quod*, but it is sometimes used in prose instead of the accusative, and sometimes after *dies* for *quo*, as the ablative of time; as, *Dies fere nullus est*, *quin hic Satrius domum meam ventitet*, i. e. *quo—non ventitet*. Cic.—*Qui non* is often used for *quin*; as, *Quis enim erat*, *qui non sciret*. Id.; and when *quin* stands for *qui non* or *quod non*, *is* and *id* are sometimes added for the sake of emphasis; as, *Cleantes negat ullum cibum esse tam gravem*, *quin is die et nocte concouatur*. Cic. *Nihil est quod sensum habeat*, *quin id intreat*. Id.—So, also, the place of *quin* is supplied by *ut non*; as, *Augustus numquam filios suos populo commendavit ut non adiceret* (without adding) *si mererentur* duet. And if no negation precedes, or if *non* belongs to a particular word, and not to the verb, *qui non* and *ut non* must of course be used and not *quin*.

2. For *ut non*, 'that not,' or 'without' with a participle, especially after *facere non possum*, *ficri non potest*, *nulla causa est*, *quid causæ est?* *nihil causæ est*; as, *Facere non possum quin ad te mittam*, i. e. *ut non*, etc. Cic. *Namquam tam male est Siculis*, *quin aliquid facite et commode dicant*. Cic. *Numquam accedo*, *quin abs te abeam doctior*,—without going from you wiser. Ter.

NOTE 7. *Quin* takes the subjunctive also after the negative expressions *non dubito*, *non est dubium*, *non ambigo*, I doubt not; *non adest*; *nihil*, *paulum*, *non procul*, *haud multum adest*; *non*, *vix*, *ægre abstinco*; *tendere me*, or *temperare mihi non possum*; *non impedio*, *non recuso*, *nihil pretermitto*, and the like. In these cases, however, the negation in *quin* is superfluous, and it is generally translated into English by 'that,' 'but that,' or 'to' with an infinitive; as, *Non dubito quin domi sit*, that he is at home. *Non multum adest*, *quin miserrimus sim*, Not much is wanting to make me most wretched. Cic. Hence, as *quin* is not in such cases regarded as a negative, *non* is superadded when a negative sense is required; as, *In quibus non dubito quin offensionem negligentie vitare atque effugere non possim*. Cic. *Dubitandum non est quin numquam possit utilitas cum honestate contendere*. Id.

NOTE 8. In *Nepos*, *non dubito*, in the sense of 'I do not doubt,' is always followed by the infinitive with the accusative, and the same construction often occurs in later writers but not in Cicero: in the sense of to scruple or hesitate, when the verb following has the same subject, *dubito* and *non dubito* are generally followed by the infinitive; as, *Cicero non dubitabat conjuratos supplicio afficere*.—It may be added that 'I doubt whether' is expressed in Latin by *dubito sitne*, *dubito utrum*—*an*, *dubito sitne*—*an*, or *dubito num*, *numquid*, for *dubito an*, and *dubium est an* are used, like *nescio an* with an affirmative meaning.

NOTE 9. *Quin* signifies also 'why not?' being compounded of the old ablative *quæ* and *næ*, i. e. *non*, and in this sense is joined with the indicative in questions implying an exhortation; as, *Quin conscendimus equos?* Why not mount our horses? In this sense it is also joined with the imperative; as, *Quin dic statim*, Well, tell me: or with the first person of the subjunctive. Hence without being joined to any verb it signifies 'even' or 'rather.'

REM. 11. The principal verbs of hinderance, after which *quominus* occurs, and after which *ne*, and, if a negative precedes, *quin* also may be used, are *deterreo*, *impedio*, *intercedo*, *obsisto*, *obsto*, *officio*, *prohibeo*, *recuso*, and *repugno*. It occurs also after *stat* or *fit per me*, I am the cause, *non pugno*, *nihil moror*, *non contineo me*, etc.

NOTE. *Impedio*, *deterreo*, and *recuso* are sometimes, and *prohibeo* frequently followed by the infinitive. Instead of *quominus*, *quo scilicet* is sometimes used.



§ 263. The particles specified in this section always introduce a sentence containing only a conception of the mind, and are hence joined with the subjunctive.

1. The subjunctive is used after particles of wishing, as *utinam*, *ut*, *O* and *O* *si*; as,

*Utinam mirus vite cupidi fuissēmus!* O that we had been less attached to life Cic. *O si sōlite quicquam virtūtis ādesset!* Virg.

REMARK. The present and perfect tenses, after these particles, are used in reference to those wishes which are conceived as possible; the imperfect and pluperfect are employed in expressing those wishes which are conceived as wanting in reality. Cf. § 261, 1 and 2.—‘Would that not’ is expressed in Latin both by *utinam ne* and *utinam non*. *Utinam* is sometimes omitted; as, *Tēcum hīdēre sicut ipsa possem!* Catull.

## B. ADVERBIAL CLAUSES.

2. (1.) *Quamvis*, however; *licet*, although; *tamquam*, *tamquam si*, *quāsi*, *ac si*, *ut si*, *vēlut*, *vēlut si*, *vēluti*, *sicūti*, and *ceu*, as if; *mōdo*, *dum*, and *dummōdo*, provided,—take the subjunctive; as,

*Quamvis ille fēlix sit, tāmen*, etc. However happy he may be, still, etc. Cic. *Vēritas licet nullum dēfensōrem obtineat*, Though truth should obtain no defender. Id. *Tamquam clausa sit Asia, sic nihil perfertur ad nos*. Id. *Sed quid ēgo his testibus ūtor, quāsi res dūbia aut obscura sit?* Id. *Me omnibus rēbus, juxta ac si meus frāter esset, sustentāvit*, He supported me in every thing, just as though he were my brother. Id. *Similiter facere eos,—ut si nautæ certarent, ūter*, etc. Id. *Absentis Ariōvisti crudelitatem, vēlut si cōram ādesset, horrērent*. Cæs. *Inque sinus cāros, vēluti cognoscēret, ibat*. Ovid. *Sicūti jurgō lācessitus fōret, in senātum vēnit*. Sall. *Hic vērō ingentem pugnam, ceu cētera nusquam bella fōrent*. Virg. *Odērint dum mētuant*. Att. in Cic. *Mānent ingēni i sēvibus, mōdo permāneat stādium et industria*. Cic. *Omnia hōnesta negligunt dummōdo pōtēntiam consēquantur*, They disregard every honorable principle, provided they can obtain power. Id.

NOTE. *Mōdo*, *dum*, and *dummōdo*, when joined with a negation, become *mōdo ne*, *dum ne*, and *dummōdo ne*.

(2.) *Quamvis* (although) is in Cicero joined with a principal tense of the subjunctive; as, *Quamvis non fuēris suāsor, apprōbātor certe fuisti*. Cic. In later writers it is often used with the indicative; as, *Fēlicem Nōben, quamvis tot fūnēra vīdit*. Ovid. So also once in Cicero, *Quamvis patrem suum numquam vīderat*. Rab. Post. 2.

(3.) *Quamvis*, as a conjunction, in the sense of ‘however much,’ is joined with the subjunctive. So also when its component parts are separated; as, *C. Gracchus dixit, sibi in somnis Ti. frātre visum esse dicere*, quam vellet euntārētur, *tāmen*, etc.—*Quamvis* ‘however much,’ as an adverb, governs no particular mood.

(4.) *Etsi*, *tāmeti*, even if, although, and *quamquam*, although, commonly introduce an indicative clause:—*etiāmsi* is more frequently followed by the subjunctive. In later prose writers, and sometimes in Cicero and Sallust as well as in the poets, *quamquam* is joined with the subjunctive; as, *Quamquam præsente Lūcillo loquar*. Cic. *Vi regere patriam quamquam possis*. Sall. Jug. 3. *Filius quamquam Thētidōz mārīne Dardānas turres quāteret*. Hor.

REMARK. The imperfect subjunctive with *ac si*, etc., is used after the present, to denote that in reality the thing is not so, but in that case a hypothetical subjunctive must be supplied; as, *Egnātii rem ut tueāre æque a te pēto, ac si mea nēgōtia essent*, i. e. *ac pētērem, si mea nēgōtia essent*, as I would pray if etc. Cic.



3. After *antēquam* and *priusquam*, the imperfect and pluperfect tenses are usually in the subjunctive; the present and perfect may be either in the indicative or subjunctive. The present indicative is commonly used when the action is to be represented as certain, near at hand, or already begun; the subjunctive is used when the thing is still doubtful, and also in general propositions; as,

*Ea causa ante mortua est, quam tu nātus esses*, That cause was dead before you were born. Cic. *Avertit ēquos, priusquam pābula gustassent Trōiæ Xanthumque bibissent*. Virg. *Priusquam incīpias, consulto opus est*, Before you begin there is need of counsel. Sall.

4. (1.) *Dum*, *dōnec*, and *quoad*, signifying *until*, are followed by the subjunctive, if they refer to the attainment of an object; as,

*Dum hic venīret, locum relinquere nōluit*, He was unwilling to leave the place until he (Milo) should come. Cic. *Nihil puto tibi esse utilius quam oppēri quoad scire possis, quid tibi agendum sit*. Id. *Cornu tēndit, et duxit longe, dōnec currata cōrent inter se capita*. Virg.—In the sense of ‘as long as,’ these particles take the indicative, but Tacitus joins *dōnec* with the subjunctive even when a simple fact is to be expressed.

(2.) *Dum*, while, is commonly used with the indicative present, whatever may be the tense of the principal sentence. Cf. § 259, R. 1, (1.), (a.)

5. *Quum* (*cum*), when it signifies a *relation of time*, takes the indicative; when it denotes a *connection of thought*, the subjunctive; as,

*Qui non dēfendit injūriam, nēque rēpulsat a suis, quum pōtest, injuste fācit*. Cic. *Quum recte nāvīgārī pōtērit, tum nāvīges*. Id. *Crēdo tum, quum Sicilia florēbat opibus et cōpiis, magna artificia fuisse in eā insulā*. Id. *Quum tot sustineas et tanta nēgōtia, peccem, si mōrer tua tempōra*, Since you are burdened with so many and so important affairs, I should do wrong, if I should occupy your time. Hor. *Quum vīta sine amīcis mētus plēna sit, rātio ipsa mōnet amīcīas comparāre*. Cic.

REMARK 1. (a.) The rule for the use of *quum* may be thus expressed: *Quum temporal* takes the indicative, *quum causal* the subjunctive. Hence, when *quum* is merely a particle of time, with no reference to cause and effect, and not occurring in a historical narrative (see Rem. 2), it may be joined with any tense of the indicative. But when it is employed to express the relation of cause and effect, or has the meaning of ‘though’ or ‘although,’ it is joined with the subjunctive (b.) *Quum*, relating to time, is commonly translated *when*, *while*, or *after*; referring to a train of thought, it signifies *as*, *since*, *though* or *although*, *because*; but may often be translated *when*.

REM. 2. In narration, *quum*, even when it relates to time, is joined with the imperfect and pluperfect subjunctive, when a historical perfect stands in the principal clause; as,

*Gracchus, quum rem illam in religiōnem pōpulo vēnisse sentīret, ad sēnātum rētrīt*. Cic. *Alexander, quum interēmisset Clitum, vix minus a se abstinuit*. Id.

NOTE. *Quum temporal*, when it expresses an action frequently repeated, may be joined with the pluperfect indicative, and the apodosis then contains the imperfect; as, *Quum autem vir esse cupērat, dabat se libōri*. Cic. *Quum vīsam vidērat, tum incipere ver arbitrābatur*. Id. Cf. § 264, 12.

REM. 3. *Quum* in the sense of ‘while’ is joined with the perfect and imperfect indicative, often with the addition of *intērea* or *intērim*, to express simultaneous occurrences; as, *Citulus cēpit magnum suae virtūtis fructum, quum omnes vīdēre unā voce, in eo ipso vos spem hābitūros esse, dixistis*. Cic. *Cedēbatur virgis*

*in medio foro Messānæ civis Rōmānus, iūdices, quum intērea nulla vox ālia istius misēri audiēt ātur, nisi hæc: civis Rōmānus sum.* Id.

REM. 4. *Quum*, for the most part preceded by an adverb, as, *iam*, *nondum*, *rit*, *ægre*, or joined with *rēpente* or *sūbito* is followed by the indicative, especially by the present indicative, to express the beginning of an action. In the cases mentioned in this and the preceding remark, the historians also use *quum* with the historical infinitive.

For the subjunctive after *si* and its compounds, see § 261.

### C. ADJECTIVE CLAUSES.

#### SUBJUNCTIVE AFTER QUI.

§ 264. Relatives require the subjunctive, when the clauses connected by them express merely a conception; as, for example, a *consequence*, an *innate quality*, a *cause*, *motive*, or *purpose*.

1 (a.) When the relative *qui*, in a clause denoting a *result* of the character or quality of something specified in the antecedent clause, follows a demonstrative, and is equivalent to *ut* with a personal or demonstrative pronoun, it takes the subjunctive.

NOTE. The demonstratives after which *qui* takes the subjunctive, are *tam* with an adjective, *tantus*, *tālis*, *ejusmodi*, *hujusmodi*, and *is*, *ille*, *iste*, and *hic* in the sense of *tālis*; as,

*Quis est tam Lyncæus, qui in tantis tēnebris nihil offendat?* i. e. *ut ille in tantis*, etc., Who is so quick-sighted, that he would not stumble, (or, as not to stumble,) in such darkness. Cic. *Tūtem te esse oportet, qui ab impiōrum civium sociētāte sējungas*; i. e. *ut tu*, etc. Id. *At ea fuit lēgatio Octāviū, in quā pērcūli suspiciō non sūhesset*, i. e. *ut in eā*. Id. *Nec tāmēn ego sum ille ferreus, qui frātris cārissimī mēre non mōvear*, i. e. *ut ego non mōvear*. Id. *Non sūmus ī, quībus nihil vērū esse vidētur*, i. e. *ut nobis nihil*, etc. Id. *Nulla gens tam fēra est, cūjus mentem non imbuērit deōrum opīnio*, i. e. *ut ejus mentem*, etc. Id.

(b.) Sometimes the demonstrative word is only implied; as,

*Res parva dictu, sed quæ stūdiis in magnum certāmen excessērit*, i. e. *tālis quæ*....of such a kind that it issued in a violent contest. Cic. *Nunc dicis āliquid, quod ad rem pertīneat*, i. e. *tāle ut id*, etc. Id. So *quis sum*, for *num tālis sum*; as, *Quis sum, cūjus aures ledi nēfus sit?* Sen.—In like manner, also, a demonstrative denoting a character or quality, is implied in the examples included in the following rule:—

2. When the relative is equivalent to *quamquam* *is*, *etsi* *is*, or *dummodo* *is*, it takes the subjunctive; as,

*Laco, consilii quamvis ēgrēgii, quod non ipse afferret, inimicus*, Laco, an opponent of any measure, however excellent, provided he did not himself propose it. Tac. *Tu āquam a pūmice postūlas, qui ipsus sītiat*. Plaut. *Nihil mēlestum, quod non dēsīdēres*, i. e. *dummodo id*. Cic.

3. *Quod*, in restrictive clauses, takes the subjunctive; as,

*Quod sciam*, as far as I know; *quod mēmīnērīm* as far as I recollect; *quod ego intelligam*; *quod intelligi possit*; *quod conjectārā prōvidēri possit*; *quod salvā fīde possim*; *quod commōdo tuo fiat*, etc. — *Quīdem* is sometimes added to the relative in such sentences. *Quod sīne mōlestiā tuā fiat*, So far as it can be done without troubling you. Cic. In the phrases *quantum possum*, *quantum ego percipio*, on the other hand, the indicative is used.

4. A relative clause, after the comparative followed by *quam*, takes the subjunctive; as,

*Māior sum, quam cui possit fortūna nocēre*, i. e. *quam ut mihi*, etc., I am too great for fortune to be able to injure me. Ovid. *Auditū vōce præcōnis māius gaudium fuit, quam quod ūniversum hōmīnes capērent*, Upon the herald's voice being heard, the joy was too great for the people to contain Liv.

REMARK 1. The clause annexed by *quam qui* implies an inherent quality, or a consequence; so that *quam qui* is equivalent to *quam ut*, which also sometimes occurs. Sometimes the subjunctive follows *quam* even without a relative pronoun; as, *In his litēris longior fui, quam aut vellem, aut quam me pūctari jōre*:—and so frequently with the verbs *velle* and *posse*.

5. A relative clause expressing a purpose, aim, or motive, and equivalent to *ut* with a personal or demonstrative pronoun, takes the subjunctive; as,

*Lacedæmōnii lēgātos Athēnas misērunt, qui eum absentem accūsārent*: i. e. *ut illi eum accūsārent*, The Lacedæmonians sent ambassadors to Athens to accuse him in his absence. Nep. *Cæsar equitātum omnem præmittit, qui videant, quas in partes iter faciānt*. Cæs. *Sunt autem multi, qui eripiunt aliis, quod aliis largiantur*. Cic. *Assidue rēpētant, quas perdant, Bēlides undus*. Ovid.

REM. 2. So also with relative adverbs; as, *Lampsācum ei (Thēmistoclēs) rex dōnarat, unde vinum sūmēret*, i. e. *ex quā* or *ut inde*, etc. Nep. *Sūper tabernaculū regis, unde ab omnibus conspici posset, imāgo sōlis crystallo inclūsa fulgebāt*. Curt.

6. A relative clause with the subjunctive after certain indefinite general expressions, specifies the circumstances which characterize the individual or class indefinitely referred to in the leading clause; as,

*Fuerunt eā tempestāte, qui dicērent*, There were at that time some who said. Sall. *Erant, quibus appetentiōr fāmæ, vidērētur*, There were those to whom he appeared too desirous of fame. Tac. *Sunt, qui censeant, ūna ānimum et corpus occidēre*. Cic. *Erunt, qui existimāri vēlint*. Id. *Si quis erit, qui perpētūam orātiōnem dēsideret, altērā actiōne audiet*. Id. *Vēnient lēgiōnes, quæ nēque me inultum nēque te impūnītum patiāntur*. Tac. So after *est* followed by *quod*, in the sense of 'there is reason why'; as, *Est quod gandeas*, You have cause to rejoice. Plaut. *Est quod vīsam dōmum*. Id. *Si est quod dēsīt, ne beātus quīdem est*. Cic.

NOTE 1. The expressions included in the rule are *est, sunt, ādest, præsto sunt, existunt, exōriuntur, invēniuntur, rēperiuntur*, (scil. hōmīnes); *si quis est, tempus fuit, tempus veniet*, etc.

REM. 3. The same construction occurs with relative particles used indefinitely; as, *Est unde hæc fiant. Si est culpam ut Antipho in se admisērit*, If it chance that, etc. Ter. *Est ūbi id isto mōdo vāleat*. Cic. So *est cur* and *est ut* in the sense of *est cur*, as, *Ille erat, ut ōdisset dēfensōrem salūtis meæ*, i. e. he had reason to hate. Cic. *Non est igitur ut mirandum sit*, There is no occasion for wondering. Id.

REM. 4. The above and similar expressions are followed by the subjunctive only when they are indefinite. Hence, after *sunt quīdam, sunt nonnulli, sunt multi*, etc., when referring to definite persons, the relative takes the indicative; as, *Sunt orātiōnes quædam, quas Menocrito dābo*. Cic.

REM. 5. The indicative is sometimes, though rarely, used after *sunt qui* even when taken indefinitely, especially in the poets; as, *Sunt, quos jūvat. Hor Sunt qui ita dicunt*. Sall.

7. A relative clause after a general negative, or an interrogative expression implying a negative, takes the subjunctive; as,



*Nemo est, qui haud intelligat*, There is no one who does not understand. Cic. *Nulla res est, quæ perferre possit continuum laborem*, There is nothing which can endure perpetual labor. Quint. *Nulla pars est corporis, quæ non sit minor*. Id. *Nihil est, quod tam miseros faciat, quam impietas et scelus*. Cic. *In fore rix decimus quisque est, qui ipse sese noscat*. Plant. *Quis est, qui utilia fugiat?* Who is there that shuns what is useful? Cic. *Quæ latebra est, in quam non intret metus mortis?* Sen. *Quid dulcius quam habere, quicum omnia audeas sic loqui ut licum?* Cic. (See respecting this use of the indefinite *quicum* rather than the definite *quodcum*, § 136, R. 1.) *An est quisquam, qui hoc ignoret?* Is there any one who is ignorant of this? Id. *Nunquid est mali, quod non dixeris?* Ter

NOTE 2. General negatives are *nemo*, *nullus*, *nihil*, *unus non*, *alius non*, *non quisquam*, *vir ullus*, *neq. ullus*, etc., with *est*; *rix* with an ordinal and *quisque*; *nego esse quemquam*, etc. Interrogative expressions implying a negative, are *quis*, *quid*; *qui*, *quæ*, *quod* *quantus*, *uter*, *equis*, *numquis*, *an quisquam*, *an aliquis*, *quodtus quisque*, *quodtus*, etc. with *est*? *quot*, *quam multi*, etc., with *sunt*?

NOTE 3. The same construction is used after *non est*, *nihil est*, *quid est*, *numquid est*, etc., followed by *quod*, *cur*, *quære*, or *quamobrem*, and denoting 'there is no reason why,' 'what cause is there?' 'is there any reason?' as, *Quod timeas, non est*, There is no reason why you should fear. Ovid. *Nihil est, quod adrentum nostrum pertimescas*. Cic. *Quid est, quod de ejus civitate dubites?* Id. *Queris a me, quid ego Catilinam metuam*. *Nihil, et curari ne quis metuere*. *Quid est, cur virtus ipsa per se non efficiat beatos?* Id.—So after *non habeo*, or *nihil habeo*; as, *Non habeo, quod te accusem*. Cic. *Nil habeo, quod agam*, I have nothing to do. Hor. *Nihil habeo, quod ad te scribam*. Cic. So without a negative, *De quibus habeo ipse, quid sentiam*. Id. *Causa* or, with *quid* and *nihil*, *cause*, is sometimes added; as, *Non fuit causa, cur postulares*. Id. *Quid erat cause, cur metuere*. Id.

NOTE 4. (a.) The relative clause takes the subjunctive after the expressions included in this and the last rule, only when it expresses the character or quality of the subject of the antecedent clause; and the relative, as in the preceding cases of the relative with the subjunctive, is equivalent to a personal or demonstrative pronoun with *ut*; as, *Nemo est, qui nesciat*, There is no one who is ignorant, i. e. no one is ignorant. Cic. So, *Sunt, qui hoc carpant*, There are some who blame this, i. e. some blame this. Vell.

(b.) If the relative clause is to be construed as a part of the logical subject it does not require the subjunctive; as, *Nihil stabile est, quod infidum est* Nothing which is faithless is firm. Cic.

8. (1.) A relative clause expressing the reason of what goes before, takes the subjunctive; as,

*Peccârisse mihi videor, qui a te discesserim*, I think I did wrong in leaving you. Cic. *Inertiam accusas adolescentium, qui istam artem non ediscant*, You blame the idleness of the young men, because they do not learn that art. Id. *O fortunâte adolescens, qui tuæ virtutis Homërum præconem inveneris!*—in having found. Id. *Cinnius fuit mirificâ vigilantia, qui suo toto consûlatu somnum non viderit*,—since, etc. Id.

(2.) Sometimes, instead of *qui* alone, *ut qui*, *quippe qui*, or *utpote qui*, is used, generally with the subjunctive; as,

*Cæcilia cum patre non inibat, quippe qui ne in oppidum quædam nisi per aræ rēnisset*. Cic. *Næque Antonius procul aberrat, utpote qui magno exercitu sequeretur*. Sall. But sometimes with the indicative in Sallust and Livy; as, *Quipe qui omnia viderat*. Sall.

9. After *dignus*, *indignus*, *aptus*, and *idoneus*, a relative clause takes the subjunctive; as,

*Videtur, qui aliquando impëret, dignus esse*, He seems to be worthy at some time to command. Cic. *Rustici nostri quum fidem alicujus bonitatemque laudant, dignum esse dicunt, quicum in tenebris mices*. Id. *Nihil vidēbatur aptior per-*

sona, quæ de ætate loquēretur. Id. *Pompeius idōneus non est, qui impetret.* Id. *Et rem idōneam, de quā quæratur, et hōmīnes dignos, quibuscum dissēratur, putant.* Id.

NOTE 5. If the relative clause does not express that of which the person or thing denoted by the antecedent is worthy, its construction is not influenced by this rule. Thus, *Quis serrus libertate dignus fuit, cui nostra sūlus cāra non esset?* The subjunctive is here used according to No. 7 of this section.

NOTE 6. The infinitive frequently follows these adjectives in poetry, though rarely in prose; as, *Et puer ipse fuit cantāri dignus.* Virg.:—and sometimes *ut*; as, *Eras dignus, ut hāberes integram manum.* Quint.

10. A relative clause, after *ūnus, sōlus, prīmus*, etc., restricting the affirmation to a particular subject, takes the subjunctive; as,

*Hæc est ūna contentio, quæ adhuc permānsērit,* This is the only dispute which has remained till this time. Cic. *Vōluptas est sōla, quæ nos vocet ad se, et allūceat suapte naturā,* Pleasure is the only thing that, by its own nature, invites and allures us to itself. Id.

11. When the relative refers to a *dependent clause*, it often takes the subjunctive. See § 266.

12. The imperfect and pluperfect subjunctive are used in narration after relative pronouns and adverbs, when a repeated action is spoken of; as,

*Semper hābiti sunt fortissimī, qui summam impērii pōtīrentur,* Those were always accounted the bravest, who obtained the supreme dominion. Nep. *Quemcumque lictor jussu consūlis prēhendisset, tribūnus mitti jubēbat.* Liv. *Ut quisque maxime lābōrāret locus, aut ipse occurrēbat, aut aliquos mittēbat.* So after *si quis* or *qui*; as, *Si qui rem mālitiōsius gessisset, dēdēcus existimābant.* Cic. *Quōtiens super tāli nēgōtio consultāret, editā dōmūs parte ūtēbatur.* Tac. *Nec quisquam Pyrrhum, quā tulisset impētum, sustinēre valuit.*—It is sometimes found in like manner after *quum, ubi, ut*, and *si* when used in the sense of *quum*, when repeated actions are spoken of; as, *Id ūbi dixisset, hastam in fines eōrum emittēbat.* Liv. *Si Nūmidæ prōpius accessissent, ibi vērō virtutem ostendēre.* Sall. Sometimes even the present subjunctive is so used when employed as an aorist to express things which have happened repeatedly, and still happen (see § 145, I. 2.); as, *Ubi de magnā virtute et glōriā bonōrum mēmōres, que sibi quisque,* etc. Sall.

NOTE 7. This is called the *indefinite subjunctive*, or *subjunctive of generality*, inasmuch as the action is not referred to a distinct, individual case. The indicative, however, is used in such cases more frequently than the subjunctive.

## SUBJUNCTIVE IN INDIRECT QUESTIONS.

§ 265. Dependent clauses, containing an indirect question, take the subjunctive.

NOTE 1. A question is indirect when its substance is stated in a dependent clause without the interrogative form. Indirect questions generally depend upon those verbs and expressions which commonly take after them the accusative with the infinitive. Cf. § 272. Thus:—

*Quālis sit animus, ipse animus nescit,* The mind itself knows not what the mind is. Cic. *Crēdibile non est, quantum scribam,* It is incredible how much I write. Id. *Quis ego sim, me rōgitas?* Do you ask me who I am? Plaut. *Ad te quid scribam nescio.* Cic. *Nec quid scribam hābeo,* Nor have I any thing to write. Id. *Dōce me, ūbi sint dii,* Inform me where the gods are. Id. *Incertum est, quo te lōco mors expectet.* Sen. Ep. *Quam pridem sibi hērēdis vēnisset, docet.* Id. *Nunc accipe, quare dēsipiant omnes.* Her. *Id utrum illi sentiant, ad*

*vēro sīnūlent, tu intelliges.* Cic. *Quæro, num tu sēnātui causam tuam permittas.* Id. *Vides, ut altā stet nīve candidum Sōracte.* Hor. *Nescit, vitāne fruātur, an bit āpud mānes.* Ovid.

NOTE 2. All interrogatives whether adjectives, pronouns, or particles, may serve as connectives of clauses containing indirect questions; as,

*Quantus, quālis, quōt, quōtus, quōtuplex, ūter; quis, quī, cūjas; ūbi, quō, unde, quā quorsum, quamdiu, quamdiūdum, quamprīdem, quōties, cur, quāre, quamobrem, quemadmodum, quōmodo, ut, quam, quantōpēre, an, ne, num, utrum, anne, annon.*

REMARK 1. The indicative is frequently used in dependent questions, especially in Terence and Plautus and occasionally in later poets; as, *Videtur quid facit.* Ter. So Virg. *Ecl.* 5, 7. In the best prose writers the indicative generally indicates that the question is direct, or that the sentence is not a question; as, *Queramus ubi mālēficium est,* Let us seek there, where the crime actually is. Cic. *Nihil est admirābilius, quam quōmodo ille mortem filii tulit.*

REM. 2. In double questions, ‘whether—or,’ the first may be introduced by *utrum*, or the enclitic *ne*, or without an interrogative particle. Hence there are four forms of double questions,—1. *utrum* (or *utrum ne*),—*an*. 2. *utrum*,—*an* (*anne*). 3. *-ne*,—*an*. 4. *-ne*,—*-ne*; as, *Multum intērest, utrum laus immīnuātur, an sālus dēsērātur.* Cic. The interrogative particle *utrum* is not used in a single question; and *num—an* is used only in direct questions. The English ‘or not’ in the second part, which is used without a verb, is expressed in Latin by *annon* or *necne*, either with or without a verb; but *necne* occurs only in indirect questions; as, *Dii utrum sint, necne sint, queritur.* Cic.—*Ne—ne, an—an, or num—num* scarcely occur except in poetical or unclassical language.

REM. 3. *Dūbito, dūbium est, or incertum est an, delibēro or hæsito an*, and especially *haud scio an, nescio an*, though implying some doubt, have generally a sense almost affirmative. Compare § 198, 11, R. (e.)

REM. 4. *Nescio quis*, used nearly in the sense of *aliquis*, does not influence the mood of the following verb; as, *Sed cāsu nescio quo in ea tempōra ætas nostra incidit.* Cic. *Lūcus, nescio quo cāsu, nocturno tempōre incensus est.* Nep. So, also, *nescio quōmodo*, ‘somehow’ or ‘in some way’; as, *Sed nescio quōmodo, inheret in mentibus quāsi augūrium.* Cic. In like manner *mīrum quam, mīrum quantum, nīmium quantum*, and the like, when united to express only one idea, do not affect the mood of the verb; as, *Sāles in dicendo nīmium quantum vālent*,—very much. Cic

## SUBJUNCTIVE IN INSERTED CLAUSES.

§ 266. 1. When a dependent proposition containing either an accusative with the infinitive, or a verb in the subjunctive, has a clause connected with it, as an *essential part*, either by a relative, a relative adverb, or a conjunction, the verb of the latter clause is put in the subjunctive; as,

*Quid enim pōtest esse tam perspicuum, quam esse aliquod nūmen, quo hæc rēgantur?* For what can be so clear as, that there is some divinity by whom these things are governed? Cic. Here the thing which is stated to be clear is, not merely *esse aliquod nūmen*, that there is a god, but also that the world is governed by him. Hence the latter clause, *quo hæc rēgantur* is an essential part of the general proposition. *Illud sic fēre dēfīnīri sōlet, dēcōrum id esse, quā consentāneum sīt hōmīnis excellentiæ.* Id. *Audiam quid sit, quod Epicūrum non vōbes,* I shall hear why it is that you do not approve of Epicurus. Id. *Jussit A, quæ vōnissent, nāves Eubœam pētērent.* Liv.



REMARK 1. Hence the subjunctive is used in general sentences, in which the class of things mentioned exists only as a conception or idea, while the individual thing has a real existence; as, *Est enim ulciscendi et puniendi modus atque haud scio an satis sit eum qui læcesserit injuriæ suæ pœnitere*, i. e. each individual offender of the class.

REM. 2. When the principal proposition contains a subjunctive denoting a result, after *ita*, *tam*, *tālis*, etc., the inserted clause has the indicative; as, *Asia vero tam opima est et fertilis, ut—multitudine earum rerum, quæ exportantur facile omnibus terris antecellat*. Cic. The same is the case in definitions; as *Videri igitur oportet, quæ sint convenientia cum ipso negotio, hoc est, quæ ab re separare non possunt*. Cic.—So also explanatory clauses, especially circumlocutions introduced by a relative pronoun, are sometimes found with the indicative; as, *Itaque ille Marius item eximie L. Plotium dilexit, cujus ingenio patribus ea, quæ gesserat, posse celebrari*. Cic.

NOTE. To this rule belongs the construction of the *oratio obliqua*, 'indirect discourse,' or 'reported speech,' in which the language of another is presented, not as it was conceived or expressed by him, but in the third person. Thus Cæsar said, 'I came, I saw, I conquered,' is direct,—Cæsar said, that 'he came, saw, and conquered,' is indirect discourse.

2. In the *oratio obliqua*, the main proposition is expressed by the accusative with the infinitive; and dependent clauses connected with it by relatives and particles, take the subjunctive.

Thus, Cicero and Quintilian, in quoting the language of Marcus Antonius, make use, the former of the *oratio directa*, the latter of the *oratio obliqua*;—*Antoniū inquit, 'Ars earum rerum est, quæ sciuntur'*, Antonius says, 'Art belongs to those things which are known.' Cic. *Antoniū inquit, artem earum rerum esse, quæ sciuntur*, Antonius says, that 'art belongs to those things which are known.' Quint.

So, *Socrates dicere solbat, omnes, in eo quod scirent, satis esse eloquentes*, Socrates was accustomed to say, that 'all were sufficiently eloquent in that which they understood?' Cic. *Cato mirari se aiēbat, quod non rideret harsus, harsipicem quum vidisset*. Id. *Negat jus esse, qui miles non sit, pugnare cum hoste*. Id. *Indignabantur ibi esse imperium, ubi non esset libertas*. Liv. *Itaque Athenienses quod honestum non esset, id ne utile quidem (esse) putaverunt*. Cic.

REMARK 1. (a.) When the subjunctive would be necessary in the *oratio directa*, to denote liberty, power, etc., the same remains in the *oratio obliqua*, and is not changed into the infinitive with an accusative; as, *Ad hæc Ariovistus respondit, quum vellet, congregaretur*, To this Ariovistus replied, that 'he might meet him when he pleased.' Cæs. In the *oratio directa*, this would be *congregaretur*.

(b.) The imperative in the *oratio directa* is, in the *oratio obliqua*, changed into the subjunctive; as, *hoc mihi dicite*, which in the *oratio obliqua* is, *hoc sibi dicant*, or *hoc sibi dicereant*, according to the tense of the leading verb.

(c.) So also direct questions addressed to the second person, when changed from direct to indirect speech, become subjunctives. Liv. 6, 37.—But such questions when not addressed to the second person are expressed in the *oratio obliqua* by the accusative with the infinitive; as when in direct speech we say, *Etiamsi veteris contumelie oblivisci relinam, num possum etiam recentium injuriarum memoriam dīpōnere?* The *oratio obliqua* will be, *Cæsar respondit (histor. perf.)—si veteris contumelie oblivisci vellet, num etiam recentium injuriarum—memoriam dīpōnere possē?* Cæs. Very rarely the accusative with the infinitive is found in a question of the second person, as in Liv. 6, 17: but the subjunctive in questions of the third person is less uncommon in Cæsar; as, *Quis pūti posset? for quem pūti posse? Quis hoc sibi persuaderet? for quem sibi persuasurum?* See § 273, 3.

REM. 2. A writer may state his own past words or thoughts in *oratio obliqua* either preserving the first person, or adopting the third.

REM. 3. When the inserted clause contains the words or sentiments of the subject of the leading clause, all references to him are regularly expressed by the reflexives *sui* and *suis*; as, *Huc necessitate coactus domū nāris qui sic ap̄p̄t it multa pollicens, si se conservasset.* Nep. And this is equally true when the word to which the pronoun refers is not in reality the grammatical subject, provided it may still be conceived as such; as, *Quum ei in suspiciōnem venisset, aliquid in epistolā de se esse scriptum.* Nep.; for the words, *quum ei in suspiciōnem venisset*, are equivalent to *quum suspicārētur*. See § 208. (1.)

REM. 4. The tenses to be used in changing the *ōratiō directa* into the *obliqua*, depend on the tense of the verb which introduces the quotation, according to the rule, § 258. But when the future perfect would be used in the direct, the pluperfect is necessary in the oblique form; but the perfect is used after the present, perfect definite, or future.

REM. 5. When the connected clause contains merely a descriptive circumstance, or expresses what is independent of the sentiment of the preceding clause, it takes the indicative; as, *Imp̄ravit Alexander Lysippo, ut eorum equitum, qui apud Granicum ceciderant, faceret stātuas*, Alexander ordered Lysippus to make statues of those horsemen who had fallen at the Granicus. Sometimes, in other cases, when it is evident from the sense, that the connected clause is an essential part of the proposition, the indicative is used, to avoid giving the appearance of contingency to the sentence.

3. A clause connected to another by a relative or causal conjunction, takes the subjunctive, (whatever be the mood of the preceding verb,) when it contains not the sentiment or allegation of the writer, but that of some other person alluded to; as,

*Socrātes accūsātus est, quod corrupēret iuventūtem*, Socrates was accused of corrupting the youth, lit., because (as was alleged) he corrupted the youth. *Deum invocabant*, cuius ad sōlenne venissent, They invoked the god, to whose solemnities they had come. Liv. *Quos vicēris amicos tibi esse cāre crēdas*, Do not believe that those whom you have conquered are your friends. Here, in the first example, the charge of corrupting the youth is not made by the writer, but by the accusers of Socrates. So, in the second example, the worshippers allege that they have come to attend upon the solemnities of the god. In the last, it is implied by the use of the subjunctive mood, that the belief spoken of is that of the person addressed:—*quos vicisti* would have been merely an addition of the speaker, by means of which he would have designated the persons whose friendship he was speaking of; and, in general, the *indicative*, in such sentences, is employed in those statements which are independent of the sentiments of the person, to whose thoughts or words allusion is made. Cf. *supra*, 2, R. 5.

REMARK. In the preceding cases, it is not directly said that the sentiments are those of another than the writer. In Cicero, however, the words *dico*, *p̄to*, *arbitror*, and the like, are often construed in a similar manner, although, properly speaking, not these verbs, but those in the clauses dependent on them, should be in the subjunctive; as, *Quum enim, Hannibālīs permissu, exisset de castris, rediit paulo post, quod se oblitum nescio quod dicēret*,...because (as) he said, he had forgotten something. Cic. *Ab Athēniensibus, locum sēpultūræ intra urbem ut darent, impetrāre non pōtui, quod religiōne se impēdiri dicērent.* Id.

## IMPERATIVE MOOD.

§ 267. The imperative mood is used to express a *command*, *wish*, *advice*, or *exhortation*; as,

*Nosce te*, Know thyself. Cic. *Æquam memento servāre mentem*, Remember to preserve an unruffled mind. Hor. *Huc ades*, Come hither. Virg. *Pasce cānellas, et pōtum pastas āge, et inter āgendum occurrāre capro cāveto.* Id.

(1.) The imperative *present* denotes that an action is to be performed directly or at once; as, *lĕge*, read; *mōrĕre*, die; or that a state or condition is to continue; as, *vĭve*, live.

(2.) The imperative *future* denotes that something is to be done, as soon as something else has taken place; as, *Quum vālētūdini tuæ cōsūlueris, tum cōsūlito nāvīgātiōni*. Cic. *Prĭus audite paucis; quæd quum dixĕro, si placuerit, faciōte*. Ter. The precedent event is often to be supplied by the mind. Sometimes, especially in poetry, the imperative present is used for the imperative future, and, on the other hand, *scĭto* and *scitōte*, from *scio*, are used instead of the imperative present, which is wanting.

(3.) Hence the imperative future is properly used in *contracts, laws, and wills*; and also in *precepts and rules of conduct*; as, *Rēgiō impĕrio duo sunt, ūque cōsūles appellātor, militiæ summum jus hābento, nēmīni pārento, illis sālus pōpuli supĕrma lex esto*. Cic. *Non sātis est pulchra esse poēmāta, dulcĭa sūto*. Hor. *Ignoscito sape altĕri, numquam tibi*. Syr.

REMARK 1. With the imperative, *not* is expressed by *nē*, and *nor* by *nĕre*; as,

*Ne tanta ūnimis assuescĭte bella*. Virg. *Ne crĕde cōlōri*. Id. *Hōmīnem mortuum in urbe ne sĕpĕlito, nĕve ūrito*. Cic.

NOTE. *Non* and *nĕque* occur, though rarely, with the imperative; as, *Ves quōque non cārīs aures ōnĕrāte lāpillis, nec prōdite grāves iusūto vestibis auro*. Ovid. But with the subjunctive used for the imperative *non* and especially *nĕque* are found more frequently. Cf. § 260, R. 6, (b.)—In Plautus and Terence *ne* is of common occurrence both with the imperative and with the present subjunctive, and with no difference of meaning; but later poets chiefly use *ne* with the present subjunctive, and *ne* with the imperative only when they speak emphatically. In classical prose writers the periphrastic *nōli* with the infinitive is preferred.

REM. 2. The present and perfect subjunctive are often used instead of both tenses of the imperative, to express a command in a milder form, an exhortation, or an entreaty; as, *Qui adipisci vĕram glōriam vōlet, justitiæ fungātur officiis*. Cic. *Quod dābitus, ne fēcĕris*. Plin. Ep. See § 260, II., R. 6. An imperative of the perfect passive is very rarely found; as, *At vos admōniti nostris quōque cāsibus este*. Ovid. *Jacta ālea esto*. Cæs. in Suet. But the subjunctive is more common; as, *Jacta sit ālea*. Sometimes also the future indicative; as, *Sed vālĕbis, meāque nĕgōtia vidĕbis, mĕque diis jūvantibus ante brām exspectābis*, instead of *vāle, vide, exspecta*. Cic. *Ubi sententiā meā vōbis pĕrvĕgĕro, tum quibus eādē placĕbunt, in dextram partē tūcī transībīs, instead of transītōte*. Liv. With the future the negative is *non*. See § 259, R. 1, (4.)

REM. 3. Sometimes, for the simple affirmative imperative, *cūra* or *cūrāto ut, fac ut, or fac* alone is used with the subjunctive; as, *Cūra ut quam primum vĕnias, Come as soon as possible. Fac erūdias*, Instruct, or Take care to instruct. Cic. For the negative imperative *fac ne, cāve ne* or *cāve* alone, with the present or perfect subjunctive is used; but especially *nōli* with the infinitive; as, *Nōli pūtāre*, Do not suppose. Cic. *Cāve existimes*, Do not think. Id. *Nōlite id velle quod uon fiĕri pōtest, et cāvĕte ne spe pĕsēntis pācis pĕrpĕtuā pācem ōmittātis*. Id.

## INFINITIVE MOOD.

### OF THE TENSES OF THE INFINITIVE

§ 268. 1. The infinitive partakes of the properties of the noun and verb, just as the participle combines the properties of the adjective and verb. It expresses simply the action or state implied in the verb in an abstract manner, without specifying either person, number, or time, and thus merely indicates whether an action is in progress or completed.



2. The tenses of the infinitive denote respectively an action as present, past, or future, in reference to the time of the verbs with which they are connected; as,

*Hoc facere possum*, I am able to do this. Cic. *Vidi nostros inimicos cupere bellum*, I saw that our enemies were desiring war. Id. *Nec gemere aëriā cessabit turtur ab ulmo*, Nor shall the turtle dove cease to coo from the lofty elm. Virg.—*Victorem victæ succubuisse quæror*, I complain that the victor has yielded to the vanquished. Ovid. *Se a senibus audisse dicēbant*, They said that they had heard (it) from the old men. Cic. *Andiet cives acuisse ferrum iuventus*, The youth will hear that the citizens have whetted the sword. Hor.—*Negat sese verbum esse facturum*, He declares that he is not about to speak. Cic. *Postquam audierat non datum iri filio uxorem suo*, After he had heard that a wife would not be given to his son. Ter. *Semper existimābitis nihil horum vos visūros fore*, You will always suppose that you are to see none of these things. Cic.

REMARK 1. (a.) The present and perfect infinitives are sometimes called respectively the infinitives of *incomplete* and of *completed* action. The present infinitive, however, is sometimes used to denote a completed action. This is the usual construction with *mēmīni*; but in such case the speaker transfers himself to the past, and the expression denotes rather a recollection of the progress than of the completion of the action; as, *Hoc me mēmīni dicere*, I remember *my saying* this. Cic. *Teucrum mēmīni Sidōna venire*, I remember Teucer's coming to Sidon. Virg. So with *mēmōriā teneo*. Cic. Phil. 8, 10. *Scribit* also is construed like *mēmīnit*; as, Cic. Off. 3, 2: and after the same analogy, and for the sake of vivid expression Cicero says, *M. Maximum accēpinus facile celare, tacere, dissimulare, etc.*, though speaking of things which he had not witnessed himself. So, also, with *recordor*;—*Recordor longe omnibus unum anteferre Demosthenem*. Cic. When the action is spoken of simply as a fact, the perfect infinitive is used with *mēmīni*; as, *Mēmīnistis me ita distribuisse causam*. Cic.

(b.) The passive voice having no simple form for expressing the completed state of suffering makes use of the combination of the perfect participle with *esse*; as, *amatus esse*, to have been loved. When thus combined *esse* loses its own signification of a continued state, and when this state is to be expressed, another infinitive must be chosen; as, *Constrictam jam horum conscientiam tenere conjunctionem tuam non vides?* Cic. Sometimes, however, when no ambiguity can arise, *esse* in the usual combination retains its original meaning as, *Apua Platonem est, omnem morem Lacedæmoniōrum inflammatum esse cupiditate vincendi*. Id. Here *inflammatum esse* expresses a continued or habitual state—*Fuisse* with the perfect participle denotes a state completed previous to a certain past time; as, *Iubet bono animo esse; sopitum fuisse regem subito ictu*. Liv.

REM. 2. To express the result of an action rather than its progress, the perfect infinitive is sometimes used instead of the present, especially after *satis habeo*, *satis mihi est*, *pudet*, *contentus sum*, *melius erit*, *volo* or a verb of equivalent meaning; as, *Bacchantur rates, magnum si pectore possit excussisse deum*. Virg. *Quam illum nemo vellet attigisse*. Plin. The poets use the infinitive perfect where we should expect a present; as, *Tendentes Pelion imposuisse Olympo*. Hor.

REM. 3. The present infinitive is also sometimes used for the future, especially when the verb has no future; as, *Desine fata deum flecti sperare*, Cease to hope that the fates of the gods will be changed. Virg. *Progeniem Trojano a sanguine duci audierat*. Id. *Cras mihi argentum dare dicit*, i. e. *se daturum esse*. Ter. *Cato affirmat se riro illum non triumphare*. Cic.

REM. 4. (a.) The infinitive future active is formed by a combination of the participle future active with *esse*; as, *amaturus esse*; the infinitive future passive by a combination of the supine in *um* with *iri*; as, *amatum iri*. These future infinitives denote an action or state as continuing. The participle in *um*, which properly expresses intention (see § 162, 14), takes also the infinitive *e* to express a past intention; as, *Scio te scripturum fuisse*, I know that

you have had the intention to write, whence it was an easy transition to the sense, 'you would have written,' in conditional sentences, when the condition is not fulfilled. This infinitive is used especially in the apodosis of hypothetical sentences, where in direct speech the pluperfect subjunctive would be used (cf. § 162, 14, R. 3.); as, *Etiamsi obtempêrasset auspiciis, idem eventurum fuisse puto*. Cic. In like manner the infinitive future with *esse* is used in the apodosis of hypothetical sentences instead of the imperfect subjunctive; as, *Libertus, nisi jûrasset, scélus se factûrum (esse) arbitrâbatur*. Id.

(b.) Instead of the future infinitive, in both voices, *fûtûrum esse* or *fôre* followed by *ut* and the subjunctive, is often used; the present and imperfect subjunctive, in such cases, denoting an unfinished, the perfect and pluperfect a finished, future action; as, *Numquam putâci fôre, ut supplex ad te venirem*, I never supposed (that it would happen) that I should come a suppliant to you. Cic. *Suspîcor fôre, ut infringâtur hominum imprôbitas*. Id. *Crêdibam fôre, ut epistolam scripsisses*.—So, also, in the passive for a continued state of future suffering the present and imperfect are used; as, *Crêdo fôre, ut epistolam scribâtur*, and, *Crêdebam fôre, ut epistola scribêrêtur*. But to express a completed state in future time the perfect participle is employed; as, *Quos spêro brêvi tempore tecum cõpûlâtos fôre*. Cic. *Quod vidêret nômîne pácis bellum involûtum fôre*. Id. This construction is necessarily used, when the verb has either no future active participle, or no supine; as, in such case, the regular future infinitive cannot be formed; as, *Spêro fôre ut sapias*.—*Fôre* is found in two passages pleonastically joined with the future participle active, viz. *Te ad me fôre ventûrum*. Cic. Att. 5, 21: and *Quum sênâtus censêret—libenter factûros fôre*. Liv. 6, 42.

REM. 5. (a.) The periphrastic infinitive formed by the future active participle with *fuisse*, denotes a future action contingent upon a condition which was not fulfilled; and, in the apodosis of a conditional sentence, corresponds to the pluperfect subjunctive; as, *An censes me tantos libôres susceptûrum fuisse, si hisdem finibus glôriam meam quibus vitam essem terminâturus?* Do you think that I should have undertaken so great labors if, etc. Cic. *Ut perspîcuum sit omnibus, nisi tanta âcèrbitas injû ie fuisset, numquam illos in eum locum prôgressûros fuisse*,....that they never would have come into that place. Id.

(b.) *Fûtûrum fuisse* with *ut* and the imperfect subjunctive passive, corresponds to the infinitive *fuisse* with the future participle active in a conditional proposition; as, *Nisi nunciû essent allâti, existimâbant plêrique fûtûrum fuisse, ut oppidum amittêrêtur*,...that the town would have been lost. Cæs.

(c.) The participle future passive cannot be used to form an infinitive future passive, since it always retains the meaning of necessity, and in this sense has three regular infinitives, *âmandum esse*, *âmandum fuisse*, and *âmandum fôre*; as, *Instîre hiemem, aut sub pellibus habendos milites fôre, aut diffêrendum esse in æstâtem bellum*. Liv.

REM. 6. In the apodosis of a conditional sentence, the perfect infinitive, like the past tenses of the indicative, (see § 259, R. 4.), sometimes corresponds to the pluperfect subjunctive; as, (*Dixit*) *sibi vitam filie suæ cariorem fuisse, ei libère ac pûdicæ vivere licitum fuisset*, (He said) that the life of his daughter had been dearer to him than his own, if it had been permitted.... Liv. This use of the perfect infinitive is necessary, when the verb has no future participle; as, *Equidem Plâtônem existimo, si genus fôrense dicendi tractâre voluisset, gravissime et copiôsissime pôtuisse dicere*,—would have been able to speak. Cic.

§ 269. The infinitive may be regarded either as a verb or as an abstract noun. (a.) As a verb it is used either indefinitely (§ 143, 4), or with a subject of its own, which is put in the accusative, (§ 239). But the infinitive passive of neuter and sometimes of active verbs, like the third person singular of that voice, may be used impersonally or without a subject; as, *Vides tota propêrâri litôre*, You see a stir is made all along the shore. Virg. See §§ 209 R. 3, (2.), and 239, R. 4. The present infinitive has sometimes, in narration, a subject in the nominative. See § 209, R. 5.

(b.) As a noun, the infinitive, either alone or with a subject accusative, has two cases, the nominative and the accusative, and is accordingly used either as the subject or the object of a verb.

### THE INFINITIVE AS THE SUBJECT OF A VERB.

The infinitive, either with or without a subject-accusative, may be the *subject* of a verb; as,

*Ad reipublicam pertinet me conservāri*, It concerns the state that I should be preserved. Cic. *Numquam est ūtile peccāre*, To do wrong is never useful. Id. *Majus dūdcus est paratū amittere quam omnino non parāvisse*. Sall. In the first example *conservāri* with its subject accusative *me* is the subject of *pertinet*, and is equivalent to 'my preservation': in the second, *peccāre* is the subject of *est ūtile*. See § 202, 2, and III. R. 2.

REMARK 1. A general truth may be expressed by the infinitive without a subject; as, *Faciūsus est vincire civem Rōmānum*, To bind a Roman citizen, or, that one should bind a Roman citizen, is a crime. But in such case the verb *esse* and verbs denoting *to appear*, *to be considered* or *called* (§ 210, R. 3.), require the noun or adjective of the predicate to agree with the implied subject in the accusative; as, *Æquū est peccātis rēniū poscentem reddere rursus*. Hor. *Atticus maximum aestimavit questum, mēmōrem grātūque cognosci*. Nep.

NOTE. The indefinite pronoun *āliquem* or *āliquos* may in such cases be supplied, and the same indefiniteness may be expressed by *te* or *nos*, cf. § 209, R. 7; but it is still more frequently expressed by the infinitive passive. Hence the sentence *Faciūsus est vincire civem Rōmānum*, may also be expressed by *Faciūsus est vinciri civem Rōmānum*. So, *Quam vidērent de eōrum virtūte non desperāri*. Nep.—The impersonal verbs *licet*, *dēcet*, *oportet*, *opus est*, and *nēcesse est*, when there is no definite subject, are joined with the infinitive active alone; but when there is a subject-accusative, they are connected with the passive construction: as, a c t. *licet hoc faciēre*; *dēcet spēcimen cāpēre ex hac re*; p a s s. *licet hoc fieri*; *dēcet spēcimen cāpi*.

REM. 2. The infinitive, with or without a subject accusative, is often the subject of a proposition, when the substantive verb with a noun, a neuter adjective, or an impersonal verb forms the predicate. Of this kind are *justum*, *æquum*, *vērissimū*, *consentāneum*, *apertum*—*est*, *erat*, etc., *nēcesse est*, *opus est*;—*appāret*, *constat*, *convenit*, *dēcet*, *licet*, *oportet*; *intelligitur*, *perspicitur*, etc.; as, *Cui verba dāre difficile est*. Ter. *Mendācem mēmōrem esse oportet*. Quint. *Lēgem brevem esse oportet*. Sen. *Constat profecto ad salutem civium inventas esse lēges*. Cic. *Non enim me hoc jam dicere pūdebūt*. Id. See § 209, R. 3, (5.), (a.)

REM. 3. The infinitive may itself be the subject of an infinitive; as, *Audio non licēre cuiquam in nāve cāpillos depōnēre*. Ter.

REM. 4. The infinitive, with or without a subject accusative, may also be the predicate nominative; as, *Impūne quālibet faciēre id est rēgem esse*. Sall. In this sentence *faciēre* is the subject, and *rēgem esse* is the predicate; for *id*, which only represents by a kind of apposition the clause *impūne quālibet faciēre*, can be omitted.

REM. 5. When the infinitive *esse*, (or others of similar meaning, as, *fieri*, *vivēre*, *vītam*, *dēgēre*, *cōdēre*, *abīre*, etc.), with a predicate adjective (or noun), is joined with *licet*, such predicate is put in the accusative, if the subject-accusative of the infinitive is expressed, and sometimes, also, when it is omitted, but more frequently, in the latter case, the predicate adjective or noun is attracted to the dative following *licet*; as, *Ut enim liceat ante tempus consulem fieri*. Anct. ad Her. *Mēdios esse jam non licēbit*. Cic. *Sī cīri Rōmāno licet esse cōsultāntium*. Id.—*Licuit enim esse otioso Thēmistocli*. Id. *Mihi negligentī esse non licet*. Id. *Sibi vītam filiæ suæ cārīōrem fuisse, si libēræ ac pūdicæ vivēre licitum fuisset* (scil. ei). Liv. So also *nēcesse est* with the predicate in the



dative. *Vobis necesse est fortibus viris esse.* Liv.—But *licet*, *oportet* and *necesse est* are also joined with the subjunctive mood, and hence is derived the construction of *ut* as a conjunction. See § 263, 2.

## THE INFINITIVE AS THE OBJECT OF A VERB.

§ 270. The infinitive, either with or without a subject-accusative, may be the *object* of a verb; as,

*Ave vitare cupimus*, We desire to avoid this. Cic. *Poetas omnino non conor attingere*, I do not at all attempt to read the poets. Id. *Sententiam valere cupierunt*, They desired that the opinion should prevail. Id. *Spéro te valere*, I hope that you are well. Id.

NOTE. The infinitive as the object of a verb supplies the place of the accusative of the *thing*, and hence many active verbs besides the infinitive take in the active voice an accusative of the *person*, cf. § 231, R. 3, (b.), and in the passive retain the infinitive; as, *Consules jubentur scribere exercitum.* *Muros adire vetiti sunt.* Cf. § 234, I.

REMARK 1. The infinitive alone may also depend upon an adjective, and sometimes upon a noun.

(a.) It may depend upon *relative adjectives*, (see § 213, R. 1), which, by the poets, are joined with the infinitive instead of their usual construction with the genitive of the gerund, etc.; as, *Cedere nescius.* Hor. *Avidi committere pugnam.* Ovid. *Cupidus moriri.* Id. *Cantare petiti Arcades.* Virg. *Callidus condere furto.* Hor. *Quilibet impotens sperare.* Id. *Saturnas facere inscius.* Varr. *Insuetus vera audire.* Liv. *Certa mori.* Virg. *Feliciores unguere tela.* Virg. So, *Andax omnia perpeteri*, Resolute to endure every thing. Hor. *Sollers ornare Cypassis*, Skillful to adorn. Ovid. *Segnes solvere nodum.* Hor. *Indocilis paraveriem pati.* Id. *Non levis fata recedere.* Id. See § 213, R. 4, (1.)

(b.) It may also depend upon adjectives signifying *usefulness, fitness, etc.*, which are sometimes by the poets construed with the infinitive instead of the dative; as, (*Tibia*) *aspirare et esse choris erat utilis.* Hor. *Aetas mollis et apta regi.* Ovid. *Fons etiam viro dare nomen idoneus.* Hor. *Fruges consumere nati.* Id. And after *dignus* and *contentus*; as, *Dignus amari.* Virg. Cf. § 244, R. 2, (b.)

(c.) Upon a noun; as, *Tempus est hujus libri facere finem*, It is time to finish this book. Nep. *Mitt consilia reges tollere*, He devised a plan to destroy the kings. Id. *Ea erat confessio copul rerum Romanam esse.* Liv. *Cupido incenserat Ethiopiam invadere.* Curt. *Quibus in otio vivere copia erat.* Sall. So, *Nec mihi sunt vires inimicos pellere tectis*, instead of *pellendis inimicis*, or *ad pellendos inimicos.* Ovid.

(d.) If for the infinitives depending on nouns or adjectives other nouns were substituted, these last would be put in the genitive, dative, or ablative; and hence such infinitives may perhaps be properly regarded as exceptions to the rule, that the infinitive has but two cases, the nominative and the accusative.

REM 2. (a.) The infinitive with the accusative sometimes stands unconnected, especially in exclamations and indignant interrogations, where *credibile est?* or *verumne est?* may be supplied; as, *Mene incepto desistere victam?* That I, vanquished, should desist from my undertaking? Virg. *Me miserum! te intantus aramnas propter me incidisse!* Cic.—But *ut*, also, with the subjunctive, either with or without an interrogative particle, may be used to express a question with indignation; as, *Fine (scil. patri) ego ut adverser?* Liv. *Tu ut unquam te corrigas?* Cic. *Judicio ut arator decumanum perséquatur?* Id. where *fiere potest?* may be supplied.

(b.) So, in the *oratio obliqua*, the words signifying *said, saying, etc.*, are often omitted, or implied in a preceding verb or phrase; as, *Id facile effici posse scil. dixit.* Nep. *Quem signum daturum fugientibus?* Curt.

**REM. 3.** The infinitive is sometimes to be supplied; and *esse* and *fuisse* with a predicate adjective, and also in the compound forms of the infinitive, both active and passive, are commonly omitted, especially after verbs of saying, thinking, knowing, and perceiving; as, *Vos cognōri fortes*. Sall. *Quem pulcrum mēmōrārī*. Tac.—So, also, with the infinitive perfect passive when depending on *volo*, *nolo*, *cūpiō*, and *oportet*; as, *Adōlescenti mōrem gestum oportuit*. Ter. *Quod jam pridem factum oportuit*. Cic.—Sometimes in a relative clause an infinitive is to be supplied from the finite verb of the main proposition; as, *Quos voluit omnes interfecit*, scil. *interficere*. *Ne illam quidem consēquuntur, quam putant, grātiā*; i. e. *quam se consēcutūros putant*. Cic.

## THE INFINITIVE WITHOUT A SUBJECT-ACCUSATIVE.

§ 271. The infinitive, without a subject-accusative, is used after verbs denoting ability, obligation, intention or endeavor; after verbs signifying to begin, continue, cease, abstain, dare, fear, hesitate, or be wont; and after the passive of verbs of saying, believing, reckoning, etc.

**NOTE 1.** To these classes belong *possum*, *queo*, *nēqueo*, *vāleo*, *dēbeo*; *cūro*, *cōgito*, *dēcerno*, *statuo*, *constituo*, *instituo*, *pāro*; *cōnor*, *nitor*, *tendo*, *contendo*, *tento*, *mātūro*, *prōpēro*, *aggrēdior*, *persēvēro*, — *cāpi*, *incīpio*, *pergo*, *dēsino*, *dēsisto*, *intermitto*, *parco*, *rēcūso*; *sōleo*, *assuesco*, *consuesco*, *insuesco*; *audeo*, *vēreor*, *mētuo*, *rēformido*, *tīmeo*, *horreo*, *dūbito*; — *audior*, *crēdor*, *existimor*, *fēror*, *nēgor*, *nuntior*, *pērhībeor*, *pūtor*, *trādor*, *jūbeor*, *vīdeor*, and *cōgor*.

**NOTE 2.** When the preceding verbs are joined with *esse*, *hābēri*, *jūdicāri*, *vidēri*, etc., the predicate noun or adjective is put in the nominative; as, *Solēt tristis vidēri*; *aude sapiens esse*; *cēpit mihi molestus esse*; *dēbes esse diligens*; *pōtest liber esse*: and so also *mēritur*, scil. *didicit liber esse*.

**NOTE 3.** The poets, in imitation of the Greeks, use the infinitive after *fūge*, *aufer*, *cāve*, *parce*, *memento*; *pāreo*, *rēfūgiō*, *quero*, *urgeo*, *lābōro*, *āmo*, *gaudeo*, *fūro*, *calleo*, *sūmo*, *mitto*, *rēmitto*, *pātor*, *jūro*, *conjūro*, *pugno*, *nātus*, and some other verbs, especially to denote a wish or purpose; as, *Introit vidēre*. Ter. *Non te frangere persēquor*. Hor. *Non pōpūlare pēnātes vēmimus*. Virg. In this construction, the poets are sometimes imitated by the later prose writers.

**REMARK 1.** Many of the verbs above enumerated, instead of the infinitive, may be followed by the subjunctive with *ut*, *ne*, etc.; and with some of them this is the regular construction; as, *Sententiā ne dicēret, rēcūsāvit*. Cic.

**REM. 2.** The passives *dicor*, *trādor*, *fēror*, *narror*, *rēpērior*, *existimor*, *vīdeor*, etc., may either be used personally, with the infinitive alone, or impersonally, followed by the accusative with the infinitive. Thus we may say, *Māter Pausāniē eo tempore vixisse dicitur*, or, *Dicitur eo tempore mātrē Pausāniē vixisse*, The mother of Pausanias is said to have been living....or, It is said that the mother of Pausanias was living.... Nep. The former construction is more common especially with *videor*, see § 272, R. 6; but the latter is frequent with *nuntiātur*, and very common with the compound tenses, *trādītum est*, *prōditum est*, etc., and with the participle future passive; as, *crēdendū est*, *intelligendū est*, etc.; as, *Quōrum nēmīnem tālem fuisse crēdendū*, etc. Cic.

**REM. 3.** The infinitive without a subject is used after a verb. only when it denotes an action or state of the subject of that verb.

**REM. 4.** The verbs to wish or desire, *volo*, *nolo*, *mālo*; *cūpiō*, *opto*, *stūdeo*, have a twofold construction:—the infinitive without a subject-accusative is used after them, when the subject remains the same; and when followed by *esse*, *hābēri*, etc., the predicate-noun or adjective is in the nominative;—but the accusative with the infinitive is used when the subject is changed, or when a reflexive pronoun of the same person follows. We say, therefore, *volo eruditus fieri*, and on the other hand, *volo te eruditum fieri*, and *volo me eruditum fieri*. So, *Volo is esse, quem tu me esse voluisti*. Cic. *Cūpiō me esse clemētem*, *cūpiō*—

*me non dissolutum videri.* Id.; or, omitting the pronoun, *cūpic esse clēmens nec dissolutus videri.*—*Omnes homines qui sese student prestare ceteris animalibus* etc. Sall.

NOTE 4. *Volo* is used with the present infinitive passive; as, *Me amari volo*, I wish to be beloved; *hoc velim intelligi*, I wish this to be understood; and also with the infinitive perfect passive to denote the eager desire that something should be instantly accomplished; as, *Lēgātī quod erant appellāti superbius, Crintheum patres vestri—extinctum esse voluerunt.* Cic.; but it occurs most frequently with the omission of *esse*; as, *hoc factum volo*; *nunc illos commendatos velim*: so, *patriam extinctam cupit*.

NOTE 5. The nominative with the infinitive after verbs of saying, perceiving, etc. (§ 272), is rare even in poetry, and is an imitation of the Greek idiom, which requires the nominative with the infinitive when the same subject remains; as, *Phaschus ille, quem videtis, hospites, ait fuisse novum celerissimus.* Catull. *Quia retulit Ajax esse Jovis nepos*, instead of *se esse Jovis nepotem* Ovid. *Sensit medios delapsus in hostes*, instead of *se delapsum esse.* Virg.

## THE INFINITIVE WITH A SUBJECT-ACCUSATIVE.

§ 272. The infinitive with a subject-accusative follows verbs of saying, thinking, knowing, perceiving, and the like; as,

*Vidēbat, id non posse fieri*, He saw that that could not be done. Nep. *Sentit animus, se sua vi, non aliā, moveri.* Cic. *Audivi te venire.* *Me in ejus potestate dixi fore.* Id. *Affirmant militum jacere animos.* Liv. *Sape venit ad aures meas, te istud nimis crebro dicere.* Cic. *Eam pugnam ad Perusiam pugnam (esse), quidam auctores sunt.* Liv.

NOTE 1. This rule includes all such verbs and phrases as denote the exercise of the external senses and intellectual faculties, or the communication of thought to others; as, *audio, video, sentio, animadverto, cognosco, intelligo, percipio, disco, scio, nescio, censeo, spero, despero, cogito, jūdico, crēdo, arbitror, puto, opinor, dūco, statuo, mēmīni, recordor, obliviscor, opinio est, spes est, etc.*;—*dīco, trādo, prōdo, scribo, rēfēro, narro, nuntio, confirmo, nēgo, ostendo, iudico, doceo, certiorē facio, dēmonstro, pērhībeo, prōmitto, pollicor, spondeo, etc.*; but with most of these a different construction often occurs. See § 273

NOTE 2. The propositions, whose subjects are thus put in the accusative and their verbs in the infinitive, are those which are directly dependent on the verbs of saying and perceiving. Respecting the clauses inserted in such dependent propositions, see § 266, 1.

NOTE 3. (a.) When a relative clause inserted in a proposition containing the accusative with the infinitive, has the same verb as the proposition in which it is inserted, but such verb is not repeated, the noun which is the subject of the relative clause is also put by attraction in the accusative; as, *Te suspicor eisdem rebus, quibus me ipsum, commoveri.* If the verb is expressed we must say, *eisdem rebus commoveri, quibus (ēgo) ipse commoveor.* So, also, in inserted relative clauses where the verb, if expressed, would be in the subjunctive, (see § 266, 2.); as, (Verges) *aiēbat se tantūdem aestimasse, quanti Sacerdotem, for quanti Sacerdos aestimasset.* Cic. *Confutetur se in eā parte fuisse quā te, quā virum omni laude dignum patrem tuam.* Id.

(b.) The same is the case with the particle *quam* after a comparative, see § 256, R. 5, (a.) But sometimes when *quam* connects a clause to a preceding proposition containing the accusative with the infinitive, the same construction follows that precedes *quam*, even when the verb of the latter clause is expressed; as, *Nonne tibi affirmari quidvis me potius perperurum, quam ex Italiā ad bellum civile me exiturum*; instead of *quam exirem* or *quam ut exirem.* Cic.

(c.) In long speeches in the *oratio obliqua*, relative clauses, having a verb of their own which should properly be in the subjunctive, are put in the accusative with the infinitive, if the relative clause is not subordinate to the one with the infinitive, and which is governed by a verb of saying or perceiving.



but is rather coördinate with it; in which case the relative is equivalent to the demonstrative with *et*; as, *Nam illorum urbem ut propugnaculum oppositum esse barbaris, apud quam jam bis classes regias fecisse naufragium; for et apud eam jam bis*, etc.—In Livy and Tacitus the same construction sometimes occurs even after conjunctions; as after *quum* in the sense of ‘while,’ see § 263, 5, R. 3; after *quamquam* on account of its absolute signification, see § 198, 4, and after *quia*.

NOTE 4. The personal pronouns, which, with the other moods, are expressed only when they are emphatic, must be always expressed in the accusative with the infinitive. The verbs ‘to promise’ and ‘to hope’ are in English usually joined with the infinitive present without a pronoun, but in Latin not only is the pronoun expressed, but the infinitive which follows is in the future; as, ‘He promised to come,’ is in Latin, *Præmisit se venturum* (scil. *esse*, see § 270, R. 3). But the infinitive present sometimes occurs after these verbs; as, *Pollentur obsides dare*, Cæs. B. G. 4, 21; and the pronoun is occasionally omitted, see § 239, R. 2 and 3.

REMARK 1. When ambiguity would arise from the subject and the object of the verb being both in the accusative, the passive infinitive is substituted for the active, by which means the subject is put in the ablative, or in the accusative with *per*; as, *Ne fando quidem auditum est, crocodilum violatum esse ab Ægyptio*; instead of *Ægyptium crocodilum violasse*. Cic.

REM. 2. After verbs of saying, thinking, etc., the conjunction *that* is omitted in translating from English into Latin, and the subject of the dependent clause is put in the accusative, and its verb in the infinitive.

REM. 3. The accusative with the infinitive is sometimes rendered into English by a similar form; as, *Si vis me flere*, If you wish *me to weep*. Hor.; but the dependent clause is more frequently connected to the verb of saying, etc. by the conjunction *that*, and the infinitive translated by the indicative or potential mood; as, *Sentimus nivem esse albam*, We perceive *that snow is white*. Cic. Sometimes the dependent clause is annexed to the other without the conjunction; as, *Crédunt se negligi*, They think *they are neglected*. Ter.

REM. 4. A present infinitive corresponds to the imperfect indicative, when with an accusative it follows a preterite tense; as, *Dixit Cæsarem venire*, He said that Cæsar *was coming*. Cæs. In like manner the perfect infinitive with an accusative after a preterite tense corresponds to the pluperfect indicative; as, *Dixit Cæsarem venisse*, He said that Cæsar *had come*. See § 268, 2.

REM. 5. The present infinitive, after verbs of sense, is often equivalent to the present participle; as, *Surgere videt lunam*, He sees the moon (to rise) rising. Virg. *Arma rutilare vident*. Id. *Videbis collucere faces*. Id. *Nec Zephyros audis spirare?* Do you not hear the zephyrs blowing? Id. *Sæpe hoc majores natu dicere audi.* Cic. The two constructions are sometimes united; as, *Medium video discedere cælum, palantesque polo stellas*. Virg.

REM. 3. The subject-accusative after verbs of saying, showing, and believing; as, *dico, nego, trādo, fēro, mēmōro, narro, nuntio, pērhībeo, prōdo, scribo, dēmonstro, ostendo, arguo, crēdo, pūto, existīmo*, and the like, and also after *jūbeo, vēto*, and *prōhībeo*, is regarded also as the accusative of the object after these verbs; and hence such verbs are used also in the passive, the accusative of the active voice becoming, as usual, the nominative of the passive. This is especially the case when their subject is indefinite; as, *Dicunt* (they or people say) *me virum prōbum esse*, or *dicor vir prōbus esse*. So, *Vetūmur hoc facere*, instead of, *Nos hoc facere vētant*. Instead also of the impersonal *videtur* (it appears) followed by the infinitive with its subject-accusative, it is common to say personally, *videor, vidēris*, etc., with the infinitive; as, *videor errasse*, it appears that I have erred.

## INFINITIVE AND SUBJUNCTIVE CLAUSES.

§ 273. When the particle *that*, in English, introduces a clause denoting a *purpose*, *object*, or *result*, it is a sign of the subjunctive in Latin, and is to be expressed by *ut*, etc.; but otherwise it is usually the sign of the accusative with the infinitive. Cf. §§ 262 and 272.

1. (a.) Verbs of *endeavoring* and *resolving* take after them the infinitive and more rarely the subjunctive, when the subject remains the same; but when the subject is changed, they take the subjunctive only.

NOTE 1. Such are *stātuo*, *constituo*, *dēcerno*, *tento*, *lābōro*, *pāro*, *mēdītor*, *cūro*, *nītor*, *conteudo*, *consīlium cāpio*, *ānīmum* or *in ānīmum īndūco*. Cf. § 271. N. 1. After *ōpērem do*, I exert myself, *id. hoc*, or *illud āgo*, I endeavor, *nīhil antīquius hābeo* or *dūco quam*, nothing is of more importance to me, and *vīdeo* for *cūro*, the subjunctive is almost exclusively used.

(b.) Verbs of *effecting* are construed with *ut* or *ne* and the subjunctive.

NOTE 2. Such are *fācio*, *effīcio*, *perfīcio*, *ēvinco*, *pervinco*, *impetro*, *assēquor*, *consēquor*, etc. But *fācēre* 'to effect' occurs in Cic. Brut. 38, in connection with the accusative and infinitive passive.

NOTE 3. *Fācio* with *ut* is also used as a periphrasis for the indicative; as, *Invītus quīdē fēcī*, ut *L. Flāminium e sēnātū cōjicērem*, for *invītus cōjēcī*. Cic.—*Fac*, 'suppose' or 'granting,' and *effīcēre*, 'to prove,' take the accusative with the infinitive; but the passive *effīcitur*, 'it follows,' takes also the subjunctive.—*Fācēre*, 'to introduce' or 'represent,' is joined with a present or perfect participle; as, *Laelium et Scīpiōnem fācīmus admirantes*. Cic. In the passive the accusative also with the infinitive is found, there being no present participle; as, *Isocrātem Plātō laudārī fācit a Sōcrāte*. Cic.

2. Verbs signifying *to request*, *to demand*, *to admonish*, *to advise*, *to encourage*, *to command*, and the like, both when the subject remains the same and when it is changed, are followed by the subjunctive with *ut* or *ne*, and only rarely by the infinitive.

NOTE 4. (a.) Such are *rōgo*, *ōro*, *prēcōr*, *pēto*; *posco*, *postūlo*, *flāgīto*; *mōneo*, *ad-mōneo*, *commōneo*, *hortor*, *cōhortor*, *exhortor*, *suādeo*, *persuādeo*, *īnstītuō*, (I instruct) *īmpello*, *cōgo*, *mando*, *prāscribō*, *ēdīco*, *dēcerno*, *lēgem do*, *censeo*, *perpello*, *excito*, *īncito*, *īmpēro*, etc.; as, *Te non hortor solum, sed etiam ōro, ut tōta mente in rempūblicā in-cumbas*. Cic.

(b.) In the poets and later prose writers the infinitive more frequently follows those verbs without any difference of meaning. The poets even use the infinitive to express a purpose; as, *Prōteus pēcus ēgīt altos vīsere montes*. Hor.

(c.) *Nuntio*, *scribo*, *mitto*, and even *dico*, are followed by the subjunctive when they imply an injunction or intention that something should be done as, *Hec ut fācias, scribo*. Cic.

(d.) *Jūbeo* and *vēto* commonly take the accusative with the infinitive, but sometimes the subjunctive with or rarely without *ut*. Sometimes, with the infinitive, the person to whom the command is given is omitted, especially when it is either obvious from the nature of the command or indefinite; as, *Castra mūnīre jūbet*, scil. *mīlites*. Cæs. *Lex recte fācēre jūbet*, scil. *hōmīnes*, Cic. With the subjunctive the dative of the person sometimes follows *jūbeo*, as, *Britannico jussit, exurgēret*. Tac.—*Impēro* is sometimes followed by the accusative with the infinitive passive; and so also is *censeo*, I vote, or, I ordain. The latter is often construed with the participle in *dus* with *esse* expressed & understood; as, *Carthāginem dēlendā censeo*.

(e.) *Mōneo* and *admōneo*, 'I remind,' and *persuādeo*, 'I convince,' take the accusative with the infinitive.

3. (a.) In the *oratio obliqua*, the construction of the accusative with the infinitive, is exchanged for that of the subjunctive, to denote possibility, liberty, duty, etc.; as,

*Virginius unum Ap. Claudium legum expertem esse aiēbat: respicērent tribūnāl hōmīnes castellum omnium scēlērū.* Liv.

(b.) On the contrary, when the subjunctive has been used after a verb of requesting, commanding, etc., the construction often passes into that of the accusative with the infinitive; the verb of saying being considered as implied in the verb of requesting, etc.; as, *Orābat ne se ut parricidum liberūm āversārentur: sibi vitam filiæ suā cārīōrem fuisse, si...* Liv. Cf. § 270, R. 2, (b.)

4. (a.) Verbs which denote *willingness, unwillingness, permission, and necessity*, commonly take the infinitive, or the accusative with the infinitive, but sometimes the subjunctive.

NOTE 5. Such are *vōlo, nōlo, mālo, opto, permitto, pātior, sīno, concēdo, licet, prōhibeo, oportet*, and *nēcesse est*. Cf. § 271, R. 1. *Vōlo ut* is used to express a strong emphasis. *Nōlo* is not construed with the subjunctive.

(b.) An infinitive passive without a subject is sometimes used with *oportet*; as, *Non oportuit relītas, scil. esse ancillas.* Ter. *Ut ut erat, mansum tamen oportuit, scil. esse.* Id. *Non putābant de tāli viro suspiciōnibus oportere iudicārī.* Nep.

(c.) Some other verbs which regularly take the accusative with the infinitive after them, are occasionally followed by the subjunctive.

5. *Quod*, 'that,' commonly with the indicative, introduces a substantive clause containing the explanation or ground of the predicate or of some other word in the principal clause.

REMARK. The subjunctive follows *quod* in those cases only in which the clause expresses the view or sentiment of some other person than the writer or speaker. Cf. § 266, 3.

*Quod* is used:—

(1.) After such expressions as *bēne, māle, prūdenter fācio; bēne, māle fit; cēnit, accidit*, and the like; *prætereo, mitto*; and generally *adde, accēdit*, etc.; as, *Bēne fūcis, quod me adjūvas.*

(2.) To introduce the explanation of a noun, pronoun, or pronominal adverb in the principal clause; as, *Magnum bēnēficiū est nātūræ, quod nēcesse est mori.*

(3.) After verbs signifying *an affection of the mind*, and the *outward expression of such feeling*; and also after verbs of *praising, censuring, accusing, and thanking*.

NOTE 6. Such are *gaudeo, dēlector, grātum, or jūcundum est mihi, angor, doleo, ægre, mōleste*, or *graviter fēro, succenseo, pānitet, mīror, admīror, glōrior, grātūlor, grātias āgo, quōror, indignor*, and others of similar meaning; as, *Scīpio sape quērēbātur, quod omnibus in rēbus hōmīnes diligentiōres essent, ut, etc.* Cic. *Gaudeo quod te interpellavi.* Id. *Quod spirātis, quod vocem mittitis, quod formas hōmīnum habētis, indignantur.* Liv. *Cato mīrārī se aiēbat, quod non vidēret hāruspex, hāruspicem quum vidēret.* Cic.

NOTE 7. After those verbs which express the feeling of joy, grief, etc.; as, *gaudeo, doleo, mīror*, the accusative with the infinitive is more commonly found, but those which denote the outward expression of such feeling are more commonly construed with *quod*; but sometimes this distinction is reversed *grātūlor* is commonly joined with *quod*.



NOTE 8. A purely objective proposition is expressed by *quod* only when it depends upon *adde*, (generally in the imperative *adde*), or upon *fūcio* joined with an adverb; as, *Adde quod pūbes tibi crescit omnes*. Hor. *Adde huc quod mercem sine fūcis gestat*. Id. *Fēcit hūmāniter Līcinius, quod ad me respēri vēnit*. Cic. In all other cases the infinitive is employed in purely objective propositions.

6. By the infinitive, with or without a subject-accusative, a proposition is expressed as a *thought*, so that it resembles an abstract noun; by *quod*, with the indicative or the subjunctive, it is represented simply as a *fact*. To the latter is frequently joined *hoc*, *id*, *illud*, *istud*, or *huc*, etc.; as, *Illud quōque nōbis accēdit incommōdum, quod M. Jūnius ābest*. Cic. *Huc accēdit, quod*, etc. Sall. *Quod* generally refers to past time, and hence it is preferable to say, *Grātissimum mihi est, quod ad me tua manu scripsisti*; but with the infinitive, *Grātissimum mihi est te bēne vālere*.

(a.) *Quod*, with the indicative, in the sense of *as to*, or *with regard to*, is used at the beginning of a sentence, especially in letters, in repeating an expression of a person for the purpose of answering it; as, *Quod autem me Agāmemnōnem aemulārī pūtas, fallēris*. Nep. *Quod scribis te velle scīre, quī sit reipūblicę stātus, summa dissensio est*. Cic. Sentences thus introduced by *quod* are in no grammatical connection with the verb that follows them. See § 206, (14.)

(b.) *Quod* is used in explanatory or periphrastic propositions which refer to a preceding demonstrative pronoun, as *hoc*, *id*, etc., unless such pronoun be added pleonastically, in the nominative or accusative, to verbs governing the accusative with the infinitive; as, *Mihi quīdem videntur hōmīnes hac re maxime belluis pręstāre, quod loqui possunt*. Cic.

NOTE 9. The construction of the infinitive resembles, in the following particulars, that of a noun in the singular number and neuter gender:—

(a.) Like a noun, it may have an adjective or pronoun agreeing with it; as *Tōtum hoc philōsophārī displicet*. Cic. *Quum vivēre ipsum turpe sit nōbis*. Id. *Me hoc ipsum nihil āgēre dēlectat*. Id. *Meum intelligēre nullā pecuniā vendo*. Petr. See § 205, R. 8.

(b.) It may be followed by a limiting genitive; as, *Cūjus non dīmīcāre fuit vincēre*. Val. Max.

(c.) It may be either the subject or object of a verb. See §§ 209, R. 3, (5,) and 229, R. 5. It may also be used after neuter verbs, like an accusative, depending on a preposition understood; as, *Te accēpisse meas lītēras gaudeo*. Ter. See §§ 232, (2,) and 273, 5.

(d.) It is also used like a predicate-nominative; as, *Vidēre est perspicēre aliquid*. Cic. See § 210.

(e.) It may, like a genitive, limit the signification of an adjective or noun. See § 270, R. 1.

(f.) It may, like an accusative, depend on a preposition; as, *Aristo et Pyrrho inter optime vālere et grāvissime āgrōtāre, nihil prorsus dicēbant intēresse*. Cic. *Quod crīmen dicis pręter āmasse meum?* Ovid. *Invēniet nil sibi lēgātum, pręter plorāre*. Hor.

(g.) It is used also like an ablative; as, *Audito rēgem in Siciliam tendere*. Sall.

(h.) Sometimes, also, especially in the poets, it denotes a purpose, like a participle in *du*, (see § 274, R. 7.); as, *Lōricam dōnat hābēre viro*. Virg.; or like a dative of the end, (see § 227.)

## PARTICIPLES.

§ 274. 1. Participles are followed by the same cases and constructions as their verbs; as

*Quidam*, poëta nōmnātus, A certain one, called a poet. Cic. Cā'ulōru n oblīta l'œna, The lioness forgetful of her whelps. Virg. Faventes rēbus Carthaginiensium, Favoring the interests of the Carthaginians. Liv. Tendens ad sidēra palmas. Virg. Accūsātus rei cāpitālis. Cic. Primā dicte mihi summā dicende Cām'nā. Hor. Omīna doctus. Stat. Cāsus ābies rīsūra mārinos. Id. Cūrītūrī arbōre montes. Ovid. Parcendum est tēnēris. Juv. Utendū est ætāte. Ovid. I. Brūtus arcens rēditu tȳrannum, in prælīo concidit. Cic.

2. The present, perfect, and future active participles, denote respectively an action which is present, past, or future, in reference to the time of the verb with which they are connected; as,

*Simul hoc dicens attollit se.* Virg. Tum ad Thrāseam in hortis āgentem missus est. Tac. Turnum fūgiētem hęc terra vidēbit? Virg. Qui missus ab Argīs Itālā consēderat urbe. Id. Lāmia mūnere cādilitātis perfūctus, pētīt prætēram. Cic. Jussus cum fide pēnas luam. Hor. Juvēnis mēdiōs mōritūrus in hostes irruit. Virg. Pēritūrus injēcit sēse in agmen. Id. Illa tibi ventūra bellū expēdiēt. Id.

NOTE. The participle expresses the action or state of the verb, and also marks its complete or incomplete state or condition. Cf. § 144, 1-3. Except, however, in deponent verbs, the Latin language has no active participle denoting a completed action, equivalent to the English 'having written,' nor any passive participle denoting a state of suffering still going on, equivalent to the English present participle 'being loved.'

REMARK 1. The present participle, particularly that of the verb *eo*, sometimes denotes that which is about to be done; as, *Interclūsit hiems, et terruit Auster euntes*, .... as they were on the point of going. Virg. *Nec nos via fatit euntes.* Id.

REM. 2. (a.) The present participle, also, sometimes denotes a purpose; as, *Ibant, ōrantes vēniām*, .... to sue for favor.... Virg. *Eurȳpȳlum scītantem ōrācūla Phœbi mittimus.* Id. (b.) It is also used to express a state or condition, where, in English, a substantive is employed with a preposition; as, *ignōrans*, from ignorance; *mētuens*, from fear; *consulātum pētens*, in his suit for the consulship; *omne mālum nascens jūcile opprīmītur*,—in its origin.

REM. 3. (a.) The perfect participle passive, especially in the poets, often denotes the result of a past action, and thus supplies the place of a present participle passive; as, *Nōtus ēvōlat pīcēā tectus cāligine*.... covered with pitchy darkness. Ovid. Cf. Virg. *Æn.* 1, 480; 2, 277; 4, 72, 589; 5, 113, 708; 6, 235: Georg. 1, 204. It is often to be translated by a present active participle; as, *Mānu pectus percussa dēcōrum, flāvētesque abscissa cōmas*, i. e. *percūtiens abscīndens.* Virg. *Tunsæ pectōra palmis.* Id. So, also, *sōlitus, ausus, fīsus*, and the perfect participles of deponent verbs; as, *Longum cantu sōlāta lābōrem.* Id. *Vox auditur fractos sōnitus imītāta tūbārū.* Id. *Dicitīacus Cēsārem complexus, obsecrāre cēpit.* Cæs. *Concrētos sanguine crīnes gērens.* Virg. *Tonsis in vallibus*, i. e. *quæ tondentur.* Id.

(b.) The perfect participle of a preceding verb is often used in a succeeding clause, to express the completion of an action; as, *Exercitum fundit fūgatque ūsum persēquitur.* Liv. This idiom frequently occurs in Ovid.

REM. 4. *Hābeo*, with perfect participles denoting knowledge and determination; as, *cognitum, perspectum, perceptum, comprēhensum, explorātum, stāūtum, constitūtum, dēlibērātum, persuāsum mihi hābeo*, etc. forms a periphrasis, like the passive verb in English, and equivalent to *cognōm, perspexi, percipi*, etc., instead of the verb of the participle; as, *Clōdii animū perspectum* or *cognitum hābeo*; for *perspexi*, etc., I perceive, know. *Persuāsum mihi hābeo* and *persuāssimū hābeo* are used only in the neuter gender and with an accusative with the infinitive in the sense of *mihi persuāsi* or *persuāsum mihi est*. When *hābeo* with any other participle than those above indicated is used, it expresses more than the ordinary perfect active; as, *Quod me hortāris ut absolvam*; *hābeo absolūtā suāve ēpos ad Cēsārem*; i. e. I have it ready. Cic. *Do, reddo, cūrāq*

*teneo*, *possideo*, and *missum facio*, are sometimes so construed with participles as, *Missam iram faciet*, for *mittet*. Ter. *Hostes victos dare*, for *vincere*. Sall.

REM. 5. (a.) The passive participles may supply the place of a verbal noun in *to* or *us*, the perfect being employed to represent an action as completed, and the future when it is conceived as still incomplete; as, *Ante Rōmānā conditam*, Before the building of Rome. Cic. *Consilia urbis delendæ*, Plans for the destruction of the city. Id. See § 275, II. With the limitations about to be made in regard to the nominative, this construction is used in all the cases, and even when they are governed by the prepositions, *ad*, *ante*, *ex*, *post*, *propter*; *ab* and *ex*; as, *He lītēre rēcitātæ magnum luctum fecerant*, The reading of this letter. Liv. *Tarentum captum*, The taking of Tarentum. *Ob receptum Hannibalem*, On account of the reception of Hannibal. *Sibi quisque cæsi regis expetebat decus*, The glory of killing, or, of having killed the king. *Propter Africam domitam*. Eutrop. *Ante Epaminondam natum*. Nep. *Post Christum natum*. *Ab condita urbe ad liberatam*. Liv. The oblique cases only of participles in *dus* are used in this manner as the nominative denotes necessity, (see Rem. 8,) and even the perfect participle is not thus used in the nominative by Cicero.

(b.) The neuter of the perfect passive participle without a noun is used by Livy, as the subject of a proposition; as, *Tentatum per dictatorem, ut ambo patricii consules crearentur, rem ad imperregnum perduxit*: i. e. the attempt, or the fact of the attempt being made by the dictator. Compare a similar use of this participle in the ablative, § 257, R. 9, (1.) (c.)

(c.) The English 'without' with a verbal substantive; as, 'without writing, without having waited,' etc., is expressed in Latin by means of a negative noun, adjective or particle connected with a participle; as, *Cæsar exercitum nunquam per insidiōsa itinera duxit, nisi perspiculatus locorum situs*, without having examined the localities. This form occurs often with the ablative absolute; as, *Athēnienses non expectato auxilio adversus ingentem Persarum exercitum in prælium egrēdiuntur*, without waiting for assistance. So, *nullā præstitūtā diē*, Without fixing any time. Cic. *Miserum est nihil perficientem angi*. Id.

REM. 6. (a.) The participle in *rus*, especially with verbs of motion, often denotes intention or purpose; as, *Ad Jōrem Ammōnem pergīt consulturus de origine suā*, He goes to Jupiter Ammon, to consult respecting his origin. Just.

(b.) It is also used where in English a clause connected by *since*, *when*, *although*, etc., is employed; as, *Plūra locūturos abire nos jussit*, When or although we intended to say more. *Herculem Germāni, utūri in prælium cānunt*. Tac. Hence it is sometimes used, though not by Cicero, to express the inference from a hypothetical proposition; as, *Egrēditur castris Rōmānus, vallum invāsūrus, nī cōpia pugne fieret*. And with the repetition of the preceding verb; as, *Dedit mihi quantum maxime potuit, dāturus amplius, si potuisset*, i. e. *ac dedisset amplius*. Plin. Ep.

REM. 7. (a.) The participle in *dus*, also, denotes a purpose passively, when joined with verbs signifying *to give*, *to deliver*, *to agree for*, *to have*, *to receive*, *to undertake*, etc. Such are *do*, *trādo*, *tribuo*, *attribuo*, *mando*, *mitto*, *permitto*, *concedo*, *reddo*, *condico*, *loco*, *habeo*, *accipio*, *suscipio*, *relinquo*, *cūro*, *dēposco*, *rōgo*; as, *Testāmentum tibi trādit lēgendum*, He delivers his will to you to read. Hor. *Attribuit nos trācēdandos Cēthūgo*. Cic. *Quod utendum accēperis, reddito*. Id. *Cōm mīros dirūtōs a Lysandro rēficiendos cūrāvit*,—ordered them to be restored. Nep.

(b.) But the same meaning may be expressed actively by means of *ad* and the gerund; as, *Cæsar oppidum ad diripiendum militibus concessit*.—The poets sometimes use the infinitive active for the same purpose; as, *Tristitiam et mētus trādam prōtervis in mārē Caspiūm portāre ventis*. Hor. In prose such use of the infinitive is of exceedingly rare occurrence; as, *Bibēre dāre*. Cic.



**REM. 8. (a.)** The participle in *dus*, when agreeing with the subject of a sentence, has the signification of *necessity* or *propriety*; sometimes, though rarely, except in later writers, that of *possibility*; as,

*Is vērērandus a nobis et cōlendus est*, He should be worshipped and honored by us. Cic. *Dēlenda est Carthāgo*, Carthage must be destroyed. Cato. *Hæc spēranda fuērunt*. Virg. So with *est* used impersonally; as, *Ūtrum pāce nobis an bello esset ūtendum*. Cic.

(b.) Sometimes, also, when not agreeing with the subject of a sentence, it has this signification; as, *Facta narrābas dissimūlanda tibi*, You were relating facts which you should have concealed. Ovid. *A. L. Brūto principi hūius maxime conservandi gēnēris et nōminis*. Cic.

**REM. 9.** The participle in *dus*, in its oblique cases, supplies the place of a present participle of the passive voice, to denote a continued or incomplete action; as, *Occūpātus sum in litēris scribendis*, in writing letters; literally, in letters which are being written. See § 275, II.—So, also, in the poets both in the nominative and oblique cases; as, *Trīginta magnos volvēndis mensibus ortes impērio explēbit*. Virg. *Volvenda dies*. Id. Cf. *Volventibus annis*. Id.

**REM. 10.** After participles in *dus*, the person by whom a thing must be done, is put in the dative, but in a few passages even of Cicero it is found in the ablative with *ab*. See § 225, III.

**REM. 11.** The neuter of the participle in *dus*, joined with a tense of *esse* in the periphrastic conjugation (see § 184, 3,) retains the signification of necessity, as, *Audendum est*, We must venture. In early writers and sometimes also in the poets, an accusative of the object is joined with this neuter, if the verb is transitive; as, *Nunc pācem ōrandum, nunc—arma rēpōnendum, et bellum extitiale cāvendum*. Sil. But in classical Latin such accusative is generally changed to the nominative, and the participle is made to agree with it in gender and number. Thus, instead of *virtūtem laudandum est*, we usually find *virtus laudanda est*. The accusative in this connection is used by Cicero in only two passages. *Ūtendum est* with the ablative occurs more than once in Cicero; as, *Quum suo cuique iūdicio sit ūtendum*.

**REM. 12.** In classical prose the participle in *dus* never has the signification of *possibility*, except when joined with *vix*; as, *Vix optandum nobis vidēbatur*. Cic. *Vix erat crēdendum*, i. e. *vix crēdi pōtērat*. Later writers use it in this sense with negative particles, and at a later period it was used with still more frequency in the sense of possibility as well as in that of necessity.

**3. (a.)** A participle is often employed, instead of a verb, in a conditional, explanatory, adversative, relative, or other dependent clause; as,

*Cūrio, ad fōcum sēdenti* (as he was sitting) *magnum auri pōndus Samnītes attulērunt*. Cic. *Trūlvi viam prōgressi, rursus rēvertērunt*; for, *quum prōgressi essent*. Cæs. *Diōnysius tyrannus, Syracūsīs expulsus, Cōrinthi puēros docēbat*. Cic. *Diōnysius, cūctos mētiens tonsōrios, candenti carbōne sibi adūrēbat capillum*. Il. *Risus interdum ita rēpente ērumpit, ut eum cūpientis tēnere nēqueāmus*. Id. *Cicōniæ ābitūræ congrēgantur in lōco certo*. Plin.

**NOTE 1.** If the participle refers to a noun not contained in the leading proposition, it is put with that noun in the ablative absolute. See § 257, R. 3.

**NOTE 2. (a.)** The English clauses most frequently expressed in Latin by means of participles are such as are connected by relatives or by *as*, *when*, *after*, *although*, *since*, *because*, etc.; as, *Nemo observat lūnam nisi labōrantem*. Sen. *U. ōculus, sic animus, se non videns, alia cernit*,—though not perceiving itself. Cic. *Servilius Ahālā Spūrium Mālium, regnum appētentem, intērēmit*,—because he was aspiring to the sovereignty. Cic.—(b.) When a participle is connected with a relative or interrogative it can only be translated by a circumlocution; as, *Non sunt ea bona dicenda, quibus ābundantem licet esse miserrimum*,—which one may possess in abundance, and still be very miserable. Cic. *Sēnātus absurdum esse dicēbat, ignōrāre rēgem, quid spērāns aut pētens vērērit*,—with what hope or request he had come. Liv.

(b.) When two verbs are in English connected by *and*, and the actions denoted by them are regarded as simultaneous, one of them may be expressed in Latin by the present participle; as, He sits and holds his lute, *Ille (Arion) sēdens cithāram tēnet*. Ovid. *Simul hoc dicens attollit in ægrum se fēmur*. Virg. i. e. *hoc dicit et attollit*. But if one of the actions precede the other, the perfect participle must be used; as, Cæsar attacked and defeated the enemy, *Cæsar hostes aggressus fūgāvit*. Submersas obrue puppes, i. e. *Submerge et obrue*. Virg.—When the English clause would be connected by *although*, the participle is often followed by *tāmen*. Later writers in such case join the particles *quamquam*, *quumvis*, *etiam* and *vel* with the participle itself; as, *Cæsarem milites, quumvis recūsantem ultro in Africam sunt secuti*. Suet.; and these are sometimes retained in the ablative absolute.—It is only in late Latin that participles are sometimes used in describing persons as possessing certain attributes, e. g. *adstantes, audientes*, for *ii qui adstant, audiunt*, i. e. the bystanders, hearers.

(c.) A participle is used with verbs signifying to *represent* and *perceive*, especially to *see* and *hear*, when the object is described or perceived in a particular state; as, *Apelles pinxit Alexandrum Magnum fulmen tēnentem*. Plin. In English the *infinitive* is often joined with verbs of seeing and hearing; as, *Audiri te cānentem*, I heard you sing. *Audiri te cānere*, would be, I heard that you sung. *Vidēmus Pōlyphēmum vastā se mōle mōventem*. Virg.

NOTE 3. In many cases, for want of a perfect participle active, and a present participle passive, this construction cannot be used. Thus, *quum amāvisset* cannot be exchanged for a participle corresponding with the English *having loved*. As the perfect participles of deponent verbs, however, have an active signification, they admit of the participial construction. The want of a perfect active participle may also be supplied by the perfect passive participle in the ablative absolute. See § 257, R. 5.

## GERUNDS AND GERUNDIVES.

§ 275. I. Gerunds are governed like nouns, and are followed by the same cases as their verbs; as,

*Mētus pārendi sibi*, Fear of obeying him. Sall. *Parcendo victis*, By sparing the vanquished. Liv. *Effror studio patres vestros videndi*, I am transported with a desire of seeing your fathers. Cic. *Pētendi consulātum grātiā*. Sall. *Vēnit ad rēcipiendum pecūnias*. Varr.

REMARK 1. The gerund is the same in form as the oblique cases of the neuter singular of participles in *us*, but it has the meaning of the active voice. It is sometimes translated by the present participle with a preposition, and sometimes by a present infinitive active; as, *Consilium Lacedæmonem occūpandi*, A design of occupying, or to occupy, Lacedæmon. Liv.

REM. 2. The gerund is sometimes, though rarely, used in a passive sense; as, *Spes restituendi nulla erat*,—of being restored. Nep. *Athēnas erūdiendi grātiā missus*,—for the purpose of being instructed. Just. *Ante dōmandum*. Virg. *Ades ad impērandum*. Cic.

REM. 3. The gerund is in its nature a verbal noun, having only the genitive, dative, ablative, and, after a preposition, the accusative. In its signification it corresponds with the English present participle when used as a verbal noun. Hence, in the oblique cases, it supplies the place of a declinable present infinitive active; but in the accusative there is this difference between the infinitive used as an accusative and the gerund, that the infinitive has simply the power of an abstract noun, whereas the gerund expresses a real action; as *Multum intērest inter dāre et accipere*. Sen. *Non solum ad discendūm prōpensūmus, sed etiam ad docendūm*. Cic.



II. When the *object* of an active verb is to be expressed, the participle in *dus* is commonly used in preference to the gerund; the object taking the case in which the gerund, if used, would have been put, and the participle agreeing with it.

Thus, to express 'the design of writing a letter,' which, with the aid of the gerund, would be represented in Latin by *Consilium scribendæ epistolæ*, the participle in *dus* is commonly substituted for the gerund: and since, in this example, the gerund, (*scribendi*) is in the genitive, the rule requires that, in substituting the participle for the gerund, the object of the gerund (*epistolam*) should also be put in the genitive, and that the participle (*scribendus*) should agree with it in gender, number, and case. Hence with the participle the expression is, *Consilium scribendæ epistolæ*. Between the two forms of construction there is no difference of signification. So, *Consilia urbis delendæ* (Cic.), for *urbem delendi*, Plans for destroying the city. *Rēparandārum classium causā* (Suet.), for *rēparandi classes*. *Perpetiēdo lābōri idōneus*. Colum. *Ad dēfendendam Rōmam ab oppugnandā Capuā dūces Rōmānos abstrāhēre*. Liv.

REMARK 1. The same construction is used with the future passive participles of *utor*, *fruo*, *fungo*, *pōtio*, and rarely of *mēdeor*, as these verbs were originally followed by the accusative; as, *Ætas ad hæc utendā idōnea*. Ter. *Iustitiæ fruendæ causā*. Cic. *In munēre fungendo*. Id. *Hostes in spem pōtiundōrum castrōrum venērāt*. Cæs. *Aquæ sālūbritate inēdendisq̄ corporibus utilis*. Veli.

REM. 2. When a participle is thus used for a gerund, it is called a *gerundive*, and is usually translated like a gerund. The gerundive cannot be substituted for the gerund, where ambiguity would arise from the gender not being distinguishable. It should therefore not be used when the object of the gerund is a neuter pronoun or adjective; as, *Aliquid faciendī ratiō* (Cic.), not *alicujus*. *Artem et vērā et falsā dījudicandī* (Id.), not *vērōrum dījudicandōrum*: because it would not be known whether *alicujus* and *vērōrum* were masculine or neuter. It is to be remarked, also, that the change of the gerund into the gerundive is less frequent in some writers than in others.

III. Examples of the construction of gerunds, in each of their cases, have been already given, among other nouns, under the heads *Genitive*, *Dative*, *Accusative*, and *Abblative*. The following remarks specify in what connections they are used: and when is said that the gerundive is governed in any of the cases like the gerund, it will of course be understood of the noun which is limited by a gerundive.

REMARK 1. The genitive of gerunds and gerundives may follow either nouns or relative adjectives; as,

*Amor habendī*. Cic. *Patriam spes videndī*. Virg. *Nam habet nātūra, ut aliārū omnium rerū, sic vivendī modum*. Cic. *Barbāra consuetūdo hominū immolendōrum*. Id. *Postremo Cātīlīna dissimulandī causā aut sui expurgandī, in senātum venit*. Sall. *Inīta sunt consilia urbis delendæ, civiū trucidandōrum, nōminis Rōmāni exstinguendī*. Id. *Venandī studiōsi*. Cic. *Certus eundī*. Virg. *Insuētus navigandī*. Cæs. *Peritus civitātis regendæ*. Nep.

(1.) The nouns after which these genitives most frequently occur are *amor*, *ars*, *causa*, *consilium*, *consuetudo*, *cōpia*, *cupiditas*, *dēsiderium*, *difficultas*, *fīnis*, *fācultas*, *forma*, *grātia*, *illēcebra*, *libido*, *locus*, *licentia*, *modus*, *mātēria*, *mos*, *occāzio*, *ōtium*, *pōtestas*, *ratiō*, *spātium*. *spes*, *stūdium*, *tempus*, *ūsus*, *venia*, *vis*, *vōluntus*.

NOTE 1. With these and other substantives the infinitive also may be used, when with a tense of *sum* they form a periphrasis for a verb which is followed by the infinitive, or supply the place of an adjective of which the infinitive is the subject; as, *Quibus omnia hōnesta atq̄ inhōnesta vendēre mos erat*, With whom it was a custom, or, who were accustomed. Sall. *Tempus est abīra*, It is time, i. e. *tempestivum est*, it is proper to go



(2.) The relative adjectives, which most frequently take after them these genitives, are such as denote *desire, knowledge, remembrance*, and their contraries; as, *ārius, cupidus, stūdiōsus, pēritus, impēritus, insuētus, certus, conscius, ignārus, rūdis*, etc. See § 212, R. 1, (3.)

NOTE 2. With the relative adjectives the infinitive is also joined poetically.

(3.) Instead of an accusative after the gerund, or a genitive plural with a gerundive, a noun or pronoun in the genitive plural is sometimes joined with the gerund: as, *Exemplōrum eligendi pōestas*, instead of *exempla eligendi*, or, *exemplōrum eligendōrum*. Cic. *Eārum rerum infitiandi rātio*. Id. *Fācultas agrōrum condōnandi*. Cic. *Nōminandi istōrum erit cōpia*. Plaut.

(4.) The pronoun *tui* and also the plurals *vestri* and *sui*, even when feminine, are joined with the masculine or neuter form of the gerundive in *di*; as, *Quōniam tui vīdendi est cōpia*. Plaut. *Non vēreor, ne quis hoc me vestri ādhortandi causā magnifice loqui existimet*. Liv. *In castra vēnērunt sui purgandi causā*.—With the demonstrative pronouns, *ējus, hūjus, illius*, the participle usually agrees, but in two passages of Terence *ējus*, though referring to a woman, has the participle in *di*, not in *dē*; as, *Ego ējus vīdendi cupidus rectā consēquor*. Ter. *Tui* in the first example and *ējus* in the last are feminine.

(5.) By a Greek idiom the gerund and gerundive, after the verb *sum*, are sometimes found in the genitive denoting a *tendency* or *purpose*, with no noun or adjective on which they can depend; as, *Rēgiū impēriū initio conservandæ libertātis fuērat*. Sall. Sometimes *esse* in some form is to be supplied; as, *Quæ postquam glōriōsa mōdo, nēque belli patrandi cognōvit*, scil. *esse*. Id. *Causā* or *grātiā* may sometimes be supplied. In some other cases, also, the word on which the gerund in *di* depends is not expressed, and the gerund seems to be used instead of the infinitive; as, *Māneat prōvinciālibus pōtentiā suā tāli mōdo ostentandi*, scil. *fūcultas*. Tac. *Quum habērem in animo nāvīgandi*, scil. *prōpōsitum*. Cic.

REM. 2. The dative of gerunds and gerundives is used after adjectives which govern a dative (§ 222), especially after those which signify *usefulness* or *fitness*; and also after certain verbs and phrases, to denote a *purpose*; as,

*Charta empōrētica est inūtilis scribendo*. Plin. *Cāpessendæ reipūblicæ hābilis*. Tac. *Ut nec triūviri accipiundo, nec scribæ rēfērundo sufficērent*. Liv. *Lōcum oppido condendo capēre*. Id. *Non fuit consilium agrum colendo aut vēnando intentum cetātem agēre*. Sall. *Tibērius quāsi firmandæ vālūtudinī in Campāniā concessit*. Tac. *Quum solvendo are aliēno respūblica non esset*. Liv. *Quum solvendo civitātes non essent*,—were insolvent. Cic.

(1.) The verbs and phrases upon which this dative most frequently depends are, *Stūdēre, intentum esse, tempus impendēre, tempus consūmere* or *insūmere, opēram dāre, sufficēre, sātis esse, deesse, esse*, signifying *to serve for, to be adequate to*, and, in later writers, on verbs of motion.—The dative of the gerund after *sum* is usually supposed to depend on *idōneus* understood; but see § 227, R. 3.

(2.) The dative of the gerundive, denoting a purpose, is also used after names of office; as, *Dēcēviri lēgibus scribendis*, i. e. the ten commissioners for drawing up a code of laws. Liv. So, *Cōmitia creandis dēcēviris*. Id. *Triūvires agro dando creat*. Id.

(3.) A purpose is more commonly expressed by *ad* and the accusative of the gerund, or by a clause with *ut*, than by the dative; as, *Picus ad vescendum vōminibus apta*. Cic.

REM. 3. The accusative of gerunds and gerundives follows the prepositions *ad*, *to*, or *inter*, during or amid, and sometimes *ante*, *circa* or *ob*; as,

*Ad pœnitendum prœp̄rat, qui cito j̄dicat.* Pub. Syr. *Inter bibendum* While drinking. Just. *Ad t̄l̄randos facīlius l̄b̄ores.* Quint. *Ad castra facīenda.* Cic. *Ob absolvendum.* Id.

NOTE. The construction of the gerundive instead of the gerund almost invariably occurs here when the object of the gerund is to be expressed.

REM. 4. The ablative of gerunds and gerundives follows the prepositions *a*, (*ab*), *de*, *e*, (*ex*), or *in*; or it is used without a preposition, as the ablative of cause, manner, or means; as,

*Arist̄t̄lem non d̄terruīt a scribendo.* Cic. *Ex assentando.* Ter. *Non videor a defendendis h̄m̄nib̄us disc̄d̄re.* Cic. *Crescit eundo.* Virg. *Rem querunt merc̄at̄uris facīendis.* Cic. *Or̄tīonem L̄t̄nam l̄gendis nostris efficīes pl̄nīorem.* Id.

NOTE 1. This ablative also occurs, though rarely, after *pro* and *cum*; as, *Pro v̄p̄lando.* Plant. *Cum loquendo.* Quint.

NOTE 2. Generally with the ablative of the means, and always with the ablative after a preposition, the gerund, when its object is to be expressed, is changed to the gerundive. In a few passages the ablative of the gerundive is differently construed; as, *Nullum officīum r̄f̄erend̄a gr̄tīa m̄gis n̄cess̄arium est,* instead of *r̄l̄tīone gr̄tīe.* § 256. Cic. *Nec jam possidendis p̄blicis agris contentos esse.* § 244. Liv. *Is finis fuit ulciscend̄a Germ̄nici morte,*—in avouging the death of Germanicus. Tac.; where the ablative seems to imply time § 253.

## SUPINES.

§ 276. Supines, like gerunds, are verbal nouns, having no other cases except the accusative and ablative singular. In certain connections they supply the place of the present infinitive; the supine in *um* having an active and the supine in *u* a passive signification. As in the case of gerunds, we are to regard their construction both as verbs and as nouns. As verbs we are to notice their government, as nouns, their dependence.

I. Supines in *um* are followed by the same cases as their verbs; as,

*Non Gr̄is servit̄um m̄tr̄ibus ibo,* I shall not go to serve Grecian matrons Virg. *Te id adim̄nitum venio.* Plaut.

II. Supines in *um* follow verbs of motion, and serve to denote the purpose of the motion; as,

*Cūbitum discessimus.* Cic. *Ire d̄jectum m̄n̄menta r̄gis.* Hor. *L̄ḡati v̄n̄erunt questum inj̄urias, et res r̄p̄t̄itum.* Liv. *Quum spect̄atum l̄dos iret.* Nep. So after participles; as, *Patriam d̄fensum r̄v̄c̄atus.* Nep. *Spect̄atum admisi.* Hor.

NOTE. The construction of the supine in *um*, considered as a noun, is analogous to that of names of places in answer to the question 'whither?' (§ 237), the notion of purpose arising from its verbal character.

REMARK 1. Supines in *um* sometimes follow verbs which do not express motion; as, *Do filīam nuptum.* Ter. *Vos ultum inj̄urias hortor.* Sall.

REM. 2. The supine in *um* with *eo* literally signifies 'I go to do a thing,' and hence 'I intend,' or, 'am going to.' Instances of this use are found in Plautus and Terence and in the prose writers later than Cicero; as, *Mea Gl̄c̄erium, quid āgis? cur te is perditum?* Why are you going to destroy yourself? Plaut. *B̄n̄orū pr̄mia ēreptum eunt.* Sall. With *eo* the supine in *um* often forms a periphrasis equivalent to the same mood and tense of the verb from which the

supine is formed; as, *Ne bonos omnes perditum eant* (Sall.), for *perdant*. *Ereptum eunt* (Id.), for *eripiunt*. *Ultum iuit* (Tac.), for *ultus est*. *Ultum ire injurias festinat*, i. e. *ulcisci*. Sall.

REM. 3. The supine in *um* most frequently occurs with the infinitive *iri* with which it forms the future infinitive passive; as, *Brutum visum iri a me puto*. Cic. In this construction the accusative properly depends upon the supine, and *iri* is used impersonally; 'I suppose that I am going to see Brutus' § 184, 2, (a.) Its notion of futurity is derived from the proper signification of the active voice, as *perditum iri*, to go to destroy, the idea of intending passing easily into that of futurity.

REM. 4. But to express a purpose Latin writers in general prefer using a gerund or gerundive in the accusative with *ad* or in the genitive with *causâ* or *gratiâ*, a subjunctive clause with *ut* or *qui*, a present or future active participle, and sometimes poetically an infinitive. See § 275, R. 1, 2: §§ 262, 264, 274, and 271.

III. The supine in *u* is used to limit the meaning of adjectives signifying *wonderful, agreeable, easy or difficult, worthy or unworthy, honorable or base*, and a few others; as,

*Mirabile dictu!* Wonderful to tell, or to be told! Virg. *Jucundum cognitum atque auditu*, Pleasant to be known and heard. Cic. *Res factu facilis*, A thing easy to be done. Ter. *Facilia inventu*. Gell. *Incredibile memoratu*. Sall. *Turpia dictu*. Cic. *Optimum factu*. Id.

NOTE. The principal supines in *u* in common use are *auditum, cognitum, dictum, factum, inventum, memoratu* and *natu*, which occurs in the expressions, *grandis, major, minor, maximus*, and *minimus natu*. In *magno natu*, of an advanced age, and *maximo natu filius*, the eldest son, *natu* is the ablative of a verbal substantive, since neither gerunds nor supines are joined with adjectives.

REMARK 1. The principal adjectives, after which the supine in *u* occurs, are *affabilis, arduus, asper, bonus, deformis, dignus, indignus, dulcis, durus, facilis, difficilis, fatus, gravis, honestus, horrendus, incredibilis, jucundus, injucundus, magnus, memorabilis, mollis, proclivis, pulcher, rarus, turpis*, and *utilis*.

REM. 2. The supine in *u* is used also after the nouns *fas, nefas*, and *opus*; as, *Hoc fas est dictu*. Cic. *Nefas dictu*. Ovid. *Dictu opus est*. Ter.—In the following examples it follows a verb: *Pudet dictu*. Tac. Agr. 32. *Dictu fastidiosa sunt*. Val. Max. 9, 13, 2.

REM. 3. As the supine in *u* is commonly translated by a passive form, it is placed under the passive voice; but, in many cases, it may with equal or greater propriety be translated actively. As a noun, its construction may be referred to the ablative of limitation. § 250.

REM. 4. (a.) Instead of the supine in *u*, an infinitive, a gerund or gerundive with *ad*, or a verbal noun in the ablative, and sometimes in the dative or accusative, may be used; as, *Ardua imitatu, ceterum cognosci utilia*. Val. Max. *Illud autem facile ad credendum est*. Cic. *Opus proscriptione dignum*. Plin. *Aqua potui jucunda*. Id. *Facilior ad intellectum atque imitationem*. Quint. With *opus est* the perfect passive participle is often used instead of the supine in *u*; as, *Opus est maturato*, There is need of haste. Cf. § 243, R. 1.

(b.) The construction with *ad* and the gerund; as, *res facilis ad intelligendum*; or with *sum* and the infinitive active; as, *facile est invenire*, is used by the best writers after *facilis, difficilis*, and *jucundus*. The most common construction of *dignus* is with *qui* and the subjunctive, (§ 264, 9), but the poets and later prose writers have joined it with the infinitive passive.

## ADVERBS.

§ 277. I. Adverbs modify or limit the meaning of verbs, adjectives, and sometimes of other adverbs; as,



*Bene mōres*, You advise well. Ter. *Fortissime urgentes*, Most vigorously pressing on. Plin. *Male narrando*. Ter. *Longe dissimilis*. Cic. *Valde bene*. Id.

REMARK 1. Adverbs may also modify nouns, when they are used as adjectives or participles, and accordingly denote a quality, or when a participle is understood. They are also joined to adjective pronouns, when their adjective-character predominates; and sometimes limit the meaning of a preposition; as, *Pōpulus late rex*, for *late regnans*,—ruling far and wide. Virg. *Nihil admōdum*, Nothing at all. Cic. *Hōmo plāne noster*,—entirely ours that is, devoted to us. Id. *Hōmīrus plāne orātor*. Id. *Admōdum puella*. Liv. *Late tyrannus*. Hor. *Grāvibus superne ictibus conflictabantur*, i. e. *superne accidentibus*. Tac. *Multarum circa civitatum*, i. e. neighboring cities. Liv.

REM. 2. (a.) Most of the modifications made by adverbs may also be made by means of the various cases of nouns and adjectives, and many modifications may be made by these, for expressing which no adverbs are in use. In general those limitations which are most common can be expressed by adverbs; as, *sapienter* for *cum sapientiā*; *hic* for *in hoc loco*; *bene* for *in bono modo*; *nunc* for *hoc tempore*.—(b.) The following are examples of other parts of speech used adverbially, viz. *Nihil*, 'in no way'; *nonnihil*, 'in some measure'; *quidquam*, 'at all'; *aliquid*, 'somewhat'; *quid?* 'why?'

REM. 3. A negative adverb, modifying another negative word, destroys the negation; as,

*Non pārēre nōluit*, He was not unwilling to obey. Nep. *Haud ignāra mali* Not ignorant of evil. Virg. *Haud nihil est*, It is something. Ter. *Nec hoc ille non vidit*, And this he clearly perceived. Cic. So, *nonnulli*, some; *nonnumquam*, sometimes. *Non*, before a negative word, commonly heightens the affirmative sense, while it softens the expression; as, *Hōmo non indoctus*, i. e. *hōmo sāne doctus*. *Non semel*, i. e. *sepius*; *non ignōro*, *non nescio*, *non sum nescius*, I know very well. *Qui mortem in mālis pōnit*, *non pōtest eam non timēre*,—must needs fear it. Cic.

REM. 4. When the subject and predicate of a proposition are both modified by negative words, and also when the predicate contains two negatives, the proposition is affirmative; as,

*Nemo non videt*, Every one sees. Cic. *Nēque hæc non evenērunt*, And this indeed took place. So, if both the antecedent and the predicate of a relative clause are negative, the proposition is affirmative; as, *Nemo est, qui nesciat* Every body knows. Cic.

REM. 5. (a.) But in the case of *non* followed by *ne*—*quidem*, the two negative do not destroy each other; as, *Non fugio ne hos quidem mōres*: and when the negative leading proposition has subordinate subdivisions with *nēque*—*nēque*, *nēre*—*nēre*, or *non*—*non*, these negative particles are equivalent to *aut*—*aut*; as, *Non me carminibus vincet, nec Orpheus, nec Linus*. Virg. *Nēmīnem, non re, non verbo, non cultu dēnique offendi*. Cic. *Nullius rei nēque præs, nēque manceps factus est*. Nep.

(b.) In a few passages, however, two negatives in Latin, as in Greek, strengthen the negation, and this exception appears to have been derived from the language of common life; as, *Jura te non nocitūram homīni nēmīni*. Plaut.

(c.) *Nemo*, *nullus*, *nihil*, and *numquam* have a different sense according as the *non* is placed before or after them; as, *Non nemo*, some one; *nemo non*, every one; *non nulli*, some; *nullus non*, every; *non nihil*, something; *nihil non*, every thing; *non numquam*, sometimes; *numquam non*, at all times. So, *nusquam non*, every where, but instead of *nonnusquam*, *alicubi* is used.

REM. 6. (a.) *Non* is sometimes omitted after *non modo* or *non solum*, when followed, in a subsequent clause by *ne quidem*, if both clauses have the same verb, and if the verb is contained in the second clause; as,

*Mihi non rādo irasci, sed ne dōlre quidem impūne licet*, which is equivalent to *Mihi non mōdo non irasci, sed ne dōlre quidem impūne licet*, or *Mihi non mōd irasci, sed dōlre quidem impūne non licet*. Not only am I not permitted to be angry, but not even to grieve with impunity. Cic. *Quum sēnātui non solum jurāre rempūlicam, sed ne lūgōre quidem liceret*. Id.

(b.) *Non* is also rarely omitted after *non mōdo* when followed by *sed* or *vērūm* with *etiam*, and also after *vix*; as, *Qui non mōdo ea fūtūra timet, vērūm etiam fert, sustinetque præsentiā*, Who not only does not fear.... Cic. *Hæc gēnēra virtutum non solum in mōribus nostris, sed vix jam in libris rēpēriuntur*, These virtues are not only not found in life, but scarcely in books. Id.

REM. 7. *Fācile*, in the sense of *undoubtedly, clearly*, is joined to superlatives, and words of similar import; as, *Vir unus tōtius Græciæ fācile doctissimus*. Cic. *Homo rēgiōnis illius virtūte fācile princeps*. Id.

REM. 8. Sentences are often united by means of an adverb which is repeated before each of the connected clauses; as, *mōdo—mōdo*, and *nunc—nunc*, (sometimes—sometimes); as, *Mōdo hoc, mōdo illud dicit; mōdo huc, mōdo illuc vōlūt*. Instead of the second *mōdo* other particles of time are sometimes used: as, *aliquando, nonnumquam, interdum, sæpius, tum* or *deinde*.—*Partim—partim*, ‘partly—partly,’ is sometimes used with a genitive or the preposition *ex*, in the sense of *alii—alii*, as a nominative in all the genders; as, *Quum partim e nōdis ita tinūdi sunt, ut, etc., partim ita rēpūblicā āversi, ut, etc.*—*Simul—simul*, ‘as well—as,’ like *nunc—nunc*, is not found in Cicero.—*Quā—quā* is equivalent to *et—et*.—*Tum—tum* is used sometimes like *mōdo—mōdo*, sometimes like *partim—partim*; as *Erumpunt sæpe vitia amīcōrum tum in ipsos amīcos, tum in aliēnos*. Cic. *Hec (bēnēficia) tum in unīversam rempūblicam, tum in singūlos cives confēruntur*. Id.

REM. 9. *Quum—tum* is equivalent to *et—et*, except in assigning a greater importance to the second part: hence it must be translated by ‘both—and especially,’ ‘not only—but also,’ or ‘but more particularly.’ Sometimes additional weight is given to the second part by means of *vērō, certe, etiam, quōque, præcipue, imprimis* or *maxime*. This use of *quum—tum* seems to have had its origin in the use of *quum* with the subjunctive and often with the indicative in the protasis, followed by *tum* in the apodosis. When *quum* followed by *tum* serves to express the opposition between single words which have the same verb, it is to be regarded as a complete adverb; as, *Fortūna quum in rēliquis rēbus, tum præcipue in bello plūrimū pōtest*. Sometimes the verb stands in the first part of the sentence; as, *Quum omnis arrogātia odiōsa est, tum illa ingēniū atque eloquentiæ multo mōlestissima*. *Tum* is sometimes repeated in the second part of the sentence; as, *Quem pāter mōriens quum tūtōribus et prōpinquis, tum lēgibus, tum æquitātī māgistrātuum, tum iūdicīs vestris commendātum putārit*. Cic. Sometimes the gradation is, *quum—tum—tum vērō*.

REM. 10. *Non mōdo—sed etiam* (or *non solum, or non tantum—vērūm etiam*) generally expresses the transition from less important to more important things, like the English ‘not only—but (also)’. The transition from greater to smaller things is expressed by *non mōdo—sed*, without the *etiam*, which we render in English by ‘I will not say—but only,’ and in Latin, too, we may say *non dicam* or *non dico—sed*; as, *Quid est enim minus non dico orātōris, sed hōminis*.

REM. 11. *Tum—quam* expresses a comparison in degree; as, *Nemo tam multa scripsit, quam multa sunt nostra*. With superlatives they are rendered into English by ‘the—the’ and comparatives; as, *I ūternōsus quam plūrimū bibit, tum maxime sitit*. The more he drinks, the more he thirsts. Cato. *Quam p̄ris,ue pessimæ fēcit, tam maxime tūtus est*. Sall.—*Tum—quam* quod maxime significēs, ‘as much as possible.’—*Non tum—quam* significēs, ‘not so much—as,’ or ‘less—than’; as, *Prōvincia non tam grātiōsa et illustris, quam nēgōtiōsa ac mōlesta*. Cic.

REM. 12. *Non minus—quam* and *non māgis—quam* are equivalent to *æque—ac*, ‘as much as,’ but in *non māgis—quam* the greater weight is attached to the affirmative clause beginning with *quam*; as, *Alexander non dūcis māgis quam*

*militis munia exsequēbatur*, Alexander performed as much the service of a soldier as that of a commander. In this connection *plus* frequently supplies the place of *in i. r.*

(a.) *Si* and *ita* are demonstrative adverbs corresponding to the relative *ut*. The restrictive meaning of *ita* (see § 191, R. 5.), is sometimes made more emphatic by the addition of *tamen*. *Tantus* is used in a like restrictive sense; as, *Præsidi tantum est, ut ne mirus quidem cingi possit*, i. e. 'only so much.' Cæs.

(b.) *Ut*—*ita* or *sic* places sentences on an equality. They may sometimes be translated 'although—still,' or 'indeed—but.'—The adverb *ut*, 'as,' sometimes takes the signification of the conjunction *quod*, 'because'; as, *Atque illi ut semper fuit opterrissimus, non se purgavit*. Cic.

REM. 13. In an enumeration, *primum*, *deinde*, *tum*, *dēnique* are commonly preferred to the numerals, *primum*, *secundo*, (for *secundum* is not often used), *tertium*, *quartum*, etc., unless the strict succession of the numbers is required. Sometimes *tum* is used once or twice instead of *deinde*, or the series is extended by *accedit*, *huc adde*, etc. Sometimes *dēnique* is followed by *postrēmo* to form the conclusion of a series, but often *dēnique* without the other adverbs concludes a series, and is then equivalent to 'in short' or 'in fine.' See Cic. Cat. 1, 5.

REM. 14. *Minus* is often used for *non*; as, *Nonnumquam ea, quæ prædicta sunt, minus eveniunt*. Cic.—So, *si minus*—*at*, 'if not—yet'; and *sin minus*, 'but if not,' without a verb, after a preceding *si*; but with *si non* the verb is repeated.—The English 'how little' is in Latin *quam non*; and 'so little,' *ita non* or *adeo non*; as, *adeo non curabat, quid homines de se loquerentur*.

REM. 15. *Nunc* always expresses the time actually present, or the time to which a narrator transfers himself for the purpose of making his description livelier. Thus in speaking of the present time we may say, *Nunc primum somnia me eludunt* or *eluserunt*; but in a narrative we must say, *Somnia tunc primum se dicebat elusisse*. Compare the use of *hic* and *ille*. See § 207, R. 23, (c.)

REM. 16. The conjunction *dum*, 'while,' when added to negatives, becomes an adverb, signifying 'yet'; as, *nondum*, 'not yet'; *nequidum*, 'and not yet'; *nuliusdum*, 'no one yet'; *nihilidum*, 'nothing yet.' Hence *viridum* signifies 'scarcely yet'; as, *Viridum epistolam tuam legeram, quam ad me Curtius venit*. Cic.—So, also, the conjunction *nisi*, by omitting its verb or uniting it with the leading verb, acquires, after negatives and negative questions, the sense of the adverb 'except,' which is generally expressed by *præterquam* or the preposition *præter*, and must be so expressed when no negative precedes. But the expression 'except that' may be rendered either by *nisi quod* or *præterquam quod*.—After *nihil aliud* we may use either *nisi* or *quam*, *nisi* referring to *nihil* and *quam* to *aliud*. Hence *nihil aliud nisi* signifies 'nothing further,' or 'nothing more,' and *nihil aliud quam*, 'nothing else,' or 'no other thing but this.'

REM. 17. *Ut*, 'as,' in interposed clauses, such as *ut opinor*, *ut puto*, *ut censeo*, *ut credo*, is frequently omitted. *Credo*, used in this manner often takes an ironical sense.

## PREPOSITIONS.

II. 1. See respecting the construction of prepositions with the accusative § 235; and with the ablative, § 241. See, also, for the different meanings of prepositions, § 195, and for their arrangement, § 279, 10.

2. Two prepositions must not be joined in Latin, as they sometimes are in English, with the same noun; as, to speak *for* and *against* a law; or, I have learned this *with*, and, to some extent, *from* him. These sentences may be thus expressed in Latin; *pro lege et contra legem dicere*; *hæc cum eo, partim etiam ab eo didici*. Those dissyllabic prepositions only, which are sometimes used as adverbs, may follow another, without being joined with a case; as, *quod aut secundum naturam esset, aut contra*. Cic. *Cis Padum ultraque*. Liv. Cæsar reverses the order, *Intra extraque munitiones*. B. Civ. 3, 72.



3. When nouns mutually dependent upon a preposition are in apposition, when they constitute an enumeration without a connective, and when connected by copulative, disjunctive, adversative, or comparative conjunctions, the preposition is not repeated, unless such nouns are to be distinguished from each other, or are emphatic; as,

*Quid dicam de thésauro omnium rerum, mēmōriā? Hoc appāret in bestiis, vōlueribus, nantibus, agrestibus, ciccūribus, fēris, ut se ipsae diligant.* Cic. *Sapissime inter me et Scīpiōnem de amicitia dissērebātur.* Id. *Quid faceres si in aliquam dōmum villamve rēvisses?* Id. *Nihil per iram aut cupiditatem actum est.* Id. *Thēmistocles non minus in rēbus gērendis promptus quam excōgītandis erat.* Nep.

4. The monosyllabic prepositions *ab*, *ad*, *de*, *ex*, and *in* are often used before each of two nouns connected by *et*, etc., especially if the qualities denoted by such nouns are to be considered separately. If the nouns are separated by *et—et*, *nec—nec*, etc., the prepositions must be repeated; as, *Ut eōrum et in bellicis et in cīvilibus officiis vigeat industria.* Cic.—*Inter* is frequently repeated by Cicero after *intēresse*, and other writers repeat it after other verbs also; as, *Quid intersit inter pōpūlārem—cīrem, et inter constantem, sērēram et grāvem.* Cic. *Certatum inter Ap. Claudium maxime fēruut et inter P. Dēciam.* Liv.

5. (a.) In poetry a preposition is occasionally omitted with the first of two nouns, and put with the second only; as, *Quae nēmōra, aut quos āgor in spēcus,* (Hor.) for, in *quae nēmōra aut in quos spēcus āgor.* So, Hor. Ep. 2, 1, 25.—(b.) An ellipsis of a preposition with the relative pronoun sometimes occurs, together with that of the verb belonging to the preceding demonstrative; as, *In eādē opīniōne fui, quā reliqui omnes,* (Cic.), properly *in quā reliqui omnes fuērunt.*

## CONJUNCTIONS.

§ 278. Copulative, disjunctive, and other coördinate conjunctions, connect similar constructions.

NOTE 1. Clauses are similarly constructed, which are mutually independent, whose subjects and verbs are in the same case and mood, and which have either no dependence or a similar dependence on another clause.

NOTE 2. (a.) Words have a similar construction, when they stand in the same relation to some other word or words in the sentence. Hence,

(b.) Conjunctions connect the same cases of nouns and pronouns, dependent, if the cases are oblique, upon the same government; the same number, case, and gender of adjectives, belonging to the same noun; the same mood of verbs, either independent, or alike dependent; adverbs qualifying the same verbs, adjectives, etc.; and prepositions on which depends the same noun or pronoun; as, *Concidant venti, fūgiuntque nūbes,* The winds subside, and the clouds disperse. Hor. *Lūcum, quem et non cōquit sol, et tangit ros.* Varr. *Lūch dēcem per dies, facti sunt, nēque res ulla prātermissa est.* Cic. *Vides, ut aliā ster nīve candidum Sōrocte, nec jam sustineant ōnus silve libōrantes, gēlūque glāmīna constitērint acūto.* Hor. *Intelligitis et animū ei prāsto fuisse, nec cōsiliū dīfuisse.* Cic. *Gēnēri animantium omni est a nātūrā tribūtum, ut se taceāt, declinetque ea, quae nōcītura videntur.* Id. *Aut nēmo, aut Cāto sapiens fuit.* Id. *Pulvis et umbra sūmus.* Hor. *Si tu et in illia rālētis, ego et Cicēro rālēmus.* Cic. *Aggere jacto turribusque constitūtis.* Cæs. *Clārus et hōnōrātus rir,* An illustrious and honorable man. Id. *Cāsar Rōmos cōhortātus, libēraliterque ōrātione prōsecūtus.* Cæs. *Pāter tuus, quem cōlui et dīlexi.* Cic. *Belye spectant in se stentriōnem et ōrientem sōlem.* Cæs. *Nāvibus junctis, rātibusque complāribus factis.* Id. *Lēge, ret tābellas redde.* Plaut. *Allobrōges trans Rhōdānum vicorū rōssiōnesque habēbant.* Cæs. *Quum triumphum cōgeris, censorque fuēris, et ibiēris lēgatus.* Id. *Quum ad oppidū accessisset, castrāque ibi pōnēret.* Cæs.

*Ades ánimo, et omitte timorem.* Cic. *Ea videre ac perspicere potestis.* Id. *Graviter et copiose dixisse dicitur.* Id. *Cum fratre an sine.* Id. Cf. § 277, II. 2. *Cui carmina cordi, numerosque intendere nerris.* Virg. *Nec census, nec clarum nomen arorum, sed probitas magnos ingeniumque facit.* Ovid. *Philosophi negant quemquam virum bonum esse, nisi sapientem.* Cic. *Gloria virtutem tamquam umbra sequitur.* Id.

REMARK 1. Copulative conjunctions may connect either single words and phrases or entire clauses; the other conjunctions, whether coördinate or subordinate, connect clauses only.

REM. 2. Words thus connected are sometimes in different cases, though in the same construction; as, *Mea et reipublice interest.* Cic. (See § 219.) *Sire es Romæ, sire in Epīro.* Id. (See §§ 221 and 254. But see also § 221. Note.) *In Mettī descendat iudicis aures, et patris et nostras.* Hor. See § 211, R. 3. In like manner, *Hannibal non aliter vinci potuit, quam morā.*

REM. 3. As the subjunctive is often used for the imperative, they may be connected by coördinate conjunctions; as, *Disce nec invidas.* Pers.

REM. 4. Where the purpose of the writer requires it, coördinate conjunctions sometimes connect independent propositions, whose verbs are in different moods; as, *Stuporem hominis, vel dicam pecūdis, videte.* Cic. *Nec satis scio, nec, si sciam, dicere ausim.* Liv.

REM. 5. *Et* is used after *multi* followed by another adjective, where in English 'and' is usually omitted; as, *Multæ et magnæ arbores*, Many large trees. In such cases *et* supplies the place of *et is*, introducing a more accurate description. See § 207, R. 26, (c.)

REM. 6. The conjunction is often omitted; as, (a.) When two single words, as comprehending the whole idea, are opposed to each other, as, *velim, nolim*, whether I would or not; *maxima minima*, the greatest as well as the least; *prima postrēma*, from the first to the last; *dignos indignos adire*; *ire redire*, to go to and fro. *Ædificiis omnibus publicis privatis, sacris profanis sic pēpercit.* Cic. *Nam gloriā, honorem, impērium bonus ignāvus æque sibi exoptant.* Sall. C. 11.

(b.) *Et* is very frequently omitted between the names of two colleagues; as, *Consules declarati sunt Cn. Pompeius M. Crassus. P. Lentulo L. Triario, questoribus urbanis.* Cic. Sometimes, also, when the two persons are not colleagues. It is also occasionally omitted between two words in the oratorical style; as, *Aderant amici, propinqui.* Id.; also with verbs; as, *Adsunt, queruntur Siculi.* Id. In good prose, if three or more substantives are joined, it is usual either wholly to omit the conjunction or to insert it between each. The following may serve as an example of both cases: *Qui non modo Curiis, Catonibus, Pompeiis, antiquis illis, sed his recentibus, Mariis et Didiis et Celiis commemorandis jacebant.* This is also the common practice with adjectives and verbs, and hence when *et* has not previously occurred in an enumeration of persons or things, we should not conclude the enumeration with *et alii, et reliqui, et cetera*, etc., but should make use of the adjectives alone, *alii, reliqui, cetera*, etc. But though *et, ac* and *atque* are not used alone in the third or fourth place, yet the enclitic *que* frequently occurs in this position; as, *Precor ut ea res vobis pacem, tranquillitatem, omnium, concordiamque afferat.* Cic. *Et* may be supplied also when two protases introduced by *si* are joined together; where we say 'if—and if,' or 'if—and.' See an example in Cic. Off. 3, 9.

(c.) An ellipsis of *ut* is supposed when *ne* precedes and *et, atque*, or *que* is used to continue the sentence, those copulative conjunctions in such case obtaining the meaning of the adversative *sed*; as, *Movere cepit Porum, ne ultima experiri perseveraret, deūretque se victori.* Curt.

REM. 7. Copulative conjunctions are often used, before each of two or more connected words or clauses, in order to mark the connection more forcibly; as, *Et pecunia persuadet, et gratia, et auctoritas dicentis, et dignitas, et postrēmo aspectus.* Quint. *Hoc et turpe, nec tamen tutum.* Cic. *Necque nata est, et æterna est.* Id. *Et tibi et mihi voluptati fore.* Id. Before clauses the disjunctive con-

junctions are used in a similar manner; as, *Res ipsa aut invitābit aut dēhortābitur*. Id. So, also, *nunc...nunc*, *simul...simul*, *partim...partim*, *quā...quā*, *tum...tum*, *quum...tum*, are used before successive clauses.

REM. 8. To connect different names of the same person or thing, *sive* or *seu*, rather than *aut* or *vel*, is employed; as, *Mars sive Māvors*. Cf. § 198, 2, (c.)

REM. 9. Instead of *et* and *ut* with the negatives *nemo*, *nil*, *nullus*, and *numquam*, *nēque* (or *neq*), and *ne* are used with the corresponding affirmative words *quisquam*, *ullus*, *unquam*, and *usquam*. But 'in order that no one' is rendered in Latin by *ne quis* and not by *ne quisquam*, see § 207, R. 31, (a.); as, *Horæ quidem cōdunt, et dies, et menses, et anni: nec præteritum tempus unquam reuertitur*. Cic. *Sēnātus dēcrēvit, dārent opēram consules, ne quid respūblica dē.menti cōpēret*. Cæs.

REM. 10. The conjunctions *igitur*, *vērūm*, *vērūmtāmen*, *sed*, and *sed tūmen*, indicate a return to the construction of the leading clause, when it has been disturbed by the insertion of another clause. These conjunctions, in such connection, are usually rendered by 'I say,' and sometimes in Latin *inquam* is so used. *Nam* also is occasionally employed in this way and very rarely *itāque*.

REM 11. *Vēro* and *autem* are frequently omitted in adversative clauses, especially in short ones; as, *Vincere scēt Hannibal, victōriā ūti nescit*. Liv. This omission often occurs in describing a progress from smaller to greater things, as in Cic. Cat 1, 1. And it is to be remarked that *non* in the second member of such adversative sentences is used without *et* or *vēro*; as, *aliēna vitia videt, sua non videt*. But in unreal suppositions or ironical sentences, where the second member contains the truth, *et non* or *ac non* must be used, where we may supply 'rather'; see § 198, 1, (c.); as, *Quāsi nunc id agātur,—ac non hoc quērātur*. Cic.

## INTERJECTIONS.

Respecting the construction of interjections with the nominative, see § 209 R 13:—with the dative, § 228, 3:—with the accusative, § 238, 2:—and with the vocative, § 240.

## ARRANGEMENT.

### I. OF THE WORDS OF A PROPOSITION.

§ 279. 1. In arranging the parts of a proposition in English, after *connectives*, are placed, first, the *subject* and the words which modify or limit it; next, the *verb* and its modifiers; then, the *object* of the verb; and finally, *prepositions* and the words depending upon them. This is called the *logical* or *natural* order.

2. (a.) In Latin, either of the four principal parts of a sentence may be placed first, and there is great freedom in the arrangement of the rest, but with this general restriction in prose, that *words which are necessary for the complete expression of a thought should not be separated by the interrention of other words*. In ordinary discourse, especially in historical writing, the following general rule for the arrangement of the parts of a sentence is for the most part observed.

(b.) In a Latin sentence, after *connectives*, are placed, first, the *subject* and its modifiers; then, the *oblique cases* and other words which depend upon or modify the verb; and last of all, the *verb*



(c.) Hence a Latin sentence regularly begins with the subject and ends with the principal verb of its predicate; as, *Dumnōrix grātiā et largitiōne āpua Sequēnos plurimum pōterat.* Cæs. But the verb is often not placed at the end of a sentence, especially if the sentence is long, or if two many verbs would be thus brought together at the end. In the familiar style, also, the *vero* is often placed earlier in the sentence, and in explanatory clauses it is sometimes placed at the very beginning of the proposition, in which case a conjunction is generally added.

(d.) It is also to be remarked, as a further modification of the general rule of arrangement, that, in sentences containing the expression of emotion, the word whose emphasis characterizes it as especially affecting the feelings, or as forming a contrast, is placed at the beginning; as, *Cito ārescit lacrima, pręsertim in alięnis mīlis,* Quickly dries the tear, especially when shed for others' woes. Cic. *Sua vitia insipientes et suam culpam in senectutem confęrant.* Id.

(e.) If there be no *emotive* or *pathetic* word requiring prominence, the place at the end of the proposition is reserved for the *significant* word, that is, the word which is to be most strongly impressed upon the understanding or memory; as, *Gallia est omnis divisa in partes tres.* Cæs. *Quod ante id tempus acciderat numquam.* Id. *Quod aliud iter habērent nullum.* Id. *Quę virtus ex pręvidendo est appellāta prędentia.* Cic.

3. (a.) Connectives generally stand at the beginning of the clause which they introduce, and with the following this is their only position; viz. *et, ętęnim, ac, at, atque, atque, neque* or *nec, aut, vel, sive, sin, sed, nam, vęrum,* and the relatives *quāre, quōcirca,* and *quāobrem.*

(b.) Most other connectives generally stand in the first place, but when a particular word is peculiarly emphatic, this word with all that belongs to it stands first, and the conjunction follows it. *Uť,* even when there is no particular emphasis, is commonly placed after *vix, pęne,* and *prępe,* and also after the negatives *nullus, nęmo, nihīl,* and the word *tantum.* In Cicero, *itōque* stands first and *ęgitur* is commonly placed after the first, and sometimes after several words.

(c.) *Autem, ęnim,* and *vęro* (but), are placed after the first word of the clause, or after the second, when the first two belong together, or when one of them is the auxiliary verb *sum*; as, *Ille ęnim ręvocātus ręsistere cepit.* Cæs. *Ego vęro vellem, affuisses.* Cic. *Incrędibile est ęnim, quā sit,* etc. Id. They rarely occur after several words; as, *Cur non de integro autem dātum.* Id. The enclitics *que, ne, re,* are usually subjoined to the first word in a clause; but when a monosyllabic preposition stands at the beginning, they are often attached to its case; as, *Rōmam Cāto dęmigrārit, in fōrōque esse cepit;* and this is always the case with *a, ad* and *ob.* So, also, for the sake of euphony, *Apud quosque.* Cic.

(d.) *Quidem* and *quęque,* when belonging to single words, are always subjoined to the emphatic word in a clause; as, *Verbo ille reus erat, re quidem vęro Oppianicus.* Cic. *Me scilicet maxime, sed proxime illum quōque fęfelissem.* Id. In negative sentences, *ne* precedes, and *quidem* follows, the emphatic word; as, *Ne ad Cātōnem quidem pręrōcābo.* Cic.—*Quidem* is sometimes attracted from the word to which it properly belongs to a neighboring pronoun; as, *Tibique persuāde, esse te quidem mīhi cārissimum, sed multo fōre cārīōrem, si.* etc., instead of, *te cārissimum quidem mīhi esse.*—Prepositions and conjunctions belonging to the word on which the emphasis rests are placed with it between *ne* and *quidem*; as, *Ne in fānis quidem.* Cic. *Ne si dubitętur quidem.* Id. *Ne quum in Siciliā quidem fuit.* Id.; and even *Ne cūjus rei arguērętur quidem.*—So, also, in Cicero, *non nisi,* 'only,' are separated; and the negative may even be contained in a verb.

(e.) The preceding rules respecting the position of connectives are often violated by the poets, who place even the prepositive conjunctions after one or more words of a proposition; as, *Et tu, pōtes nam,* etc.. Hor. *Vivos et rōdęret*

*ungues*. Id. They even separate *et* from the word belonging to it, as, *Auctus et videor pius errare per lucos*. Id. So, *Auctius atque dii melius fecere*. Id. And they sometimes append *que* and *re* neither to the first word, nor to their proper words in other connections; as, *Messallam terrā dum sequiturque mari*, instead of *terrā marique*. Tib. In such arbitrary positions, however, these conjunctions are almost invariably joined to verbs only.

4. When a word is repeated in the same clause, so that one is opposed to, or distinguished from, the other, they must stand together; as, *Hominēs hominibus maxime utiles esse possunt*. Cic. *Equites alii alio dilapsi sunt*. Liv. *Lēgitque virum vir*. Virg. *Mānus manum lavat*. Petr. So, also, the personal and possessive pronouns; as, *Sequere quo tua te natura ducit*. *Suum se negotium agere dicunt*.

5. Words used antithetically are also placed near each other; as, *Dum tacent, clamant*. Cic. *Frāgile corpus animus sempiternus movet*. Id.

6. *Inquam* and often *ait*, introducing a quotation, follow one or more of the words quoted; as, '*Non nosti quid pater,*' inquit, '*Chrysippus dicat.*' Hor. '*Quid,*' ait, '*tua crimina prodis?*' Ovid. When a nominative is added to *inquit*, it usually follows this verb; as, *Mihi vero*, inquit Cotta, *videtur*. Cic.—*Dixit* and *dixit* are used like *inquit* only by the poets.

7. (a.) The adjective may be placed before or after its noun according as one or the other is emphatic, the more emphatic word being placed before the other. When any thing is dependent on the adjective, it usually follows its noun. When a noun is limited by another noun, as well as by an adjective, the adjective usually precedes both; as, *Ulla officii praecepta*. Cic. *Tuum erga dignitatem meam studium*. Id.

(b.) Demonstratives, and the adjectives *primus*, *medius*, etc., when signifying the first part, the middle part, etc., (see § 205, R. 17), usually precede their nouns; as, *Ea res*. Cæs. *His ipsis verbis*. Cic. *Media nox*. Cæs. *Reliqua Aegyptus*. Cic.

8. Monosyllables are usually prefixed to longer words with which they are connected; as, *Vir clarissimus*. Cic. *Di immortales*. *Res innumerabiles*. *Vis tempestatis*. Cæs.

9. (a.) When nouns are put in apposition, the one which explains or defines the other is generally put last, unless it is to be made emphatic; as, *Opes irritamenta naturarum*. Ovid. Hence names of honors or dignities, and every thing of the nature of a title, are commonly placed after the proper name, as explanatory additions. Thus, especially, the names of changeable Roman dignities; as, *Cicero consul*; *C. Curioni tribuno plebis*; but also permanent appellations; as, *Ennius poeta*; *Plato philosophus*; *Diogenes tyrannus*; and such epithets as *vir honestissimus*; *homo doctissimus*. But the hereditary title *rex* is frequently placed before the name; as, *rex Deditarius*; and so the title *Imperator* after it became permanent.

(b.) In the arrangement of the Roman names of persons, the *praenomen* stands first, next the *nomen* or name of the *gens*, third the *cognomen* or name of the *familia*, and last the *agnomen*; as, *Publius Cornelius Scipio Africanus*. The *praenomen* is usually denoted by a letter. In the imperial times the *nomen* is often either omitted or follows as something subordinate.

10. (a.) Oblique cases precede the words on which they depend, but they follow prepositions; as,

*Populi Romani laus est*. Cic. *Laudis avidi, pecuniae liberales*. Sall. *Cunctis esto benignus, nulli blandus, paucis familiaris, omnibus aequus*. Sen. *Mentum aere perennius*. Hor. *Hanc tibi dono do*. Ter.—*Ad meridiem spectans*. Cic. *Extra periculum*. Id.

(b.) Genitives depending upon neuter adjectives are commonly placed last as, *Incerta fortunæ*. Liv. *Nec tibi plus cordis, sed minus oris inest*. Ovid.

**REMARK.** This rule, so far especially as it relates to genitives is in a great degree arbitrary, as the position of the governed and governing words depends on the idea to be expressed; thus, *mors patris tui*, contrasts the death with the preceding life; but, *frātis tui mors* distinguishes this case of death from others. Hence we say, *animi mōtus, animi morbus, corpōis partes, terræ mōtus*.—An objective genitive usually follows the word on which it depends: as, *unā significātiōne* lītērārū, by means of a single notice by letters.—When several genitives are dependent on one noun, the subjective genitive commonly precedes and the objective genitive may either precede or follow the governing noun.—The genitive dependent on *causā* or *gratiā*, 'on account of,' regularly precedes these ablatives; as, *glōriæ causā moriem obire; emolūmenti sui gratiā*.

(c.) When a noun which is governed by a preposition, is modified by other words which precede it, the preposition usually stands before the words by which the noun is modified; as, *A primā lūce ad sextam hōram*. Liv. *Ad animi mei latitium*. Cic. *Ad bonæ beatæque vivendum*. Id.

(d.) Sometimes, however, the preposition comes between its noun and an adjective or a genitive, by which the noun is modified; as, *Nullā in re*. Cic. *Iustis de causis*. Id. *Suos inter æquales*. Id. *Hanc ob causam*. Id. *Magno cum metu*. Id. *Quā in urbe*. Id. *Eā in re*. Id. *Ætātis suæ cum primis*. Nep.—So, also, a conjunction may follow the preposition; as, *Post vērō Sullæ victōriam*.

(e.) *Per*, in adjurations, is often separated from its case by other words; as, *Per ego te deos oro*. Ter.—In the poets, other prepositions are sometimes separated in the same manner; as, *Vulværa, quæ circum plurima mūros accēpit patris*. Virg.

(f.) *Tenus* and *versus*, and sometimes other prepositions, (cf. § 241, R. 1,) follow their cases, especially when joined with *qui* or *hic*. This occurs most frequently with the prepositions *ante*, *contra*, *inter*, and *propter*; more rarely with *circa*, *circum*, *pōnes*, *ultra* and *adversus*; and with still less frequency with *post*, *per*, *ad*, and *de*; as, *quam ante, quem contra, quos inter, quem propter, quos ad, quem ultra, hunc adversus, hunc post, quam circa*.—The preceding prepositions, and more rarely others also, sometimes, especially in the poets and later prose writers, follow nouns and personal pronouns. In such case, if the noun be modified by an adjective or a genitive, the preposition sometimes stands between them, and sometimes follows both; as, *Postes sub ipsos*. Virg. *Ripam apud Euphrātis*. Tac. *Maria omnia circum*. Virg. And more rarely other words intervene; as, *His accensa super*. Id. *Vitis nemo sine nascitur*. Hor.

11. Infinitives precede the verbs on which they depend; as,

*Jugurtha, ubi eos Africā decessisse ratus est, neque propter loci naturam Cir-tam armis expugnare possit, mœnia circumdat*. Sall. *Servire magis quam impê-rare parati estis*. Id.

12. A word which has the same relation to several words, either precedes or follows them all; as, *Vir grātis et sapiens*. Cic. *Clārus et hōnorātus vir*. Id. *In scriptōribus legendis et imitandis*, or *In legendis imitandisque scriptōribus*; but not *In legendis scriptōribus et imitandis*. *Quum respondere neque vellet neque posset*. *Habentur et dicuntur tyranni*. *Amicitiam nec usu nec ratiōne habent cogitant*.

13. Relatives are commonly placed after their antecedents, and as near to them as possible; as,

*Qui sim, ex eo, quem ad te misi, cognosces*. Sall. *Litēras ad te misi, per quas q̄tias tibi eḡi*. Cic.

14. *Quisque* is generally placed after *se*, *suis*, *qui*, ordinals and superlatives; as, *Suos quisque debet tuēri*. Cic. *Satis superque est sibi suarū cuique rerū cura*. Id. *Sēvēritas animadversōnis infimo cuique grātissima*. Id. *Maxime decet, quod est cuiusque maxime suum*. Id. *Quisque* very rarely begins a proposition.



15. (a.) An adverb is usually placed immediately before the word which it qualifies; but if the same word is modified by the oblique case of a noun, the latter commonly follows the adverb; as, *Māle parta māle dilābuntur*. Cic. *Nihil tam aspērū nēque tam difficile esse, quod non cūpīdissime factūri essent*. Sall.—*Impēriū facile iis artibus retinētur, quibus initio partum est*. Id. *Sed maxime adōlescentium familiāritates appetēbat*. Id. *Non tam in bellis et in praeliis, quam in prōmissis et fide firmiorem*. Cic.—(b.) When *non* belongs to a single word of the proposition, it always stands immediately before it; as, *non se reprēhendo, sed fortunam*. But if it belongs to the proposition generally, it stands before the verb, and particularly before the finite verb, if an infinitive depends on it; as, *Cur tantōpēre te angas, intelligēre sane non possum*. Instead of *non dico, nēgo* is generally used; as, *nēgārit cum adesse*.—The negatives *non, nēque, nemo, nullus*, when joined to general negative pronouns or adverbs, such as *quisquam, ullus, unquam*, always precede them though not always immediately; as, *nēmīnī quidquam nēgārit; non mēmīni me unquam te vīdisse*. § 207, R. 31.

NOTE 1. In some phrases, custom has established a certain order, which must be observed and imitated; as, *Civis Rōmānus, pōpulus Rōmānus, jus civile, æs aliūnum, terrā mārique, Pontifex maximus, māgister equitum, tribūnus militum, tribūnū militum consulārī potestate, Jūpiter optimus maximus, via Appia; ne quid respūblica detrīmentī cāpiat*. Cic. The ablatives *opīniōne, spe, iusto, solito*, (see § 256, R. 9), generally precede the comparative.

NOTE 2. Exceptions to the foregoing principles are very numerous. These may arise (a) from emphasis; (b) from poetic license; and (c) from regard to the harmony of the sentence. The following general rule sometimes modifies nearly all the preceding.

16. The emphatic word is placed before the word or words connected with it which are not emphatic.

NOTE 3. The last place is often an emphatic one, except for the verb. When the verb is neither first nor last in a proposition the word before it is emphatic. An adjective, when emphatic, commonly precedes its substantive; when not emphatic, it commonly follows it. But with the demonstrative pronouns the rule is reversed.

NOTE 4. The principal poetical variation in the arrangement of words consists in the separation of the adjective from its noun, and in putting together words from different parts of a proposition.

17. A sentence should not close like a hexameter verse, with a dactyl and spondee; as, *Esse vidētur*; nor, in general, with a monosyllable.

18. *Hiātus* should be avoided; that is, a word beginning with a vowel should not follow a word ending with a vowel.

19. A concurrence of long words or long measures,—of short words or short measures,—of words beginning alike or ending alike,—should be avoided.

## II. OF THE ARRANGEMENT OF CLAUSES

§ 280. A compound sentence, whose clauses are united as protasis and apodosis, or in which the leading clause is divided by the insertion of one or more subordinate clauses, is called a *period*.

1. (a.) In the former kind of period the protasis must precede the apodosis, as, *Quum Pausānias sēmianimis de templo elātus esset, confestim animam efflāvit*. When Pausanias had been carried out of the temple but just alive, he immediately expired. In a period of the latter kind the verb of the principal proposition is placed at the end, and the subordinate clauses between the parts of the leading clause; as, *Pausānias, quum sēmianimis de templo elātus esset, confestim animam efflāvit*, Pausanias, when he had been carried out of the temple but just alive, immediately expired. Nep.

(b.) A sentence, such as *Scīpio exercitum in Africam trājēcit, ut Hann'balē ex Italiā deducēret*, is not periodic in its structure, but it becomes so when we

say, *Scipio, ut Hannibālem ex Italiā dēducēret, exercitum in Africam trājēcit* Periods in which the subordinate clause precedes with two conjunctions, as, *Quam igitur Rōmam vēnisset, statim impērātorem adiit*, are made still more strictly periodic by placing first the conjunction which belongs to the whole and then inserting the subordinate proposition; as, Itaque, *quam Rōmam vēnisset, statim impērātorem adiit*.

2. (a.) If the verbs of the leading and dependent clauses have the same subject, or the same noun depending on them, they are commonly formed into a period; as, Antigōnus, *quam adversus Sēleucum Lysimāchumque dimicāret, in pōlio occisus est*. Nep. *Quem, ut barbāri incendium effūgissee minus viderunt, cēlis missis interfēcērunt*. Id.

(b.) So, also, when the noun which depends on the verb of the leading clause is the subject of the dependent clause; as, L. Manlio, *quam dictātor fuisseet*, M. Pompōnius, tribūnus plēbis, diem dixit. Cic.

3. When obscurity would arise from separating the leading subject and verb by dependent words or clauses, they are often placed together at the beginning or end of the sentence; as, Lātē (sunt) deinde lēges, *non solum quæ regni suspiciōne consulem absolvērent, sed quæ adeo in contrārium vertērent, ut pōpūlūrem etiāri facērent*. Liv. The position of the leading verb is also often otherwise varied, from regard to emphasis, to avoid monotony, or to prevent its meeting with the verb of the last dependent clause; but clauses, when so arranged, do not constitute a period.

4. When one clause is interrupted by the introduction of another, the latter should be finished before the first is resumed.

5. Clauses expressing a *cause*, a *condition*, a *time*, or a *comparison*, usually precede the clauses to which they relate.

6. A short clause usually stands before, rather than after, a long one.

### III. OF THE CONNECTION OF CLAUSES.

(1.) In connecting propositions, relatives, whether pronouns, pronominal adjectives, or adverbs, are often employed in order to avoid the too frequent recurrence of *et*, *autem*, and certain other conjunctions. Every relative may be used for this purpose instead of its corresponding demonstrative with *et*; as, *qui* for *et is*, *quālis* for *et tālis*, *quo* for *et eo*, etc. They are used also before those conjunctions which are joined with *et* or *autem* at the beginning of a proposition; as, *si*, *ntsi*, *ut*, *quum*, etc. (see § 206, (14.)); as, *quod quum audivissem, quod si fecissem, quod quamvis non ignorassem*, for *et quum hoc, et si hoc, et quamvis hoc*; or *quum autem hoc*, etc.; and, often, also, where in English no conjunction is used, and even before other relatives; as, *quod qui facit, eum ego impium iudico*, i. e. *et qui hoc facit*, or, *qui autem hoc facit*. In the ablative with comparatives the relative is often used as a connective; as, *Ciōto, quo nemo tunc erat prudentior*, i. e. Cato, who was more prudent than all others.

(2.) In propositions consisting of two members, the relative pronoun is joined grammatically either to the apodosis or to the protasis; with the former in, *Qui, quum ex eo quereretur, cur tam diu vellet esse in vitā, Nihil habeo, inquit, quod accusarem senectutem*. Cic. de Sen. 6. But is more frequent with the protasis or secondary clause; as, *A quo quum quereretur quid maxime expēderet, respondit*. Cic. Off. 2, 25. When it is thus joined with the protasis, the nominative of the demonstrative is supplied with the apodosis from another case of the relative in the protasis, as, in the preceding passage, from the ablative. But for the sake of emphasis the demonstrative may be expressed, and frequently, also, for the sake of clearness; as, *Qui mos quum a posterioribus non esset retentus, Arcēsilas eum revocavit*. Cic. de Fin. 2, 1. The accusative is sometimes to be supplied; as, *Qui (Hērāclitus) quoniam intelligi nōluit, omittimus*. Cic. N. D. 3, 14. When the demonstrative precedes, and is followed by a proposition consisting of two members, the relative is attached to the prota-

sis, which is placed first, and not to the leading clause or apodosis; as, *Eo scīsi Pompeio, quibus ille si pārisset, Cæsar tantas opes, quantas nunc habet non haberet.* Cic. Fam. 6, 6. *Nōli adversus eos me velle dūcere, cum quibus ne contra te arma ferrem, Italiā relīquī.* Nep. Att. 4.

(3.) Where i. English we use 'however' with the relative; as, He promised me many things, which, however, he did not perform, the Latins made use of the demonstrative with *sed* or *vērūm*, or the relative alone implying the adversative conjunction; as, *multa mihi prōmisit, sed ea non præstitit*, or, *quæ non præstitit*, but not *quæ autem* or *quæ vērō*. *Qui autem* and *qui vērō* are used however in protases, where the relative retains its relative meaning, and there is a corresponding demonstrative in the apodosis; as, *Qui autem omnia bona a se ipsis pētunt, iis nihil malum vidēri pōtest, quod naturæ necessitas affērat.* Cic. de Sen. 2.

(4.) In double relative clauses, especially where the cases are different, Cicero frequently for the second relative clause substitutes the demonstrative, as, *Sed ipsius in mente insidēbat spēcies pulchritūdinis eximia quedam, quam intaens*, in eāque dēfixus, *ad*, etc. for *et in quā*. Cic. Orat. 2. And sometimes even when the cases are the same; as, *Quem Philiūtem vēnisse fērunt, eumque cum Leonte dissēruisse quedam.* Cic. Tusc. 5, 3; where *et* alone would have been sufficient.

(5.) From this tendency to connect sentences by relatives arose the use of *quod* before certain conjunctions merely as a copulative. See § 206, (14.)

(6.) *Nēque* or *nec* is much used by Latin writers instead of *et* and a negation, and may be so used in all cases except when the negative belongs to one particular word; see § 278, R. 9. *Nēque* or *nec* is added to *enim*, *vērō*, and *tāmen*, where we cannot use 'and.' To these negative expressions a second negative is often joined, in which case *nēque enim non* is equivalent to *nam*; *non vērō non*, to *atque etiam*, a stronger *et*; *nec tāmen non*, to *attāmen*.

## ANALYSIS.

§ 281. I. 1. The analysis of a complex or a compound sentence consists in dividing it into its several component propositions, and pointing out their relation to each other.

2. In resolving a sentence into its component clauses, the participial constructions equivalent to clauses should be mentioned, and ellipses be supplied. See § 203, 4; § 274, 3; and § 257.

3. In a continued discourse the connection and relation of the successive sentences also should be specified.

### *Rules for the Analysis of Complex and Compound Sentences.*

(1.) State whether the sentence is complex or compound. § 201, 11, 12.

(2.) If complex, (1) specify the principal and subordinate clauses. (2) Specify the class to which the subordinate proposition belongs, (§ 201, 7), and (3), its connective, and the class to which such connective belongs, (§ 201, 8 and 9.)

(3.) If compound, specify the principal propositions, with their subordinates, if any they have, as in the case of complex sentences.

II. The analysis of a proposition or simple sentence consists in distinguishing the subject from the predicate, and, in case either of them be compound in pointing out the simple subjects or predicates of which it is composed, and if complex, in specifying the several modifiers, whether of the essential or subordinate parts.



*Rules for the Analysis of a Simple Sentence.*

1. Divide it into two parts—the subject and the predicate, § 201, 1—3. If these are simple, the analysis is complete, but if either is compound:—

2. Specify the simple subjects or predicates of which the compound consists.—If either is complex:—

3. Point out the grammatical subject, and the words, phrases, etc. *directly* modifying it.

4. Point out the words, phrases, etc., which modify the direct modifiers of the grammatical subject, and those which modify them, and so on successively, until the relation of each of the words composing the logical subject is specified.

5. Point out the grammatical predicate, and the words, phrases, etc., *directly* modifying it.

6. Point out the words, phrases, etc., which modify the direct modifiers of the grammatical predicate, and those which modify them, and so on successively, until the relation of each of the words composing the logical predicate is specified.

## PARSING.

III. Parsing consists in resolving a proposition into the parts of speech of which it is composed, tracing the derivation of each word, and giving the rules of formation and construction applicable to it.

*Rules for Parsing.*

1. Name the part of speech to which each word belongs, including the subdivision in which it is found.

2. If it is an inflected word:—

(1.) Name its root or crude form, and decline, compare, or conjugate it.

(2.) If it is a noun or pronoun, tell its gender, number and case:—if in the nominative or in the accusative with the infinitive, tell its verb:—if in an oblique case depending on some other word, tell the word on which its case depends.

(3.) If it is an adjective, adjective-pronoun, or participle, tell the word which it modifies.

(4.) If it is a finite verb or an infinitive with the accusative, tell its voice, mood, tense, number, person, and subject.

3. If it is a conjunction, tell its class and what it connects.

4. If it is a preposition, tell the words whose relation is expressed by it.

5. If it is an adverb, tell its class and what it qualifies.

6. Prove the correctness of each step of the process by quoting the definition or rule of formation or construction on which it depends.

NOTE. The words constituting a proposition are most conveniently parsed in that order in which they are arranged in analysis.

*Examples of Analysis and Parsing.*

1. *Equus currit*, The horse runs.

*Analysis.* This is a simple sentence: its subject is *equus*, its predicate is *currit*, both of which are simple. See § 201, 1—3; § 202, 2; and § 203, 2.

*Parsing.* *Equus* is a common noun, § 26, 1 and 3; of the 2d decl., § 38 masc. gender, § 28, 1; third person, § 35, 2; its root is *ēqu-*, § 40, 10; decline it § 46; it is in the nominative case, singular number, § 35, 1, (b.); the subject of *currit*, § 209, (a.)—*Currit* is a neuter verb, § 141, II.; of the 3d conjugation, § 143, 2, from *curro*; its principal parts are *curro*, *cūcurri*, *cursum*, *currere*, § 151, 4; it is from the first root *curr-*: give the formations of that root, § 151, 1; it is in the active voice, § 142, 1; indicative mood, § 143, 1; present tense, § 145, I.; third person, § 147; singular number, § 146; agreeing with its subject-nominative *ēquus*, § 209, (b.)

NOTE. The questions to be asked in parsing *ēquus* are such as these, Why is *ēquus* a noun? Why a common noun? Why of the second declension? Why masculine? etc.—In parsing *currit*, the questions are, Why is *currit* a verb? Why a neuter verb? Why of the third conjugation? Which are the principal parts of a verb? Of what does the first root of a verb consist? What parts of a verb are derived from the first root? etc. The answer in each case may be found by consulting the etymological rules and definitions.

2. *Sævius ventis āgītātur ingens pīnus*, The great pine is more violently shaken by the winds. Hor.

*Analysis.* This also is a simple sentence:—its subject is *ingens pīnus*, its predicate *sævius ventis āgītātur*; both of which are complex, § 201, 10, § 202, 6 and § 203, 5.

The grammatical subject is *pīnus*, the pine; this is modified by *ingens*, great, § 201, 2, § 202, 2, and § 202, 6, (3.)

The grammatical predicate is *āgītātur*, is shaken; this is modified by two independent modifiers, *sævius*, more violently, and *ventis*, by the winds, § 203 II. 3. Rem., § 203, I. 1, (2), and (3.)

*Parsing.* *Pīnus* is a common noun, § 26, 1 and 3; of the 2d and 4th declensions, § 38 and § 99; feminine gender, § 29, 2; 3d person, § 35, 2; from the root *pīn-*, § 40, 10; (decline it both in the 2d and 4th declensions);—it is found in the singular number, § 35, 1, and the nominative case, the subject of *āgītātur*, § 209, (a.)

*Ingens* is a qualifying adjective of quantity, § 104, 4, and § 205, N. 1; of the 3d decl., § 105, 1, and § 38; of one termination, § 108, and § 111; from the root *ingent-*, § 40, 10; (decline it like *præsens*, § 111, but with only *i* in the ablative, § 113, Exc. 3.);—it is found in the singular number, feminine gender, § 26, R. 4; and nominative case, agreeing with its noun *pīnus*, § 205.

*Āgītātur* is an active frequentative verb, § 141, I., and § 187, II. 1; of the 1st conjugation, § 149, 2; from the first root of its primitive *āgo*, § 187, II. 1, (b.); (name its principal parts in both voices, see § 151, 4; and give the conjugation of the passive voice, indicative mood, present tense, see § 156.);—it is found in the singular number, § 146; third person, § 147; agreeing with its subject-nominative *pīnus*, § 209, (b.)

*Sævius* is a derivative adverb of manner, § 190, 2–4; in the comparative degree, from the positive *sæve* or *sæviter*, which is derived from the adjective *sævus*, § 194, 1 and 2, and § 192, II. 1, and Exc. 1 and 2; modifying the verb *āgītātur*, by expressing its degree, § 277.

*Ventis* is a common noun, § 26, 1 and 3; of the 2d declension, § 38; masculine gender, § 46; from the root *vent-*, § 40, 10; (decline it);—it is found in the plural number, § 35, 1; ablative case, modifying *āgītātur* by denoting its means or instrument, § 247.

3. *Mīthridātes, duārum et vīginti gentium rex, tōtīdem linguis jūra dixit*, Mithridates, king of twenty-two nations, pronounced judicial decisions in as many languages. Plin.

*Analysis.* This also is a simple sentence; its subject is *Mīthridātes, duārum et vīginti gentium rex*, its predicate is *tōtīdem linguis jūra dixit*, both of which are complex, § 201, 10, § 202, 6, and § 203, 5.

The grammatical subject is *Mithridātes*; this is modified directly by *rex*, § 202, I. (1.)

*Rex* is limited by *gentium*, § 202, I. 1, (2.)

*Gentium* is limited by the compound addition *duarum* and *viginti* connected coordinately by *et*, § 202, III. 3.

The grammatical predicate is *dixit*; this is limited by *jura* and *linguis*, the former a simple, the latter a complex addition, as it is modified by *tōtīdem* § 203, I. 1, (2.) and II. 1.

*Parsing*. *Mithridātes* is a proper noun, § 26, 2; of the third declension, § 38; masculine gender, § 28, 1; from the root *Mithridāt-*, § 40, 10; genitive *Mithridātis*, § 73, 1; (decline it in the singular number only, § 95, (a.);—it is found in the nominative case, the subject of *dixit*, § 209, (a.)

*Rex* is a common noun—third declension, § 38; masculine gender, § 28, 1; from the root *rēg-*, § 40, 10; genitive *rēgis*, § 78, 2; (decline it);—it is found in the singular number—the nominative case, in apposition to *Mithridātes*, § 204.

*Gentium* is a common noun from *gens*—third declension—feminine gender, § 62; from the root *gent-*, § 56, I, R. 1; genitive *gentis*, § 77, 2 and (2.); (decline it);—it is found in the plural number—genitive case, § 83, II. 3; limiting *rex* subjectively, § 211 and R. 2.

*Duarum* is a numeral adjective, § 104, 5; of the cardinal kind, § 117; from *duo*, *duce*, *duo*; from the root *du-*; (decline it, § 118, 1.);—it is found in the plural number, § 118, 2; feminine gender, genitive case, § 26, R. 4; agreeing with its noun *gentium*, § 205.

*Et* is a copulative conjunction, § 198, 1, connecting *duarum* and *viginti*, § 278.

*Viginti* is a numeral adjective of the cardinal kind, indeclinable, § 118, 1; limiting *gentium*, § 205.

*Dixit* is an active verb, § 141, I.; of the third conjugation, § 149, 2; from *dico*, (give the principal parts in the active voice, and its first, second, and third roots, § 150, 4, and § 171, 1;) it is formed from the second root *dix-*, (give the formations of the second root);—it is found in the active voice, § 141, 1; indicative mood, § 143, 1; perfect indefinite tense, § 145, IV. and Rem.; singular number, third person, agreeing with *Mithridātes*, § 209, (b.)

*Jura* is a common noun, of the third declension, from *jus*, root *jūr-*, § 56, I, R. 1; genitive *jūris*, § 76, Exc. 3; neuter gender, § 66; (decline it);—it is found in the plural number, accusative case, § 40, 8; the object of *dixit*, § 229.

*Linguis* is a common noun, of the first declension, feminine gender, from *lingua*, root *lingu-*, (decline it);—found in the plural number, ablative case, after *dixit*, § 247.

*Tōtīdem* is a demonstrative pronominal adjective, § 139, 5, (2.) and (3.); indeclinable, § 115, 4; it is in the ablative plural, feminine gender, limiting *linguis*, § 205.

4. *Pausānias, quum sēmiānīmīs de templo ēlātus esset, confestim ānīmā eflāvit.* Nep. Paus. 4.

*Analysis*. This is a complex sentence, § 201, 11; consisting of two members, which are so arranged as to constitute a period, § 280, 1.

The principal proposition is, *Pausānias confestim ānīmā eflāvit*, § 201, 5. The subordinate proposition is, *quum (is) sēmiānīmīs de templo ēlātus esset*, § 201, 6.

The leading proposition has a simple subject, *Pausānias*, § 202, 2, and a complex predicate, *confestim ānīmā eflāvit*, § 203, 3; in which *efflāvit* is the grammatical predicate, § 203, 2; which is modified by *confestim* and *ānīmā*, § 203, I. 1, (2.) and (3.), and II. R. 2., and also by the adverbial clause *quum sēmiānīmīs*, etc. § 201, 6 and 7, and § 203, I. 3.

The subordinate proposition, which is connected to the leading clause by the subordinate conjunction *quum*, § 201, 9, has a simple subject, viz. *is* understood, and a complex predicate, *sēmiānīmīs, de templo ēlātus esset*, § 203, 3.—The grammatical predicate is *ēlātus esset*, § 203, 2; which is modified by *sēmiānīmīs*, § 203, I. 1, (1.), and *de templo*, § 203, I. 2, and II. Rem. 2.



*Parsing.* *Pausānias*, a Greek proper noun, § 26, 2;—1st decl., §§ 41 and 44; masc. gender, § 28, 1; root *Pausāni-*; found in sing. num., nom. case, the subject of *efflāvit*, § 209, (a.)

*Confestim*, an adv. of time § 190, 3; limiting *efflāvit*, § 277.

*Animam* is a com. noun of 1st decl., feim. gender, § 41; from *ānima*, root *ānim-*; (decline it);—it is found in the sing. num., acc. case, the object of *efflāvit*, § 229.

*Efflāvit*, an act. verb, 1st conj., from *efflo*, compounded of *ex* and *flo*, § 196, 6; (give the principal parts in the act. voice and the three roots);—it is formed from the second root; (give the formations of that root); in the active voice ind. mood, perfect indefinite tense, sing. num., 3d pers., agreeing with *Pausānias*, § 209, (b.)

*Quum* is a temporal conjunction, § 198, 10; connecting the dependent to the principal clause, § 278.

*Sēmīnūmis* is a predicate adj., of the 3d decl., of two terminations, § 109; (decline it);—it is in the sing. num., masc. gen., nom. case, agreeing with *is* understood, § 210, R. 1, (a.)

*De* is a preposition, expressing the relation between *ēlātus esset* and *templo*, § 195.

*Templo* is a com. noun, 2d decl., neut. gen., from *templum*, root *templ-*; (decline it);—in the sing. num., abl. case, after *de*, § 241.

*Elātus esset* is an irregular active verb, of the third conjugation, § 179; from *effēro*, compounded of *ex* and *fēro*, § 196, 6; (see *fēro* and compounds, § 172); (give the principal parts in both voices, and the 1st and 3d roots);—it is formed from the third root, *ēlāt-*, (give the formations of that root in the passive voice); in the subjunctive mood, pluperfect tense, § 145, V.; sing. num., third person, agreeing with *is* understood referring to *Pausānias*, § 209, (b.)

5. *Rōmāna pūbes, sēdāto tandem pāvōre, postquam ex tam turbīdo die sērēna et tranquilla lux rēdiit, ūbi vācuam sēdem rēgiam vidit, etsi sātis crēdēbat patrībūs, qui proximī stētērant, sublimem raptum procellā; tāmen, vēlut orbitātis mētū icta, mæstum āliquamdiu silentium obtinuit.* Liv. 1, 16.

*Analysis.* This is a complex sentence, whose clauses constitute a period, § 280. It is composed of the following members or clauses:—

1. *Rōmāna pūbes* [tānen] *mæstum āliquamdiu silentium obtinuit.* This is the leading clause. The following are dependent clauses.

2. *vēlut orbitātis mētū icta,*

3. *sēdāto tandem pāvōre,*

4. *postquam ex tam turbīdo die sērēna et tranquilla lux rēdiit,*

5. *ūbi vācuam sēdem rēgiam vidit,*

6. *etsi sātis crēdēbat patrībūs,*

7. *qui proximī stētērant,*

8. *sublimem raptum procellā.*

NOTE 1. In the preceding clauses the predicates are printed in Italics.

NOTE 2. The connective of the 1st clause, is the adversative *tāmen*, which is inserted on account of *etsi* intervening between the principal subject and predicate. The connective of the 2d clause is *vēlut*, of the 4th *postquam*, of the 5th *ūbi*, of the 6th *etsi*, followed by a clause constituting the protasis, and of the 7th *qui*. The 3d and 8th clauses have no connectives.

(1.) The grammatical subject of the leading clause is *pūbes*, which is limited by *Rōmāna*.—The grammatical predicate is *obtinuit*, which is limited by *ālīquamdiu* and *silentium*, and also either directly or indirectly by all the dependent clauses. *Silentium* is itself modified by *mæstum*.

The second, third, fourth, fifth, and sixth clauses are used adverbially to denote the time and other circumstances modifying the principal predicate *silentium obtinuit*, § 201, 7.

(2.) The second is a participial clause, equivalent to *vēlut* (*ea* scil. *pūbes orbitātis mētū icta esset*, § 274, 3, (a.))

(3.) The third clause is also participial, and is equivalent to *quum tandem pavor seditus esset*, § 257, R. 1; and hence *pāvōre* represents the subject, and *sedito tandem* the predicate—the former being simple, the latter complex.

(4.) The grammatical subject of the 4th clause, which is connected to the leading clause by *postquam*, § 201, 9, is *lux*, which is modified by *sērēna* and *tranquilla*.—The grammatical predicate is *rēdiit*, which is modified by *postquam* and *ex tam turbido die*, § 203, I. 1, (3.), and II. 1.

(5.) The grammatical subject of the fifth clause is *ea* understood.—The grammatical predicate is *vidit*, which is modified by *ubi* and *vācuam eadem rēgiā*, § 203, I. 1, (3.) and II. 1.

(6.) The grammatical subject of the sixth clause also is *ea*. Its grammatical predicate is *crēdēbat*, which is modified by *suis* and *patribus*, § 203, I. (2.) and (3.), and by the 8th clause, II. 3.

(7.) The grammatical subject of the seventh clause is *qui*. Its grammatical predicate is *steterant*, which is modified by *proximi*, § 203, I. (1.) It is an adjective clause, modifying *patribus*, § 201, 7 and 9.

(8.) The grammatical subject of the eighth clause, which has no connective, § 201, Rem., is *eum*, i. e. *Rōmulum*, understood. Its grammatical predicate is *raptum* (*esse*), which is modified by *sublimem* and *procellā*.

*Parsing.* *Rōmāna* is a patrial adjective, § 104, 10, derived from *Rōma*, § 128, 6, (a.) and (e.); of the 1st and 2d declensions, § 105, 2; fem. gender, sing. number, nom. case, agreeing with *pūbes*, § 205.

*Pūbes*, a collective noun, § 26, 4; 3d decl., fem. gender, § 62; from the root *pūb-*, § 56, I. R. 6; genitive *pūbis*, § 73, 1; (decline it);—found in the nom. sing., the subject of *obtīnuit*, § 209, (a.)

*Tūmen*, an adversative conjunction, § 198, 9, relating to *etsi* in the 6th clause.

*Mæstum*, a qualifying adj., § 205, N. 1; of the 1st and 2d declensions, neut. gender, sing. num., acc. case, agreeing with *silentium*.

*Aliquamdiu*, an adverb of time, § 191, II.; compounded of *āliquis* and *diu* § 193, 6; and limiting *obtīnuit*, § 277.

*Silentium*, a com. noun, 2d decl., neut. gender, § 46; sing. number, acc. case the object of *obtīnuit*, § 229.

*Obtīnuit*, an active verb, of the 2d conj., § 149, 2; from *obtīneo*, compounded of *ob* and *tēneo*, see § 168; (give the principal parts in the act. voice, and the formations of the 2d root, § 157 at the end);—found in the active voice, ind. mood, perf. indef. tense, sing. num., 3d person, agreeing with *pūbes*, § 209, (b.)

*Vēlut* for *vēlut si*, an adverb, compounded of *vel* and *ut*, § 193, 10; modifying *icta*, and *obtīnuisset* understood, (as they would have done if, etc.)

*Orbitātis*, an abstract noun, § 26, 5; from the primitive *orbus*, § 101, 1 and 2; 3d decl., fem. gender, § 62; from the root *orbitāt-*, § 56, I., and R. 1; (decline it);—found in the sing. num., subjective gen. case, limiting *mētū*, § 211.

*Mētū*, an abstract noun, 4th decl., masc. gen., § 87; sing. num., abl. case, 247.

*Icta*, a perf. part. pass., from the active verb *ico*, of the 3d conj. (give the principal parts in both voices, and decline the participle);—found in the fem. gen., sing. num., nom. case, agreeing with *pūbes*, § 205.

*Sedito*, a perfect pass. part. from the active verb *sēdo*, of the 1st conj., § 149 2; (give the principal parts in both voices, § 151, 4; and decline it, § 105 R. 2.);—found in the masc. gender, sing. num., abl. case, agreeing with *pāvōre*, § 205.

*Tandem*, an adverb of time, § 191, II.; modifying *sedito*, § 277.

*Pāvōre*, an abstract noun, § 26, 5, and § 102, 1; from *pāreo*, 3d decl., masc. gen., § 58; root *pāvor*, § 56, II., and § 70, (decline it);—found in the sing. number, abl. case, absolute with *sedito*, § 257.

*Postquam*, an adverb of time, compounded of *post* and *quam*, § 193, 10; modifying *rēdiit*, and connecting the 1st and 4th clauses, § 201, 9.

*Ex*, a preposition, § 195, R. 2.

*Tam*, an adverb degree, § 191, R. 2; modifying *turbido*, § 277.

*Turbido*, an adjective, agreeing with *die*.

*Die*, a common noun, 5th decl., masc. gender, § 90, Exc. 1.; sing. number abl. case, after the prep. *ex*, § 241.

*Sērēna*, an adj., 1st and 2d decls., fem. gen., sing. num., nom. case, agreeing with *lux*, § 205.

*Et*, a copulative conjunction, § 198, 1; connecting *sērēna* and *tranquilla* § 278.

*Tranquilla*, like *sērēna*.

*Lux*, a common noun, 3d decl., fem. gen., § 62; from the root *luc-*, § 55, I., and R. 2; genitive *lūcis*, § 78, 2.

*Rēdit*, an irregular neuter verb, of the 4th conj., § 176; from *rēdeo*, compounded of *eo*, § 182, and the inseparable prep. *red*, § 196, (b.), 3; (give its principal parts);—found in the ind. mood., perf. indef. tense, sing. num., 3d pers., agreeing with *lux*, § 209, (b.)

*Ubi*, an adverb of time, and like *postquam*, a connective, § 201, 9; and modifying *vidit*, § 277.

*Vacuum*, an adj., qualifying *sēdem*.

*Sēdem*, a common noun, 3d decl., fem. gen., § 62; from the root *sēd-*, § 56, I., R. 6; genitive *sēdis*, § 73, 1; (decline it);—found in the sing. num., acc. case, the object of the transitive verb *vidit*, § 229.

*Rēgiā*, a denominative adj., § 128, I., 2, (a.); from the primitive *rex*, agreeing with *sēdem*.

*Vidit*, an active verb, of the 2d conj., (give its principal parts in the active voice, and the formations of the 2d root); found in the active voice, ind. mood, perf. indef. tense, sing. num., 3d pers., agreeing with *ea*, i. e. *pūbes*, understood.

*Etsi*, a concessive conjunction, § 198, 4; corresponding to the correlative adversative conj. *tāmen*, § 198, 4, R. and 9.

*Sātis*, an adverb of degree, § 191, III., and R. 2; modifying *crēdebat*, § 277.

*Crēdebat*, an act. verb, § 141, I.; 3d conj., (give the principal parts in the active voice and the formations of the 1st root);—found in the act. voice, ind. mood, imperfect tense, sing. num., 3d person, agreeing with *ea*, scil. *pūbes*, understood.

*Patribus*, a common noun, § 26, 3; 3d decl., from the root *patr-*, § 56, II., R. 3; gen. *patris*, § 71; masc. gender, § 25, 1; plur. num., dat. case, depending on *crēdebat*, § 223, R. 2.

*Qui*, the subject of the 7th clause, is a relative pronoun, § 136; masc. gender, plur. num., agreeing with its antecedent *patribus*, § 206, R. 19, (a.); and is nominative to *stētērant*, § 209, (a.)

*Proximī*, an adj. of the superlative degree, § 126, 1, (compare it); of the 1st and 2d decls., masc. gen., plur. num., nom. case, agreeing with *qui*, § 205, § 210, R. 1, (a.) and R. 3, (2.)

*Stētērant*, a neuter verb, 1st conj., irregular in its 2d root, § 165; (give its principal parts, and the formations of the 2d root);—found in the act. voice ind. mood, plup. tense, § 145, V.; 3d person plural, agreeing with its subject *quī*, § 209, (b.)

*Sublimem*, an adj., of the 3d decl., and two terminations, § 109; masc. gen. sing. num., acc. case, agreeing with *eum*. (i. e. *Rōmulum*,) understood, and modifying also *raptum esse*, § 205, R. 15.

*Raptum (esse)*, an act. verb, 3d conj.; (give the principal parts in both voices and the formations of the 3d root in the passive voice)—found in the pass. voice, inf. mood, perf. tense; but, following the imperfect, it has the meaning of a pluperfect, § 268, 2, and § 145, V.; depending on *crēdebat*, § 272.

*Poocellā* a com. noun, 1st decl., fem. gen., sing. num., abl. case, § 247.



## PROSODY.

§ 282. Prosody treats of the quantity of syllables, and the laws of versification.

## QUANTITY.

1. The quantity of a syllable is the relative time occupied in pronouncing it. Cf. § 13.

2. A syllable is either *short*, *long*, or *common*.

(a.) The time occupied in pronouncing a short syllable is called a *mora* or *time*.

(b.) A long syllable requires two *moræ* or double the time occupied in pronouncing a short one; as, *āmārē*.

(c.) A common syllable is one which, in poetry, may be made either long or short; as the middle syllable of *tēnēbræ*.

3. The quantity of a syllable is either *natural* or *accidental*;—natural, when it depends on the *nature* of its vowel; accidental, when it depends on its *position*.

Thus the *e* in *rēsisto* is short by nature; while in *rēstiti* it is long by its position, since it is followed by two consonants: § 283, IV. On the contrary, the *e* in *dēdūco* is naturally long, but in *dēcerro* it is made short by being placed before a vowel: § 283, I.

4. The quantity of syllables is determined either by certain established *rules*, or by the *authority* of the poets.

Thus it is the poetic usage alone that determines the quantity of the first syllables of the following words, viz. *māter*, *frāter*, *prāvus*, *dīco*, *dūco*; *pāter*, *āvus*, *cādō*, *māuco*, *grāvis*, etc.; and hence the quantity of such syllables can be ascertained by practice only or by consulting the *gradus* or *lexicon*.

5. The rules of quantity are either *general* or *special*. The former apply alike to all the syllables of a word, the latter to particular syllables.

## GENERAL RULES.

§ 283. I. (a.) A vowel before another vowel, or a diphthong, is short; as, *e* in *mēus*, *i* in *patrīæ*. Thus,

*Conscia mens recti famæ mendācia ridet.* Ovid. F. 4, 311.  
'pse dñi mī eximīæ laudis succensus amōre. Virg. A. 7, 496.

(b.) So also when *h* comes between vowels, since *h* is accounted only a breathing; as, *nihil*: (see § 2, 6.) Thus,

*Dē nihilo nihil, in nihilum nil posse reverti.* Pers. 4, 84.

Exc. 1. (a.) *Fīo* has the *i* long, except in *fīt* and when followed by *er*; as *fīunt*, *fīēbam*. Thus,

*Omnia jam fiant, fīeri quæ posse nēgābam.* *Ovid. Tr. 1, 8, 7.*

(b.) It is sometimes found long even before *er*; as, *fīeret*. *Ter.*; *fīēri*. *Plaut* and, on the contrary, *Prudentius* has *fīō* with *i* short.

Exc. 2. (a.) *E* is long in the termination of the genitive and dative of the fifth declension, when preceded and followed by *i*, as *fūciēi*. Thus,

*Non rādii sōlis, nēque lūcīda tēla diēi.* *Lucr. 1, 148.*

(b.) In *spei*, *rei*, and *fidei*, *e* is short.

NOTE. In *Lucretius*, the *e* of *rei* is, in a few cases, long, and that of *fidei* is lengthened once in *Lucretius* and once in a line of *Ennius*.

Exc. 3. (a.) *A* is long in the penult of old genitives in *aī* of the first declension; as, *aulāi*, *pictāi*. Cf. § 43, 1.

(b.) *A* and *e* are also long in proper names in *aīus*, *eīus*, or *eā*; as, *Cārus* *Pompēius*, *Aquilēa*; and in the adjectives *Grārus* and *Vērus*. Thus,

*Æthērium sensum, atque aurāi simplicis ignem.* *Virg. A. 6, 747.*

*Accīpe, Pompēi, dēductum carmen ab illo.* *Ovid. Pont. 4, 1, 1.*

*Necnon cum Vēnētis Aquilēa perfūrit armis.* *Sil. 8, 606.*

Exc. 4. (a.) *I* is common in genitives in *ius*; as, *unīus*, *illīus*. Thus,

*Illīus et nitīdo stillent unguenta cāpillo.* *Tibull. 1, 7, 51.*

*Illīus pūro dēstillent tempōra nardo.* *Id. 2, 2, 7.*

(b.) But *i* in the genitive of *alter* is commonly short; and in that of *ālius* it is always long.

Exc. 5. The first vowel of *ēheu* is long; that of *Dīāna*, *īo*, and *ōhe* is common.

Exc. 6. Greek words retain their original quantities, and hence, in many Greek words, a vowel is long, though immediately followed by another vowel; as,

*āēr*, *Achāra*, *Achēlōns*, *dīa*, *ēos*, *Lāertes*, and Greek words having in the original a long *e* or *o* (*η* or *ω*.) See also § 293, 3.

(1.) Words which, in Greek, are written with *ei* (*ει*) before a vowel, and in Latin with a single *e* or *i*, have the *e* or *i* long; as, *Ænēas*, *Alexandria*, *Cassio-pēa*, *Clīo*, *Dārius*, *ēlēgia*, *Gālātēa*, *Mēdēa*, *Mausōleum*, *Pēnēlōpēa*, *Thālia*, *Atrides*.

Hence most adjectives in *eus*, formed from Greek proper names, have the *e* *Pēlōpēia*. *Cythērēus*, *Pēlōpēus*; and the *e* remains long when *er* is restored; as, *er*; as,

Exc. *Acādēmia*, *chōrea*, *Mālea*, *plātea*, and some patronymics and patrials in *ōis*; as, *Nērēis*, have the penult common.

(2.) Greek genitives in *eos*, and accusatives in *ea*, from nominatives in *eus*, generally shorten the *e*; as, *Orphēos*, *Orphēa*;—but the *e* is sometimes lengthened by the Ionic dialect; as, *Cēphēos*, *Ilīōnēa*.

(3.) Greek words in *aīs*, *ois*, *aius*, *eius*, *oius*, *aon*, and *ion*, generally lengthen the first vowel; as, *Nāis*, *Mīnōis*, *Grārus*, *Nērēus*, *Mīnētus*, *Māchān*, *Ixion*. But *Thēbāis*, *Stimbis*, *Phāon*, *Deucālion*, *Pygmālion*, and many others, shorten the former vowel.

NOTE 1. Greek words in *aon* and *ion*, with *o* short in the genitive, have the penult long; but with *o* long in the genitive, they have it short; as, *Amjthāon dōnis*; *Deucālion*, *-ōnis*.

NOTE 2. In Greek proper names in *eus* (gen. *eos*), as *Orpheus*, the *eu* in the nominative is always a diphthong in the original, and, with very few exceptions, in the Latin poets.

II. A diphthong is long; as, *aurum*, *fœnus*, *Eubœa*, *Pompēus*, *Orphēu*. Thus,

*Infernique lăcus, Ætœque insula Circæ. Virg. A. 3, 386.*  
*Thēsăuros ignotum argenti pondus et auri. Id. A. 1, 359.*  
*Harpyiæque cōlunt aliæ, Phinēia postquam. Id. A. 3, 212.*

Exc. 1. *Præ*, in composition, is short before a vowel; as, *præustus*, *præcūsus*. Thus,

*Nec totā tamen ille prior præeunte carinā. Virg. A. 5, 186.*

In Statius, and Sidonius Apollinaris, it is found long.

Exc. 2. A diphthong at the end of a word, when the next word begins with a vowel, is sometimes made short; as,

*Insulæ Iōnio in magno, quas dīra Cēlæno. Virg. A. 3, 211.*

Exc. 3. The diphthongs consisting of *u* followed by a vowel are either long or short; the two vowels thus combined being subject to the same rules of quantity, as their final vowel would be if standing alone; as, *quā*, *quī*, *quōrum*, *quā*, *quibus*, *quātio*, *quēror*, *æquor*, *linguā*, *sanguis*.

III. A syllable formed by contraction is long; as, *alius* for *aliūs*; *cōgo* for *cōdgo*; *nīl* for *nīhil*; *jūnior* for *jūvēnior*. Thus,  
*Tītŕe cōge pēcus, tu post cārecta lātēbas. Virg. E. 3, 20.*

IV. A vowel naturally short, before two consonants, a double consonant, or the letter *j*, is long by position; as, *arma*, *bēllum*, *āxis*, *gāza*, *māior*. Thus,

*Pāscere ōpōrtei oves dēductum dicere cārmēn. Virg. E. 6, 5.*  
*Nēc mīrtūs vincet cōrŕlos; nēc laurea Phœbi. Id. E. 7, 64.*  
*At nōbis, Pax alma, vēni, spicamque tēnēto. Tibull. 1, 10, 67.*  
*Rāra jūvant: primis sic māior grātia pōmis. Mar. 4, 29, 3.*

NOTE 1. A vowel (other than *i*) before *j* is in reality lengthened by forming a diphthong with it, since *i* and *j* are in fact but one letter. Thus *major* is equivalent to *mai'-or*, which would be pronounced *mā'-yor*. See § 9, 1.

Exc. 1. The compounds of *jūgum* have *i* short before *j*; as, *bjūgus*, *quādrjūgus*. Thus,

*Intēreā bjūgis infert se Lūcāgus albis. Virg. A. 10, 575.*

REMARK. The vowel is long by position, when either one or both of the consonants is in the same word with it; but when both stand at the beginning of the following word, the vowel is either long or short; as,

*Tolle mōras; sēpēr nōcuīt differre pārātis. Lucan. 1, 281.*  
*Ferte cīti ferrūm; dāte tēlā; scandite mūros. Virg. A. 9, 37.*  
*Ne tamen ignōrēt, quæ sūt sententiā scripto. Ovid.*

NOTE 2. A short vowel at the end of a word, before an initial double consonant or *j* in the following word, is not lengthened.

NOTE 3. In the comic poets a vowel frequently remains short though followed by two consonants, especially if only one of them is in the same word.



**Exc. 2** A vowel *naturally short*, before a mute followed by a liquid, is common; as, *āgrīs, phārētra, vōlūcrīs, pōplītes, cōchlea*. Thus,

*Et primo sīmīlis vōlūcri, mox vēra vōlūcrīs. Ovid. M. 13. 607.*  
*Nātum ante ōra pātris, pātrēm qui obtruncat ad āras. Virg. A. 2, 663.*  
*Nox tēnēbras prōfert, Phœbus fūgat inde tēnēbras. Ovid.*

**REM. 1.** If the vowel before a mute and liquid is *naturally long*, it continues so; as, *sālūbris, ambūlācrum*.

**REM. 2.** In *compound* words, of which the former part ends with a mute, and the latter begins with a liquid, a short vowel before the mute is made long by position; as, *ābluo, ōbruo, sūblēvo, quāmōbrem*.

**REM. 3.** A mute and liquid at the beginning of a word seldom lengthen the short vowel of the preceding word, except in the arsis of a foot; as,

*Terrasquē tractusque mārīs cœlumque prōfundum. Virg. E. 4, 51.*

**REM. 4.** In Latin words, only the liquids *l* and *r* following a mute render the preceding short vowel common; but, in words of Greek origin, *m* and *n* after a mute have the same effect, as in *Tēcnessa, Prōcne, Cŷcnus*.

## SPECIAL RULES.

### FIRST AND MIDDLE SYLLABLES.

#### I. DERIVATIVE WORDS.

**§ 284.** Derivative words retain the quantity of their primitives; as,

by conjugation, *āmo, āmat, āmābat, āmāvi, āmātus*, etc.; by declension, *āmor, āmōris, āmōri, āmōribus*, etc.; so, *ānīmal, ānīmātus*, from *ānīma*; *gēmēbundus*, from *gēmēre*; *fāmīlia*, from *fāmūlus*; *māternus*, from *māter*; *prōpinquus*, from *prōpe*.

**NOTE 1.** *Lār, pār, sāl*, and *pēs* in declension shorten the vowel of the nominative; as, *sālīs, pēdis*, etc.

**NOTE 2.** The vowel of the primitive is sometimes lengthened or shortened in the derivative by the addition or removal of a consonant.

**REM. 1.** Derivatives from increasing nouns of the second or third declension agree in quantity with the increment of their primitives; as,

*puērītia*, from *puērī*; *virgīneus*, from *virgīnis*; *sālūber*, from *sālūtīs*.

**REM. 2.** In verbs, the vowels of the derived tenses and of derivative words agree in quantity with the verbal root from which they are formed; as,

*mōvēbam, mōvēbo, mōveam, mōvērem, mōve, mōvēre, mōvens, mōvendus* from *mōv*, the root of the present, with *ō* short;—*mōvēram, mōvērim, mōvissem, mōvēro, mōvisse*, from *mōv*, the root of the perfect, with *ō* long; *mōtūus* and *mōtus*;—*mōto, mōtio, mōtor, and mōtus, -ūs*, from *mōt*, the root of the supine, with *ō* also long.

**REM. 3.** (*o.*) *Sōlūtum* and *vōlūtum* from *solvo* and *volvo* have the first syllable short, as if from *sōluo, vōluo*. So, from *gigno* come *gēnui, gēnītum*, as if from *gēno*; and *pōtui*, from *pōtis sum* (*possum*).

(b.) The *a* in *da*, imperative of *do*, is long, though short in other parts of the verb. See § 294, 2.

(c.) The *o* in *pōsui* and *pōsitum* is short, though long in *pōro*.

Exc. 1. Perfects and supines of two syllables have the first syllable long, even when that of the present is short; as,

*vēm*, *vīdi*, *fēci*, from *vēnio*, *vīdeo*, *fācio*; *cāsum*, *mōtum*, *vīsum*, from *cādo*, *mōveo*, *vīdeo*.

NOTE 3. Such perfects are supposed to have been formed either by the contraction of reduplicated syllables, as *vēnio*, perf. *vēvēni*, by syncope *vēēni*, by crasis *vēni*, or by the omission of a consonant, as *vīdeo*, perf. *vīdsi*, by syncope *vīdi*, the vowel retaining the quantity which it had by position.

NOTE 4. The long vowel of dissyllabic supines probably arose in like manner from syncope and contraction; as, *vīdeo*, *vidsum*, by syncope *vīsum*; *mōveo*, *mōvitum*, by syncope *mōitum*, by contraction *mōtum*.

(1.) (a.) These seven perfects have the first syllable short:—*lībi*, *dēdi*, *fīdi*, (from *findo*), *scīdi*, *stēti*, *stīti*, *tūli*. So also *percūli*, from *percello*.

(b.) The first syllable is also short before a vowel (§ 283, I.); as, *rūi*.

(2.) (a.) These ten supines have the first syllable short:—*cītum*, (from *cīeo*), *dātum*, *ītum*, *lītum*, *quītum*, *rātum*, *rūtum*, *sātum*, *sītum*, and *stātum*.

(b.) So, also, had the obsolete *fūtum*, from *fūō*, whence comes *fūtūrus*.

Exc. 2. (a.) Reduplicated polysyllabic perfects have the first two syllables short; as,

*cēcīdi*, *cēcīni*, *tētīgi*, *dīdīci*, from *cādo*, *cāno*, *tango*, and *disco*.

(b.) The second syllable of reduplicated perfects is sometimes made long by position; as, *mōmōrdī*, *tētēndī*.—*Cēcīdi* from *cādo*, and *pēpēdi* from *pēdo*, retaining the quantity of their first root also have the second syllable long.

Exc. 3. Desiderative verbs in *urio* have the *u* short, though, in the third root of the verbs from which they are formed, it is long; as, *cānātūrio* from *cānātū*, the third root of *cāno*. So *partūrio*, *ēsūrio*, *nuptūrio*.

Exc. 4. Frequentative verbs, formed from the third root of verbs of the first conjugation, have the *i* short; as, *clāmīto*, *vōlīto*. See § 187, II. 1.

Exc. 5. A few other derivatives deviate from the quantity of their primitives.

1. Some have a long vowel from a short one in the primitive. Such are,

<i>Dēni</i> , from <i>dēcem</i> .	<i>Mōbīlis</i> , from <i>mōveo</i> .	<i>Stīpendium</i> , from <i>stīps</i>
<i>Fōmes</i> and } from	<i>Persōna</i> , from <i>persōno</i> .	( <i>stīpis</i> ).
<i>Fōnētum</i> , } <i>fōveo</i> .	<i>Rēgūla</i> and } from	<i>Suspīcio</i> , <i>ōnis</i> , from <i>sus-</i>
<i>Hēmānus</i> , from <i>hōmo</i> .	<i>Rex</i> ( <i>rēgis</i> ), } <i>rēgo</i> .	<i>pīcor</i> .
<i>Lāterna</i> , from <i>lāteo</i> ,	<i>Sēcīus</i> , from <i>sēcus</i> .	<i>Tēgūla</i> , from <i>tēgo</i> .
<i>Lītēra</i> from <i>līno</i> .	<i>Sēdes</i> , from <i>sēdeo</i> .	
<i>Lex</i> ( <i>lēgis</i> ), from <i>lēgo</i> .	<i>Sēmen</i> , from <i>sēro</i> .	

2. Some have a short vowel from a long one in the primitive. Such are;

<i>Vīcax</i> , from <i>dīco</i> .	<i>Mōlestus</i> , from <i>mōles</i> .	<i>Sāgax</i> , from <i>sāgio</i> .
<i>Dūx</i> ( <i>dūcis</i> ), from <i>dūco</i> .	<i>Nāto</i> , from <i>nātu. sup.</i>	<i>Sōpor</i> , from <i>sōpio</i> .
<i>Fīdes</i> , from <i>fīdo</i> .	<i>Nōto</i> , from <i>nōtu. sup.</i>	<i>Vādum</i> , from <i>vādo</i> .
<i>Lābo</i> , from <i>lābor</i> , dep. v.	<i>ōdium</i> , from <i>ōdi</i> .	<i>Vōco</i> , from <i>vox</i> ( <i>vōcis</i> ),
<i>Lūcerna</i> , from <i>lūceo</i> .	<i>Quāsillus</i> , from <i>quālus</i> .	

NOTE 1. *Disertus* comes regularly (by syncope) from *dissertus*, the prefix *diss-* being short, § 299, 1. Cf. *dirīmo* and *dirībeo*, where *s* is changed to *r*. See § 196 (b.) 2.

NOTE 2. Some other words might, perhaps, with propriety be added to these lists; but, in regard to the derivation of most of them, grammarians are not entirely agreed.

REMARK 1. Some of these irregularities seem to have arisen from the influence of syncope and crasis. Thus *mōbilis* may have been *mōvibilis*; *mōtum*, *mōvitum*, etc.

REM. 2. Sometimes the vowel in the derived word being naturally short, is restored to its proper quantity by removing one of the consonants which, in the primitive, made it long by position; as, *nūx*, *nūcis*. So, when the vowel of the primitive is naturally long, but has been made short before another vowel it is sometimes restored to its original quantity by the insertion of a consonant as, *hibernus*, from *hiems*.

REM. 3. The first syllable in *liquidus* is supposed to be common, as coming either from *liquor* or *liqueo*; as,

Crassāque convēniant *liquidis*, et *liquida* crassis. *Lucr.* 4, 1255.

## II. COMPOUND WORDS.

§ 285. 1. Compound words retain the quantity of the words which compose them; as,

*dēfēr*, of *dē* and *fērō*; *ādōrō*, of *ād* and *ōrō*. So *ābōrior*, *āmōvēō*, *circūmēō*, *cōmēdō*, *ēnītor*, *prōdūcō*, *sūbōrno*.

2. The change of a vowel or a diphthong in forming the compound does not alter its quantity; as,

*concīdo*, from *cādo*; *concīdo*, from *cædo*; *ērīgo*, from *rēgo*; *reclūdo*, from *claudo*; *īnīquus*, from *æquus*.

Exc. 1. A long syllable in the simple word becomes short in the following compounds:—*agnītus* and *cognītus*, from *nōtus*; *dējēro* and *pējēro*, from *jūro*, *hōdie*, from *hōc die*: *nihīlum* and *nihīl*, from *hīlum*; *causidīcus*, and other compounds ending in *dīcus*, from *dīco*.

Exc. 2. *Imbēcillus*, from *bācillum*, has the second syllable long. The participle *ambītus* has the penult long from *ītum*, but the nouns *ambītus* and *ambītio* follow the rule.

Exc. 3. *Innūba*, *prōnūba*, and *subnūba*, from *nūbo*, have *u* short; but in *con-nubium*, it is common.

Exc. 4. *O* final, in the compounds of *do* and *sto*, is common, though long in the simple verbs. § 294, (a.)

NOTE 1. Prepositions of one syllable, which end in a vowel, are long (§ 294, (a.)); those which end in a single consonant are short (§ 299, 1.)—*Trā* from *trans* is long; as, *trādo*, *trādūco*.

Exc. 5. *Pro*, in the following compounds, is short:—*prōfānus*, *prōfāri*, *prōfecto*, *prōfestus*, *prōficiscor*, *prōfiteor*, *prōfūgio*, *prōfūgus*, *prōcella*, *prōfundus*, *prōnepos*, *prōneptis*, and *prōtervus*. It is common in *prōcūro*, *prōfundo*, *propāgo*, *propello*, and *propīno*.—Respecting *præ* in composition before a vowel see § 233, II. Exc. 1.

REM. 1. The Greek preposition *pro* (before) is short; as, *prōphēta*. In *prōfīgus*, *prōpōla*, and *propīno*, it is common.

REM. 2. The inseparable prepositions *di* (for *dīs*) and *se* are long as,

*didūco*, *sēpāro*. Respecting *disertus*, see § 284, Exc. 5, 2, N. 1.



REM. 3. (a) The inseparable preposition *re* or *red* is short; as, *rēmitto*, *rēfēro*, *rēdāmo*.

(b.) *Re* is sometimes lengthened in *religio*, *reliquiæ*, *reliquus*, *repērit*, *reūlit*, *repūlit*, *recūlit*, *redācere*, where some editors double the consonant following *re*. Cf. § 307, 2. In the impersonal verb *rēfert*, *re* is long, as coming from *res*.

REM. 4. *A* ending the former part of a compound word, is long; the other vowels are short; as,

*māto*, *quāpropter*, *trādo*, (*trans do*); *nēfas*, *valēdico*, *hujuscēmōdi*; *biceps*, *tridens*, *omnipotens*, *significo*; *hōdie*, *quandōquidem*, *philosophus*; *dūcenti*, *locuples*, *Trōjāgenā*; *Polydorus*, *Eurypylus*, *Thrāsībūlus*.

Exc. 1. **A.** *A* is short in *quāsi*, *eādem*, when not an ablative, and in some Greek compounds; as, *cōtūpulta*, *hexamēter*.

Exc. 2. **E.** *E* is long in *crēdo*, *nēmo*, *nēquam*, *nēquāquam*, *nēquidquam*, *nēquis*, *nēquitiā*; *mēmet*, *mēcum*, *tēcum*, *sēcum*, *sēse*, *rēcors*, *rēsānus*, *rēnificus*, and *videlicet*;—also in words compounded with *se* for *sex* or *sēni*; as, *sēdecim*, *sēmestris*, *sēmōdius*; but in *selibra* it is found short in Martial.

NOTE 2. (a.) The first *e* in *videlicet*, as in *vide*, is sometimes made short. See § 295, Exc. 3.

(b.) *E* is common in some verbs compounded with *fācio*; as, *liquefācio*, *pātefācio*, *rārefācio*, *tābefācio*, *tēpefācio*.

Exc. 3. **I.** (1.) *I* is long in those compounds in which the first part is declined, (§ 296;) as, *quīdam*, *quīvis*, *quilibet*, *quantivis*, *quanticumque*, *tantidem*, *unicūque*, *eīdem*, *reipublicæ*, *utrique*.

(2.) *I* is also long in those compounds which may be separated without altering the sense, (§ 296;) as, *lūdimāgister*, *siquis*, *agricultūra*.

(3.) *I*, ending the former part of a compound word, is sometimes made long by contraction; as, *tibicen* for *tibūcen*, from *tibia* and *cāno*. See § 283, III.

(4.) *I* is long in *bīgæ*, *quadrīgæ*, *īlicet*, *scīlicet*.

(5.) In *idem*, when masculine, *i* is long; but when neuter, it is short. The *i* of *ūbique* and *utrōbique*, the second in *ībidem*, and the first in *nīmīrum*, are long. In *ūbicumque*, as in *ūbi*, *i* is common.

(6.) Compounds of *dies* have the final *i* of the former part long; as, *bīdium*, *trīdium*, *mēridies*, *quōtidie*, *quōtidiānus*, *prīdie*, *postrīdie*.

NOTE 3. In Greek words, *i*, ending the former part of a compound, is short; as, *Callimāchus*; unless it comes from the diphthong *ei* (ει), or is made long or common by position.

Exc. 4. **O.** (1.) In compounds, the final *o* of *contro*, *intro*, *retro*, and *quando*, except *quandōquidem*, is long; as, *contrōversia*, *intrōdūco*, *retrōcēdo*, *quandōque*. *O* is long also in *aliōqui* (ἄλλω), and *utrōque*.

(2.) *O* is long in the compounds of *quō* and *eo*; as, *quōmōdo*, *quōcumque*, *quōnam*, *quōlibet*, *quōminus*, *quōcirca*, *quōvis*, *quōque* (i. e. *et quo*); *eōdem*, *eōne*; but in the conjunction *quōque*, it is short.

(3.) Greek words which are written with an *omēga* (ω) have the *o* long; as, *gōmetra*, *Minōtaurus*, *līgōpus*.

Exc. 5. **U.** *U* is long in *Jūpiter* (*Jōvis pāter*), and *jūdico* (*jūs fīco*).

### III. INCREMENT OF NOUNS.

§ 286. 1. A noun is said to *increase*, when, in any of its cases, it has more syllables than in the nominative singular; as, *pax*, *pācis*, *sermo*, *sermōnis*. The number of *increments* in any case of a noun is equal to that of its additional syllables.

2. Nouns in general have but one increment in the singular, but *īter*, *sūpellex*, compounds of *cāput* ending in *ps*, and sometimes *jēcū* have two increments; as,

*īter*, *i-tīn-ē-ris*; *sūpellex*, *sū-pel-lec-tī-lis*; *anceps*, *an-cīp-i-tis*; *jēcū*, *jē-cīn-ī-ris*.

REMARK. The double increase of *īter*, etc., in the singular number arises from their coming from obsolete nominatives, containing a syllable more than those now in use; as, *īlīner*, etc.

3. The dative and ablative plural of the third declension have one increment more than the genitive singular; as,

<i>rex</i> ,	Gen. <i>rē-gis</i> ,	D. and Ab. <i>rēg-ī-bus</i> .
<i>sermo</i> ,	— <i>ser-mō-nis</i> ,	— <i>ser-mōn-ī-bus</i> .
<i>īter</i> ,	— <i>i-tīn-ē-ris</i> ,	— <i>it-i-nēr-i-bus</i> .

4. The last syllable of a word is never considered as the increment. If a word has but one increment, it is the penult; if two, the antepenult is called the first, and the penult the second; and if three, the syllable before the antepenult is called the first, the antepenult the second, and the penult the third increment; as,

1                      1 2                      1 2                      1 2 3  
*ser-mo*, *ser-mō-nis*, *ser-mōn-ī-bus*; *i-ter*, *i-tīn-ē-ris*, *it-i-nēr-i-bus*.

5. In the third declension, the quantity of the first increment is the same in all the other cases as in the genitive singular; as,

*sermōnis*, *sermōni*, *sermōnem*, *sermōne*, *sermōnes*, *sermōnum*, *sermōnibus*. *Bōbus*, or *būbus*, from *bos*, *bōvis*, is lengthened by contraction from *bōvibus*.

NOTE. As adjectives and participles are declined like nouns, the same rules of increment apply to all of them; and so also to pronouns.

## INCREMENTS OF THE SINGULAR NUMBER.

### OF THE FIRST, FOURTH, AND FIFTH DECLENSIONS.

§ 287. 1. When nouns of the first, fourth, and fifth declensions increase in the singular number, the increment consists of a vowel before the final vowel, and its quantity is determined by the first general rule with its exceptions, § 283, I.

Thus, *aura*, gen. *aurāi*, § 283, I. Exc. 3, (a.): *fructus*, dat. *fructūi*, § 283, I. (a.): *dies*, gen. *diēi*, § 283, I. Exc. 2, (a.)

### INCREMENTS OF THE SECOND DECLENSION.

2. The increments of the second declension in the singular number are short; as,

*gēner*, *gēnērī*; *sātur*, *sātūrī*; *tēnēr*, *tēnērī*; *vīr*, *vīrī*. Thus,

Ne, *puērī*, ne tanta ānīmīs assuescīte bella. Virg. A. 6, 833.

Monstra sinunt; *gēnēros* externis affōre ab ōris. Id. A. 7, 270.

Exc. The increment of *Iber* and *Celtiber* is long. For that of genitives in *us* see § 283, I. Exc. 4.

INCREMENTS OF THE THIRD DECLENSION.

3. The increments of the third declension and singular number in *a* and *o* are long; those in *e*, *i*, *u*, and *y*, are short; as,

*ānimal*, *ānīmālis*; *audax*, *audācis*; *sermo*, *sermōnis*; *fērox*, *fērōcis*; *ōpus*, *ōpēris*; *cēler*, *cēlēris*; *miles*, *militis*; *supplex*, *supplicis*; *murmur*, *murmūris*, *dux*, *dūcis*; *chlāmys*, *chlāmēdis*; *Styx*, *Stygis*. Thus,

*Prōnāque cum spectent ānīmālia cētēra terram. Ovid. M. 1, 84.*

*Hæc tum multiplici pōpūlos sermōne replēbat. Virg. A. 4, 189*

*Incumbent gēnēris lapsi sarcire ruīnas. Id. G. 4, 249.*

*Qualem virgīneo dēmēssum pollice flōrem. Id. A. 11, 68.*

*Adspice, ventōsi cēciderunt murmuris auræ. Id. E. 9, 58.*

*Exceptions in Increments in A.*

1. (a.) Masculines in *al* and *ar* (except *Car* and *Nar*) increase short; as, *Annibal*, *Annibālis*; *Amilcar*, *Amilcāris*.

(b.) *Par* and its compounds, and the following—*ānas*, *mas*, *vas* (*vādīs*), *baccar*, *hēpar*, *jūbar*, *lar*, *nectar*, and *sal*—also increase short.

2. *A*, in the increment of nouns in *s* with a consonant before it, is short; as, *daps*, *dūpis*; *Arabs*, *Arābis*.

3. Greek nouns in *a* and *as* (*ādis*, *ānis*, or *ātis*) increase short; as, *lampas*, *lampādīs*; *Mēlas*, *Mēlānis*, *poēma*, *poēmātis*.

4. The following in *ax* increase short:—*ābax*, *anthrax*, *Arctōphylax*, *Atax*, *Atrax*, *climax*, *cōlax*, *cōrax*, and *nycticōrax*, *drōpax*, *fax*, *harpax*, *pānax*, *smilax*, and *stīrax*.—The increment of *Sīphax* is doubtful.

*Exceptions in Increments in O.*

1. *O*, in the increment of neuter nouns, is short; as, *marmor*, *marmōris*; *corpus*, *corpōris*; *ēbur*, *ēbōris*. But *os* (the mouth), and the neuter of comparatives, like their masculine and feminine, increase long. The increment of *ādor* is common.

2. *O* is short in the increment of Greek nouns in *o* or *on*, which, in the oblique cases, have *omicron*, but long in those which have *omega*; as,

*Aēdon*, *Aēdōnis*; *Agāmēmnōn*, *Agāmēmnōnis*:—*Plāto*, *Plūtōnis*; *Sīnon*, *Sīnōnis*; *Sīcyon*, *Sīcyōnis*. *Sidon*, *Orion*, and *Ægeon*, have the increment common.

3. (a.) In the increment of gentile nouns in *o* or *on*, whether Greek or barbaric, *o* is generally short; as,

*Mīcēda*, *Mīcēdōnis*. So, *Amazōnes*, *Aōnes*, *Myrmidōnes*, *Santōnes*, *Saxōnes*, *Sēnōnes*, *Teutōnes*, etc.

(b.) But the following have *o* long:—*Eburōnes*, *Lacōnes*, *Iōnes*, *Nasamōnes*, *Suessōnes* (or *-iōnes*), *Vettōnes*, *Burgundiōnes*. *Britōnes* has the *o* common.

4. Greek nouns in *or* increase short; as, *Hector*, *Hectōris*; *rhētor*, *rhētōris*; *Agēnor*, *Agēnōris*.

5. Compounds of *pus*, (*πῶς*), as *tripus*, *pōlypus*, *Ædipus*, and also *arbor mēmor*, *bos*, *compos*, *impos*, and *lēpus*, increase short.

6. *O*, in the increment of nouns in *s* with a consonant before it, is short; as,



*scrobs*, *scrōbis*; *īnops*, *īnōpis*; *Dōlōpes*. But it is long in the increment of *tercops*, *Cyclops*, and *hydrops*.

7. The increment of *Allobrox*, *Cappadox*, and *præcox*, is also short.

### *Exceptions in Increments in E.*

1. Nouns in *en*, *enis* (except *Hymen*), lengthen their increment as, *Siren*, *Sirēnis*. So, *Anienis*, *Nerīenis*, from *Anio* and *Nerio*, or rather from the obsolete *Anien* and *Nerīenes*.

2. *Herres*, *lōcuples*, *mansues*, *merces*, and *quies*—also *Iber*, *ver*, *lex*, *rex*, *ālec* or *ālex* (*hāl-*) *warthex* and *verrex*—*plebs* and *seps*—increase long.

3. Greek nouns in *es* and *er* (except *aēr* and *æther*) increase long; as, *magnes*, *magnētis*; *crāter*, *crātēris*.

### *Exceptions in Increments in I.*

1. Nouns and adjectives in *ix*, increase long; as, *victrix*, *victrīcis* *fēlix*, *fēlicis*.

Exc. *Cūlix*, *Cīlix*, *coxendix*, *fīlix*, *fornix*, *hystrix*, *lārix*, *nix*, *pīx*, *sālix*, *strīx* and rarely *sandix* or *sandyx*, increase short.

2. *Vibex* and the following nouns in *is* increase long:—*dis*, *glis*, *lis*, *vis*, *Nēsis*, *Quīris*, and *Samnis*. The increment of *Psōphis* is common.

3. Greek nouns, whose genitive is in *inis* increase long; as, *delphin*, *delphīnis*; *Sālāmis*, *Sālāmīnis*.

### *Exceptions in Increments in U.*

1. Genitives in *udis*, *uris*, and *utis*, from nominatives in *us*, have the penult long; as,

*pālus*, *pīlūdis*; *tellus*, *tellūris*; *virtus*, *virtūtis*. But *intercus*, *Līgus* and *pēcus* *pēcūdis*, increase short.

2. *Fur*, *frux*, (obs.), *lux*, and *Pollux*, increase long.

### *Exceptions in Increments in Y.*

1. Greek nouns whose genitive is in *ynis*, increase long; as, *Trāchyn*, *Trāchjnis*.

2. The increment of *bombyx*, *Cejx*, *gryps*, and *mormyr*, is long; that of *Rebryx* and *sandyx* is common.

## INCREMENTS OF THE PLURAL NUMBER.

§ 288. 1. A noun in the plural number is said to increase, when, in any case, it has more syllables than in the ablative singular.

REMARK. When the ablative singular is wanting, or its place is supplied by a form derived from a different root, an ablative may, for this purpose, be assumed, by annexing the proper termination to the root of the plural.

2. When a noun increases in the plural number, its penult is called the plural increment; as, *sa* in *mūsārum*, *no* in *dōminōrum*, *vi* in *rūpium* and *ūpibus*.

3. In plural increments, *a*, *e*, and *o*, are long, *i* and *u* are short; as,

*bonārum, animābus, rerum, rebus, gēnērōrum, ambōbus; sermōnibus, lacūbus*  
Thus,

*Appia. longārum, tēritur, rēgīna viārum. Stat. S. 2, 2, 12.*

*Sunt lacrymæ rerum, et mentem mortalia tangunt. Virg. A. 1, 462.*

*Atque alii, quorum cōmædia prisca virōrum est. Hor. S. 1, 4, 2.*

*Periūbus egrēdiōr, ventisque fērentibus ūsus. Ovid.*

#### IV. INCREMENT OF VERBS.

§ 289. 1. A verb is said to increase, when, in any of its parts, it has more syllables than in the second person singular of the present indicative active; as, *das, dā-tis; dōces, dō-cē-mus*.

2. The number of increments in any part of a verb is equal to that of its additional syllables. In verbs, as in nouns, the last syllable is never considered the increment. If a verb has but one increment, it is the penult; and this first increment, through all the variations of the verb, except in reduplicated tenses, continues equally distant from the first syllable. The remaining increments are numbered successively from the first; as,

ā-mas,	mō-nes,	au-dis,
1	1	1
ā-mā-mus,	mō-nē-tur,	au-dī-tis,
1 2	1 2	1 2
ām-ā-bā-mus,	mōn-ē-rē-tur,	au-di-ē-bas,
1 2 3	1 2 3	1 2 3 4
ām-ā-vē-rā-mus.	mōn-ē-bīm-ī-ni.	au-di-ē-bām-ī-ni.

3. A verb in the active voice may have three increments; in the passive, it may have four.

4. In determining the increments of deponent verbs, an active voice, formed from the same root, may be supposed.

Thus the increments of *læ-tā-tur, læt-ā-bā-tur*, etc., are reckoned from the supposed verb *læto, lætas*.

§ 290. In the increments of verbs, *a*, *e*, and *o*, are long; *i* and *u* are short; as,

*āmāre, mōnēre, fācītōte, vōlūmus, rēgēbāmini.* Thus,

*Et cantāre pāres, et respondēre pārātī. Virg. E. 7, 5.*

*Sic equidem dūrēbam animo, rēbarque futūrum. Id. A. 6, 690.*

*Cumque loqui pōtērit, matrem fācītōte sālute. Ovid. M. 9, 378.*

*Scin-tur incertum stūdia in contraria vulgus. Virg. A. 2, 39.*

*Nos nūmērus sūmus, et frūges consūmere nātī. Hor. Ep. 1, 2, 27.*

#### (a.) Exceptions in Increments in A.

The first increment of *do* is short; as, *dāmus, dābāmus, dāret, dā-ūrus, circumdāre, circumdācāmus*.

(b.) *Exceptions in Increments in E.*

1. *E* before *r* is short in the *first* increment of all the present and imperfect tenses of the third conjugation, and in the *second* increment in *bēris* and *bēre*; as,

*rēgēre* (infin. and imperat.), *rēgēris* or *rēgēre* (pres. ind. pass.), *rēgērem* and *rēgērer* (imp. subj.); *āmābēris*, *āmābēre*; *mōnēbēris*, *mōnēbēre*.

NOTE 1. In *vēlim*, *vēlis*, etc., from *vōlo*, (second person, regularly *vōlis*, by syncope and contraction *vīs*), *ē* is not an increment, but represents the root vowel *ō*, and is therefore short; § 284, and § 178, 1.

2. *E* is short before *ram*, *rim*, *ro*, and the persons formed from them; as,

*āmāvēram*, *āmāvērat*, *āmāvērīm*, *mōnuērīmus*, *rexēro*, *audīvērītis*.

NOTE 2. In verbs which have been shortened by syncope or otherwise, *e* before *r* retains its original quantity; as, *flēram*, for *flēvēram*.

For the short *e* before *runt*, in the perfect indicative, as, *stētērunt*, see *Systole*, § 307.

(c.) *Exceptions in Increments in I.*

1. *I* before *v* or *s*, in tenses formed from the second root, is long as,

*pētīvi*, *audīvi*, *quæsīvit*, *divisit*, *audīvīmus*, *divīsīmus*, *audīvērām*.

2. *I* is long, after the analogy of the fourth conjugation, in the final syllable of the third root of *gaudeo*, *arcesso*, *divido*, *fācesso*, *lācesso*, *pēto*, *quæro*, *rēcenseo* and *obliviscor*; as,

*gāvisus*, *arcessitus*, *divisus*, *fācessitus*, *lācessitus*, *pētītus*, *quæsītus*, *rēcensitus*, *oblītus*; *gāvisūrus*, etc.

3. *I* in the first increment of the fourth conjugation, except in *īmus* of the perfect indicative, is long; as,

*audire*, *audirem*, *audītus*, *audītūrus*, pres. *vēnīmus*, but in the perfect *vēnīmus*. So in the ancient forms in *ībam*, *ībo*, of the fourth conjugation; as, *nutribat*, *lēnībunt*; and also in *ībam* and *ībo*, from *eo*.

NOTE 3. When a vowel follows, the *i* is short, by § 283; as, *audīunt*, *audīēbam*.

4. *I* is long in the first and second persons plural of subjunctives in *sīm*, *sīs*, *sīt*, (etc., (§ 162, 1.)); as, *sīmus*, *sītis*, *vēlīmus*, *vēlītis*, and their compounds; as, *possīmus*, *adsīmus*, *mālīmus*, *nōlīmus*. So also in *nōlito*, *nōlite*, *nōlītōte*, after the analogy of the fourth conjugation.

5. *I* in *ris*, *rimus* and *ritis*, in the future perfect and perfect subjunctive, is common; as,

*vidēris*, Mart., *occidēris*, Hor.; *vidērītis* (Ovid), *dēdērītis* (Id.); *fēcērīmus* (Catull.), *ēgērīmus* (Virg.)

(d.) *Exceptions in Increments in U.*

*U* is long in the increment of supines, and of participles formed from the third root of the verb; as,

*sēcūtus*, *sōlūtus*, *sēcūtūrus*, *sōlūtūrus*.



# RULES FOR THE QUANTITY OF PENULTIMATE AND ANIEPENULTIMATE SYLLABLES.

## I. PENULTS.

§ 291. 1. Words ending in *acus*, *icus*, and *icum*, shorten the penult; as,

*āmārācus*, *Ægyptiācus*, *rusticus*, *trīticum*, *viāticum*.

Except *Dācus*, *mērācus*, *ōpācus*; *āmicus*, *apricus*, *ficus*, *mendicus*, *picus*, *posticus*, *pūdicus*, *spicus*, *umbilicus*, *vicus*.

2. Words ending in *abrum*, *ubrum*, *acrum*, and *atrum*, lengthen the penult; as,

*candēkūbrum*, *dēlūbrum*, *lāvācrum*, *vērātrum*.

3. Nouns in *ca* lengthen the penult; as,

*āpōthēca*, *cloāca*, *lactūca*, *lōrica*, *phōca*.

Except *ālīca*, *brassica*, *dīca*, *fūlica*, *mantīca*, *pēdīca*, *pertīca*, *scūtīca*, *phālārīca*, *tūnica*, *rōmica*; and also some nouns in *ica* derived from adjectives in *icus*; as, *fabrīca*, *grammātica*, etc. So *mānicā*.

4. Patronymics in *ades* and *ides* shorten the penult; as, *Atlantiūdes*, *Priāmīdes*.

Except those in *ides* which are formed from nouns in *eus* or *ēs* (ης); as, *Atrīdes*, from *Atrēus*; *Neoclīdes*, from *Neoclēs*; except, also, *Amphiārāides*, *Bēlīdes*, *Amūclīdes*, *Lycurgūdes*.

5. Patronymics and similar words in *ais*, *eis*, and *ois*, lengthen the penult; as,

*Achūis*, *Chrýsēis*, *Minōis*. Except *Phōcāis* and *Thēbāis*. The penult of *Nēreis* is common.

6. Words in *do* lengthen the penult; as,

*vādo*, *cēdo*, *dulcēdo*, *formīdo*, *rōdo*, *testūdo*. Except *cādo*, *divīdo*, *ēdo* (to eat), *comēdo*, *Macēdo*, *mōdo*, *sōlido*, *spūdo*, *trēpido*. *Rudo* is common.

7. Words in *idus* shorten the penult; those in *ulus* lengthen it; as,

*callīdus*, *herbīdus*, *limpīdus*, *livīdus*, *perfīdus*; *crūdus*, *lūdus*, *nūdus*, *sūdus*, *ūdus*. Except *Idus*, *fīdus*, *infīdus*, *nīdus*, *sīdus*.

8. Nouns in *ga* and *go* lengthen the penult; as,

*sāga*, *collēga*, *aurīga*, *rūga*; *imāgo*, *cālīgo*, *ærūgo*. Except *cālīga*, *ossifrāga*, *stōga*, *plūga*, (a region, or a net), *fūga* and its compounds, *stēga*, *ecclōga*, *ēgo*, *harpāgo*, *līgo*.

9. Words in *le*, *les*, and *lis*, lengthen the penult; as,

*crīnīle*, *riantōle*, *ancile*; *āles*, *mīles*, *prōles*; *annālis*, *crūdīlis*, *cīvilis*, *cūrīlis*.—Except *māle*;—verbals in *ilis* and *bilis*; as, *āgilis*, *āmābilis*;—adjectives in *atilis*; as, *umbrātilis*;—and also, *indōles*, *sōlōles*; *pēriscēlis*, *dapsīlis*, *grācīlis*, *hēvilis*, *pārīlis*, *simīlis*, *stērīlis*, *mūgilis*, *strīgilis*.

10. Words in *elus*, *ela*, *elum*, lengthen the penult; as,

*phāsēlus*, *quērēla*, *prēlum*. Except *gēlus*, *gēlum*, *scēlus*.

11. Diminutives in *olus*, *ola*, *olum*, *ulus*, *ula*, *ulum*, also words in

*ilus*, and those in *ulus*, *ula*, and *ulum*, of more than two syllables shorten the penult; as,

*urccōlus*, *fioliōla*, *lectūlus*, *rātiuncūla*, *corcūlum*, *pābūlum*; *rūtīlus* *garrūlus*, *fābūla*. Except *āsīlus*.

12. Words in *ma* lengthen the penult; as,

*fāma*, *poēma*, *rīma*, *plūma*. Except *ānīma*, *cōma*, *dēcūma*, *lacrīma*, *victīma*, *hāma*.

13. A vowel before final *men* or *mentum* is long; as,

*lērāmen*, *grāmen*, *crīmen*, *flūmen*, *jūmentum*, *ātrāmentum*. Except *tūmen*, *cōlūmen*, *Iljūmen*, *ēlémentum*, and a few verbal nouns derived from verbs of the second and third conjugations; as, *ālimentum*, *dōcūmen* or *dōcūmentum*, *ēmālimentum*, *mōuūmentum*, *rēgimen*, *spēcimen*, *tēgimen*, etc.

14. Words ending in *imus* shorten the penult; as,

*ānīmus*, *dēcīmus*, *fīnītīmus*, *fortīssīmus*, *maxīmus*. Except *bīmus*, *līmus*, *mīmus*, *ōpīmus*, *quādīmus*, *sīmus*, *trīmus*, and two superlatives, *īmus* and *prīmus*.

NOTE. When an adjective ends in *umus* for *imus*, the quantity remains the same; as, *dēcūmus*, *optūmus*, *maxūmus*, for *dēcīmus*, etc.

15. *A*, *e*, *o*, and *u*, before final *mus* and *mum*, are long; as,

*rāmus*, *rēmus*, *extrēmus*, *prōmus*, *dūmus*, *pōmum*, *vōlēnum*. Except *ātōmus*, *balsāmum*, *cinnāmum*, *dōmus*, *glōmus*, *hūmus*, *postūmus*, *thālānus*, *tōmus*, *cālānus*, *nēmum*.

16. (a.) Words in *na*, *ne*, *nī*, and *nīs*, lengthen the penult; as,

*lāna*, *ārēna*, *cārīna*, *mātrōna*, *lūna*, *māne*, *septēni*, *octōni*, *inānis*, *fīnis*, *immūnis*. Except *advēna*, *cottāna*, *ptisāna*, *mīna*, *gēna*, *bēne*, *sīne*, *cānis*, *cīnis*, *jūrēnis*; and the following in *ina*,—*buccīna*, *dōmīna*, *fiscīna*, *fēmīna*, *fuscīna*, *lāmīna*, *māchīna*, *pāgīna*, *pātīna*, *sarcīna*, *tibicīna*, *trūlīna*: and in plur. *āpīnæ*, *mīnæ*, *nundīnæ*. So compounds of *gēno*; as, *indīgēna*.

(b.) Verbs in *ino* and *inor* shorten the penult; as,

*destīno*, *fascīno*, *inquīno*, *sīno*, *crīmīnor*. Except *festīno*, *propīno*, *sāgīno*, *ōpīnor*, and the compounds of *clīno*; as, *inclīno*, etc.

17. (a.) Adjectives in *inus*, when they express time, or indicate a material or an inanimate substance, shorten the penult; as,

*crastīnus*, *diūtīnus*, *pristīnus*, *pērendīnus*: *fāgīnus*, *crōcīnus*, *hyācīnthīnus*, *ādāmantīnus*, *crystallīnus*, *oleāgīnus*, *bombjēcīnus*. Except *mātūtīnus*, *rēpentīnus*, *vespertīnus*.

(b.) Other adjectives and words in *inus* and in *inum* lengthen the penult; as,

*canīnus*, *bīnus*, *pēregrīnus*, *mārīnus*, *clandestīnus*, *sūpīnus*: *līnum*. Except *ācīnus*, *āsīnus*, *coccīnus*, *cōmīnus*, *ēmīnus*, *cōphīnus*, *dōmīnus*, *fācīnus*, *fātīcīnus*, *prōtīnus*, *sīnus*, *terminus*, *gēmīnus*, *circīnus*, *mīnus*, *rātīcīnus*, *succīnum*, *fuscīnum*.

18. *A*, *e*, *o*, and *u*, before final *nus* and *num*, are long; as,

*urbīnus*, *sērēnus*, *patrōnus*, *prōnus*, *mānus*, *tribūnus*, *fānum*, *vērēnum*, *dōnum*. Except *ānus*, an old woman, *galbānus*, *mānus*, *ōceānus*, *plūtānus*, *ēbēnus*, *gēnus*, *līmīgēnus*, *pēnus*, *tēnus*, *Vēnus*, *ōnus*, *bōnus*, *sōnus*, *thrōnus*; *lāgānum*, *peucedānum*, *pōpīnum*, *tympīnum*, *abrōtōnum*.

19. Words ending in *ba*, *bo*, *pa*, and *po*, shorten the penult; as,

*fāba*, *jūba*, *syllāba*; *bībo*, *cūbo*, *prōbo*; *ālāpa*, *lūpa*, *scāpha*; *crēpo*, *partīcīpa*. Except *glēba*, *scriba*, *būbo*, *glūbo*, *lībo*, *nūbo*, *scribo*, *sīpho*, *cēpa*, *cūpa*, *pāpa*, *pūpa*, *īpa*, *scōpa*, *stūpa*; *cāpo*, *rēpo*, *stīpo*.

20. Words in *al*, *ar*, *are*, and *aris*, lengthen the penult; as,

*tribūnal*, *rectigal*: *lupānar*, *pulvīnar*; *altāre*, *liqueāre*; *nāris*. Except *ānimal*, *āpītal*, *cūbital*, *tōrāl*, *jūbar*, *sālar*, *māre*, *bināris*, *hilāris*, *canthāris*, *cappāris*, *leāris*.

21. Before final *ro* or *ror*, *a* and *e* are short; *i*, *o*, and *u*, are long as,

*āro*, *pāro*, *fēro*, *gēro*, *sēro*, *cēlēro*, *tempēro*, *quēror*; *mīror*, *spīro*, *tīro*; *auctōro*, *ignēro*, *ōro*; *cūro*, *dūro*, *figūro*; *lūror*. Except *dēclāro*, *pēro*, *spēro*; *fōro*, *mōror*, *sōror*, *vōro*, *fūro*, *sātūro*; and derivatives from genitives increasing short as *augūror*, *dēcōro*, *mēmōro*, *murmūro*, etc.; from *augur*, *augūris*; *dēcus*, *dēcūris*, etc.

22. Before final *rus*, *ra*, *rum*, *e* is short; the other vowels are long; as,

*mērum*, *mērus*, *hēdēra*, *sērum*, *cētērum*; *cārus*, *mīrus*, *mōrus*, *mūrus*, *gūrus*, *āra*, *spīra*, *ōra*, *nātūra*, *lōrum*.

Except, 1. *austērus*, *gālērus*, *plērus*, *prōcērus*, *sincērus*, *sērus*, *sēvērus*, *vērus*, *crātēra*, *cēra*, *pēra*, *panthēra*, *stātēra*.

Exc. 2. *barbārus*, *cammarus*, *cāmūrus*, *canthārus*, *chōrus*, *fōrus*, *hellēbōrus*, *nārus*, *ōpīpārus*, *ōvīpārus*, *phosphōrus*, *pīrus*, *sātīrus*, *scārus*, *spārus*, *tartārus*, *tōrus*, *zēphīrus*; *amphōra*, *ancōra*, *cithāra*, *hāra*, *lūra*, *mōra*, *purpūra*, *philūra*, *pūra*, *sātīra*; *fōrum*, *gārum*, *pārum*, *suppārum*.

23. Adjectives in *osus* lengthen the penult; as,

*fūmōsus*, *vinōsus*.

24. Nouns in *etas* and *itas* shorten the penult; as,

*piētas*, *cīvitas*, *bōnitas*.

25. Adverbs in *tim* lengthen the penult, those in *iter* and *itus* shorten it; as,

*stātīm*, (constantly), *virītīm*, *tribūtīm*; *acriter*, *funditus*. Except *stātīm*, (immediately), *affātīm*.

26. (a.) Words in *ates*, *itis*, *otis*, and in *ata*, *eta*, *ota*, *uta*, lengthen the penult, as,

*vātes*, *pēnātes*, *vītis*, *mītis*, *cāryōtis*, *leāriōtis*, *pīrāta*, *mēta*, *poēta*, *ālūta*, *cīcūta*. Except *sūtis*, *pōtis*, *drāpēta*, *nōta*, *rōta*.

(b.) Nouns in *ita* shorten the penult; as,

*āmīta*, *nāvīta*, *orbīta*, *sēmīta*. Except *pītuīta*.

27. Nouns in *atum*, *itum*, *utum*, lengthen the penult; as,

*lūpātum*, *ācēnītum*, *vērūtum*. Except *dēfrūtum*, *pulpītum*, *pētōrītum*, *lūtum* (loud), *compītum*.

28. Nouns and adjectives ending in *tus* lengthen the penult; as,

*barbātus*, *grātus*, *bōlētus*, *fūcētus*, *crīmītus*, *pērītus*, *agrōtus*, *tōtus*, *argūtus*, *hīr sūtus*. Except *cātus*, *lātus*, (-ēris), *impētus*, *mētus*, *vēgētus*, *vētus*; *anhēlitus*, *digītus*, *grātītus*, *kālītus*, *hospītus*, *servītus*, *spīrītus*; *antidōtus*, *nōtus*, *quōtus*, *tōtus* (so great); *arbūtus*, *pūtus*; *inclītus*; and derivatives from perfect participles having a short penult; as, *exercītus*, *hābitus*.

29. A penultimate vowel before *v* is long; as,

*cāva*, *ōlīva*, *divēs*, *nāvis*, *cīvis*, *pāpāver*, *pāvo*, *prīvo*, *ōrum*, *prāvus*, *cestīvus*, *fūgītīvus*. Except *āvis*, *brēris*, *grāvis*, *lēvis*, *ōvis*; *cāvo*, *grāvo*, *jūvo*, *lāvo*, *lēvo*, *lēvo*; *avis*, *cāvus*, *fāvus*, *nōvus*, *fāvor*, *pavor*, *nōvem*.



30. Words ending in *dex*, *dix*, *mex*, *nix*, *lex*, *rex*, lengthen the penult; as,

*cōdex*, *jūdex*; *lōdix*, *rādex*; *cīmex*, *pūmex*; *jūnix*; *īlex*; *cārex*, *mūrex*.  
Except *cūlex*, *sīlex*, *rūmex*.

## II. ANTEPENULTS

§ 292. 1. *I* is short in diminutives in *icūlus* and *icellus* (*a*, *um*), whether nouns or adjectives; as,

*collicūlus*, *dulcicūlus*, *craticūla*, *pellicūla*, *mollicellus*. Except words in which the preceding vowel is short; as, *cūticūla*, *cānicūla*: or in which *i* is long in the primitive; as, *cornicūla*, from *cornix*, *-icis*.

2. Numerals in *ginti*, *ginta*, *ēni*, and *esimus*, lengthen the antepenult; as,

*vīginti*, *quādrāginta*, *trīcēni*, *quāquāgēsīmus*.

3. *O* and *u* before final *lentus* are short; as,  
*vīnōlentus*, *fraudūlentus*, *pulvērūlentus*, *trūcūlentus*.

4. A vowel before final *nea*, *neo*, *nia*, *nio*, *nus*, *nium*, is long; as,  
*ārānea*, *līnea*, *cāneo*, *mūnia*, *pūnio*, *Fārōnius*, *patrimōnium*. Except *castānea*, *stīnea*, *māneo*, *mīneo*, *mōneo*, *sēneo*, *tēneo*, *ignōminia*, *luscīnia*, *vēnia*, *lūnio*, *vēnic*, *ingēnium*, *gēnius*, *sēnio*, *sēnium*; words in *cinium*, as, *lēnōcinium*; and derivatives in *onius*, when *o* in the root of the primitive is short; as, *Agāmēmnōnius* from *Agāmēmnōn*, *-ōnis*.

5. Words ending in *areo*, *arius*, *arium*, *erium*, *orius*, *orium*, lengthen the antepenult; as,

*āreo*, *cibārius*, *plantārium*, *dictērium*, *censōrius*, *tentōrium*. Except *cāreo*, *vārius*, *dēsīdērium*, *impērium*, *māgīstērium*, *ministērium*.

6. Adjectives in *ālicus*, *atilis*, lengthen the antepenult; as,  
*āquāticus*, *plumātilis*. Except some Greek words in *āticus*; as, *grammāticus*

7. *I* before final *tūdo* is short; as,  
*altitūdo*, *longitūdo*.

8. Verbals in *bilis* lengthen *a* but shorten *i* in the antepenult; as,  
*āmābilis*, *mīrābilis*; *crēdibilis*, *terrībilis*. In *hābilis*, *b* belongs to the root.

9. *U* before *v* is short, (except in *Jūverna*); as,  
*jūvēmīs*, *jūvēnālis*, *jūvēnīlitas*, *flūvīus*, *dilūvium*.

## III. PENULT OF PROPER NAMES.

§ 293. 1. Patrials and proper names of more than two syllables, found in the poets with the following terminations, shorten the penult:—

ba,	de,	o, <sup>6</sup>	ges,	dus, <sup>13</sup>	ena, <sup>19</sup>	arus,	atus, <sup>22</sup>
ca, <sup>1</sup>	le, <sup>4</sup>	on, <sup>7</sup>	les,	eus, <sup>14</sup>	anes,	erus, <sup>21</sup>	itus, <sup>23</sup>
la, <sup>2</sup>	pe, <sup>5</sup>	os, <sup>8</sup>	lis, <sup>10</sup>	gus, <sup>15</sup>	enes,	yus,	otus, <sup>24</sup>
be,	re,	er, <sup>9</sup>	bus,	lus, <sup>16</sup>	aris,	asus,	
ce, <sup>3</sup>	al,	mas,	cus, <sup>11</sup>	mus, <sup>17</sup>	yris,	osus,	
che,	il,	ras,	chus, <sup>12</sup>	phus, <sup>18</sup>	asis, <sup>20</sup>	usus.	

*Exceptions.*

<sup>1</sup>Mārica, Nāsica.—<sup>2</sup>Erīphyla, Messāla, Philōmēla, Suādēla.—<sup>3</sup>Bērēnice.—<sup>4</sup>Erīphyle, Neōbūle, Pērīmēle.—<sup>5</sup>Eurōpe, Sīnōpe.—<sup>6</sup>Carthāgo, Cūpāvo, Cūpīdo, Orīgo, Theāno.—<sup>7</sup>Alēmōn, Anthēdon, Chalcēdon, Iāson, Philēmōn, Pōlypēmōn, Sarpēdon, Thermōdon.—<sup>8</sup>Cercyros, Pēpārēthos, Pharsālos, Sērīphos.—<sup>9</sup>Mēleāger.—<sup>10</sup>Bessālis, Eumēlis, Jūvēnālis, Martiālis, Phāsēlis, Stymphālis.—<sup>11</sup>Bēnācus, Caicus, Grānicus, Nūmicus, Trivicus.—<sup>12</sup>Ophiūchus.—<sup>13</sup>Abūdyus.—<sup>14</sup>Cāphāreus, Enīpeus, Prōmēthens, Phōrōneus, Salmōneus, Oīleus.—<sup>15</sup>Cēthēgnis.—<sup>16</sup>*Names in -chus, in -olus (except Æōlus, Naubōlus), in -bulus, (except Bibūlus) Eunēlus, Gētūlus, Iētus, Massylus, Orbēlus, Pharsālus, Sardānāpālus, Stymphālus.*—<sup>17</sup>*Some in -dēmus and -phēmus; as, Acādēmus, Pōlyphōmus.*—<sup>18</sup>Sērīphus.—<sup>19</sup>Alēmōna, Athēnē, Cāmēna, Fīdēna, Messēna, Mūrōna, Mycēnē.—<sup>20</sup>Amāsīs.—<sup>21</sup>Hōmērus, Ibērus.—<sup>22</sup>Arātus, Cērātus, Torquātus.—<sup>23</sup>Hērāclitus, Hermāphrōditus.—<sup>24</sup>Būthrōtus.

2. Proper names of more than two syllables, found in the poets with the following terminations, *lengthen* the penult:—

ana, <sup>1</sup>	sa,	num, <sup>7</sup>	tas,	nus, <sup>12</sup>	urus,	etus, <sup>16</sup>
ina, <sup>2</sup>	ta, <sup>4</sup>	tum,	des, <sup>9</sup>	pus, <sup>13</sup>	esus, <sup>15</sup>	utus,
ona, <sup>3</sup>	tæ, <sup>5</sup>	or, <sup>8</sup>	tes, <sup>10</sup>	irus,	isus,	ytus, <sup>17</sup>
yna,	ene, <sup>6</sup>	nas,	tis, <sup>11</sup>	orus, <sup>14</sup>	ysus,	vus.

*Exceptions.*

<sup>1</sup>Sēquāna.—<sup>2</sup>Mūtina, Prōserpīna, Ruspīna, Sarsīna.—<sup>3</sup>Axōna, Matrōna.—<sup>4</sup>Dalnāta, Prōchŷta, Sarmāta, Lāpitha.—<sup>5</sup>Gālātæ, Jaxāmētæ, Massāgētæ, Mācētæ, Saurōmātæ.—<sup>6</sup>Clŷmēne, Hēlēne, Melpōmēne, Nyctimēne.—<sup>7</sup>Arīmīnum, Drēpanum.—<sup>8</sup>Nūmītor.—<sup>9</sup>Miltiades, Pylades, Sōtades, Thŷcŷdides; *patronymics in -des, (§ 291, 4.) and plurals in -ades.*—<sup>10</sup>Antiphātes, Chārītes, Eurybātes, Ichnōbātes, Energētes, Massāgētes, *and all names in -crates.*—<sup>11</sup>Derētis.—<sup>12</sup>Apīdānus, Apōnus, Cārānus, Chrŷsōgōnus, Cīminus, Clŷmēnus, Concānus, Dardānus, Diādūmēnus, Eārīnus, Eridānus, I ŷcīnus, Hēlēnus, Libānus, Mōrīni, Mŷcōnus, Nebrōphōnus, Olēnus, Pēriclŷmēnus, Rhōdānus, Santōnus, Sēquāni, Stēphānus, Telēgōnus, Terminus, *and names in -gonus and -xerus.*—<sup>13</sup>Clīpūs.—<sup>14</sup>Pācōrus, Bospōrus, *and names in -chorus and -phorus; as, Stēsīchorus, Phosphōrus.*—<sup>15</sup>Ephēsus, Vogēsus, Vōlēsus.—<sup>16</sup>Iāpētus, Tāygētus, Vēnētus.—<sup>17</sup>Ēpŷtus, Anŷtus, Eurŷtus, Hippōlŷtus.

3. The penultimate vowel of the following proper names, and adjectives derived from proper names, though followed by a vowel, is long. See § 283, I. Exc. 6.

Ēnēas, Ēthīon, Achēlōus, Achillēus, Aleyōnēus, Alexandrīa, Alōeus, Alphēus, Amīnēus, Amphīarāus, Amphīgēnia, Amphōn, Amŷthāon, Arīon, Anchūsēus, Atlantēus, Antiōchia, Biōnēus, Cēsārēa, Cālaurēa, Calliōpēa, Cassiōpēa, Cleanthēas, Cŷdōnēus, Cŷmōdōcēa, Cŷthērēa, Dārīus (-ēus), Dēidāmia, Didŷmāon, Diōmēdēus, Dolichāon, Echion, Elēus, Endŷmīōnēus, Enŷo, Eōus, Erēbēus, Erecthēus, Gālātēa, Gigantēus, Hērāclēa (-ēus), Hippōdāmia, Hŷpētōn, Ithŷŷia, Iŷāon, Iōlāus, Iphīgēnia, Ixion, Lāōdāmia, Lātōus, Lesbōus, Lŷcāon, Māclāon, Mausōlēon, Mēdēa, Mēnclāus, Mēthion, Myrtōus, Ophion, Orion, Orŷthŷia, Orphēus, Pallantēus (-us), Pandion, Paphagēa, Pēnēus, Penthēsīlēa, Phōebēus, Poppēa, Prōtēsīlāus, Pyrēnēus, Sardōus, Thālīa.

NOTE. *Eus* in the termination of Greek proper names, is commonly a diphthong; as, *Alceus, Ceneus, Orpheus, Pileus, Persens, Proteus, Theseus, Tydeus*, which are dissyllables; *Briareus, Enipeus, Macareus, Typhoeus*, which are trisyllables, *Idomeneus*, etc. Cf. § 283, Exc. 6, Note 2. But in those which in Greek are written *εὖς* (*eios*), *eus* forms two syllables; as, *Alphēus*. So also in adjectives in *eus*, whether of Greek or Latin origin; as, *Erēbēus, Erecthēus, Orphēus; xurēus, lignēus*.

## QUANTITY OF FINAL SYLLABLES.

## I. VOWELS.

## MONOSYLLABLES.

§ 294. (a.) All monosyllables, except enclitics, ending in a vowel, are long; as,

*ā, ēh, dā, stā, ē, dē, mē, tē, sē, nē, rē, ī, fī, hī, quī, nī, sī, O or ōh, dō, prō, prōh, quō, stō, tū.*

## POLYSYLLABLES.

## A final.

1. A final, in words declined, is short; as, *mūsā, templā, cāpī-tā, Tȳdeā.* Thus,

*Mūsā mīhi causas mēmōrā; quo nūmīne læso.... Virg. A. 1, 8.*

Exc. A final is long in the ablative of the first declension, and in the vocative of Greek nouns in *as* and *es*; as,

*Mūsā, fundā; O Ænēā, O Pallā, O Anchisā.*

2. A final, in words not declined, is long; as, *āmā, frustrā, antēā, ergā, intrā.* Thus,

*Extrā fortūnam est quidquid dōnātur āmicis. Mart. Epig. 5, 42, 7.*

Exc. A final is short in *eiā, itā, quā,* and in *pūtā*, when used adverbially, in the sense of 'for example.' It is sometimes short in the preposition *contra*, and in numerals ending in *ginta*; as, *trīginta*, etc. In *postea*, it is common.

A final is also short in the names of Greek letters; as, *alphā, bētā*, etc., and in *tūrātantārā*, the imitated sound of the trumpet.

## E final.

§ 295. E final, in words of two or more syllables, is short; as, *nātē, patrē, ipsē, currē, rēgērē, nempē, antē.* Thus,

*Incipē, parvē puer, risu cognoscērē mātrem. Virg. E. 4, 60.*

REMARK. The enclitics *-que, -ne, -ve, -ce, -te, -pte*, etc., as they are not used alone, have *e* short, according to the rule; as, *nēquē, hūjuscē, suaptē* Cf. § 294, (a.)

Exc. 1. E final is long in nouns of the first and fifth declensions as,

*Calliōpē, Tȳdīdē, fidē.* So also in the compounds of *rē* and *diē*; as, *quārē, hōdiē, pridē, postridiē, quōtidiē*, and in the ablative *fāmē*, originally of the fifth declension.

Exc. 2. E final is long in Greek vocatives from nouns in *-es*, of the third declension; as, *Achillē, Hippōmēnē*; and in Greek neuters plural; as, *cētē, mēlē pēlāgē, Tempē.*

Exc. 3. In the second conjugation, *e* final is long in the second person singular of the imperative active; as, *dōcē, mōnē*;—but it is sometimes short in *cāve, vāle* and *vīde*.



Exc. 4. *E* final is long in adverbs formed from adjectives of the second declension; as,

*placidē, pulchrē, valdē* for *vālidē, maxīmē*; but it is short in *bēnē mālē, infernē, and supernē*.

Exc. 5. *Fērē, fermē, and ōhē*, have the final *e* long.

### I final.

§ 296. *I* final is long; as, *dōmīnī, fili, classī, dōcērī, sī*. Thus,

*Quid dōmīnī faciēnt, audent cum tālia fūres. Virg. E. 3, 16.*

Exc. 1. (a.) *I* final is common in *mīhi, tibi, sibi, ibi, and ūbi*.

(b.) In *ūbique* and commonly in *ibidem* it is long, but in *ūbivīs* and *ūbinam* it is short.—(c.) In *nīsī, quāsi, and cui*, when a dissyllable, *i* final is common, but usually short. In *ūtīnam* and *ūtique*, and rarely, also, in *ūtī*, it is short.

Exc. 2. *I* final is short in the dative singular of Greek nouns of the third declension, which increase in the genitive; as, *Pallādī, Minōidī, Tēthýī*.

Exc. 3. *I* final is short in the vocative of Greek nouns in *-is*; as, *Alexī, Daphnī, Pārī*. But it is long in vocatives from Greek nouns in *-is, (us) -entos*; as, *Sīmōī, Pýrōī*.

Exc. 4. *I* final is short in Greek datives and ablatives plural in *-si*, or, before a vowel, *-sin*; as, *Dryāsī, hērōist, Trōāstin*.

### O final.

§ 297. *O* final, in words of two or more syllables, is common; as, *virgō, amō, quandō*. Thus,

*Ergō mētu cāpīta Scylla est inīmīca pāterno. Virg. Cir. 336.*

*Ergō sollicitæ tu causa, pēcūnia, vitæ es! Prop. 3, 5, 1.*

Exc. 1. *O* final is long in the dative and ablative singular; as, *dōmīnō, regnō, bonō, suō, illō, eō*.

Exc. 2. *O* final is long in ablatives used as adverbs; as, *certō, falsō, mēritō, vulgō, eō, quō*; and also in *omnīnō*, in *ergō*, 'for the sake of,' and in the interjection *iō*.

REMARK 1. The final *o* of verbs is almost always long in poets of the Augustan age.

REM. 2. In poets subsequent to the Augustan age, final *o* in verbs, in gerunds, and in the adverbs *ādeo, ideo, ergo, sēro, vērō, porro, retro, immo, idcirco, scđito*, and *postrēmo*, is sometimes short.

Exc. 3. *O* final is short in *cito, illūco, prōfecto*, and the compounds of *mōdo*; as, *dummodō, postmodō*, etc.; and in *ēgo* and *hōmo* it is more frequently short than long.

Exc. 4. *O* final in Greek nouns written with an omēga (ω) is long; as, *Chō, Didō, Athō, and Andrōgeō*, (gen.)

### U final.

§ 298. 1. *U* final is long; as, *vultū, cornū, Panthū, dīctū, diū*. Thus,

*Vultū, quo cœlum tempestātesque sērēnat. Virg. A. 1, 255.*

Exc. *Indŭ* and *nĕnŭ*, ancient forms of *in* and *non*, have *u* short. *contentŭ* short in terminations in *ŭs* short, when *s* is removed by elision; as, *U* is also for *contentŭs*. See § 305, 2.

## Y final.

2. *Y* final is short; as, *Mŏlŷ*, *Tĭphŷ*. Thus,

*Mŏlŷ* vŏcant sŭpĕri: nigrā radice tĕnĕtur. *Ovid. M.* 14, 292.

Exc. *Y* in the dative *Tĕthŷ*, being formed by contraction, is long. § 283, III.

## II. CONSONANTS.

### MONOSYLLABLES.

§ 299 1. Monosyllabic *substantives* ending in a consonant are long; all other monosyllables ending in a consonant are short; as,

*sŏl*, *vĭr*, *fŭr*, *jŭs*, *splĕn*, *vĕr*, *fŭr*, *lār*, *Nār*, *pār*, *Sĕr*, *fŭs*, *mās*, *rĕs*, *pĕs*, *Dis*, *glis*, *līs*, *vīs* *flŏs*, *mŏs*, *rŏs*, *Trŏs*, *ŏs*, (*ŏris*), *dŏs*, *grŭs*, *rŭs*, *tŭs*; — *nĕc*, *ĭn*, *ān*, *āb*, *ād*, *quĭd*, *quīs*, *quŏt*, *ĕt*; as,

*Ipse docet quĭd āgam. Fās est ĕt āb hoste dŏcĕri. Ovid. M.* 4, 428.

*Vĕr ādeo frondĭ nĕmŏrum, vĕr ūtile silvis. Virg. G.* 2, 323.

NOTE. The rules for the quantity of final syllables ending in a consonant imply that the consonant is single, and that it is preceded by a single vowel. If otherwise the syllable will be long by § 283, IV. and II.

Exc. 1. *Cŏr*, *fĕl*, *mĕl*, *pŏl*, *vĭr*, *ŏs* (gen. *ossis*), and probably *vas* (*vādis*), are short.

Exc. 2. *En*, *nŏn*, *quĭn*, *sĭn*, *crās*, *plŭs*, *cŭr*, and *pār*, are long: so also are particles and pronouns ending in *c*, except *nĕc*, which is short, and the pronouns *hic* and *hoc*, in the nominative and accusative, which are common.

Exc. 3. Monosyllabic plural cases of pronouns and forms of verbs in *as*, *es*, and *is*, are long; as, *hās*, *quās*, *hŏs*, *nŏs*, *vŏs*, *quŏs*, *hīs*, *quīs*; — *dās*, *flĕs*, *sĭs*, *is*, *fīs*, *sīs*, *vīs*; except *ĕs* from *sum* which is short.

Exc. 4. The abridged imperatives retain the quantity of their root; as, *dĭc*, *dŭc*, from *dīco*, *dūco*; *fāc*, *fĕr*, from *fācio*, *fĕro*.

### POLYSYLLABLES.

## D, L, N, R, T, final.

2 Final syllables ending in *d*, *l*, *n*, *r*, and *t*, are short; as *illŭd*, *consŭl*, *carmĕn*, *pătĕr*, *căpŭt*. Thus,

*Obstŭpuit sĭmŭl ipse, sĭmul percussus Achātes. Virg. A.* 1, 513.

*Nŏmĕn Ariŏnĭum Sicŭlas implĕvĕrāt urbes. Ovid. F.* 2, 93.

*Dum lŏquŏr, horrŏr, hābet; parsque est mĕmĭnisſe dĕlŏris. Id. M.* 9, 291.

Exc. 1. *E* in *liĕn* is long.

Exc. 2. In Greek nouns, nominatives in *n* (except those in *on* written with an *omicron*), masculine or feminine accusatives in *an* or *en*, and genitives plural in *on*, lengthen the final syllable; as,

*Titān*, *Orĭŏn*, *Ānĕān*, *Anchisĕn*, *Calliŏpĕn*; *ĕpĭgrammātŏn*.

Exc 3. *Aēr*, *æthēr*, and nouns in *ēr* which form their genitive in *ēris*, lengthen the final syllable; as,

*cratēr*, *sotēr*. So also *Ibēr*; but the compound *Celtiber* has sometimes in Martial its last syllable short.

REMARK. A final syllable ending in *t*, may be rendered long by a diphthong, by contraction, by syncopation, or by position; as, *aut*, *ābit* for *ābiit*, *fūmāt*, for *fumāvīt*, *āmānt*. See § 283, II. III. IV., and § 162, 7, (d.)

### M final.

NOTE Final *m* with the preceding vowel is almost always cut off, when the next word begins with a vowel. See *Ecthipsis*, § 305, 2.

3. Final syllables ending in *m*, when it is not cut off, are short; as,

*Quam laudas, plūmā? cæto nūm ādest hōnor idem. Hor. S. 2, 2, 23.*

REMARK. Hence in composition the final syllables of *cum* and *circum* are short; as, *cōmēdo*, *circūmāgo*.

### C final.

4. Final syllables ending in *c* are long; as, *ālēc*, *illīc*, *istāc*, *illūc*. Thus,

*Illīc indocto primum se exērcuit arcu. Tib. 2, 1, 69.*

Exc. The final syllable of *dōnēc* is short; as,

*Dōnēc ēris fēlix multos nūmērābis āmīcos. Ovid. Trist. 1 9, 5.*

### AS, ES, and OS, final.

§ 300. Final syllables in *as*, *es*, and *os*, are long; as,

*mūsās*, *piētās*, *āmās*, *Ænēās*, *quiēs*, *sermōnēs*, *diēs*, *Pēnēlōpēs*, *dūcentiēs*, *mōnēs*, *hōnōs*, *vīrōs*, *dōmīnōs*. Thus,

*Hās autem terrās, Itālique hanc lītōris ōram. Virg. A. 3, 396.*

*Sī mōdo dēs illis cultus, sīmīlēsque pārātus. Ovid. M. 6, 454.*

Exc. 1. (a.) AS. *As* is short in *ānās*, in Greek nouns whose genitive ends in *ādis* or *ādos*; as, *Arcās*, *Pallās*; and in Greek accusatives plural of the third declension; as, *hērōās*, *lampādās*.

(b) *As* is short also in Latin nouns in *as*, *ādos*, formed like Greek patronymics; as, *Appiās*.

Exc. 2. ES. (a.) Final *es* is short in nouns and adjectives of the third declension which increase short in the genitive; as, *hospēs*, *līmēs*, *hēbēs*; gen. *hospīlis*, etc.

(b.) But it is long in *ābiēs*, *āriēs*, *pāriēs*, *Cērēs* and *pēs*, with its compounds *xornipēs*, *sōnipēs*, etc.

(c.) *Es*, in the present tense of *sum* and its compounds, and in the preposition *pēnēs*, is short.

(d.) *Es* is short in Greek neuters in *es*; as, *cācoēthēs*, and in Greek nominatives and vocatives plural from nouns of the third declension, which increase in the genitive; as, *Arcādēs*, *Trōēs*, *Amazōnēs*; from *Arcas*, *Arcādīs*, etc.

Exc. 3. OS. (a.) *Os* is short in *compōs*, *impōs*, and *ōs* (*ossis*), with its compound *exōs*



(b.) *Os* is short in Greek nouns and cases written in the original with *omi*-*cron*; as (1) in all neuters; as, *chaōs*, *ēpōs*, *Argōs*; (2) in all nouns of the second declension; as, *Iliōs*, *Tyrōs*, *Dēlōs*; except those whose genitive is in *ō*, (Greek *ω*); as, *Athōs*, gen. *Athō*; (3) in genitives singular of the third declension; as, *Pallādōs*, *Tēthyōs*, from *Pallās* and *Tēthys*.

### IS, US, and YS, final.

#### § 301. Final syllables in *is*, *us*, and *ys*, are short; as,

*turris*, *militis*, *mitis*, *amātis*, *amābis*, *māgis*; *pectus*, *bōnus*, *ējūs*, *amāmūs*, *rursūs* *tēnūs*; *Cāpys*, *Itys*. Thus,

*Non ap̄is inde tulit collectos sēdula flōres.* *Ovid. M. 13, 928.*

*Scriūs aut citius sēdem prōpērāmūs ad ūnam.* *Id. M. 10, 83.*

*At Cāpys, et quōrum mēlior sententia menti.* *Virg. A. 2, 35.*

#### Exc. 1. IS. (a.) *Is* is long in plural cases; as,

*mūsīs*, *nōbīs*; *omnīs*, *urbīs*, (for *omnēs*, *urbēs*); *quīs*, (for *quēīs* or *quībus*). So also in the adverbs *grātīs*, *ingrātīs*, and *fōrīs*, which are in reality datives or ablatives plural.

*Et liquīdi sīmūl ignis; ut hīs exordia prīmīs.* *Virg. A. 6, 33.*

*Quīs ante ōra patrum Trōjæ sub mōenībus altis.* *Id. A. 1, 95.*

*Non omnīs arbusta jūvant, hūmīlesque mȳricæ.* *Id. E. 4, 2.*

*Adde tōt ēgrēgias urbīs, ōpērūmq; lābōrem.* *Id. G. 2, 155.*

(b.) *Is* is long in the nominative of nouns whose genitive ends in *itis*, *inis*, or *entis*; as, *Samnīs*, *Sālāmīs*, *Simoīs*.

(c.) *Is* is long in the second person singular of the present indicative active of the fourth conjugation; as,

*audīs*, *nescīs*. So also in the second persons, *fīs*, *īs*, *sis*, *vīs*, *vēlīs*, and their compounds; as, *adsīs*, *possīs*, *quamvīs*, *mālīs*, *nōlīs*, etc. Cf. § 299, 1, Exc. 3.

(d.) *Ris*, in the future perfect and perfect subjunctive, is common; as, *vidērīs*.

Exc. 2. US. (a.) *Us* is long in nouns of the third declension which increase long, and in the genitive singular, and the nominative, accusative, and vocative plural of the fourth declension, (§ 89, Rem., and § 283, III.); as,

*tellūs*, *virtūs*, *incūs*;—*fructūs*. But *pālūs*, with the *us* short, occurs in Horace, Art. Poet. 65.

(b.) *Us* is long in Greek nouns written in the original with the diphthong *ous* (*ōūs*) whether in the nominative or genitive; as, nom. *Amāthūs*, *Opūs*, (*Ecīpūs*, *trīpūs*, *Panthūs*; gen. *Didūs*, *Sapphūs*. But compounds of *pus* (*πους*), when of the second declension, have *us* short; as, *pōlȳpūs*.

NOTE. The last syllable of every verse, (except the anapæstic and the Ionic *a minōre*), may be either long or short at the option of the poet.

REMARK. By this is meant, that, although the measure require a long syllable, a short one may be used in its stead; and a long syllable may be used where a short one is required; as in the following verses, where the short syllable *ma* stands instead of a long one, and the long syllable *cu* instead of a short one:—

*Sanguīneāque mānu crēpītantia concūtīt armā.* *Ovid. M. 1, 148.*

*Non ēget Mauri jacūlis, nec arcū.* *Hor. Od. 1, 22, 2.*

## VERSIFICATION.

## FEET.

§ 302. A foot is a combination of two or more syllables of a certain quantity.

Feet are either simple or compound. Simple feet consist of two or three syllables; compound feet of four.

## I. SIMPLE FEET.

1. *Of two Syllables.*

*Spondee*,.....two long, — —; as,.....*fūndūnt*  
*Pyrrhic*,.....two short, — —; as,.....*Dēūs*.  
*Trochee*, or *choree*,.....a long and a short, — —; as,.....*ārmā*.  
*Iambus*,.....a short and a long, — —; as,.....*ērānt*.

2. *Of three Syllables.*

*Dactyl*,.....a long and two short, — — —; as,.....*cōrpōrā*.  
*Anapæst*,.....two short and a long, — — —; as,.....*dōmīnī*.  
*Tribrach*,.....three short, — — —; as,.....*fācērē*.  
*Molossus*,.....three long, — — —; as,.....*cōntēdūnt*.  
*Amphibrach*,.....a short, a long, and a short, — — —; as,.....*āmārē*.  
*Amphimācrus*, or *Cretic*, a long, a short, and a long, — — —; as,.....*cāstitās*.  
*Bacchiūs*,.....a short and two long, — — —; as,.....*Cātōnēs*.  
*Antibacchiūs*,.....two long and a short, — — —; as,.....*Rōmānīa*.

## II. COMPOUND FEET.

*Dispondee*,.....a double spondee, — — — —; as,.....*cōnflīxērūt*.  
*Proceleusmatic*,.....a double Pyrrhic, — — — —; as,.....*hōmīnībūs*.  
*Ditrochee*,.....a double trochee, — — — —; as,.....*cōmprōbāvīt*.  
*Diambus*,.....a double iambus, — — — —; as,.....*āmāvērānt*.  
*Greater Ionic*,.....a spondee and a Pyrrhic, — — — —; as,.....*cōrrēxīmūs*.  
*Smaller Ionic*,.....a Pyrrhic and a spondee, — — — —; as,.....*prōpērābānt*.  
*Choriambus*,.....a choree and an iambus, — — — —; as,.....*tērrificānt*.  
*Antispast*,.....an iambus and a choree, — — — —; as,.....*ādhesissē*.  
*First epitrit*,.....an iambus and a spondee, — — — —; as,.....*āmāvērūt*.  
*Second epitrit*,.....a trochee and a spondee, — — — —; as,.....*cōnditōrēs*.  
*Third epitrit*,.....a spondee and an iambus, — — — —; as,.....*discōrdiās*.  
*Fourth epitrit*,.....a spondee and a trochee, — — — —; as,.....*āddūxistīs*.  
*First pæon*,.....a trochee and a Pyrrhic, — — — —; as,.....*tēmpōribūs*.  
*Second pæon*,.....an iambus and a Pyrrhic, — — — —; as,.....*pōtēntiā*.  
*Third pæon*,.....a Pyrrhic and a trochee, — — — —; as,.....*ānimātūs*.  
*Fourth pæon*,.....a Pyrrhic and an iambus, — — — —; as,.....*cēlērītās*.

REMARK. Those feet are called *isochronous*, which consist of equal times as the spondee, the dactyl, the anapæst, and the proceleusmatic, one long time being considered equal to two short.

## METRE.

§ 303. 1. *Metre* is an arrangement of syllables and feet according to certain rules.

2. In this general sense, it comprehends either an entire verse, a part of a verse, or any number of verses.

3. Metre is divided into *dactylic*, *anapæstic*, *iambic*, *trochaic*, *choriambic*, and *Ionic*. These names are derived from the original or fundamental foot employed in each.

4. A *metre* or *measure*, in a specific sense is either a single foot, or a combination of two feet. In the dactylic, choriambic, and Ionic metres, a measure consists of one foot; in the other metres, of two feet. Two feet constituting a measure are sometimes called a *syzygy*.

## VERSES.

§ 304. A *verse* is a certain number of feet, arranged in a regular order, and constituting a line of poetry.

1. Two verses are called a *distich*; a half verse, a *hemistich*.

2. Verses are of different kinds, denominated sometimes, like the different species of metre, from the foot which chiefly predominates in them; as, *dactylic*, *iambic*, etc.;—sometimes from the number of feet or metres which they contain; as, *sēnārius*, consisting of six feet; *octōnārius*, of eight feet; *mōnōmēter*, consisting of one measure; *dīmēter*, of two; *trimēter*, *tetramēter*, *pentamēter*, *hexamēter*;—sometimes from a celebrated author who used a particular species; as, *Sapphic*, *Anacreontic*, *Alcaic*, *Asclepiadic*, *Glyconic*, *Phalæcian*, *Sotadic*, *Archilochian*, *Alcmanian*, *Pherecratic*, *Aristophanic*, etc., from *Sappho*, *Anacreon*, *Alcæus*, *Asclepiādes*, *Glycon*, *Phalæcus*, *Sotādes*, *Archilōchus*, *Alcman*, *Pherecrātes*, *Aristophānes*, etc.—and sometimes from the particular uses to which they were applied; as, the *prosodiac*, from its use in solemn processions, the *paræmiac*, from its frequent use in proverbs.

3. A verse, with respect to the metres which it contains, may be complete, deficient, or redundant.

(1.) A verse which is complete is called *acatalectic*.

(2.) A verse which is deficient, if it wants one syllable at the end, is called *catalectic*; if it wants a whole foot or half a metre, it is called *brachycatalectic*.

(3.) A verse which wants a syllable at the beginning, is called *acephalous*.

(4.) A verse which has a redundant syllable or foot, is called *hypercatalectic* or *hypermēter*.

4. Hence, the complete name of every verse consists of three terms—the first referring to the *species*, the second to the *number of metres*, and the third to the *ending*; as, the *dactylic trimēter catalectic*.



5. A verse or portion of a verse of any kind (measured from the beginning) which contains three half feet, or a foot and a half, is called a *trihēmimēris*; if it contains five half feet, or two feet and a half, it is called a *penthēmimēris*; if seven half feet, or three feet and a half, a *hepthēmimēris*; if nine half feet, or four feet and a half, an *ennehēmimēris*. A portion of a verse consisting of one whole metre and a half, is called a *hēmiōlius*, as being the half of a *trimeter*.

NOTE. The respective situation of each foot in a verse is called its *place*.

6. SCANNING is the dividing of a verse into the feet of which it is composed.

REMARK. In order to scan correctly, it is necessary to know the quantity of each syllable, and also to understand the following poetic usages, which are sometimes called

## FIGURES OF PROSODY.

### SYNALÆPHA.

§ 305. 1. *Synalæpha* is the elision of a final vowel or diphthong in scanning, when the following word begins with a vowel.

Thus, *terra antiqua* is read *terr' antiqua*; *Dardānidæ infensi*, *Dardānid' infensi*; *vento huc*, *vent' huc*. So,

*Quidve mōror? si omnes āno ordine hābētis Achivos.* *Virg. A. 2, 102.*

Which is scanned thus—

*Quidve mōror? s' omnes ūn' ordin' hābētis Achivos.*

(1.) The interjections *O*, *heu*, *ah*, *proh*, *væ*, *vah*, are not elided; as,

*O et de Lātīā O et de gente Sābīnā.* *Ovid. M. 14, 832.*

REMARK. But *O*, though not elided, is sometimes made short; as,

*Te Cōrŕydon O Alexi; trāhit sua quemque vōluptas.* *Virg. E. 2, 65.*

(2.) Other long vowels and diphthongs sometimes remain unelided, in which case, when in the thesis of a foot, they are commonly made short; as,

*Victor āpud rāpīdum Sīmoēnta sūb Iliō alto.* *Virg. A. 5, 261.*

*Anni tempore eo quī Etēsīā esse fēruntur.* *Lucr. 6, 717.*

*Ter sunt cōnātī impōnere Pēliō Ossam.* *Virg. G. 1, 281.*

*Glaucō et Panōpēā, et Inōo Mēlicertæ.* *Id. G. 1, 436.*

(3.) Rarely a short vowel, also, remains without elision; as,

*Et vēra incessu pātuit deā. Ille ūbi mātrem....* *Virg. A. 1, 405.*

(4.) *Synalæpha* in a monosyllable occasionally occurs; as,

*Sī ad vitūlam spectas, nihil est, quod pocūla laudes.* *Virg. E. 3, 48.*

For *synalæpha* at the end of a line, see *Synapheia*, § 307, 3.

### ECTHLIPSIS.

2. *Ecthlipsis* is the elision of a final *m* with the preceding vowel, when the following word begins with a vowel. Thus,

*O cūras hōmīnum, O quantum est in rēbus ināne!* *Pers. 1, 1.*

Which is thus scanned—

O cūras hōmin' O quant' est in rēbus ināne.

*Monstrum horrendum, informe, ingens, cui lūmen ādemptum.* Virg. A. 3 658.

(1.) This elision was sometimes omitted by the early poets; as,

*Corpōrū officium est quāniam prēmēre omnia deorsum.* Lucr. 1, 363.

See § 299, 2.

(2.) Final *s*, also, with the preceding vowel, is sometimes elided by the early poets before a vowel, and sometimes *s* alone before a consonant; as, *content' atque* (Enn.), for *contentus atque*; *omnību' rēbus.* (Lucr.) So,

*Tum lātērālī' dōlor, certissimū' nūnciū' mortis.* Lucil.

REMARK. This elision took place principally in short syllables.

For ecthipsis at the end of a line, see *Synapheia*, § 307, 3.

### SYNÆRESIS.

§ 306. 1. *Synæresis* is the contraction into one syllable of two vowels which are usually pronounced separately. Thus,

*Aureā percussum virgā, versumque vēnēnis.* Virg. A. 7, 190.

*Eosdem hābuit sēcum, quībus est ēlāta, cāpillos.* Prop. 4, 7, 7.

*Titīre, pascentes a flūmine reice cāpellas.* Virg. E. 3, 96.

REMARK 1. So *Phaethon* is pronounced *Phæthōn*; *alveo*, *alvo*; *Orpheo*, *Orpha*; *deorsum*, *dorsum*.

(1.) Synæresis is frequent in *ii*, *iidem*, *iisdem*, *dii*, *diis*, *dein*, *deinceps*, *deinde*, *deest*, *deerat*, *deëro*, *deërit*, *desse*; as,

*Præcipitātur āquis, et āquis nox surgit ab īsdem.* Ovid. M. 4, 92.

*Sint Mæcēnātes; non deerunt, Flacce, Mārōnes.* Mart. 8, 56, 5.

REM. 2. *Cui* and *huic* are usually monosyllables.

(2.) When two vowels in compound words are read as one syllable, the former may rather be considered as elided than as united with the latter; as, *e* in *anteambūlo*, *anteire*, *antēhac*, *dehinc*, *mehercūle*, etc., and *a* in *contraire*.

(3.) The syllable formed by the union of *i* or *u* followed by another vowel retains the quantity of the latter vowel, whether long or short; as, *ābiēte*, *āriēte*, *ābiēgnæ*, *pāriētibus*, *consiliūm*, *fortuūtus*, *Nāsidiēnus*, *vindēmiātor*, *omniā*; *gēnuū*, *tēnuīs*, *pītuīta*, *flūviōrum*, etc. In such examples, the *i* and *u* are pronounced like initial *y* and *w*; as, *ābyēte*, *pāryētibus*, *consilyum*, *fortwītus*, *Nāsidyēnus*, *mn-yā*, *tenwīs*, *pitwīta*, etc.; and, like consonants, they have, with another consonant, the power of lengthening a preceding short vowel, as in the above examples.

NOTE. In Statius, the word *tēnuīōre* occurs as a trisyllable, in which the three vowels, *uio*, are united in pronunciation; thus, *tēn-wiō-re*.

(4.) Sometimes, after a synalœpha or ecthlipsis, two vowels suffer synæresis; as, *stellio et*, pronounced *stell-yet*: *consilium et*,—*consil-yet*.

(5.) If only one of the vowels is written, the contraction is called *crasis*; as *di*, *consilt*, for *dii*, *consilii*.

### DIÆRESIS.

2. *Diæresis* is the division of one syllable into two; as,

*aulāt*, *Trōia*, *silīa*, *sūādent*; for *aulæ*, *Troia* or *Troja*, *silva*, *suādent*. So *suesco* for *suesco*; *reliquūs* for *reliquus*; *ecquīs* for *ecquis*; *milūūs* for *milvus* etc.  
as

*Æthereum sensum, atque auræ simplicis ignem. Virg. A. 6, 747*  
*Atque alios alii irrident, Veneremque suadent. Lucr. 4, 1152.*  
*Grammatici certant; et adhuc sub iudice lis est. Hor. A. P. 72.*  
*Aurarum et silvæ metu. Id. O. 1, 23, 4.*

(1.) So in Greek words originally written with a diphthong (*u* or *η*); as, *êlēgēia* for *êlēgia*, *Bacchēia* for *Bacchēa*, *Rhætēiūs* for *Rhætēus*, *Plēiās* for *Plīās*: and also in words of Latin origin; as, *Vēiūs* for *Veius*, *Aquilēiā* for *Aquileiā*.

REMARK. This figure is sometimes called *dialysis*.

## SYSTOLE.

§ 307. 1. *Systole* is the shortening of a syllable which is long by nature or by position; as,

*vidē'n* for *videsne*, in which *e* is naturally long; *sātī'n* for *sātisne*, in which *i* is long by position;—*hōdie* for *hōc die*; *multimōdis* for *multis modis*. So,

*Ducere multimōdis vōces, et flectere cantus. Lucr. 5, 1405.*

(1.) By the omission of *j* after *ab*, *ad*, *ob*, *sub*, and *re*, in compound words, those prepositions retain their naturally short quantity, which would otherwise be made long by position; as, *ābīci*, *ādīcit*, *ōbīcis*, etc. Thus,

*Si quid nostra tuis ādīcit vexatio rēbus. Mart. 10, 82, 1.*

REMARK. In some compounds the short quantity of *ad* and *ob* is preserved before a consonant by the elision of the *d* or *b* of the preposition, as in *āpērio*, *ōpērio*, *ōmitto*, etc.

(2.) The penult of the third person plural of certain perfects is said by some to be shortened by systole; as, *stētērunt*, *tūlērunt*, etc.; but others ascribe these irregularities to the errors of transcribers, or the carelessness of writers.

## DIASTOLE.

2. *Diastole* is the lengthening of a syllable which is naturally short.

(1.) It occurs most frequently in proper names and in compounds of *re*; as, *Priāmīdes*, *rēligio*, etc. Thus,

*Hanc tibi Priāmīdes mitto, Lēdæa, sālūtem. Ovid. H. 16, 1.*  
*Rēligiōne patrum multos servāta per annos. Virg. A. 2, 715.*

(2.) Some editors double the consonant after the lengthened *re*; as, *rellāgio*

(3.) Diastole is sometimes called *ectasis*.

## SYNAPHEIA.

3. *Synapheia* is such a connection of two consecutive verses, that the first syllable of the latter verse has an influence on the final syllable of that which precedes, either by position, synalœpha, or ecthipsis. See §§ 283 and 305.

(1.) This figure is most frequent in anapæstic verse, and in the *Ionic a minore*.

The following lines will illustrate its effect:—

*Præceps silvas montesque fugit*  
*Citus Actæon. Sen.*

Here the *i* in the final syllable of *fugit*, which is naturally short, is made long by position before the following consonants, *tc*.



Omnia Mercūrio similis, vōcemque cōlōremque  
Et crīnes flavos.... *Virg. A. 4, 558.*  
Dissīdens plēbi nūmēro beātōrum  
Exīmit virtus. *Hor. O. 2. 2. 18.*

In the former of these examples, synapheia and synalœpha are combined, *que* being elided before *et* in the following line; in the latter there is a similar combination of synapheia and ecthipsis.

(2.) By synapheia, the parts of a compound word are sometimes divided between two verses; as,

.... si non offendēret ūnum-  
*Quemque* poētārum līmæ lābor et mōra... *Hor. A. P. 290*

(3.) In hexameter verse a redundant syllable at the end of a line elided before a vowel at the beginning of the next line, by causing the accent to fall on the second syllable of the concluding spondee, and connecting the two verses by synapheia, excites the expectation of something which is to follow, and often tends to magnify the object; as,

Quōs sup̄er- | -ātrā sī- | -lēx, jān- | -jām lāp- | -sūrā cā- | -dēntī- | -*que*  
Immīnet assīmīlis. *Virg. A. 6, 602.*

REMARK. The poets often make use of other figures, also, which, however, are not peculiar to them. Such are *prosthesis*, *aphæresis*, *syncope*, *epenthesis*, *apocope*, *paragoge*, *tmēsis*, *antithesis*, and *metathesis*. See § 322.

## ARSIS AND THESIS.

§ 308. (1.) *Rhythm* is the alternate elevating and depressing of the voice at regular intervals in pronouncing the syllables of verse.

(2.) The elevation of the voice is called *arsis*, its depression *thesis*. These terms designate, also, the parts of a foot on which the elevation or depression falls.

1. The natural arsis is on the long syllable of a foot; and hence, in a foot composed wholly of long, or wholly of short syllables, when considered in itself, the place of the arsis is undetermined; but when such foot is substituted for the fundamental foot of a metre, its arsis is determined by that of the latter.

REMARK. Hence, a spondee, in trochaic or dactylic metre, has the arsis on the first syllable; but in iambic or anapæstic metre, it has it on the last.

2. The arsis is either equal in duration to the thesis, or twice as long.

Thus, in the dactyl, — — —, and anapæst, — — —, it is equal; in the trochee, — —, and iambus, — —, it is twice as long. This difference in the proportionate duration of the arsis and thesis constitutes the difference of rhythm. A foot is said to have the *descending* rhythm, when its arsis is at the beginning, and the *ascending*, when the thesis is at the beginning.

3. The stress of voice which falls upon the arsis of a foot, is called the *ictus*. When a long syllable in the arsis of a foot is resolved into two short ones, the ictus falls upon the former.

NOTE 1. Some suppose that the terms *arsis* and *thesis*, as used by the ancients, denoted respectively the rising and falling of the hand in beating time and that the place of the thesis was the syllable which received the ictus

**NOTE 2.** As the ancient pronunciation of Latin is not now understood, writers differ in regard to the mode of reading verse. According to some, the accent of each word should always be preserved; while others direct that the stress of voice should be laid on the arsis of the foot, and that no regard should be paid to the accent.

It is generally supposed that the final letters elided by synalœpha and œthelipsis, though omitted in scanning, were pronounced in reading verse.

### CÆSURA.

§ 309. *Cæsura* is the separation, by the ending of a word, of syllables rhythmically or metrically connected.

*Cæsura* is of three kinds:—1, of the *foot*; 2, of the *rhythm*; and 3, of the *verse*.

1. *Cæsura* of the foot occurs when a word ends before a foot is completed; as,

Silves- | -trem tenu- | -i Mu- | -sam medi- | -tāris a- | -vēnā. *Virg. E. 1, 2.*

2. *Cæsura* of the rhythm is the separation of the arsis from the thesis by the ending of a word, as in the second, third, and fourth feet of the preceding verse.

**REM 1.** It hence appears that the *cæsura* of the rhythm is always a *cæsura* of the foot, as *e. g.* in the 2d, 3d, and 4th feet of the preceding verse; but, on the contrary, that the *cæsura* of the foot is not always a *cæsura* of the rhythm, as *e. g.* in the fifth foot of the same verse.

(1.) *Cæsura* of the rhythm allows a final syllable naturally short, to stand in the arsis of the foot instead of a long one, it being lengthened by the *ictus*; as,

Pēctōrī- | -būs inhī- | -āns spī- | -rāntiā | cōnsūlīt | ēxta. *Virg. A. 4, 64.*

This occurs chiefly in hexameter verse.

**REM. 2.** *Cæsura* of the foot and of the verse do not of themselves lengthen a short syllable, but they often coincide with that of the rhythm.

3. *Cæsura* of the verse is such a division of a line into two parts, as affords to the voice a convenient pause or rest, without injury to the sense or harmony.

**REM. 3.** The *cæsura* of the verse is often called the *cæsural pause*. In several kinds of verse, its place is fixed; in others, it may fall in more than one place, and the choice is left to the poet. Of the former kind is the pentameter of the latter the hexameter.

The proper place of the *cæsural pause* will be treated of, so far as shall be necessary under each species of verse.

**REM. 4.** The effect of the *cæsura* is to connect the different words harmoniously together, and thus to give smoothness, grace, and sweetness, to the verse.

## DIFFERENT KINDS OF METRE.

### DACTYLIC METRE.

§ 310. I. A *hexameter* or heroic verse consists of six feet. Of these the fifth is a dactyl, the sixth a spondee, and each of the other four either a dactyl or a spondee; as,

Āt tūbā | tērrībī- | -lēm sōnī- | -tūm prēcūl | ærē cā- | -nōrō. *Virg. A. 9, 508.*  
 Intōn- | -sī crī- | -nēs lōn- | -gā cēr- | -vīcē flū- | ēbānt. *Tibull. 3, 4, 27.*  
 Lūdērē | quæ vėl- | -lēm cālā- | -mō pēr- | -mīsīt ā- | -grēstī. *Virg. E. 1, 10.*

1. The fifth foot is sometimes a spondee, and the verse in such case is called *spondaic*; as,

Cārā dē- | -ūm sōbō- | -lēs mäg- | -nūm Jōvīs | īncrē- | -mēntūm. *Virg. E. 4 49.*

REMARK 1. In such verses, the fourth foot is commonly a dactyl, and the fifth should not close with the end of a word. Spondaic lines are thought to be especially adapted to the expression of grave and solemn subjects.

2. A light and rapid movement is produced by the frequent recurrence of dactyls; a slow and heavy one by that of spondees; as,

Quādrūpē- | -dāntē pū- | -trēm sōnī- | -tū quātīt | ūngūlā | cāmpum. *Virg. A. 8, 596.*  
 Illi īn- | -tēr sē- | -sē mäg- | -nā vī | brāchīā | tōllunt. *Id. A. 8, 452.*

REM. 2. Variety in the use of dactyls and spondees in successive lines, has an agreeable effect. Hexameter verse commonly ends in a word of two or three syllables, and a monosyllable at the end of a line is generally ungraceful, but sometimes produces a good effect; as,

Stērnītūr, | ēxānī- | -mīsquē, trē- | -mēns prō- | -cūmbīt hū- | -mī bōs. *Virg. A. 5, 481*  
 Pārtūrī- | -ūnt mōn- | -tēs: nās- | -cētūr | rīdīcū- | -lūs mūs. *Hor. A. P. 139.*

3. The beauty and harmony of hexameter verse depend much on due attention to the *cæsura*. (See § 309.) A line in which it is neglected is destitute of poetic beauty, and can hardly be distinguished from prose; as,

Rōmæ | mōēniā | tērrūt | īmpīgēr | Hānnībāl | ārmīs. *Enn.*

4. The cæsural pause most approved in heroic poetry is that which occurs after the *penthemimēris*, i. e. after the arsis in the third foot. This is particularly distinguished as *the heroic cæsura*. Thus,

Āt dōmūs | intēri- | -ōr || rē- | -gālī | splēndīdā | lūxū. *Virg. A. 1, 637.*

5. Instead of the preceding, a cæsura in the thesis of the third foot, or after the arsis of the fourth, was also approved as heroic; as,

Īnfān- | -dūm rē- | -gīnā || jū- | -bēs rēnō- | -vārē dō- | -lōrem. *Virg. A. 2, 3.*  
 Īndē tō- | -rō pātēr | Ænē- | -ās || sic | ōrsūs āb | āltō. *Id. A. 2, 2.*

REM. 3. When the cæsural pause occurs, as in the latter example, after the *hepthemimēris*, i. e. after the arsis of the fourth foot, another but slighter one is often found in the second foot; as,

Primā tē- | -nēt, || plāū- | -sūquē vō- | -lāt || frēmī- | -tūquē sē- | -cūndo. *Virg. A. 5, 338.*

6. The cæsura after the third foot, dividing the verse into exactly equal parts, was least approved; as,

Cuī nōn | dīctūs Hỹ- | -lās pūr || ēt Lā- | -tōnīā | Dēlos. *Virg. 3. 3, 6.*

REM. 4. The cæsural pause between the fourth and fifth feet was considered as peculiarly adapted to pastoral poetry, particularly when the fourth foot was a dactyl, and was hence termed the *bucolic cæsura*; as,

Stānt vītū- | -li ēt tēnē- | -rīs mū- | -gītībūs || āērā | cōmplēnt. *Nemes.*

NOTE 1. The cæsura after the arsis is sometimes called the *masculine* or *syllabic cæsura*; that in the thesis, the *feminine* or *trochaic*, as a trochee immediately precedes. When a cæsura occurs in the fifth foot it is usually the trochaic cæsura, unless the foot is a spondee; as,

Frāxīnūs | īn sil- | -vīs pūl- | -chērrīmā, | pīnūs īn | hōrtīs. *Virg. E. 7, 65.*

(a.) It is to be remarked that two successive trochaic cæsuras in the *second* and *third* feet are, in general, to be avoided, but they are sometimes employed to express irregular or impetuous motion; as,



Ūna Eu- | -rūsquē Nō- | -tūsquē rū- | -ūnt crē- | -bērquē prō- | -cēllīs. *Virg. A. 1. 85.*

(b.) Successive trochaic cæsuras are, in like manner, to be avoided in the *third* and *fourth* feet, but are approved in the *first* and *second*, in the *fourth* and *fifth*, and in the *first*, *third* and *fifth*. See *Virg. A. 6, 651: 1, 94: and 6, 522.*

NOTE 2. In the principal cæsura of the verse poets frequently introduce a pause in the sense, which must be attended to in order to determine the place of the cæsural pause. For in the common place for the cæsura in the third foot there is often a cæsura *of the foot*; while, in the fourth foot, a still more marked division occurs. In this case, the latter is to be considered as the principal cæsura, and distinguished accordingly; as,

Bellī | ferrā- | -tōs pōs- | -tes, || pōr- | -tāsquē rē- | -frēgit. *Hor. S. 1, 4, 61.*

II. The *Priapēan* is usually accounted a species of hexameter. It is so constructed as to be divisible into two portions of three feet each, having generally a trochee in the first and fourth place, but often a spondee and rarely a dactyl; in the second, usually a dactyl; and an amphimacer and more rarely a dactyl in the third; as,

Ō cō- | -lōnīā | quæ cūpis || pōntē | lūdērē | lōngō. *Catull. 17, 1.*

It is, however, more properly considered as choriambic metre, consisting of alternate Glyconics and Pheræcratics. See § 316, IV. V. Thus,

Ō cō- | -lōnīā, quæ | cūpis  
Pōntē | lūdērē lōn- | -go.

NOTE. A regular hexameter verse is termed *Priapēan*, when it is so constructed as to be divisible into two portions of three feet each; as,

Tērtiā | pārs pā- | -trī dātā || pārs dātā | tērtiā | mātīrī. *Catull. 62, 64.*

See above, 6.

### § 311. III. A *pentameter* verse consists of five feet.

REMARK 1. It is generally, however, divided, in scanning, into two hemistichs, the first consisting of two feet, either dactyls or spondees, followed by a long syllable; the last, of two dactyls, also followed by a long syllable; as,

Nātū- | -ræ sēquī- | -tūr || sēmīnā | quīsquē sū- | -æ. *Prop. 3, 7, 20.*  
Cārmīnī- | -būs vī- | -vēs || tēmpūs īn | ōmnē mē- | -īs. *Ovid.*

1. According to the more ancient and correct mode of scanning pentameter verse, it consists of five feet, of which the first and second may each be a dactyl or a spondee; the third is always a spondee; and the fourth and fifth are anapæsts; as,

Nātū- | -ræ sēquī- | -tūr || sēm- | -īnā quīs- | -quē sūæ.  
Cārmīnī- | -būs vī- | -vēs || tēm- | -pūs īn ōm- | -nē mēīs.

2. The cæsura, in pentameter verse, always occurs after the penhemimeris, i. e. at the close of the first hemistich. It very rarely lengthens a short syllable.

3. The pentameter rarely ends with a word of three syllables. In *Ovid*, it usually ends with a dissyllable.

REM. 2. This species of verse is seldom used, except in connection with hexameter, a line of each recurring alternately. This combination is called *Megiac* verse. Thus,

Flēbilis indignōs, Ĕlēgēiā, sōlvē cāpillos.

Ah nimīs ēx vērō nūnc tibi nōmēn ērit! *Ovid. Am. 3, 9, 8.*

§ 312. IV. The *tetrameter a priore*, or *Alcmanian dactylic tetrameter*, consists of the first four feet of a hexameter, of which the fourth is always a dactyl; as,

Gärrulä | pēr rā- | -mōs, āvis | ōbstrēpīt. *Sen.* Œd. 454.

V. The *tetrameter a posteriore*, or *spondaic tetrameter*, consists of the last four feet of a hexameter; as,

Ībīmūs, | Ō sēcī- | -ī, cōmī- | -tēsque. *Hor.* Od. 1, 7, 26.

REMARK. The penultimate foot in this, as in hexameter verse, may be a spondee, but in this case the preceding foot should be a dactyl; as,

Mēnsō- | -rēm cōhī | -bēnt Ar- | -chytā. *Hor.* Od. 1, 28, 2.

VI. The *dactylic trimeter* consists of the last three feet of a hexameter; as,

Grātō | Pýrrhā sūb | āntro. *Hor.* Od. 1, 5, 8.

REMARK. But this kind of verse is more properly included in choriambic metre. See § 316, V.

VII. The *trimeter catalectic Archilochian* consists of the first five half feet of a hexameter, but the first and second feet are commonly dactyls; as,

Pūlvīs ēt | ūmbrā sū- | -mus. *Hor.* Od. 4, 7, 16.

VIII. The *dactylic dimeter*, or *Adonic*, consists of two feet, a dactyl and a spondee; as,

Risīt Ā- | -pōllo. *Hor.* Od. 1, 10, 12.

IX. The *Æolic pentameter* consists of four dactyls preceded by a spondee, a trochee, or an iambus. Thus

— — — — —  
— — — — —  
— — — — —

X. The *Phalæcian pentameter* consists of a dactylic penthimimeris and a dactylic dimeter; as,

Visē- | -bāt gēlī- | -dæ || sīdērā | brūmæ. *Boëthius.*

REMARK. A trochee is sometimes found in the first place and an iambus in the first and second places.

XI. The *Tetrameter Meiurus*, or *Falscan* consists of the last four feet of a hexameter, except that the last foot is an iambus instead of a spondee; as,

Ūt nōvā | frūgē grā- | -vis Cērēs | èat. *Boëthius.*

XII. The *Tetrameter Catalectic* consists of the tetrameter a priore wanting the latter half of the concluding dactyl; as,

Ōmne hōmī- | -nūm gēnūs | in tēr- | -ris. *Boëthius.*

## ANAPÆSTIC METRE.

§ 313. I. The *anapæstic monomēter* consists of two anapæsts; as,

Ulūlās- | -sē cānēs. *Sen.*

II. The *anapæstic dimeter* consists of two measures, or four anapæsts; as,

Phārētrā- | -quē grāvēs | dātē sās- | -vā fērō.... *Sen.*

REMARK 1. The first foot in each measure of anapæstic metre was very often changed to a dactyl or a spondee, and the second foot often to a spondee, and, in a few instances, to a dactyl.

REM. 2. Anapæstic verses are generally so constructed that each measure ends with a word, so that they may be written and read in lines of one, two, or more measures.

## IAMBIC METRE.

§ 314. I. 1. The *iambic trimeter*, or *senarius*, consists of three iambic measures, or six iambic feet ; as,

Phāsē- | -lūs il- | -lē, || quēm | vīdē- | -tīs hōs- | -pītēs.... *Catull.* 4. 1.

2. The cæsure commonly occurs in the third but sometimes in the fourth foot.

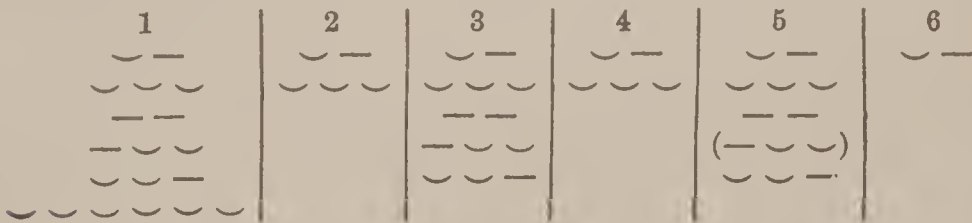
3. The pure iambic measure was seldom used by the Latin poets, but to vary the rhythm spondees were introduced into the first, third, and fifth places. In every foot, also, except the last, which was always an iambus, a long syllable was often changed into two short ones, so that an anapæst or a dactyl was used for a spondee, and a tribrach for an iambus, but the use of the dactyl in the fifth place was very rare; as,

Quō, quō | scēlēs- | -tī rūī- | -tīs? āūt | cūr dēx- | -tērīs.... *Hor. Epod. 7, 1.*

Ālītī- | -būs āt- | -quē cānī- | -būs hōmī- | -cīdam Hēc- | -tōrēm.... *Id.* Epod. 17, 12.

4. Sometimes, also, a proceleusmatic, or double pyrrhic, was used in the first place for a spondee. The writers of comedy, satire, and fable, admitted the spondee and its equivalents (the dactyl and anapæst) into the second and fourth places, as well as the first, third, and fifth.

5. The following, therefore, is the scale of the Iambic Trimeter:—



6. In the construction of the Iambic Trimeter an accent should fall on the second syllable of either the third foot or both the second and fourth feet; as,

Ibīs | Lībūr- | -nīs in- | tēr āl- | -tā nā- | -vīum | .

Utrūm- | -nē jūs- | -sī pēr- | -sēquē'- | -mūr ō- | -tīum. |

II. The *scæzon*, or *choliambus* (lame iambic), is the iambic trimeter, with a spondee in the sixth foot, and generally an iambus in the fifth; as,

Cūr in | thēā- | -trūm, Cătō | scvē- | -rē, vē- | -nīstī?

An idē. | -ō tăn- | -tūm vën- | -ērās, | ūt ēx- | -īrēs? *Mart. Ep. 1, 1, 3.*

This species of verse is also called *Hipponactic* trimeter, from its inventor Hippônax.



III. The *iambic tetrameter* or *quadrātus*, called also from the number of its feet *octonarius*, a measure used by the comic poets, consists of four iambic measures, subject to the same variations as the iambic trimeter (I.); as,

Nūnc hīc | dīēs | āliām | vītām āf- || -fērt, ālī- | -ōs mō- | -rēs pōs- | -tūlat. *Ter. A.* 1, 2, 18.

REMARK. The cæsura regularly follows the second measure.

IV. The *iambic tetrameter catalectic* or *Hipponactic*, is the iambic tetrameter, wanting the last syllable, and having always an iambus in the seventh place, but admitting in the other places the same variations as the trimeter and tetrameter; as,

Dēprēn- | -sā nā- | -vīs īn | mārī, | vēsā- | -nīēn- | -tē vēn- | -to. *Catull.* 25, 13.

V. The *iambic trimeter catalectic* or *Archilochian*, is the iambic trimeter (I.), wanting the final syllable. Like the common iambic trimeter, it admits a spondee into the first and third places, but not into the fifth; as,

Vōcā- | -tūs āt- | -quē nōn | vōcā- | -tūs āū- | -dit. *Hor. Od.* 2, 18, 40.

Trāhūnt- | -quē sic- | -cās māch- | -īnæ | cārī- | -nas. *Id. Od.* 1, 4, 2.

VI. The *iambic dimeter* consists of two iambic measures, with the same variations as the iambic trimeter (I.); as,

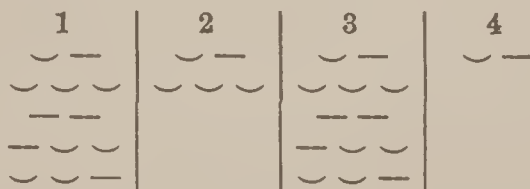
Fōrtī | sēquē- | -mūr pēc- | -tōre. *Hor. Epod.* 1, 14.

Cānidī- | -ā trāc- | -tāvīt | dāpēs. *Id. Epod.* 3, 8.

Vīdē- | -rē prōpē- | -rāntēs | dōmum. *Id. Epod.* 3, 62.

REMARK. The iambic dimeter is also called the *Archilochian dimeter*.

The following is its scale:—



VII. The *iambic dimeter hypermeter*, called also *Archilochian*, is the iambic dimeter, with an additional syllable at the end; as,

Rēdē- | -gīt īn | vērōs | tīmō- | -rēs. *Hor. Od.* 1, 37, 15.

REMARK. Horace always makes the third foot a spondee.

VIII. The *iambic dimeter acephalous* is the iambic dimeter, wanting the first syllable; as,

Nōn | ēbūr | nēque āū- | -rēm... *Hor. Od.* 2, 18, 1.

REMARK. This kind of verse is sometimes scanned as a catalectic trochaic dimeter. See § 315, IV.

IX. The *iambic dimeter catalectic*, or *Anacreontic*, is the iambic dimeter, wanting the final syllable, and having always an iambus in the third foot; as,

Ut tī- | grīs ōr- | -bā gnā- | -tīs. *Sen. Med.* 863.

X. The *Galliambus* consists of two iambic dimeters catalectic, the last of which wants the final syllable.

REMARK 1. It was so denominated from the *Galli* or priests of Cybele, by whom it was used.

REM. 2. In the first foot of each dimeter the anapæst was generally preferred to the spondee. The catalectic syllable at the end of the first dimeter is long, and the second foot of the second dimeter is commonly a tribrach; as,

Sūpēr āl- | -tā vēc- | -tūs A- | -tȳs || cēlēŕī | rătē mǎ- | -rīa. *Catull*, 63, 1.

REM. 3. The cæsura uniformly occurs at the end of the first dimeter.

### TROCHAIC METRE.

§ 315. 1. Trochaic verses bear a near affinity to iambs. The addition or retrenchment of a syllable at the beginning of a pure iambic verse, renders it pure trochaic, and the addition or retrenchment of a syllable at the beginning of a pure trochaic line, renders it pure iambic, with the deficiency or redundancy of a syllable in each case at the end of the verse.

I. The *trochaic tetrameter catalectic* consists of seven feet, followed by a catalectic syllable. In the first five places and very rarely in the sixth, it admits a tribrach, but in the seventh a trochee only. In the *even* places, besides the tribrach, it admits also a spondee, a dactyl, an anapæst, and sometimes a proceleusmatic; as,

Jūssūs | ēst īn | ērmīs | īrē: || pūrūs | Irē | jūssūs | ēst. *Auct. P. Vén.*

Rōmū | lēās | īpsā | fēcīt || cūm Sā- | -bīnīs | nūptī- | -ās. *Id.*

Dānāī | dēs, cō- | -itē; | vēstrās || hīc dī- | -ēs quæ- | -rīt mǎ- | -nūs. *Sen.*

The following is its scale:—

1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8
— — —	— — —	— — —	— — —	— — —	— — —	— —	—
— — —	— — —	— — —	— — —	— — —	— — —		
	— — —		— — —		— — —		
	— — —		— — —		— — —		
	— — —		— — —		— — —		

REMARK 1. The *pure* trochaic verse was rarely used, and the dactyl very rarely occurs in the fourth place. The cæsural pause uniformly occurs after the fourth foot, thus dividing the verse into a complete dimeter and a catalectic dimeter. The comic writers introduced the spondee and its equivalent feet into the odd places.

REM. 2. The complete trochaic tetrameter or *octonarius* properly consists of eight feet, all trochees, subject, however, to the same variations as the catalectic tetrameter; as,

Ipsē | sūmmīs | sākīs | fīxūs | āspē- | -rīs, ē- | -vīscē- | -rātūs. *Enn.*

II. The *Sapphic* verse, invented by the poetess Sappho, consists of five feet—the first a trochee, the second a spondee, the third a dactyl, and the fourth and fifth trochees; as,

Intē- | -gēr vī- | -cē, || scēlē- | -rīsquē | pūrūs. *Hor. Od.* 1, 22, 1.

1. Sappho, and, after her example, Catullus, sometimes made the second foot a trochee.

2. Those Sapphics are most harmonious which have the cæsura after the fifth semi-foot.

NOTE 1. In the composition of the Sapphic stanza, a word is sometimes divided between the end of the third Sapphic, and the beginning of the Adonic which follows; as,

Lābī- | -tūr rī- | -pā Jōvē | nōn prō- | -bānte ux-  
ōrīūs | āmnīs. *Hor. Od.* 1, 2, 19.

It has been thought by some that such lines should be considered as one Sapphic verse of seven feet, the fifth foot being either a spondee or a trochee.

NOTE 2. This verse is sometimes scanned as epichoriambic, having an epitrite in the first place, a choriambus in the second, and ending with an iambic syzygy catalectic; thus,

Intēgēr vī- | -tīē, ecclērīs- | -quē pūrūs.

III. The *Phalæcian* verse consists of five feet—a spondee, a dactyl, and three trochees; as,

Nōn ēst | vīvērē, | sēd vā- | -lērē | vītā. *Mart.*

REMARK 1. Instead of a spondee as the first foot, Catullus sometimes uses a trochee or an iambus. This writer also sometimes uses a spondee in the second place.

REM. 2. The *Phalæcian* verse is sometimes called *hendecasyllabic* as consisting of eleven syllables; but that name does not belong to it exclusively.

IV. The *trochaic dimeter catalectic* consists of three feet, properly all trochees, and a catalectic syllable, but admitting also in the second place a spondee or a dactyl; as,

Nōn ē | -būr nē- | -que āūrē- | .um. *Hor. Od. 2, 18, 1.*

Lēnīs | āc mōdī- | -cūm flū- | -ēns

Āūrā, | nēc vēr- | -gēns lā- | -tus. *Sen. Œd. 887.*

NOTE. This measure is the same as the acephalous iambic dimeter (see § 314, VIII.), and it is not important whether it be regarded as iambic or trochaic.

## CHORIAMBIC METRE.

§ 316. (a.) In a pure choriambic verse each metre except the last is a choriambus, and the last an Iambic syzygy.

NOTE. A spondee and iambus, i. e. a third epitrite, are sometimes used in place of the Iambic syzygy.

(b.) An *epichoriambic* verse is composed of one or more choriambi with some other foot, especially a ditrochee or a second epitrite, joined with it.

I. The *choriambic pentameter* consists of a spondee, three choriambi, and an iambus; as,

Tū nē | quāēsīērīs, | scīrē nēfās, | quēm mīhī, quēm tībī., *Hor. Od. 1, 11, 1.*

II. The *choriambic tetrameter* consists of three choriambi, or feet of equal length, and a Bacchius; as,

Omnē nēmūs | cūm flūvīīs, | ōmnē cānāt | prōfūdum. *Claud.*

2. In this verse Horace substituted a spondee for the iambus contained in the first choriambus; as,

Tē dēōs ō- | -rō, Sībārīn | cūr prōpērēs | āmāndō. *Hor. Od. 1, 8, 2.*

3. Some scan this verse as an epichoriambic tetrameter catalectic, beginning with the second epitrite.

III. 1. The *Asclepiadic tetrameter* (invented by the poet Asclepiades) consists of a spondee, two choriambi, and an iambus; as,

Mēcē- | -rūs, ātāvīs || ēdītē rēg- | -ibus. *Hor. Od. 1, 1, 1.*



2. This form is invariably observed by Horace; but other poets sometimes though rarely, make the first foot a dactyl.

3. The cæsural pause occurs at the end of the first choriambus.

4. This measure is sometimes scanned as a dactylic pentameter catalectic. See § 311, III. Thus,

Mæcē- | -nas, ātā- | vīs || ēditē | rēgībūs.

IV. 1. The *choriambic trimeter*, or *Glyconic* (invented by the poet Glyco), consists of a spondee, a choriambus, and an iambus; as,

Sic tē | dīvā pōtēns | Cypri... Hor. Od. 1, 3, 1.

2. The first foot is sometimes an iambus or a trochee.

3. When the first foot is a spondee, the verse might be scanned as a dactylic trimeter. Thus,

Sic tē | dīvā pō- | -tēns Cypri.

V. 1. The *choriambic trimeter catalectic*, or *Pherecratic* (so called from the poet Pherecrātes), is the Glyconic deprived of its final syllable, and consists of a spondee, a choriambus, and a catalectic syllable; as,

Grātō, | Pýrrhā, sūb ān- | -trō. Hor. Od. 1, 5, 3.

2. The first foot was sometimes a trochee or an anapest, rarely an iambus.

3. When the first foot is a spondee, this measure might be scanned as a dactylic trimeter. See § 312, VI.

4. The Pherecratic subjoined to the Glyconic produces the Priapean verse. See § 310, II.

VI. 1. The *choriambic dimeter* consists of a choriambus and a Bacchius; as,

Lýdřā dīc | pēr ōmnēs. Hor. Od. 1, 8, 1.

2. This verse is by some called the choriambic dimeter catalectic. Cf. § 316, (a.)

## IONIC METRE.

§ 317. I. The *Ionic a majōre*, or *Sotadic*, (from the poet Sotādes), consists of three greater Ionics and a spondee.

1. The Ionic feet, however, are often changed into ditrochees, and either of the two long syllables in those feet into two short ones; as,

Ilās, cūm gēmī- | -nā cōmpēdē, | dēdicāt cā- | -tēnās,  
Satūrnē, tī- | -bī Zōilūs, | annūlōs prī- | -ōrēs. Murt.

2. Hence the following is its scale:—



NOTE The final syllable, by § 301, note, may be short.

II. 1. The *Ionic a minōre* consists generally of verses of three or four feet, which are all smaller Ionics; as,

Pācř alēs, | tibī tēlās, | ōpērōsæ- | -quē Minērvæ... Hor. Od. 3, 12, 4.

2. In this verse, as in the anapæstic, no place is assigned to the pause; because, since the metres, if rightly constructed, end with a word, the effect of a pause will be produced at the end of each metre.

COMPOUND METRES.

§ 318. Compound metre is the union of two species of metre in the same verse.

I. The *dactylico-iambic* metre or *Elegiambus* consists of a dactylic penthemimēris (§ 312, VII.), followed by an iambic dimeter (§ 314, VI.); as,

Scribērē | vērsicū- | -lōs || āmō- | -rē pēr- | -cūlsūm | grāvī. *Hor. Epod. 11, 2.*

II. The *iambico-dactylic* metre or *Iambelegus* consists of the same members as the preceding, but in a reversed order; as,

Nīvēs- | -quē dē- | -dūcūnt | Jōvēm : || nūnc mārē, | nūnc sīlū- | -æ. *Hor. Epod. 13, 2.*

NOTE. The members composing this and the preceding species of verse are often written in separate verses.

III. The *greater Alcaic* consists of an iambic penthemimeris, i. e. of two iambic feet and a long catalectic syllable, followed by a chor-iambus, and an iambus; as,

Vīdēs | ūt āl- | -tā || stēt nīvē cān- | -dīdum. *Hor. Od. 1, 9, 1.*

REMARK 1. The first foot is often a spondee.

REM. 2. The cæsura uniformly occurs after the catalectic syllable.

REM. 3. This verse is sometimes so scanned as to make the last two feet dactyls.

IV. The *dactylico-trochaic* or *Archilochian heptameter*, consists of the dactylic tetrameter *a priore* (§ 312), followed by three trochees; as,

Sōlvītūr | ācrīs hī- | -ēms grā- | -tā vīcē || vērīs | ēt Fā- | -vōnī. *Hor. Od. 1, 4, 1.*

REMARK. The cæsura occurs between the two members.

V. The *dactylico-trochaic tetrameter* or *lesser Alcaic*, consists of two dactyls, followed by two trochees, i. e. of a dactylic dimeter followed by a trochaic monometer; as,

Lēvīā | pērsōnū- || -ērē | sāxā. *Hor. Od. 1, 17, 12.*

COMBINATION OF VERSES IN POEMS.

§ 319. 1. A poem may consist either of one kind of verse only or of a combination of two or more kinds.

2. A poem in which only one kind of verse is employed, is called *carmen monocōlon*; that which has two kinds, *dicōlon*; that which has three kinds, *tricōlon*.

3. When the poem returns, after the second line, to the same verse with which it began, it is called *distrōphon*; when after the third line, *tristrōphon*; and when after the fourth, *tetrastrōphon*.

4. The several verses which occur before the poem returns to the kind of verse with which it began, constitute a *stanza* or *strophe*.

5. A poem consisting of two kinds of verse, when the stanza contains two verses, is called *dicōlon distrōphon*, (see § 320, 3); when it contains three, *dico-*

*lon tristrōphon*, (Auson. Profess. 21); when four, *dicōlon tetrastrōphon*, (§ 310, 2) and when five, *dicōlon pentastrōphon*.

6. A poem consisting of three kinds of verse, when the stanza contains three verses, is called *tricōlon tristrōphon*, (§ 320, 15); when four, *tricōlon tetrastrōphon*, (§ 320, 1).

### HORATIAN METRES.

§ 320. The different species of metre used by Horace in his lyric compositions are twenty. The various forms in which he has employed them, either separate or in conjunction, are nineteen, arranged, according to the order of preference given to them by the poet, in the following

### SYNOPSIS.

1. Two greater Alcaics (§ 318, III.), one Archilochian iambic dimeter hypermeter (§ 314, VII.), and one lesser Alcaic (§ 318, V.); as,

Vidēs, ūt āltā stēt nīvē cāndīdum  
Sōrāctē, nēc jān sūstinēānt ōnūs  
Sīlvæ lābōrāntēs, gēlūquē  
Flūminā cōstitērīnt ācūto. (Lib. 1, 9.)

REMARK. This is called the Horatian stanza, because it seems to have been a favorite with Horace, being used in thirty-seven of his odes.

2. Three Sapphics (§ 315, II.) and one Adonic (§ 312, VIII.); as,

Jām sātīs tērrīs nīvīs ātquē diræ  
Grādinīs mīsīt pātēr, ēt, rūbēntē  
Dēxtēra sacrās jācūlatūs ārces,  
Tērrūit ūrbem. (Lib. 1, 2.)

3. One Glyconic (§ 316, IV.) and one Asclepiadic (§ 316, III.); as,

Sic tē Divā pōtēns Cypri,  
Sic frātēs Hēlēnæ, lucidā sīdēra... (Lib. 1, 8.)

4. One iambic trimeter (§ 314, I.) and one iambic dimeter (§ 314, VI.); as,

Ibis Lībūrnīs intēr āltā nāvīum,  
Amicē, prōpūgnācūla. (Epod. 1.)

5. Three Asclepiadics (§ 316, III.) and one Glyconic (§ 316, IV.); as,

Scribēris Vāriō fōrtīs, ēt hōstīum  
Victōr, Mæonīī cārminīs alitī,  
Quām rēm cūmqūē fērōx navibūs aut ēquls  
Milēs, tē dūcē, gēssērit. (Lib. 1, 6.)

6. Two Asclepiadics (§ 316, III.), one Pherecratic (§ 316, V.), and one Glyconic (§ 316, IV.); as,

Diānām, tēnēræ, dicītē vīrgīnes:  
Intōnsūm, pūērī, dicītē Cynthīum,  
Lātōnāmqūē sūprēmo  
Dilēctām pēnitūs Jōvī. (Lib. 1, 21.)

7. The Asclepiadic (§ 316, III.) alone; as,

Mæcēnās ātāvis ēditē rēgibus. (Lib. 1, 1.)



8. One dactylic hexameter (§ 310, I.) and one dactylic tetrameter *a posteriorē* (§ 312, V.); as,

Laudābunt alii clārām Rhodōn, aut Mitylēnen,  
Aut Ēphēsūm, bimarivē Cōrīnθi... (Lib. 1, 7.)

9. The choriambic pentameter (§ 316, I.) alone; as,  
Tū nē quāsiēris, scirē nēfās, quē mihī, quē tibi... (Lib. 1, 11.)

10. One dactylic hexameter (§ 310, I.) and one iambic dimeter (§ 314, VI.); as,

Nōx ērat, et cōlō fulgēbat lūnā sērēno  
Inter minōrā sidēra. (Epod. 15.)

11. The iambic trimeter (§ 314, I.) containing spondees; as,  
Jām, jam effīcāci dō mānūs sciētissē. (Epod. 17.)

12. One choriambic dimeter (§ 316, VI.) and one choriambic tetrameter (§ 316, II.) with a variation; as,

Lydīā, dīc, pēr omnes  
Tē Dēos orō, Sībārīn cūr prōpērās amāndo... (Lib. 1, 8.)

13. One dactylic hexameter (§ 310, I.) and one iambic trimeter without spondees (§ 314, I.); as,

Altērā jām tēritūr bellis cīvilibūs aetas;  
Suis et ipsā Rōmā viribūs ruit. (Epod. 16.)

14. One dactylic hexameter (§ 310, I.) and one dactylic penthemimeris (§ 312, VII.); as,

Diffūgērē nivēs: rēdēunt jām grāmīnā cāmpis,  
Arbōribusquē cōmæ. (Lib. 4, 7.)

15. One iambic trimeter (§ 314, I.), one dactylic trimeter catalectic (§ 312, VII.), and one iambic dimeter (§ 314, VI.); as,

Pētti, nīhil mē, sicūt antēā, jūvat  
Scribērē vērsicūlos,  
Amōrē pērculsūm grāvi. (Epod. 11.)

NOTE. The second and third lines are often written as one verse. See § 318, 1.

16. One dactylic hexameter (§ 310, I.), one iambic dimeter (§ 314, VI.), and one dactylic penthemimeris (§ 312, VII.); as,

Horrīdā tēpēstās cōlūm cōtrāxit; et imbres  
Nivēsquē dēdūcunt Jōvem:  
Nūc mārē, nūc silūæ... (Epod. 13.)

NOTE. The second and third lines of this stanza, also, are often written as one verse. See § 318, II.

17. One Archilochian heptameter (§ 318, IV.) and one iambic trimeter catalectic (§ 314, V.); as,

Solvitur ācris hiēms grātā vicē vērīs et Fāvōnī,  
Trahuntquē siccās māchinās carīnas. (Lib. 1, 4.)

18. One iambic dimeter acephalous (§ 314, VIII.) and one iambic trimeter catalectic (§ 314, V.); as,

Nōn ebūr nēque aurēum  
Mēa rēnidēt in dōmō lacūnar. (Lib. 2, 18.)

19. The Ionic *a minōre* (§ 317, II.) alone; as,

Miserrarum est nēque amōrī dārē ludūm, nēque dūlcī... (Lib. 8, 12.)

## § 321. A METRICAL KEY TO THE ODES OF HORACE

*Containing, in alphabetic order, the first words of each, with a reference to the numbers in the preceding Synopsis, where the metre is explained.*

Æli. vetusto.....	No. 1	Mollis inertia.....	No. 10
Æquam memento.....	1	Montium custos.....	2
Albi, ne doleas.....	6	Motum ex Metello.....	1
Altēra jam teritur.....	13	Musis amicus.....	1
Angustam, amice.....	1	Natis in usum.....	1
At, O deorum.....	4	Ne forte credas.....	1
Atdivēre, I yce.....	6	Ne sit ancillæ.....	2
Bacchum in reinōtis.....	1	Nolis longa feræ.....	5
Beātus ille.....	4	Nondum subacta.....	1
Cælo supinas.....	1	Non ebur neque aureum.....	19
Cælo tonantem.....	1	Non semper imbres.....	1
Cur me querēlis.....	1	Non usitātâ.....	1
Delicta majōrum.....	1	Non vides, quanto.....	2
Descende cœle.....	1	Nox erat.....	10
Diānam, tenēræ.....	6	Nullam, Vare, sacrâ.....	9
Diffugēre nives.....	14	Nullus argento.....	2
Dive, quem proles.....	2	Nunc est bibendum.....	1
Divis orte bonis.....	5	O crudēlis adhuc.....	2
Donārem patēras.....	7	O diva, gratum.....	1
Donec gratus eram tibi.....	3	O fons Bandusiæ.....	6
Eheu! fugāces.....	1	O matre pulchrâ.....	1
Est mihi nonum.....	2	O nata mecum.....	1
Et ture et fidibus.....	3	O navis, refērent.....	6
Exēgi monumentum.....	7	O sæpe mecum.....	1
Extrēmum Tanaium.....	5	O Venus, regīna.....	2
Faune, nympharum.....	2	Odi profānum.....	1
Festo quid potius die.....	3	Otium Divos.....	2
Hercūlis ritu.....	2	Parcius junctas.....	2
Horrida tempestas.....	16	Parcus Deorum.....	1
Ibis Liburnis.....	4	Parentis olim.....	4
Icci, beātis.....	1	Pastor quum traheret.....	5
Ille et nefasto.....	1	Percicos odi, puer.....	2
Impios parræ.....	2	Petti, nihil me.....	15
Inclūsam Danāēn.....	5	Phœbe, silvarumque.....	2
Intactis opulentior.....	3	Phœbus volentem.....	1
Intēger vitæ.....	2	Pindārum quisquis.....	2
Intermissa, Venus, diu.....	3	Poscīmur: si quid.....	2
Jam jam effīcaci.....	11	Quæ cura Patrum.....	1
Jam pauca arātro.....	1	Qualem ministrum.....	1
Jam satis terris.....	2	Quando repostum.....	4
Jam veris comītes.....	5	Quantum distet ab Inācho.....	3
Justum et tenācem.....	1	Quem tu, Melpomēne.....	8
Laudābunt alii.....	8	Quem virum aut herōa.....	2
Lupis et agnis.....	4	Quid bellicōsus.....	1
Lydia, dic, per omnes.....	12	Quid dedicatum.....	1
Mæcenas atāvis.....	7	Quid fles, Asterie.....	6
Malā solūta.....	4	Quid immerentes.....	4
Martiis cælebs.....	2	Quid obserātis.....	11
Mater sæva Cupidinum.....	3	Quid tibi vis.....	8
Mercūri, sacunde.....	2	Quis desiderio.....	5
Mercūri, nam te.....	2	Quis multa gracilis.....	6
Miserarum est.....	19	Quo me, Bacche.....	3

Quo, quo, scelesti ruſtis.....	No. 4	Tu ne quæsiëris.....	No. 9
Quum tu, Lydia.....	3	Tyrrhëna regum.....	1
Rectius vives.....	2	Ulla si juris.....	3
Rogâre longo.....	4	Uxor paupëris Ibÿci.....	1
Scribëris Vario.....	5	Velox amœnum.....	1
Septîmi, Gades.....	2	Vides, ut altâ.....	
Sic te Diva potens.....	3	Vile potâbis.....	2
Solvitur acris hiems.....	17	Vitas hinnuleo.....	6
Te maris et terræ.....	8	Vixi puellis.....	1

The following are the single metres used by Horace in his lyric compositions, viz :—

- |  |                              |
|--|------------------------------|
| 1. Dactylic Hexameter.                       | 11. Choriambic Pentameter.   |
| 2. Dactylic Tetrameter <i>a posteriôri</i> . | 12. Choriambic Tetrameter.   |
| 3. Dactylic Trimeter Catalectic.             | 13. Asclepiadic Tetrameter.  |
| 4. Adonic.                                   | 14. Glyconic.                |
| 5. Trimeter Iambic.                          | 15. Pherecratic.             |
| 6. Iambic Trimeter Catalectic.               | 16. Choriambic Dimeter.      |
| 7. Iambic Dimeter.                           | 17. Ionic <i>a minôre</i> .  |
| 8. Archilochian Iambic Dimeter Hypermeter.   | 18. Greater Alcaic.          |
| 9. Iambic Dimeter Acephalous.                | 19. Archilochian Heptameter. |
| 10. Sapphic.                                 | 20. Lesser Alcaic.           |



## APPENDIX.

### GRAMMATICAL FIGURES.

§ 322. Certain deviations from the regular form and construction of words, are called *grammatical figures*. These may relate either to Orthography and Etymology, or to Syntax.

#### I. FIGURES OF ORTHOGRAPHY AND ETYMOLOGY.

These are distinguished by the general name of *metaplasms*.

1. *Prosthesis* is the prefixing of a letter or syllable to a word; as, *gnātus*, for *nātus*; *tētūli*, for *tūli*. These, however, are rather the ancient customary forms, from which those now in use were formed by *aphæresis*.

2. *Aphæresis* is the taking of a letter or syllable from the beginning of a word; as, *'st*, for *est*; *rābōnem*, for *arrābōnem*.

3. *Epenthesis* is the insertion of a letter or syllable in the middle of a word; as, *ālītūm*, for *ālitum*; *Māvors*, for *Mars*.

4. *Syncope* is the omission of a letter or syllable in the middle of a word; as, *deūm*, for *deōrum*; *meūm factūm*, for *meōrum factōrum*; *sæcla*, for *sæcūla*; *flesti*, for *flēvistī*; *rēpostus*, for *rēpōsitus*; *aspris*, for *aspēris*.

5. *Crasis* is the contraction of two vowels into one; as, *cōgo*, for *cōāgo*; *nīl*, for *nihil*.

6. *Paragoge* is the addition of a letter or syllable to the end of a word; as, *med*, for *me*; *claudier*, for *claudi*.

7. *Apocope* is the omission of the final letter or syllable of a word; as, *mēn'*, for *mēne*; *Antōnī*, for *Antōnīi*.

8. *Antithesis* is the substitution of one letter for another; as, *ollī*, for *illī*; *optūmus*, for *opīmus*; *afficio*, for *adficio*. *O* is often thus used for *u*, especially after *v*; as, *voltus*, for *vultus*; *servom*, for *servum*. So after *qu*; as, *æquom*, for *æquum*.

9. *Metathesis* is the changing of the order of letters in a word; as *pistris*, for *pristis*.

#### II. FIGURES OF SYNTAX.

323. The figures of Syntax are *ellipsis*, *pleonasm*, *enallage*, and *hyperbāton*.

1. (a.) *Ellipsis* is the omission of some word or words in a sentence; as,

*Aiunt*, scil. *hōmīnes*. *Dārīus Hystaspis*, scil. *filius*. *Cāno*, scil. *ēgo*. *Quid multa?* scil. *dīcam*. *Ex quo*, scil. *tempōre*. *Fērīna*, scil. *caro*.

(b.) Ellipsis includes *asyndeton*, *zeugma*, *syllipsis*, and *prolepsis*.

(1.) *Asyndeton* is the omission of the copulative conjunction; as, *abiit, excessit, ērāsīt, ērūpīt* scil. *et*. *Cic.* This is called in pure Latin *dissolutio*.

(2.) (a.) *Zeugma* is the uniting of two nouns or two infinitives to a verb, which, as to its meaning, is applicable to only one of them; as, *Pācem an bellum gērens*: (Sall.) where *gērens* is applicable to *bellum* only, while *pācem* requires *agēre*. *Semperne in sanguine, ferro, fūgā versābimur?* (Id.) where the verb does not properly apply to *ferro*.

(b.) *Nēgo* is often thus used with two propositions, one of which is affirmative; as, *Nēgant Cēsārem mansūrum, postulātāque interpōsita esse*, for *aicuntque postulāta*. Cic. See § 209, Note 4.

(c.) When an adjective or verb, referring to two or more nouns, agrees with one, and is understood with the rest, the construction is also sometimes called *zeugma*, but more commonly *syllipsis*; as, *Et gēnus, et virtus, nisi cum re, vīlior algā est*. Hor. *Cāper tibi salvus et hœdi*. Virg. *Quamvis ille niger, quamvis tu amāda esses*. Id.

(2.) *Syllepsis* is when an adjective or verb, belonging to two or more nouns of different genders, persons, or numbers, agrees with one rather than another, as, *Attōniti nōritāle pāvent Baucis, timīdusque Philēmon*. Ovid. *Prōcumbit ūterque prōnus hūma*, i. e. *Deucālion et Pyrrha*. Id. *Sustulimus manus et ego et Balbus*. Cic. So, *Ipse cum frātre ādesse jussi sūmus*. Id. *Prōjectisque amīcūlo et litēris*. Curt. See §§ 205, R. 2, and 209, R. 12, (3.) and (7.)

(4.) *Prōlepsis* is when the parts, differing in number or person from the whole, are placed after it, the verb or adjective not being repeated; as, *Prīncīpes utrinque pugnam cībant, ab Sūbinis Mettius Curtius, ab Rōmānis Hostus Hostilius*. Liv. *Bōni quōniam convenimus ambo, tu cālāmos inflāre, ego dicere versus*. Virg.

2. (a.) *Pleonasm* is using a greater number of words than is necessary to express the meaning; as,

*Sic ore locūta est*. Virg. *Qui māgis rēre vincere quam diu impērāre mālīt*. Liv. *Nemo unus*. Cic. *Forte fortunā*. Id. *Prūdēns sciens*. Ter.

(b.) Under *pleonasm* are included *parelcon*, *polysyndeton*, *hendīādys*, and *periphrasis*.

(1.) *Parelcon* is the addition of an unnecessary syllable or particle to pronouns, verbs, or adverbs; as, *egomet, agendum, fortassean*. Such additions, however, usually modify the meaning in some degree.

(2.) *Pōlysyndeton* is a redundancy of conjunctions; as, *Una Eurusque Nōtusque ruunt creberque procellis Africus*. Virg.

(3.) *Hendīādys* is the expression of an idea by two nouns connected by *et* *que*, or *atque*, instead of a noun and a limiting adjective or genitive; as, *Pātēris libāmus et auro*, for *aureis pātēris*. Virg. *Libro et silvestri subēre clausam* for *libro subēris*. Id. *Cristis et auro*. Ovid. Met. 3, 32.

(4.) *Pēriphrasis* or *circumlocutio* is a circuitous mode of expression; as, *Tēnēri fœtus ovium*, i. e. *agni*. Virg.

3. (a.) *Enallāge* is a change of words, or a substitution of one gender, number, case, person, tense, mood, or voice of the same word for another.

(b.) *Enallāge* includes *antimeria*, *heterōsis*, *antiptōsis*, *synēsis*, and *anacoluthon*.

(1.) *Antimēria* is the use of one part of speech for another, or the abstract for the concrete; as, *Nostrum istud vīvere triste*, for *nostra vīta*. Pers. *Aliud cras*. Id. *Conjūgiūm vidēbit?* for *conjūgem*. Virg.

(2.) *Heterōsis* is the use of one form of noun, pronoun, verb, etc., for another as, *Ego quōque una pereō, quod mihi est cārīus*, for *qui mihi sum cārīor*. Ter

*Rōmānus praelio victor*, for *Rōmāni victōres*. Liv. Many words are used by the poets in the plural instead of the singular; as, *colla, corda, ora*, etc. See § 98. *Me truncus illapsus cerebro sustulērat*, for *sustulisset*. Hor. See § 259, R. 4.

(3.) *Antiptōsis* is the use of one case for another; as, *Cui nunc cognōmen Iūlo*, for *Iūlus*. Virg. § 204, R. 8. *Uxor invicti Jōvis esse nescis*, for *te esse uxōrem*. Hor. § 210, R. 6.

(4.) *Synēsis*, or *synthēsis*, is adapting the construction to the sense of a word, rather than to its gender or number; as, *Sūbeunt Tēgæa jūventus auxilio tardi*. Stat. *Concursus pōpuli mirantium quid rei est*. Liv. *Pars in crūcem acti*. Sall. *Ubi illic est scēlus, qui me perdidit?* Ter. *Id mea minime rēfert, qui sum nātū maximus*. Id. See § 205, R. 3, (1.) and (3.), and § 206, (12.)

(5.) *Anacōlūthōn* is a disagreement in construction between the latter and former part of a sentence; as, *Nam nos omnes, quibus est ālicunde āliquis objectus libos, omne quod est intērea tempus, priusquam id rescitum est, lucro est*. Ter. In this example, the writer began as if he intended to say *lucro habōmus*, and ended as if he had said *nōbis omnibus*, leaving *nos omnes* without its verb.

4. (a.) *Hýperbāton* is a transgression of the usual order of words or clauses.

(b.) *Hýperbāton* includes *ānastrōphe*, *hystēron prōtēron*, *hýpallāge*, *synchýsis*, *tmēsis*, and *pārenthēsis*.

(1.) *Anastrōphe* is an inversion of the order of two words; as, *Transtra per et rēmos*, for *per transtra*. Virg. *Collo dāre brāchia circum*, for *circumdāre*. Id. *Nox ērit āna sūper*, for *sūpērērit*. Ovid. *Et faciūt āre*, for *ārēfaciūt*. Lucr.

(2.) *Hystēron prōtēron* is reversing the natural order of the sense; as, *Mōriāmur, et in mēdia arma ruāmus*. Virg. *Vālet atque vivit*. Ter.

(3.) *Hýpallāge* is an interchange of constructions; as, *In nōva fert āntmus mūtatas dicēre formas corpōra*, for *corpōra mūtata in nōvas formas*. Ovid. *Dāre classibus Austrōs*, for *dāre classes Austris*. Virg.

(4.) *Synchýsis* is a confused position of words; as, *Saxa vōcant Itālī, mēdiis quæ in fluctibus, āras*, for *quæ saxa in mēdiis fluctibus, Itālī vōcant āras*. Virg.

(5.) *Tmēsis* or *diacōpe* is the separation of the parts of a compound word; as, *Septem subjecta triōni gens*, for *septentrionī*. Virg. *Quæ me cumque vōcant terræ*. Id. *Per mihi, per, inquam, grātum fēcēris*. Cic.

(6.) *Pārenthēsis* or *dialýsis* is the insertion of a word or words in a sentence interrupting the natural connection; as, *Titýre dum rēdeo, (brēvis est via,) pasce cāpeīlas*. Virg.

REMARK. To the above may be added *archaism* and *Hellenism*, which belong both to the figures of etymology and to those of syntax.

(1.) *Archaism* is the use of ancient forms or constructions; as, *aulār*, for *uile*; *sēnāti*, for *sēnātūs*; *fuat*, for *sit*; *prōhibesso*, for *prōhibuēro*; *impetrassēre*, for *impetrātūrum esse*; *fārīer*, for *fārī*; *nēnu*, for *non*; *endo*, for *in*;—*Opēram ābūtitur*, for *ōpērā*. Ter. *Quid tibi hanc cūrātio est rem?* Plaut.

(2.) *Hellenism* is the use of Greek forms or constructions; as, *Hēlēne*, for *Pēlēna*; *Antiphōn*, for *Antiphō*; *aurās* (gen.), for *auræ*; *Pallādos*, *Pallada*, for *Pallādis*, *Palladem*; *Trōāsīn*, *Trōādas*, for *Trōādibus*, *Trōādes*;—*Abstinēto irārūm*. Hor. *Tempus dēsistēre pugnæ*. Virg.

§ 324. (1.) To the grammatical figures may not improperly be subjoined certain others, which are often referred to in philological works, and which are called

## TROPES AND FIGURES OF RHETORIC.

(2.) A rhetorical figure is a mode of expression different from the direct and simple way of expressing the same sense. The turning of a word from its original and customary meaning, is called a *trope*.



1. (a.) A *metaphor* is the transferring of a word from the object to which it properly belongs, and applying it to another, to which that object has some analogy; as, *Ridet ager*, The field smiles. Virg. *Ætas aurea*, The golden age. Ovid. *Nautragia fortune*, The wreck of fortune. Cic. *Mentis oculi*, The eyes of the mind. Id. *Virtus animum gloriæ stimulis concitat*. The harshness of a metaphor is often softened by means of *quasi*, *tamquam*, *quidam*, or *ut ita dicam*; as, *In unâ philosophiâ quasi tabernaculum vitæ suæ collocarunt*. Id. *Opimum quoddam et tamquam adipatæ dictiōnis genus*. Id.

(b.) *Citachrēsis* or *abūsis* is a bold or harsh metaphor; as, *Vir grēgis ipso æper*. Virg. *Eurus per Siculas equitavit undas*. Hor.

2. *Metonymy* is substituting the name of an object for that of another to which it has a certain relation; as the cause for the effect, the container for what is contained, the property for the substance, the sign for the thing signified, and their contraries; the parts of the body for certain affections; the possessor for the thing possessed; place and time for the persons or things which they comprise, etc.; as, *Mortales*, for *hōmines*. Virg. *Amor duri Martis*, i. e. *belli*. Id. *Fruges Cere rem appellamus, vinum autem Liberi*. Cic. *Cipio vigiliam meam tibi tradere*, i. e. *meam curam*. Id. *Pallida mors*. Hor. *Hausit patetram*, i. e. *vinum*. Virg. *Vina coronant*, i. e. *patetram*. Id. *Necte ternos colores*, i. e. *tria fila diversi coloris*. Id. *Cedunt arma togæ*, i. e. *bellum paci*. Cic. *Sæcula mitescent*, i. e. *hōmines in sæculis*. Virg. *Vivat Pacuvius vel Nestora totum*. Juv. *Doctrinā Græcia nos superabat*, for *Græci superabant*. Cic. *Pagum Suedorum ad ripas Rhēni consederant*, for *pagorum incolæ*. Cæs. *Tempora amicorum*, for *res adversæ*. Cic. *Claudius lege prædictorū vernalis pependit*, for *Claudii prædium*. Suet. *Vici ad Janum medium sedentes*, for *Janum vicum*. Cic.

3. *Synecdōche* is putting a whole for a part, a genus for a species, a singular for a plural, and their contraries; also the material for the thing made of it, a definite for an indefinite number, etc.; as, *Fontem ferebant*. Id. *Tectum*, for *dōmus*. Id. *Armato milite complent*, for *armatis militibus*. Id. *Ferrum*, for *gladius*. Id. *Qui Corinthiis operibus abundant*, i. e. *vasis*. Cic. *Urbem, urbem, mi Rufe, cole*, i. e. *Romam*. Cic. *Centum puer artium*, i. e. *multarum*.

4. *Irony* is the intentional use of words which express a sense contrary to that which the writer or speaker means to convey; as, *Salve bone vir, curasti probe*. Ter. *Egrēgiam vērō laudem, et spolia ampla refertis, tuque, puerque tuus*. Virg.

5. *Hypērbōle* is the magnifying or diminishing of a thing beyond the truth as, *Ipse arduus, atque pulsat sidera*. Virg. *Ociore Euro*. Id.

6. *Mētalepsis* is the including of several tropes in one word; as, *Post aliquot cristas*. Virg. Here *aristas* is put for *messes*, and this for *annos*.

7. (a.) *Allegory* is a consistent series of metaphors, designed to illustrate one subject by another; as, *O navis, referent in mare te novi fluctus*. Hor.

(b.) An obscure allegory or riddle is called an *ænigma*; as, *Dic, quibus in terris tres pateat cæli spatium non amplius ulnas*. Virg.

8. *Antōnōmāsia* is using a proper noun for a common one, and the contrary; as, *Irus et est subito, qui modo Cræsus erat*, for *pauper* and *dives*. Ovid. So, by periphrasis, *pōtor Rhodani*, for *Gallus*. Hor. *Erorsor Carthaginiis*, for *Scipio*. Quint. *Elōquentiæ princeps*, for *Cicero*. Id. *Tydidēs*, for *Diōmēdes*. Virg.

9. *Litōtes* is a mode of expressing something by denying the contrary; as, *Non laudo*, I blame. Ter. *Non innoxia verba*. Virg.

10. *Antiphrāsis* is using a word in a sense opposite to its proper meaning, as, *Auri sacra fames*. Virg.

11. *Euphemism* is the use of softened language to express what is offensive or distressing; as, *Si quid accidisset Cæsari*, i. e. *si mortuus esset*. Vell.

12. *Antinacclāsis* or *punning* is the use of the same word in different senses as, *Quis negat Enēam natum de stirpe Nērōnem? Sustulit hic matrem, sustulit ille patrem*. Epigr. *Amari jucundum est, si curetur ne quid insit amari*. Cic.

13. *Anāphōra* or *ēpānāphōra* is the repetition of a word at the beginning of successive clauses; as, *Nihilne te nocturnum præsidium pālātii, nihil urbis vigiliæ, nihil timor pōpuli*, etc. Cic. *Te, dulcis conjux, te, sōlo in litōre sēcum, te, veniente diu, te, decēdente, cānēbat*. Virg.

14. *Epistrōphe* is the repetition of a word at the end of successive clauses, as, *Pænos pōpulus Rōmānus justitiā vicit, armis vicit, libērālitate vicit*. Cic. In pure Latin this figure is called *conversio*.

15. *Symplōce* is the repetition of a word at the beginning, and of another at the end, of successive clauses, and hence it includes the anaphōra and the epistrōphe; as, *Quis lēgem tulit?* Rullus: *Quis māiorem pōpuli partem suffragiis privavit?* Rullus: *Quis cōmitiis præsuit?* Idem Rullus. Cic.

16. *Epānālepsis* is a repetition of the same word or sentence after intervening words or clauses. See Virg. *Gcor. II. 4—7*.

17. *Anādiplosis* is the use of the same word at the end of one clause, and the beginning of another; as, *Sēquitur pulcherrimus Astur, Astur ēquo fidens*. Virg. *A. 10, 180. Nunc etiam audes in hōrum conspectum venīre, venīre audes in hōrum conspectum?* Cic. This is sometimes called *ēpānastrōphe*.

18. *Epānādiplosis* is the use of the same word both at the beginning and end of a sentence; as, *Crescit amor nummi, quantum ipsa pēcūnia crescit*. Juv.

19. *Epānādos* or *rēgressio* is the repetition of the same words in an inverted order; as, *Crūdēlis māter māgis, an puer imprōbus ille? Imprōbus ille puer, crūdēlis tu quōque, māter*. Virg.

20. *Epizeuxis* is a repetition of the same word for the sake of emphasis; as, *Excitāte, excitāte eum ab infēris*. Cic. *Ah Cōrýdon, Cōrýdon, quæ te dēmentia cēpit?* Virg. *Ibimus, ibimus, utcumque prēcēdes*. Hor.

21. *Climax* is a gradual amplification by means of a continued anadiplosis, each successive clause beginning with the conclusion of that which precedes it; as, *Quæ reliqua spes munet libertātis, si illis et quod libet, licet; et quod licet, possunt; et quod possunt, audent; et quod audent, vobis molestum non est?* Cic. This, in pure Latin, is called *grādātio*.

22. *Incrēmentum* is an amplification without a strict climax; as, *Fācinus est, incirī cīrem Rōmānum; scēlus, verbērārī; prōpe parrīciūm, necārī; quid dicam in crūcem tolli?* Cic.

23. *Pōlyptōton* is the repetition of a word in different cases, genders, numbers, tenses, etc.; as, *Jam clipeus clipeis, umbōne rēpellitur umbo; ense minax ensis, pēde pes, et cuspide cuspis*. Stat.

24. *Paregmēnon* is the use of several words of the same origin, in one sentence; as, *Abesse non pōtest, quin ejusdem hōminis sit, qui imprōbos prōbet, prōbos imprōbāre*. Cic. *Istam pugnam pugnābo*. Plaut.

25. *Pārōnōmāsia* is the use of words which resemble each other in sound; as, *Amor et melle et felle est fēcundissimus*. Plaut. *Cīrem bōnūrum artium bōnārum partium*. Cic. *Amantes sunt āmentes*. Ter. This figure is sometimes called *agnōmīnātio*.

26. *Hōmæoprōphēron* or *alliteration* is the use in the same sentence of several words beginning with the same letter; as, *O Tite, tūte Tūti, tibi tanta, tyrranne, tulisti*. Enn. *Neu patriæ vāldas in viscēra vertite vīres*. Virg.

27. *Antithēsis* is the placing of different or opposite words or sentiments in contrast; as, *Hūjus orātiōnis difficilius est exitum quam principium invēnīre*. Cic. *Cæsar bēnēficiis ac mūnificentiā magnus habēbātur; integrītate vitæ Cato*. Sall.

28. *Orýmōron* unites words of contrary significations, thus producing a seeming contradiction; as, *Concordia discors*. Hor. *Quum tacent, clāmant*. Cic.

29. *Symnōymia* is the use of different words or expressions having the same import; as, *Non fēram, non patiā, non sinam*. Cic. *Prōmitto, rēcipio, spondeo*. Id.

30. *Părăbōla* or *Simile* is the comparison of one thing with another; as, *Rē uenite te, tamquam serpens e lātībūlis, ōcūlis ēmānentibus, inflāto collo, tūmīdis ceruicibus, intūlisti.* Cic.

31. *Erōtēsis* is an earnest question, and often implies a strong affirmation of the contrary; as, *Crēditis āvectos hostes?* Virg. *Heu! quæ me æquōra possunt accipere?* Id.

32. *Epānorthōsis* or *Correctio* is the recalling of a word, in order to place a stronger or more significant one in its stead; as, *Filiū unicū adōlescentūlū hābeo: ah! quid dixi? me hābere? Imo hābui.* Ter.

33. *Apōsiōpēsis*, *Rētcentia*, or *Interruptio*, is leaving a sentence unfinished in consequence of some emotion of the mind; as, *Quos ēgo—sed mōtos præstat compōnere fluctus.* Virg.

34. *Prōsōpōpæia* or *personification* represents inanimate things as acting or speaking, and persons dead or absent as alive and present: as, *Quæ (patria) tēcum, Cātīlīna, sic agit.* Cic. *Virtus sūmit aut pōnit sēcūres.* Hor.

35. *Apostrōphe* is a turning off from the regular course of the subject, to address some person or thing; as, *Vi pōtitur; quid non mortālia pectōra cōgis, auri sacra fāmes!* Virg.

36. *Părăleipsis* is a pretended omission of something, in order to render it more observed. See Cic. Cat. 1, 6, 14.

37. *Epiphōnēma* or *Acclāmatio* is an exclamation or grave reflection on something said before; as, *Tantæ mōlis erat Rōmānam condere gentem.* Virg.

38. *Ecphōnēsis* or *Exclāmatio* shows some violent emotion of the mind; as, *O tempōra! O mōres!*

39. *Apōria*, *Diāpōrēsis*, or *Dūbitatio*, expresses a doubt in regard to what is to be said or done; as, *Quos accēdam, aut quos appellem?* Sall.

40. *Prōlepsis* is the anticipation of an objection before it is made, or of an event before it occurs; as, *Vērum anceps pugnæ fuērat fortūna. Fuisset: Quem mētui mōritūra?* Virg.

§ 325. To the figures of rhetoric may be subjoined the following terms, used to designate defects or blemishes in style:—

1. *Barbarism* is either the use of a foreign word, or a violation of the rules of orthography, etymology, or prosody; as, *rīgōrōsus*, for *rīgīdus* or *sēvērus*; *domminus*, for *dōmīnus*; *dāvī*, for *dēdī*.

2. *Solecism* is a violation of the rules of syntax; as, *Vēnus pulcher; vos invēdēmus.*

3. *Neoterism* is the use of words or phrases introduced by authors living subsequently to the best ages of Latinity; as, *murdrum*, a murder; *constābulārius*, a constable.

4. *Tautology* is a repetition of the same meaning in different words; as, *Jam ros āciem, et prœlia, et hostem poscitis.* Sil.

5. *Amphibolia* is the use of equivocal words or constructions; as, *Gallus*, Gaul, or a cock. *Allo te, Æacida, Rōmānos vincere posse.* Quint.

6. *Idiotism* is a construction peculiar to one or more languages: thus, the ablative after comparatives is a Latinism. When a peculiarity of one language is imitated in another, this is also called *idiotism*. Thus, *Mitte mihi verbum* instead of *Fac me certiorem*, is an Anglicism.



## ROMAN MODE OF RECKONING.

### I. OF TIME.

#### 1. *The Roman Day.*

§ 326. (1.) With the Romans, as with us, the day was either *civil* or *natural*. Their civil day, like ours, extended from midnight to midnight. The natural day continued from sunrise to sunset, as, on the other hand, the night extended from sunset to sunrise. The natural day and night were each divided into twelve equal parts or *hours*, which were consequently of different length, according to the varying length of the days and nights in the successive seasons of the year. It was only at the equinox that the diurnal and nocturnal hours of the Romans were equal to each other, as each was then equal to the twenty-fourth part of the civil day.

(2.) In the Roman camp the night was further divided into four watches (*vigiliæ*), consisting each of three Roman hours, the second and fourth watches ending respectively at midnight and at sunrise

#### 2. *The Roman Month and Year.*

(1.) The calendar of the Romans, as rectified by Julius Cæsar, agreed with our own in the number of months, and of the days in each, according to the following table:—

Jānuārius . 31 days.	Maius . . 31 days.	September 30 days.
Februārius 28 or 29.	Jūnius . . 30 “	Octōber . . 31 “
Martius . . 31 days.	Quintīlis 31 “	Nōvember 30 “
Aprīlis . . . 30 “	Sextīlis . 31 “	Dēcember 31 “

In early times the Roman year began with March, and the names *Quintīlis*, *Sextīlis*, *September*, etc., indicated the distance of those months from the commencement of the year. *Quintīlis* and *Sextīlis* were afterwards called *Jūlius* and *Augustus* in honor of the first two emperors. The Romans, instead of reckoning in an uninterrupted series from the first to the last day of a month, had in each month three points or periods from which their days were counted—the *Calends*, the *Nones*, and the *Ides*. The *Calends* (*Cālendæ*), were always the *first* day of the month. The *Nones* (*Nōnæ*), were the *fifth*, and the *Ides* (*Idus*), the *thirteenth*; except in March, May, July, and October, when the *Nones* occurred on the *seventh* day, and the *Ides* on the *fifteenth*.

(2.) They always counted forward, from the day whose date was to be determined, to the next *Calends*, *Nones*, or *Ides*, and designated the day by its distance before such point. After the first day of the month, therefore, they began to reckon so many days before the *Nones*; after the *Nones*, so many days before the *Ides*; and after the *Ides*, so many before the *Calends*, of the next month.

Thus, the second of January was denoted by *quarto Nōnas Jānuārias*, or *Jānuāriū*, scil. *die ante*: the third, *tertio Nōnas*; the fourth, *pridie Nōnas*; and the fifth, *Nōnis*. The sixth was denoted by *octāvo Idus*; the seventh

*septimo Idus*; and so on to the thirteenth, on which the Ides fell. The fourteenth was denoted by *undevigēstimo Calendas Februārias*, or *Februārii*; and so on to the end of the month.

(3.) The day preceding the Calends, Nones, and Ides, was termed *pridie Calendas*, etc., scil. *ante*: in designating the other days, both the day of the Calends, etc., and that whose date was to be determined, were reckoned; hence the second day before the Calends, etc., was called *tertio*, the third *quarto*, etc.

(4.) To reduce the Roman calendar to our own, therefore, when the day is between the Calends and the Nones or between the Nones and the Ides, it is necessary to take one from the number denoting the distance of the given day from the Nones or the Ides, and to subtract the remainder from the number of the day on which the Nones or Ides fell in the given month.

Thus, to determine the day equivalent to *IV. Nonas Jānuārias*, we take 1 from 4, and subtract the remainder, 3, from 5, the day on which the Nones of January fell (i. e.  $4-1=3$ , and  $5-3=2$ ): this gives 2, or the second of January, for the day in question. So *VI. Idus Aprilis*: the Ides of April falling upon the 13th, we take ( $6-1$ , i. e.) 5 from 13, which leaves 8 (i. e.  $6-1=5$ , and  $13-5=8$ ): the expression, therefore, denotes the 8th of April.

(a.) In reckoning the days before the Calends, as they are not the last day of the current month, but the first of the following, it is necessary to subtract two from the number denoting the distance of the given day from the Calends of the following month, and to take the remainder from the number of days in the month.

Thus, *XV. Cal. Quintiles* is  $15-2=13$ , and  $30-13=17$ , i. e. the Roman date *XV. Cal. Quint.* is equivalent to the 17th of June.

(b.) To reduce our calendar to the Roman, the preceding method is to be reversed. Thus when the given day is between the Calends and the Nones or between the Nones and the Ides, (unless it be the day before the Nones or the Ides), we are to *add* one to the number denoting the day of the month, according to our reckoning, on which the Nones or Ides fell. But if the day is after the Ides, (unless it be the last day of the month), we must add *two* to the number of days in the month, and then subtract the number denoting the day of the month as expressed in our reckoning. The remainder will be the day before the Nones, Ides or Calends.

Thus to find the Roman date corresponding to the third of April, we have  $5+1-3=3$ ; the required date, therefore, is *III. Non. Apr.*—To find the proper Roman expression for our tenth of December we have  $13+1-10=4$ ; the date, therefore, is *IV. Id. Dec.*—The Roman expression for the 22d of August, in pursuance of the above rule, is found thus,  $31+2-22=11$ , and the date is *XI Cal. Sept.*

(5.) In leap year, both the 24th and 25th of February were called the sixth before the Calends of March. The 24th was called *dies bisextus*, and the year itself *annus bisextus*, bissextile or leap year.

(a.) The day after the Calends, etc., was sometimes called *postridie calendas*, etc.

(b.) The names of the months are properly adjectives, though often used as nouns, *mensis* being understood.

(6.) The correspondence of our calendar with that of the Romans is exhibited in the following

TABLE.

<i>Days of our months.</i>	MAR. JUL. MAY. OCT.	JAN. DEC. AUG.	APR. SEPT. JUN. NOV.	FEBR.
1	Calendæ.	Calendæ.	Calendæ.	Calendæ.
2	VI. Nonas.	IV. Nonas.	IV. Nonas.	IV. Nonas.
3	V. "	III. "	III. "	III. "
4	IV. "	Pridie "	Pridie "	Pridie "
5	III. "	Nonæ.	Nonæ.	Nonæ.
6	Pridie Non.	VIII. Idus.	VIII. Idus.	VIII. Idus.
7	Nonæ.	VII. "	VII. "	VII. "
8	VIII. Idus.	VI. "	VI. "	VI. "
9	VII. "	V. "	V. "	V. "
10	VI. "	IV. "	IV. "	IV. "
11	V. "	III. "	III. "	III. "
12	IV. "	Pridie "	Pridie "	Pridie "
13	III. "	Idus.	Idus.	Idus.
14	Pridie Id.	XIX. Cal.	XVIII. Cal.	XVI. Cal.
15	Idus.	XVIII. "	XVII. "	XV. "
16	XVII. Cal.	XVII. "	XVI. "	XIV. "
17	XVI. "	XVI. "	XV. "	XIII. "
18	XV. "	XV. "	XIV. "	XII. "
19	XIV. "	XIV. "	XIII. "	XI. "
20	XIII. "	XIII. "	XII. "	X. "
21	XII. "	XII. "	XI. "	IX. "
22	XI. "	XI. "	X. "	VIII. "
23	X. "	X. "	IX. "	VII. "
24	IX. "	IX. "	VIII. "	VI. "
25	VIII. "	VIII. "	VII. "	V. "
26	VII. "	VII. "	VI. "	IV. "
27	VI. "	VI. "	V. "	III. "
28	V. "	V. "	IV. "	Pridie " Mar
29	IV. "	IV. "	III. "	
30	III. "	III. "	Pridie Cal.	
31	Pridie Cal.	Pridie Cal.		

(7.) In leap-year the last seven days of February were reckoned thus:—

23. VII. <i>Calendas Martias.</i>	27. IV. <i>Cal. Mart.</i>
24. <i>bisexto Cal. Mart.</i>	28. III. " "
25. VI. <i>Cal. Mart.</i>	29. <i>pridie Cal. Mart.</i>
26. V. " "	

(a.) Hence in reducing a date of February in leap-year to the Roman date, for the first 23 days we proceed according to the preceding rule in 4, (b.), as if the month had only 28 days. The 24th is marked as *bisexto Cal. Mart.*, and to obtain the proper expression for the remaining five days we regard the month as having 29 days. Thus the 27th of February in leap-year is  $29+2-27=4$ , and the proper Roman expression is *IV. Cal. Mart.*

(b.) On the other hand, to reduce a Roman date of February in leap-year to our date we reverse the above process, and during the Nones and Ides and until the *VII. Calendas Martias* we reckon the month to have only 28 days:—*bisexto Cal. Mart.* is set down as the 24th, and for the remaining days designated as *VI. V. IV. III.* and *pridie Cal. Mart.* we reckon the month to have 29 days. Thus *III. Cal. Mart.* is  $3-2=1$ , and  $29-1=28$ , and the given day is equivalent to the 23th of February.



(8.) The Latins not only said *tertio, pridie, etc., Cælendas, etc.*, but also *antediem tertium, etc., Cælendas, etc.*; and the latter form in Cicero and Livy is far more common than the former, and is usually written thus, *a. d. III Cal.*, etc.

(9.) The expression *ante diem* was used as an indeclinable noun, and is joined with *in* and *ex*; as, *Consul Látinas fêrias in ante diem tertium Idus Sextilis edixit*. The consul appointed the Latin festival for the third day before the Ides of August. Liv. *Supplicatio indicta est ex ante diem quintum Idus Octôbres*. Id. So, *Ad pridie Nônas Maias*. Cic.

(10.) The week of seven days (*hebdômas*), was not in use among the Romans under the republic, but was introduced under the emperors. The days of the week were then named from the planets; *dies Sôlis*, Sunday; *dies Lûnæ*, Monday; *dies Martis*, Tuesday; *dies Mercûrii*, Wednesday; *dies Jôvis*, Thursday; *dies Vênêris*, Friday; *dies Sâturni*, Saturday.

(11.) The term *nundinæ* (from *nôvem—dies*) denotes the regular market day at Rome when the country people came into the city; but it is not used for the purpose of denoting the period of eight days intervening between two successive market days.

(12.) The year at Rome was designated by the names of the consuls for that year. Thus Virgil was born, *M. Licinio Crasso et Cn. Pompeio Magno consulibus*, i. e. in the year of the consulship of Crassus and Pompey. But in Roman authors events are often dated from the year in which Rome was founded, which, according to Varro, was in the 753d year before the birth of Christ. This period was designated as *anno urbis condite*, and by abbreviation, *a. u. c.*, or simply *u. c.*, and sometimes by *a.* alone, before the numerals.

Thus the birth of Virgil was *a. u. c.* 684. To reduce such dates to our reckoning, if the given number is less than 754, we subtract it from the latter number, and the difference is the required year before Christ. The birth of Virgil therefore is  $754 - 684 = 70$  before Christ.—But if the number of the Roman year exceeds 753, we deduct 753 from the given number, and the remainder is the year after Christ. For example, the emperor Augustus died *a. u. c.* 767, and the corresponding year of our era is  $767 - 753 = 14$ .

## II. TABLES OF MONEY, WEIGHT, AND MEASURE.

### OF THE AS.

§ 327. The Romans used this word (*As*) to denote, I. The copper coin, whose value (in the time of Cicero) was about one cent and a half of our money. II. The unit of weight (*libra*), or of measure (*jûgêrum*). III. Any unit or integer considered as divisible; as, of inheritances, interest, houses, etc.; whence *ex asse hêres*, one who inherits the whole. The multiples of the *As* are, *Dûpondius* (*duo pondo*; for the *As* originally weighed a pound), i. e. 2 Asses; *Sestertius* (*sesqui tertius*), i. e.  $2\frac{1}{2}$  Asses; *Tressis*, i. e. 3 Asses; *Quatrussis*, i. e. 4 Asses; and so on to *Centussis*, i. e. 100 Asses. The *As*, whatever unit it represented, was divided into twelve parts or *uncie*, and the different fractions received different names, as follows:

	Uncia.		Uncia
As.....	12	Quincunx .....	5
Denx.....	11	Triens.....	4
Dextans .....	10	Quâdrans, or Têruncius.....	3
Dodrans .....	9	Sextans.....	2
Bes.....	8	Uncia.....	1
Septunx... ..	7		
ornis .....	6	Sescuncia.....	$1\frac{1}{2}$

The *Uncia* was divided in the following manner:—

1	Uncia	contained	2	Sēmunciæ.
"	"		3	Duellæ.
"	"		4	Sicilicæ.
"	"		6	Sextulæ.
"	"		8	Drachmæ.
"	"		24	Scrûpula.
"	"		48	Oboli.

#### ROMAN COINS.

These were the *Tēruncius*, *Sembella*, and *As* or *Libella*, of copper; the *Sestertius*, *Quinārius* (or *Victōriātus*), and *Dēnārius*, of silver; and the *Aureus* of gold.

			\$	Cts.	M.
The	Tēruncius.....		0	0	3.9
2	Tēruncii make	1	Sembella.....	0	0 7.8
2	Sembellæ	"	1	As or Libella.....	0 1 5.6
2½	Asses*	"	1	Sestertius.....	0 3 9
2	Sestertii	"	1	Quinārius.....	0 7 8
2	Quinārii	"	1	Dēnārius.....	0 15 6
25	Dēnārii	"	1	Aureus.....	3 90 0

\* Sometimes also (in copper) the *triens*, *sextans*, *uncia*, *sextula*, and *dūpondius*.

#### ROMAN COMPUTATION OF MONEY.

##### *Sestertii Nummi.*

	\$	Cts.	M.
Sestertius (or nummus) .....	0	3	9
Dēcem sestertii .....	0	39	0
Centum sestertii .....	3	90	0
Mille sestertii (equal to a sestertium) .....	39	0	0

##### *Sestertia.*

Sestertium (equal to mille sestertii).....	39	0	0
Dēcem sestertia .....	390	0	0
Centum, centum sestertia, or centum millia sestertiūm.....	3900	0	0
Dēcies sestertiūm, or dēcies centēna millia nummūm .....	39000	0	0
Centies, or centies H. s. ....	390000	0	0
Millies H. s. ....	3900000	0	0
Millies centies H. s. ....	4290000	0	0

N. B.—The marks denoting a Sestertius nummus are IIS., LLS., HS., which are properly abbreviations for 2 1-2 asses. Observe, also, that when a line is placed over the numbers, *centēna millia* is understood, as in the case of the numeral adverbs; thus, II S MC. is millies centies HS.; whereas HS MC. is only 1100 Sestertii.

#### ROMAN CALCULATION OF INTEREST.

The Romans received interest on their loans monthly, their highest rate being one per cent. (*centesima*), a month, i. e. 12 per cent a year. As this was the highest rate, it was reckoned as the *as* or unit in reference to the lower rates, which were denominated, according to the usual division of the *as*, *sēmises*, *triētes*, *quādrantes*, etc., i. e. the half, third, fourth, etc., of the *as* or of 12 per cent. according to the following table:—

	Per cent. a year
Asses ūsūræ or centēsīmæ.....	12
Sēmises ūsūræ.....	6
Trientes ūsūræ.....	4
Quadrantes ūsūræ.....	3
Sextantes ūsūræ.....	2
Unciæ ūsūræ.....	1
Quincunces ūsūræ.....	6
Septunces ūsūræ.....	7
Besses ūsūræ.....	8
Dodrantes ūsūræ.....	9
Dextantes ūsūræ.....	10
Deunces ūsūræ.....	11

## ROMAN WEIGHTS.

	Oz.	Dwts.	Gr.
Siliqua.....	0	0	3.036
8 Siliquæ make 1 Obolus.....	0	0	9.107
2 Oboli " 1 Scrupulum....	0	0	18.214
8 Scrupula " 1 Drachma.....	0	2	6.643
1½ Drachma " 1 Sextula.....	0	3	0.857
1½ Sextula " 1 Sicilicus.....	0	4	13.286
1½ Sicilicus " 1 Duella.....	0	6	1.714
8 Duellæ " 1 Uncia.....	0	18	5.143
12 Unciæ " 1 Libra* (As) ...	10	18	13.714

\* The *Libra* was also divided, according to the fractions of the *As*, into *Deunx*, etc.

## ROMAN MEASURES FOR THINGS DRY.

	English Corn Measure.			
	Peck.	Gal.	Pint.	Sol. in.
Ligula.....	0	0	0 1-48	0.01
4 Ligulæ make 1 Cyäthus.....	0	0	0 1-12	0.04
1½ Cyäthus " 1 Acētābulum...	0	0	0 1-8	0.06
4 Acētābula " 1 Hēmīna.....	0	0	0 1-2	0.24
2 Hēmīnæ " 1 Sextārius.....	0	0	1	0.48
16 Sextārii " 1 Modius.....	1	0	0	7.68

## ROMAN MEASURES FOR THINGS LIQUID.

	English Wine Measure.		
	Galls.	Pints.	Sol. in.
Ligula.....	0	0 1-48	0.117
4 Ligulæ make 1 Cyäthus.....	0	0 1-12	0.469
1½ Cyäthus " 1 Acētābulum.....	0	0 1-8	0.704
2 Acētābula " 1 Quartārius.....	0	0 1-4	1.409
2 Quartārii " 1 Hēmīna.....	0	0 1-2	2.876
2 Hēmīnæ " 1 Sextārius*.....	0	1	5.636
6 Sextārii " 1 Congius.....	0	7	4.942
4 Congii " 1 Urna.....	3	4 1-2	5.33
2 Urnæ " 1 Amphōra (or Quadrantal).	7	1	10.66
20 Amphōræ " 1 Cūleus.....	143	3	11.095

\* The *Sextārius* was also divided into twelve equal parts, called *cyäthi*, and therefore the *cālces* were denominated *sextantes*, *quadrantes*, *trientes*, according to the number of *cyäthi* which they contained.

N. B.—*Cādus*, *congiārius*, and *dōlium*, are the names of certain vessels, not measures of capacity.



ROMAN MEASURES OF LENGTH.

			English paces.	Feet.	Inch. Dec.
	Digitus transversus .....		0	0	0.725 1-4
1 1-5	Digitus make 1 Uncia.....		0	0	0.967
3	Unciæ " 1 Palmus minor....		0	0	2.901
4	Palmi minores " 1 Pes .....		0	0	11.604
1 1-4	Pes " 1 Palmipes.....		0	1	2.505
1 1-5	Palmipes " 1 Cūbitus.....		0	1	5.106
1 2-3	Cūbitus " 1 Grādus .....		0	2	5.01
2	Grādus " 1 Passus.....		0	4	10 02
125	Passus " 1 Stādium .....	120	4	4 5	
8	Stādia " 1 Milliārium.....	967	4	0	

ROMAN SQUARE MEASURES.

	Roman sq. feet.	English rods.	Sq. pls.	Sq. feet.
Jūgērum (As) .....	28,800	2	18	250.05
Deunx.....	26,400	2	10	183.85
Dextans .....	24,000	2	02	117.64
Dodrans.....	21,600	1	34	51.42
Bes.....	19,200	1	25	257.46
Septunx .....	16,800	1	17	191.25
Sēmis.....	14,400	1	09	125.03
Quincunx.....	12,000	1	01	53.82
Triens .....	9,600	0	32	264.85
Quādrans .....	7,200	0	24	198.64
Sextans.....	4,800	0	16	132.43
Uncia.....	2,400	0	08	66.21

REMARK 1. The Romans reckoned their copper money by *asses*, their silver money by *sestertii*, and their gold money by *aurei* and sometimes by Attic *talents*.

REM. 2. The *as*, as the unit of money, was originally a pound of copper, but its weight was gradually diminished, until, in the later days of the republic, it amounted to only 1-24th of a pound.

REM. 3. (a.) The *dēnārius* was a silver coin, originally equal in value to ten *asses*, whence its name; but, after the weight of the *as* was reduced, the *dēnārius* was equal to eighteen *asses*.

(b.) The *sestertius*, or sesterce, was one fourth of the *dēnārius*, or two *asses* and a half (*sēmistertius*). The *sestertius* was called emphatically *nummus*, as in it all large sums were reckoned after the coining of silver money.

(c.) The *aureus* (a gold coin), in the time of the emperors, was equal to 25 *dēnārii*, or 100 sesterces.

REM. 4. In reckoning money, the Romans called any sum under 2000 sesterces so many *sestertii*; as, *decem sestertii*, ten sesterces; *centum sestertii*, a hundred sesterces.

REM. 5. Sums from 2000 sesterces (inclusive) to 1,000,000, they denoted her by *mille*, *millia*, with *sestertiūm* (gen. plur.), or by the plural of the uter nom *sestertium*, which itself signified a thousand sesterces. Thus they d *quadrāginta millia sestertiūm*, or *quadrāginta sestertia*, to denote 40,000 terces. With the genitive *sestertiūm*, *millia* was sometimes omitted; as *sestertiūm centum*, scil. *millia*, 100,000 sesterces.

REM. 6. To denote a million, or more, they used a combination; thus, *dēcies centēna millia sestertiūm*, 1,000,000 sesterces. The words *centēna millia*, however, were generally omitted; thus, *dēcies sestertiūm*, and sometimes merely *dēcies*. See § 118, 5. So, *centies*, 10 millions; *millies*, 100 millions.

REM. 7. Some suppose that *sestertium*, when thus joined with the numeral adverbs, is always the neuter noun in the nominative or accusative singular. The genitive and ablative of that noun are thus used; as, *Decies sestertii dote*, With a dowry of 1,000,000 sesterces. Tac. *Quinquāgies sestertio*, 5,000,000 sesterces. Id. But this usage does not occur in Cicero.

## ABBREVIATIONS.

§ 328. The following are the most common abbreviations of Latin words:—

A., <i>Aulus</i> .	M. T. C., <i>Marcus Tullius</i>	Q., or Qu., <i>Quintus</i> .
C., <i>Gaius</i> , or <i>Gaius</i> .	Cicero.	Ser., <i>Servius</i> .
Cn., <i>Cnēus</i> .	M., <i>Mānius</i> .	S., or Sex., <i>Sextus</i> .
D., <i>Dēcimus</i> .	Mam., <i>Māmercus</i> .	Sp., <i>Spūrius</i> .
L., <i>Lūcius</i> .	N., <i>Nūmērius</i> .	T., <i>Titus</i> .
M., <i>Marcus</i> .	P., <i>Publius</i> .	Ti., or Tib., <i>Tibērius</i> .

---

A. d., <i>ante diem</i> .	F., <i>Filius</i> ; as, M. F.,	Pont. Max., <i>pontifex</i>
A. U. C., <i>anno urbis con-</i>	<i>Marci filius</i> .	<i>maximus</i> .
<i>ditæ</i> .	Ictus, <i>jūrisconsultus</i> .	Pr., <i>prætor</i> .
Cal., or Kal., <i>Cālendæ</i> .	Id., <i>Idus</i> .	Proc., <i>prōconsul</i> .
Cos., <i>Consul</i> .	Imp., <i>impērātor</i> .	Resp., <i>respública</i> .
Coss., <i>Consūles</i> .	J. O. M., <i>Jōvi, optimo</i>	S., <i>sālūtem, sacrum, or</i>
D., <i>Divus</i> .	<i>maximo</i> .	<i>sēnātus</i> .
D. D., <i>dōno dēdit</i> .	N., <i>nēpos</i> .	S. D. P., <i>sālūtem dicit</i>
D. D. D., <i>dat, dicat, dēdi-</i>	Non., <i>Nōnæ</i> .	<i>plūrimam</i> .
<i>cat, or dōno dicat, dē-</i>	P. C., <i>patres conscripti</i> .	S. P. Q. R., <i>Sēnātus pōpū-</i>
<i>dicat</i> .	Pl., <i>plēbis</i> .	<i>lusque Rōmānus</i> .
Des., <i>dēsīgnātus</i> .	Pop., <i>pōpūlus</i> .	S. C., <i>sēnātūs consultum</i> .
D. M., <i>diis mānibus</i> .	P. R., <i>pōpūlus Rōmānus</i> .	Tr., <i>tribūnus</i> .
Eq. Rom., <i>ēques Rōmānus</i> .		

To these may be added terms of reference; as, *c.*, *cāput*, chapter; *cf.*, *confer* compare; *l. c.*, *lūco citāto*; *l. l.*, *lūco laudāto*, in the place quoted; *v.*, *versus*, verse.

## DIFFERENT AGES OF ROMAN LITERATURE.

§ 329. 1. Of the Roman literature for the first five centuries after the foundation of the city, but few vestiges remain. The writers of the succeeding centuries have been arranged in four ages, in reference to the purity of the language in the period in which they flourished. These are called the *golden, silver, brazen, and iron* ages.

2. The golden age is reckoned from the time of Livius Andronicus, about A. U. C. 514, to the death of Augustus, A. U. C. 767, or A. D. 14, a period of a little more than 250 years. The writers of the early part of this age are valued rather on account of their antiquity, and in connection with the history of the language, than as models of style. It was not till the age of Cicero, that Roman literature reached its highest elevation. The era comprehending the generation immediately preceding, and that immediately succeeding, that of Cicero, as well as his own, is the period in which the most distinguished writers of Rome flourished; and their works are the standard of purity in the Latin language.

3. The silver age extended from the death of Augustus to the death of Trajan, A. D. 118, a period of 104 years. The writers of this age were inferior to those who had preceded them; yet several of them are worthy of commendation.

4. The brazen age comprised the interval from the death of Trajan to the time when Rome was taken by the Goths, A. D. 410. From the latter epoch commenced the iron age, during which the Latin language was much adulterated with foreign words, and its style and spirit essentially injured.

5. The body of Latin writings has been otherwise arranged by Dr. Freund, so as to be comprised in three main periods,—the *Ante-classical*, *Classical*, and *Post-classical*. The ante-classical extends from the oldest fragments of the language to Lucretius and Varro; the classical from Cicero and Cæsar to Tacitus, Suetonius, and the younger Pliny inclusive; the post-classical from that time to the fifth century of our era. The classical Latinity is subdivided into (a.) *Ciceronian*, (b.) *Augustan*, (c.) *post-Augustan*, and to the language of the fourth and fifth centuries he has given the title of *late Latin*.

## LATIN WRITERS IN THE DIFFERENT AGES

(From the *Lexicon of Facciolatus*.)

### WRITERS OF THE GOLDEN AGE.

Livius Andronicus.	L. Cornelius Sisenna.	Q. Novius.
Lævius.	P. Nigidius Figulus.	C. Q. Atta.
C. Nævius.	C. Decius Laberius.	L. Cassius Hemina.
Statius Cæcilius.	M. Verrius Flaccus.	Fenestella.
Q. Ennius.	Varro Attacinus.	Q. Claud. Quadrigarius.
M. Pacuvius.	Titinius.	Cælius Antipater.
L. Accius.	L. Pomponius.	Fabius Pictor.
C. Lucilius.	C. Sempronius Asellio.	Cn. Gellius.
Sex. Turpilius.	Cn. Matius.	L. Piso, and others.
L. Afranius.		

Of the works of the preceding writers, only a few fragments remain.

M. Porcius Cato.	Sex. Aurelius Propertius.	P. Ovidius Naso.
M. Accius Plautus.	C. Sallustius Crispus.	Q. Horatius Flaccus.
M. Terentius Afer.	M. Terentius Varro.	C. Pedo Albinovanus.
T. Lucretius Carus.	Albius Tibullus.	Gratius Faliscus.
C. Valerius Catullus.	P. Virgilius Maro.	Phædrus.
P. Syrus.	T. Livius.	C. Cornificius.
C. Julius Cæsar.	M. Manilius.	A. Hurtius, or Oppius.
C. Cornelius Nepos.	M. Vitruvius.	P. Cornelius Severus.
M. Tullius Cicero.		

To these may be added the following names of lawyers, whose opinions are found in the digests:—

Q. Mutius Scævola.	M. Antistius Labeo.	Masurius Sabinus.
Alfenus Varus.		

Of the writers of the golden age, the most distinguished are Terence, Catullus, Cæsar, Nepos, Cicero, Virgil, Horace, Ovid, T. Livy, and Sallust.



## WRITERS OF THE SILVER AGE.

A. Cornelius Celsus.	M. Annæus Lucānus.	M. Fabius Quintiliānus.
P. Velleius Patercūlus.	T. Petronius Arbiter.	Sex. Julius Frontinus.
L. Junius Moderātus Columella.	C. Plinius Secundus.	C. Cornelius Tacitus.
Pomponius Mela.	C. Silius Italicus.	C. Plinius Cæcilius Se- cundus.
A. Persius Flaccus.	C. Valerius Flaccus.	L. Annæus Florus.
Q. Asconius Pedianus.	C. Julius Solinus.	C. Suetonius Tranquil- lus.
M. Annæus Seneca.	D. Junius Juvenālis.	
L. Annæus Seneca.	P. Papinius Statius.	
	M. Valerius Martiālis.	

The age to which the following writers should be assigned is somewhat uncertain:—

Q. Curtius Rūfus.	Scribonius Largus.	L. Fenestella.
Valerius Prōbus.	Sulpitia.	Atteius Capito.

Of the writers of the silver age, the most distinguished are Celsus, Velleius Columella, the Senecas, the Plinies, Juvenal, Quintilian, Tacitus, Suetonius and Curtius.

## WRITERS OF THE BRAZEN AGE.

A. Gellius.	Vulcatius Gallicānus.	Ammiānus Marcel- linus.
L. Apuleius	Trebellius Pollio.	Vegetius Renātus.
Q. Septimius Tertullia- nus.	Flavius Vopiscus.	Aurel. Theodōrus Macro- bius.
Q. Serēnus Sammonī- cus.	Cælius Aureliānus	Q. Aurelius Symmachus
Censorinus.	Flavius Eutropius.	D. Magnus Ausonius.
Thascius Cæcilius	Rheinnius Fannius.	Paulinus Nolanus.
Cypriānus.	Arnobius Afer.	Sex. Aurelius Victor.
T. Julius Calpurnius.	L. Cælius Lactantius.	Aurel. Prudentius Clē- mens.
M. Aurelius Nemesiānus.	Ælius Donātus.	Cl. Claudianus.
Ælius Spartianus.	C. Vettus Juvenicus.	Marcellus Empiricus
Julius Capitolinus.	Julius Firmicus.	Falconia Prōba.
Ælius Lampridius.	Fab. Marinus Victorinus.	
	Sex. Rūfus, or Rūfus Festus.	

*Of an Age not entirely certain.*

Valerius Maximus.	Terentiānus Maurus.	Sosipāter Charisius.
Justinus.	Minutius Fēlix.	Flavius Avianus.

The opinions of the following lawyers are found in the digests:—

Ulpianus.	Herennius Modestinus.	Julius Paulus.
Neratius Priscus.	Salvius Julianus.	Sex. Pomponius.
P. Juventius Celsus.	Caius.	Vennleius Saturninus.
Priscus Jabolēnus.	Callistrātus.	Ælius Marciānus.
Domitius Ulpianus.	Æmilius Papiniānus.	Ælius Gallus, and others

Of the writers of the brazen age, Justin, Terentianus, Victor, Lactantius and Claudian, are most distinguished.

The age to which the following writers belong is uncertain. The style of some of them would entitle them to be ranked with the writers of the preceding ages, while that of others would place them even below those of the iron age.

Palladius Rutilius Taurus Æmiliānus.	Auctōres Priapeiōrum.	Interpres Darētis Phrygii, et Dictyos Crotensis.
Æmilius Mācer.	Catalecta Virgillii et Ovidii.	Scholiastæ Vetēres.
Messāla Corvīnus.	Auctor oratiōnis Sallustii in Cic. et Cicerōnis in Sall.; item illius <i>Antēquam irret in exsilium</i> .	Grammatici Antiqui.
Vibius Sequester.	Auctor Epistolæ ad Octavianum.	Rhetōres Antiqui.
Julius Obséquens.	Auctor Panegyrici ad Pisōnem.	Medici Antiqui.
L. Ampelius.	Declamatiōnes quæ tribuuntur Quintiliāno, Porcio Latroni, Calpurnio Flacco.	Catalecta Petroniāna.
Apicius Cœlius.		Pervigilium Venēris.
Sex. Pompeius Festus.		Poematia et Epigrammata vetēra a Pithæo collecta.
Prōbus (auctor Notarum.)		Monumentum Ancyranum.
Fulgentius Planciādes.		Fasti Consulāres.
Hyginus.		Inscriptiōnes Vetēres.
C. Cæsar Germanicus.		
P. Victor.		
P. Vegetius.		

## WRITERS OF THE IRON AGE.

Cl. Rutilius Numatiānus.	Latīnus Pacātus.	Ruf. Festus Aviēnus.
Servius Honorātus.	Claudius Mamertīnus, et alii, quorum sunt Panegyrici vetēres.	Arātor.
D. Hieronȳmus.	Alcīmus Avitus.	M. Aurelius Cassidōrus.
D. Augustīnus.	Manl. Severinus Beethius.	Fl. Cresconius Corippus.
Sulpicius Sevērus.	Prisciānus.	Venantius Fortunātus.
Paulus Orosius.	Nonius Marcellus.	Isidōrus Hispalensis.
Cœlius Sedulius.	Justiniāni Institutiōnes et Codex.	Anonȳmus Ravennas.
Codex Theodosiānus.		Aldhelmus or Althelmus.
Martiānus Capella.		Paulus Diaconus.
Claudiānus Mamertus.		
Sidonius Apollināris.		

# I N D E X .

The figures in the following Index designate the *Sections* and their divisions: **R** stands for *remark*, **N** for *note*, **E** for *exception*, **w.** for *with*, and **pr.** for *prosody*.

**A**, sound of, 7 and 8; nouns in, of 1st decl., 41; gender of, 41; of 3d decl. gender of, 66; genitive of, 68, 2; in acc. sing. of masc. and fem. Greek nouns, 79 and 80; in nom. acc. and voc. plur. of all neuter nouns, adjectives and participles, 40, 8; 63, 1.; 85; 87; 105, 2; verbals in, 102, 6, (c.); change of in compd. verbs, 189; increment in, 3d decl., 287, 3; in plur., 288; of verbs, 290; ending the first part of compds., 285, **R.** 4; final, quantity of, 234.

**A**, *ab*, *abs*, how used, 195, **R.** 2, and 10; in composition, 196, 1., 1; before the abl. of distance, 236, **R.** 6; *ab*, *de*, or *ex*, with abl. of depriving, etc., 251, **R.** 1.

Abbreviations, 328.

*Abulico*, constr. of, 251, **R.** 2.

*Abest mihi*, 226, **R.** 2; *non multum abest quin*, 262, **N.** 7.

*Abhinc*, 253, **R.** 2.

Ablative, 37; sing. 3d decl., 82; of adjs. of 3d decl., 113; plur. 1st decl., 40, **R.** 6, and 43; 2d decl., 40, **R.** 6; 3d decl., 84; 4th decl., 89, 5; used adverbially, 192, 1., 11.; of character, quality, etc., 211, **R.** 6; after prepositions, 241; after compd. verbs, 242; after *opus* and *usus*, 243; after *dignus*, etc. 244; after *utor*, etc., 245, 1.; after *nitor*, etc., 245, 11.; after parts. denoting origin, 246; of cause, etc., 247; of means and agent, 248; of means, 249, 1.; of accordance, 249, 11.; of accompaniment, 249, 111.; denoting in what respect, 250; after adjectives of plenty or want, 250, 2, (1.); after verbs of abounding, etc., 250, 2, (2.); after *facio* and *sum*, 250, **R.** 3; after verbs of depriving, etc., 251; of price, 252; of time when, 253; of place where, 254; of place whence, 255, 1; of place by or through which 255, 2; after comparatives, 256; of degree of difference, 256, **R.** 16; abl. absolute, 257; how translated, 257, **N.** 1; equivalent to what, 257, **R.** 1; only with pres. and perf. parts., 257, **R.** 2; without a participle, 257, **R.** 7; with a clause, 257, **R.** 8; how it marks the time of an action, 257, **R.** 4; noun wanting, 257, **R.** 9.

Abounding and wanting, verbs of, with abl. 250, with gen. 220, (8.)

"About to do," how expressed, 162, 14, "about to be done," how expressed, 162, 14, **R.** 4.

*Abstineo*, w. abl., 251, **N.**; *vix* or *ægre abstineo*, *quin*, 262, **N.** 7.

Abstract nouns, 26; formation from adjs 101; their terminations, 101, 1 and 2, (3.); from verbs, 102.

*Abundo*, 250, (2.) **R.** 1.

*-abus*, dat. and abl. plur. in, 43.

*Ac* or *atque*, 198, 1, **R.** (b.) and 3, **R.**; in stead of *quam*, 256, **R.** 15; *ac si* with subj., 263, 2, and **R.**

Acatalectic verse, 304, 3, (1.)

Accent in English, 16; place of secondary accent, 16, 1 and 2; in Latin, 14 and 15; of dissyllables, 14, 4; of polysyllables, 14, 5, and 15—written accents, 5, 2, and 14, 2.

Accentuation, 14—16.

Accidents of nouns, 26, 7; of verbs, 141.

*Accipio*, w. part. in *dus*, 274, **R.** 7.

Accompaniment, abl. of, 249, 111.

Accordance, abl. of, 249, 11.

*Achivom* for *Achivorum*, 53.

*-acis*, genitives in, 78, 2, (1.)

Accusative, 37; sing., terminal letter of in masculines and feminines, 40, 2; plural, terminal letter of in do., 40, 7; of 3d decl., 79; of Greek nouns, 80; plur. 3d decl., 85; do. of adjs. of 3d decl., 114; neuter in all declensions, sing. and plur., 40, 8; in *em* and *im*, 79; of Greek nouns in *im*, *in*, or *a*, 79, (b.) and 80; in *idm*, 80, **E.** 1, in *ym* or *yn*, 80, 11.; in *ea*, 80, 111.; in *etern*, *eta*, *em*, or *en*, 80, 11.; neuter used adverbially, 192, 11., 4, and 205, **R.** 10; acc. after verbs, 229—234; omitted, 229, **R.** 4; inf. or a clause instead of, 229, **R.** 5; of a person after *miseret*, etc., 229, **R.** 6; after *jurat*, etc., 229, **R.** 7; after neuter verbs, 232; after compound verbs, 233; after verbal nouns and verbal adjs., 233, **N.**; of part affected, 234, 11.; a limiting acc. instead of the abl. in *partim*, *vicem*, *cetera*, etc., 234, 11., **R.** 3; after prepositions, 235; of time and space, 236; of place, 237; after adverbs and interjections, 238; acc. as subject, 239; acc. of the thing supplied by the inf., 270, **N.**, acc. w. inf. 272; do. exchanged for the subjunctive



278, 8.—two accusatives after certain verbs, 230 and 231; acc. of thing retained in passive voice, 234; places supplied by infinitives, 229, N. 2; pred. acc. how supplied, lb. N. 4.

Accusing and acquitting, verbs of, constr., 217, and R. 4.

*Accuso*, constr., 217, and R. 2—5.

Acephalous verse, 304, 3, (3.)

*Acer*, declined, 108, I.

*Achilles*, declined, 86.

*Arquiesco*, 245, II., 3.

Acute accent, 5, 2, and 14, 2; when used, 14, 3.

Active voice, 141.

Active verb, 141; used impersonally, 184, 2; object of act. verb, 229; two cases after, 229, R. 1; verb omitted, 229, R. 3.

*Ad*, how used, 195, R. 5; in composition, 196, I. 2; construction of verbs compounded with, 224; *ad* used for *in*, 224, R. 4.

*Adde quod*, 273, N. 8.

Additions to simple subject, 202, 6, etc.; to simple predicate, 203, 5, etc.

*Adeo*, adv., 191, R. 5; *adeo non*, 277, R. 14.—verb, constr., 233, 3, and N.

-*ades*, patronymics in, 100, 1, (a.)

*Adest*, *qui*, with subj., 264, 6.

*Adhuc locorum*, 212, R. 4, N. 4.

*Adipiscor*, w. gen., 220, 4 *fin*.

Adjectives, 104—131; classes of, 104, 1—15; declension of, 105; of 1st and 2d decls. 105—107; of 3d declension, 108—114; of three terminations, 108; of two terminations, 109, 110; of one termination, 111; their gen. sing., 112; their abl. sing. 113; their nom., acc., and gen. plur., 114; irregular, 115—116; defective, 115; redundant, 116; numeral, 117—121; cardinal, 117, 118; ordinal, 119, 120; multiplicative, 121, 1; proportional, 121, 2; temporal, 121, 3; interrogative, 121, 5; comparison of, 122—127; irregular comparison, 125; defective comparison, 126; derivation of, 128—130; composition of, 131; amplificative, 128, 4; patial, 128, 6; verbal, 129; participial, 130; composition of 131;—how modified, 202, II., 1, (2.); agreement of, 205; qualifying and limiting, 205, N. 1; modifiers or predicates, 205, N. 2; with two or more nouns, 205, R. 2; with a collective noun, 205, R. 3; sing. with a plur. noun, 205, R. 4; dat. of. for acc. in the predicate of acc. with the inf., 205, R. 6; without a noun, 205, R. 7; with infinitive, a clause, etc., 205, R. 8; in the neuter with gen. of their noun, 205, R. 9, and 212, R. 3; neuter adjs. used adverbially, 205, R. 10; gender of, when used partitively, 205, R. 12; in genitive with possessive adj. or pronoun, 205, R. 13; agreeing with the governing noun instead of the genitive, 205, R. 14; two or more with one noun, 205, R. 16; instead of an adverb, 205, R. 15; first, last, etc. part expressed by the adj. alone, 205, R. 17; agreeing with relative instead of its antecedent, 206, (7.); with gen., 213; w. gen. or abl., 213, R. 5; w. dat., 222; w. gen. or dat., 213, R. 6, and 222, R. 2; of

plenty or want with abl., 250; w. inf., 270, R. 1; place of, 279, 7.

Adjective pronouns, 134—139; nature of, 132, 5; classes, 134; agreement, 205.

Adjective clauses, 201, 7; how connected, 201, 9.

Adjective pronoun, 135, R. 1.

*Adjuvo* and *adjuto*, constr., 223, R. 2, (2.)

Admonishing, verbs of, w. gen., 218; other constructions, 218, R. 1 and 2; 273, N. 4.

*Adolescens*, its gender, 50; as adj. how compared, 126, 4.

Adorning, verbs of, w. abl., 249.

Adonic verse, 312.

*Adulari*, constr., 223, R. 2, (b), and (1), (a.)

Adverbial correlatives, 191, B. 1;—clauses, 201, 7, 9.

Adverbs, 190, 2—194; primitive, 191; of place and order, 191, I.; correlative, 191, R. 1; of time, 191, II.; of manner, quality, degree, 191, III.; division of, 191, R. 2;—derivation of, 192; numeral, 192, II., 3, and 119; diminutive, 192, IV., R.; composition of, 193; signification of some adverbs of time and manner, 193;—comparison of, 194;—how modified, 277, I.; used as adjectives, 205, R. 11; w. gen., 212, R. 4; w. dat., 223, (1.); w. acc., 238; use of, 277; two negatives, force of, 277, R. 3—5; equivalent to phrases, 277, R. 8; of likeness, as connectives, 278, R. 1; place of, 279, 15.

Adversative conjunctions, 198, 9

*Adversus*, how used, 195, R. 7.

*Æ*, how pronounced, 9.

*Æqualis*, construction of, 222, R. 1.

*Æque* with abl., 241, R. 2; *æque ac*, 198, 3, R.

*Æqui boni facio* or *consulo*, 214, N. 1.

*Æquo* and *adæquo*, construction of, 214; *æquo*, adj. w. comparatives, 256, R. 9.

*Ær*, acc. of, 80, R.; pr. 299, E. 3.

*Æolic* pentameter, 312, ix.

*Æs*, gender of, 61, 2; gen. of, 73, E. 2.

*Æstimo*, constr., 214.

*Æther*, acc., 80, R.; pr. 299, E. 3.

-*eus*, adjs. in, 128, 6, (h.)

*Æquum est*, ut, 262, R. 3, N. 3; *æquum erat*, indic. instead of subj., 259, R. 3. *æquum est*, with inf. as subject, 269, R. 2.

*Affatim*, w. genitive, 212, R. 4.

*Affluo*, constr., 250, 2, R. 1.

*Afficio*, constr., 249, R. 1.

*Affinis*, constr., 222, R. 2, (a.)

*Agger*, declined, 46.

Agent, verbal nouns denoting, 102, 6; dative of, 225, III., R. 1; 248, R. 1; abl. of, 248.

Ages of Roman literature, 329.

*Agnitus*, pr. 285, 1, E. 1.

*Agnominatio*, 324, 25.

*Ago* w. gen. of the crime, 217, R. 1;—age w. plur. subject, 183, 10;—*id agere ut*, 273, N. 1.

Agreement defined, 203, III., 6; of adjs., etc., 205; of relatives, 206.

*ai*, how pronounced, 9, 1.—*ai*, old gen. in, 43; quantity of the *a* in *do*, 283, E. 3.

*Aio*, conjugated, 183, 4; *ain* for *aisne*, 183, 4, N. 4; *ait*, ellipsis of, 209, R. 4; its place in a sentence, 279, 6.

-al, abl. of nouns in, 82; increment of, 287, E. (A.) 1.  
 Alcaic verse, 304, 2;—greater, 318, III.; lesser, 318, IV.  
 Alcinavian verse, 304, 2;—dactylic tetrameter, 312.  
 Alec, gender of, 66; genitive, 70.  
 Ales, gender of, 30 and 61, 2; genitive sing., 73, 2; gen. plur., 83, II., E. 2.  
 Alex, gender of, 65, 2.  
 Alieno, and *abaheno*, constr., 251, R. 3, and N.  
 Alienus, constr., 222, R. 1 and 6.  
 Aliquanto, 127, 2; 256, R. 16, (2.)  
 Aliquantum, 256, R. 16, N.  
 Aliquis, declined, 138; how used, 138, 2; 207, R. 30.  
 Aliquo, w. gen., 212, R. 4, N. 2.  
 Aliquot, indeclinable, 115, 4; correlative, 121, 5.  
 Aliquoties, correlative of *quoties*, 121, 5.  
 -alis, adjs. in, 128, 2; how compared, 126, 4; *alis*, old adj., for *alius*, 192, II., 2.  
 Aliter, from *alis* for *alius*, 192, II., 2.  
 Alius, how declined, 107; how used, 207, R. 32; *alius*—*alium*, with plur. verb, 209, R. 11, 4; refers to more than two, 212, R. 2, N. 1, (b.); w. abl., 256, R. 14; pr. 283, 1, E. 4.  
 Allegory, 324, 7.  
 Alliteration, 324, 26.  
 Alphabet, 2, 1.  
 Alter, how declined, 105, 3; 107, and R. 2; gen. *alterius*, quantity of 283, I., E. 4, (b.); used for *secundus*, 120, 1; answers to *uter*, 139, 5, (1.), (b.)—*altero tanto*, w. comparatives, 256, R. 16.  
 Alteruter, 107; 139, 5, (1.), (b.)—*alteruterque*, 107.  
 Altus and alto, w. acc. of space, 236, and N. 2.  
 Ambi, *amb*, *am*, or *an*, 196, (b.) and 1.  
 Ambio, how conjugated, 182, R. 3.—*ambitus*, pr. 285, 2, E. 2.  
 Ambo, how declined, 118, R. 1.  
 Amicus, constr., 222, R. 2, (c.)  
 Amo, conjugated, 155, 156.  
 Amphibolia, 325, 5.  
 Amplificatives, nouns, 100, 4, (a.); adjectives, 104, 12; 128, 4.  
 Amplius, with or without *quam*, 256, R. 6.  
 An, 198, 11; use of, 198, 11, R. (d.), (e.); in double questions, 265, R. 2; *dūbīto an*, etc., 265, R. 3; *an*—*an*, 265, R. 2. *fin*.  
 Anacoluthon, 323, 3, (5.)  
 Anacreontic verse, 304, 2;—iambic dimeter, 314, IX.  
 Anadiplosis, 324, 17.  
 Analysis of sentences, 281.  
 Anapaestic metre, 313; 303;—monometer, 313, I.;—dimeter, 313.  
 Anaphora, 324, 13.  
 Anastrophe, 323, 4, (1.)  
 Anas, gen. of, 72, E. 1; pr. 300, E. 1.  
 Anceps, gen. of, 112, 2; abl. of, 113, E. 3.  
 Ancile, 93, 2.  
 Androgeos, declined, 54, 1.  
 -aneus, adjs. in, 128, 8.  
 Angor, constr., 273, 5, N. 6.  
 Animal, declined, 57.

*Animans*, gender of, 64.  
*Animo*, 250.—*animi* for *animo*, 220, 1.  
 213, R. 1, (a.)  
*Anio*, genitive of, 69, E. 2.  
*Annc*, in double questions, 265, R. 2;—*ann n*, ib.  
*Annus*, compds. of, 121, 3.  
*Antanaclasis*, 324, 12.  
*Ante*, w. superlatives, 127, 6; in composition, 196, I., 3; construction of verbs compounded with, 224; with titles, 235, R. 2; with comparatives, 256, R. 13, (b.);—*ante* and *post* w. acc. and abl. of time, 253, R. 1; w. *quam* and a verb, 253, N. 3; for *abhinc*, 253, R. 2.  
*Antecedent*, 136; ellipsis of, 206, (3.), (4.), its place supplied by a demonstrative, 206, 3, (a.); in the case of the relative, 206, (6.), (b.); implied in a possessive pronoun, 203, (12); may be a proposition, 206, (13.)  
*Antecedo* and *antecello*, constr., 256, R. 16, (3.)  
*Antepenult*, 13; quantity of, 292.  
*Antequam*, constr., 263, 3.  
*Antimeria*, 323, 3, (1.)  
*Antiphrasis*, 324, 10.  
*Antiptosis*, 323, 3, (3.)  
*Antithesis*, 322; 324, 27.  
*Antonomasia*, 324, 8.  
 -anus, adjs. in, 128, 6.  
*Aorist tense*, 145, IV., R.  
*Apage*, 183, 10.  
*Apertum est*, w. inf. as subject, 269, R. 2.  
*Aphæresis*, 322, I. 2.  
*Apiscor* and *adipiscor*, w. gen., 220.  
*Aplustre*, nom. plur. of, 83 and 94, 4.  
*Apocope*, 322, I. 7.—*Apodosis*, 261.  
*Apollo*, gen. of, 69, E. 2.  
*Aposiopesis*, 324, 33.  
*Apostrophe*, 324, 35.  
*Apparet*, w. inf. as subject, 269, R. 2.  
*Appellative nouns*, 26, 3.  
*Appello*, constr., 230, N. 1.  
*Appetens*, w. gen., 213, R. 1, (2.)  
*Appendix*, 322—329.  
*Apposition*, 204; to two or more nouns, 204, R. 5; to nouns connected by *cum*, 204, R. 5, (1.); to proper names of different genders, 204, R. 5, (2.); genitive instead of, 204, R. 6; 211, R. 2, N.; abl. with gen., 204, R. 7; of a proper name with *nomen*, etc., 204, R. 8; of a clause, 204, R. 9; of parts with a whole, 204, R. 10; 212, R. 2, N. 5; place of nouns in apposition, 279, 9.  
*Apprime*, 127, 2; 193.  
*Aptotes*, 94.  
*Aptus*, constr., 222, R. 1 and 4, (1.); *aptus qui*, w. subj., 264, 9; w. gerund, 275, R. 2 and 3.  
*Apud*, 195, R. 6.  
 -ar, nouns in, gender of, 66, 67; genitive of, 70, 71; abl. of, 82, increment of, 287 E. (A.) 1.  
*Arbitror*, in imperf. subj., 260, R. 2.  
*Arbor* (-os), gender of, 61.  
*Arceo*, w. abl., 251, R. 2.  
*Arcesso*, constr., 217, R. 1.  
*Archaism*, 323, R., (1.)  
*Archilochian verse*, 304, 2;—penthemimeris, 312;—iambic trimeter, 314, V.; de

imeter, 314, vii.;—heptameter, 318, iv.  
*Arena*, as gen. of place, 221, R. 3, (4.)  
*Argo*, genitive of, 69, E. 3.  
*Argos* (-gi), 92, 4.  
*Arguo*, constr., 217, R. 1.  
 Aristophanic verse, 304, 2.  
 -arium and -arius, nouns and adjs. in 100, 8; 128, 3; 121, 4.  
 Arrangement of words, 279; poetical, 279, R. 4; of clauses, 280.  
*Ars*, declined, 57.  
 Ars and thesis, 308.  
 Article, wanting in Latin, 41, N.  
 -as, genitives in, 43; nouns in of 3d decl., gender of, 62; genitive of, 72; gen. plur. of, 83, II., 4; in acc. plur. of Greek nouns of 3d decl., 85, E. 2.—as and -anus, adjs. in, 123, 6; -as final, quantity of, 300.  
 As, value of, 327; how divided, 327;—gender of, 62, E. 1; 72, E. 1; gender of parts ending in us, 64, 2; *assis non habere*, 214, R. 1.  
 Asclepiadic verse, 304, 2;—tetrameter, 316, III.  
 Asking, verbs of, with two accs., 231; constr. in the pass., 234, I.  
*Aspergo*, 249, I. and R. 1 and 3.  
 Aspirate, 3, 1.  
*Asse puor*, ut, 273, N. 2.  
 -asse for -avero, 162, 9.  
*assuesco* and *assuefacio*, w. abl., 245, II.; w. dat., 245, II., R. 1.  
 Asyndeton, 323, 1, (1.)  
 -at, roots of nouns in, 56, II., R. 5.  
*At*, conj., 198, 9; *at enim*, *atqui*, 198, 9, (b.)  
 -atim, adverbs in, 192, I., 1.  
*Atque*, composition and meaning, 198, 1, R. (b.) See *ac*.  
 Attraction, 206, (6.); 209, N. 6 and R. 8; 210, R. 6; 272, N. 3.  
*Attribuo*, w. participle in *duo*, 274, R. 7.  
 -atus, adjs. in, 128, 7.  
*Au*, how pronounced, 9, 2 and R. 2.  
*Audeo*, how conjugated, 142, 2.  
*Audio*, conjugated, 160; used like *appellor*, 210, N. 2; constr., 272, N. 1; *audes* for *audies*, 183, R. 3;—*audiens*, constr., 222, R. 1.  
 -aus, nouns in, gender of, 62; genitive of, 76, E. 4.  
*Ausculto*, constr., 222, R. 2, (t), and (1.), (a.)  
*Ausim*, 183, R. 1.  
*Aut* and *vel*, 198, 2, R. (a.); *aut* and *re*, 198, 2, R. (d.); *aut—aut*, 198, 2, R. (e.); *aut* with the singular, 209, R. 12, (5.)  
*Autem*, 198, 9; its position, 279, 3, c); ellipsis of, 278, R. 11.  
 Authority, in prosody, 282, 4.  
 Auxiliary verb, 153.  
 -av and -at in the 2d and 3d roots of verbs, 164.  
*Avarus*, with gen., 213, R. 1.  
*Ave*, 183, 8.  
*Avidus*, with gen. 213, R. 1; w. gen. of gerund, 275, (2.); w. inf. poetically, 270, E. 1.  
 -ac, nouns in, gen. of, 78, 2, (1.); adjs. in, 129, 6; verbals in with gen., 213, R. 1.

## B.

B, roots of nouns ending in. 56, I., changed to p., 171, 2.  
*Balneum*, plur. -ea or -eæ, 92, 6.  
 Barbarism, 325, 1.  
*Barbiton*, declined, 54, 1.  
*Belle*, *bellissime*, 192, IV. R.  
*Belli*, construed like names of towns, 221 R. 3, *bello*, 253.  
*Bene*, derivation, 192, II., 1; constr. of its compounds, 225, I.; *bene est*, w. dat., 228, 1; *bene*, w. acc., 238, R. 2; with verbs of price, 252, R. 3.  
 -ber, names of months in, how declined, 71 and 108.  
*Bes*, gen. of, 73, E. 2.  
*Bibi*, pr., 284, E., (1.)  
*Bicorpor*, abl. of, 113, E. 2; 115, 1, (a.)  
*Biduum*, *triduum*, etc., *biennium*, etc., 121, 2.  
 -bilis, adjs. in, 129, 4; how compared, 126, 4; with dative, 222, R. 1.  
*Bimestris*, 113, E. 1.  
*Bipes*, genitive of, 112, 1; abl. of, 113, E. 2; 115, 1, (a.)  
*Bonus*, declined, 105, 2; compared, 125, 5; *boni consulo*, 214, N. 1.  
*Bos*, dat. and abl. plur. of, 84, E. 1; 286, 5; gender of, 30; genitive of, 75, E. 1; gen. plur., 83, II., R. 1.  
 -br, roots of nouns in, 56, II., R. 3.  
 Brachycatalectic verse, 304, 3, (2.)  
 Brazen age of Roman literature, 329, 4.  
 -brum, verbals in, 102, 5.  
 Bucclic cæsura, 310, 6, R. 4.  
 -bulum, verbals in, 102, 5.  
 -bundus, adjs. in, 129, 1; comparison of 126, 5; with acc., 233, N.

## C.

C, sound of, 10; before s in roots of nouns, 56, I., R. 2; in roots of verbs, 171, 1; gender of nouns in, 66; genitive of, 70; c final, quantity of, 299, 4; C. for Caius, i. q. *Gaius*, 328.  
*Celebs*, 112, 2; in abl. sing., 113, E. 2; 115, 1, (a.)  
 Cæsura, 309; kinds of, 309; in hexameter verse, 310, 3; cæsural pause, 309, 3; in hexameter verse, 4—6; in pentameter verse, 311, 2; in iambic verse, 314, I. and X.; in trochaic verse, 315, I; in choriambic verse, 316, III.  
*Calco*, change of a to u in its compds., 189, N. 3.  
 Calendar, Roman, 326, 6.  
 Calends, 326.  
*Callidus*, 270, R. 1; 213, R. 1.  
*Canalis*, abl. of, 82, 5, (c.)  
*Cano receptui*, 227, R. 2.  
*Capax*, w. genitive, 213, R. 1, (1.), and R. 5, (1.)  
*Capio*, conjugated, 159; adjs. compounded of, 112, 2.  
 Capital letters, how used by the Romans 2, 2; as numerals, 118, 7.  
*Caput* declined, 57; *capitis* and *capite* *damnare*, *accusare*, etc., 217, R. 3.



- Carbasus*, plur. -i and -a, 92, 3.  
 Cardinal numbers, 117 and 118.  
*Careo*, 250, 2, R. 1.  
*Carmen*, declined, 57.  
*Caro*, gender of, 59, 3; gen. of, 69, R. 2; gen. plur., 83, II., 5.  
*Carthagini*, in abl. of the place where, 82, E. 5. (c.)  
 Case-endings, table of, 39.—Cases of nouns, 36 and 37.—*Casus recti* and *obliqui*, 37, R.  
*Catachrêsis*, 324, 1. (b.)  
*Causâ. gratiâ*, etc. with *meâ*, etc., 247, R. 2; their place with genitive, 279, R.  
 Causal conjunctions, 198, 7.  
 Cause, abl. of, 247; after active verbs, 247, R. 2; acc. of with prepositions, 247, R. 1.  
*Causo*, change of *au* in its compounds, 189, N. 3.  
*Cave* or *cave ne*, w. subj., 267, R. 3; 262, R. 6.  
 -ce and -cine, enclitic, 134, R. 4.  
*Cedo*, constr., 223, R. 2. (1), (d.)  
*Cedo*, imperative, 183, 11.  
*Celer*, how declined, 108; gen. plur., 114, R. 2.  
*Celo*, with two accs., 231; w. *de*, 231, R. 3.  
*Censeo*, 273, N. 4.  
*Centena* millia, ellipsis of, 118, 5.  
 -ceps, nouns in, gen. of, 77, R.; adjs. in, genitive of, 112, 2; abl. of, 113, E. 2; E. 3.  
*Cercs*, genitive, of, 73, E. 2.  
*Certe* and *certo*, 192, N. 1.  
*Certus*, 213, R. 1; 275, III., (2.); 270, R. 1.  
*Cetera* and *reliqua* for *ceteris*, 234, II., R. 3.  
*Ceterum*, 199, 8, R., (b.)  
*Ceu*, w. subj., 263, 2.  
*Ch*, sound of, 10, 1; when silent, 12, R.; in syllabication, 13, 2.  
 Character or quality, gen. of, 211, R. 6.  
*Chaos*, 61, E. 3.  
*Chelys*, declined, 86.  
*Choliambus*, 314, II.  
 Choriambic metre, 316; 303;—pentameter, 316, I.;—tetrameter, 316, II.;—trimeter, 316, IV.;—trimeter catalectic, 316, V.;—dimeter, 316, VI.  
*Cicur*, gen. plur. of, 114, E. 2.  
*Circum*, in composition, 196, 4.  
*Circumdo* and *circumfundo*, 249, R. 3.  
 Circumflex accent, 5, 2, and 14; how used, 14, 3.  
*Cis* and *citra*, constr., 235, R. 1.  
*Citior*, compared, 126, 1.  
*Citum*, pr., 284, E. 1, (2.)  
*Clam*, constr., 235, (5.)  
*Clanculum*, 192, IV., R.; 235, (5.).  
*Claudo*, its compounds, 189, N. 3.  
*Clause*, 201, 13; as the subject of a proposition, 202, III., R. 2; as an addition to the predicate, 203, II., 3; its gender, 34, 4; as the object of a verb, 229, R. 5; in abl. absolute, 257, R. 8; connection of clauses, 198, I. and II.; 278, R. 1; 280, III.; arrangement of, 280; similar clauses, 278, N. 1.  
*Climax*, 324, 21.  
 Clothing, verbs of, 249, I.  
*Cœlestis*, abl. of, 113, E. 1; gen. plur. of, 114, E. 3.  
*Cælum*, plur. *cæli*, 92, 4.  
*Cano*, w. gen. of price, 214, N. 1, (b.)  
*Cæpi* and *captus sum*, 183, 2.  
 Cognate object, 232;—subject, 234, III.  
*Cognitus*, pr., 285, 2, E. 1.  
*Cognomen* follows the gentile name, 279, 9, (b.)  
*Cognominis*, abl. of, 113, E. 1.  
*Cogo*, 273, N. 4.  
 -cola, compounds in, gen. plur. of, 43, 3.  
 Collective nouns, 26, 4; number of third verbs, 209, R. 11.  
*Com* for *cum* in composition, 186, 5, 197, 5.  
*Comitiis*, as abl. of time, 253, N. 1.  
 Common, nouns, 26, 3;—gender, 30;—syllables, 282, 2; 283, IV., E. 2.  
*Commoneo* and *commonefacio*, constr., 218; 273, N. 4.  
*Communis*, constr., 222, R. 2, (a.) and R. 6, (a.)  
*Commuto*, constr., 252, R. 5.  
*Compar.*, gen. plur. of, 114, E. 2.  
*Comparo*, constr., 224, N. 1, 3.  
 Comparative conjunctions, 198, 3.  
 Comparative degree, 122, 5; uses of, 122, R. 1, 2, 3; formation of, 124; by *magis*, 127, 1.—comparatives declined, 110; abl. sing. of, 113, 2; w. gen., 212, R. 2; denotes one of two, 212, R. 2, N. 1; w. abl., 256; used pleonastically, 256, R. 12, 13.  
 Comparison, 25; of adjs., 122—127; degrees of, 122, 3; terminal, 124;—irregular, 125; defective, 126; by *magis* and *maxime*, 127;—of adverbs, 194.  
 Complex subject, 202, 1, 3, 6; complex predicate, 203, 1, 3, 5; complex sentence, 201, 11.  
*Complures*, how declined, 110.  
*Compono*, constr., 224, N. 1, 3, and R. 4.  
*Compos* and *impos*, gen. of, 112, 2; abl. of, 113, E. 2; 115, 1, (a.); pr. 300, E. 3.  
 Composition of nouns, 103;—of adjs., 131;—of verbs, 188;—of adverbs, 193.  
 Compound verbs, how conjugated, 163, 4;—subject, 202, 4;—predicate, 203, 4;—sentence, 201, 12;—metres, 318;—words, in syllabication, 23;—nouns, declension of, 91; how formed, 103; quantity of compound words, 285.  
*Con*, adjs. compd. with w. dat., 222, R. 1; verbs compd. with, w. dat., 224; w. *cum*, 224, R. 4.  
*Concedo*, constr., 273, N. 5; 274, R. 7.  
 Concessive conjunctions, 198, 4.  
*Concors*, and *discors*, gen. of, 112, 2; abl. of, 113, E. 2.  
 Concrete, nouns, 26, R. 2;—adjs., 121, R.; used for abstracts, in expressions of time, 253, R. 6.  
*Conditio*, in abl., 249, II.  
 Conditional conjunctions, 198, 5.  
*Conduco*, with part. in *du*, 274, R. 7.  
 Condemning, verbs of, w. gen., 217.  
*Confero*, w. dat., 224, N. 1, 3.  
*Confuso*, w. abl., 245, II.; w. dat., 245, R. 1.  
*Confit*, 183, 12; 180, N.  
*Confinis*, 222, R. 1.  
*Congruo*, 224, N. 1, 3, and R. 4.  
 Conjugation, 25; 149, first, 155, 150 second, 157; third, 158, 159; fourth, 160

of deponent verbs, 161; periphrastic, 162; general rules of, 163; of irregular verbs, 178—182; of defective verbs, 183; of impersonal verbs, 184; regular and irregular verbs in the four conjugations, 164—177.—conjugations, how characterized, 149; remarks on, 162.

Conjunctions, 198; classes of, 198; coördinate, 198, I.; subordinate, 198, II.; enclitics, 198, N. 1; copulative and disjunctive, their use, 278; use of coördinate and subordinate conjs., 193, R. 1; repeated, 278, R. 7; when omitted between adjs., 205, R. 16;—between words opposed, 278, R. 6.

*Conjugo*, 224, N. 1, 3, and R. 4.

*Coniunctus*, 222, R. 6.

*Coniur*, gender of, 30; gen. of, 78, 2, (5.)

Connecting vowel, 150, 5; omitted in 2d root, 163, 2; in verbal nouns, 102, 5, (b.); in verbal adjs., 129, 1 and 4, (b.); in compd. nouns and adjs., 103, R. 1.; 131, N.

Connection of tenses, 258;—of words by conjunctions, 278;—of clauses by *do*., 278, R. 3.

Connectives, 201, 8, 9; place of, 279, 3.

*Conor*, 271, N. 1.

*Conscious*, 213, R. 1; 275, III., (2.)

*Consentaneus*, w. dat., 222, R. 1, w. abl., 222, R. 6; *consentaneum erat*, the indic. instead of the subj., 259, R. 3, (a.); with inf. as subject, 269, R. 2.

*Consentio*, w. dat., 224, N. 1, 3.

*Consequor*, *ut*, 273, N. 2.

*Consido*, 241, R. 5.

Consonants, 3, 1; division of, *ib.*; double, B. 1, 2; sounds of, 10—12.

*Consors*, 213, R. 1.

*Constat*, w. inf. as subject, 269, R. 2.

*Constituo*, 272, N. 1.

*Consto*, w. abl., 245, II., 5.

*Consuetudo est*, constr., 262, R. 3, N. 2.

*Consuesco*, 245, II., 3

*Contendo*, 273, N. 1.

*Contentus*, w. abl., 244; w. perf. inf., 268, R. 2.

*Conterminus*, w. dat., 222, R. 1, (a.)

*Continens*, abl. of, 82, E. 4, (a.)

Continental pronunciation of Latin, 6.

*Contingit*, conjugation, 184; w. *ut*, 262, N. 3; w. dat. and inf., 262, R. 3, N. 1.

*Continuo*, 193, II., 1.

*Contra*, how used, 195, R. 7.

Contracted syllables quantity of, 283, III.

Contractions in 2d root of verbs, 162, 7.

*Convenio*, 233, N.

*Convenit*, the indic. for the subj., 259, R. 3; w. inf., 259, R. 2.

*Convinco*, 217, R. 1.

*Copia est*, w. inf., 270, R. 1, (c.)

*Copula*, 140, 4.

Copulative conjs., 198, 1; repeated, 198, R. (c.)

*Cor*, gender of, 61; genitive of, 71, E. 2; compds. of, 112, 2.

Correlative adjs., 139, (2.), (3.); 104, 14;—adverbs, 191, R. 1.

*Cornu*, declined, 87.

*Crisis*, 306, (5.) and 322.

*Crater*, genitive of, 71.

*Credo*, 272, and R. 6;—*credere*, in the

sense of a pluperfect, 260, II., R. 2;—*crendum est*, 271, R. 2.

*Creo*, *nascor*, etc., 246, R. 1.

Crime, in genitive after verbs, 217.

*Crimine*, without a preposition, 217, R. 2, (b.)

Crude form or root, 40, 10.

-*crum*, verbals in, 102, 5.

*Cr*, initial, 12, R.

*Cui* and *huic*, how pronounced, 9, 5; *pr.* 306, R. 2.

*Cujus*, how declined, 139, 4, (b.)

*Cujus*, how declined, 137, 5; *cujusmodi*, etc., 134, R. 5.

-*culum*, verbals in, 102, 5; contracted to -*clum*, 102, 5, (b.)

-*culus*, a. um, diminutives in, 100, 3, and B., 1, 2; 128, 5.

*Cum*, prep., affixed to abl., 241, R. 1; 133, R. 4; 136, R. 1; how used, 195, R. 11; w. abl. of manner, 247, 2; in composition, 196, 5.

*Cum* or *quum*, mood of the verb following it, 263, 5.

*Cum*, 'while,' 263, 5, R. 3.

-*cumque*, used to form general indefinites, 191, R. 1, (b.); 139, 5, R.; composition and meaning, 139, 5, N. 1; sometimes separated from *qui*, etc., 323, 4, (5.)

*Cumprimis*, its meaning, 193, II., 2.

*Cuncti* and *omnes*, w. gen. plur. 212, R. 2, N. 6.

-*cundus*, adjs. in, 129, 1.

*Cupido*, gender of, 59, R. 2.

*Cupidus*, constr., 213, R. 1; 275, (2.); 270, R. 1.

*Cupio*, 271, R. 4; *cupiens*, 213, R. 1, (2.)

*Curo*, 273, N. 1; 274, R. 7; *cura ut*, 267, R. 3.

*Curritur*, conjugated, 184, 2.

*Custos*, gender of, 30; 61, 3, genitive, 75, E. 1.

## D.

*D* final in prosody, 299, 2; before *s* in roots of nouns, 56, R. 1; in roots of verbs, 171, 3, and E. 5.

*Da*, *pr.*, 284, R. 3, (b.)

Dactylic metre, 310 and 303;—trimeter, 312, VI.;—dimeter, 312, VIII.;—hexameter, 310, I. Dactylo-ianbic meter, 318, I.; dactylo-trochaic heptameter, 218, IV.;—tetrameter, 318, V.

*Dama*, gender of, 42, 2.

*Damnifici satisdo*, etc., 217, R. 3.

Dative, 37; sing. of 3d decl., 79 *plur* always like abl., 40, 6; exceptions in 1st decl., 43; of 3d decl., 84; of 4th decl., 89, 5; used for predicate nom., 210, N. 8; for gen., 211, R. 5; *commodi et incommodi*, 222, 1 and 2; dative of the end, 227; dat. of the object, after adjs., 222; different constructions instead of, 222, R. 4 and 6; after *idem*, 222, R. 7; after verbs, 223—227; after verbs compounded with *ad*, *ante*, etc., 224; with *ab*, *ex*, *de*, *circum* and *contra*, 224, R. 1 and 2; with *dis*, 224, R. 3; with *satis*, *bene* and *male*, 225, I.; dat. of the agent, 225, II

and III.; of the possessor after *est*, 226; after particles, 228; dat. with the acc., 223, (1.); two datives after *sum*, etc., 227; wanting, 225, III., R.; *dativus ethicus*, 223, N.

*Datum*, pr., 234, E. 1, (2.)

*De*, 195, R. 12; with abl. instead of acc., 229, R. 5, (b.); 231, R. 3.

*Dea*, dat. and abl. plur. of, 43.

*Debebat*, indic. instead of subj., 259, R. 3.

*Decedo*, w. abl., 251.

*Decerno*, 273, N. 1 and 4.

*Decet*, conjugated, 184; its construction, 229, R. 7; 223, R. 2, (b.); indic. for subj., 259, R. 3.

Declarative sentences, 200, 3.

*Declaro*, 230, N. 1.

Declension, 38; parts of speech declined, 25, 3; of nouns, 38—40; rules of, 40; first, 41—45; exceptions in do., 43; paradigms of, 41;—second, 46—54; paradigms of, 46; exceptions in do., 52; third, 55—86; paradigms of, 57; exceptions in do., 68—85; fourth, 87—89; paradigms of, 87; exceptions in do., 89; formed by contraction, 89; fifth, 90; paradigms, 90; exceptions in, 90;—of adjs., 1st and 2d, 105—107; third, 108—111;—declensions, how distinguished, 38; tabular view of, 39.

*Dedi*, pr., 234, 2, E. 1.

*Deest mihi*, 226, R. 2; pr., 306, 1, R. 1, (1.)

Defective nouns, 94—96;—adjs., 115;—verbs, 183.

*Defendo*, 251, R. 2.

*Defero*, w. gen. of the crime, 217, R. 1.

*Deficior*, w. abl., 250, 2, R. 1.

*Defit*, 183, 13, and 180, N.; 226, R. 2.

*Deflecto*, 229, R. 4.

*Defungor*, 245, I.

Degree, acc. of, 231, R. 5; 232, (3.)

Degrees of comparison, 122 and 123; inferior degrees, 123, 1; equal degrees, 123, 3; a small degree, 123, 2; superior degrees variously expressed, 127, 2, 3, 4.

*Dejero*, 189, N. 3; pr., 285, 2, E. 1.

*Dein*, *deinceps*, *deinde*, pr., 306, 1, R. 1, (1.)

*Delectat*, conjugated, 184; its construction, 229, R. 7; 223, R. 2.

*Delector*, w. *quod*, 273, N. 6.

*Deligo*, w. two accs., 230, N. 1.

*-dem*, enclitic, 134, R. 6.

Demonstrative adjs., 104, 15; 139, 5, R.;—pronouns, 134; constr. of, 207; in apposition to a clause, 207, R. 22; 206, (3.); used when the reference is not to the subject, 208, (6.); place of, 279, 7; ellipsis of demonstratives before their relatives, 206, (3.), (a.); constr. of dem. adjs., 206, (16.); dem. advs. for dem. pronouns, 206, (20.); dem. pronouns *is*, etc., used for the oblique cases *him*, *her*, etc., 207, R. 20; redundant, 207, R. 21; dem. prons. and advs. announcing a proposition, 207, R. 22.

*Demoveo*, w. abl., 251, N.

*Denarius*, value of, 327, R. 3; divisions of, ib.

*Denique*, its use, 277, I., R. 13.

Denominatives, adjs., 128;—verbs, 187, I.

*Dens*, gender of, 64, 1; compds. of, 64, 1.

*Depello*, w. abl., 251, N.

Dependence, defined, 203, III., 8; of tenses, 258.

Dependent or subordinate propositions, 301, 6.

Deponent verbs, 142, R. 4; conjugated, 161; participles of, 162, 17; lists of in 1st conj., 166; 2d conj., 170; 3d conj., 174 4th conj., 177; increment of, 289, 3.

*Deposco*, 274, R. 7.

Depriving, verbs of, w. abl., 251.

Derivation of nouns, 100;—of adjs., 123—of verbs, 187;—of advs., 192.

Derivative words, quantity of, 234.

*Deses*, gen. of, 112, 1; abl. of, 113, E. 2 defective, 115, 2; compared, 126, 4.

Desiderative verbs, 187, II., 3; 176, N. quantity of the *u* in, 234, E. 3.

*Designo*, with two accs., 230, N. 1.

*Despero*, constr., 224, R. 1.

*Desuper* and *insuper*, 235, R. 8.

*Deterior*, compared, 126, 1.

*Deterreo*, *quin*, *ne*, or *quominus*, 262 R. 11; w. inf. ib. N.

*Deturbo*, w. abl., 251, N.

*Dexter*, how declined, 106; how compared, 125, 4.

*Deus*, declined, 53; *deum* for *deorum*, 53.

*Di* or *dii*, 53; ellipsis of, 205, R. 7.

*-di* or *-dis*, see *-dis*.

Diæresis, 306, 2; mark of, 5, 2.

Dialysis, 306, 2, R.

*Diana*, pr. 285, I., E. 5.

Diastole, 307, 2.

*Dico*, w. two accs., 230, N. 1; ellipsis of, 229, R. 3, 2; 209, R. 4; 270, R. 2, (b.); w. inf. and acc., 272, N. 1; w. *ut*, 273, 2, (c.); *dicunt*, 'they say,' 209, R. 2, (2.); *dicor*, w. predicate nominative, 210, R. 3, (3.), (a.) and N. 1, cf. 271, R. 2; 272, R. 6; *dic*, imperative, 162, 4.

Dicolon, 319, 2.

*Dicto audiens*, w. dat., 222, R. 1; *dicto* w. comparative, 256, R. 9.

*-dicus*, words ending in, pr., 285, 2, E. 1.

*Dido*, declined, 86; genitive of, 69, E. 3.

*Dies*, declined, 90; its gender, 90, E. 1, compds. of with numerals, 121, 3; quantity of, 285, R. 4, E. 3, (6.)

Difference, degree of, how expressed, 256 R. 16.

*Differo*, constr., 251, R. 3, N.; 229, R. 4, 1.

Differing, verbs of, 251, R. 3.

*Difficile est*, the indic. for the subj., 259, R. 4, (2.); with an inf. as subject, 269, R. 2; with supine in *u*, 276, III., R. 1; w. *ad* and a gerund, 276, III., R. 4.

*Digne*, w. abl., 244, R. 1.

*Dignor*, w. abl., 244, R. 1; w. acc. of the person, ib.; w. inf., ib.; w. two accs., ib.

*Dignus*, w. abl. of the thing, 244; w. gen. 244, R. 2, (a.); w. acc. of neut. pron. or adj., 244, R. 2, (a.); w. inf. or a subj. clause, 244, R. 2, (b.); with relative and subj., 264, 9; w. supine in *u*, 276, III., R. 1.

Dimeter, 304, 2.

Diminutive nouns, 100, 3;—adjs., 104, 11 128, 5;—verbs, 187, II., 4;—adverbs, 192, R.

Diphthongs, 4; sounds of, 9; quantity of, 13, 4; 233, II.

Diptotes, 94.



*Dir* for *dis*, 196, (b.), 2.  
*Dis* or *di*, inseparable prep., 196, (b.), 2;  
 construction of some verbs compounded  
 with, 251, R. 3, N.; pr., 285, 2, R. 2.  
*-dis*, genitives in, 77, E. 1; *dis*, adj., gen.  
 plur. of, 114, E. 3.  
*Discerno*, 251, R. 3, N.; in imperf. subj.  
 for pluperf., 260, II., R. 2.  
*Discolor*, abl. of, 113, E. 2.  
*Discordo* and *discrepo*, 251, R. 3, and N.  
*Disertus*, pr., 284, E. 5, 2, N. 1.  
 Disjunctive conjs., 198, 2.  
*Disideo*, constr., 251, R. 3, and N.  
*Disimilis*, 222, R. 1, and R. 2.  
*Distich*, 304.  
*Distinguo* and *disto*, 251, R. 3, and N.  
 Distributive numbers, 119, 120; gen. plur.  
 cf. 105, R. 4; used for cardinal numbers,  
 120, 4;—for multiplicatives, 120, 4, (b.)  
*Distrophon*, 319, 3.  
*Diu*, compared, 194, 5.  
*Dives*, gen. sing., 112, 1; gen. plur., 114,  
 E. 2; 115, 1, (a.)  
 Division of words into syllables, 17—23.  
*Do*, 149, E.; w. perf. participles, 274,  
 R. 4; w. participles in *dus*, 274, R. 7; incre-  
 ment of, 290, E.; 284, E. 4.  
*-do*, nouns in, gender of, 59, 2; genitive  
 of, 69, E. 1.  
*Doceo*, 231, R. 1; w. gen. of price, 214, N. 1.  
*Doleo*, w. *quod*, etc., 273, N. 7.  
*Dominus*, declined, 46.  
*Domus*, declined, 89; different use of  
*domus* and *domi*, 89, (a.); constr. of gen.,  
 221, R. 3; of acc., 237, R. 4; of abl., 255,  
 R. 1; 254, R. 2.  
*Donc*, w. subj., 263, 4; pr., 299, 4, E.  
*Dono*, w. abl., 249, I., R. 1; w. two da-  
 tives, 227, R. 1.  
*Dos*, gen. of, 61, 3; *doti dicare*, 227, R. 2.  
 Double consonants, 3, 1.  
 Doubtful gender, 30.  
*Dubito* and *non dubito*, 262, N. 7 and 8;  
*dubito an*, 198, 11, (e.); *dubito sit ne*, etc.,  
 262, N. 8.  
*Duco*, constr., 214; 227, R. 1; 230, N. 1;  
*in numero*, or *in loco*, 230, N. 4; *duc*, im-  
 perat., 162, 4.  
*Dudum* and *jamdudum*, 191, R. 6.  
*Duim*, *duis*, etc., 162, 1.  
*Dum*, w. subj., 263, 2; *dum ne* and *dum-*  
*modo ne*, 263, 2, N.; *dum*, 'until,' 263, 4,  
 (1.);—while, 263, 4, (2.)—compounded  
 with a negative, 277, R. 16.  
*Duntaxat*, 193, II., 3.  
*Duo*, declined, 118; *duum* for *duorum*,  
 118, E. 1.  
*-dus*, participle in, how declined, 105,  
 R. 2; of neuter deponent verbs, 161: with  
*sum*, 162, 15, neuter in *dum* with *est*, 274,  
 R. 11; w. dat. of person, 162, 15, R. 5; 225,  
 II.; of dep. verbs, 162, 17, (b.); w. acc.,  
 234, R. 2; its signification, 274, 2, R. 7 and  
 8; used for a gerund, 275, II.

## E.

*E*, sound of, 7 and 8; *ē* changed to *ū* or *ī*,  
 56, R. 4 and 5; nom. in *ē* in 3d decl., 56, I,  
 R. 1, 7; gender of nouns in *e* of 3d decl.,

66; genitive of, 63; abl. of, 82; old dat. in,  
 79; acc. plur. in, 54, 5; nom. plur. in, 83,  
 I., 1; voc. in, 81, R.; in gen. and dat. sing.  
 5th decl., 90, E. 2; cf. 40, 11; advs. in, 192,  
 II.; syncope of in imperf. of 4th conj., 162,  
 2; increment in *e* of 3d decl., 257, 3; plur.,  
 288; of verbs, 290; *e* ending the first part  
 of a compound word, 285, R. 4; *e* final,  
 quantity of, 295.—*e* or *ex*, prep., see *ex*.

*-ea*, Greek acc. sing. ending in, 54, 5, and  
 80, III.

Eapse, etc., 135, R. 3.

*Ecce*, compounded with demonstrative  
 pronouns, 134, R. 2; w. nom., 209, x 13;  
 w. acc., 238, 2.

*Eccum*, *eccillum*, *eccistam*, etc., 134, E. 2;  
 238, 2.

*-ecis*, gen. in, 78, (2.)

*Ecquis* and *ecqui*, how declined, 137, 8,  
 and R. 3; *ecquæ* and *ecqua*, 137, 3, R. 4;  
*ecquis est qui*, 264, 7, N. 2; *ecquid*, interrog.  
 particle, 198, 11, and R. a and b.

*Ecquisnam*, 137, 4.

Ectasis, 307, 2, (3.)

Ecthlipsis, 305, 2.

*Edepol*, 199, R. 3.

*Edico*, 273, N. 4.

*Edim*, *edis*, etc., 162, 1.

*-edis*, gen. in, 73, E. 1 and 112, 1.

*Editus*, w. abl., 246.

*Edo*, 'to eat,' conjugated, 181; compds  
 of, 181, N.

*-edo*, abstracts in, 101, 1.

*Edoceo*, w. two accs., 231, R. 1.

*Efficio*, 273, N. 2;—*efficiens*, w. gen., 218,  
 R. 1, (2.);—*efficitur*, w. *ut*, or the acc. with  
 the inf., 262, R. 3, N. 2.

*Effugio*, w. acc., 283, R. 1.

*Egeo* and *indigeo*, 250, 2, R. 1; 220, 8.

*-egis*, genitives in, 78, 2.

*Ego*, declined, 133.

*Eheu*, pr., 283, I., E. 5.

*Ei*, how pronounced, 9, 1, and R. 1; gen-  
 itive in, 73, R.; pr., 283, I., E. 6, (1.)

*-eia*, verbals in, 102, 3.

*-eis*, fem. patronymics in, 100, 1, (b.)—  
 acc. plur. in, 85, E. 1, and 114, 2.

*-eius*, pr., 283, I., E. 6, (3.)

*Ejus*, use of, 208, (6.)

*Ejusmodi* and *ejusdemmodi*, 139, 5, N. 2

*-ela*, verbals in, 102, 3.

Elegiac verse, 311, R. 2.

Ellipsis, 323; of pronoun in case of appo-  
 sition, 204, R. 4; of the noun of an adj.,  
 205, R. 7; 252, R. 3; of the antecedent 206,  
 (3.) and (4.); of *meus*, etc., 207, R. 36; of  
 nom., 209, R. 2 and 3; of verb, 209, R. 4;  
 229, R. 3; of a noun limited by a genitive,  
 211, R. 8; of gen., 211, R. 9; of a partitive,  
 212, R. 2, N. 3; of subject acc., 239; 269,  
 R. 1; of acc. after transitive verb, 229, R. 4;  
 of prep., 232, (2.); 235, R. 5; 241, R. 4; 248,  
 R. 3; of voc., 240; of *quam*, 256; of partici-  
 ple, in abl. absol., 257, R. 7; of *ut* w. subj.,  
 262, R. 4; of *ne* after *cave*, 262, R. 6; of *non*  
 after *non modò*, etc., 277, R. 6; of conjunc-  
 tions, 278, R. 6; of *j* in composition, 307  
 of *centena millia*, 327, R. 6.

*-ellus*, *a*, *um*, diminutives in, 100, 8  
 ▲ 3.

-em and -en, accs. in, 45, 1; 80, iv.; -em in acc. sing. 3d decl., 79, 80.

*Em*, 252, R. 1.

Em hatic word, its place in a sentence, 279, 2 and 16.

*En*, interrogative particle, 198, 11, and R. (a.); 137, R. 3; *en*, interjection, 199; w. nom., 209, R. 13; w. acc. 238, 2; -en, acc. in, 45, 1; 80, iv.

Enallage, 323, 3.

Enclitics, in accentuation, 15, 3;—conjunctions, 198, N. 1.

Endeavoring, verbs of, 273, 1, (a.)

-endus and -undus, 162, 20.

English pronunciation of Latin, 6.

*Enim* and *nam*, 198, 7, and R.; 279, 3, (a.) and (c.)

*Enimvero*, 198, 9, R. (a.)

Ennehemimeris, 304, 5.

*Ens*, participle, 154, R. 1.

-ensis, adjs. in, 128, 6, (a.)

-entissimus, superlatives in, 125, 3

-enus, adjs. in, 128, 1, (c.)

*Eo*, conjugated, 182; compds of, 182, R. 3; w. supine in *um*, 276, II., R. 2; w. two datives, 227, R. 1.

-eo, verbs in of 1st conj., 165, R. 3.

*Eo*, pron. w. comparatives, 256, R. 16.

*As* adverb of place, w. gen., 212, R. 4., N. 2, (b.)—of degree, w. gen., 212, R. 4. N. 3. *As* an illative conj., 198, 6.

*Eodem*, w. gen., 212, R. 4. N. 2.

*eos*, Greek gen. in, 76, E. 7; 54, 5; pr., 283, I., E. 6, (2.)

Epanadiplosis, 324, 18.

Epanados, 324, 19.

Epanalepsis, 324, 16.

Epanaphora, 324, 13.

Epanastrophe, 324, 17.

Epanorthosis, 324, 32.

Epenthesis, 322, 3.

Epicene nouns, 33.

Epistrophe, 324, 14.

Epizeuxis, 324, 20.

*Epulor*, with abl., 245, II., 4.

*Epulum*, 92, 6.

Equality, how denoted, 123, 3.

*Eques*, gender of, 31, 2; used collectively, 209, R. 11, (1.), (c.)

*Equidem*, its composition and use, 191, R. 4.

-er, nouns in, of 2d decl., 46—syncopated, 43, 1; of 3d decl., gender of, 58 and 60; genitive of, 70 and 71; syncopated, 71;—adjectives in, superlative of, 125; annexed to pres. infin. pass., 162, 6.

*Erga*, how used, 195, R. 7.

-ere, in 3d pers. plur. of perf. indic. active, 162, 8.

-eris, genitives in, 76; 73, E. 2; 74, E. 1; 2d li2, 1 and 2.

*Ergo*, w. gen., 247, R. 2, (a.)

Erotesis, 324, 31.

-errimus, superlatives in, 125, 1.

-es, proper names in, 44, 1; -es and -e in Greek nouns changed to a, 45, 3; nouns in of 3d decl. increasing in genitive, gender of, 58; 61; genitive of, 73; genitive of adjs. in, 112; not increasing, gender of, 62; genitive of, 63; in nom., acc., and voc. plur. of

masc. and fem. nouns of 3d decl., 88, I.; 85 final, sound of, 9, E. 2; quantity of, 300.

*Escit*, 154, R. 4.

*Esse* and *fuisse*, ellipsis of, 270, R. 3.

-esso, -isso or -so, intensives in, 187, II., 6.

*Est*, w. dat. of a possessor, 226; *est, qui* with subj., 264, 6; so *est, unde, ubi, cur, os ut*, 264, 6, R. 3.

*Et* and *que*, 198, 1, R. (a.); *et ipse*, 207, R. 27, (b.); ellipsis of *et*, 278, R. 6, (b.); *et is. et id, et is quidem*, 207, R. 26, (c.); *et—et et—que, et—neque or nec*, 198, 1, R. (e.) *et non*, 198, 1, (c.)

*Et—nim*, 198, 7, R. (a.)

*Etiā*, 198, 1, R. (d.); with comparatives 256, R. 9, (b.); 127, 3; *etiamnum, etiam tum*, 191, R. 7.

-etis, genitive in, 73; 112, 1.

*Etsi* and *etiāmsi*, constr., 271, R. 2.

-etum, derivative nouns in, 100, 7

Etymology, 24—199

*Eu*, the diphthong, 9, 3; when not a diphthong, 9, 3, R. 3; in voc. sing. of Greek nouns in *eus*, 81.

Euphemism, 324, 11.

*Eus*, nouns in of 2d decl., 54, 5;—adjs. in, 128, 1 and 2; Greek proper names in, 283, N. 2; gen. of, 76, E. 7; acc. of, 80, III. -ev and -etu, in 2d and 3d roots of verbs, 167.

*Evado*, constr., 251, N.

*Evenit*, conjugated, 184; *evenit ut*, 262, R. 3.

*Ex* and *e*, prep., how used, 195, R. 2 and 13;—used with partitives instead of the genitive, 212, N. 4; sometimes omitted, 251, and R. 1; *ex quo, scil. tempore*, 253, N. 4.

-ex, gender of nouns in, 65, 2.

*Exadversus*, w. acc., 195, R. 3.

*Excedo*, w. acc., 233, (3), N.

*Excello*, constr., 256, R. 16, (3.)

*Ercito*, w. ut, 273, N. 4.

*Excludo*, constr., 251, N.

*Exeo*, constr., 251, N.

*Existimo*, w. gen., 214; w. two accs., 230, N. 1; *existimor*, constr., 271, R. 2.

*Exlex*, 112, 2; 196, I., 6.

*Exos*, genitive of, 112, 2.

*Exosus*, 183, 1, N.

*Existunt qui*, w. subj., 264, 6.

*Exter*, 105, 3, and N.; comparison of, 125, 4.

*Expedio*, 251, N.; *expedit*, w. dat., 223, R. 2, (b.)

*Experior si*, 198, 11, (e.)

*Expers*, w. gen., 213, R. 1, (3.), and R. 5, (2.)

*Extemplo*, 198, 4, and II. 1.

*Extra*, how compared, 125, 4; *extremus*, how used, 205, E. 17; *extremum est, ut*, 262, R. 3.

*Exuo*, constr., 224, R. 2; *exuor*, 284, I., R. 1.

## F.

*Fabula*, ellipsis of, 29, 2.

*Fac*, imperative, 132, 4; *fac ut or ne*, 267, R. 3; *fac*, 'suppose or granting,' w. acc. and inf., 273, N. 3; pr., 299, E. 4.

*Facile*, adv., 192, 4, (b.); w. superlatives, etc., 277, R. 7.  
*Facilis*, constr., 276, III., R. 4; 222, R. 1, (a.)  
*Facio* and compds., passive of, 180 and N.; changes of in the compds., 189, N. 1. w. gen. of value, 214, R. 2; w. two accs., 230, N. 1; w. abl., 250, R. 3; w. *ut* and subj., 273, 1, N. 2 and 3; w. participle, 273, 1; w. *de*, etc., 250, R. 3; *facere non possum* quin, 262, 2; *facere quod*, 273, N. 8; ellipsis of, 209, R. 4; *facere certiore*, 230, N. 3.  
 Faliscan verse, 312, XI.  
*Fallit me*, 229, R. 7.  
*Familia* with *pater*, etc., gen. of, 43, 2.  
*Familiaris*, w. dat., 222, R. 1, (a.); with gen., 222, R. 2, (c.)  
*Fas*, its root, 56, II., R. 6; gen. of, 71, E. 2; abl., 82, E. 1, (b.); 94 and 95.  
*Fas*, gender of, 62, E. 2; 94; *fas erat*, the indic. instead of the subj., 259, R. 3; *fas est*, w. supine in *u*, 276, III., R. 2.  
*Fazo*, *faxim* and *faxem*, 162, 9, and 183, R. 1.  
*Faux*, geritive of, 78, 2, (5.); but cf. 94, p. 50, gen. plur., 83, II., 3.  
*Favetur*, conjugated, 184, 2, (b.) constr., 223.  
 Fearing, verbs of, w. *ut* and *ne*, 262, R. 7.  
*Febris*, ellipsis of, 205, R. 7, (1.)  
*Fecundus*, w. gen. or abl., 213, R. 5, (3.)  
 Feet, in poetry, 302; isochronous, 302, R.  
*Fel*, its root, 56, II., R. 6; its genitive, 70, E.; 94.  
*Felix*, declined, 111; 213, R. 4, (1.)  
*Femina*, added to epicene nouns, 33, N.  
 Feminine nouns, of 1st decl., 41; of 2d decl., 49—51; of 3d decl., 62; exceptions in, 62—65.  
*Femur*, genitive of, 71, 3.  
*Fer*, 162, 4; quantity of, 299, E. 4.  
*Fero*, conjugated, 179; its compds., 172, (p. 134); *fertur*, constr. of, 271, R. 2.  
*-ficus*, comparison of adjs. in, 125, 3, (a.)  
*Fido*, how conjugated, 142, R. 2; w. abl., 245, II.; w. dat., 245, II., R. 1; 223, R. 2.  
*Fidi*, (from *findo*), pr., 284, E. 1, (1.)  
 Figures of prosody, 305—307; of orthography and etymology, 322; of syntax, 323; of rhetoric, 324.  
*Filia*, dat. and abl. plur., 43.  
*Filius*, voc. sing., 52.  
 Filling, verbs of, w. abl., 249, I.; w. gen., 220, 3.  
 Final syllables, quantity of, 294—301;—conjunctions, 198, 8.  
*Finitimus*, w. dat., 222, R. 1, (a.)  
*Fio*, conjugated, 180; w. gen. of value, 214, R. 2; w. two datives, 227, R. 1; *fit* and *fieri non potest ut*, 262, R. 3; *fit per me*, 162, R. 11; quantity of *i* in *fio*, 283, E. 1.  
*Flagito* w. two accs., 231, R. 1; w. *ut*, 173, N. 4.  
*Fle to*, used reflexively, 229, R. 4, 1.  
*Flocci habere*, etc., 214, R. 1.  
*Fluo* and *struo*, 2d and 3d roots of, 171, N.  
 Follow, in what sense used, 203, 9.  
*Fons*, gender of, 64, 1.  
*Foras* and *foris*, 237, R. 5, (c.)  
*Forem*, *fore*, etc., 154, R. 3; 162, 12, (1.); w. two datives, 227, R. 1.

Fractional expressions, 121, 6.  
 Freeing, verbs of, 251.  
*Frenum*, plur. *freni* and *frena*, 92, 5.  
*Frequens*, w. gen. or abl., 213, R. 5, (4.); cf. R. 4, (1.)  
 Frequentative verbs, 187, II., 1; quantity of *i* in, 284, E. 4.  
*Fretus*, w. abl., 244; w. dat., 222, R. 6; w. inf., 244, R. 2, (b.)  
*Fructus*, declined, 87.  
*Frugi*, 115, 4; comparison of, 125, 5.  
*Fruor*, w. abl., 245, I.; w. acc., 245, I., R.  
*Frux*, genitive of, 78, 2, (5.) 94.  
*Fugio*, constr., 225, IV.; 210, R. 3, (2.), *fuge*, poetically, w. inf., 271, N. 3; *fugit me*, 229, R. 7.  
*Fui*, etc., in compound tenses, 162, 12, (1.); *fuisse*, w. perf. pass. participle, 263, R. 1, (b.)  
*Fungor*, w. abl., 245, I.; w. acc., 245, R., 275, II., R. 1.  
*Fuo*, root of *fui*, 154, R. 2 and 3; *futum*, pr., 284, E. 1, (2.) (b.)  
*Furo*, 183, R. 2.  
*Furor*, w. dat. or abl., 224, R. 2.  
 Future tense, 145, III.; how supplied in the subj., 260, R. 7; future perfect tense, 145, VI.; old form in *so*, 162, 9 and 10; future indic. for imperative, 267, R. 2; 259, R. 1, (4.); fut. imperative, 267, (2.), (3.); future pass. part. w. acc., 234, I., R. 2, fut. perf. for fut., 259, R. 1, (5.)  
*Futurum esse* or *fore*, *ut*, w. subj., 263, R. 4, (b.); *futurum fuisse*, *ut*, 268, R. 5.

## G.

G, sound of, 10; before *s* in roots o nouns, 56, R. 2; in roots of verbs, 171, 1 and E. 5.  
 Galliambus, 314, X.  
*Gaudeo*, how conjugated, 142, R. 2; with abl., 247, 1, (2.); w. acc., 232, N. 1; with *quod*, etc., 273, N. 6.  
*Gemo*, w. acc., 232, N. 1.  
 Gems, gender of names of, 29.  
*-gena*, compounds in, 43, 2.  
*Gener*, declined, 46.  
 General relatives, 139, 5, R.; how used, 207, R. 29.  
 General indefinites, 139, 5, R.  
 Gender, 26, 7 and 27; its divisions, 27; general rules of, 27—34; natural and grammatical, 27; masc. from signification, 28; fem. from do., 29; common and doubtful, 30; epicene, 33; neuter appellatives of persons, 32, 2; of Greek nouns, 34, R. 1; neuter, 34; of 1st decl., 41; excs. in 1st decl., 42; of 2d decl., 46; excs. in 2d decl., 49; of 3d decl., 58, 62, and 66; excs. in 3d decl., 59—67; of 4th decl., 87; excs. in 4th decl., 88; of 5th decl., 90; excs. in 5th decl., 90; gender of adjs., 205.  
*Genero*, w. abl., 246, R. 1; *generatus*, w. abl., 246.  
 Genitive, 37; sing., 1st decl., excs. in, 43; of 3d decl., 68; of adjectives, 3d decl., 112 plur., 1st decl., contracted, 43; 2d decl. do., 53; 3d decl., 83; terminal letters in all the declensions, 40, 5; of adjectives, 34



decl., 112 and 114; after nouns, 211; its place, 279, R.; what relations it denotes, 211, R. 1; subjective and objective, 211, R. 2; of substantive pronouns objective, 211, R. 3; possessive adjective used for, 211, R. 4; dative used for, 211, R. 5; of character or quality, 211, R. 6; of measure, 211, R. 6, and (3.) and (6.); noun limited by, omitted, 211, R. 7; wanting, in the predicate after *sum*, 211, R. 8; in other cases, 211, R. 8, (4.); omitted, 211, R. 9; two genitives, 211, R. 10; gen. after *opus* and *usus*, 211, R. 11; how translated, 211, R. 12; after partitives, 212; after a neuter adjective or adj. pronoun, 212, R. 3; its place, 279, 10; after adverbs, 212, R. 4; after adjectives, 213; of *cause* or *source*, 213, R. 2; different constructions instead of, 213, R. 4; after *dignus* and *indignus*, 244, R. 2; after verbs, 214—220; after *sum*, and verbs of valuing, 214; of crime, 217; after verbs of admonishing, 218; after verbs denoting an affection of the mind, 220; instead of abl. after verbs of abounding, etc., 220, 3; instead of predicate acc., 230, N. 4; of place, 221; after particles, 221, II., III.; of gerunds, 275, III., R. 1; plur. depending on a gerund, 275, R. 1, (3.); place of, after neuter adjectives, 279, 10.

Genitives, two, limiting the same noun, 211, R. 10.

*Genitus*, w. abl., 246.

*Genius*, voc. sing., 52.

*Gentium*, 212, R. 4, N. 2.

*Genus*, in acc. instead of the gen. or abl., as, *id genus*, *omne genus*, etc., 234, II., R. 2, *fin.*; 211, R. 6, (4.); 231, R. 6; used with the genit. instead of an apposition, 211, R. 2, N.

*Georgicon*, 54, 4.

*Gero* and *fero*, compounds of, in nouns of 2d decl., 47; in adjs. of 1st and 2d decls., 105, 3; not compared, 127, 7.

Gerundives, defined, 275, R. 2; how used, 275, II.

Gerunds, 25, and 148, 2; by what cases followed, 275; and gerundives, genitive of, 275, III., R. 1; nouns which they follow, *ib.* (1.); adjectives, *ib.* (2.); after *sum* denoting tendency, 275, (5.); instead of a noun in apposition, 211, R. 2, N.; dat. of, 275, R. 2; acc. of, 275, R. 3; abl. of, 275, R. 4; infin. for. after adj., 270, R. 1, (a.)

*Gigno*, pr., 284, R. 3.

*Gl, tl*, and *thl*, in syllabication, 18, 3.

*Glorior*, with abl., 247, 1, (2.); w. acc., 232, N. 1, and (3.)

Glyconic verse, 304, 2; 316, IV.

*Gn*, initial, 12, R.

*Gnarus*, w. gen., 213, R. 1; cf. R. 4, (1.)

*Go*, nouns in, gender of, 59, 2; genitive of, 69, E. 1.

Golden age, of Roman literature, 329, 2.

Government defined, 203, 7.

Grammatical subject, 202, 2; cases of, 202, R. 4; predicate, 203, 2; figures 322.

*Gratiā*, w. gen., 247, R. 2; its place, 279, R.; *gratias ago*, constr., 273, N. 6.

*Gratum mihi est, quod*, 273, N. 6.

*Gratulor*, constr., 273, N. 7.

Grave accent, 5, 2, and .4, 2; 15, R. 8.

*Gravidus* and *gravis*, w. gen. or abl. 213, R. 5, (3.)

Greek nouns, gender of, 34, R. 1; terminations of in 1st decl., 44; in 2d decl., 54 terminations of in 3d decl., 55, R.; acc. of in 3d decl., 80; declension of, in do., 86

Greek or limiting acc., 234, R. 2.

*Grex*, gender of, 65, 2; genitive of, 73, 2, (2.)

*Grus*, gender of, 30; genitive of, 75, E. 8

Guilt and innocence, adjectives of, with gen., 217, R. 1.

## H.

*H*, its nature, 2, 6; its place in syllabication, 18, 1; before *s* in verbal roots, 171, 1; in prosody, 283, I., (b.)

*Habeo*, with two accs., 230, N. 1; *habere* in *numero* or in *loco*, 230, N. 4; w. gen. of value, 214, t. 2; w. abl. of price, 252, R. 1; w. two datives, 227, R. 1; w. participle perf. pass., 274, R. 4; w. participle in *dus*, 274, R. 7, (a.); *habeo, non habeo*, or *nihil habeo, quod*, w. subj., 264, N. 3; *haberi*, w. predicate nom., 210, R. 3, (3.), (c.); 271, N. 2 and R. 4.

*Habito*, w. gen. of price, 214, N. 1; w. abl. of price, 252, R. 1.

*Hac* in answer to *qua*? 191, R. 1, (c.)

*Hactenus*, adv. of place and time, 191, R. 1, (g.)

*Hadria*, gender of, 42, 2.

*Hæc*, for *hæ*, 134, R. 1.

*Hand*, signification and use, 191, R. 3; *hand multum abest quin*, 262, N. 7; *hanc scio an*, 198, 11, R. (e.)

*Hebræ*, gen. of, 112, 1; abl. of, 113, E. 8; defective, 115, 2.

*Hic mihi*, 223, 3.

Hellenism, 323, R. (2.)

*Hem*, w. dat., 228, 3; w. acc., 238, 2; w. voc., 240, R. 1.

Hemistich, 304.

Hemiolius, 304, 5.

Hendiadys, 323, 2, (3.)

*Hepar*, genit. of, 71; abl. of, 82, E. 1, (b.)

Hephthemimeris, 304, 5.

*Heres*, gender of, 31, 2; genitive, 73, E. 1.

Heroic cæsura, 310, 4 and 5.

*Heros*, genitive, 75, 2; acc., 80, R.; *dat* plur., 84; acc. plur., 85, E. 2; declined, 36

Heteroclitc nouns, 93.

Heterogeneous nouns, 34, R. 2; 92.

Heterosis, 323, 3, (2.)

Ilexameter verse, 310; Priapean, 310, II.

Hiatus, 279, 18.

*Hibernus*, pr., 284, E. 5, R. 2.

*Hic*, pron., declined, 134; distinguished from *ille*, 207, R. 23; *hic—hic*, for *hic—ille*, 207, R. 23, (b.); related in time like *nunc* and *tunc*, *ib.* (c.)

*Hic*, adv. of place, *hic, hinc, huc*, etc. referring to the place of the speaker, 191, R. 1, (e.); w. gen., 212, R. 4, N. 2, (b.) adv. of time, 191, R. 1, (g.)

Him, her, etc., how expressed in Latin 207, R. 20.

Hipponactic trimeter, 314, II.; tetrameter, 314, IV.

Historical present, 145, I., 3; perfect, 145, IV., R.; for the pluperfect, 259, R. 1, (d.); infinitive, 209, R. 5; tenses, 258.

*Hoc*, pleonastic, 207, R. 21 and 22; *hoc* w. partitive gen., 212, R. 3, N. 1; *hoc* with comparatives, 256, R. 16.

*Hodie*, pr., 285, 2, E. 1.

*Homo*, gender of, 31, 2; genitive, 69, E. 2; *homo*, *hominis*, ellipsis of, 209, R. 2, (2.); 305, R. 7, (1.); 229, R. 4.

Homœopropheron, 324, 26.

*Humor*, (-os), declined, 57.

Horace, key to the odes of, 321.

Horatian metres, 320.

*Horreo*, w. inf., 271, N. 1.

*Hortor*, w. *ad*, 225, R. 1; w. *ut*, *ne*, etc., 278, 2; without *ut*, 262, R. 4.

*Hospes*, gender of, 30; formation of nom. sing., 56, I., R. 3; genitive, 73, 2; abl., 113, R. 2; as an adj., 129, 8.

*Hostis*, w. gen. or dat., 222, R. 2, (c.)

'However' w. a relative, how expressed in Latin, 280, III., (3.)

*Huc*, w. genitive, 212, R. 4, N. 2, (b.); *hucine rerum*, 212, R. 4, N. 3.

*Humi*, constr., 221, R. 3; *humo*, 254, R. 2; 255, R. 1.

*Huic*, pronunciation of, 9, 5; pr., 306, R. 2.

*Hujus non facio*, 214, R. 1.

*Hujusmodi*, 134, R. 5; w. *qui* and the subj., 264, 1, N.

Hypallage, 323, 4, (3.)

Hyperbaton, 323, 4.

Hyperbole, 324, 5.

Hypercatalectic or hypermeter verse, 304, B, (4.)

Hypothetical sentences, 259, R. 3, (c.), (d.), and R. 4; 260, II.; in the inf., 268, R. 4—R. 6.

Hysteron proteron, 323, 4, (2.)

## I.

*I*, its sound, 7 and 8; *i* and *j* but one character, 2, 3; *i* for *ii* in gen. of 2d decl., 52; *i* changed to *e* in forming certain nouns, 55, I., R. 3; nouns in *i*, gender of, 56; genitive of, 68; genitive of Greek nouns in, 73, R.; dat. of 3d decl. in, 79; abl. sing. in, 82; 113; in gen. and dat. sing. of 5th decl., 90, E. 2; *i* ending the former part of a compound noun or adj., 103, R. 1; 131, N.; in dat. sing. of nine adjs. in *us* and *er*, 107; in 1st person sing. of the perf. act., 147, 3; *i*, the characteristic vowel of the 4th conj., 149, 2; cf. 150, 5; *i* or *e* for the Greek *ι*, 283, E. 6, (1.); increment in, 3d decl., 287, 3; plur., 288; of verbs, 290; *i* final, quantity of, 235, R. 4.; 296.

-*ia*, abstracts in, 101, 3; in nom., acc. and voc. plur., 83; 85.

-*iacus*, adjs. in, 128, 1, (d.)

Iambic metre, 314; 303; tetrameter, 314, III.; trimeter, 314, I.; catalectic, 314, IV.; dimeter, 314, VI.; hypermeter, 314, VII.; acephalous, 314, VIII.; catalectic, 314, IX.; ambico-dactylic metre, 318, II.

-*ianus*, adjs. in, 128, 6, (f.)

-*ias*, fem. patronymics in, 100, 1, (b.)

*Ibi*, ellipsis of before *ubi*, 206, (3.), (a.)

-*icis*, genitive in, 78, 2, (2.), *init.*, and (3.), *init.*

-*icinus*, adjs. in, 128, 2; -*icinus* or -*itrus* verbal adjs. in, 129, 5.

*Ictus*, 308, 3.

-*iculus*, *a*, *um*, diminutives in, 100, 3, R. 1.

-*icus*, adjs. in, 128, 1, (d.), and 2, (a.), and 6, (i.)

*Id*, before a relative pron., 206, (13.); w. gen., 212, R. 3; *id temporis*, *etatis*, *id genus*, etc., 234, II., R. 3; 253, R. 3; *id ago*, constr., 273, N. 1; 207, R. 22; *id quod* instead of *quod*, 206, (13.), (b.); as acc. of degree, etc., 232, (3.)

*Idem*, declined, 134, R. 6; how used, 207, R. 27; w. gen., 212, R. 3; w. dat., 222, R. 7; 207, R. 27, (d.); supplying the place of *item*, *etiam*, or *tamen*, 207, R. 27; *idem qui*, *ac*, *atque*, *ut*, *cum*, etc., 207, R. 27, (d.); 222, R. 7; *idem—idem*, 'at once,' 207, R. 27, (c.); as acc. of degree, 232, (3.)

Ides, 326, 2.

-*ides*, and -*iades*, patronymics in, 100, 1, (a.); pr., 291, 4.

Idiotism, 325, 6.

-*idis*, genitives in, 73, E. 1; 74, E. 2.

*Idoneus*, *qui*, 264, 9; 270, R. 1.

-*idus*, adjs. in, 129, 2.

-*iei*, in 5th decl., quantity of the *e*, 288, I., E. 2.

-*ies*, advs. in, 192, II., 3.

*Igitur*, 193, 6; its place, 279, 3, (b.), equivalent to 'I say,' 278, R. 10.

*Ignarus*, w. genitive, 213, R. 1; 275, III, R. 1, (2.)

-*ii* in genitive contracted, 52; how accented, 14, E.

-*ile*, derivative nouns in, 100, 9.

-*ilis*, adjr. in, 129, 4; 128, 2.

*Illac*, in answer to *qua*? 191, R. 1, (d.)

*Illacrimo*, w. dat., 224, N. 1, 4.

Illative conjunctions, 198, 6.

*Ille*, declined, 134; its uses, 207, R. 20—26; w. *quidem*, redundant, 207, R. 21; its relation to time, 207, R. 23, (c.); as a pron. of the 3d pers., 207, R. 20; relation of *hic* and *ille*, 207, R. 23; *ille*, *qui*, w. subj., 264, 1, N.

*Illic*, pron., how declined, 134, R. 3; *illic*, *illuc*, *illinc*, advs., their reference, 191, R. 1, (e.)

-*illimus*, superlatives in, 125, 2.

*Illiusmodi*, 134, 5.

-*illo*, verbs in, 187, II., 4.

*Illud*, w. genitive, 212, R. 3, N. 1, (a.); pleonastic, 207, R. 22; as acc. of degree, 232, (3.)

*Illudo*, w. dat., 274, 4.

-*illus*, *a*, *um*, diminutives in, 100, 3, A. 8.

-*im*, in acc. sing. 3d decl., 79, 89; *im for eum*, 134, R. 1; -*im*, *is*, etc., in pres. subj., 162, 1; adverbs in, 192, I. and II.

*Imbecillus* pr., 284, 2, N. 3.

*Imbno*, constr., 231, B. 4.

Imitative verbs, 181, 5.

*Immemor*, gen. of, 112, 2; abl., 118, R. 3; gen. plur., 114, E. 2.

- Immo*, 191, R. 3.  
*Immodicus*, w. gen. or abl., 213, R. 5, (3.)  
*Immunis*, w. gen. or abl., 213, R. 5, (3.)  
 cf. 251, N.  
*-imonium*, deriv. nouns in, 100, 6;—and  
*-imonia*, verbals in, 102, 3.  
*Impatiens*, w. genit., 213, R. 1, (2)  
*Impavidus*, w. genit., 213, R. 1, (3.)  
*Impedio*, w. quin., 262, N. 7; w. *quominus*, 262, R. 11; w. inf., 262, R. 11, N.  
*Impello*, 273, N. 4.  
 Imperative, 143, 3; its tenses, 145, R. 3;  
 how used, 267, (1.), (2.); irregular, 162, 4  
 and 5; subj. for imperative 267, R. 2; sing.  
 for plur., 209, N. 2; used as a noun, 205,  
 R. 8.  
 Imperfect tense, 145, II: w. *oportet*, etc.,  
 259, R. 3; the imperf. indic. for plup. subj.,  
 259, R. 4.  
*Imperitus*, w. genit., 213, R. 1, (3.); of  
 gerund, 275, III., R. 1, (2.)  
*Impero*, constr., 273, N. 4; 262, R. 4; w.  
 dat. and acc., 223, R. 2, (1.)  
 Impersonal verbs, 184; subject of, 184, 2;  
 list of in 2d conj., 169; 184, R. 1; in 1st,  
 8d. and 4th conj., 184, R. 1; constr. w. gen.,  
 215, (1); 219; w. dat., 223, R. 2, N. (b.); w.  
 acc., 229, R. 6 and 7.  
*Impertio*, 249, I., and R. 3; 225, R. 1, (b.)  
*Impetro*, ut, 273, N. 2.  
*Impleo*, 249, R. 1; 220, 3.  
*Impono*, 241, R. 5.  
*Impos* and *impotens*, w. genit., 213, R. 1,  
 (8.)  
*Imprimis*, 193, II., 2.  
*Imprudens*, *improvidus*, w. genit., 213,  
 R. 1.  
*Impubes*, genitive, 112, 1; abl., 113, E. 2;  
 115, 1, (a.)  
*Impulsus*, w. abl. of cause, 247, R. 2, (b.)  
*-in*, roots of nouns in, 56, II., R. 1 and 2;  
 in acc. sing., 79.  
*In*, prep., constr., 235, (2.); signification  
 and use, 195, R. 14; in composition, 196, 7;  
 in with abl. instead of predicate acc., 230,  
 N. 4; constr. of verbs compd. with, 224;  
 w. abl. after verbs of placing, holding, re-  
 garding, assembling, etc., 241, R. 5; ellipsis  
 of with some ablatives of place, 254 and rs.;  
 with ablatives of time, 253, N. 1, and R. 5;  
 with names of towns, 254, R. 2 and R. 3.  
*Inanis*, w. genit. or abl., 213, R. 5, (3.)  
*Incassum*, 193, II., 4.  
*Incedo*, 233, (3.), N.; 210, R. 3, (2.)  
 Inceptive verbs, 187, II., 2; list of, 173.  
*Incertus*, w. genit., 213, R. 1; *incertum*  
 an, 198, 11, R. (e.); 265, R. 3.  
 Inchoatives, see inceptive verbs.  
*Invidet ut*, 262, R. 3.  
*Inuito*, constr., 225, R. 1; *incitatus*, w. abl.  
 of cause, 217, R. 2, (b.)  
*Incipio*, w. inf., 271, N. 1.  
*Inclino*, constr., 229, R. 4, 1; 225, IV.  
*Incommodo*, w. dat., 223, R. 2, N. (b.)  
 Increment of nouns, 286; sing. num.,  
 287; plur. num., 288; of verbs, 289.  
*Incrementum*, 324, 22.  
*Increpo* and *increpito*, w. gen., 217, R. 1.  
*Incumbo*, w. dat., 224, 4; w. *ad*, 224, R. 4.  
*Incusa*, w. genit., 217, R. 1.  
*Inde*, ellipsis of before *unde*, 206, (8.), (a.)  
*inde loci*, 212, R. 4, N. 4.  
 Indeclinable nouns, 34; 94;—adjectives  
 115, 4.  
 Indefinite adjectives, 104; 139, 5, R.;—  
 pronouns, 133;—adverbs, 191, R. 4.  
 Indicative mood, 143, 1; its tenses, 145  
 how used, 259; tenses used one for another  
 259, R. 1—4; indic. of the preterites with  
*oportet*, etc., 259, R. 3; in inserted clauses  
 266, 2, R. 3 and 5; 266, 1, R. 1.  
*Indico*, w. acc. and inf., 272, N. 1.  
*Indigeo*, w. abl., 250, 2, (2.); w. genit.  
 220, 3.  
*Indignor*, constr., 273, 5, N. 6.  
*Indignus*, w. abl., 244; w. genit., 244,  
 R. 2; *indignus qui*, w. subj., 264, 9; w. su-  
 pine in *u*, 276, III., R. 1.  
*Indigus*, w. genit. or abl., 213, R. 5, (2.)  
 Indirect questions, subj. in, 265:—indirect  
 reference, 266, 3:—indirect discourse,  
 266, 1, N. and 2.  
*Induco*, *id animum inducere*, 233, (1.);  
 pass. w. acc., 234, R. 1; *inductus*, w. abl.  
 of cause, 247, R. 2, (b.)  
*Indulgeo*, constr., 223, (1.), (a.)  
*Induo*, w. dat. and acc., 224, 4; w. abl.  
 and acc., 249, I., R. 1; cf. 224, R. 1, (b.)  
*induo* and *exuo*, constr. in pass., 234, R. 1.  
*-ine* or *-ione*, fem. patronymics in, 100, 1, (b.)  
*Ineo*, 182, R. 3; *inire consilia*, w. inf.  
 270, R. 1, (c.); 284, III.  
*Iners*, abl. of, 113, E. 3, and R. 1.  
*Inerpertus*, w. genit., 213, R. 1.  
*Infamo*, w. genit. of crime, 217, R. 1.  
*Infero*, 224, 4, and R. 4.  
*Inferus*, comparison of, 125, 4;—*inferior*  
 w. dat., abl., or *quam*, 256, R. 10; *infimus*  
 and *imius*, 205, R. 17.  
 Infinitive, 143, 4; as a noun, 26, R.; 269;  
 its gender, 34, 4; 205, R. 8; its cases, 269,  
 (b.); as an acc., 229, R. 5; 270; as a verb,  
 269, (a.); its tenses, 145, R. 4; old inf. pres.  
 pass. in *-er*, 162, 6;—inf. as logical subj.,  
 202, R. 2; 269; how modified, 203, III., 5;  
 with subject nom., 209, R. 5; for the geni-  
 tive, 213, R. 4; its subjete, 239; w. dat. in-  
 stead of acc., 227, N.; construction and  
 meaning of its tenses, 268; inf. as subject  
 of inf., 269, R. 3; as predicate nom., 269,  
 R. 4; *esse*, etc., with *licet* and a predicate  
 noun or adj., case of such predicate, 269,  
 R. 5; poetically after what verbs, 271, N. 3;  
 depending on a verb, 270; 229, R. 5; on an  
 adj. or noun, 270, R. 1; 275, II., R. 1, N. 1;  
 absolute, 270, R. 2; ellipsis of, 270, R. 3;  
 inf. without a subject after what verbs  
 used, 271; with a subject, after what verbs,  
 272; 273; how translated, 272, R. 3; used  
 like a noun, 273, N. 9; its place, 279, 11;  
 inf. pres. for inf. perfect, 268, R. 1; inf.  
 perf. for present, 268, R. 2; pres. for futura  
 268, R. 3; poet. to denote a purpose, 274,  
 R. 7, (b.)  
*Infinitum est*, the indic. for the subj.  
 259, R. 4, (2)  
*Infirmus*, w. genit. or abl., 213, R. 5, (3.)  
*Infit*, 183, 14, 180, N.  
 Inflection, 25; parts of speech inflected  
 24, 4.



- ingens*, abl. of, 113, E. 3.  
*inimicus*, w. dat., 222, R. 1; w. genit., 222, R. 2, (c.)  
*-inis*, genitives in, 69, E. 1 and 2.  
*Initio*, "at first," 253, N. 1.  
*Initor*, 224, R. 4. See also *nitior*.  
*Innocens* and *innocius*, w. genit. 213 R. 1.  
*Insatiabilis*, w. genit., 213, R. 5, (1.)  
*Inscius*, w. genit., 213, R. 1, (3.)  
*Inscribo*, *insculvo*, and *insero*, constr., 211, R. 5.  
*Insimulo*, w. genit., 217, R. 1.  
*Insolens* and *insolitus*, w. genit., 213, R. 1.  
*Inops*, abl. of, 113, E. 3; 115, 1, (a.); w. genit., 213, R. 1; cf. R. 4, (1.); w. abl., 250, 2, (1.)  
*Inquam*, 183, 5; ellipsis of, 209, R. 4; its position, 279, 6.  
 Inserted clauses, 266.  
*Insinuo*, constr., 229, R. 4, 1.  
*Insons*, genit. plur. of, 114, E. 3; 115, 1, (a.); w. genit., 213, R. 1.  
*Inspingo*, 249, I., R. 1 and R. 3.  
*Instar*, a diptote, 94.  
*Instituto*, 273, N. 4; 230, N. 1; 231, R. 4; w. inf., 271, N. 1.  
 Instrument, abl. of, 247, and R. 5; w. verbs of teaching, 231, R. 3, (c.)  
*Instruo*, 231, R. 4.  
*Insumere tempus*, 275, R. 2.  
*Insuesco*, w. dat. or abl. of the thing, 245, II., 3; w. inf., 271, N. 1.  
*Insuetus*, 213, R. 1, (3.); 222, R. 2, (a.); 275, III., (2.); 270, R. 1; 275, III., R. 1, (2.)  
*Insuper*, w. acc. or abl., 235, R. 8.  
*Integer*, w. genit., 213; *integrum est ut*, 262, R. 3, N. 3.  
*Intelligo*, w. two accs., 230, N. 1; w. acc. and inf., 272, N. 1; *intelligitur*, w. inf. as subject, 269, R. 2.  
 Intention denoted by participle in *rus* with *sum*, 162, 14; 274, R. 6.  
*Intentus*, w. acc. *nihil*, 232, (3.); *intentum esse*, w. dat. of gerund, 275, III., R. 2, (1.)  
*Inter*, use of, 235, 1, R. 2; in composition, 196, I., 8;—w. *se* or *ipse*, 208, (5.); w. gerunds, 275, III., R. 3; instead of partitive gen., 212, R. 2, N. 4; construction of its compds., 224; repeated by Cicero after *intresse*, 277, II., 4.  
*Intercedo*, w. *quin*, *ne*, or *quominus*, 262, R. 11.  
*Intercludo* and *interdico*, 251, N. and R. 2.  
*Interdico*, w. abl., 251, N.  
*Interdiu* or *die*, 253, N. 1.  
*Interea loci*, 212, R. 4, N. 4.  
 Interest, Roman computation of, 327.  
*Interest*, w. genit., 219; w. *mea*, etc., 219, R. 1; subject cf. 219, R. 4; degree of interest how expressed, 219, R. 5.  
*Interior*, comparison of, 126, 1; *intimus*, 305, R. 17.  
 Interjections, 199; w. nom., 209, R. 13; w. dat., 228, 3; w. acc., 238, 2; w. voc., 240; *O*, *heu*, etc., not elided, 305.  
*Intermitto*, w. inf., 271, N. 1.  
*Interpres*, gender of, 30; 61, 2; genit. of, 3, 3.  
*Interrius*, w. genit., 213, R. 1 and 2.  
 Interrogative particles, 198, 11;—adjs. 104, 14; 121, 5; 139, 5, 3;—pronouns, 137 in indirect questions, 137, N.; 265, N. 2;—sentences, 200, 3.  
*Interrogo*, w. two accs., 231, R. 1; constr. in pass., 234, I.; w. genit. of the crime, 217, R. 1.  
*Intersum*, w. dat., 224, 5.  
*Intus*, w. acc., 238, 1, (b.)  
*Intra*, how used, 195, R. 8; 253, R. 4, (b.)  
 Intransitive verb, 141, II.; used impersonally in pass. w. dat., 223, R. 2, (c.)  
*-inus*, adjs. in, 128, 1, 2, and 6.  
*Invado*, 233, (2.), N.  
 Invariable adjs., 122; specified, 127, 7.  
*Invenio*, w. two accs., 230, N. 1; *invenitur*, *qui*, w. subj., 264, 6.  
*Invideo*, constr., 223, (1.), (c.): 220, 1  
*invidetur mihi*, 223, R. 2, N. (c.)  
*Inventus*, w. dat. of the person, 226, R. 3,  
*invita Minervā*, 257, R. 7.  
 Involuntary agent of pass. verb, 248, II., and N.  
*-io*, nouns in, gender of, 59, 1; personal appellatives in, 100, 4, (b.); verbals in, 102, 7; verbs in of 3d conj., 159.  
 Ionic metre, 317; 303;—*a majore*, 317, I.; —*a minore*, 317, II.  
*-ior*, *-ius*, in terminational comparatives, 124, 2.  
*Ipse*, declined, 135; how used, 135, R. 1; 207, R. 28; used reflexively, 208, (4.); 207, R. 28, (c.); w. *inter*, 208, (5.); *et ipse*, 207, R. 27, (b.); *ipse*, with the inf., 273, N. 9, (a.); *nunc ipsum* and *tum ipsum*, 191, R. 7.  
*Ipsus* and *ipsissimus*, 135, R. 2.  
*Irascor*, w. dat., 223, R. 2, N., (b.)  
*Iri*, w. supine in *um*, 276, II., R. 3.  
 Iron age of Roman literature, 329, 4.  
 Irony, 324, 4.  
 Irregular nouns, 92;—adjs., 115;—verbs, 178—182.  
*-is*, nouns in, gender of, 62: 63; genitive of, 74; —*-is* or *-eis* instead of *-ēs* in acc. plur. of 3d decl., 85, E. 1; abl. of adjs. in *is* used as nouns, 82, E. 4;—used as proper names, 82, E. 4, (b.); —*is* for *-us* in genitive of 4th decl., 89, 2; fem. patronymics in, 100, 1, (b.); ellipsis of in 2d root of verbs, 162, 7, (c.)  
*Is*, pron., declined, 134; how used, 207, R. 26; referring to a clause, 206, (13.); *is* and *ille* with *quidem* used pleonastically, 207, R. 21; *is* for *talis*, 207, R. 26, (b.); 264, 1, N.; *et is*, *atque is*, *isque*, *et is quidem*, 207, R. 26, (c.); ellipsis of *is*, 207, R. 26, (d.); *is-qui*, 264, 1, N.  
 Islands, gender of, 29; constr. of names of, 237, R. 5, (b.)  
*-issimus*, *a*, *um*, the terminational superlative, 124, 2.  
*-isso*, verbs in, 187, II., 5.  
*Iste*, how declined, 134; how used, 207, R. 25; *iste qui*, w. subj., 264, 1, N.  
*Istic*, pron., declined, 134, R. 3.  
*Istic*, adv., *istinc*, *istuc*, their reference, 191, R. 1, (c.)  
*Istiusmodi*, 134, R. 5.  
*-it*, roots of nouns in, 56, II., R. 5; in 3d root of 4th conj., 175, of certain verbs of 3d conj., 171, E. 7

*Ita*, 191, R. 5; 277, R. 12, (a.); *ita non*, 277, R. 14.

*Itaque*, its meaning, 193, 6, R.; its place, 279, 3, (b.)

*Iter*, declined, 57; 71, 2; with *sum* and acc. of place, 237, R. 1; increments of, 286, 2.

*-iter* and *-ter*, advs. in, 192, II. and IV.  
*-itas*, *-ia*, *-itia*, *-ities*, *-itudo*, and *-itus*, abstracts in, 101, 1.

*-itiz*, genitive in, 73; 78, 1; 112, 1.

*-ito*, frequentatives in, 187, II., 1.

*-itius* or *-icius*, adjs. in, 129, 5.

*Ium*, sup., in prosody, 284, E. 1, (2.)

*-itus*, advs. in, 192, I. and II.; adjs. in, 128, 7.

*-iun*, verbals in, 102, 2; *-ium* or *-itium*, nouns in, 100, 5.

*-ius*, genitives in, place of English accent, 15; in what adjs., 107; quantity of the *i*, 283, I., E. 4:—adjs. in, 128, 1, 2, and 5; voc. sing. of patris and possessives in, 52.

*-it*, in 2d roots of verbs, 175; 171, E. 3.

*-ivus*, adjs. in, 129, 7.

## J.

*J*, vowel before, in prosody, 283, IV., N. 1.

*Jaceo*, 210, R. 3, (2.); 233, (3.), N.

*Jam*, with a negative, 191, R. 6; *jamdudum*, ib.

*Jecur*, genitive of, 71, 3; increments of, 286, 2.

*Jejunus*, w. gen. or abl., 213, R. 5, (3.)

*Jesus*, decl. of, 53.

*Jocus*, plur. *joci* and *joca*, 92, 2.

*Jubar*, abl. of, 82, E. 1, (b.)

*Jubeo*, constr., 223, (2.); 273, 2, (d.); 272, R. 6; 262, R. 4; ellipsis of *jubeo valere*, 233, R. 2; *jubeor*, w. inf., 271, N. 1.

*Jucundus*, constr., 276, III., R. 1 and 4; *jucundum est*, w. *quod*, 273, 5, N. 6.

*Judico*, w. two accs., 230, N. 1; w. acc. and inf., 272, N. 1; in pass., 210, R. 3, (3.), (c.); *judicari* w. predicate nominative, 271, N. 2.

*Jugerum*, 93, 1; 94.

*Jugum*, quantity of its compds., 283, IV., V. 1.

*Jungo*, constr., 229, R. 4, 1.

*Junctus* and *conjunctus*, constr., 222, R. 6, (c.)

*Jupiter*, genitive of, 71; declined, 85.

*Jure aliquid facere*, without *cum*, 247, 2.

*Juro*, its compds., 189, N. 3:—*juratus*, with active meaning, 162, 16:—*juro*, poet. w. inf., 271, N. 3.

*Jururandum*, declined, 91.

*Justum erat*, indic. for subj., 259, R. 3, *justum est* with inf. as subject, 269, R. 2; *justo* after comparatives, 256, R. 9; its place 279, N. 1.

*Jurat*, w. acc., 229, R. 7

*Juvenalis*, abl. of, 82, E. 4, (b.)

*Juvenis*, abl. of, 82, E. 4, (b.); 113, E. 2; comparison of, 126, 4; 115, 1, (a.); for in *juvenile*, 253, R. 6.

*Juxta* as an adv., 195, R. 4; *juxta ac* or *juxtaque*, 183, 3, 2.

## K.

*K*, its use, 2, 4.

Key to the Odes of Horace, 821.

Knowing, verbs of, their construction, 272

## L.

*L*, roots of nouns in, 56, II.; gender of nouns in, 66; genitive of, 70;—final, quantity of, 299, 2.

*Laboro*, constr., 273, N. 1; poet. w. inf. 271, N. 3.

Labials, 3, 1.

*Lac*, gender of, 66, E.; genitive of, 70.

*Lacesso*, constr., 225, R. 1.

*Lactor*, w. abl., 247, 1, (2.); acc., 232, (3.)

*Latus*, w. abl. or gen., 213, R. 5, (4.); cf. R. 4, (1.)

*Lampas*, declined, 86.

*Lapis*, declined, 57.

*Lar*, pr., 284, N. 1.

*Largus*, w. gen. or abl., 213, R. 5, (3.) cf. R. 4, (1.)

*Lars*, genitive of, 71.

*Lassus*, w. genit., 213, R. 2.

*Lateo*, w. dat. or acc., 223, R. 2, N., (b.), and (1.), (a.)

Latin grammar, its divisions, 1.

*Latinis*, for *ludis Latinis*, 253, N. 1.

*Latus*, *altus*, and *longus*, w. acc. of space, 236.

*Lavo* and *laxo*, scil. *se*, 229, R. 4, 1; *lavo*, w. abl. of price, 252, R. 1.

*Laxo*, w. abl., 251, N.

Leading clause, subject, and verb, 201, 13.

*Lego* (*ere*), its form in the compds., 189, N. 2; constr., 230, N. 1.

*Lenio*, constr., 229, R. 4, 1.

*-lentus*, adjs. in, 128, 4.

Letters, 2; division of, 3; sounds of, 7 numeral, 118, 7; capital, 2, 2; silent, 12, a terminal in 3d decl., 55.

*Lero*, w. abl., 251, N.; w. gen. poet. 220, 2.

*Lex*, gender, 65, 2; genitive, 78, 2, (2.);—*legem dare*, constr., 273, 2, N. 4;—*lege*, abl. of manner, 247, 2.

*Liber*, w. abl. or gen., 213, R. 5, (4.); cf. 220, 2; and 251, N.; w. genit., 213, R. 5, (4.); cf. R. 4, (1.)

*Libero*, w. abl., 251, N.; poetically. w. genit., 220, 2.

*Liberalis*, w. genit., 213, R. 5, (1.)

*Libram* and *libras*, 236, R. 7.

*Libro*, abl. w. adj. without prep., 254, R. 2.

*Licentia*, w. genit. of gerund, 275, III., R. 1, (1.)

*Liceo*, w. genit. of price, 214, R. 3, w. abl., 252, R. 1.

*Licet*, w. dat., 223, R. 2; w. subj. the acc. with the inf., or the inf. alone, 273, 4; 262, R. 4; w. inf. as subject, 269, R. 2; case of the predicate after *licet esse*, etc., 269, R. 5; w. indicative instead of subj., 259, R. 3, (a.)—*licet*, conj. w. subj., 263, 2.

Limiting acc., 234, II.;—abl., 250 and R.

*-linus*, superlatives in, 125, 2.

Linguals and liquids, 3, 1.

*Liquidus*, pr., 284, E. 5, R. 3.  
*-lis*, adjs. in, comparison, 125, 2.  
*Literas dare, scribere* or *mittere*, 225, IV.,  
 1. 4; ellipsis of, 229, R. 4. 2; *literas* or *lité-*  
*-is*, after verbs of teaching, 231, R. 3, (c.)  
*Litotes*, 324, 9.  
*Litum*, pr., 284, E. 1, (2.)  
 Loading, verbs of, w. abl., 249, I.  
*Locuples*, genitive of, 112, 1; abl., 113,  
 E. 2; gen. plur., 114, E. 3; 115, 1, (a.); w.  
 abl. or gen., 213, R. 5, (4.)  
*Locus*, plur. *loci* and *loca*, 92, I., 2; *loco*  
 and *locis*, abl. of place without a preposi-  
 tion, 254, R. 2; *loco*, w. gen. for predicate  
 nom., 210, N. 3; for predicate acc., 239, N.  
 4; *loci* and *locorum*, 212, R. 4, N. 2 and N.  
 4; *locus* in apposition to names of towns,  
 237, R. 2; *loco*, w. gen. of price, 241, R. 5;  
 w. abl. of price, 252, R. 1; w. participles in  
*-us*, 274, R. 7; w. genitive of gerunds, 275,  
 III., R. 1, (1.)  
 Logical subject, 202, 3,—predicate, 203, 3.  
 Long syllable, 282, 2.  
*Longe*, w. comparatives and superlatives,  
 127, 3; 256, N.; w. acc. of space, 236, N. 2;  
*longe gentium*, 212, R. 4, N. 2, (b.); *longius*  
 without *quam*, 256, R. 6.  
*Longitudine*, w. genit. of measure, 211,  
 R. 6, (6.)  
*Longus*, w. acc. of space, 236; *longum*  
*est*, the indicative instead of the subjunc-  
 tive, 259, R. 4, (2.)  
*-ls*, genitive of nouns in, 77, 2, (2.)  
*Ludis*, for *in tempore ludorum*, 253, N. 1;  
 257, R. 9, (2.)  
*Luo*, w. abl., 252, R. 1.

## M.

*M*, roots of nouns ending in, 56, I.; be-  
 fore *d* changed to *n*, 134, N. 1; dropped in  
 the 3d root of certain verbs, 171, E. 6; final,  
 quantity of, 299, 3; elided, 305, 2.

*-ma*, Greek nouns in, genitive plur. of,  
 14, E. 2.

*Mactus*, 115, 5; *macte*, w. abl., 247, 1,  
 N. 2; w. genit., 213, R. 5, (4.)

*Magis* and *maxime*, use of in forming  
 comparatives and superlatives, 127, 1; pleo-  
 nastic with *malle*, etc., 256, R. 13.

*Magnus*, compared, 125, 5; w. supine in  
*-e*, 276, III., R. 1; *magnam partem*, 284, II.,  
 1 3; *magni, parvi*, etc., w. verbs of valu-  
 ing, 214, R. 1; *magno, parvo*, etc., w. verbs  
 of buying, etc., 252, R. 3.

*Male*, constr. of its compounds *malefacio*,  
*maledico*, etc., 225, I.; *male*, instead of abl.  
 of price, 252, R. 3; *male, bene*, or *prudenter*  
*facio*: *male* or *bene fit*, w. *quod*, 273, 5, (1.)

*Mala*, conjugated, 178, 3; constr., 273, 4;  
 172, R. 4; *malum* meaning of, 260, II., R. 2;  
 constr. w. abl. like a comparative, 256, R.  
 15, (3.)

*Malus*, compared, 125, 5.

*Mando*, constr., 223, R. 2. and (1.), (b.);  
 173, N. 4; 274, R. 7, (a.); 262, R. 4

*Mane*, 94; 192, 3.

*Maneo*, 210, R. 3, (2.); compds of, 233,  
 3, N.

*Manifestus*, w. genit. 213, R. 1.

Manner, advs. of, 191, I.I., abl. of, 247  
 with *cum*, 247, 2; w. *de* or *ex*, 247, R. 3.

*Manus*, gender of, 88; ellipsis of, 205, R.  
 7, *manum injicere*, 233, (1.)

*Mare*, abl. of, 82, E. 1, (b.); ellipsis of,  
 205, R. 7.

*Mas*, gender of, 62, E. 1; genitive, 72,  
 E. 1; genit. plur., 83, II., 3, E.; used to  
 distinguish the sex of epicenes, 33, N.

Masculine nouns of 3d decl., 58; excep-  
 tions in, 59—61;—masculine cæsura, 210,  
 N. 1.

*Materfamilias*, declined, 91

*Materia*, w. genit. of gerunds, 275, III.,  
 R. 1, (1.)

Material nouns, 26, 6;—adjs., 104, 8

*Matureo*, scil. *se*, 229, R. 4, 1; w. inf., 271,  
 N. 1.

*Me* and *mi* for *mihi*, 133, R. 1.

*Mea, tua*, etc., w. *refert* and *interest*, 219,  
 R. 1 and 2.

Means, abl. of, 247; when a person, 247,  
 R. 4; w. passive verbs, 248.

Measure or metre, 303; Roman measures  
 of length, etc., 327.

*Medeor*, w. dat., 223, N. (b.); its gerun-  
 dive, 275, II., R. 1.

*Medicor*, constr., 223, (1.), (a.)

*Meditor*, constr., 273, N. 1.

*Medius*, how translated, 205, R. 17; w.  
 genit., 213; w. *inter*, 213, R. 4, (2.); w. abl.,  
 213, R. 4, (5.); its place, 279, 7, (b.)

*Mel*, genitive of, 70, E.; 56, II., R. 6; abl.,  
 82, E. 5, (b.); 94.

*Melas*, genitive of, 72, E. 2.

*Melius fuit* and *erat* instead of subj., 259,  
 R. 3; *melius est*, w. dat., 228, 1; *melius*  
*erit*, w. perf. inf., 268, R. 2.

*Melos*, nom. plur. of, 83, 1; 94.

*Meme* and *mepte*, intensive, 133, R. 2.

*Memini*, 183, 3; constr., 216; w. present  
 inf., 268, R. 1; w. acc. and inf., 272, N. 1;  
*memento*, poet. w. inf., 271, N. 3.

*Memor*, w. genit., 213, R. 1, (3.); w. subj.,  
 213, R. 4.

*Memoro*, constr., 272, R. 6.

*-men*, nouns in, gender of, 61, 4, and 6b;  
 genitive, 71, 1; *-men* or *-mentum*, verbals  
 in, 102, 4.

*Mens*; in *mentem venit*, constr., 216,  
 B. 3.

*Mercor*, w. abl. of price, 252, R. 1.

*-met*, enclitic, 133, R. 2; 139, R. 1.

Metalepsis, 324, 6.

Metaphor, 324, 1.

Metaplasm, 322, I.

Metathesis, 322, 9.

*Meto*, 171, E. 2.

Metonymy, 324, 2.

Metre, 303; how divided, 303, 2; different  
 kinds, 310—317.

Metres, compound, 318; Horatian, 320.

*-metros*, Greek nouns in, 49, 2.

*Mituo*, w. *ut* or *ne*, 262, R. 7; w. inf., 271,  
 N. 1.

*Mis*, voc. sing. masc., 105, R. 3; 139, 1  
 used reflexively, 139, R. 2; how declined  
 139; *meum est*, 211, R. 8, (3.), (a.)

*Mi*, for *mihi*, 133, R. 1.

Middle voice in Greek, 243, R. 1, (2)



**Mile, Roman.** 327.  
*Miles*, declined, 57; gender, 30; 61, 2; genitive, 73, 2; used collectively, 209, R. 11, 1.), (c.); ellipsis of, 205, R. 7.  
 Military expressions without *cum*, 249, III., R.  
*Militiae*, construed like names of towns, 221, R. 3.  
*Mille*, how used, 118, 6; ellipsis of, 327, R. 5.  
*Million*, how expressed, 118, 5, (a.); a million sisters, 327, R. 3.  
*Min* for *minime*, 133, R. 1.  
*-mino*, in old imperatives, 162, 5.  
*Minor* and compds, w. acc. and dat., 223, (1) (t)  
*Miristra*, v. dat., 223, R. 2; and (1.), (b.)  
*Mixus* and *miximum*, w. genit., 212, R. 3, n. 1; *minus*, for *non*, 277, I., R. 14; *minus* without *quam*, 256, R. 6.  
*Mirror*, conjugated, 161, w. genit. poet., 220, 1; constr., 273, N. 6.  
*Mirum est ut*, 262, R. 3, N. 3; *mirum quam*, *quantum*, etc., 265, R. 4.  
*Misceo*, how construed, 245, II., 2, and R. 1; 224, R. 3.  
*Miserer*, *miseresco*, *miseret*, *miseritum est*, and *miserescit*, w. gen. of the thing, 215; *miseret*, etc., w. acc. of the person, 215, N. 3; 229, R. 6; and w. acc. of the thing, 215, N. 2; w. acc. of degree, 215, N. 3.  
*Mitis*, declined, 109.  
*Mitto*, w. *ad* or *in*, 225; w. two dat., 227; 273, 2, (c.); w. participle in *dus*, 274, R. 7; w. inf., 271, N. 3; w. *quod*, 273; *missum facio*, 274, R. 4.  
*Mn*, initial, 12, 2, R.  
*Mobilis*, pr., 234, E. 5, R. 1.  
*Moderor*, constr., 223, (1.), (a.)  
*Modi* annexed to pronouns, 134, R. 5; its use, 211, R. 6, (5.)  
*Modicus*, w. genit., 213, R. 5, (1.)  
 Modified subject, 202, 6; itself modified, 202, III., R. 1;—predicate, 203, 5.  
 Modify or limit, in what sense used, 202, 1, R.  
*Modo* as abl. of manner, 247, 2.  
*Modo*, conditional conj., 198, 5; w. subj., (3, 2; *modo*, adv., 193, II., 3; *modo ne*, 268, 2, N. 1; *modo—modo*, 277, R. 8.  
*Modus*, w. genit. of gerunds, 275, III., R. 1, (1.)  
*Mollio*, 229, R. 4, 1.  
*Molestie*, *agere* or *graviter fero*, w. *quod*, 273, N. 6.  
*Monero*, conjugated, 157; constr., 218, and R. 1, 2; 273, N. 1; without *ut*, 262, R. 4; w. acc. and inf., 273, N. 4, (e.); in pass., 234, 1.  
 Money, Roman, 327, pp. 370—372.  
 Monoclon, 319, 2.  
 Monometer, 304, 2; 313, 1.  
 Monophotes, 94.  
 Monosyllables, quantity of, 294, (a.); 299, 1; their place, 279, 8.  
*Mons*, gender of, 64, 1.  
 Months, Roman, 326, 2; names of, 326; division of, 326, 1; gender of names of, 28; 15, 3; abl. of names in *er* and *is*, 82, E. 2, a.)

## Moods, 143.

*Mora*, in prosody, 282, 2.  
*Mos* or *moris est*, constr., 263, R. 3; w. genit. of gerunds, 275, III., R. 1, (1.), *mor* as abl. of manner without *cum*, 247, 2.  
 Motion or tendency, verbs of, constr. 225, IV.; 237, R. 3.  
*Motum*, pr., 284, E. 5, R. 1.  
 Mountains, gender of names of, 28, 3.  
*Moveo*, constr., 229, R. 4, 1; 251, N.  
*motus*, w. abl. of cause, 247, R. 2, (b.)  
*-ms*, nouns in, genitive of, 77, 2, (1.)  
 Multiplicatives, 121, 1.  
*Multo*, (*are*), constr., 217, R. 5.  
*Multus*, compared, 125, 5; *multi et*, how used, 278, R. 5; *multo*, w. comparatives, etc., 127, 3; 256, R. 16; so *multum*, ib., N.; *multum*, w. genitive, 212, R. 3, N. 1; ad acc. of degree, 212, (2.); *multus* instead of an adverb, 205, R. 15.  
*Mus*, gender of, 30; 67, 4; genitive, 76, N. 3; genit. plur., 83, II., 3.  
*Munificus*, w. genit., 213, R. 5, (1.)  
 Mutes, division of, 3, 1; a mute and a liquid in prosody, 283, IV., E. 2  
*Mutilus*, w. abl., 213, R. 5, (5.)  
*Muto*, constr., 252, R. 5; 229, R. 4, 1.

## N.

*N*, roots of nouns in, 56, II.; nouns in, gender of, 58; 61; genitive of, 70; 71; final quantity of, 299, 2; dropped in the 3d root of certain verbs, 171, E. 6.  
*-nactis*, genitive of Greek names in, 78, 2, (1.)  
*Nam* and *enim*, 198, 7, R., (a.); place of, 279, 3, (a.) and (c.)  
 Names of persons, their order, 279, 9, (b.); of nations instead of those of countries, 254, R. 3; 237, R. 5.  
*Narro*, w. acc. and inf., 272, N. 1, and R. 6; *narror*, constr., 271, R. 2.  
*Nascor*, w. abl., 246, R. 1; *nascitur*, w. subj., 262, R. 3, N. 2.  
*Nato*, 232, (2.), N. 1; constr. of compds., 233, (3.), N.  
*Natura fert*, constr., 262, R. 3., N. 3.  
*Naturale est*, w. *ut* and the subj., 262, R. 3, N. 3.  
*Natus*, w. abl., 246; *natus*, 'old,' w. acc., 236, N. 3; poet. w. inf., 271, N. 3.  
*Natu*, 94; 250, 1; 126, 4.  
*Nanci habere*, 214, R. 1.  
*-nē*, enclitic conjunction, 198, 11; quantity of, 295, R.; as an interrogative particle, 198, 11, R., (c.); its place, 279, 3, (c.)  
*Nē*, adv., the primitive negative particle, 191, III., R. 3, p. 158; w. *quidam*, ib.; 279, 3, (d.); w. subjunctives used as imperatives, ib.; in wishes, asseverations and concessions, ib.; 260, R. 6, (b.) with the imperative, 267, R. 1; *ne multa*, *ne plura*, etc., 229, R. 3, 2;—in intentional clauses, 262, R. 5; *ne non*, for *ut*, 262, N. 4; ellipsis of, 262, R. 6; *ne*, for *nedum*, 262, N. 5.  
*Nec* or *neque*, 198, 1; *nec non* or *neque non*, ib.; *nec—nec*, with the singular, 209, R. 12, (5.), (a.); *neque*, for *et ne*, after *ut* and *ne*, 252, R. 6, N. 4;—*nec ipse*, 207, R. 27.

(*b.*); *nec* is, 207, R. 26, (c.); *necne* or *annon*, 235, R. 2; *necdum*, 277, I., R. 16; its place, 277, 3, (a.)

*Necess.* defective adj., 115, 5; *necesse est* ut, etc., 262, R. 3, N. 3; without *ut*, 262, R. 4; *necesse fuit*, the indic. for the subj., 259, R. 3; w. inf. as subject, 269, R. 2; w. predicate dat., 269, R. 5; 273, 4.

*Necess.* y, how expressed, 162, 15.

*Necessario*, after comparatives, 256, R. 9.

*Nedum*, w. subj., 262, N. 5; without a verb. *ib.*

*Nefas*, gender of, 62, E. 2: 94; w. supine in *u*, 276, III., R. 2.

Negatives, two, their force, 277, R. 3—5; negative joined to the conjunction, as, *nec quisquam*, *nec ullus*, etc., instead of *et nemo*, *et nullus*, etc., 278, R. 9.

*Negligens*, constr., 213, R. 4, (2.)

*Nego*, instead of *non dico*, 279, 15, (b.); w. acc. and inf., 272, N. 1, and R. 6; *negor*, w. inf., 271, N. 1.

*Negotium*, ellipsis of, 211, R. 8, N.

*Nemo*, 94 and 95; for *nullus*, 207, R. 31; *nemo est qui*, 264, 7, N. 2; *nemo non*, 'every one,' 277, R. 5, (c.)

*Nempe*, 191, R. 4; 198, 7, R., (a.)

*Neoterism*, 325, 3.

*Nequa* and *nequæ*, 138, 2.

*Nequam*, indeclinable, 115, 4; compared, 125, 5.

*Neque*, see *nec*; for *et non*, 198, 1, (c.); *neque—neque*, or *nec—nec*, *neque—nec*, *nec—neque*, 198, 1, (e.); *neque—et*, *ib.*; *neque* w. general negatives, 279, 15, (b.); *neque non*, 277, R. 3; *neque quisquam*, *ullus*, *umquam*, etc., 278, R. 9.

*Nequeo*, how conjugated, 182, N.; w. inf., 271, N. 1.

*Ne quis* or *nequis*, how declined, 138, 2; *ne quis*, instead of *ne quisquam*, 207, R. 31; 278, R. 9.

*Nerio*, genitive of, 69, E. 2.

*Nescio an*, 198, 11, R., (e.); 265, R. 3; *nescio quis*, 265, R. 4; *nescio quomodo*, *ib.*; w. acc. and inf., 272, N. 1.

*Nescius*, w. genit., 213, R. 1, (3.)

*-neus* and *-nus*, adjs. in. 128, 1, (b.)

Neuter, nouns, 34; not found in 1st and 5th decls., 40, 9; of 2d decl., 46; 54; of 3d decl., 66; exes. in, 66; 67; adjs. used adverbially, 205, R. 10, adjs. and adj. prons, w. genit., 212, R. 3; acc. of denoting degree w. another acc. after transitive verbs, 231, R. 5; verbs, 141; form cf. 142, 1; neuter passives, 142, 2; neuter verbs with cognate, etc., subjects, 234, III.; w. cognate acc., 232, (1.); w. acc. of degree, etc., 232, (3.); w. abl. of agent, 248, R. 2; used impersonally, 184, 2; in the passive voice, 142, R. 2; participles of, 162, 13; neuters of possessive pronouns and adjs. instead of the genitive of their personal pronouns, or of a corresponding noun, 211, R. 8, (3.), (a.) and (b.)

Neutral passive verbs, 142, 3.

*Neve* or *neu*, 198, 8; after *ut* and *ne*, 262, v. 4.

*Ni* or *nisi*, 193, 5, R., (b.); *nisi*, 'except,' 261, R. 5; 277, R. 16; *nisi quod*, *ib.*; *nisi vero*, and *nisi forte*, 'unless perhaps,' *ib.*

*Nihil*, *nihilum*, 94; w. genitive, 212, R. 1; instead of *non*, 277, R. 2, (b.); 232 (3.). *nihil aliud quam* or *nisi*, 277, R. 16; *nihil*, acc. w. *æstimo* and *moror*, 214, N. 2 *nihili* w. *facio*, 214; as acc. of degree, 215, N. 2, 232, (3.); *nihil est quod*, etc., 264, 7, N. 3, *nihil abest*, *quin*, 262, N. 7; *nihil antiquius habeo* or *duco quam*, w. subj., 273, N. 1, *nihildum*, 277, I., R. 16.

*Nimius*, w. genit. or abl., 213, R. 5, (3.)

*Nimio*, w. comparatives, 256, R. 16; as abl. of price, 252, R. 3.

*-nis*, nouns in, gender of, 63, 1.

*Nitor*, w. abl., 245, II.; w. *in* or *ad*, 245 II., R. 2; w. inf. or subj., 273, 1, N. 1.

*Nix*, 56, R. 2; genit. sing., 73, (3.); genit. plur., 83, II., 3.

*No*, constr. of compds. of, 233, (3.), N.

*Noctu* or *nocte*, 253, N. 1.

*Nolo*, conjugated, 178, 2; constr., 273, 4; *noli* w. inf., paraphrasing the imperative, 267, N. and R. 3; *nollem*, meaning of, 260, II., R. 2.

*Nomen est*, constr., 226, R. 1; 211, R. 2, N.; *nomine*, without a prep. before the genitive following verbs of accusing, 217, R. 2, (b.); its place, 279, 9, (b.)

Nominative, 37; construction of, 209, 210; ellipsis of, 209, R. 1 and 2; wanting, 209, R. 3; w. inf., 209, R. 5; after interjections, 209, R. 13; formation in 3d decl. from the root, 56; plural, 3d decl., 83; of adjs. of 3d decl., 114. See Subject-nominative and Predicate-nominative.

*Nomino*, 230; pass., 210, R. 3, (3.)

*Non*, 191, R. 3; ellipsis of, after *non modo*, etc., followed by *ne quidem*, 277, R. 6; *non quo*, *non quod*, *non quin*, 262, R. 9; *non est quod*, *cur*, *quare*, or *quamobrem*, w. subj., 264, 7, N. 3; *non* before a negative word, 277, R. 3;—before *ne quidem*, 277, R. 6; position of, 279, 15, (b.); *non*, rare with the imperative, 267, R. 1; difference between *non* and *haud*, 191, R. 3; *non nemo*, *non nulli*, *non nihil*, *non numquam*, different from *nemo non*, etc., 277, R. 5, (c.); *non nihil*, to some extent, 232, (3.); *nonne*, 198, 11, R., (c.); *non modo—sed etiam*, and *non modo—sed*, equivalent to *non dicam—sed*, 277, R. 10; *non dubito*, *non est dubium*, *non ambigo*, *non procul*, *non abest*, *quin*, 262, 2, N. 7; *non quo non*, *non quod non*, or *non quia non*, instead of *non quin*; *non eo quod*, *non ideo quod*, for *non quod*, 262, R. 9; *non priusquam*, *non nisi*, w. abl. absolute 257, N. 4; *nondum*, 271, I., R. 12; *non* is the second member of adversative sentences without *et* or *vero*, 278, R. 11. *non nisi*, separated, 279, 3, (d.)

*Nonne*, 'the Nones,' 326, 2.

*Nonnullus*, pronominal adj., 139, 5, (1.)

*Nos*, for *ego*, 209, R. 7, (b.)

*Nosco*, 171, E. 6.

*Noster*, how declined, 139, 2.

*Nostras*, how declined, 139, 4, (b.)

*Nostrum*, how formed, 133, 3; different use of *nostrum* and *nostri*, 212, R. 2, N. 2.

'Not' and 'nor,' how expressed with the imperative, 267, R. 1; with subj., 260, R. 6 (b.)



**Nouns**, 26—103; proper, common, abstract, collective, and material, 26; gender of, 27—34; number of, 35; cases of, 36, 37; declension of, 38—40; nouns of 3d decl., mode of declining, 55; compound, declension of, 91; irregular, 92; variable, 92; defective, in case, 94; in number, 95, 96; sing. and plur. having different meanings, 97; redundant, 99; verbal, 102; derivation of, 100—102; composition of, 103; how modified, 201, III., R. 1; used as adjs., 205, R. 11; extent given to the term noun, 24, R.

*Novum est ut*, 262, R. 3, N. 2.

*Nox*, declined, 57; genitive of, 78, 2, (4.); genit. plur., 83, II., 3.

*Norius*, w. genit. of the crime, 213, R. 1, (3.); 217, R. 1, (a.); w. dat., 222, R. 1, (a.)  
-ns, participles in, abl. of, 113, 2; when used as nouns, 82, E. 4; nouns in, genit. plur. of, 83, II., 4; genit. sing. of, 77, 2, (2.) and E. 1; participials and participles in, construction of, 213, R. 1 and 3.

*Nubilo*, scil. *cælo*, 257, R. 9, (2.)

*Nubo*, w. dat., 223; quantity of *u* in compds. of, 285, 2, E. 3.

*Nudo*, w. abl., 251, N.

*Nudus*, w. abl. or genit., 213, R. 5, (4.); 250, R., (1.); w. acc., 213, R. 4, (3.)

*Nullus*, how declined, 107; a pronominal adj., 139, 5, (1.); for *non*, 205, R. 13; refers to more than two, 212, R. 2, N., (b.) *nullus est, qui*, w. subj., 264, 7, N. 2; *nullus non*, 277, R. 5, (c.); *nullius* and *nullo*, instead of *neminis* and *nemine*, 207, R. 31, (c.); *nullusdum*, 277, I., R. 16.

*Num*, with its compounds, meaning of, 198, 11, R., (b.); *num—an*, used only in direct questions, 265, R. 2.

**Number**, 26, 7; of nouns, 35; of verbs, 146; of the verb when belonging to two or more subjects, 209, R. 12; when belonging to a collective noun, 209, R. 11.

**Numbers**, cardinal, 117, 118; ordinal, 119, 120; distributive, 119, 120; w. genit. plur., 212, R. 2, (4.)

**Numerals**, adjs., 104, 5; classes of, 117; placed in the relative clause, 206, (7.), (b.); w. genit. plur., 212, R. 2, (4.); letters, 118, 7; adverbs, 119; 192, 3; multiplicative, 121; proportional, temporal, and interrogative, 121.

*Nummus*, 327, R. 3, (b.)

*Numquam non*, and *non numquam*, 277, R. 5, (c.)

*Numquis*, *num quis*, or *numqui*, etc., how declined, 137, 3; *numquis est qui*, 264, 7, N. 2; *numqua* and *numquæ*, 137, R. 4; *numquid*, as an interrogative particle, 198, 11.

*Numquisnam*, 137, 4.

*Nunc*, use of, 277, R. 15; *nunc—nunc*, 277, R. 8; *nunc* and *etiamnunc*, w. imperfect and perfect, 259, R. 1, (2) (b.)

*Nuncupo*, w. two accs., 230, N. 1; *nuncuor*, 210, R. 3, (3.)

*Nundinæ*, 326, 2, (11.)

*Nuntio*, 273, 2, (c.); 272, N. 1; pass. w. inf., 271, N. 1; *nuntiatur*, constr., 271, R. 2.

*Nuxer*, *moæ* and *moz*, 191, R. 6.

*Nusquam*, w. genit., 212, R. 4, N. 2, (b.)

*Nux*, pr., 284, E. 5, R. 2.

-nx, nouns in, genitive of, 65, 6, 7.

## O.

**O**, sound of, 7, 8; changed to *u* in forming certain nominatives from the root, 56 I., R. 4, and II., R. 4; nouns in, gender of, 58, 59; genitive of, 69; Greek nouns in, gender of, 59, E. 3; genitive of, 69, E. 3; amplificatives in, 100, 4, (a.); verbals in, 102, 6, (c.); adverbs in, 192; increment in, of 3d decl., 287, 3; of plur., 288; of verbs, 290; final, quantity of, 285, R. 4; 297; sometimes used for *u* after *v*, 322, 8; 53; 178, 1, N.

*O*, interj. w. nom., 209, R. 13; w. acc., 238, 2; w. voc., 240, R. 1; *O si*, w. subj., 263, 1.

*Ob*, government of, 195, 4; 275, III., R. 3; in composition, 196, I., 9; construction of verbs compounded with, 224; of adjs., 222, R. 1, (b.)

*Obedio*, how formed, 189, N. 3.

*Obequito*, constr., 233, (3.)

*Obeo*, constr., 233, (3.), N.; pass., 234, III.

**Object**, of an active verb, 229; the dative of the remote object, 223, N.

**Objective genitive**, 211, R. 2; after adjs., 213; dat. for objective genitive, 211, R. 5; —propositions after what, 273, N. 8.

**Oblique cases**, 37; their place, 279, 10 and 2.

*Obliviscor*, w. genitive or acc., 216; w. acc. and inf., 272, N. 1.

*Obnoxius*, w. dat., 222, R. 1, (b.)

*Obruo*, w. abl., 249, I., R. 1.

*Obsecro*, w. two accs., 231, R. 1.

*Obsequor*, *obtempero*, and *obtrecto*, w. dat., 223, R. 2.

*Observeo*, w. *ut* or *ne*, 262, N. 3.

*Obses*, gender of, 30; genitive of, 73, E. 1

*Obsonor*, w. abl. of price, 252, R. 1.

*Obsto*, and *obsisto*, *quominus*, etc., 262, R. 11.

*Obtemperatio*, w. dat., 222, R. 8.

*Obtrector*, constr., 223, (1.), (a.)

*Obtrius*, w. dat., 222, R. 1, (b.)

*Obviam*, w. dat., 223, 1.

*Occasio*, w. genit. of gerunds, 275, III, R. 1, (1.)

*Occumbo*, w. dat., 224; w. acc., 224, R. 5

*Occurro*, w. dat., 224; w. acc., 233, (3.)

*occurrit ut*, 262, R. 3, N. 1.

*Ocior*, comparison of, 126, 1.

-ocis, genitive in, 78, (4.); 112, 2.

*Octonarius*, 304, 2; —iambic, 314, III.

*Odi*, 183, 1.

-odis, genitives in, 76, E. 5; 75, E. 1.

-odus, Greek nouns in, 59, 2.

**Œ**, how pronounced, 9; in nom. plur. 24 decl., 54, 2.

*Œdipus*, genitive of, 76, E. 5.

*Œta*, gender of, 42.

*Officio*, w. *quominus*, etc., 262, R. 11.

*Ohe*, pr., 283, I., E. 5; 295, E. 5.

*Oi*, how pronounced, 9, 1.

-ois, genitives in, 75, 2; words in pr 283, I., E. 6, (3)



- Old, how expressed in Latin, 236, n. 3.  
*Oleo* and *redoleo*, w. acc., 232, (2.)  
*Ollus*, for *ille*, whence *olli*, masc. plur. for *illi*, 134, R. 1.  
*-olus*, a, um, diminutives in, 100, 3, A. 2.  
*-om*, for *-um*, 53.  
Omission of a letter or syllable. see syncope—of a word, see ellipsis.  
*Omnes*, w. genitive plur., 212, R. 2, N. 6;  
*omnium*, w. superlatives, 127, 4, N. 2;  
*omnia*, acc. of degree, 232, (3.)  
*-on*, Greek nouns in, 54, 1, *-on* for *-orum*, 54, 4; *-on*, roots in, of 3d decl., 56, II., R. 1;  
nouns in, of 3d decl., 58 and 61, 5; genit. plur. in, of Greek nouns, 83, II., 6; *-os* and *-on*, nouns in, of 2d decl., changed to *-us* and *-um*, 54, 1.  
*Onustus*, w. abl. or genit., 213, R. 5, (4.)  
*Operam dare*, w. ut, 273, N. 1; w. dat. of ground, 275, III., R. 2, (1.); w. acc. *id*, 232, (8);—*operā meā*, equivalent to *per me*, 247, R. 3.  
*Opinio est*, w. acc. and inf., 272, R. 1;  
*opinionē* after comparatives, 256, R. 9; its place, 279, N. 1.  
*Opinor*, w. acc. and inf., 272, N. 1.  
*Oportet*, w. inf. as its subject, 269, R. 2;  
w. inf., acc. with the inf., or the subj., 273, N. 5; without *ut*, 262, R. 4.  
*Oportebat*, *oportuit*, the indic. instead of the subj., 259, R. 3, (a.)  
*Oppido*, w. adjs., 127, 2.  
*Oppidum*, in apposition to names of towns, 237, R. 2, (b.)  
*Oppleo*, w. abl., 249, I., R. 1.  
*Optabilis erat*, the indic. instead of the subj., 259, R. 3.  
*Optime*, instead of abl. of price, 252, R. 3.  
*Opto*, 271, R. 4; 273, 4; *opto*, w. subj., without *ut*, 262, R. 4.  
*Opulentus* w. genit. or abl., 213, R. 5, (3.)  
*Opus*, work, declined, 57; *opus*, need, w. genit. and acc., 211, R. 11; w. abl. of the thing, 243; as subject or predicate of *est*, 243, R. 2; 210, R. 5; w. perfect participle, 243, R. 1; w. supine in *u*, 276, III., R. 2; *opus est*, w. inf. as subject, 269, R. 2.  
*-or*, nouns in, gender of, 58; 61; genit. of, 70; 71; verbals in, 102, 1; 102, 6.  
*Oratio obliqua*, 266, 1, N., and 2; 273, 3; tenses in, 266, R. 4.  
*Orbo*, w. abl., 251, N.  
*Ornus*, w. abl., 250, 2, (1.); or genit., 213, A. 5, (4.)  
Order, advs. cf. 191, 1.  
Ordinal numbers, 119, 120; in expressions of time, 236, R. 2.  
Origin, participles denoting, w. abl., 246; from a country expressed by a patial, 246, R. 3.  
*-ōris*, genitives in, 76; 112, 2; *-ōris*, genit. in, 75.  
*-orium*, verbals in, 102, 8.  
*Oriundus*, constr., 246.  
*Oro*, w. two accs., 231, R. 1; w. *ut*, *ne*, or *inf.*, 273, 2, N. 4; without *ut*, 262, R. 4.  
Orthoepey, 6—23.  
Orthography, 2—5; figures of, 322.  
*Ortus*, w. abl., 246.  
, nouns in, of 2d decl., 54, 1; of 3d decl., gender of, 58 and 61, 3; genit. of, 75.  
Greek genitives in, 68, 1; final in plural accs., sound of, E. 3; quantity of, 300.  
*Os*, (*oris*), gender of, 61, 3; genit. of, 75; wants genit. plur., 94.  
*Os*, (*ossis*) gender of, 61, 3; genit. of, 75 E. 1.  
*Ossa*, gender of, 42, 1.  
*Ostendo*, w. acc. and inf., 272, N. 1.  
*-osus*, adjs. in, 128, 4.  
*-otus*, genit. in, 75; 112, 2.  
‘Ought’ or ‘should,’ expressed by *indio*. of *debeo*, 259, R. 4, (2.)  
*-ox*, nouns in, genit. of, 78, 2, (4.)  
Oxymoron, 324, 23.  
P.  
P, roots of nouns ending in, 56, I.; when inserted after *m* in 2d and 3d roots of verbs, 171, 3.  
*Pace* or in *pace*, 253, N. 1; 257, R. 9, (2.)  
Palatals, 3, 1.  
*Palleo*, w. acc., 232, N. 1.  
*Pan*, acc. of, 80, R.  
*Panthus*, voc. of, 54, 5.  
*Par*, abl. of, 82, E. 1, (b.); 113, E. 3; superlative of, 126, 2; w. dat. or genit., 222, R. 2, (a.); w. *cum* and the abl., 222, R. 6;  
*par erat*, indic. instead of subj., 259, B. 3, (a.); pr., 234, N. 1; *par ac*, 198, 3.  
Parabola, 324, 30.  
Paradigms, of nouns, 1st decl., 41, 2d decl., 46; 3d decl., 57; 4th decl., 87; 5th decl., 90;—of adjs. of 1st and 2d decl. 105—107; 3d decl., 108—111;—of verbs, *sum*, 153; 1st conj., 155, 156; 2d conj., 157; 3d conj., 158, 159; 4th conj., 160; deponent, 161; periphrastic, conj., 162; defective, 183; impersonal, 184.  
Paragoge, 322, 6.  
*Paratus*, constr., 222, R. 4, (2.)  
*Parco*, w. dat., 223, R. 2, N., (a.); *parcitur mihi*, ib., (c.); w. inf., 271, N. 3  
*Pareus*, w. genit. or abl., 213, R. 5, (2.); w. in, 213, R. 4, (2.)  
Paregmenon, 323, 24.  
Pareicon, 323, 2, (1.)  
Parenthesis, 324, 4, (6.)  
*Pariter ac*, 198, 3.  
*Paro*, constr., 273, N. 1; w. inf., 271, N. 1.  
Paroemiatic verse, 304, 2.  
Paronomasia, 324, 25.  
*Pario*, compds. of, 163, E. 4.  
Parsing, 281, III.  
*Pars*, acc. of, 79, 4; abl. of, 92, E. 5, (a.); ellipsis of, 205, R. 7; its use in fractional expressions, 121, 6; *magnum* and *maximam partem*, 234, II., R. 3; *multis partibus*, 256, R. 16, (3.)  
Part, acc. of, 234, II.  
*Particeps*, genit. of, 112, 2; genit. plur. of, 114, E. 2; 115, 1, (a.)—w. genit., 213, R. 1, (3.)  
Participial adjs., 130;—of perfect tenses, meaning of, with tenses of *sum*, 162, 12, (2.); w. genit., 213, R. 1, (2.)  
Participles, 25 and 148, 1; in *us*, how declined, 105, R. 2; in *ns*, do., 111; abl. sing. of, 113, 2; participles of active verbs, 148.

1, (2.); of neuter verbs, 148, 1, (3.); 162, 16; of deponent verbs, 162, 17; of neuter passive verbs, 162, 18; in *-rus*, genit. plur. of, 162, 19; pres. and perf. compounded with *in*, 162, 21; when they become adjs. or nouns, 162, 22; cases of in compd. tenses, 162, 12, 13; sometimes with *esse* indeclinable, 162, 13, (1); in *-rus* with *sum*, force of, 162, 14; how modified, 202, II., (3.); agreement of, 205; agreement with a predicate nom. instead of the subject, 205, R. 5; gender when used impersonally, 205, R. 18; perfect denoting origin, with abl., 246; in all. absolute 257;—passive of naming etc., with predicate abl., 257, R. 11, their government, 274; their time how determined, 274, 2, and 3; perfect in circumlocution, for abl. of cause, 247, 1, R. 2, (b.); with *habeo*, etc., 274, 2, R. 4; for a verbal noun, 274, 2, R. 5; for clauses, 274, 3.

*Participio*, poetically, w. genit., 220, 2.

*Particles*, 190, 1.

*Partim*, 79, 4; *partim*, w. genit., 212, R. 4; *partim*—*partim*, w. genit. or *ex*, 277, R. 8.

Partitive nouns, 212, R. 1;—adjs., 104, 9;—partitives with plur. verbs, 209, R. 11; 211, R. 1; w. genit. plur., 212; ellipsis of, 212, R. 2, N. 3; w. acc. or abl., 212, R. 2, N. 4; genit. sing. after neuter adjs. and pronouns, 212, R. 3.

Parts of speech, 24, 2 and 3.

*Parum*, its meaning, 191, III.; compared, 194, 4; w. genit., 212, R. 4.

*Parumper*, its meaning, 191, II.

*Parrus*, compared, 125, 5; *parvi*, w. verbs of valuing, 214, R. 1, (a.), (1.); *parvo*, with comparatives, 256, R. 16; after *estimo*, 214, R. 2, N. 2; as abl. of price, 252, R. 3.

*Pasco*, 171, E. 6.

Passive voice, 141, 2; construction of, 231, passive voice with a reflexive pronoun understood as the agent equivalent to the middle voice in Greek, 248, R. 1, (2.); with acc. of the thing 234, 1.

*Pateo*, w. two dat., 227, R. 1.

*Pater*, declined, 57.

*Pater-familias*, etc., how declined, 43, 2.

Pathetic or emotive word, 279, 2, (c.)

*Pator*, 273, 4; 262, R. 4; *patiens*, w. gen., 213, R. 1, (2); w. inf., 271, N. 3.

Patrial nouns, 100, 2; in *o*, genitive of, 69, R.;—adjs., 104, 10; 128, 6, (a.); ellipsis of their substantive, 205, R. 7; pronouns, 139, 4.

*Patrocinor*, w. dat., 223, R. 2.

Patronymies, 100, 1; in *-es*, genit. plur. in *um* instead of *-arum*, 43, 2; in *as* and *is* used as adjs., 205, R. 11; quantity of their penult, 291, 4 and 5.

*Pauca*, acc. of degree, 232, (3.)

*Paulisper*, its meaning, 191, II.

*Paulo*, w. comparatives, 256, R. 16; *paulum abest quin*, 262, R. 7.

*Pauper*, abl. of, 113, E. 2; defective, 115, 1, (1.); w. genit. or abl., 213, R. 5, (2.)

*Parvus*, w. genit., 213, R. 1.

*Paror est ne*, etc., 262, R. 7, N. 3.

*Pecus*, (*-udis*), gender of, 67, E. 3.

*Peculiaris*, 222, R. 2, (a.)

*Pedes*, gender of, 31, 2; genit. of, 73, 2 for *pedites*, 209, R. 11, (1.), (c.)

*Petro*, pr., 285, 2, E. 1.

*Pelagus*, gender of, 51; acc. plur. of, 54, 5; 94.

*Pello*, 171, E. 1, (b.); 251, N.

*Pendo*, w. genit. of value, 214; w. abl. of price, 252, R. 1.

*Pensi* and *pili habere*, 214, R. 1.

Pentameter verse, 304, 2; 311; 312, IX., X.

Penthemimeris, 304, 5.

Penult, 13; quantity of, 291; of proper names, 293.

*Per*, its uses, 195, R. 9; 247, 1, R. 1; w. the means when a person, 247, 3, R. 4; in adjurations, 279, 10, (e.); in composition, 196, 1, 10; *per* compounded with adjectives strengthens their meaning, 127, 2.

Perceiving, verbs of, their construction, 272.

*Percipio*, w. acc. and inf., 272, N. 1; *perceptum habeo*, instead of *percepi*, 274, E. 4.

*Percontor*, w. two accs., 231, R. 1.

*Perennis*, abl. of, 113, E. 1.

*Perdo*, w. *capitis*, 217, R. 3; *perditum ire* for *perdere*, 276, II., R. 2.

*Perduim*, for *perdam*, 162, 1.

Perfect tense, 145, IV.; definite and in definite, 145, IV., R.; old form in *sim*, 162, 9; quantity of dissyllabic perfects, 284, E. 1 perfect participles translated actively, 162, 16; both actively and passively, 162, 17, (a.);—of neuter verbs, 162, 18; of impersonal verbs, 184, R. 2; the perf. subj., 260, II., R. 1, (3.); in the connection of tenses, 258; signification of perf. definite, 259, R. 1, (2.), (a.); of perf. indefinite, ib., (b.)—(d.); perf. subj., signification of, 260, II., R. 1, (3.), and R. 4 and 6; in the protasis, 261, 2 and R. 2 and 3; 263, R.; perf. subj. for imperative, 267, R. 2; perf. inf., how used, 268, R. 1, (a.); perf. participle, 274, 2 and N.; supplies the place of a pres. pass. participle, 274, R. 3, (a.); perf. part. of a preceding verb used to express the completion of an action, ib., (b.); w. *habeo*, 274, R. 4; w. *do*, *reddo*, *curo*, etc., ib.; supplies the place of a verbal noun, 274, R. 5; used in circumlocution for abl. of cause, 247, R. 2, (b.); neuter perf. pass. participle used as the subject of a verb, 274, R. 5, (b.)

*Perficio ut*, 273, N. 2.

*Pergo*, constr., 225, IV.; w. inf., 271, N. 1.

*Perhibeo*, 230, N. 1; 272, N. 1, and R. 6; *perhibeor*, 210, R. 3, (3.); w. inf., 271, N. 1

*Periclitor*, *capitis ex capite*, 217, R. 3.

Period, 280.

*Perinde*, 191, III.;—*ac* or *atque*, 198, 8, E.

Periphrasis, 323, 2, (4.)

Periphrastic conjugations, 162, 14 and 15

*Peritus*, 215, R. 1, (3.) and R. 4; 270, R. 1; w. *ad*, 213, R. 4, (2.); 275, III, R. 1, (2)

*Permisceo*, 245, II., 2, and R. 1 and 2.

*Permitto*, 273, 4; w. part. fut. pass., 274, R. 7; w. subj. without *ut*, 262, R. 4.

*Permuto*, 252, R. 5.

*Pernox*, genit. of, 112, 2.

*Perosus*, 183, 1, N.

- Perpello*, 273, n. 4.  
*Perpes*, in genit. sing., 112, 1; 115, 2.  
*Persevero*, w. inf., 271, n. 1.  
 Personal pronouns, 132, 4; ellipsis of as subject-nominatives, 209, R. 1; expressed with infinitive, 272, n. 4;—personal terminations of verbs, 147, 3.  
 Personification, 324, 31.  
 Person of a noun or pronoun, 35, 2; 132, 4, of a verb, 147; used in the imperative, 147, 1; 1st and 2d persons used indefinitely, 200, R. 7; of verbs with nominatives of different persons, 209, R. 12.  
*Perspectum habeo*, instead of *perspexi*, 274, R. 4.  
*Persuadeo*, w. dat., 223, n., (b.); *hoc persuadetur mihi*, 223, n., (c.);—*persuasum habui*, 274, R. 4.  
*Pertusum est*, constr., 229, R. 6; 215, (1.) and n. 2.  
*Pertineo*, ellipsis of, 209, R. 4.  
*Peto*, constr., 230, R. 2; 231, R. 4; *peto ut*, 273, n. 4; 262, R. 4.  
*Pes* and compds., genit. of, 73, E. 1; 112, 1; abl. of, 113, E. 2; pr., 234, n. 1; 300, E. 2, (b.).  
*Ph*, in syllabication, 18, 2; when silent, 12, R.  
 Phalæcian verse, 304, 2; pentameter, 312, x.  
*Piger*, declined, 106; constr., 222, R. 4, (2.).  
*Piget*, w. genit., 215; w. acc., 229, R. 6; participle and gerund of, 184, R. 3.  
*Pili habere*, etc., 214, R. 1.  
 Place, advs. of, 191, i.; 192, III.; genit. of, 221; acc. of, 237; dat. of, 237, R. 3; place where, abl. of, 254;—whence, abl. of, 255; through which, 255, 2; place of a foot in verse, 304, n.  
 Plants, gender of their names, 29.  
*Plaudio*, change of *au* in its compds., 189, n. 3.  
 Plenty or want, adjs. of, w. abl., 250.  
*Plenus*, w. genit. or abl., 213, R. 5, (3.); 250, 2, (1.).  
 Pleonasm, 323, 2.  
*plex*, adjs. in, abl. of, 113, E. 3; how declined, 121, 1.  
*Plerique*, w. genit. plur., 212, R. 2, (1.).  
 Pluperfect tense, 145, v.; old form in *sem*, 62, 9; for the historical perfect, 259, R. 1, (3.).  
 Plural number, 35, 1; when wanting, 95; nouns only plur., 96; plur. of Greek nouns of 1st decl., 45, 2; do. of 2d decl., 54, 2;—nouns used for singular, 98; *nos* for *ego*, 200, R. 7, (b.); of verbs with collective nouns, 200, R. 11; the plur. of abstract nouns, 95, R.; plur. nouns in apposition to two or more nouns in the singular, 204, R. 5.  
*Plurimum*, w. genit., 212, R. 3; *plurimi* and *plurima* after verbs of buying, etc., 144, R. 1, (1.), and R. 3, n. 2; *plurima*, abl. of price, 252, R. 3.  
*Plus*, declined, 110; w. genit., 212, R. 3, n. 1, (a.); with numerals, etc., with or without *quam*, 256, R. 6; *plus* for *magis*, 177, R. 12; *plure*, abl. of price, 252, R. 3.  
*Poëma*, declined, 57.  
 Poems, gender of names of, 29  
*Panitet*, w. genit., 215; w. subj., 215, R. w. acc. 229, R. 6; participles of, 184, R. 3 w. *quod*, 273, n. 6.  
*Poesis*, declined, 86.  
 Poetical arrangement of words, 279, 3, (e.); and 13, n. 4.  
*-politanus*, adjs. in, 128, 6, (g.).  
*Pollens*, w. genit. or abl., 213, R. 5, (4.). cf. R. 4, (1.).  
*Polliceor*, w. acc. and inf., 272, n. 1.  
 Polypotton, 324, 23.  
 Polysyndeton, 323, 2, (2.).  
*Pondo*, indeclinable, 94; *pondo libram et libras*, 211, R. 6, (4.); 236, R. 7.  
*Pono*, 171, E. 2; 230, R. 2; 241, R. 5; pr., 284, R. 2, (c.); 229, R. 4, 1.  
*Posco*, w. two accs., 231; 230, R. 2; w. *ut*, etc., 273, n. 4; in pass., 254, i.  
 Position in prosody, 283, iv.  
 Positive degree, 122, 4.  
 Possessive, adjs., 104; pronouns, 139; to what equivalent, 132, 6; how used, 207, R. 36; 211, R. 3; ellipsis of when reflexive, 207, R. 36; used for subjective and possessive genit., 211, R. 3, (b.), and R. 8, (3.), (a.); for objective genit., 211, R. 3, (c.); so possessive adjectives, 211, R. 4, and R. 8, (3.), (b.); *mea*, *tua*, etc., after *refert* and *interest*, 219, R. 1.  
*Possideo*, w. perf. pass. part., 274, R. 4.  
*Possum*, conjugated, 154, R. 7; with superlatives, 127, 4; w. inf., 271, n. 1; *poterat*, the indic. for the subj., 259, R. 3; *possum* for *possem*, 259, R. 4, (2.).  
*Post*, *postquam*, etc., how pronounced, 8, E. 4; *post*, its case, 195, 4; *post* in composition, 196, 11; 197, 14; constr. of verbs compounded with, 224; with concrete official titles, 234, R. 3; w. acc. and abl. of time, 253, R. 1; ellipsis of, 250, n. 3; w. abl. like a comparative, 256, R. 16, (3.).  
*Postea loci*, 212, R. 4, n. 4.  
*Postera*, defective, 115, 5; compared, 125, 4; derivation, 130, v.  
*Posterior* and *postremus*, instead of *posterius* and *postremum*, 205, R. 15.  
*Postquam* and *posteaquam*, w. historical perfect instead of pluperfect, 259, R. 1, (2.), (d.).  
*Postulo*, w. two accs., 231, R. 1; w. acc. and genit., 217, R. 1; w. *de* or the simple abl., 217, R. 2; w. subj., without *ut*, 202, R. 4.  
*Potens*, w. genit., 213, R. 1, (3.); w. *in* or *ad* and acc., 213, R. 4, (2.).  
*Potior*, w. abl., 245, i.; w. acc., 255, i., R.; w. genit., 220, (4.); *potiundus*, 162, 20; 275, ii., R. 1.  
*Potis*, defective, 115, 5.  
*Potius*, compared, 194, 4; used pleonastically, 256, R. 13.  
*Potius*, translated actively, 162, vii.  
*Præ*, in composition w. adjs., 127, 2; w. verbs, 197; before adjs., 127, 6; constr. of verbs compounded with, 224; *præ*, with comparatives, 127, 6; 256, R. 13, (b.).  
*Præbeo*, w. two accs., 230, n. 1.  
*Præcedo*, constr., 233, (3.), and n. 224, R. 5.  
*Præcello*, *præeo*, etc., 224, 8, and R. 5.



- Præcepto*, abl. of, 113, R. 2, and E. 1.  
*Præcipio*, constr., 223, (1.), (b.)  
*Præcipito*, 229, R. 4, 1.  
*Præcipue*, *præsertim*, etc., 193, II. 2.  
*Præcurro*, constr., 224, 8, and R. 5.  
*Præteritum*, ellipsis of, 255, R. 3.  
*Prætitus*, w. abl., 244.  
*Præneste*, gender of, 66, E., and 29, E.  
*Prænomēn*, its place, 279, 9, (b.)  
*Præpes*, genit. sing. of, 112, 1; genit. plur., 114, E. 2.  
*Præscripto*, w. *ut*, etc., 273, 2, N. 4.  
*Præsens*, declined, 111; abl. of, 113, R. 2.  
*Præses*, gender of, 30; 61, 2; genit. of, 73, E. 1.  
*Præsto*, 233, (3.), and N.; 230, N. 1; 224, 3, and R. 5; 256, R. 16, (3.);—*præsto*, adv., w. dat., 228, 1;—*præsto sunt, qui*, w. subj., 264, 6, N. 1.  
*Præstolor*, w. dat., 223, R. 2, N.; w. acc., 223, (1.), (a.)  
*Præter*, w. adjs., 127, 6; w. comparatives, 256, R. 13, (b.); as an adverb, 191, III.  
*Præterea*, w. *quod*, 273, 5, (1.)  
*Præterit*, constr. of, 229, R. 7.  
*Præterquam quod*, 277, R. 16.  
*Præterveho*, 233, (2.)  
*Prævertor*, w. dat., 224, 8 and R. 5.  
*Præcor*, w. two accs., 231; w. *ut*, 273, N. 4; *ut* omitted, 262, R. 4.  
 Predicate, 201; 203;—predicate-nominative, 210; differing in number from the subject-nominative, 210, R. 2; instead of dat. of the end, 227, R. 4; after what verbs, 210, R. 3 and 4; pred. adjs., 210, R. 1; after *esse, haberi, judicari, videri*, etc., 271, N. 2;—predicate-accusative, 210, (b.); dative, 210, (c.); abl., 210, (d.); 257, R. 11.  
 Prepositions, 195—197; in composition, 193; with nouns, 103; with adjs., 131, 11—13; with verbs, 196; change of in composition, 103, R. 2; 131, R.; 196, (a.); inseparable, 136, (b.); w. acc., 195, 4; 235; w. abl., 195, 5; 241; w. acc. and abl., 195, 6; 235, (2)—(5.); used as adverbs, 195, R. 4; how modified, 202, II., R. 2; verbs compounded with, w. dat., 224; w. acc., 233; w. abl., 242; compds. of *ad, con*, and *in*, with acc., 224, R. 4; repeated after compds., 224, R. 4; 233, R. 2; how interchanged, ib.; compds. of *ad, ante*, etc., with neuter verbs of motion, 224, R. 5; 233, R. 1; repetition of prepositions, 233, R. 2; 277, II., 3 and 4; prepositions of one syllable, *præ*, 285, 2, N. 1, and E. 5; ellipsis of, 232, (2.); 235, R. 11; ellipsis of their case, 235, R. 10; their place, 279, 10; quantity of *di, se* and *red*, 285, R. 2 and 3; put after their case, 279, 10, R., (f.); repeated, 277, II., 4.  
 Present tense, 143, I.; a principal tense, 258, A.; indicative pres. for historical perf., 259, R. 1, (a.); for the fut., 259, R. 1, (b.); for imperf. or perf. w. *dum*, 259, R. 1, (c.); subj. pres., use of, 260, II., R. 1, (1.); used to soften an assertion, 260, II., R. 4; to express a wish, command, etc., 260, R. 6, 267, R. 2; imperative pres., how used, 145, R. 3, 267, (1.); infinitive pres., how used, 268, R. 1, (a.), and R. 3; 272, R. 4 and 5; participle pres., how declined, 111, R.; what it denotes, 274, 2 and N.; denoting something about to be done, 274, R. 1; also a purpose, 274, R. 2, (a.); and a state or condition, 274, R. 2, (b.); present pass. participle, how supplied, 274, R. 9.  
 Preterites, 145, N. 2; 258, B.; preterites of the indicative used for the pluperfect subjunctive, 259, R. 4, (1.)  
 Preteritive verbs, 183, I.  
*Pro* and *propterea*, 214, R. 2, N. 3; ellipsis of, 252, R. 3.  
 Priapean verse, 310, II.  
 Price, ablative of, 252; genitive of *tanti*, etc., 214, R. 1.  
*Prodie*, w. genit., 212, R. 4, N. 6; w. acc., 238, 1.  
*Primus, medius*, etc., how translated, 205, R. 17; their place, 279, 7; *prior, prius* for *prius, primum*, 205, R. 15.  
*Princeps*, genit. of, 112, 2; abl. of, 112, E. 2; 115, 1, (a.); used instead of an adverb of time, 205, R. 15.  
 Principal parts of a verb, 151, 4;—propositions, 201, 5;—parts of a proposition, 202, 5; tenses, 258, A.  
*Principio*, abl. of time, 253, N. 1.  
*Præiusquam*, with what mood, 263, 3.  
*Privo*, w. abl., 251, N.  
*Pro*, constr. of verbs compounded with, 224; w. abl. for predicate nom., 210, N. 3; for predicate acc., 230, N. 4; in composition, quantity of, 285, E. 5, and R. 7; *pro nihilo duco*, etc., 214, R. 2, N. 2; *pro eo* and *proinde ac*, 198, 3, R.  
*Proclivis*, 222, R. 4, (2.); 276, III., R. 1.  
*Procul*, w. abl., 195, R. 3; 241, R. 2.  
*Prodigus*, w. genit. or abl., 213, R. 5, (2.) w. *in*, 213, R. 4, (2.)  
*Prodo*, w. acc. and inf., 272, N. 1, and R. 6.  
*Proditur*, constr., 271, R. 2.  
*Proficiscor*, w. two datives, 227, R. 1.  
*Prohibeo*, 251, R. 2; w. *quominus*, 262, R. 11; 273, 4; w. genit., 220, 2; w. abl., 251, N. w. dat. or abl., 224, R. 2; w. acc. and inf., 272, R. 6.  
*Proinde*, adv., 191, III.; *proinde ac*, 198, 3, R.  
 Prolepsis, 323, 1, (b.) and (4.)  
*Promitto*, constr., 272, N. 4; 217, R. 3, (c.)  
 Pronouns, 132—139; simple, 132, 2; neuter w. genit., 212, R. 3, N. 1.  
 Pronominal adjs., 139, 5.  
 Pronunciation of Latin, 6  
*Pronus*, constr., 222, R. 4, (2.)  
*Prope est*, w. *ut* and the subj., 262, R. 3, N. 1.  
 Proper nouns, 26, 2; found only in 1st, 2d, and 3d decls., 40, 9.  
*Propero*, w. inf., 271, N. 1.  
*Propinquo*, 225, IV, R. 2.  
*Propinquus*, w. the dat. or genit., 222, R. 2, (a.)  
*Propior*, how compared, 126, 1; *propior* and *proximus* w. dat., 222, R. 1; w. acc., 222, R. 5; 238, 1; instead of *propius, proxime*, 205, R. 15; *proximum est*, w. *ut* and the subj., 262, R. 3, N. 1.  
*Propius* and *proxime*, constr., 223, 1 and R.

**Proportional**, adjs., 121, 2.  
**Proposition**, 201, 1; analysis of, 281  
*Proprius*, constr., 229, R. 2, (a.)  
*Prorumbo*, constr., 226, R. 4, 1.  
*Prosodiac verse*, 304, 2.  
*Prosody*, 282—321; figures of, 305—307.  
*Prosopopœia*, 324, 34.  
*Prosper* and *prosperus*, 105, N.; w. genit. R. abl., 213, R. 5, (2.)  
*Prosthesis*, 322, 1.  
*Prosto*, w. abl. of price, 252, R. 1.  
*Prosum*, 154, R. 6.  
*Provelo*, constr., 223, (1.), (a.)  
*Protasis* and *apodosis*, 261; import of the different tenses in the protasis and apodosis, 261, 1 and 2.  
*Provilus*, w. genit., 213, R. 1, (3.)  
*Pudens*, w. genit., 215, R. 1, (3.)  
*Ps.* initial, 12, R.;—*ps.* nouns in, genit. of, 77, 2, (1.)  
*-pse*, enclitic, 135, R. 3.  
*Pt.* initial, 12, R.  
*-pte*, enclitic, 133, R. 2; 139.  
*Pubes* and *impubes*, genit. of, 112, 1; abl. of, 113, E. 2; 115, 1, (a.)  
*Pudet*, w. genit., 215; w. inf., 215, R.; w. acc., 229, R. 6; w. perf. inf., 268, R. 2; w. sup. in *u.* 276, III., R. 2; participle in *du*s, and gerund of, 184, R. 3.  
*Puer*, instead of *in pueritia*, 253, R. 6.  
*Pueritia*, how used in the abl., 253, N. 1.  
*Pugnā*, for *in pugnā*, 253, N. 1; *pugnam pugnare*, 232, (1.)  
*Pugnatur*, conjugated, 184, 2.  
*Pulchre*, instead of abl. of price, 252, R. 3.  
*Punctuation*, 5.  
*Punio*, constr., 217, R. 5.  
*Punishment*, constr. of words denoting, 217, R. 3.  
*Purgo*, w. genit., 217, R. 1; 220, 2; w. abl., 251, N.  
*Purpose*, denoted by *ut*, etc., with the subj., 262; by participles, 274, 2, R. 2, 6 and 7; by inf., 271; 273, N. 4, (b.); by gerund, 275, III., R. 2, and (1.), (2.); by supine in *-um*, 276, II.  
*Purus*, w. genit. or abl., 213, R. 5, (3.); cf. 251, N.  
*pus*, Greek nouns in, genit. of, 76, E. 5.  
*puto*, w. genit. of value, 214; w. abl. of price, 252, R. 1; w. two accs., 230, N. 1, and N. 4; w. acc. and inf., 272, N. 1; *putare*, 260, II., R. 2; *putor*, 210, R. 3, (3.), (c.); w. inf., 271, N. 1.

## Q.

**Qu** before *s* in verbal roots, 171, 1  
*Quā*, adverbial correlative, 191, R. 1.  
*Quā—quā*, for *et—et*, 277, R. 8.  
*Quæro*, constr., 231, E. 4; poet. w. inf., 271, N. 3.  
*Quæro*, 183, 7; constr., 262, R. 4.  
*Qualis*, 139, 5, (3.); w. comparatives, 256, R. 10, (b.)  
*Qualisqualis* or *qualiscumque*, 139, 5, 207, R. 29.  
*Qualis—talis*, 206, (16.)  
*Quam*, w. comparatives, 256; w. the superlative, with or without *possum*, 127, 4,

ellipsis of after *plus*, *minus*, *amplius*, etc., 256, R. 6 and 7; *quam qua* and superlative after *tam*, 206, (21.); *quam pro*, w. comparatives, 256, R. 11; *quam non*, 277, R. 14, *quam* and a verb after *ante* and *post*, 253, R. 1, N. 3; *quam qui*, w. comparatives and the subjunctive, 264, 4.

*Quamquam*, peculiar use of, 193, 4, R.; constr., 253, 2, (1.); used to connect an abl. absolute, 257, R. 10

*Quamvis*, constr., 263, 2, and (2.), (3.)

*Quando*, *quando-quidem*, 198, 7, R., (b.)

**Quantity**, adjs. of, 104, 4; w. genit., 212, R. 3, N. 1; after *sum* and verbs of valuing, 214; adverbs of, w. genit., 212, R. 4.

**Quantity**, in prosody, 13, 1; marks of, 5, 1; general rules of, 13; 283; special rules of, 284; of penults, 291; of antepenults, 292; of penults of proper names, 293; cf. final syllables, 294—301; of final vowels, 294—298; of final consonants, 299; of derivative words, 284; of compound words, 285; of increments, 286—290; of Greek words, 283, E. 6.

*Quantus*, pronom. adj., 139, 5, (3.); *quantus* for *quam*, with *posse* and superlatives, 127, N. 1; constr., 206, (16.); *quanto*, w. comparatives, 256, R. 16; *quantum*, w. genit., 212, R. 3, N. 1; in acc. of degree, 231, R. 5; 232, (3.); 256, R. 16, N.; *quantum possum*, w. indicative, 264, 3 *fin.*; *quantus—tantus*, 206, (16.)

*Quantuscumque*, *quantuscumque*, *quantuluscumque*, 139, 5, (3.); w. indicative, 259, R. 4, (3.); *quanticumque*, 207, R. 29.

*Quasi*, w. subj., 263, 2.

*Quatio*, constr., 229, R. 4, 1; how changed in its compds., 189, N. 3.

*-que*, its use, 198, 1, R., (a.); *que—et*, *et—que*, *que—que*, 198, R., (e.); its place, 279, 3, (c.)

*Queis* and *quis*, for *quibus*, 136, R. 2.

*Queo*, how conjugated, 182, N.; w. inf., 271, N. 1.

*Queror*, w. acc., 232, N. 1; w. *quod*, 273, N. 6.

*Qui*, declined, 136; *qui* in abl., 136, R. 1; 137, R. 2; interrogative, 137; difference between *qui* and *quis*, 137, 1; person of *qui*, 209, R. 6; w. subj., 264; when translated like a demonstrative, 206, (17.); with *sum* instead of *pro*, 206, (18.); *quicum*, when used, 136, R. 1 *fin.*; *qui vero*, *qui autem*, 280, III., (3.); *ex quo*, for *postquam*, 253, N. 4.

*Quia*, *quod*, and *quoniam*, 198, 7, R., (b.)

*Quicque* and *quicquam*, 138, 3, (a.)

*Quicquid*, 136, R. 4; acc. cf. degrees, 232, (3.)

*Quicumque*, how declined, 136, 3, how used, 207, R. 29; w. indic., 259, R. 4, (3.); for *omnis*, *quicvis*, or *quilibet*, 207, R. 29.

*Quid*, 137; w. genit., 212, R. 3, N. 1 (a.); acc. of degree, 231, R. 5, (a.); 232, (3.); *quid?* why? 235, R. 11; *quid sibi vult?* 228, N., (b.); *qui est quod?* w. subj., 264, 7, N. 2; *quid est cur?* etc., 264, 7, N. 3; *quid aliud quam?* 209, R. 4; *quid? quid vero?* *quid igitur?* *quid ergo?* *quid enim?* *quid multa?* *quid plura?* 229, R. 3, 2.

*Quidam*, how declined, 138, 5; how used, 207, R. 33.

*Quidem*, its meaning, 191, R. 4; its place, 279, 3, (d.)

*Quilibet*, how declined, 138, 5; how used, 207, R. 34.

*Quis* and compds., gender, 61, 1; genit., 73, 4; 96.

*Quin*, 198, 8; w. subj., 262, R. 10; for a relative with *non*, ib., 1 and N. 6; for *ut non*, ib., 2; after *non dubito*, etc., *quin*? why not? w. indic., ib., N. 9.

*Quippe*, 198, 7, R., (b.); *quippe cui*, w. subj., 264, 8, (2.)

*Quippiam*, 138, 3, (a.)

*Quique*, 136, R. 4.

*Quis*, genit. sing., 74, E. 4; genit. plur., 68, 11, 5.

*Quis*, declined, 137; difference of *quis* and *qui*, 137, 1; between *quis* and *uter*, 212, R. 2, N. 1; *quis est qui*? w. subj., 264, 8, (2.); between *quis* and *aliquis*, 207, R. 30, (b.)

*Quisnam*, *quinam*, how declined, 137, 2.

*Quispiam*, how declined, 138, 3; how used, 207, R. 30; *quippiam*, w. genit., 212, R. 3, N. 1.

*Quisquam*, how declined, 138, 3; how used, 207, R. 31; *quicquam* and *quidquam*, w. genit., 212, R. 3; acc. of degree, 231, R. 5, (a.); 232, (3.)

*Quisque*, how declined, 138, 3; how used, 207, R. 35; with plur. verb, 209, R. 11, (4.); its place, 279, 14; w. a superlative, 207, R. 35, (b.); in apposition, 204, R. 10.

*Quisquis*, declined, 136, 4; its use, 207, R. 29; difference between *quisquis* and *quicumque*, 207, R. 29; w. indic., 259, R. 4, (3.)

*Quivis*, how declined, 138, 5; how used, 207, R. 34.

*Quo*, the correlative adv., 191, R. 1; *quo*, w. a comparative, 256, R. 16, (2.); for *ut eo*, w. subj., 262, R. 9; as adv. of place, w. genitive, 212, R. 4, N. 2, (b.); *quo mihi hanc rem*, 209, R. 4; 227, R. 5; *quo secius*, 262, R. 11, N.; *quo ne*, 262, R. 5.

*Quoad*, w. subj., 263, 4; w. *ejus*, 212, R. 4, N. 5.

*Quocum*, *quacum*, etc., instead of *cum* quo, etc., 241, R. 1.

*Quod*, causal conj., 198, 7; construction of, 273, 5; refers to past time, 273, (6.); w. subj. of *dico*, *puto*, etc., 266, 3, R.; *quod sciam*, etc., 264, 3; *quod*, referring to a preceding statement, 206, (14), 273, 6, (a.); w. genit., 212, R. 3; before *si*, *nisi*, etc., 206, (14); as acc. of degree, 232, (3.)

*Quojus* and *quoi*, for *cujus* and *cui*, 136, R. 2.

*Quoque* and *etiam*, difference between, 136, 1, R., (d.); place of *quoque*, 279, 3, (d.)

*Qui*, indecl., 115, 4; interrogative, 121, 5; 133, 5, (3.); constr., 206, (16); *quot sunt, qui*? 264, 7, N. 2; *quotquot*, w. indic., 259, R. 4, (3.)

*Quoteni* and *quotus*, interrogative, 121, 5.

*Quoties*, interrog. adv., 121, 5.

*Quotus-quisque*, its meaning, 207, R. 35, (a.)

*Quon*, correlative of *tum*, 191, R. 7; instead of *postquam*, 253, N. 4; — conj., 198, 10; constr., 263, 5 and R. 1—4.

## R.

*R*, before *s* in roots of nouns 66, R. 1; nouns in *r*, genitive of, 70, 71; changed to *s* before *s* and *t*, 171, 3; *r* final, quantity of, 299, 2.

*Rapio*, w. dat. or abl., 224, R. 2.

*Rarum est*, ut, 262, R. 3, N. 3.

*Rastrum*, plur. *rastri* or *rastra*, 32, 5.

*Ratio*, w. genit. of gerunds, 275, 111, R. 1, (1.); *ratione*, as abl. of manner, without *cum*, 247, 2.

*Ratum est*, ut, 262, R. 3, N. 3; *ratum* pr., 284, E. 1, (2.)

*-re* in 2d person sing. of passive voice, 162, 3.

*Re* or *red*, inseparable prep., 196, (b) 197, 18; quantity of, 285, R. 3, (a.)

*Reapse*, 135, R. 3.

*Recens*, abl. of, 113, E. 3 and R. 1; also adverb, 192, 4, (b.)

*Receptio*, constr., 233, R. 2, N.

*Recingor*, w. acc., 234, R. 1.

*Recordor*, w. genit. or acc., 216; w. pres inf., 268, R. 1; w. acc. and inf., 272, N. 1.

*Recte*, instead of abl. of price, 252, R. 3.

Reckoning, Roman mode of, 326, 327.

*Rectum est*, ut, 262, R. 3, N. 3.

*Recuso quin*, and *quominus*, 262, N. 7 and R. 11; w. *ne*, 271, R. 1; w. inf., ib., N., and 271, N. 1.

*Reddo*, w. two accs., 230, N. 1; pass. 210, R. 3, (3), (b.); w. perf. pass. part., 274, R. 4.

*Redoleo*, w. acc., 232, (2.)

Redundant nouns, 99; adjs., 116; 109, N.; 111, N.; verbs, 185.

*Redundo*, w. abl., 250, 2, (2.)

Reduplication, 163, R.; of compound verbs, 163, E. 1; of verbs of 1st conj., 165, R. 2; of 2d conj., 168, N. 2; of 3d conj., 171, E. 1, (b.); quantity of, 284, E. 2.

*Refero*, w. acc. and inf., 272, N. 1.

*Refert* and *interest*, w. genit., 214; 219; w. the adj. pronouns *mea*, etc., 219, R. 1; w. *ad*, etc., 219, R. 3; *refert*, pr., 285, R. 3.

*Refertus*, w. genit. or abl., 213, R. 5, (3.)

Reflexive pronouns, 132, 4; 139, R. 2; how used, 208; for demonstratives, 208, (6.); ellipsis of, 229, R. 4; in oratio obliqua, 266, R. 3.

*Reformido*, w. inf., 271, N. 1.

*Regno*, w. genit., 220, 4.

*Regnum*, declined, 46.

*Rego*, conjugated, 158

Relative adjs., 104, 13; 139, R; government of, 213, R. 1; 222, 3; adverbs, w. subj., expressing a purpose, 264, 5, R. 2; used in definitely, w. subj., 264, R. 3.

Relative pronouns, 133; agreement of, 206, R. 19; ellipsis of, 206, (5.); in the case of the antecedent, 206, (6.), (a.); referring to nouns of different genders, 206, (9.); — to a proposition, 206, (13.); agreeing with a noun implied, 206, (11); number and gender of, when referring to two or more nouns, 206, (15); — relative clauses used as circumlocutions and to express the English 'so called,' 206, (19); relative adverbs for relative pronouns, 206, (20); the relative adjs. *quot*, *quantus*, etc., construction of



206, (16); *qui* with *sum*, instead of *pro*, 206, (18); person of, 209, R. 6; 206, R. 19;—w. subj., 264; their place, 279, 13; 280, III., (2.), relatives as connectives, 280, III., (1.); 198, II.

Resolving, verbs of, 273, I., (a.)

*Relinquo*, w. two datives, 227, R. 1; w. part. in *dis*, 274, R. 7; *relinquitur*, w. *ut* and the subj., 262, R. 3, N. 1.

*Reliqua* acc., 234, II., R. 3; *reliquum est* 21, 262, R. 3.

*Remini. cor.* constr., 216.

*Remitto*, 229, R. 4, I.

Removing, verbs of, w. abl., 251.

*Remun. ror*, w. abl., 249, I., R. 1.

*R. nuncio*, w. two accs., 230, N. 1; pass., 220, R. 3, (3.). (b.)

Repeated words, their place, 279, 4.

*Repens*, abl. of, 113, E. 3.

*Reperio*, w. two accs., 230, N. 1;—*reperior*, 210, R. 3, (3.), (c.); 271, R. 2;—*reperitur*, *qui*, w. subj., 264, 6.

*Repo*, constr. of compds. of, 233, (3.), N.

*Repono*, 241, R. 5.

*Reposco*, w. two accs., 231, R. 1.

*Repugno*, with *quominus* or *ne*, 262, R. 11.

*Res*, declined, 90; use of, 205, R. 7, (2.), N. 1.

*Reses*, genit. sing. of, 112, 1; defective, 115, 2.

*Resipio*, w. acc., 232, (2.)

Responsive, case of, 204, R. 11.

*Respublica*, declined, 91.

*Restat. ut*, 262, R. 3, N. 1.

*Retē*, abl. of, 82, E. 1, (b.)

*Retracto*, constr., 229, R. 4, I.

*Reus*, w. genit., 213, R. 1, (3.); *reum agere* or *facere*, w. genit., 217, R. 1.

Rhetoric, figures of, 324.

*Rhus*, genit. of, 76, E. 3; acc. of, 80, II.

Rhythm, 308, (1.)

*Rido*, w. acc., 232, N. 1.

-*rimus*, -*ritis*, quantity of, 290, E., (c.), 5.

-*rimus*, superlatives in, 125, 1.

*Ritu*, as abl. of manner without *cum*, 247, 2.

Rivers, gender of names of, 28.

-*rix*, verbals in, 102, 6, (a.) See *tor* and *trix*.

*Rogo*, w. two accs., 231, R. 1; w. *ut*, 273, N. 4; 274, R. 7; without *ut*, 262, R. 4; constr. in pass., 234, I.

Roman day, 326, 1;—hour, ib.;—month, 326, 2;—names of the months, 326, 2, (1);—calendar table of, 326, 2, (6), p. 339;—week, 326, 2, (10); names of the days of the week, ib.;—year, how designated, 326, 2, (11);—money, weights and measures, 327;—tables of weights, etc., 327, pp. 370—373;—coins, 327, p. 371;—interest, how computed, ib.

Root or crude form of words inflected, what and how found, 40, 10; formation of nominative sing. from in 3d decl., 56, I. and II.

Roots of verbs, 150; general, 150, 1; special, 150, 2; second and third, how formed, 150, 3 and 4; third, how determined when there is no supine, 151, N.; first, s derivatives, 151, 1; irregularities in

tenses formed from, 162, 1—6; second, do., 151, 2; irregularities in tenses formed from, 162, 7—10; third, do., 151, 3; second and third, formation of, 1st conj., 164—166; 2d conj., 167—170; 3d conj., 171—174; 4th conj., 175—177; second and third irregular, 1st conj., 165; 2d conj., 165; 4th conj., 176.

-*rs* nouns in, genitive sing. of, 77, 2 (2.); genit. plur. cf. 83, II., 4.

*Rudis*, 213, R. 1, and R. 4, (2.); 275, III, R. 1, (2.)

*Rupes*, declined, 57.

*Rus*, construed like names of towns, in acc., 237, R. 4; in abl., 254; 255; cf. 52, E. 5, (b.); *rure*, not *ruri* with an adj., 255, R. 1.

-*rus*, participle in, how declined, 105, R. 2; its signification, 162, 14; 274, 2, R. 6; with *sum* and *essem* serving as future subjunctives, 162, R. 3; with *esse* and *fuisse*, 162, 14, R. 3; 268, R. 4; genitive plur. of, 162, 19; denotes intention, 274, R. 6; used for an English clause connected by 'since, when,' etc., ib.; as an apodosis, ib.

*Rutum*, pr., 284, E. 1, (2.)

## S.

S, sound of, 11; added to some roots of nouns of 3d decl., 56, I.; added to roots of verbs ending in a consonant, 171; used instead of *t* in the 3d root of some verbs, 171, E. 5; inserted in some verbals, 102, 5, (b.); s preceded by a consonant, nouns in, gender of, 62; 64; genit. of, 77; final, elided, 305, 2.

*Sacer*, w. genit. or dat., 222, R. 2, (a.)

*Sacerdos*, gender of, 30; 61, 3.

*Sæpe*, comparison of, 194, 5.

*Sal*, 82, E. 1, (b.), and 66, E.; 95; pr., 284, N. 1.

*Salio*, constr. of compds. of, 233, (3.), N.

*Saltem*, 193, II., 3.

*Saluto*, w. two accs., 230, N. 1; *salutor*, w. two nominatives, 210, R. 3, (3.)

*Salve*, 183, 9.

*Sannis*, genit. sing., 74, E. 4; genit. plur., 83, II., 5.

*Sapio*, w. acc., 232, (2.)

Sapphic verse, 304, 2, 315, II.

*Sat*, i decl., 115, 4; *satis*, w. genit., 212, R. 4; *satis esse*, w. dat. of gerund, 275, III., R. 2, (1); *satis habeo*, and *satis mihi est*, w. perf. infin., 268, R. 2; *satis erat*, indic. instead of subj., 259, R. 3; degrees of comparison, 126, 4.

*Satago*, w. genit., 215, (2.)

*Satelles*, gender of, 30; 61, 2.

*Satiatus*, w. abl. or genit., 213, R. 5, (2.)

*Satisdo*, w. *damni infecti*, 217, R. 3, (c.) w. dat., 225, I.

*Satisfacio*, w. dat., 225, I.

*Satum*, pr., 284, E. 1, 2.

*Saturnalibus*, for *ludis Saturnalibus*, 253, N. 1.

*Satio*, how declined, 105, R. 1; w. genit. or abl., 215, R. 5, (3.)

*Saturo*, w. abl., 249, I., R. 1; w. genit. poet., 220, 3.

- Situs**, w. abl., 246.  
 Saying, verbs of, constr., 272; ellipsis of, 170, R. 2. (b.) and 3; implied, 273, 3, (b.); used in the passive, 272, R. 6.  
*Scan to* compds. of, 233, (3.), N.  
 Scanning, 304, 6.  
*Scato*, w. abl., 250, 2, (2.), R. 1; with genit. poet., 220, 3.  
 Scazon, 314, II.  
*Scdi*, pr., 284, E. 1, (1.)  
*Scdiect*, 198, 7, R., (a.)  
*Scio*, w. acc. and inf., 272, N. 1; *scito*, 162, 1.  
*Sitor* and *sciscitor*, constr., 231, R. 4.  
*-s o* verbs in, 187, II., 2; drop *sc* in 2d and 3d root before *t*, 171, E. 6.  
*Scribo*, 273, 2, (c.); w. two accs., 230, N. 1; w. acc. and inf., 272, N. 1, and R. 6; in pass. w. predicate nominative, 210, R. 3, (3); *scribit*, w. pres. inf. instead of perf., 268, R. 1, (a.)  
*Se*, inseparable prep., 196, (b.)  
*Se*, w. inter., 208, 5. See *sui*.  
*Scerno*, 251, N., and R. 2, N.  
*Secus*, for *secus*, 88, 1; 94; 211, R. 6, (4.); 231, R. 6; adv., 191, III.; w. acc., 195, R. 3.  
*Sed*, 198, 9, R., (a.); its place, 279, 3, (a.); *sed, sed quod, sed quia*, 262, R. 9; *sed, sed tamen*, 278, R. 10; *sed et*, 198, 1, (d.)  
*Sedeo*, 210, R. 3, (2.); compds. of, 233, (3), N.  
*Sedile*, declined, 57.  
*Sedo*, constr., 229, R. 4, 1.  
*-sem*, old termination of plup. indic. active, 162, 9.  
 Semi-deponent verbs, 142, 2.  
*Senarius*, 304, 2; Iambic, 314.  
*Senex*, its degrees of comparison, 126, 4; gender of, 65, 2; genitive of, 78, 2, (2); abl. of, 113, E. 2; 115, 1; for *in senectute*, 253, R. 6.  
 Sentences, 200; analysis of, 281.  
 Sentiments of another, in dependent clauses, 266, 3.  
*Sentio*, w. acc. and inf., 272, N. 1.  
 Separating, verbs of, w. abl., 251.  
*Separo*, w. abl., 251, N.  
*Sequitur*, constr., 262, R. 3, N. 1  
*-sere*, future infin. in, 162, 10.  
*Sereno*, scil. *colo*, 257, R. 9, (2.)  
*Sermo*, declined, 57.  
*Serpens*, gender of, 64, 3.  
*Sese*, intensive, 132, R. 2.  
*Servitutum servare*, 232, (1.)  
*Sestertius*, its value, 327, R. 3, (b.); how denoted, ib.; mode of reckoning, ib.; *sestertium*, ib., R. 5—7.  
*Seu*, or *sive*, 198, 2, R., (c.)  
 Slips, gender of their names, 29.  
 Short syllable, 282, 2.  
 Showing, verbs of, constr., 272, R. 6.  
*Si*, how pronounced, 11, E. 1.  
*si* or *-sim*, Greek datives in, 84.  
*Si*, conj., 198, 5; *si* for *nam*, 198, 11, R., (c.); *si minus, si minus* or *si aliter*, 198, 5, R., (b.), 277, R. 14, ellipsis of in the protasis, 261, R. 1; *si* with the imperfect subj., instead of the pluperfect, 261, R. 5; *si nihil aliud*, 209, R. 4; *si quisquam* and *si ullus*, 207, R. 39, (b.); *si non*, 262, R. 5.  
*Sibi suo*, 228, N., (a.)  
*Sic*, 191, R. 5; 277, R. 12, (a.); plonastically, 207, R. 22.  
*Sicuti*, w. subj., 263, 2, (1.)  
 Significant word, in a proposition, 273, 2, (c.)  
*Siem, sies*, etc., 154, R. 4.  
*Silentio praterire* or *facere aliquid*, with out *cum*, 247, 2.  
*Silva*, w. acc., 232, N. 1; pass., 234, III.  
 Silver age of Roman literature, 29, 3.  
*-sim*, old termination of perfect indic. active, 162, 9.  
 Similar constructions, 278, N. 1 and 2  
 Simile, 324, 30.  
*Similis*, w. genit. or dat., 222, R. 2, (a.), w. dat. in imitation of the Greek, 222, R. 7; *similes*, w. inter., 222, R. 4, (4.); w. *ac* and *atque*, 222, R. 7, *fin*.  
 Simple, subject, 202, 2;—predicate, 203, 2;—sentences, 201, 10.  
*Simul*, w. abl., 195, R. 3; 241, R. 2; *simul—simul*, 277, R. 8.  
*Sin*, 193, 5; its place, 279, 3, (a.); *sin minus*, 277, R. 14.  
 Singular number, 35, 1; sing. for plur., 209, R. 11, 1, (b.)  
*Singulare est ut*, 262, R. 3, N. 3.  
*Singuli*, 119.  
*Sino*, 273, 4; 262, R. 4.  
*Siquidem*, 198, 7, R., (b.)  
*Siquis*, how declined, 138, 2; *siquis* and *siquid*, how used, 138, 2, (a.) and (b.); 207, R. 29; *si quis est, qui*, w. subj., 264, 6.  
*Sis* for *si vis*, 183, R. 3.  
*Sisto*, constr., 229, R. 4, 1.  
*Situm*, pr., 284, E. 1, (2.)  
*Sive* or *seu*, 198, 2, R.; 278, R. 8; its place, 279, 3, (a.); *sive—sive*, w. verb in the indic., 259, R. 4, (3.)  
*-so, -sim, -zem*, old verbal terminations, 162, 9.  
*Socius*, w. genit. or dat., 222, R. 2, (a.)  
*Sodes*, for *si audes*, 183, R. 3.  
 Solecism, 325, 2.  
*Soleo*, how conjugated, 142, R. 2; w. inf., 271, N. 1.  
*Solitus*, 274, R. 3; *solito*, after comparatives, 256, R. 9; its place, 279, N. 1.  
*Solum, solummodo*, 193, II., 3.  
*Solus*, how declined, 107; w. relative and subj., 264, 10; for *solum*, 205, R. 15.  
*Solutus*, w. genit., 213; w. abl., 251, N.; *solutum*, pr., 284, R. 3.  
*Solvo*, w. abl., 251, N.  
*Sons*, genit. plur. of, 114, E. 3; 115, 1, (a.)  
*Saxus*, genit. of, 112, 1; abl. of, 113, E. 2; 115, 1, (a.); 126, 5, (b.)  
 Sotadic verse, 304, 2; 317, I.  
 Sounds of the letters, 7—12; of the vowels, 7 and 8; of the diphthongs, 9; of the consonants, 10—12.  
 Space, acc. and abl. of, 236; ellipsis of, 236, R. 3.  
*Spatium*, w. genit. of gerund., 275, III., R. 1, (1); *spatio* as abl. of space, 236, R. 4.  
*Specto*, constr., 225, IV., R. 1.  
*Specus*, 88, 1.  
*Spero*, w. acc. and inf., 272, N. 1.  
*Spes est*, w. acc. and inf., 272, N. 1.

*spes*, w. genit of gerunds, 275, II., R. 1, (1.); *spe*, after comparatives, 256, R. 9; its place, 279, N. 1.

*Spolio*, w. abl., 251, N.

Spondaic verse, 310; tetrameter, 312.

*Spondeo*, 163, R.; w. acc. and inf., 272, R. 1.

Stanza, 319, 4.

*Statim*, 193, II., 1.

*Statuo*, 241, R. 5; 273, N. 1; 271, N. 1, 272, N. 1; *statutum habeo*, 274, R. 4.

*Statum*, pr., 284, E. 1, (2).

*Sterilis*, w. genit or abl., 213, R. 5, (2); w. *et*, 213, R. 4, (2).

*Stetit* and *stati*, pr., 284, E. 1, (1).

'Still' w. comparatives, how expressed in Latin, 256, R. 9, (b.)

*Stipulor*, 217, R. 3, (c.)

*Sto*, 163, R.; w. genit of price, 214, R. 3; w. pred. nom., 210, R. 3, (2.); w. abl., 245, II., 5, and R. 2; *stat per me*, construction of, 262, R. 11; compds. of, 233, (3.), N.

Strophe, 319, 4.

*Studeo*, w. dat., 223, R. 2; with gerund, 275, III., R. 2, (1.); with the inf. with or without an accusative, 271, R. 4; w. *ut*, 273, 4, (a.); w. acc. *id*, 232, (3.)

*Studiosus*, w. genit., 213, R. 1; 275, III., R. 1, (2.)

*Studium*, w. genit. of gerunds, 275, III., R. 1, (1.)

*Styx*, gender of, 28, E.

*Subdo*, constr., 273, N. 4; 262, R. 4.

*Sub*, in composition, force of, 197; government of, 235, (2); constr. of verbs comp. unded with, 224; of adjs., 222, R. 1, (b.)

Subject of a verb, 140; of a proposition, 261; 262; simple, complex, and compound, 202; its place in a sentence, 279, (b.) subject of a dependent clause made the object of the leading verb, 229, R. 5, (a.)

Subject-nominative, 209; ellipsis of, 209, R. 1 and 2; when wanting, 209, R. 3; w. inf., 209, R. 5; 239, N. 1; two or more in the singular with a plural verb, 209, R. 12; (2.)

Subject-accusative, 239; ellipsis of, 239, R. 1—3; considered also as the accusative of the object after verbs of saying, showing, and believing, 272, R. 6.

Subjective genitive, 211, R. 2; possessive pronoun used instead of, 211, R. 3.

*Subjectus*, w. dat., 222, R. 1, (b.)

Subjunctive, 143, 2; its tenses, 145, R. 2; how used, 260—266, and 273; various uses of its tenses, 260; how translated, 260, I. and II., R. 1; for imperative, 260, R. 6; in impersonal verbs, 184, R. 2; in conditional clauses, 261; after particles, 262 and 263; after *qui*, 264; after relative advs., 264, R. 2; indefinite subj., 264, 12 and N.; in indirect questions, 265; in inserted clauses, 266; in oratio obliqua, 266, 1 and 2; after what verbs used, 273; after adjectives, 213, R. 4; exchanged for acc. w. inf., 273, 3, (b.), subjunctive in doubtful questions, 260, R. 5; in repeated actions after relative pronouns and a verbs, 264, 12

*Subito*, 193, II., 1.

Subordinate conjunctions, 198, II.; —positions, 201, 6 and 7

Substantive 26—103; substantive pronouns, 132, 123, their gender, 132, 8, declined, 133; as subject nominative, ellipsis of, 209, R. 1; dat. of, redundant, 228, N.; substantive verb, 153; substantive clauses, 201, 7 and 8; 229, R. 5; 231, R. 3, (b.); substantive clause instead of the abl. after *ut*, 243, R. 1; and after *dignus* and *inagnus*, 244, R. 2, (b.)

*Subter*, constr., 235, (4.)

Subtractive expressions in numerals, 113, 4; 120, 2, 3, and 5.

*Succenso*, 223, R. 2; w. *quod*, 273, N. 6

*Sufficio*, w. dat. of gerund, 275, III., R. 2, (1.)

*Sui*, signification of, 132, 4; declined, 133; use of, 208; 266, R. 3; 275, III., R. 1, (4.)

*Sultis* for *si vultis*, 183, R. 3.

*Sum*, why called an auxiliary, 153; why substantive, ib.; why the copula, 140, 4; conjugated, 153; compds. of, 154, R. 5—R. 7; w. a genit. of quality, 211, R. 6, (7); in expressions denoting part, property, duty, etc., 211, R. 8, (3); 275, R. 1, (5); denoting degree of estimation, 214; w. dat., 226; with two datives, 227; how translated, 227, R. 3; w. abl. denoting in regard to, 250, R. 3; w. an abl. of place, manner, etc., in the predicate, 210, R. 3, (1); w. dat. of gerund, 275, R. 2, (1); w. abl. of price, 252, R. 1; w. genit. of value, 214; *sunt qui*, w. subj., 264, 6; *sunt quidam, nonnulli*, etc., 264, 6, R. 4; ellipsis of as copula, 209, R. 4; *fin.*, of *esse* and *fuisse*, 270, R. 3; *sum* w. predicate nom., etc., 210, R. 3, (1); *esse* w. predicate nom., 271, N. 2, and R. 4.

*Sumo*, w. two accs., 230, R. 2; poet. w. inf., 271, N. 3

*Supellex*, genitive of, 78, 2, (2); abl. of, 82, E. 5, (a.)

*Super*, constr., 235, (3); of verbs compounded with, 224; of adjs., 222, R. 1, (b.)

*Superfluo*, w. abl., 250, 2, (2), R. 1.

*Superjacio*, constr., 233, (1.)

Superlative degree, 122, 6; particular use of, 122, R. 4; formation of, 124; by *maxime*, 127, 1; superlative with *quisque*, 207, R. 35; w. partitive genit., 212, R. 2, and R. 4, N. 7; place of, 279, (7), (b.)

*Supero*, w. abl., 256, R. 16, (3)

*Supersedeo*, w. abl., 242.

*Superses*, genit. of, 112, 2; abl. of, 118, E. 2; 115, 1, (a.); 126, 5, (b.); w. genit. of dat., 222, R. 2, (a.)

*Supersum*, w. dat., 224, 11; *superest* etc., 262, R. 3, N. 1.

*Superus*, its degrees of comparison, 125, 4; *supremus* or *summus*, 205, R. 17; *summu* used adverbially, 205, R. 10; 234, II., R. 3.

Supines, 25 and 148, 3; few in number, 162, 11; in *um*, by what cases followed, 276, 1; or what verbs dependent, 276, II., w. *eo*, 276, II., R. 2 and 3; supines in *u* after what adjs., 276, III., and R. 1; after *fas, nefas*, and *opus*, 276, III., R. 2; of two syllables, quantity of, 284, E. 1.



*Supra*, w. acc., 195, 2; w. adjs., 127, 6; 256, R. 13 (b.)

*Suppletiv.* w. two dat., 227, R. 1; 229, R. 4, 1, w. abl., 250, 2, R. 1

*Supplex*, genit. plur. of, 114, E. 2; 115, 1, (a.); w. dat., 222, R. 1, (b.)

Supposition or concession denoted by the tenses of the subj., 260, R. 3.

*Surripio*, w. dat. or abl., 224, R. 2.

*Sus*, gender of, 30; 67, E. 4; genit. of, 76, E. 3; dat. and abl. plur., 84, E. 1.

*Suscipio*, w. participle in *dus*, 274, R. 7.

*Suspensus* and *suspectus*, w. genit., 213, 1.

*Suas*, use of, 139, R. 2; 208; referring to a word in the predicate, 208, (7); for *hujus* when a noun is omitted, 208, (7.); when two nouns are united by *cum*, 208, (7), (c.); denoting fit, etc., 208, (8.)

Syllabic caesura, 310, N. 1.

Syllabication, 17—23.

Syllables, number of, in Latin words, 17; pure and impure, 80; quantity of first and middle, 284; of penultimate, 291; of antepenultimate, 292; of final, 294.

Syllepsis, 323, 1, (b.) and (3.)

Symploce, 324, 15.

Synaresis, 306, 1.

Synalepha, 305, 1.

Synapheia, 307, 3.

Synchysis, 323 4, (4.)

Syncope, 322, 4, in genit. plur. of 1st decl., 43, 2; of 2d decl., 53; in cases of *bos* and *sus*, 83, R. 1 and 84, E. 1; of *e* in oblique cases of nouns in *er* of 2d decl., 48; of 3d decl., 71, E. 1; in perfect, etc., of verbs, 162, 7; see Omission.

Synecdoche, 324, 3.

Synesis or synthesis, 323, 3, (4.)

Synonymia, 324, 29.

Synopsis of Horatian metres, 320.

Syntax, 1; 200—281.

Systole, 307, 1.

Syzygy, 303, 4.

## T.

**T**, sound of, 12; before *s* in roots of nouns, 56, R. 1; in roots of verbs, 171, 3, and E. 5; nouns in. gender of, 66; genit. of, 78; final, quantity of, 299, 2.

*Taceo*, w. acc., 232, N. 1.

*Tacet*, w. genit., 215; w. acc., 229, R. 6.

*Tactio* w. acc., 233, R. 2, N.

*Talpa*, gender of, 42, 2.

*Talis*, demonstr. adj., 139, 5, (3.); *talis* followed by *qui* and the subj., 264, 1, N.; ellipsis of, 264, 1, (b.); 206, (3), (a.); and (16); *talis ac*, 198, 3, R.; *talis—quulis*, 206, (16)

*Tam*, 191, R. 5.; *tam—quam*, 277, R. 11; *tam* with an adj. before *qui* and the subj., 264, 1, N.

*Tamen*, how used, 198, 4, R.

*Tametsi*, 198, 4; constr., 263, 2, (4.)

*Tamquam*, w. subj., 263, 2; used like *quidam*, 207, R. 33, (b.) *fin.*; w. abl. absolute, 257, N. 4.

*Tandem*, 191, R. 6.

*Tantum*, adv., 192, II., 3.

*Tantus*, demonstrative, 139, 5, (3.), 10, lowered by *qui* and the subj., 264, N., ellipsis of, 264, 1, (b.); 206, (3), (a.), and 13 *tantus—quantus*, 206, (16); *tanti*, *quantum*, etc., w. verbs of valuing, 214, R. 1, (1.), *tantum*, w. genit. plur. and plur. verb 209 R. 11, (3); *tantum*, w. genit., 212, R. 3, N. 1; *tanti* after *refert* and *interest*, 219, R. 5; *tantum*, acc. of degree, 231, R. 5; 232, 3.; 256, R. 16, N.; *tanto*, w. comparatives, 254, R. 16, (2.)

*Tantopere*, 191, R. 5.

*Tardo*, 229, R. 4, 1.

Tautology, 325, 4.

*Taro*, constr., 217, R. 5; w. abl. of price 252, R. 1.

*-te*, enclitic, 133, R. 2

*Tempe*, 83, 1, and 94.

*Temporo*, 223, R. 2, and (1), (a.); *temperare mihi non possum, quin*, 262, N. 7.

Temporal adjs., 104, 6; classes of, 121, 3;—conjunctions, 198, 10.

*Tempus*, ellipsis of, 205, R. 7; *tempus est* w. inf., 270, R. 1; *tempus impendere*, 275, III., R. 2; *tempus consumere*, ib.; *temporis* after *tum* and *tunc*, 212, R. 4, N. 4; w. *id*, *hoc*, or *idem*, 234, II., R. 3; *tempore* or *in tempore*, 253, N. 1; w. genit. of gerunds, 275, III., R. 1, (1.)

*Tenax*, w. genitive, 213, R. 1, (1.)

*Tendo*, constr., 225, IV.; 229, R. 4, 1; w. inf., 271, N. 1.

*Teneo*, w. perf. pass. participle, 274, R. 4 *fin.*; *teneri*, perf. pass. part., 268, R. 1, (b.)

Tenses, 144; division of, 141, 2 and 3; of the subj., 145, R. 2; of the imperative, 145, R. 3; of the infinitive, 145, R. 4; connection of, 258; principal and historical, 258, A. and B.; of indic. mood, used one for another, 259; future for imperative, 259, R. 1, (4); the preterites of the indic. for the pluperfect subj. in the apodosis of a conditional clause, 259, R. 4; of subj. mood, their use, 260, I., R. 1, and II., R. 1; in protasis and apodosis, 261; of inf. mood, use of, 268; tenses used in epistolary style, 145, II., 3; 259, R. 1, (2.), (c.)

*Tento*, constr., 273, N. 1; w. inf., 271, N. 1.

*Tenus*, w. genit., 221, III.; w. abl., 241, R. 1; place of, 279, 10; 241, R. 1.

*-ter*, nouns in, 48, 1; 71.

*Teres*, in genit. sing., 112, 1; defective 115, 2; its degrees, 126, 4.

Terminational comparative, and superlative, 124; adjs. without such comparison, 126, 5.

Terminations of inflected words, 40; of nouns, table of, 39; of 1st decl., 41 and 44 of 2d decl., 46; of 3d decl., 55; of 4th decl., 87; of 5th decl., 90; masculine and feminine affixed to the same root, 32, 3; of degrees of comparison in, adjs., 124, 125; in adverbs, 194, 2; personal, of verbs, 147, 3 verbal, 150; table of verbal, 152.

*Terræ*, as genit. of place, 221, R. 3, (4) *terrâ marique*, 254, R. 2; *terrarum*, 212, R. N. 2.

*Terreo*, w. *ut* or *ne*, 262, R. 7, N. 3

- Teruncius**, 327, p. 371; *teruncii habere*, 114, R. 1.  
*Tete*, intensive, 133, R. 2.  
**Tetrameter**, 304, 2; *a priore*, 312, IV.; *a posteriore*, 312, V.; *meturus*, 312, XI.; catalectic, 312, XII.  
**Tetraptores**, 94.  
**Tetrastrophon**, 319, 3.  
*Tā*, in syllabication, 18, 2.  
 'That,' sign of what moods, 273; instead of a repeated subst., how expressed in Latin, 27, R. 26, (c.)  
**Thesis**, in prosody, 308.  
**Thinking**, verbs of, their constr., 272.  
**Thousands**, how expressed in Latin, 118, 5, (a)  
*T.*, how pronounced, 12.  
**Thuras**, 45, 3.  
*Thū*, its pronunciation, 7, R. 1; 19, E.  
**Tigris**, genit. of, 74, 2; acc. of, 80, E. 2; abl. of, 82, E. 2, (b.)  
**Time**, advs. of, 191, II.; conjs., 198, 10; acc. of, 236; abl. of, 253; with *de* or *sub*, 263, R. 4; with *intra*, ib.; with *in*, 253, R. 5; expressed by *id* with a genit., 253, R. 3; by the abl. absolute, 257; the concrete noun instead of the abstract title, 257, R. 7; mode of reckoning, 326; table of, 326, 6.  
*Timeo*, 223, R. 2, (1.); w. *ut* or *ne*, 262, R. 7; w. inf., 271, N. 1.  
*Timidus*, w. genit., 213, R. 1.  
*Tiryns*, genit. of, 77, E. 2.  
*-tis*, genit. in 77, 2; 71, 2.  
**Titles**, place of, 279, 9, (a.)  
 'Too' or 'rather' how expressed in Latin, 122, R. 3; 256, R. 9.  
*-tor* and *-trix*, verbals in, 102, 6; used as adjs., 129, 8.  
*Tot*, indecl., 115, 4; correlative of *quot*, 121, 5; 206, (16); syncope of, before *quot*, 206, (16)  
*Totidem*, indecl., 115, 4.  
*Toties*, correlative of *quoties*, 121, 5.  
*Totus*, how declined, 107; *toto*, *totā*, abl. without *in*, 254, R. 2; *totus*, instead of an adverb, 205, R. 15.  
**Towns**, gender of names of, 29, 2; constr.; see Place.  
*-tr*, roots of nouns in, 56, II., R. 3.  
*Traditio*, w. dat., 222, R. 8.  
*Trado*, w. acc. and inf., 272, N. 1, and R. 6; w. part. fut. pass., 274, R. 7, (a.); *traditur*, constr., 271, R. 2; *trador*, constr., 271, R. 2.  
*Tranquillo*, scil. *mari*, 257, R. 9, (2.)  
**Trans**, constr. of verbs compounded with, 233 1; in passive, 234, R. 1, (b.)  
*Trajicio*, constr., 229, R. 4, 1; 233, (1.)  
**Transitive verbs**, 141; w. acc., 229; ellipsis of, 229, R. 3.  
**Trees**, gender of names of, 29  
*Tres*, how declined, 109.  
*Trepidus*, w. genit., 213, R. 1.  
*Tribuo*, w. two datives, 227, R. 1; w. two accus., 230, R. 2; w. part. perf. pass., 274, R. 7, (a.)  
**Tricolon**, 319, 2; tricolon tristrophon and tetrastrophon, 319, 6.  
*Tricorpor*, abl. of, 113, E. 2; 115, 1.  
*Tricuspis*, abl. of, 113, E. 2.  
**Trihemimeris**, 304, 5.  
**Trimeter**, 304, 2, catalectic, 312, VII.  
**Tripes**, genit. of, 112, 1; abl. c., 118, E. 2.  
**Triptotes**, 94.  
**Tristrophon**, 319, 3.  
**Trochaic** or feminine caesura, 310, N. 1; metre, 315 and 303; tetrameter catalectic, 315, 1.; dimeter catalectic, 315, IV.; trochaic pentameter or Phalaeian, 315, III.  
**Tropes**, 324.  
*-trum*, verbals in, 102, 5.  
*Truncus*, w. abl. or genit., 213, R. 5, (4.)  
*Tu*, declined, 133; in nom. with a lj in voc., 205, R. 15, (c.); used indefinitely, 209, R. 7; when expressed, 209, R. 1; *tui*, feminine, with masc. or neuter gerundive, 275 III., R. 1, (4.)  
*Tum* and *quum*, 191, R. 7; *tum—tum*, 277, R. 8; *tum* and *tunc*, difference between, 191, R. 7; *tum maxime*, ib.; *tum temporis*, 212, R. 4, N. 4.  
*Tumultu*, as abl. of time, 253, N. 1.  
*Tunc* and *nunc*, 191, R. 7; *tunc temporis*, 212, R. 4, N. 4.  
*Tumidus* and *turgidus*, w. abl., 213, R. 5, (5.)  
*Turris*, declined, 57.  
*-tus*, adjs. in, 128, 7; nouns in, of 3d decl., 76, E. 2; 102, 7.  
*Tuus*, how declined, 139; used reflexively, 139 R. 2; *tua* after *refert* and *interest*, 219, R. 1.
- U.
- U**, sound of, 7 and 8; *u* and *v*, 2, 3; *u* in genit. and voc. of Greek nouns, 54; roots of nouns of 3d decl. ending in, 56, I.; dat. in, 89; neuters of 4th decl. in, 87; dat. in of 4th decl., 89, 3; in 2d root of verbs, 167, and 171, E. 2; increment in, 3d decl., 287, 3; plur., 288; of verbs, 290; final, quantity of, 238; 285, R. 4; *u* and *it* in 3d roots of verbs, 167.  
*Ua*, *ue*, etc., pronunciation of, 9, 4 and 5; quantity of, 283, II., E. 3.  
*Uber*, w. genit. or abl., 213, R. 5, (3.)  
*-ubus*, in dat. and abl. plur., 89, 5.  
*Ubi*, genit., 212, R. 4, N. 2; w. indic. perf. instead of pluperf., 259, R. 1, (d.); *ubiubi*, 191, R. 1.  
*-ucis*, genitives in, 78, (5); 112, 2.  
*-udis*, genitives in, 76, E. 1.  
*-uis*, genitives in, 76, E. 3.  
*-uleus*, *a*, *um*, diminutives in, 100, 8, c. 1.  
*Ullus*, pronom. adj., 139, 5, (1'), (a.); how declined, 107; how used, 207, R. 31.  
*Uterior*, its degrees, 126, 1; *ultimus* for *ultimum*, 205, R. 15; how translated, 206, R. 17.  
*Ultrix*, gender of, 115, 1, (b.)  
*Ultra*, prep., 195, 4; adv., 191, I.  
*Ultum ire* for *ultrisci*, 276, II., R. 2.  
*-ulum*, verbals in, 102, 5.  
*-ulus*, *a*, *um*, diminutives in, 100, 8, 128, 5.  
*-um*, genit. plur. in instead of *arum*, 48 instead of *orum*, 53 nouns ending in, 46

in genit. plur. 3d decl., 83; 114;—advs. in, 192, r. 4. (b.)

*Unca*, 327, p. 372.

*-unus*, participles in, 162, 20.

*Unde domo*, 255, r. 1.

*Umquam*, 191, II.; *umquam, usquam, usque, usquam*, 191, R. 6.

*-untis*, in genit. of Greek nouns, 76, E. 6.

*Unus*, declined, 107; when used in plur., 118, R. 2; added to superlatives, 127, N. 2; *unus et alter*, with verbs singular, 209, R. 12; w. relative and subj., 264, 10; for *solum, tantum*, etc., 205, R. 15. (b.); *unum*, as acc. of degree, 232. (3.)

*Unusquisque*, how declined, 133, 4.

*-ur*, nouns in, gender of, 60, 67; genit. cf. 70, 71.

*-uri*, verbals in, 102, 7, R. 2.

*Uris*, in apposition to names of towns, 237, R. 2, (b.)

*-urio*, verbs in, 187, II., E.

*-uris*, genitives in, 76, E. 3.

*-us*, nouns in, of 2d decl., 46; exceptions in, 49—51; voc. sing. of, 46, N. and 52; of 3d decl., gender of, 66; 67; genitive of, 76; Greek genit. in, 69, E. 3; nouns in of 4th decl., 87—89; participles in, how declined, 105, R. 2; verbals in, 102, 7; final, quantity of, 301.

*Usitatum est, ut*, 262, R. 3, N. 3.

*Usquam, usquam, usque*, 191, R. 6; *usquam*, w. genit., 212, R. 4, N. 2; *usque*, w. acc., 195, R. 3; 235, R. 9.

*Usus*, w. abl., 243; *usu venit, ut*, 262, R. 3, N. 1; w. genit. of gerunds, 275, III., R. 1. (1)

*Ut* or *uti*, a conj., 198, 8; *ut non* and *ut ne*, ib.; w. subj., 262; its correlatives, 262, R. 1; ellipsis of, 262, R. 4; its meaning after *metuo*, etc., 262, R. 7; *ut non*, 262, R. 5, and R. 6, 2; *ut—ita* or *sic*, 277, R. 12, (b.); *ut*, 'as,' ellipsis of, 277, R. 17; *ut*, 'even if,' and *ut non*, w. subj., 262, R. 2; *ut* with certain impersonal verbs and subj., 262, R. 3; in questions expressing indignation, 270, R. 2, (a.); *ut, ut primum*, etc., with the historical perf., indic., instead of the pluperf., 259, R. 1, (d.); its place, 279, 2, (b.); *ut* after *est* with a predicate adj., 262, R. 3, N. 4; *ut credo, ut puto*, etc., in interposed clauses, 277, I., R. 17; *ut*, 'because,' 277, I., R. 12, (b.); *ut qui*, 264, 8, 2; *ut si*, w. subj., 263, 2; *ut ita dicam*, 207, R. 33, (b.) *fin.*; *ut*, 'as if,' w. abl. absolute, 257, N. 4; *utut*, w. indic., 259, R. 4, (3); ellipsis of *ut* when *ne* precedes and *et*, etc., follow, 278, R. 6, (c.)

*Utrumque*, w. indic., 259, R. 4, (3.)

*Uter*, how declined, 107; w. dual genit., 212, R. 2, N. 1.

*Utercumque*, how declined, 107.

*Uterlibet, uterque*, and *utrisque*, their meaning and declension, 107; 139, 5, (1), (b.); *utrumque*, use of, 207, R. 32; *uterque*, w. plur. verb, 209, R. 11, (4.)

*Utilis*, w. dat., 222, R. 1; 275, III., R. 2; w. *ad*, 222, R. 4, (1.); *utile est ut*, 262, R. 3, N. 3; *utilis*, w. inf. poetical y, 270, R. 1, (b.); 275, R. 2; *utilis fuit*, indic. instead of subj., 259, R. 3; w. supine in *u*, 276, III., R. 1.

*Utinam* and *ut*, w. subj., 263, 1.

*-utis*, genitives in, 76, E. 2; 112, 2.

*Utor*, w. abl., 245; w. acc., 245, I, R. w. two ablatives, 245, N.; *utor, fruor*, etc. their gerundives, 275, III., R. 1.

*Utpote qui*, w. subj., 264, 8, (2.)

*Utrique*, how used, 20, R. 32, (c.)

*Utrum and utrumque*, 198, 11.

*-utus*, adjectives in, 128, 7.

*-uus*, adjectives in, 129, 3.

*-ux*, nouns in, genit. of, 78, 2, (5.)

*Uxor*, ellipsis of, 211, R. 7.

## V.

*V*, changed to *u*, 163, 2; sometimes dropped in forming the 2d root of verbs of the 3d conj., 171, E. 4.

*Vaco*, 250, 2, R. 1.

*Vacius*, w. genit. or abl., 213, R. 5, (3.) cf. 251, N.

*Vado*, constr., 225, IV.; 232, N. 1; 233 (3), N. 1.

*Væ*, w. dat., 228, 3; w. acc., 238, 2.

*Valde*, 127, 2.

*Valeo*, w. abl., 250, 2, R. 1; 252; w. acc., 252, R. 4; *valere* or *vale dico*, w. dat., 225 I., N.; w. inf., 271, N. 1.

*Validus*, 213, R. 5, (4.)

*Valuing*, verbs of, 214, R. 2; w. genit., 214; w. abl., 252, R. 1.

*Vapulo*, 142, R. 3.

Variable nouns, 92; adjs., 122.

*Vas*, genit. of, 72, E. 1; gender of, 62, E. 1, and E. 2; 93, 2.

*-ve*, 198, 2, and N. 1, p. 176; place of, 279 3, (c.)

*Vehor*, compds. of, 233, (3.), N.

*Vel*, 198, 2; difference between *vel* and *aut*, ib., R.; *vel* w. superlative degree, 127, 4; w. comparatives, 256, R. 9, (b.)

*Velim*, w. subj. without *ut*, 260, R. 4; 262, R. 4.

*Velim*, how used, 260, R. 2.

*Velox*, constr., 222, R. 4, (2.)

*Velut, velut si, veluti*, w. subj., 263, 2; *velut*, 'as if,' w. abl. absolute, 257, N. 4.

*Venalis*, w. abl. of price, 252.

*Vendo*, w. abl., 252; w. genit., 214, R. 2, N. 1.

*Veneo*, 142, R. 3; 252; 214, R. 3, N. 1.

*Venio*, w. two datives, 227, R. 1; w. *ad* or *in*, 225, IV.; w. dat., 225, R. 2; *venio mihi in mentem*, constr., 211, R. 3, (5) 216, R. 3.

*Venitur*, conjugated, 184, 2, (c.)

Verbal terminations, 152; nouns, 102; w. acc., 233, R. 2, N.; of place, 237, R. 1; w. dat., 222, R. 8; w. abl. of place, 255 w. genit. of personal pronouns, 211, R. 3 (a.); verbal adjs., 129.

Verbs, 140—139; subject of, 140, 1 active or transitive, 141, I.; neuter or intransitive, 141, II.; neuter passive, 142, 2; neutral passive, 142, 3; deponent, 142, 4 common, 142, 4, (b.); principal parts of 151, 4; neuter, participles of, 152, 16; inceptive, 173; desiderative, 187, II., 3; 176 N.; irregular, 178—182; defective, 183; re



dundant, 185; verbs spelled alike, or having the same perfect or supine, 186; derivation of, 187; imitative, 187, 3; frequentative, 187, II., 1; incentive, 187, II., 2; desiderative, 187, II., 3; diminutive, 187, II., 4; intensive, 187, II., 5; 187, II., 1, (e.); composition of, 188; changes in composition, 189; compounds from simples not in use, 189, N. 5; agreement of, 209, (b.); ellipsis of, 209, R. 4; person of with *qui*, 209, R. 6; agreeing with predicate nominative, 209, R. 9; with collective nouns, 209, R. 11; plural with two or more nominatives, 209, R. 12; after *uterque*, etc., 209, R. 11, (4); after a nominative with *cum* and the abl., 209, R. 12, (6); after nominatives connected by *aut*, 209, R. 12, (5); their place in a sentence, 279, (b.) in a period, 280.

*Vere* and *vero*, 192, 4, N. 1.

*Vereor*, w. genit. poet., 220, 1; w. *ut* or *ne*, 262, R. 7; w. inf., 271, N. 1.

*Verisimile est ut*, 262, R. 3, N. 3; w. inf. as subject, 269, R. 2.

*Veritum est*, w. acc., 229, R. 6.

*Vero*, use of in answers, 192, 4, N. 1; 198, 3, R., (a.); ellipsis of, 278, R. 11; its place, 279, 3, (c.)

Verses, 304; combinations of in poems, 319.

Versification, 302.

*Versus*, w. acc., 195, R. 3; 235, R. 9; place of, 279, 10, (f.)

*Verto*, constr., 225, IV.; w. two datives, 227, R. 1; 229, R. 4, 1.

*Verum est, ut*, 262, R. 3, N. 3; w. inf. as subject, 269, R. 2; *verum*, conj., 198, 9; its place, 279, 3; *verum* and *verum-tamen*, 'I say,' 278, R. 10; *verum enimvero*, 198, 9, R., (a.); *vero* after comparatives, 256, R. 9.

*Vescor*, with abl., 245, I.; with acc., 245, I., R.

*Vespere*, or *-ri*, 253, N. 1.

*Vester*, how declined, 139, 1; *vestrūm*, 133, 3; used after partitives, 212, R. 2, N. 2.

*Vestio*, 229, R. 4, 1.

*Veto*, 273, 2, (d.); 262, R. 4; w. acc. and inf., 272, R. 6.

*Vetus*, declension of, 112, 2; its superlative, 125, 1; 126, 3.

*Viā*, abl. of place without *in*, 254, R. 3.

*Vicem* for *vice*, 247, 1, N. 3.

*Viciniz*, genit. of place, 221, R. 3, (4.); 212, R. 4, N. 2, (b.)

*Vicinus*, w. dat. or genit., 222, R. 2, (a.)

*Victrix*, 115, 1, (b.); how declined as an adj., 129, 8.

*Videlicet* and *scilicet*, 198, 7, R., (a.); pr., 285, R. 4, N. 2.

*Video*, w. acc. and inf., 272, N. 1; w. *ut* or *ne*, 262, N. 3; *videres*, 260, R. 2; *video* for *curo*, w. *ut*, 273, N. 1; *videor*, constr., 271, R. 2; 272, R. 6.

*Viduus*, constr., 213, R. 5, (4); 250, 2, (1)

*Vigeo*, w. abl., 250, 2, R. 1.

*Vigil*, abl. of, 113, N. 3; genit. plur. of, 114, N. 2; 115, 1, (a.)

*Vigilia*, 326, 1, (2.)

*Vigilias*, *vigilare*, 232

*Vilis*, w. abl. of price, 252.

*Vir*, how declined, 48, 2.

*Virgilius*, voc. of, 52; accent of, 14, \*

*Virgo*, declined, 57.

*Virus*, gender of, 51.

*Vis*, declined, 85; acc. sing. of, 79, 2, abl. sing., 82, R. 2; genit. plur., 83, II., 3 94; *vi* and *per vim*, difference between, 247, 3, R. 4; w. genit. of gerunds, 275, III. R. 1, (1.)

*Vitabundus*, w. acc., 233, R. 2, N.

*Vitam vivere*, 232, (1.)

*Vitio creati magistratus*, 247, 2.

*Vivo*, w. abl., 245, II., 4; w. pred. nom., 210, R. 3, (2); *tertia vivitur aetas*, 234, III.

*Vix*, with part. fut. pass., 274, R. 12, *vixdum*, 277, I., R. 16.

Vocative, 37; sing., its form, 40, 3; plur., 40, 4; ellipsis of, 240, R. 2.

*Voco*, constr., 225, R. 1; 230, N. 1; pass., 210, R. 3, (8.)

Voices, 141.

*Volucer*, in genit. plur., 108, R. 2.

*Volo*, (*are*), compds. of, 233, (8), N.

*Volo*, conjugated, 178, 1; w. perf. inf., 268, R. 2; w. perf. part., and ellipsis of *esse*, 270, R. 3; its construction, 271, R. 4, and N. 4; 273, 4; 262, R. 4; *volens*, w. dat. of person, 226, R. 3, *volo bene* and *male alicui*, 225, I., N.; *volo*, w. reflexive pron., 228, N., (b.)

Voluntary agent of pass. verbs, 243, I.; ellipsis of, 141, R. 2; 243, I., R. 1; when expressed by *per* and acc., 247, R. 4; of neuter verbs, 248, R. 2; dative of voluntary agent, 225, II. and III.

*Volutum*, pr., 284, R. 3.

*Vos*, see *tu*, 133.

*Voti* and *votorum damnati*, 217, R. 3.

Vowels, 3, 1; sounds of, 7 and 8; vowel, before a mute and liquid, its quantity, 13, 6, and 283, IV., R. 2; before another vowel, quantity of, 13, 3, and 283, I.; in Greek words, 283, R. 6; before two consonants, 13, 5, and 283, IV.; ending first part of a compound, quantity of, 285, R. 4.

*Vulgus*, gender of, 51; 95.

*Vultur*, gender of, 67.

## W

*W*, not used in Latin, 2, 4.

Weight, acc. of, 233, R. 7; weights, Roman, 327.

Willingness, verbs of, constr., 273, 4.

Winds, gender of names of, 28.

Wishing, verbs of, constr., 271, R. 4.

Words, division of, 17-23; arrangement of, 279; gender of as mere words, 34, 2.

Writers in different ages, 329.

## X

*X*, sound of, 12; its equivalents, 3, 2; 56, R. 2; 171, 1; in syllabication, 18, 4; nouns in, gender of, 62 and 65; genitive of, 78, 2.

Y, found only in Greek words, 2, 5; sound of, 7, R. 2; 8, R. 5; nouns in, gender of, 62; genitive of, 69; increment in, 3d decl., 287, 3; final, quantity of, 298; 285, R. 4.

-ychis, in genitive, 78, 2, (6.)

-ycis, genitives in, 78, 2, (6.)

-ydis, genitives in, 77, 1.

Yi, how pronounced, 9, 1; abl. in, 82, R. 6

-ygis, genitives in, 78, 2, (6.)  
 -ynos, Greek genitive in, 71, 2.  
 -ys, nouns in, gender of, 62, 63, R.; genitive of, 77; acc. of, 80, II.; abl. of, 82, R. 6  
 final, quantity of, 301.  
 -yx, nouns in, gender of, 65, 6.

## Z.

Z, found only in words derived from the Greek, 2, 5; its equivalents, 8, 2  
 Zeugma 823, 1 (b.) and (2.)





3/25/2014

C

3158452 68

02



14-B224

HF GROUP - IN





LIBRARY OF CONGRESS



0 003 234 168 8 •